2026 Lincoln Corsair owners manual

Contacting Us

Contacting Us

If you require assistance or clarification on policies or procedures, please contact the customer relationship center.
United States
Lincoln
Lincoln Concierge
P.O. Box 6248
Dearborn, MI 48126
1-800-521-4140
TDD for the hearing impaired:
7-1-1 (where offered by your telephone service provider)
www.owner.lincoln.com
Lincoln Automotive Financial Services - US Only
Lincoln Automotive Financial Services offers a full range of financing and lease plans to help you acquire your vehicle. We are dedicated to providing answers, information and a truly extraordinary experience.
For assistance call 1-888-498-8801, or for more information about Lincoln Automotive Financial Services and access to an account manager, visit www.lincoln.com/finance.
Canada
Lincoln
Customer Relationship Centre
P.O. Box 2000
Oakville, Ontario L6K 0C8
1-800-387-9333
TDD for the hearing impaired:
7-1-1 (where offered by your telephone service provider)
www.lincolncanada.com
Australia
Ford Motor Company
Attention: Customer Relationship Centre
Private Mail Bag 5
Fairlane Business Park #3
Campbellfield, Victoria, 3061
Telephone: 13 3673 (FORD)
E-mail: foacust1@ford.com
New Zealand
Ford Motor Company
Attention: Customer Relationship Centre
Private Bag 76912
Manukau City 2241
Telephone: 0800 367 369 (FORDNZ)
E-mail: fnzcust@ford.com
China
Customer Relationship Center
Telephone: 400-988-6789
Email: info12@lincoln.com
Wechat Account: Lincoln_in_China
Weibo Account: Lincoln China
Asia Pacific
E-mail: expcac@ford.com

Caribbean, Central America and Israel
Ford Motor Company
Ford Export Operations
Attention: Owner Relations
1555 Fairlane Drive
Fairlane Business Park #3
Allen Park, MI 48101
Fax: (313) 390-0804
Telephone: (313) 594-4857
E-mail: expcac@ford.com
U.S. Virgin Islands and Puerto Rico
Ford Motor Company
Ford Export Operations
Attention: Owner Relations
1555 Fairlane Drive
Fairlane Business Park #3
Allen Park, MI 48101
Telephone: (800) 841-3673
E-mail: prcac@ford.com
Chile
Ford Customer Service
Telephone: 800-470-408
Argentina
Telephone: 0800-888-3673
Brazil
www.ford.com.br
North Africa
E-mail: nafcrc@ford.com
Sub-Saharan Africa
E-mail: ssacrc@ford.com
Puerto Rico
Ford International Business Development, Inc.
P.O. Box 11957
Caparra Heights Station
San Juan, PR 00922-1957
1-800-392-3673 (FORD)
Fax: (313) 390-0804
E-mail: prcac@ford.com
www.ford.com.pr
Middle East
Ford Middle East Customer Relationship Center
P.O. Box 21740
Dubai, United Arab Emirates
Telephone: 80004441066
Toll-free number for the Kingdom of Saudi Arabia: 8008443673
Mobily and Zain cell phone users in Saudi Arabia: 800850078
Kuwait: 22280384
Local telephone number for Kuwait: +965 1 898900
Fax: +971 4 3327266
E-mail: menacac@ford.com
www.me.ford.com
South Korea
Telephone: +82-02-1600-6003

E-mail: infokr1@ford.com

Introduction

About This Publication

WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

WARNING: You risk death, fire, or serious injury to yourself and others if you do not follow the instruction highlighted by the warning symbol.

Thank you for choosing Lincoln. We recommend that you take some time to get to know your vehicle in order to benefit from greater safety and pleasure from driving it.Use this publication, whether in-vehicle, print, in Lincoln mobile app or online, to familiarize yourself with the features on your vehicle.

Note: Use and operate your vehicle in line with all applicable laws and regulations.

Note: Pass on all printed owner’s information when selling this vehicle.

Features and Options

This publication describes product features and options available throughout the range of available models, sometimes even before they are generally available. It may describe options that are not available on the vehicle you have bought.

Driver Assistance Systems

Your vehicle may contain certain Driver Assistance Systems (i.e., Pre-Collision Assist, Adaptive Cruise Control, Lane Keeping System, and BlueCruise).? Use of these technologies still requires your complete attention while driving. Your hands need to be on the steering wheel at all times unless you are actively operating BlueCruise and your vehicle informs you that you do not need to have your hands on the steering wheel. With all driving technologies, your eyes need to be on the road, and you must be alert to your surroundings. Your complete attention is required while driving since you may need to take immediate control due to the presence of roadway hazards or a change in road, weather, or lighting conditions.? Use of these features does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Always be prepared to manually control the speed and direction of your vehicle. Please refer to this manual for information pertaining to each Driver Assistance feature.

Aftermarket Modifications, Add-ons, Accessories, and Repairs

Unapproved modifications to your vehicle may affect your vehicle's height or suspension and could shift the sensors out of the position from which they were designed and tested. Unapproved aftermarket parts or add-on accessories could also block or interfere with your vehicle's sensors or electronic systems.

Do not modify your vehicle with unapproved aftermarket products or repairs. Unapproved modifications may affect your vehicle warranty, performance, safety, or durability. We are not responsible for any damage or adverse effects caused by unapproved modifications to your vehicle or its systems.

Providing Feedback

If you would like to provide feedback to the Owner's Manual team, please email us at OWNERMANUALFEEDBACK@ford.com.

You will not receive a direct email response. Your submission will be investigated and necessary changes will be made to the Owner's Manual content.

To help investigate your submission, please include the following information:

- Your vehicle model
- The country in which your vehicle was purchased

- The Owner's Manual section needing investigation

Illustrations
Some of the illustrations in this manual could show features as used in different models, some can appear different to you on your vehicle.
Location of Components
This manual may qualify the location of a component as left-hand side or right-hand side. The side is determined when facing forward in the seat.



A Right-hand side.
B Left-hand side.

Accessing the Digital Owner's Manual
Landscape Center Display Screen
Depending on your vehicle, the Owner's Manual application is located in either the Apps list or the Features list.

1. Press Apps or Features on the touchscreen.

Note: Some vehicles have the Apps or Features buttons on the home screen. Not all vehicles have a Features button.

2. Select the Owner's Manual application.

Accessing the Online and Printed Owner's Manual
Online Owner's Manual

- Through your device's app store, you can download the Lincoln mobile app.
- You can visit the local Ford Website.

Note: To find the local Ford website, visit https://corporate.ford.com/operations/locations/global-links.html.

Note: We strongly recommend downloading a copy of the Owner's Manual and having it with you whenever you drive, and to view the information if you are unable to be inside the vehicle.
Printed Owner's Manual
In U.S. and Canada, visit https://www.helminc.com or see an authorized dealer.

In Europe, visit https://www.z-order.eu or see an authorized dealer.

For all other Countries, see your authorized dealer.

Using This Publication

To quickly locate information about your vehicle, use the word search within the Owner's Manual application.

Symbols Glossary

Symbols Used on Your Vehicle

These are some of the symbols you may see on your vehicle.

- Airbag
- Air conditioning system
- Air conditioning system lubricant type
- Anti-lock braking system
- Avoid smoking, flames or sparks
- Battery
- Battery acid
- Blower motor
- Brake fluid - non petroleum based
- Brake system
- Brake system
- Cabin air filter
- Check fuel cap
- Child safety door lock or unlock
- Child seat lower anchor
- Child seat tether anchor

 Cruise control
 Electric Parking brake
 Engine coolant
 Engine oil
 Fan warning
 Flammable
 Fuel pump reset
 Hazard flashers
 Headlamps on
 Hill descent control
 Interior luggage compartment release
 Keep out of reach of children
 Low fuel level
 Maintain correct fluid level
 Note operating instructions
 Parking aid
 Passenger airbag activated
 Power steering fluid
 Power window lockout
 Safety alert
 See Service Manual
 Shield the eyes
 Stability control off
 Turn Signal
 Windshield wiping system
 Do not open when hot
 Engine air filter
 Engine coolant temperature
 Explosive gas
 Fasten seatbelt
 Front fog lamps
 Fuse compartment
 Headlamp high beams
 Heated rear window
 Horn control
 Jack
 Lighting control
 Low tire pressure warning
 Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL)
 Panic alarm
 Parking lamps
 Passenger airbag deactivated
 Power windows front/rear
 Requires registered technician
 See Owner's Manual
 Side airbag
 Stability control
 Trail control
 Windshield defrosting system
 Windshield wash and wipe

Symbols Used On Your Instrument Cluster

Lighting and Signaling

 High beams. See **Headlamp Indicators**.

 Auto high beams. See **Automatic High Beam Control Indicators**.

 Turn signal - right. See **Using the Turn Signal Lamps**.

 Turn signal - left. See **Using the Turn Signal Lamps**.

 Positioning/side lights. See **Headlamp Indicators**.

 Exterior bulb failure. See **Exterior Bulb Specification Chart**.

Brakes

 Brake failure. See **Brakes – Warning Lamps**.

 Brake failure. See **Brakes – Warning Lamps**.

 Electric parking brake fault. See **Electric Parking Brake – Warning Lamps**.

 Anti-lock brake system malfunction. See **Brakes – Warning Lamps**.

 Automatic brake hold. See **Auto Hold Indicators**.

 Automatic brake hold off or unavailable. See **Auto Hold Indicators**.

Visibility

 Windshield washer fluid level. See **Wipers and Washers – Warning Lamps**.

Engine

 Check engine. See **Coolant – Warning Lamps**.

 Engine oil pressure. See **Starting and Stopping the Engine – Warning Lamps**.

 Engine coolant temperature. See **Coolant – Warning Lamps**.

 Auto Start/Stop. See **Auto-Start-Stop Indicators - Gasoline**.

See **Auto-Start-Stop Indicators - Gasoline**.

 Auto Start/Stop off or unavailable. See **Auto-Start-Stop Indicators - Gasoline**.

See **Auto-Start-Stop Indicators - Gasoline**.

Fuel

 Fuel. See **Fuel and Refueling – Warning Lamps**.

Transmission

 Non-emission powertrain fault. See **Starting and Stopping the Engine – Warning Lamps**.

 Shift up. See **Manually Shifting Gears**.

 Shift down. See **Manually Shifting Gears**.

Driver Assistance

 Cruise control. See **Switching From Adaptive Cruise Control to Cruise Control**.

 Adaptive cruise control. See **Adaptive Cruise Control Indicators**.

 Speed limiter.

 Lane keeping assist. See **Switching the Lane Keeping System On and Off**.

 Lane centering assist. See **Lane Centering Indicators**.

Safety

 Seatbelt. See **Seatbelt Reminder Indicators**.

 Airbag. See **Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator**.

 Stability control system active or not available. See **Stability Control Indicator**.

See **Traction Control Indicator**.

 Stability control system off. See **Stability Control Indicator**.

See **Traction Control Indicator**.

 Tire failure/Low tire pressure. See **Tire Pressure Monitoring System – Warning Lamps**.

 Forward collision warning system. See **Pre-Collision Assist – Warning Lamps**.

 Forward collision warning system off or unavailable. See **Pre-Collision Assist – Warning Lamps**.

 Blind spot information system off or unavailable. See **Switching Blind Spot Information System On and Off**.

 Icy road conditions. See **Climate Control – Warning Lamps**.

 Door(s) ajar. See **Doors and Locks – Warning Lamps**.

Security

 Hood release/ajar. See **Opening and Closing the Hood**.

 Liftgate release/ajar. See **Liftgate – Warning Lamps**.

Electrical Systems

 Battery charge level. See **12V Battery – Warning Lamps - Excluding: Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)**.



Ready to drive. See **Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle Information - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)**.

 External cord connected. See **Charging Settings - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)** .

 Hybrid/electric system failure. See **What Is the High Voltage Battery - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)**.

Data Privacy

Data Privacy

 **WARNING**: Do not connect wireless plug-in devices to the data link connector. Unauthorized third parties could gain access to vehicle data and impair the performance of safety related systems. Only allow repair facilities that follow our service and repair instructions to connect their equipment to the data link connector.

We respect your privacy and are committed to protecting it. The information contained in this publication was correct at the time of release, but as technology rapidly changes, we recommend that you visit the local Lincoln website for the latest information.
Your vehicle has electronic control units that have data recording functionality and the ability to permanently or temporarily store data. This data could include information on the condition and status of your vehicle, vehicle maintenance requirements, events and malfunctions. The types of data that can be recorded are described in this section. Some of the data recorded is stored in event logs or error logs.
Note: Error logs are reset following a service or repair.
Note: We may provide information in response to requests from law enforcement, other government authorities and third parties acting with lawful authority or through a legal process. Such information could be used by them in legal proceedings.

Data recorded includes, for example:

- Operating states of system components, for example fuel level, tire pressure and battery charge level.
- Vehicle and component status, for example wheel speed, deceleration, lateral acceleration and seatbelt status.
- Events or errors in essential systems, for example headlamps and brakes.
- System responses to driving situations, for example airbag deployment and stability control.
- Environmental conditions, for example temperature.

Some of this data, when used in combination with other information, for example an accident report, damage to a vehicle or eyewitness statements, could be associated with a specific person.
Services That We Provide
If you use our services, we collect and use data, for example account information, vehicle location and driving characteristics, that could identify you. We transmit this data through a dedicated, protected connection. We only collect and use data to enable your use of our services to which you have subscribed, with your consent or where permitted by law. For additional information, see the terms and conditions of the

services to which you have subscribed.
For additional information about our privacy policy, refer to the local Lincoln website.
Services That Third Parties Provide
We recommend that you review the terms and conditions and data privacy information for any services equipped with your vehicle or to which you subscribe. We take no responsibility for services that third parties provide.
Where equipped, SiriusXM with 360L may use the modem. To disable, turn off the SiriusXM with 360L or Vehicle Connectivity setting. See **Enabling and Disabling the Modem**.

Service Data

Service data recorders in your vehicle are capable of collecting and storing diagnostic information about your vehicle. This potentially includes information about the performance or status of various systems and modules in the vehicle, such as engine, throttle, steering or brake systems. In order to properly diagnose and service your vehicle, Ford Motor Company (Ford of Canada in Canada), and service and repair facilities may access or share among them vehicle diagnostic information received through a direct connection to your vehicle when diagnosing or servicing your vehicle. Additionally, Ford Motor Company (Ford of Canada, in Canada) may, where permitted by law, use vehicle diagnostic information for vehicle improvement or with other information we may have about you, for example, your contact information, to offer you products or services that may interest you. Data may be provided to our service providers such as part suppliers that may help diagnose malfunctions, and who are similarly obligated to protect data. We retain this data only as long as necessary to perform these functions or to comply with law. We may provide information where required in response to official requests to law enforcement or other government authorities or third parties acting with lawful authority or court order, and such information may be used in legal proceedings. For U.S. only (if equipped), if you choose to use connected apps and services, you consent that certain diagnostic information may also be accessed electronically by Ford Motor Company and Ford authorized service facilities, and that the diagnostic information may be used to provide services to you, personalizing your experience, troubleshoot, and to improve products and services and offer you products and services that may interest you, where permitted by law. For Canada only, for more information, please review the Ford of Canada privacy policy at www.ford.ca, including our U.S. data storage and use of service providers in other jurisdictions who may be subject to legal requirements in Canada, the United States and other countries applicable to them, for example, lawful requirements to disclose personal information to governmental authorities in those countries.

Event Data

This vehicle is equipped with an event data recorder. The main purpose of an event data recorder is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an airbag deployment or hitting a road obstacle; this data will assist in understanding how a vehicle’s systems performed. The event data recorder is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less.

The event data recorder in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

- How various systems in your vehicle were operating.
- Whether or not the driver and passenger seatbelts were buckled/fastened.
- How far (if at all) the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or the brake pedal.
- How fast the vehicle was traveling.
- Where the driver was positioning the steering wheel.

This data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur.
Note: Event data recorder data is recorded by your vehicle only if a non-trivial crash situation occurs; no data is recorded by the event data recorder under normal driving conditions and no personal data or information (for example name, gender, age, and crash location) is recorded. However, parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the event data recorder data with the type of personally identifying data

routinely acquired during a crash investigation.
To read data recorded by an event data recorder, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the event data recorder is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have such special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the event data recorder.
BlueCruise Data (If Equipped)
If BlueCruise is active in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an airbag deployment or hitting a road obstacle, the system may record driver attentiveness, based on the direction of eyes and duration, and photographs of the driver seat area.
Note: No data is recorded under normal driving conditions.

Settings Data

Your vehicle has electronic control units that have the ability to store data based on your personalized settings. The data is stored locally in the vehicle or on devices that you connect to it, for example, a USB drive or digital music player. You can delete some of this data and also choose whether to share it through the services to which you subscribe.
Comfort and Convenience Data

Data recorded includes, for example:
- Seat and steering wheel position.
- Climate control settings.
- Radio presets.

Entertainment Data

Data recorded includes, for example:
- Music, videos or album art.
- Contacts and corresponding address book entries.
- Navigation destinations.

Connected Vehicle Data

 The modem has a SIM. The modem was enabled when your vehicle was built and periodically sends messages to stay connected to the cell phone network, receive automatic software updates and may send vehicle-related information to us, for example diagnostic information. Subject to your consent, the vehicle may send vehicle, driving and location data. These messages could include information that identifies your vehicle, the SIM and the electronic serial number of the modem. Cell phone network service providers could have access to additional information, for example cell phone network tower identification. For additional information about our privacy policy, visit https://www.connectedlincoln.com or refer to your local Lincoln website.
Note: The modem continues to send this information unless you disable the modem or stop the modem from sharing vehicle data by changing the modem settings. See **Connected Vehicle**.
Note: The service can be unavailable or interrupted for a number of reasons, for example environmental or topographical conditions and data plan coverage.
Note: To find out if your vehicle has a modem, visit https://www.connectedlincoln.com.

Mobile Device Data

If you connect a mobile device to your vehicle, you can display data from your device on the touchscreen for example, music and album art. You can share your vehicle data with mobile apps on your device through the

system. See **Enabling Apps on a Mobile Device**.
The mobile apps function operates by your connected device sending data to us in the United States. The data is encrypted and includes, for example, the vehicle identification number of your vehicle, the SYNC module serial number, odometer, enabled apps, usage statistics and debugging information. We retain it only as long as necessary to provide the service, to troubleshoot, for continuous improvement and to offer you products and services that may be of interest to you according to your preferences and where allowed by law.
If you connect a cell phone to the system, the system creates a profile that links to that cell phone. The cell phone profile enables more mobile features and efficient operation. The profile contains, for example data from your phonebook, read and unread text messages and call history, including history of calls when your cell phone was not connected to the system.
If you connect a media device, the system creates and retains a media device index of supported media content. The system also records a short diagnostic log of approximately 10 minutes of all recent system activity.
The cell phone profile, media device index and diagnostic log remain in your vehicle unless you delete them and are generally accessible only in your vehicle when you connect your cell phone or media device. If you no longer plan to use the system or your vehicle, we recommend you use the system reset function to erase the stored information. See **Performing a System Reset**.
System data cannot be accessed without special equipment and access to your vehicle's module.
For additional information about our privacy policy, refer to the local Lincoln website.
Note: To find out if your vehicle has connectivity technology, visit www.ConnectedLincoln.com.

Emergency Call System Data

When the emergency call system is active, it may disclose to emergency services that your vehicle has been in a crash involving the deployment of an airbag or activation of the fuel pump shut-off. Certain versions or updates to the emergency call system may also be capable of electronically or verbally disclosing to emergency services operators your vehicle location or other details about your vehicle or crash to assist emergency services operators to provide the most appropriate emergency services. If you do not want to disclose this information, do not activate the emergency call system.
Note: You cannot deactivate emergency call systems that are required by law.

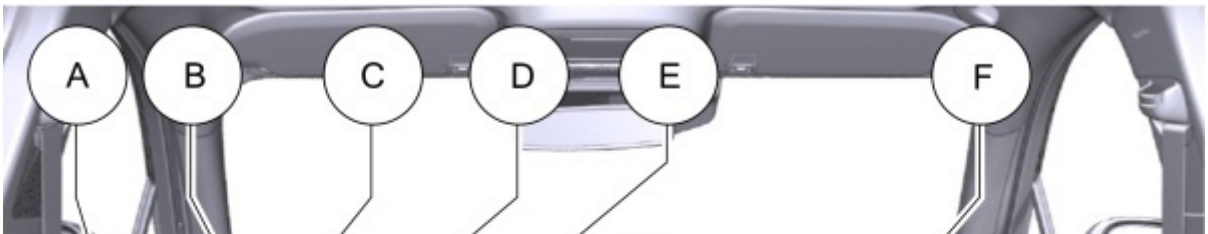
Environment

Protecting the Environment

Sustainability is a priority at Ford. We are constantly looking for ways to reduce our impact on the planet while providing customers with great products and delivering a strong business. You should play your part in protecting the environment. Correct vehicle usage and the authorized disposal of waste, cleaning and lubrication materials are significant steps toward this aim.
For additional information about our sustainability progress and initiatives, visit www.sustainability.ford.com
.

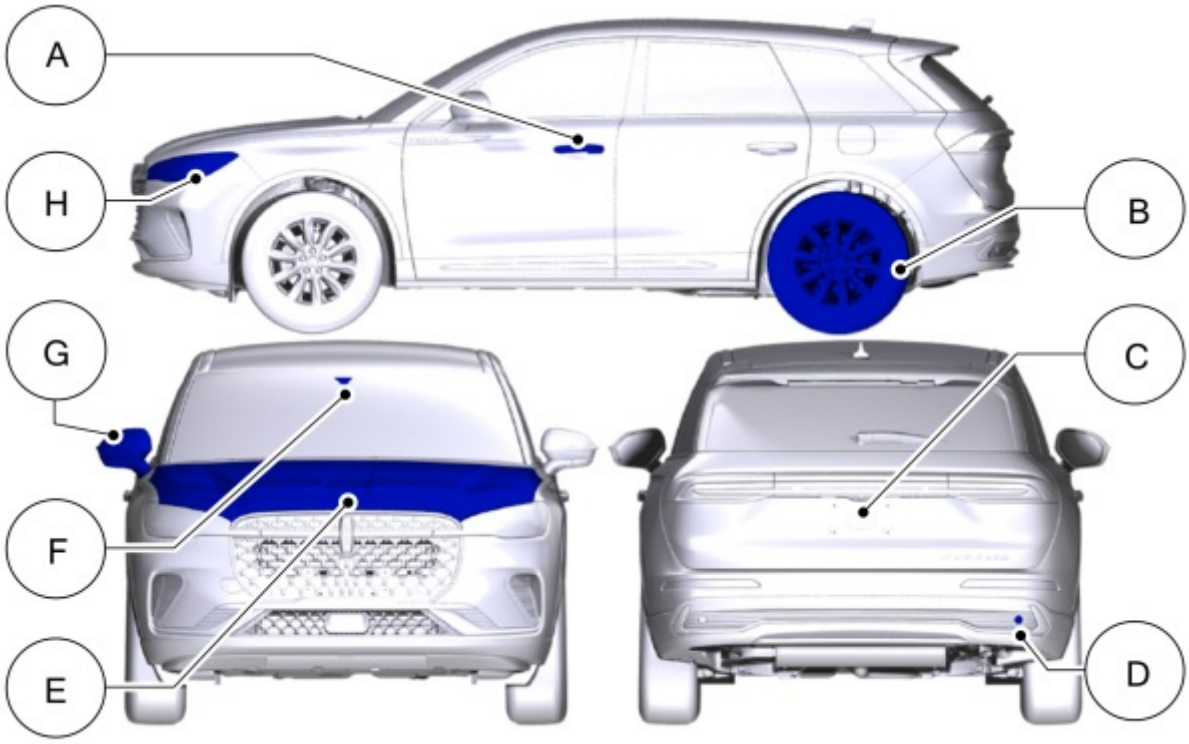
Visual Search

Interior Overview



A See **Adjusting the Exterior Mirrors**.
B See **Setting the Adaptive Cruise Control Speed**.
C See **Using Lincoln Personal Assistant**.
D See **Instrument Cluster Overview - Excluding: Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)**.
See **Instrument Cluster Overview - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)**.
E See **Using the Instrument Cluster Display Controls - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)**.
F See **Opening the Glove Compartment**.
G See **Center Display Overview**.
H See **Switching the Hazard Flashers On and Off**.
I See **Switching the Heated Seats On and Off**.
J See **Sitting in the Correct Position**.
K See **Exterior Lighting Control**.

Exterior Overview



A See **Unlocking and Locking the Doors Using the Key Blade**.
B See **Changing a Flat Tire**.
C See **Opening the Liftgate From Outside Your Vehicle**.
D See **Locating the Rear Parking Aid Sensors**.
E See **Opening and Closing the Hood**.
F See **Locating the Pre-Collision Assist Sensors**.
G See **Folding the Exterior Mirrors**.
H See **Using the High Beam Headlamps**.

Child Safety

Child Safety Precautions

WARNING: Always make sure your child is secured properly in a device that is appropriate for their height, age and weight. Child safety restraints must be bought separately from your vehicle. Failure to follow these instructions and guidelines may result in an increased risk of serious injury or death to your child.

WARNING: All children are shaped differently. The National Highway Traffic Safety Administration and other safety organizations, base their recommendations for child restraints on probable child height, age and weight thresholds, or on the minimum requirements of the law. We recommend that you check with a NHTSA Certified Child Passenger Safety Technician (CPST) to make sure that you properly install the child restraint in your vehicle and that you consult your pediatrician to make sure you have a child restraint appropriate for your child. To locate a child restraint fitting station and CPST, contact NHTSA toll free at 1-888-327-4236 or go to www.nhtsa.dot.gov. In Canada, contact Transport Canada toll free at 1-800-333-0371 or go to www.tc.gc.ca to find a Child Car Seat Clinic in your area. Failure to properly restrain children in child restraints made especially for their height, age and weight, may result in an increased risk of serious injury or death to your child.

WARNING: On hot days, the temperature inside the vehicle can rise very quickly. Exposure of people or animals to these high temperatures for even a short time can cause death or serious heat related injuries, including brain damage. Small children are particularly at risk.

WARNING: Do not place a rearward facing child restraint in front of an active airbag. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

WARNING: Properly secure children 12 years old and under in a rear seating position whenever possible. If you are unable to properly secure all children in a rear seating position, properly secure the largest child on the front seat. If you must use a forward facing child restraint on the front seat, move the seat as far back as possible. Failure to follow these instructions could result in personal injury or death.

WARNING: Always carefully follow the instructions and warnings provided by the manufacturer of any child restraint to determine if the restraint device is appropriate for your child's size, height, weight, or age. Follow the child restraint manufacturer's instructions and warnings provided for installation and use in conjunction with the instructions and warnings provided by your vehicle manufacturer. A safety seat that is improperly installed or utilized, is inappropriate for your child's height, age, or weight or does not properly fit the child may increase the risk of serious injury or death.

WARNING: Do not allow a passenger to hold a child on their lap when your vehicle is moving. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death in the event of a sudden stop or crash.

WARNING: Do not use pillows, books or towels to boost your child's height. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

WARNING: Properly secure child restraints or booster seats when they are not in use. They could become projectiles in a sudden stop or crash. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

WARNING: Do not put the shoulder section of the seatbelt or allow the child to put the shoulder section of the seatbelt under their arm or behind their back. Failure to follow this instruction could reduce the effectiveness of the seatbelt and increase the risk of injury or death in a crash.

WARNING: Do not leave children or pets unattended in your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

When installing a child restraint with seatbelts:

- Place the vehicle seat in the upright position before you install the child restraint.
- Use the correct seatbelt buckle for that seating position.

- Insert the belt tongue into the buckle. Make sure the tongue is securely fastened in the buckle.
- Keep the buckle release button pointing up and away from the child restraint, with the tongue between the child restraint and the release button, to prevent accidental unbuckling.
- Put the seatbelt in the automatic locking mode.

What Are the Child Restraint Anchor Points

Anchor points allow you to quickly and safely install a child restraint.

Locating the Child Restraint Lower Anchor Points



Locating the Child Restraint Top Tether Anchor Points



Child Restraint Position Information

Install the child restraint tightly against the vehicle seat. It may be necessary to lift or remove the head restraint.
Rear Facing Child Restraints

Combined Weight of Child and Child Restraint	LATCH (Lower Anchors Only)	Seatbelt Only
Up to 65 lb (29 kg)	**X**	**X**
Over 65 lb (29 kg)		**X**

Forward Facing Child Restraints

Combined Weight of Child and Child Restraint	LATCH (Lower Anchors and Top Tether Anchor)	Seatbelt and Top Tether Anchor	Seatbelt and LATCH (Lower Anchors and Top Tether Anchor)
Up to 65 lb (29 kg)	**X**	**X**	**X**
Over 65 lb (29 kg)		**X**	**X**

Child Restraints Recommendation

Child Size, Height, Weight, or Age	Recommended Restraint Type
Children weighing 40 lb (18 kg) or less (generally age four or younger).	Use a child restraint (sometimes called an infant carrier, convertible seat, or toddler seat).
Children who have outgrown or no longer properly fit in a child restraint (generally children who are less than 57 in (1.45 m) tall, are greater than age four and less than age 13, and between 40 lb (18 kg) and 80 lb (36 kg) and upward to 100 lb (45 kg) if recommended by your child restraint manufacturer).	Use a belt-positioning booster seat.
Children who have outgrown or no longer properly fit in a belt-positioning booster seat (generally children who are at least 57 in (1.45 m) tall or greater than 80 lb (36 kg) or 100 lb (45 kg) if recommended by child restraint manufacturer).	Use a vehicle seatbelt having the lap belt snug and low across the hips, shoulder belt centered across the shoulder and chest, and seat backrest upright.

You are required by law to properly use child restraints for infants and toddlers in the United States, Canada and Mexico.
Many states and provinces require that small children use approved booster seats until they reach age eight, a height of 57 in (1.45 m) tall, or 80 lb (36 kg). Check your local and state or provincial laws for specific requirements about the safety of children in your vehicle.
When possible, properly restrain children 13 years of age and under in a rear seating position of your vehicle. Accident statistics suggest that children are safer when properly restrained in the rear seating positions than in a front seating position.
When installing a rear facing child restraint, adjust the vehicle seats to avoid interference between the child restraint and the vehicle seat in front of the child restraint.

Using Seatbelts

WARNING: Depending on where you secure a child restraint, and depending on the child restraint design, you may block access to certain seatbelt buckle assemblies and LATCH lower anchors, rendering those features potentially unusable. To avoid risk of injury, make sure occupants only use seating positions where they are able to be properly restrained.

Note: Although the child restraint illustrated is a forward-facing child restraint, the steps are the same for installing a rear-facing child restraint.
Perform the following steps when installing the child restraint with seatbelts:

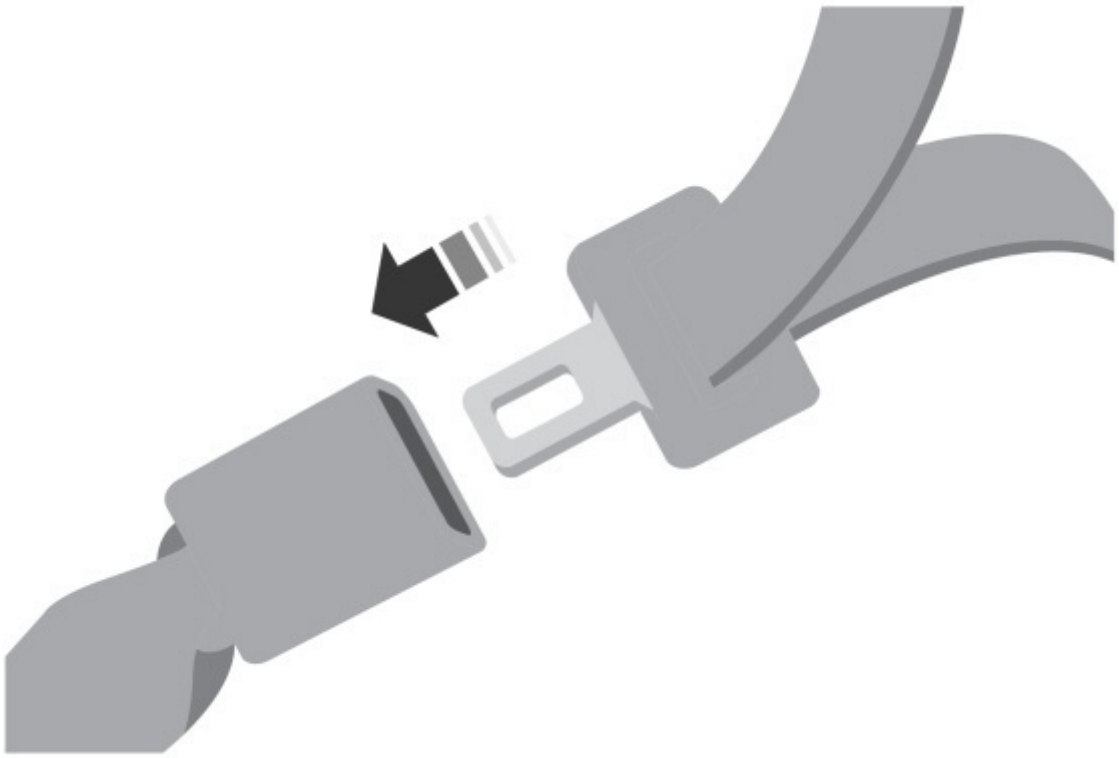
1. Position the child restraint in a seat with a seatbelt.



2. After positioning the child restraint in the proper seating position, pull down on the shoulder belt and then grasp the shoulder belt and lap belt together behind the belt tongue.



3. While holding the shoulder and lap belt portions together, route the tongue through the child restraint according to the child restraint manufacturer's instructions. Make sure that you did not twist the belt webbing.



4. Insert the belt tongue into the proper buckle (the buckle closest to the direction the tongue is coming from) for that seating position until you hear a snap and feel the latch engage. Make sure the tongue is latched securely by pulling on it.



5. To put the retractor in the automatic locking mode, grasp the shoulder portion of the belt and pull downward until you pull all of the belt out.

Note: The automatic locking mode is available on the front passenger and rear seats.

6. Allow the belt to retract to remove slack. The belt clicks as it retracts to indicate it is in the automatic locking mode.

7. Try to pull the belt out of the retractor to make sure the retractor is in the automatic locking mode. You should not be able to pull more belt out. If the retractor did not lock, unbuckle the belt and repeat Steps 5 and 6.



8. Remove remaining slack from the belt. Force the seat down with extra weight, for example, by pressing down or kneeling on the child restraint while pulling up on the shoulder belt in order to force slack from the belt. This is necessary to remove the remaining slack that exists once you add the extra weight of the child to the child restraint. It also helps to achieve the proper snugness of the child restraint to your vehicle. Sometimes, a slight lean toward the buckle will provide extra help to remove remaining slack from the belt.

9. If the child restraint has a tether strap, attach it.



10. Before placing the child in the seat, forcibly move the seat forward and back to make sure the seat is securely held in place. To check this, grab the seat at the belt path and attempt to move it side to side and forward and back. There should be no more than 1 in (2.5 cm) of movement.

We recommend checking with a NHTSA Certified Child Passenger Safety Technician to make certain the child restraint is properly installed. In Canada, check with Transport Canada for referral to a Child Car Seat Clinic.

Using Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children

WARNING: Do not attach two child safety restraints to the same anchor. In a crash, one anchor may not be strong enough to hold two child safety restraint attachments and may break, causing serious injury or death.

WARNING: Depending on where you secure a child restraint, and depending on the child restraint design, you may block access to certain seatbelt buckle assemblies and LATCH lower anchors, rendering those features potentially unusable. To avoid risk of injury, make sure occupants only use seating positions where they are able to be properly restrained.

The LATCH (Lower Anchors and Tethers for CHildren) system has three vehicle anchor points.

- Two lower anchors where the seat backrest and seat cushion meet, called the seat bight.
- One top tether anchor behind that seating position.

LATCH-compatible child restraints have two rigid or webbing mounted attachments that connect to the two lower anchors at the LATCH-equipped seating positions in your vehicle. This type of attachment method eliminates the need to use seatbelts to attach the child restraint.
However, you can still use the seatbelt to attach the child restraint. For forward-facing child restraints, you must also attach the top tether strap to the proper top tether anchor if a top tether strap has been provided with your child restraint.
Follow the instructions on attaching child restraints with tether straps.

Installing a Child Restraint in a Center Seat

WARNING: The standardized spacing for LATCH lower anchors is 11 in (280 mm) center to center. Do not use LATCH lower anchors for the center seating position unless the child restraint manufacturer's instructions permit and specify using anchors spaced at least as far apart as those in this vehicle.

The lower anchors at the center of the second row rear seat are spaced 18 in (46 cm) apart. You cannot install a child restraint with rigid LATCH attachments at the center seating position. You can only use LATCH compatible child restraints with attachments on belt webbing at this seating position provided that the child restraint manufacturer's instructions permit use with the anchor spacing stated. Do not attach a child restraint to any lower anchor if an adjacent child restraint is attached to that anchor.
Each time you use the child restraint, check that the seat is properly attached to the lower anchors and tether anchor, if applicable. Tug the child restraint from side to side and forward and back where it is secured to your vehicle. The seat should move less than 1 in (2.5 cm).
If you did not properly anchor the child restraint, the risk of a child being injured in a crash greatly increases.

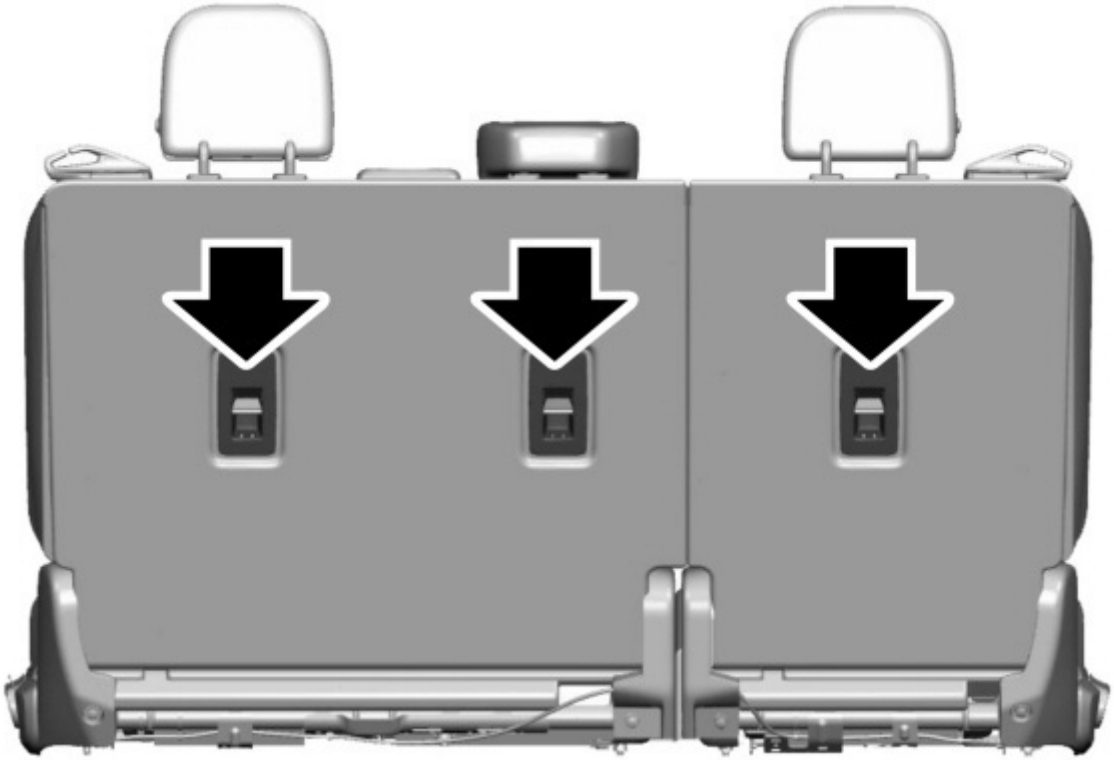
Combining the Seatbelt and Lower Anchors for Attaching Child Restraints

When used in combination, you may attach either the seatbelt or the LATCH lower anchors first, provided a proper installation is achieved. Attach the tether strap afterward, if it is included with the child restraint.

Using Tether Straps

Many forward-facing child restraints include a tether strap which extends from the back of the child restraints and hooks to an anchoring point called the top tether anchor. Tether straps are available as an accessory for many older child restraints.
Contact the manufacturer of your child restraint for information about ordering a tether strap, or to obtain a longer tether strap if the tether strap on your child restraint does not reach the appropriate top tether anchor in your vehicle.
Once you install the child restraint using either the seatbelt, the lower anchors of the LATCH system, or both, you can attach the top tether strap.
Perform the following steps to install a child restraint with tether anchors:
Note: If you install a child restraint with rigid LATCH attachments, do not tighten the tether strap enough to lift the child restraint off your vehicle seat cushion when the child is seated in it. Keep the tether strap just snug without lifting the front of the child restraint. Keeping the child restraint just touching your vehicle seat gives the best protection in a crash.

1. Route the child restraint tether strap over the back of the seat. For the outermost seating positions, route the tether strap under the head restraint and between the head restraint posts. For the center seating positions, route the tether strap over the top of the head restraint. If needed, you can also remove the head restraints.



2. Locate the correct anchor on the back panel of the rear seat for the selected seating position. The anchors are labeled with the tether strap symbol.



3. Clip the tether strap to the anchor as shown.

4. Tighten the child restraint tether strap according to the manufacturer's instructions.

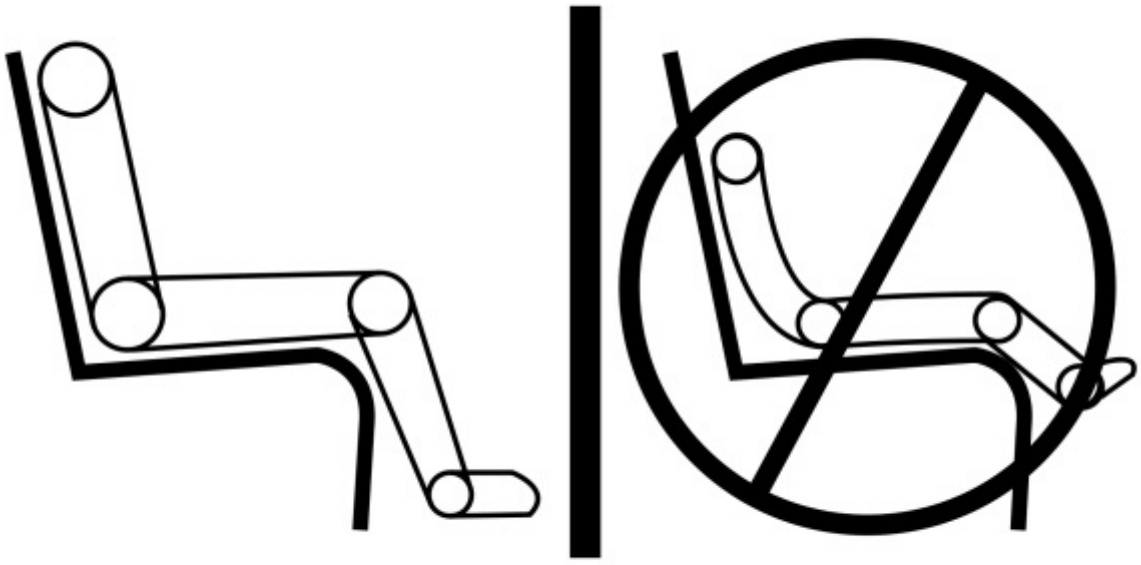
Note: If your child restraint system has a tether strap and the manufacturer recommends its use, we also recommend its use.

Booster Seats

Use a belt-positioning booster seat for children who have outgrown or no longer properly fit in a child restraint and meet the following criteria.

- Generally children who are less than 57 in (1.45 m) tall.
- Are greater than age four (4) and less than age twelve (12).
- Are between 40 lb (18 kg) and 80 lb (36 kg) and upward to 100 lb (45 kg).

Many state and provincial laws require that children use approved booster seats until they reach age eight, a height of 57 in (1.45 m) tall, or 80 lb (36 kg).
Booster seats should be used until you can answer yes to all of these questions when seated without a booster seat:



- Can the child sit all the way back against their vehicle seat backrest with knees bent comfortably at the edge of the seat cushion?
- Can the child sit without slouching?
- Does the lap belt rest low across the hips?
- Is the shoulder belt centered on the shoulder and chest?
- Can the child stay seated like this for the whole trip?

Always use booster seats in conjunction with your vehicle lap and shoulder belt.
Types of Booster Seats



- Backless booster seats

If your backless booster seat has a removable shield, remove the shield.
If a vehicle seating position has a low seat backrest or no head restraint, a backless booster seat may place your child's head, as measured at the tops of the ears, above the top of the seat. In this case, move the backless booster to another seating position with a higher seat backrest or head restraint and lap and shoulder belts, or consider using a high-back booster seat.



- High-back booster seats

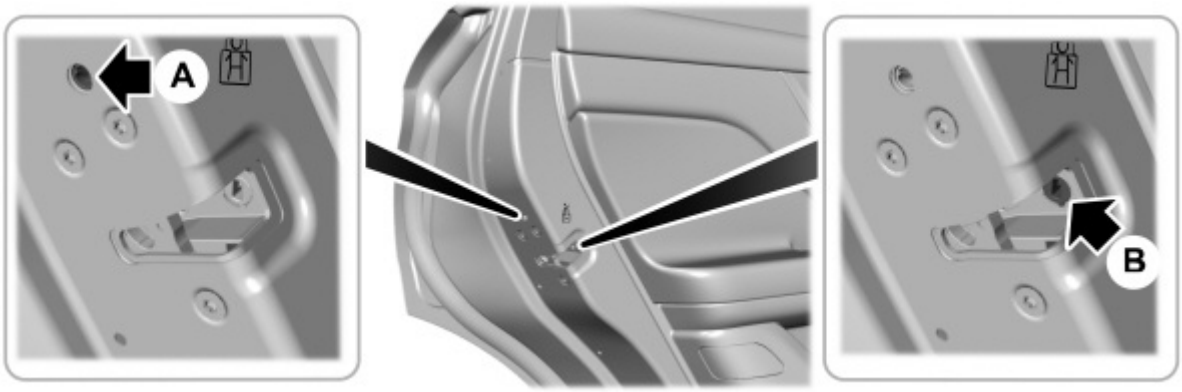
If, with a backless booster seat, you cannot find a seating position that adequately supports your child's head, a high-back booster seat would be a better choice.
Children and booster seats vary in size and shape. Choose a booster that keeps the lap belt low and snug across the hips, never up across the stomach, and lets you adjust the shoulder belt to cross the chest and rest snugly near the center of the shoulder.
The following drawings compare the ideal fit to a shoulder belt uncomfortably close to the neck and a shoulder belt that could slip off the shoulder. The drawings also show how the lap belt should be low and snug across the child's hips.



If the booster seat slides on the vehicle seat upon which it is being used, placing a rubberized mesh sold as shelf or carpet liner under the booster seat may improve this condition. Do not use any item thicker than this under the booster seat. Check with the booster seat manufacturer's instructions.

Child Safety Locks

WARNING: You cannot open the rear doors from inside if you have put the child safety locks on.



A Manual emergency lock. See **Individually Unlocking and Locking the Doors Using the Key Blade**.
B Child safety lock.

A child safety lock is on the rear edge of each rear door.You must switch each child safety lock separately.
Left-Hand Side
Turn it clockwise to switch the child lock on and counterclockwise to switch it off.
Right-Hand Side
Turn it counterclockwise to switch the child lock on and clockwise to switch it off.
Note: To make sure the child safety lock is on, pull the inside door handle twice to verify the door does not open.
Note: To open the rear doors from inside the vehicle when the child lock is engaged, roll down the rear window and use the outside door handle. Or have someone outside the vehicle open the door.

Child Restraint Anchor Points

What Are the Child Restraint Anchor Points

Anchor points allow you to quickly and safely install a child restraint.

Locating the Child Restraint Lower Anchor Points



Locating the Child Restraint Top Tether Anchor Points



Child Restraints

Child Restraint Position Information

Install the child restraint tightly against the vehicle seat. It may be necessary to lift or remove the head restraint.
Rear Facing Child Restraints

Combined Weight of Child and Child Restraint	LATCH (Lower Anchors Only)	Seatbelt Only
Up to 65 lb (29 kg)	**X**	**X**
Over 65 lb (29 kg)		**X**

Forward Facing Child Restraints

Combined Weight of Child and Child Restraint	LATCH (Lower Anchors and Top Tether Anchor)	Seatbelt and Top Tether Anchor	Seatbelt and LATCH (Lower Anchors and Top Tether Anchor)
Up to 65 lb (29 kg)	**X**	**X**	**X**
Over 65 lb (29 kg)		**X**	**X**

Child Restraints Recommendation

Child Size, Height, Weight, or Age	Recommended Restraint Type
Children weighing 40 lb (18 kg) or less (generally age four or younger).	Use a child restraint (sometimes called an infant carrier, convertible seat, or toddler seat).
Children who have outgrown or no longer properly fit in a child restraint (generally children who are less than 57 in (1.45 m) tall, are greater than age four and less than age 13, and between 40 lb (18 kg) and 80 lb (36 kg) and upward to 100 lb (45 kg) if recommended by your child restraint manufacturer).	Use a belt-positioning booster seat.
Children who have outgrown or no longer properly fit in a belt-positioning booster seat (generally children who are at least 57 in (1.45 m) tall or greater than 80 lb (36 kg) or 100 lb (45 kg) if recommended by child restraint manufacturer).	Use a vehicle seatbelt having the lap belt snug and low across the hips, shoulder belt centered across the shoulder and chest, and seat backrest upright.

You are required by law to properly use child restraints for infants and toddlers in the United States, Canada and Mexico.
Many states and provinces require that small children use approved booster seats until they reach age eight, a height of 57 in (1.45 m) tall, or 80 lb (36 kg). Check your local and state or provincial laws for specific requirements about the safety of children in your vehicle.
When possible, properly restrain children 13 years of age and under in a rear seating position of your vehicle. Accident statistics suggest that children are safer when properly restrained in the rear seating positions than in a front seating position.
When installing a rear facing child restraint, adjust the vehicle seats to avoid interference between the child restraint and the vehicle seat in front of the child restraint.

Installing Child Restraints

Using Seatbelts

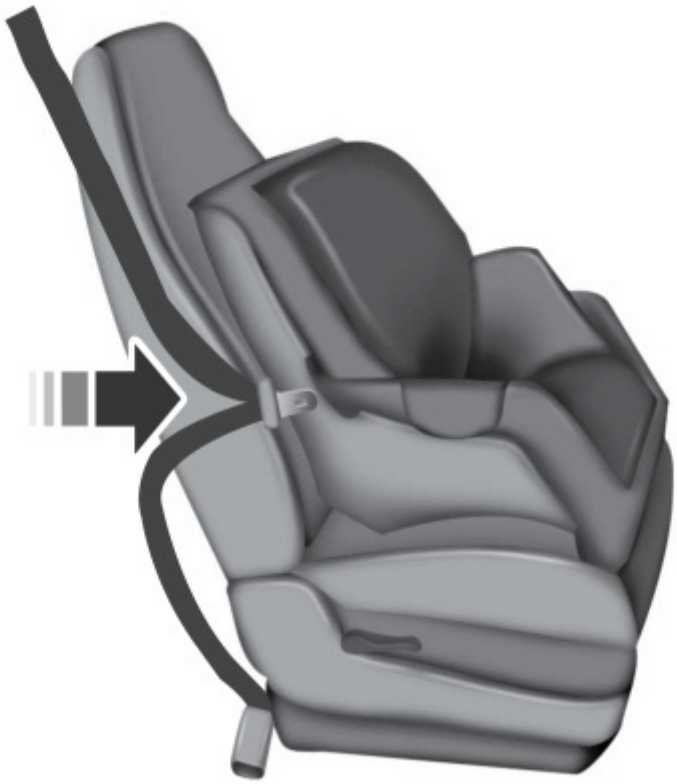
⚠ **WARNING**: Depending on where you secure a child restraint, and depending on the child restraint design, you may block access to certain seatbelt buckle assemblies and LATCH lower anchors, rendering those features potentially unusable. To avoid risk of injury, make sure occupants only use seating positions where they are able to be properly restrained.

Note: Although the child restraint illustrated is a forward-facing child restraint, the steps are the same for installing a rear-facing child restraint.
Perform the following steps when installing the child restraint with seatbelts:

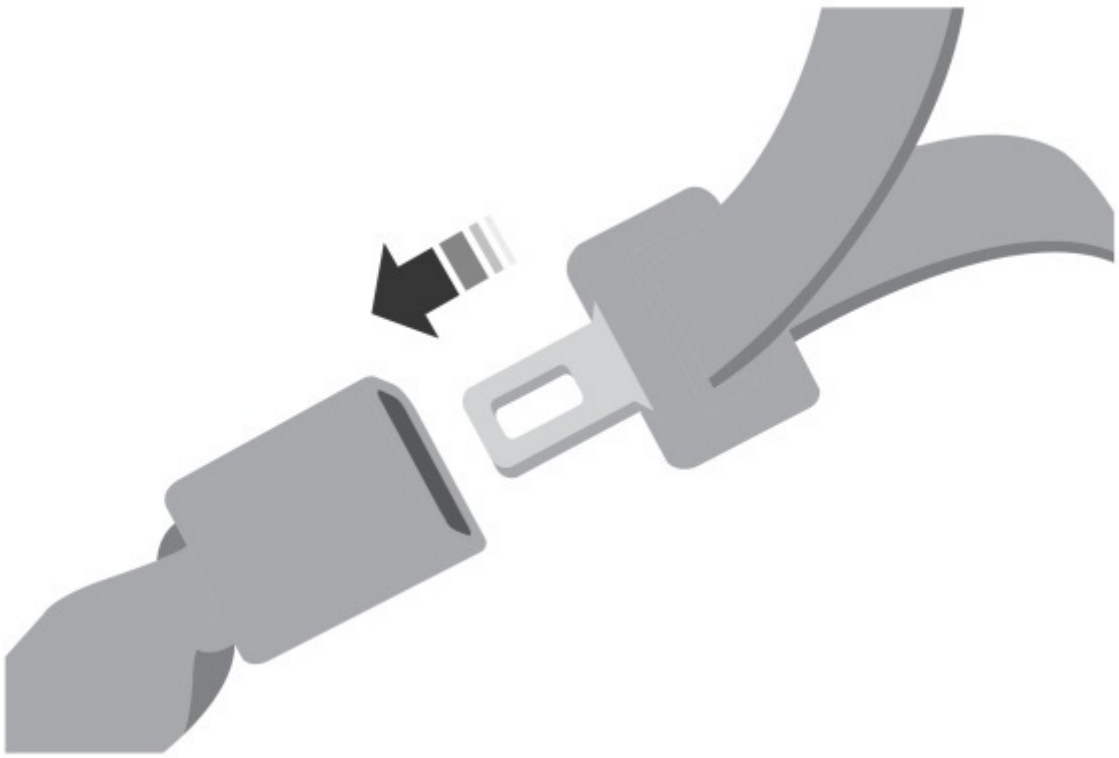
1. Position the child restraint in a seat with a seatbelt.



2. After positioning the child restraint in the proper seating position, pull down on the shoulder belt and then grasp the shoulder belt and lap belt together behind the belt tongue.



3. While holding the shoulder and lap belt portions together, route the tongue through the child restraint according to the child restraint manufacturer's instructions. Make sure that you did not twist the belt webbing.



4. Insert the belt tongue into the proper buckle (the buckle closest to the direction the tongue is coming from) for that seating position until you hear a snap and feel the latch engage. Make sure the tongue is latched securely by pulling on it.



5. To put the retractor in the automatic locking mode, grasp the shoulder portion of the belt and pull downward until you pull all of the belt out.

Note: The automatic locking mode is available on the front passenger and rear seats.

6. Allow the belt to retract to remove slack. The belt clicks as it retracts to indicate it is in the automatic locking mode.

7. Try to pull the belt out of the retractor to make sure the retractor is in the automatic locking mode. You should not be able to pull more belt out. If the retractor did not lock, unbuckle the belt and repeat Steps 5 and 6.



8. Remove remaining slack from the belt. Force the seat down with extra weight, for example, by pressing down or kneeling on the child restraint while pulling up on the shoulder belt in order to force slack from the belt. This is necessary to remove the remaining slack that exists once you add the extra weight of the child to the child restraint. It also helps to achieve the proper snugness of the child restraint to your vehicle. Sometimes, a slight lean toward the buckle will provide extra help to remove remaining slack from the belt.

9. If the child restraint has a tether strap, attach it.



10. Before placing the child in the seat, forcibly move the seat forward and back to make sure the seat is securely held in place. To check this, grab the seat at the belt path and attempt to move it side to side and forward and back. There should be no more than 1 in (2.5 cm) of movement.

We recommend checking with a NHTSA Certified Child Passenger Safety Technician to make certain the child restraint is properly installed. In Canada, check with Transport Canada for referral to a Child Car Seat Clinic.

Using Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children

WARNING: Do not attach two child safety restraints to the same anchor. In a crash, one anchor may not be strong enough to hold two child safety restraint attachments and may break, causing serious injury or death.

WARNING: Depending on where you secure a child restraint, and depending on the child restraint design, you may block access to certain seatbelt buckle assemblies and LATCH lower anchors, rendering those features potentially unusable. To avoid risk of injury, make sure occupants only use seating positions where they are able to be properly restrained.

The LATCH (Lower Anchors and Tethers for CHildren) system has three vehicle anchor points.

- Two lower anchors where the seat backrest and seat cushion meet, called the seat bight.
- One top tether anchor behind that seating position.

LATCH-compatible child restraints have two rigid or webbing mounted attachments that connect to the two lower anchors at the LATCH-equipped seating positions in your vehicle. This type of attachment method eliminates the need to use seatbelts to attach the child restraint.
However, you can still use the seatbelt to attach the child restraint. For forward-facing child restraints, you must also attach the top tether strap to the proper top tether anchor if a top tether strap has been provided with your child restraint.
Follow the instructions on attaching child restraints with tether straps.

Installing a Child Restraint in a Center Seat

WARNING: The standardized spacing for LATCH lower anchors is 11 in (280 mm) center to center. Do not use LATCH lower anchors for the center seating position unless the child restraint manufacturer's instructions permit and specify using anchors spaced at least as far apart as those in this vehicle.

The lower anchors at the center of the second row rear seat are spaced 18 in (46 cm) apart. You cannot install a child restraint with rigid LATCH attachments at the center seating position. You can only use LATCH compatible child restraints with attachments on belt webbing at this seating position provided that the child restraint manufacturer's instructions permit use with the anchor spacing stated. Do not attach a child restraint to any lower anchor if an adjacent child restraint is attached to that anchor.
Each time you use the child restraint, check that the seat is properly attached to the lower anchors and tether anchor, if applicable. Tug the child restraint from side to side and forward and back where it is secured to your vehicle. The seat should move less than 1 in (2.5 cm).
If you did not properly anchor the child restraint, the risk of a child being injured in a crash greatly increases.

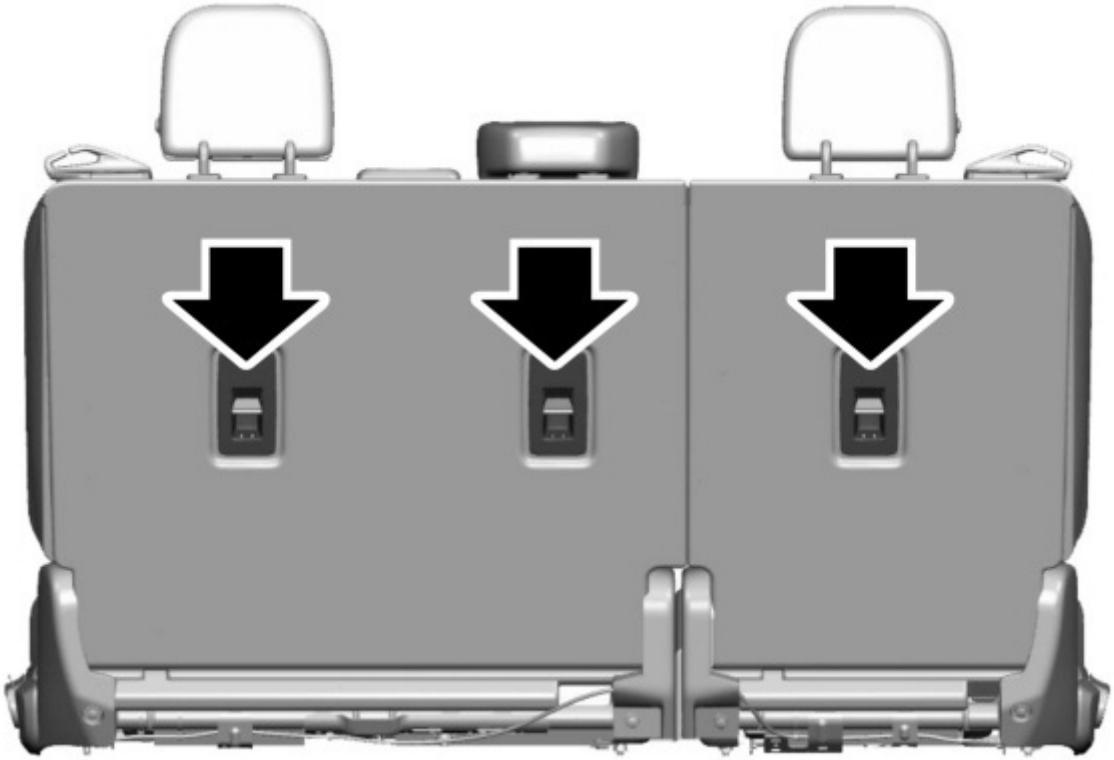
Combining the Seatbelt and Lower Anchors for Attaching Child Restraints

When used in combination, you may attach either the seatbelt or the LATCH lower anchors first, provided a proper installation is achieved. Attach the tether strap afterward, if it is included with the child restraint.

Using Tether Straps

Many forward-facing child restraints include a tether strap which extends from the back of the child restraints and hooks to an anchoring point called the top tether anchor. Tether straps are available as an accessory for many older child restraints.
Contact the manufacturer of your child restraint for information about ordering a tether strap, or to obtain a longer tether strap if the tether strap on your child restraint does not reach the appropriate top tether anchor in your vehicle.
Once you install the child restraint using either the seatbelt, the lower anchors of the LATCH system, or both, you can attach the top tether strap.
Perform the following steps to install a child restraint with tether anchors:
Note: If you install a child restraint with rigid LATCH attachments, do not tighten the tether strap enough to lift the child restraint off your vehicle seat cushion when the child is seated in it. Keep the tether strap just snug without lifting the front of the child restraint. Keeping the child restraint just touching your vehicle seat gives the best protection in a crash.

1. Route the child restraint tether strap over the back of the seat. For the outermost seating positions, route the tether strap under the head restraint and between the head restraint posts. For the center seating positions, route the tether strap over the top of the head restraint. If needed, you can also remove the head restraints.



2. Locate the correct anchor on the back panel of the rear seat for the selected seating position. The anchors are labeled with the tether strap symbol.



3. Clip the tether strap to the anchor as shown.

4. Tighten the child restraint tether strap according to the manufacturer's instructions.

Note: If your child restraint system has a tether strap and the manufacturer recommends its use, we also recommend its use.

Seatbelts

Seatbelt Precautions

WARNING: Always drive and ride with your seatback upright and the lap belt snug and low across the hips.

WARNING: Children must always be properly restrained.

WARNING: Do not allow a passenger to hold a child on their lap when your vehicle is moving. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death in the event of a sudden stop or crash.

WARNING: All occupants of your vehicle, including the driver, should always properly wear their seatbelts, even when an airbag supplemental restraint system is provided. Failure to properly wear your seatbelt could seriously increase the risk of injury or death.

WARNING: It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a crash, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and seatbelts. Make sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and properly using a seatbelt. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

WARNING: In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a seatbelt.

WARNING: Each seating position in your vehicle has a specific seatbelt assembly made up of one buckle and one tongue designed to be used as a pair. Use the shoulder belt on the outside shoulder only. Never wear the shoulder belt under the arm. Never use a single seatbelt for more than one person.

WARNING: Even with advanced restraints systems, properly restrain children 12 and under in a rear seating position. Failure to follow this could seriously increase the risk of injury or death.

WARNING: Seatbelts and seats may be hot in a vehicle that is in the sunshine. The hot seatbelts or seats may burn a small child. Check seat covers and buckles before you place a child anywhere near them.

WARNING: If your vehicle is involved in a crash, have the seatbelts and associated components inspected as soon as possible. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

All seating positions in this vehicle have lap and shoulder seatbelts. All occupants of the vehicle should properly wear their seatbelts, even when an airbag supplemental restraint system is provided.

The seatbelt system consists of:

- Lap and shoulder seatbelts.
- A shoulder seatbelt with automatic locking mode, except driver seatbelt.
- Height adjusters at the front outermost seating positions.
- Seatbelt pretensioners at the front outermost and second row outermost seating positions.
- Belt tension sensor at the front outermost passenger seating position.

A seatbelt warning light and tone.

Crash sensors and monitoring system with readiness indicator.

The seatbelt pretensioners are designed to tighten the seatbelts when activated. In frontal and near-frontal crashes, the seatbelt pretensioners may be activated alone or, if the crash is of sufficient severity, together with the front airbags. The pretensioners may also activate when a Safety Canopy airbag deploys.

Fastening the Seatbelts

All seatbelts in your vehicle are a three-point combination lap and shoulder seatbelt.



A Seatbelt tongue.
B Seatbelt buckle.

1. Pull the seatbelt out steadily.

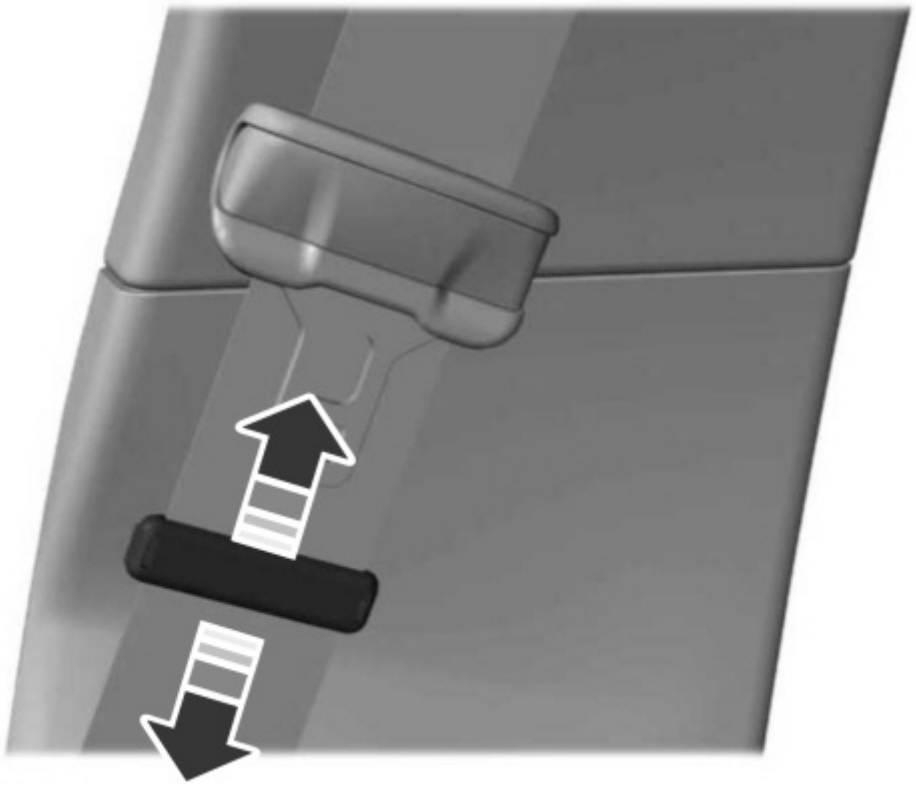
Note: It may lock if you pull it sharply or if the vehicle is on a slope.

2. Insert the tongue into the buckle.
3. Pull the seatbelt tight to remove any slack.

Unfastening the Seatbelts

1. Press the red button on the buckle to release the seatbelt.
2. Hold the seatbelt tongue and let it retract completely and smoothly to its stowed position.

When in use, place the rear seatbelts in the belt guides on the outermost seat backrests.
Using a Sliding Clip (If Equipped)



Slide the clip away from the tongue so there is no loose webbing when an occupant or child seat is buckled. Use the sliding clip to raise the tongue to prevent it from rattling and to access it more easily.

What is Sensitive Locking Mode

Sensitive locking mode is a seatbelt retractor feature that allows shoulder belt length adjustment according to your movements and locking in response to vehicle movement.

How Does Sensitive Locking Mode Work

If the driver suddenly brakes, turns a corner sharply, or the vehicle receives an impact of about 5 mph (8 km/h) or more, the seatbelts lock to help reduce forward movement of the driver and passengers.
In addition, the seatbelt retractor locks if you pull the seatbelt webbing out too quickly. If the retractor locks, slowly lower the height adjuster to allow the seatbelt to retract.
If the retractor does not unlock, pull the seatbelt out slowly then feed a small length of webbing back toward the stowed position.

What Is Automatic Locking Mode

This is a safety feature built into the seatbelt retractors that keeps the seatbelts pre-locked.

Engaging Automatic Locking Mode



1. Fasten the combination lap and shoulder belt.
2. Grasp the shoulder portion and pull downward until you pull the entire belt out.
3. Allow the belt to retract. As the belt retracts, you will hear a clicking sound. This indicates the seatbelt is now in the automatic locking mode.

Disengaging Automatic Locking Mode

Unbuckle the combination lap and shoulder belt and allow it to retract completely to disengage the automatic locking mode and activate the vehicle sensitive locking mode.
Extracting Seatbelts in the Rear Outermost Seat Positions
Seatbelts in the rear outermost positions can lock if you firmly return the seat backrest to its upright position. You can unlock the seatbelts using the following procedures.
For vehicles where the rear seats recline:

1. Recline the seat to its full rear recline position.
2. The seatbelt should then unlock.
3. Return the seat backrest to its desired upright position.

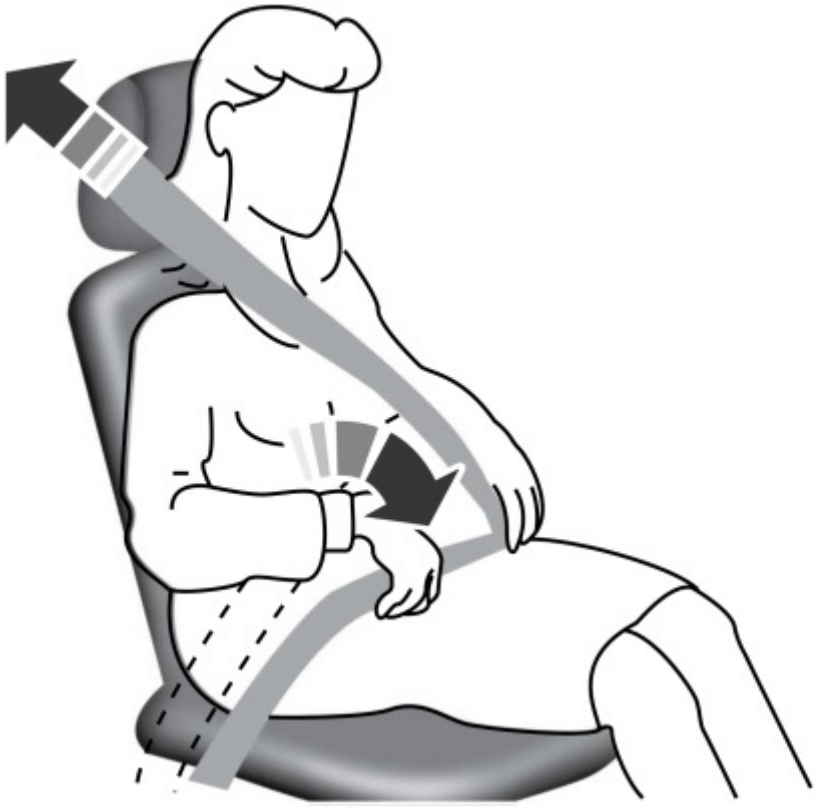
For vehicles with rear seats that do not recline or are locked with the seat in its full rear recline position:

1. Grasp the seatbelt webbing at the top of the seat backrest.
2. Pull the seatbelt webbing forward, firmly.
3. After pulling the seatbelt forward, allow the seatbelt to feed back into the seatbelt retractor as much as possible. If necessary, press the seat backrest down to allow the seatbelt webbing to retract further.

4. The seatbelt should then unlock.
5. If the seatbelt does not unlock, repeat steps 1-3.

Adjusting the Seatbelts During Pregnancy

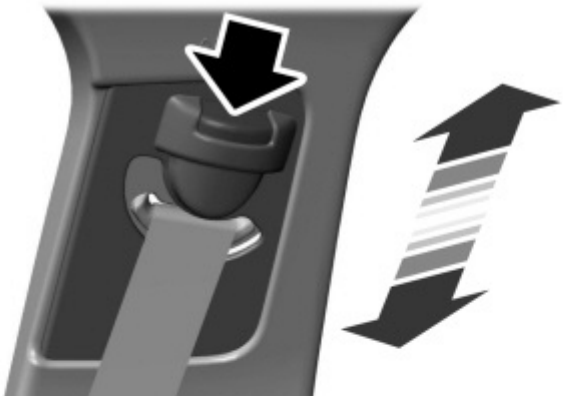
WARNING: Always ride and drive with your seatback upright and properly fasten your seatbelt. Fit the lap portion of the seatbelt snugly and low across the hips. Position the shoulder portion of the seatbelt across your chest. Pregnant women must follow this practice. See the following figure.



Pregnant women should always wear their seatbelt. Position the lap belt portion of a combination lap and shoulder belt low across the hips below the belly and worn as tight as comfort allows. Position the shoulder belt to cross the middle of the shoulder and the center of the chest.

Adjusting the Seatbelt Height

WARNING: Position the seatbelt height adjuster so that the seatbelt rests across the middle of your shoulder. Failure to adjust the seatbelt correctly could reduce its effectiveness and increase the risk of injury in a crash.



1. Press the button and slide the height adjuster up or down.
2. Release the button and pull down on the height adjuster to make sure it is locked in place.

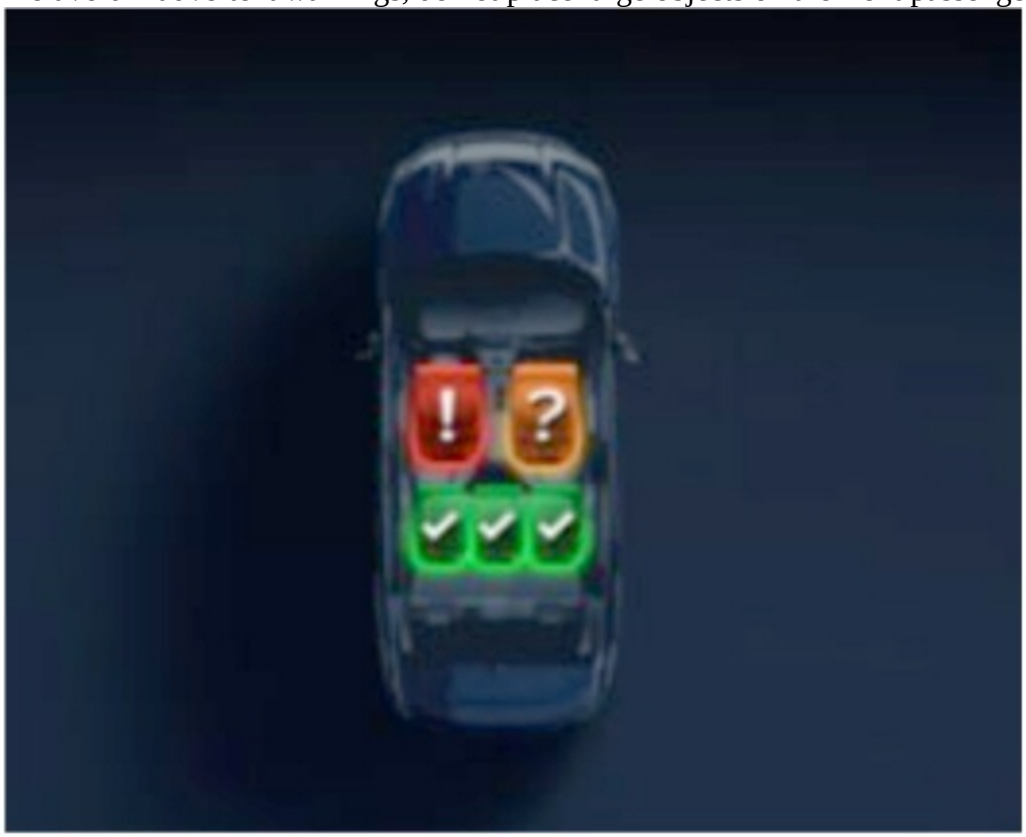
How Does the Seatbelt Reminder Work

WARNING: The system will only provide protection when you use the seatbelt correctly.

This system monitors all seating positions and provides audio and graphic feedback.

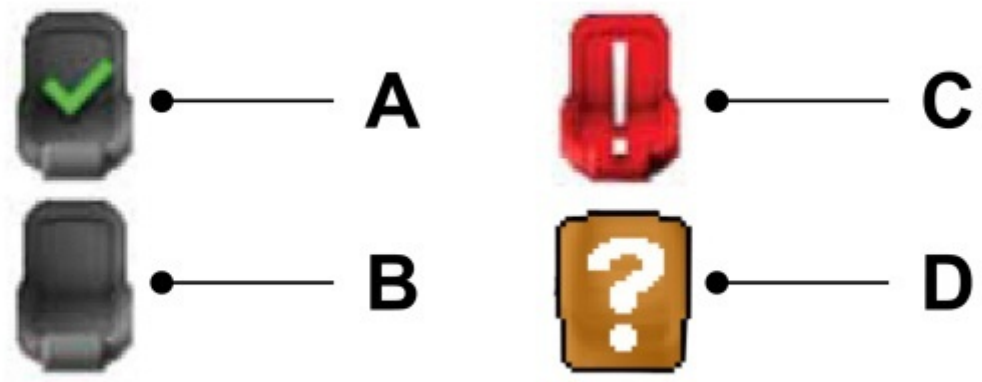
Seatbelt Reminder Indicators

This lamp illuminates if you do not fasten your seatbelt when you switch the ignition on. The lamp switches off when you fasten your seatbelt.
When the initial warning expires for the driver, more warnings are provided for the driver and front passenger. This lamp illuminates if you or your front passenger do not fasten the seatbelt buckle and the vehicle speed exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h).
Note: To avoid inadvertent warnings, do not place large objects on the front passenger seat.



This warning displays if an occupant unfastens the rear seatbelt buckle or it becomes unfastened.
Note: If a rear seat is unoccupied, or an occupant never fastens the seatbelt buckle to begin with, the warning will not display.
Note: Front seating positions appear in this warning display. Warnings for unfastened front seatbelt buckles appear in the initial warning lamp.
Seatbelt Status
To view the seatbelt status, use the information cluster controls on the steering wheel.





A Seatbelt fastened.
B Seatbelt not fastened.
C Seatbelt recently unfastened.
D Fault.

Seatbelt Reminder Audible Warnings

A warning tone sounds and the warning lamp illuminates if you are not wearing your seatbelt when your vehicle exceeds a relatively low speed.
The warning tone sounds for a short period of time or until you fasten your seatbelt.

Switching the Seatbelt Reminder On and Off

WARNING: While the system allows you to deactivate it, this system is designed to improve your chances of being safely belted and surviving an accident. We recommend you leave the system activated for yourself and others who may use the vehicle.

Note: The driver and front passenger warnings switch off independently. When you perform this procedure for one seating position and the other seat is occupied, fasten the other seat.
Read Steps 1 - 4 before proceeding with the programming procedure.

Make sure that:

- You set the parking brake.
- The transmission is in park (P).
- The ignition is off.
- You close all vehicle doors.
- You unfasten the driver and front passenger seatbelts.

1. Start the engine.

2. Wait a short period of time until the seatbelt warning tone switches off. After Step 2, wait an additional five seconds before proceeding with Step 3. Once you start Step 3, complete the procedure within 30 seconds.

3. For the seating position you are switching off, fasten then unfasten the seatbelt four times at a moderate speed ending in the unfastened state. After each unfasten, the seatbelt warning light switches on and off with each fasten.

4. The seatbelt warning light flashes for confirmation.

This switches the feature off for that seating position if it is currently on.
This switches the feature on for that seating position if it is currently off.

Checking the Seatbelts

Check the seatbelts and child restraints periodically to make sure they work properly and are not damaged. Make sure there are no nicks, tears or cuts. Replace if necessary.
Check the following seatbelt assemblies after a crash.

- Retractors.
- Buckles.
- Front seatbelt buckle assemblies.
- Shoulder belt height adjusters.
- Shoulder belt guide on seat backrest.
- Child restraint LATCH and tether anchors.
- Attaching hardware.

Read the child restraint manufacturer's instructions for additional inspection and maintenance information specific to the child restraint.
We recommend that all seatbelt assemblies in use in vehicles involved in a crash be replaced. However, if the crash was minor and an authorized dealer finds that the belts do not show damage and continue to operate properly, they do not need to be replaced. Seatbelt assemblies not in use during a crash should also be checked and replaced if either damage or improper operation is noted.
Properly care for seatbelts. See **Cleaning Seatbelts**.

Seatbelt Extensions

WARNING: Persons who fit into the vehicle's seatbelt should not use an extension. Unnecessary use could result in serious personal injury in the event of a crash.

WARNING: Never use seatbelt extensions to install child restraints.

WARNING: Only use extensions provided by our dealers. The dealer will provide an extension designed specifically for this vehicle and seating position. The use of an extension intended for another vehicle, model year or seating position may not offer you the full protection of your vehicle's seatbelt restraint system.

WARNING: Do not use extensions to change the way the seatbelt fits across the torso, over the lap or to make the seatbelt buckle easier to reach.

If, because of body size or driving position, it is not possible to properly fasten the seatbelt over your lap and shoulder, an extension that is compatible with the seatbelts is available from our dealers. Only use our seatbelt extensions made by the original equipment seatbelt manufacturer with our seatbelts. Ask your authorized dealer if your extension is compatible with your vehicle restraint system.

Sensitive Locking Mode

What is Sensitive Locking Mode

Sensitive locking mode is a seatbelt retractor feature that allows shoulder belt length adjustment according to your movements and locking in response to vehicle movement.

How Does Sensitive Locking Mode Work

If the driver suddenly brakes, turns a corner sharply, or the vehicle receives an impact of about 5 mph (8 km/h) or more, the seatbelts lock to help reduce forward movement of the driver and passengers.
In addition, the seatbelt retractor locks if you pull the seatbelt webbing out too quickly. If the retractor locks, slowly lower the height adjuster to allow the seatbelt to retract.
If the retractor does not unlock, pull the seatbelt out slowly then feed a small length of webbing back toward the stowed position.

Automatic Locking Mode

What Is Automatic Locking Mode

This is a safety feature built into the seatbelt retractors that keeps the seatbelts pre-locked.

Engaging Automatic Locking Mode



1. Fasten the combination lap and shoulder belt.
2. Grasp the shoulder portion and pull downward until you pull the entire belt out.

3. Allow the belt to retract. As the belt retracts, you will hear a clicking sound. This indicates the seatbelt is now in the automatic locking mode.

Disengaging Automatic Locking Mode

Unbuckle the combination lap and shoulder belt and allow it to retract completely to disengage the automatic locking mode and activate the vehicle sensitive locking mode.
Extracting Seatbelts in the Rear Outermost Seat Positions
Seatbelts in the rear outermost positions can lock if you firmly return the seat backrest to its upright position. You can unlock the seatbelts using the following procedures.
For vehicles where the rear seats recline:

1. Recline the seat to its full rear recline position.
2. The seatbelt should then unlock.
3. Return the seat backrest to its desired upright position.

For vehicles with rear seats that do not recline or are locked with the seat in its full rear recline position:

1. Grasp the seatbelt webbing at the top of the seat backrest.
2. Pull the seatbelt webbing forward, firmly.
3. After pulling the seatbelt forward, allow the seatbelt to feed back into the seatbelt retractor as much as possible. If necessary, press the seat backrest down to allow the seatbelt webbing to retract further.
4. The seatbelt should then unlock.
5. If the seatbelt does not unlock, repeat steps 1-3.

Seatbelt Reminder

How Does the Seatbelt Reminder Work

 **WARNING**: The system will only provide protection when you use the seatbelt correctly.

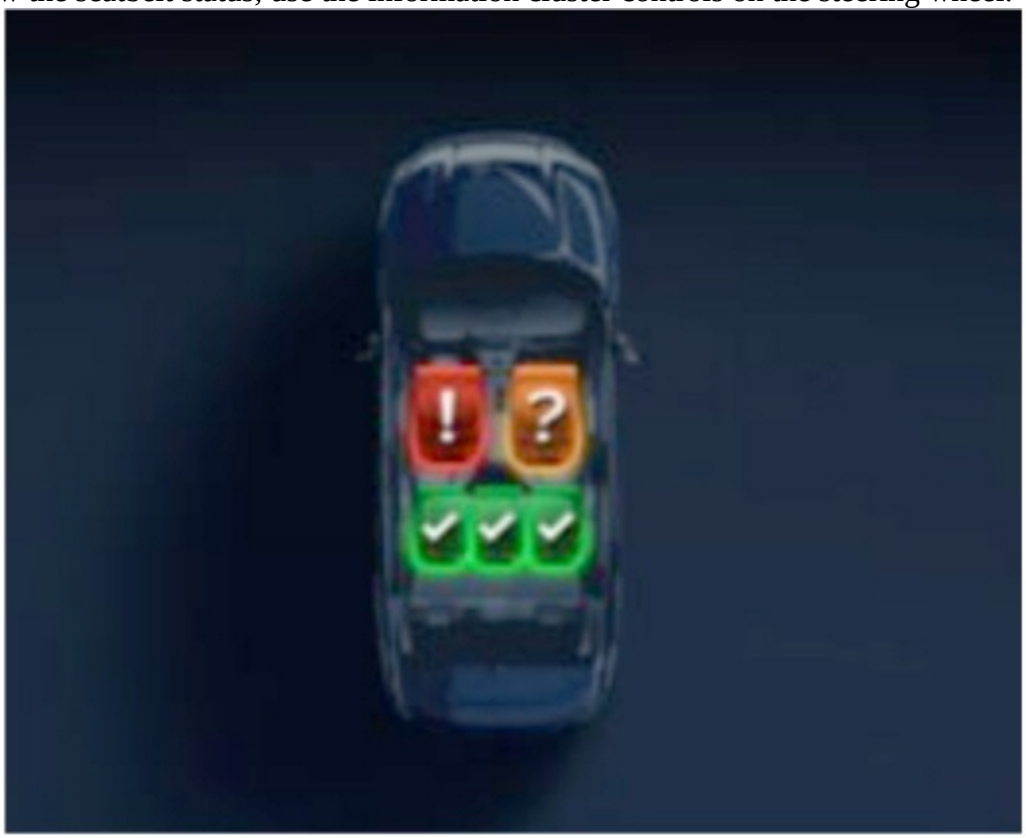
This system monitors all seating positions and provides audio and graphic feedback.

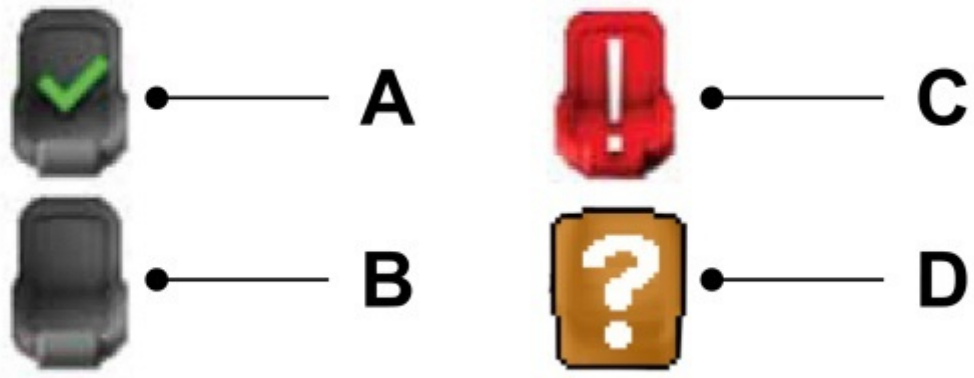
Seatbelt Reminder Indicators

 This lamp illuminates if you do not fasten your seatbelt when you switch the ignition on. The lamp switches off when you fasten your seatbelt.
When the initial warning expires for the driver, more warnings are provided for the driver and front passenger. This lamp illuminates if you or your front passenger do not fasten the seatbelt buckle and the vehicle speed exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h).
Note: To avoid inadvertent warnings, do not place large objects on the front passenger seat.



This warning displays if an occupant unfastens the rear seatbelt buckle or it becomes unfastened.
Note: If a rear seat is unoccupied, or an occupant never fastens the seatbelt buckle to begin with, the warning will not display.
Note: Front seating positions appear in this warning display. Warnings for unfastened front seatbelt buckles appear in the initial warning lamp.
Seatbelt Status
To view the seatbelt status, use the information cluster controls on the steering wheel.





A Image not found or type unknown Seatbelt fastened.
B Image not found or type unknown Seatbelt not fastened.
C Image not found or type unknown Seatbelt recently unfastened.
D Image not found or type unknown Fault.

Seatbelt Reminder Audible Warnings

A warning tone sounds and the warning lamp illuminates if you are not wearing your seatbelt when your vehicle exceeds a relatively low speed.
The warning tone sounds for a short period of time or until you fasten your seatbelt.

Switching the Seatbelt Reminder On and Off

WARNING: While the system allows you to deactivate it, this system is designed to improve your chances of being safely belted and surviving an accident. We recommend you leave the system activated for yourself and others who may use the vehicle.

Note: The driver and front passenger warnings switch off independently. When you perform this procedure for one seating position and the other seat is occupied, fasten the other seat.
Read Steps 1 - 4 before proceeding with the programming procedure.

Make sure that:

- You set the parking brake.
- The transmission is in park (P).
- The ignition is off.
- You close all vehicle doors.
- You unfasten the driver and front passenger seatbelts.

1. Start the engine.
2. Wait a short period of time until the seatbelt warning tone switches off. After Step 2, wait an additional five seconds before proceeding with Step 3. Once you start Step 3, complete the procedure within 30 seconds.
3. For the seating position you are switching off, fasten then unfasten the seatbelt four times at a moderate speed ending in the unfastened state. After each unfasten, the seatbelt warning light switches on and off with each fasten.
4. The seatbelt warning light flashes for confirmation.

This switches the feature off for that seating position if it is currently on.
This switches the feature on for that seating position if it is currently off.

Personal Safety System™

What Is the Personal Safety System

An advanced safety system that protects occupants in frontal crashes.

How Does the Personal Safety System Work

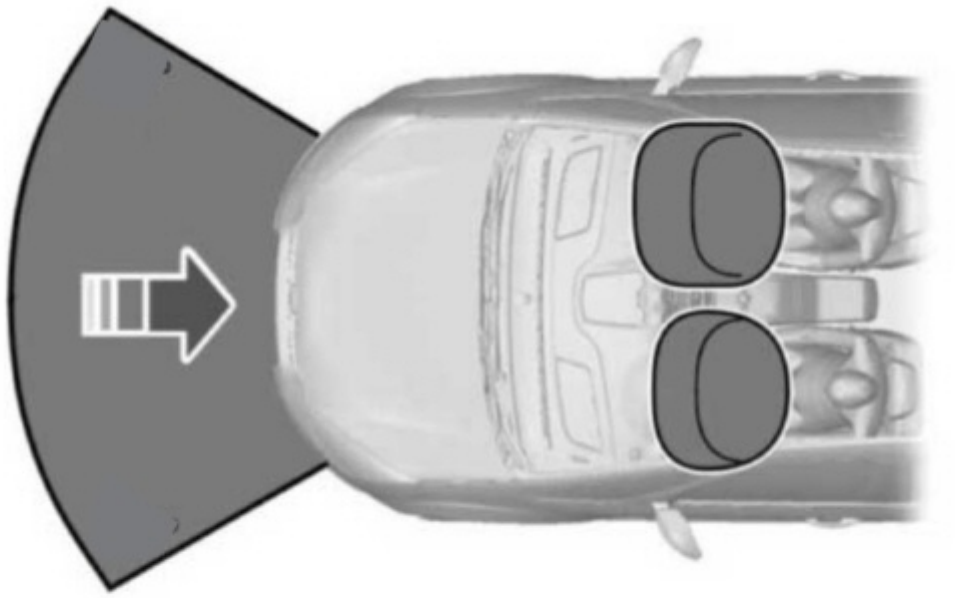
This system provides an improved level of frontal crash protection to front seat occupants and is designed to reduce the risk of airbag-related injuries. The system analyzes occupant conditions and crash severity before activating the appropriate safety devices. During a crash, the restraints control module may deploy the seatbelt pretensioners, and one or both stages of the dual-stage airbags based on crash severity and occupant conditions.

Personal Safety System Components

- Driver and passenger dual-stage airbag supplemental restraints.
- Front seat outermost seatbelts with pretensioners, energy management retractors and seatbelt usage sensors.
- Driver seat position sensor.
- Passenger seat position sensor.
- Front passenger sensing system.
- Passenger airbag off and on indicators.
- Front crash severity sensors.
- Restraints control module with impact and safing sensors.
- Restraint system warning light and tone.
- The electrical wiring for the airbags, crash sensors, seatbelt pretensioners, front seatbelt usage sensors, front passenger sensing system and indicator lights.

Airbags

How Do the Front Airbags Work



The driver and front passenger airbags deploy during significant frontal and near frontal crashes.

The driver and passenger front airbag system consists of:

- Driver and passenger airbag modules.
- Front passenger sensing system.
- Crash sensors and monitoring system with readiness indicator. See **Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator**.

The airbags are a supplemental restraint system and are designed to work with the seatbelts to help protect the driver and right front passenger from certain upper body injuries. Airbags do not inflate slowly; there is a risk of injury from a deploying airbag.

Note: You will hear a loud bang and see a cloud of harmless powdery residue if an airbag deploys. This is normal.

The airbags inflate and deflate rapidly upon activation.After airbag deployment, it is normal to notice a smoke-like, powdery residue or smell the burnt propellant.This may consist of cornstarch, talcum powder (to lubricate the bag) or sodium compounds (for example, baking soda) that result from the combustion process that inflates the airbag.Small amounts of sodium hydroxide may be present which may irritate the skin and eyes, but none of the residue is toxic.

Contact with a deploying airbag may cause abrasions or swelling. Temporary hearing loss is also a possibility as a result of the noise associated with a deploying airbag.

Because airbags must inflate rapidly and with considerable force, there is the risk of death or serious injuries such as fractures, facial and eye injuries or internal injuries, particularly to occupants who are not properly restrained or are otherwise out of position at the time of airbag deployment. Thus, it is extremely important that occupants be properly restrained as far away from the airbag module as possible.

Routine maintenance of the airbags is not required.

How Do the Side Airbags Work

⚠ **WARNING**: Do not place objects or mount equipment on or near the airbag cover, on the side of the front or rear seatbacks, or in areas that may come into contact with a deploying airbag. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of personal injury in the event of a crash.

⚠ **WARNING**: Accessory seat covers not released by the manufacturer of your vehicle could prevent the deployment of the airbags and increase the risk of injuries in a crash.

⚠ **WARNING**: Do not lean your head on the door. The side airbag could injure you as it deploys from the side of the seatback.

hes or rollovers, further



The system

consists of:

- A label or embossed side panel indicating that there are side airbags in your vehicle.
- Side airbags inside the driver and front passenger seat backrests.
- Crash sensors and monitoring system with a readiness indicator. See **Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator**.

How Do the Knee Airbags Work

WARNING: Close the glove box door when your vehicle is moving. Failure to follow this instruction could reduce the effectiveness of the passenger knee airbag and increase the risk of injury in a crash.

A driver knee airbag is under or within the instrument panel. A passenger knee airbag is within or under the glove compartment. During a crash, the restraints control module may activate the driver and passenger knee airbags based on crash severity and occupant conditions. Under certain crash and occupant conditions, the driver and passenger knee airbag may deploy but the front airbags may not activate. As with front and side airbags, it is important to be properly seated and restrained to reduce the risk of death or serious injury.

Make sure the knee airbags are operating properly. See **Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator**.

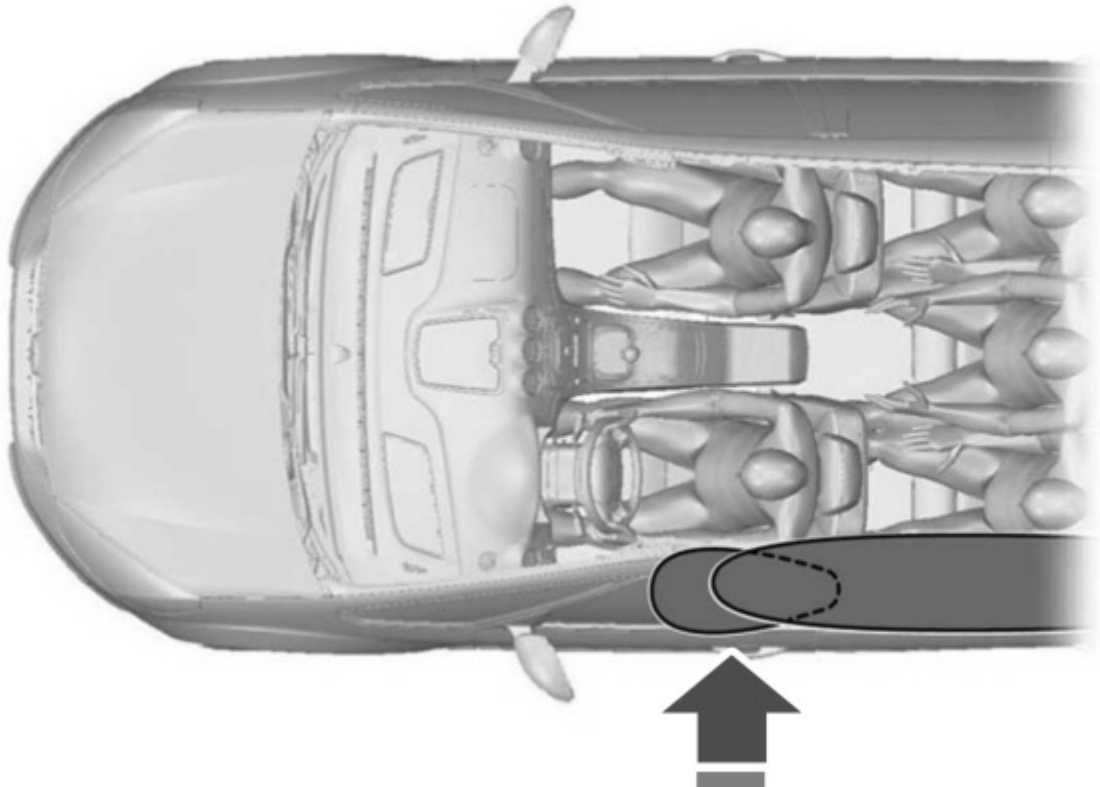
How Does the Safety Canopy™ Work

WARNING: Do not place objects or mount equipment on or near the headliner at the siderail that may come into contact with a deploying curtain airbag. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of personal injury in the event of a crash.

WARNING: Do not lean your head on the door. The curtain airbag could injure you as it deploys from the headliner.

WARNING: To reduce risk of injury, do not obstruct or place objects in the deployment path of the airbag.

The Safety Canopy deploys during significant side crashes or when a certain likelihood of a rollover event is , above each ed, regardless of pants to further



consists of the following:

- Safety Canopy curtain airbags above the trim panels over the front and rear side windows identified by a label or wording on the headliner or roof-pillar trim.
- A flexible headliner which opens above the side doors to allow air curtain deployment

 · Crash sensors and monitoring system with a readiness indicator. See **Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator**.

Properly restrain children 12 years old and under in the rear seats. The Safety Canopy will not interfere with children restrained using a properly installed child or booster seat because it is designed to inflate downward from the headliner above the doors along the side window opening.

Airbag Precautions

WARNING: Airbags do not inflate slowly or gently, and the risk of injury from a deploying airbag is the greatest close to the trim covering the airbag module.

WARNING: All occupants of your vehicle, including the driver, should always properly wear their seatbelts, even when an airbag supplemental restraint system is provided. Failure to properly wear your seatbelt could seriously increase the risk of injury or death.

WARNING: Properly secure children 12 years old and under in a rear seating position whenever possible. If you are unable to properly secure all children in a rear seating position, properly secure the largest child on the front seat. If you must use a forward facing child restraint on the front seat, move the seat as far back as possible. Failure to follow these instructions could result in personal injury or death.

WARNING: Do not place your arms on the airbag cover or through the steering wheel. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

WARNING: Keep the areas in front of the airbags free from obstruction. Do not affix anything to or over the airbag covers. Objects could become projectiles during airbag deployment. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

WARNING: To reduce risk of injury, do not obstruct or place objects in the deployment path of the airbag.

WARNING: Do not place a rearward facing child restraint in front of an active airbag. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

WARNING: Do not attempt to service, repair, or modify the supplementary restraint system or associated components. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

WARNING: Several airbag system components get hot after inflation. To reduce the risk of injury, do not touch them after inflation.

WARNING: If a supplementary restraint system component has deployed, it will not function again. Have the system and associated components inspected as soon as possible. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

Properly Adjusting the Driver and Front Passenger Seats

WARNING: National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) recommends a minimum distance of at least 10 in (25 cm) between an occupant's chest and the driver airbag module.

To properly position yourself away from the airbag:

- Move your seat to the rear as far as you can while still reaching the pedals comfortably.
- Recline the seat slightly one or two degrees from the upright position.

After all occupants have adjusted their seats and put on seatbelts, it is very important that they continue to sit properly. Properly seated occupants sit upright, lean against the seat backrest, and center themselves on the seat cushion, with their feet comfortably extended on the floor. Sitting improperly can increase the chance of injury in a crash event. For example, if an occupant slouches, lies down, turns sideways, sits forward, leans forward or sideways, or puts one or both feet up, the chance of injury during a crash greatly increases.

Children and Airbags

⚠ **WARNING**: Do not place a rearward facing child restraint in front of an active airbag. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



Children must always be properly restrained. Accident statistics suggest that children are safer when properly restrained in the rear seating positions than in the front seating position. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of injury in a crash.

What Is the Front Passenger Sensing System

This system detects a properly seated occupant and determines if the front passenger airbag should be enabled.

How Does the Front Passenger Sensing System Work

The system uses a passenger airbag status indicator which illuminates indicating that the front passenger frontal airbag is either enabled or disabled.

Note: When you first switch the ignition on, the passenger airbag status indicator off and on lamps illuminate for a short period to confirm they are functional.



The indicator lamps are in the overhead console.

The front passenger sensing system is designed to disable the front passenger frontal airbag under these conditions:

- The front passenger seat is unoccupied.
- The system determines an infant is present in a child restraint.
- A passenger takes their weight off of the seat for a period of time.
- If there is a problem with the airbag system or the passenger sensing system.

Even with this technology, parents are strongly encouraged to always properly restrain children in the rear seat.

- When the front passenger sensing system disables the front passenger frontal airbag, the passenger airbag status indicator illuminates the off lamp.
- If you have installed the child restraint and the passenger airbag status indicator illuminates the on lamp, switch your vehicle off, remove the child restraint from your vehicle and reinstall the restraint following the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.

The front passenger sensing system works with sensors that are part of the front passenger seat and seatbelt. The sensors are designed to detect the presence of a properly seated occupant and determine if the front passenger frontal airbag should be enabled.

- When the front passenger sensing system enables the front passenger frontal airbag, the passenger airbag status indicator illuminates the on lamp.

If a person of adult size is sitting in the front passenger seat, but the passenger airbag status indicator off lamp is illuminated, it is possible that the person is not sitting properly in the seat. If this happens:

- Switch your vehicle off and ask the person to place the seat backrest in an upright position.
- Have the person sit upright in the seat, centered on the seat cushion, with the person's legs comfortably extended.
- Restart your vehicle and have the person remain in this position for about two minutes. This allows the system to detect that person and enable the passenger frontal airbag.
- If the indicator off lamp remains illuminated even after this, you should advise the person to ride in the rear seat.

After all occupants have adjusted their seats and put on seatbelts, it is very important that they continue to sit upright, leaning against the seat backrest, and centered on the seat cushion, with their feet comfortably extended on the floor.
Sitting improperly can increase the chance of injury in a crash event. For example, if an occupant slouches, lies down, turns sideways, sits forward, leans forward or sideways, or puts one or both feet up, the chance of injury during a crash greatly increases.

If you think that the state of the passenger airbag status indicator lamp is incorrect, check for the following:

- Objects lodged underneath the seat.
- Objects between the seat cushion and the center console.
- Objects hanging off the seat backrest.
- Objects stowed in the seat backrest map pocket.
- Objects placed on the occupant's lap.
- Cargo interference with the seat
- Other passengers pushing or pulling on the seat.
- Rear passenger feet and knees resting or pushing on the seat.

The listed conditions could cause the weight of a properly seated occupant to be incorrectly interpreted by the front passenger sensing system. The person in the front passenger seat could appear heavier or lighter due to the conditions listed.

 Make sure the front passenger sensing system is operating properly. See **Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator**.

If the airbag readiness light is on, do the following:

- Pull your vehicle over.
- Switch your vehicle off.
- Check for any objects lodged underneath the front passenger seat or cargo interfering with the seat.
- Remove the obstruction if found.
- Restart your vehicle.
- Wait at least two minutes and verify that the airbag readiness light in the instrument cluster is no longer illuminated.
- If the airbag readiness light in the instrument cluster remains illuminated, there may be a problem due to the front passenger sensing system.

Do not attempt to repair or service the system. Take your vehicle in for service immediately.

If it is necessary to modify an advanced front airbag system to accommodate a person with disabilities, contact your Customer Relationship Center. See **Contacting Us**.

Front Passenger Sensing System Precautions

WARNING: Sitting improperly, out of position or with the seatback reclined too far can take weight off the seat cushion and affect the decision of the passenger sensing system, resulting in serious injury or death in the event of a crash. Always sit upright against your seat back, with your feet on the floor.

WARNING: Any alteration or modification to the front passenger seat may affect the performance of the front passenger sensing system. This could seriously increase the risk of injury or death.

WARNING: Do not place objects under the front passenger seat or between the seat and the center console. Failure to follow this instruction may interfere with the front passenger seat sensing system and increase the risk of injury or death in a crash.

WARNING: Check the passenger airbag indicator lamp for proper airbag status. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

Front Passenger Sensing System Indicators

Occupant	Passenger Airbag Status Indicator	Passenger Airbag

Empty	OFF: Illuminated	Disabled
	ON: Not Illuminated	
Child	OFF: Illuminated	Disabled
	ON: Not Illuminated	
Adult	OFF: Not Illuminated	Enabled
	ON: Illuminated	

Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator

WARNING: Modifying or adding equipment to the front of your vehicle could affect the performance of the airbag system, increasing the risk of injury. This includes the hood, bumper system, frame, front body structure, tow hooks, hood pins, push bar and snowplows.

Your vehicle has a collection of crash and occupant sensors. These sensors provide information to the restraints control module which activates the following:

- Front and rear seatbelt pretensioners.
- Driver airbag.
- Passenger airbag.
- Knee airbag(s).
- Seat mounted side airbags.
- Safety Canopy.

Based on the type of crash, the restraints control module deploys the appropriate safety devices.
The restraints control module also monitors the readiness of the above safety devices plus the crash and occupant sensors. The readiness of the safety system is indicated by a warning indicator light in the instrument cluster or by a backup tone if the warning light is not working. Routine maintenance of the airbag is not required.
A difficulty with the system is indicated by one or more of the following:

The readiness light will not illuminate immediately after you switch the ignition on.

- The readiness light either flashes or stays on.
- You hear a series of five tones. The tone pattern repeats periodically until the problem, the light or both are repaired.

If any of these things happen, even intermittently, have the supplemental restraint system serviced immediately. Unless serviced, the system may not function properly in the event of a crash.

The fact that the seatbelt pretensioners or front airbags did not activate for both front seat occupants in a crash does not mean that something is wrong with the system. Rather, it means the restraints control module determined the accident conditions (crash severity, seatbelt usage) were not appropriate to activate these safety devices.

- The front airbags activate only in frontal and near-frontal crashes. Front airbags may activate in rollovers, side impacts or rear impacts if the crash causes sufficient frontal deceleration.
- The seatbelt pretensioners activate in frontal, near-frontal and side crashes, and in rollovers.
- The knee airbag(s) deploy based on crash severity and occupant conditions.
- The side airbags inflate in certain side impact crashes or rollover events. Side airbags may activate in other types of crashes if the vehicle experiences sufficient sideways motion or deformation.

- The Safety Canopy inflates in certain side impact crashes or rollover events. The Safety Canopy may activate in other types of crashes if the vehicle experiences sufficient sideways motion or deformation, or a certain likelihood of rollover.

Disposing of Airbags

Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible. Airbags must be disposed of by qualified personnel.

Front Passenger Sensing System

What Is the Front Passenger Sensing System

This system detects a properly seated occupant and determines if the front passenger airbag should be enabled.

How Does the Front Passenger Sensing System Work

The system uses a passenger airbag status indicator which illuminates indicating that the front passenger frontal airbag is either enabled or disabled.
Note: When you first switch the ignition on, the passenger airbag status indicator off and on lamps illuminate for a short period to confirm they are functional.



The indicator lamps are in the overhead console.

The front passenger sensing system is designed to disable the front passenger frontal airbag under these conditions:

- The front passenger seat is unoccupied.
- The system determines an infant is present in a child restraint.
- A passenger takes their weight off of the seat for a period of time.
- If there is a problem with the airbag system or the passenger sensing system.

Even with this technology, parents are strongly encouraged to always properly restrain children in the rear seat.

- When the front passenger sensing system disables the front passenger frontal airbag, the passenger airbag status indicator illuminates the off lamp.
- If you have installed the child restraint and the passenger airbag status indicator illuminates the on lamp, switch your vehicle off, remove the child restraint from your vehicle and reinstall the restraint following the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.

The front passenger sensing system works with sensors that are part of the front passenger seat and seatbelt. The sensors are designed to detect the presence of a properly seated occupant and determine if the front passenger frontal airbag should be enabled.

- When the front passenger sensing system enables the front passenger frontal airbag, the passenger airbag status indicator illuminates the on lamp.

If a person of adult size is sitting in the front passenger seat, but the passenger airbag status indicator off lamp is illuminated, it is possible that the person is not sitting properly in the seat. If this happens:

- Switch your vehicle off and ask the person to place the seat backrest in an upright position.
- Have the person sit upright in the seat, centered on the seat cushion, with the person's legs comfortably extended.
- Restart your vehicle and have the person remain in this position for about two minutes. This allows the system to detect that person and enable the passenger frontal airbag.
- If the indicator off lamp remains illuminated even after this, you should advise the person to ride in the rear seat.

After all occupants have adjusted their seats and put on seatbelts, it is very important that they continue to sit upright, leaning against the seat backrest, and centered on the seat cushion, with their feet comfortably extended on the floor.
Sitting improperly can increase the chance of injury in a crash event. For example, if an occupant slouches, lies down, turns sideways, sits forward, leans forward or sideways, or puts one or both feet up, the chance of injury during a crash greatly increases.

If you think that the state of the passenger airbag status indicator lamp is incorrect, check for the following:

- Objects lodged underneath the seat.
- Objects between the seat cushion and the center console.
- Objects hanging off the seat backrest.
- Objects stowed in the seat backrest map pocket.
- Objects placed on the occupant's lap.
- Cargo interference with the seat
- Other passengers pushing or pulling on the seat.
- Rear passenger feet and knees resting or pushing on the seat.

The listed conditions could cause the weight of a properly seated occupant to be incorrectly interpreted by the front passenger sensing system. The person in the front passenger seat could appear heavier or lighter due to the conditions listed.

 Make sure the front passenger sensing system is operating properly. See **Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator**.
If the airbag readiness light is on, do the following:

- Pull your vehicle over.
- Switch your vehicle off.
- Check for any objects lodged underneath the front passenger seat or cargo interfering with the seat.
- Remove the obstruction if found.
- Restart your vehicle.
- Wait at least two minutes and verify that the airbag readiness light in the instrument cluster is no longer illuminated.
- If the airbag readiness light in the instrument cluster remains illuminated, there may be a problem due to the front passenger sensing system.

Do not attempt to repair or service the system. Take your vehicle in for service immediately.
If it is necessary to modify an advanced front airbag system to accommodate a person with disabilities, contact your Customer Relationship Center. See **Contacting Us**.

Front Passenger Sensing System Precautions

WARNING: Sitting improperly, out of position or with the seatback reclined too far can take weight off the seat cushion and affect the decision of the passenger sensing system, resulting in serious injury or death in the event of a crash. Always sit upright against your seat back, with your feet on the floor.

WARNING: Any alteration or modification to the front passenger seat may affect the performance of the front passenger sensing system. This could seriously increase the risk of injury or death.

WARNING: Do not place objects under the front passenger seat or between the seat and the center console. Failure to follow this instruction may interfere with the front passenger seat sensing system and increase the risk of injury or death in a crash.

WARNING: Check the passenger airbag indicator lamp for proper airbag status. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

Front Passenger Sensing System Indicators

Occupant	Passenger Airbag Status Indicator	Passenger Airbag
Empty	OFF: Illuminated	Disabled
	ON: Not Illuminated	
Child	OFF: Illuminated	Disabled
	ON: Not Illuminated	
Adult	OFF: Not Illuminated	Enabled
	ON: Illuminated	

Pedestrian Alert System - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)

What Is the Pedestrian Alert System

Due to the quiet operation of hybrid and electric vehicles at low speeds, the system creates a subtle sound to alert pedestrians.
The system is on when your vehicle is running and not in park (P). Some sound may be audible in the passenger compartment.

911 Assist (If Equipped)

What Is 911 Assist

911 Assist is a SYNC system feature that can call for help.
For more information, visit www.owner.ford.com.

How Does 911 Assist Work

If a crash deploys an airbag, excluding knee airbags and rear inflatable seatbelts, or activates the fuel pump shut-off, your vehicle may be able to contact emergency services by dialing 911 through a paired and connected Bluetooth® enabled phone.
Not all crashes deploy an airbag or activate the fuel pump shut-off. If a connected cell phone sustains damage or loses its connection to SYNC during a crash, SYNC searches for and tries to connect to a previously paired cell phone. SYNC then attempts to call the emergency services.

Before making the call:

- SYNC provides about 10 seconds to cancel the call. If you fail to cancel the call, SYNC attempts to dial 911.
- SYNC says the following, or a similar message: SYNC will attempt to call 911, to cancel the call, press Cancel on your screen or press and hold the phone button on your steering wheel.

If you do not cancel the call and SYNC makes a successful call a pre-recorded message plays for the 911 operator. The occupants in your vehicle are able to talk with the operator. Be prepared to provide your name, phone number and location immediately because not all 911 systems are capable of receiving this information electronically.
During an emergency call the system transmits vehicle data to the emergency service.

Emergency Call Requirements

WARNING: Do not wait for 911 Assist to make an emergency call if you can do it yourself. Dial emergency services immediately to avoid delayed response time which could increase the risk of serious injury or death after a crash. If you do not hear 911 Assist within five seconds of the crash, the system or phone may be damaged or non-functional.

WARNING: Always place your phone in a secure location in your vehicle so it does not become a projectile or get damaged in a crash. Failure to do so may cause serious injury to someone or damage the phone which could prevent 911 Assist from working properly.

WARNING: Unless the 911 Assist setting is set on before a crash, the system will not dial for help which could delay response time, potentially increasing the risk of serious injury or death after a crash.

- SYNC must be powered and working properly at the time of the incident and throughout feature activation and use.
- The 911 Assist feature must be set on before the incident.
- You must pair and connect a Bluetooth® enabled and compatible cell phone to SYNC.
- A connected Bluetooth® enabled phone must have the ability to make and maintain an outgoing call at the time of the incident.
- A connected Bluetooth® enabled phone must have adequate network coverage, battery power and signal strength.
- The vehicle must have battery power and be located in the U.S., Canada or in a territory in which 911 is the emergency number.

Note: If any user sets 911 Assist to on or off, that setting applies for all paired phones. If 911 Assist is switched off and the phone is connected to SYNC, an icon displays on the status bar.
Note: Every phone operates differently. While SYNC 911 Assist works with most cellular phones, some may have trouble using this feature.

Emergency Call Limitations

The SYNC 911 Assist feature only operates in the U.S., Canada or in a territory in which 911 is the emergency number.

- Your cellular phone or 911 Assist hardware sustains damage in a crash.
- The vehicle's battery or the SYNC system has no power.
- The phone(s) thrown from your vehicle are the ones paired and connected to the system.

Keys and Remote Controls

Remote Control Limitations

WARNING: Changes or modifications not expressively approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term "IC:" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Industry Canada license-exempt RSS standard(s).Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.
Make sure a valid remote control is within 3 ft (1 m) from the front door handles and rear of vehicle.

The system may not function if:

- The remote control remains stationary for about a minute.
- The vehicle battery has no charge.
- The remote control battery has no charge.
- There is interference causing issues with the remote control frequencies.
- The remote control is too close to metal objects or electronic devices, for example keys or a cell phone.

Using the Remote Control

WARNING: Do not leave a key or remote control unattended in the vehicle. Children or pets could operate the power windows, moonroof or other controls. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

Use your remote control to access various vehicle systems.
Note: The buttons on your remote may vary depending on the vehicle region or options.
Unlock
 Press the button to unlock all doors.See **Unlocking and Locking the Doors Using the Remote Control**.
Lock
 Press the button to lock all doors.See **Unlocking and Locking the Doors Using the Remote Control**.
Remote Start (If Equipped)

Press the button twice within three seconds to remote start. See **Using Remote Start - Vehicles With: Remote Control**.

Opening and Closing the Liftgate

Press the button twice within three seconds to open and close the liftgate. See Opening the Liftgate Using the Remote Control .

Panic Alarm (If Equipped)

Press the button to sound the panic alarm.See **Sounding the Panic Alarm**.

Removing the Key Blade



Push the release button on your passive key and pull the key blade out.

Sounding the Panic Alarm

Press the button to sound the panic alarm. Press the button again or switch the ignition on to turn it off.

Note: The panic alarm only operates when the ignition is off.

Locating Your Vehicle

Press the lock button twice within three seconds.The turn signal lamps flash.We recommend you use this method to locate your vehicle.

Changing the Remote Control Battery

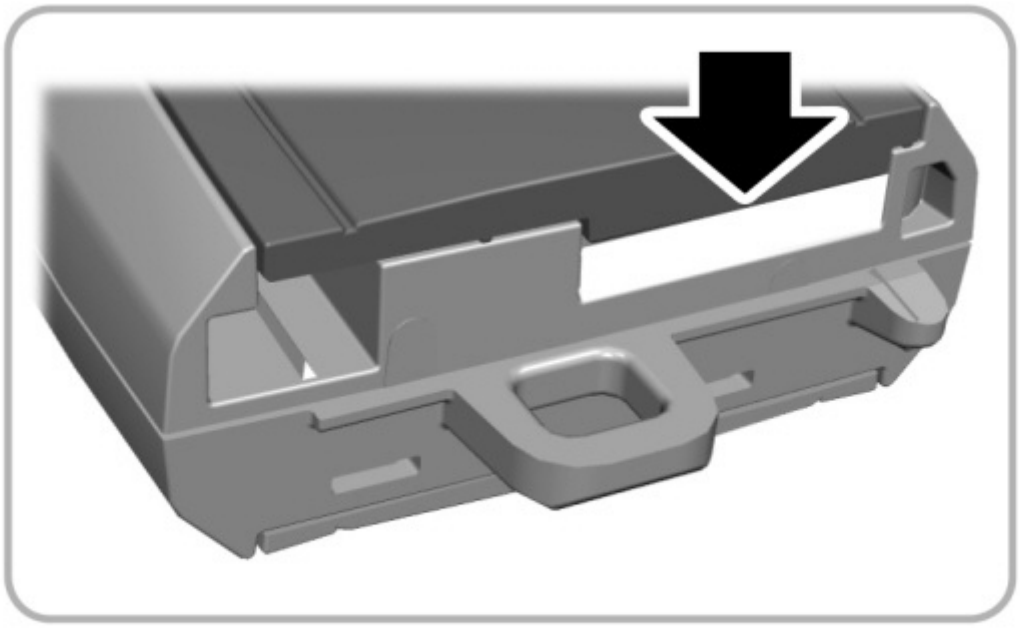
WARNING: Keep batteries away from children to prevent ingestion. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death. If ingested, immediately seek medical attention.

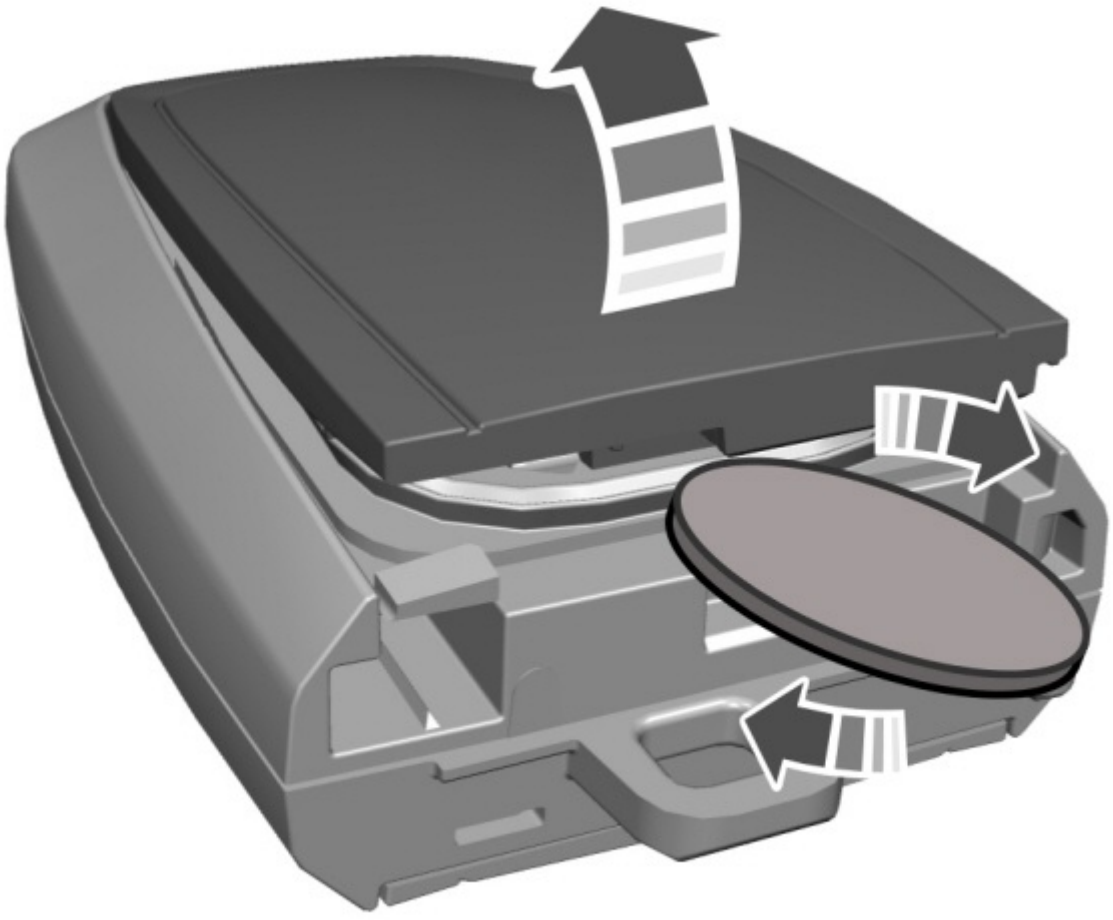
WARNING: If the battery compartment does not securely close, stop using the remote control and replace it as soon as possible. In the meantime, keep the remote control away from children. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

The remote control uses one coin-type 3-volt lithium battery CR2450 or equivalent.

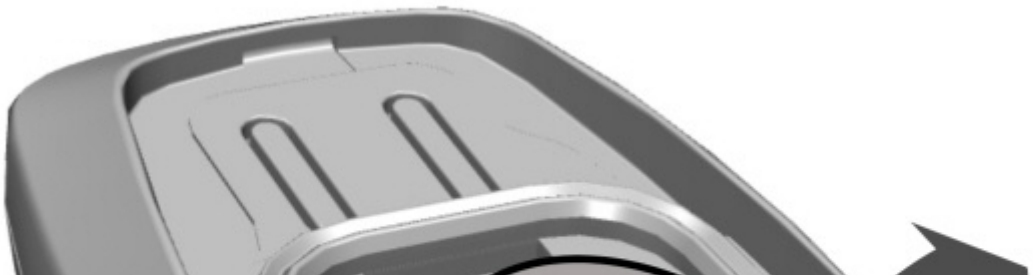


1. Push the release button and pull the key blade out.





2. Twist a thin coin under the tab hidden behind the key blade head to remove the battery cover.



3. Insert a screwdriver, and carefully remove the battery.
4. Install a new battery with the + facing upward.
5. Reinstall the battery housing cover onto the transmitter and install the key blade.

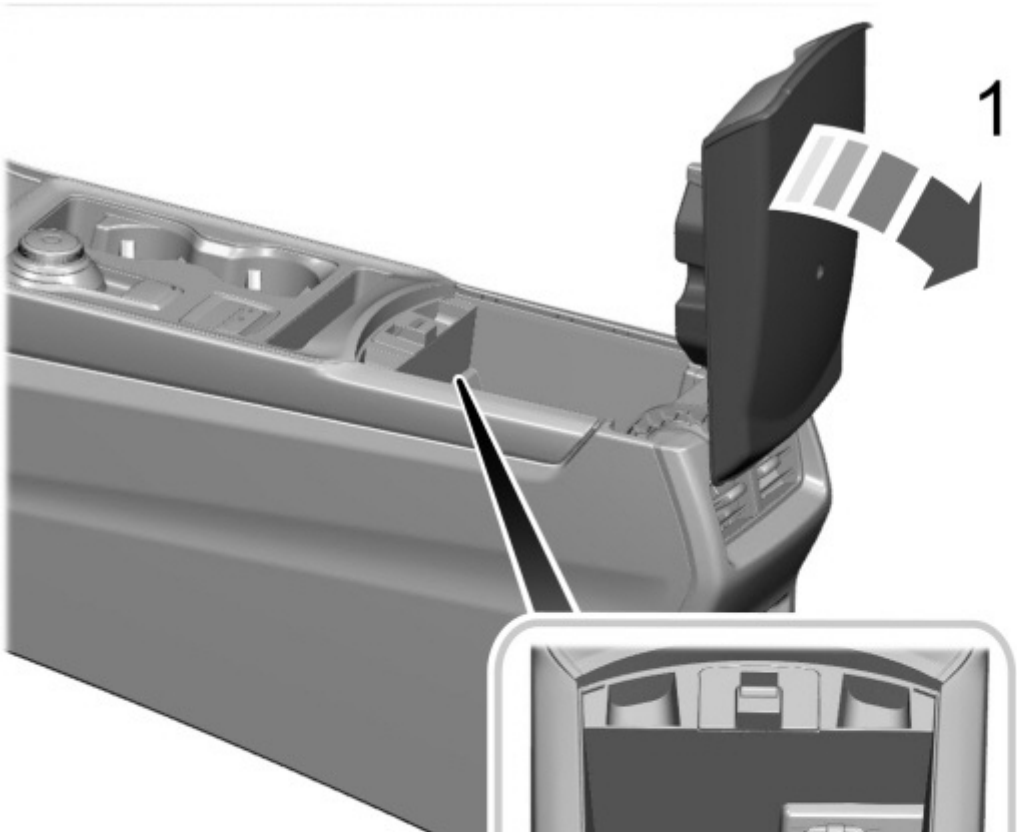
 Dispose of old batteries in an environmentally friendly way. Seek advice from your local authority about recycling old batteries.
Note: Do not wipe off any grease on the battery terminals or on the back surface of the circuit board.
Note: Replacing the battery does not erase the programmed key from your vehicle.The remote control should operate normally.

Replacing a Lost Key or Remote Control

You can purchase replacement keys or remote controls from an authorized dealer. Authorized dealers can program remote controls for your vehicle.

Programming the Remote Control

Note: You can program a maximum of four remote controls to your vehicle.
Note: If your programmed remote controls are lost or stolen and you do not have an extra coded remote, you need to have your vehicle towed to an authorized dealer. Store an extra programmed remote away from your vehicle in a safe place to help prevent any inconvenience. Contact an authorized dealer to purchase additional spare or replacement remotes.
You must have two previously programmed remote controls inside your vehicle and the new unprogrammed remote controls readily accessible. Contact an authorized dealer to have the spare remote control programmed if two previously programmed remotes are not available.Make sure that your vehicle is off before beginning this procedure. Make sure that you close all the doors before beginning and that they remain closed throughout the procedure.Perform all steps within 30 seconds of starting the sequence.Stop and wait for at least one minute before starting again if you perform any steps out of sequence.
Read and understand the entire procedure before you begin.
Programming Backup Location



1. Open the center console lid (1).
2. Place the first programmed remote in the backup slot inside the center console (2), with your foot off the brake pedal press and release the push button ignition switch.
3. Wait a few seconds and then press and release the push button ignition switch again.
4. Remove the remote control.
5. Within 10 seconds, place a second programmed remote control in the backup slot.Press and release the push button ignition switch.
6. Wait a few seconds and then press and release the push button ignition switch again.Keep the ignition on for a few seconds, but no more than 10 seconds.
7. Remove the remote control.
8. Place the unprogrammed remote control in the backup slot and press and release the push button ignition switch.

Programming is now complete.With your foot on the brake pedal press the push button ignition switch to verify the remote control functions operate and your vehicle starts with the new remote control.
If programming was not successful, wait 10 seconds and repeat Steps 1 through 7. If you are still unsuccessful, contact an authorized dealer to program remote controls for your vehicle.

Keys and Remote Controls Audible Warnings

Key In Reminder
Sounds when the following conditions are met:

- Vehicle is out of park (P).
- You switch the vehicle off.
- You open the driver's door.
- You have left the key inside the vehicle.

Using the Valet Mode

What is Valet Mode
The valet mode allows you to limit the access of some features on the touchscreen.
Classic Valet Mode
Enabling Classic Valet Mode
Make sure the remote control is in your vehicle.

1. From the settings menu, press Valet Mode. See **Center Display**.
2. Enter a four digit code of your choice to lock the touchscreen.
3. Re-enter the same four digit code to complete enabling valet mode.

Disabling Classic Valet Mode

1. Press Exit Valet Mode.

2. Enter your four digit code to disable valet mode and unlock the touchscreen.

Enhanced Valet Mode
Enabling Enhanced Valet Mode
Have your backup start passcode completely set up before using valet mode. See **Programming Your Phone**.
Note: If your vehicle detects a remote control, the system defaults to classic valet mode.

1. From the settings menu, press Valet Mode. See **Center Display**.

Note: If the system detects a valid phone as a key, a valet passcode displays on both the touchscreen and the Ford app.
Note: If the system does not detect a valid phone as a key, it prompts you to enter your backup start passcode on the touchscreen. Once validated, a valet passcode displays on the touchscreen.

2. Provide the valet the first five digits of the valet passcode to enter on the keyless entry keypad to unlock your vehicle.

3. Provide the valet the eight-digit valet passcode to enter on the touchscreen to start and drive your vehicle.

Disabling Enhanced Valet Mode

1. Press Exit Valet Mode.

Note: If the system detects a valid phone as a key, valet mode disables.
Note: If the system does not detect a valid phone as a key, it prompts you to enter your backup start passcode. Once validated, valet mode disables.

Keys and Remote Controls – Information Messages

Message	Details
Key battery low Replace soon	Replace remote control battery.

Keys and Remote Controls – Troubleshooting

Keys and Remote Controls – Information Messages

Message	Details
Key battery low Replace soon	Replace remote control battery.

Phone as a Key (If Equipped)

What Is Phone as a Key

Phone as a Key allows you to use your phone in place of a passive key.

You can use your phone for the following functions:

- Remote locking and unlocking.
- Passive entry and exit.
- Passive start and drive the vehicle.
- Memory function recall.

Phone as a Key Limitations

Limitations can vary based on the make and model of your phone, phone location and physical obstructions. The following items could impact Phone as a Key performance or prevent functionality in some cases:

- The typical operating range for Phone as a Key is 131 ft (40 m).
- Your Bluetooth® connection is not enabled, is disrupted, or out of range.
- Phone as a Key is not active or enabled on at least one phone.
- Your vehicle battery has depleted.
- Your phone battery has depleted.
- Interference from other devices using radio frequencies or physical obstructions.
- Your phone is too close to metal objects or other electronic devices.

Note: Do not leave a duplicate coded key in the vehicle. Always take your keys and phone and lock all doors when leaving the vehicle.

Programming Your Phone

To program your device as Phone as a Key:

1. Visit your device's app store to download the Lincoln app.
2. Create a new account or sign in to an existing account on the Lincoln app.
3. Add the vehicle identification number to your account and follow the prompts in the Lincoln app to complete the authorization process.
4. After the authorization is complete, you can set up Phone as a Key following the prompts in the Lincoln app.
5. After Phone as a Key is set up, you can set up the backup start passcode by following the prompts on your touchscreen.

Note: Keep your new backup start passcode with you in case of an emergency.
Resetting Phone as a Key

1. From the settings menu, press General. See **Center Display**.

2. Press Reset.
3. Press the app connect reset option.
4. Press Phone as a Key Reset.
5. Confirm you would like to continue with erasing all Phone as a Key and backup start passcodes.
6. Press Continue.
7. Confirm you are aware you are erasing all authorized users and Lincoln app connect settings.
8. Press Continue.

Using the Backup Start Passcode

Make sure you have phone as a key active on at least one phone to use the previously created backup start passcode. See **Programming Your Phone**.

1. Press the brake pedal and the push button ignition switch. If the system does not detect a valid phone as a key or remote control, a message appears on the touchscreen and the system prompts you for your backup start passcode.

Note: The touchscreen times out after 30 seconds with no interaction.
Note: If the backup start passcode screen does not appear, press the brake pedal and push button ignition switch again.

2. Use the touchscreen to enter your backup start passcode.
3. After entering your backup start passcode, press Enter within 30 seconds.
4. Once the system validates the backup start passcode, a message alerts you to start your vehicle.
5. Press the brake pedal and the push button ignition switch within 20 seconds to start the vehicle.
6. If your vehicle does not start, repeat steps 1-5.

System Lockout

The system locks after five combined incorrect attempts of the following:
- Entering a backup start passcode.
- Resetting a current passcode.
- Entering a valet mode passcode.

Note: The system remains locked for five minutes. After five minutes the system allows codes to be entered again.

Phone as a Key – Frequently Asked Questions

How can I tell if my vehicle has Phone as a Key?

- The vehicle's touchscreen shows the Phone as a Key reset option.

- Additional control buttons appear on the home screen of the Lincoln app if you have already set up Phone as a Key on your vehicle through the Lincoln app.

What happens if I cannot unlock the vehicle with Phone as a Key?

- Attempt to move your phone closer to the vehicle.
- Check that the Lincoln app is still running and that the Phone as a Key control screen shows **Bluetooth®** is connected. If the phone is connected, attempt to press the remote unlock button in the Lincoln app. If the phone is not connected or the remote unlock button does not work in the Lincoln app, attempt to force close and restart the app.

Why do I get a No Key Detected message in the instrument cluster display when I am using Phone as a Key and my phone is in the car?

- Your phone's **Bluetooth®** connection has been disrupted or is not connected. Try reconnecting your phone's **Bluetooth®** connection.
- Move the phone closer to the center of the vehicle near the cup holder or center console.
- Verify Phone as a Key is still active, enabled and has not been revoked.

What do I do if my phone is lost, damaged or the battery has depleted?

- Use the backup start passcode that you created. See **Using the Backup Start Passcode**.

How many phones can I use for Phone as a Key?

- You can program and activate up to four phones with Phone as a Key to control your vehicle.

How does a valet drive my car if I only use Phone as a Key?

- Have the valet use the temporary valet passcode that you created. See **Using the Valet Mode**.

I uninstalled my Lincoln app and reinstalled it. Why am I not able to set up Phone as a Key again?

- Using the key list in the Lincoln app remove the key that was previously associated with your phone.
- Reset Phone as a Key from your vehicle, and then set up Phone as a Key again. See **Programming Your Phone**.

Phone as a Key – Troubleshooting

Phone as a Key – Frequently Asked Questions

How can I tell if my vehicle has Phone as a Key?

- The vehicle's touchscreen shows the Phone as a Key reset option.
- Additional control buttons appear on the home screen of the Lincoln app if you have already set up Phone as a Key on your vehicle through the Lincoln app.

What happens if I cannot unlock the vehicle with Phone as a Key?

- Attempt to move your phone closer to the vehicle.
- Check that the Lincoln app is still running and that the Phone as a Key control screen shows **Bluetooth®** is connected. If the phone is connected, attempt to press the remote unlock button in the Lincoln app. If the phone is not connected or the remote unlock button does not work in the Lincoln app, attempt to force close and restart the app.

Why do I get a No Key Detected message in the instrument cluster display when I am using Phone as a Key and my phone is in the car?

- Your phone’s **Bluetooth®** connection has been disrupted or is not connected. Try reconnecting your phone's **Bluetooth®** connection.
- Move the phone closer to the center of the vehicle near the cup holder or center console.
- Verify Phone as a Key is still active, enabled and has not been revoked.

What do I do if my phone is lost, damaged or the battery has depleted?

- Use the backup start passcode that you created. See **Using the Backup Start Passcode**.

How many phones can I use for Phone as a Key?

- You can program and activate up to four phones with Phone as a Key to control your vehicle.

How does a valet drive my car if I only use Phone as a Key?

- Have the valet use the temporary valet passcode that you created. See **Using the Valet Mode**.

I uninstalled my Lincoln app and reinstalled it. Why am I not able to set up Phone as a Key again?

- Using the key list in the Lincoln app remove the key that was previously associated with your phone.
- Reset Phone as a Key from your vehicle, and then set up Phone as a Key again. See **Programming Your Phone**.

Doors and Locks

Unlocking and Locking the Doors Using the Remote Control

You can only use the remote control when your vehicle is stationary.
Unlocking the Doors
Press the button to unlock all doors. One long flash of the turn signal lamps confirms that your vehicle has unlocked.
One-Stage Unlocking
Press the button to unlock all doors.
Two-Stage Unlocking (If Equipped)
Press the button to unlock the driver's door.Press the button again within three seconds to unlock all doors.
Locking the Doors
Press the button to lock all doors.One short flash of the turn signal lamps confirms your vehicle is locked.
A tone sounds when you press the lock button twice within three seconds on the remote control to confirm your vehicle is locked.
Note: You can also lock and unlock your vehicle without using the remote control. See **Keyless Entry**.

Unlocking and Locking the Doors Using the Key Blade

If there is a power door lock fault, use the key blade to lock and unlock the driver door.

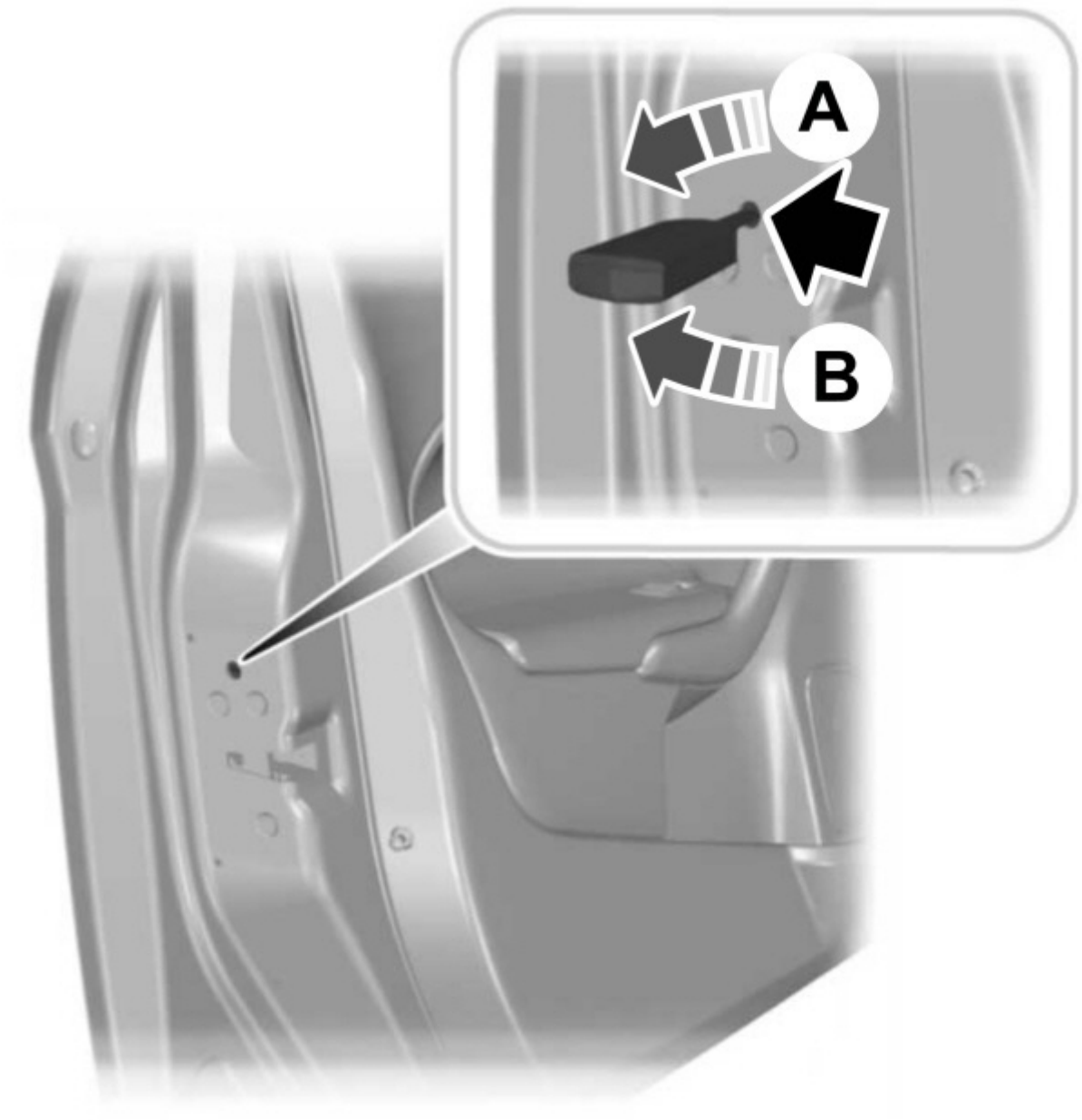


A Image not found or type unknown Lock.
B Image not found or type unknown Unlock.

You can individually lock or unlock all other doors. See **Individually Unlocking and Locking the Doors Using the Key Blade**.

Individually Unlocking and Locking the Doors Using the Key Blade

If there is a power door lock fault you can use the key blade to lock and unlock the doors.



A Image not found or type unknown Lock.
B Image not found or type unknown Unlock.

Unlocking and Locking the Doors Using the Central Locking

The power door lock control is on the front doors.

Press the button to unlock all doors. Press the button to lock all doors.

Note: The central locking only operates if the front doors are fully closed.

Opening the Doors From Inside Your Vehicle

Pull the interior door handle twice to unlock and open a rear door. The first pull unlocks the door and the second pull opens the door.

How Does the Door Lock Switch Inhibitor Work

The door lock switch inhibitor is a theft protection feature that prevents someone unlocking the vehicle from inside using the power door lock control switch.
When you lock your vehicle with the remote control, the power door lock control switch does no longer operate after 20 seconds.
Note: You must unlock your vehicle with the remote control, or switch the ignition on, to restore the power door lock control switch function.

What Is Autounlock

Autounlock is a feature that centrally unlocks the vehicle doors when your vehicle comes to a stop and you open the driver door using the interior door handle.

Autounlock Requirements

Autounlock unlocks all the doors when all of the following occur:

- Your vehicle has come to a complete stop and all of the doors are closed.
- You open the driver door using the interior door handle within 10 minutes of stopping the vehicle.

Switching Autounlock On and Off

1. From the settings menu, press Vehicle.
2. Press Locks.
3. Switch Autounlock on or off.

What Is Autolock

Autolock is a locking feature that centrally locks your vehicle doors when driving.

Autolock Requirements

Autolock locks all the doors after:

1. All doors are closed and the ignition is on.
2. Your vehicle speed exceeds 12 mph (20 km/h).

Autolock repeats if:

1. Your vehicle is stopped.
2. Any door is opened and closed again.
3. Your vehicle speed exceeds 12 mph (20 km/h).

What Is Mislock

Mislock is a locking feature that warns you if your vehicle has not locked after requesting a lock.

Mislock Limitations

When you press the lock button once, the direction indicators do not flash if:
- Any door or the liftgate is open.
- The hood is open.

When you press the lock button twice within three seconds, the horn sounds if:
- Any door or the liftgate is open.
- The hood is open.

If you switch mislock off, the horn does not sound if you press the lock button on the remote control when a door is open.

Switching Mislock On and Off

1. From the settings menu, press Vehicle.
2. Press Locks.
3. Switch Mislock Chirp on or off.

Door Lock Indicators (If Equipped)

The LED on the power door lock control illuminates when all doors are locked. It remains on for up to five minutes after you switch the ignition off.

Doors and Locks Audible Warnings

Door Ajar Audible Warning
Sounds when any front door is not fully closed and your vehicle is moving.

Doors and Locks – Warning Lamps

Door Ajar Warning Lamp
 Illuminates when you switch the ignition on
and remains on if any door or the hood is open.

Doors and Locks – Information Messages

Message	Details
Driver Door Ajar	Displays if a door is open. Fully close the door.
Passenger Door Ajar	
Rear Left Door Ajar	
Rear Right Door Ajar	
Hood Ajar	Displays if a hood is open. Fully close the hood.

Doors and Locks – Frequently Asked Questions

Can accessories such as steps or handles be used with the latch assembly?

- Do not use the door latch assembly to attach any accessory, such as handles or steps, as this can cause damage to your vehicle.

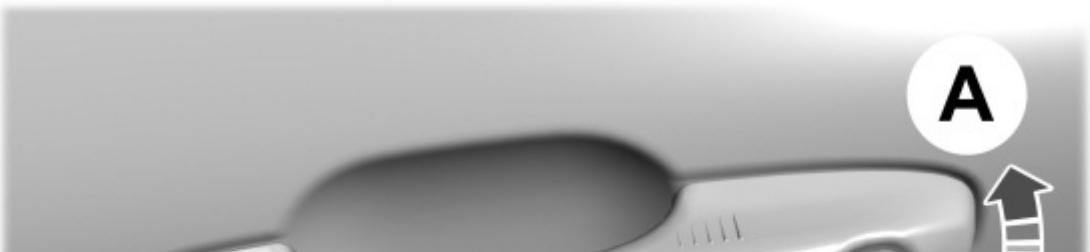
Operating the Doors From Outside Your Vehicle

Unlocking and Locking the Doors Using the Remote Control

You can only use the remote control when your vehicle is stationary.
Unlocking the Doors
Press the button to unlock all doors. One long flash of the turn signal lamps confirms that your vehicle has unlocked.
One-Stage Unlocking
Press the button to unlock all doors.
Two-Stage Unlocking (If Equipped)
Press the button to unlock the driver's door.Press the button again within three seconds to unlock all doors.
Locking the Doors
Press the button to lock all doors.One short flash of the turn signal lamps confirms your vehicle is locked.
A tone sounds when you press the lock button twice within three seconds on the remote control to confirm your vehicle is locked.
Note: You can also lock and unlock your vehicle without using the remote control. See **Keyless Entry**.

Unlocking and Locking the Doors Using the Key Blade

If there is a power door lock fault, use the key blade to lock and unlock the driver door.

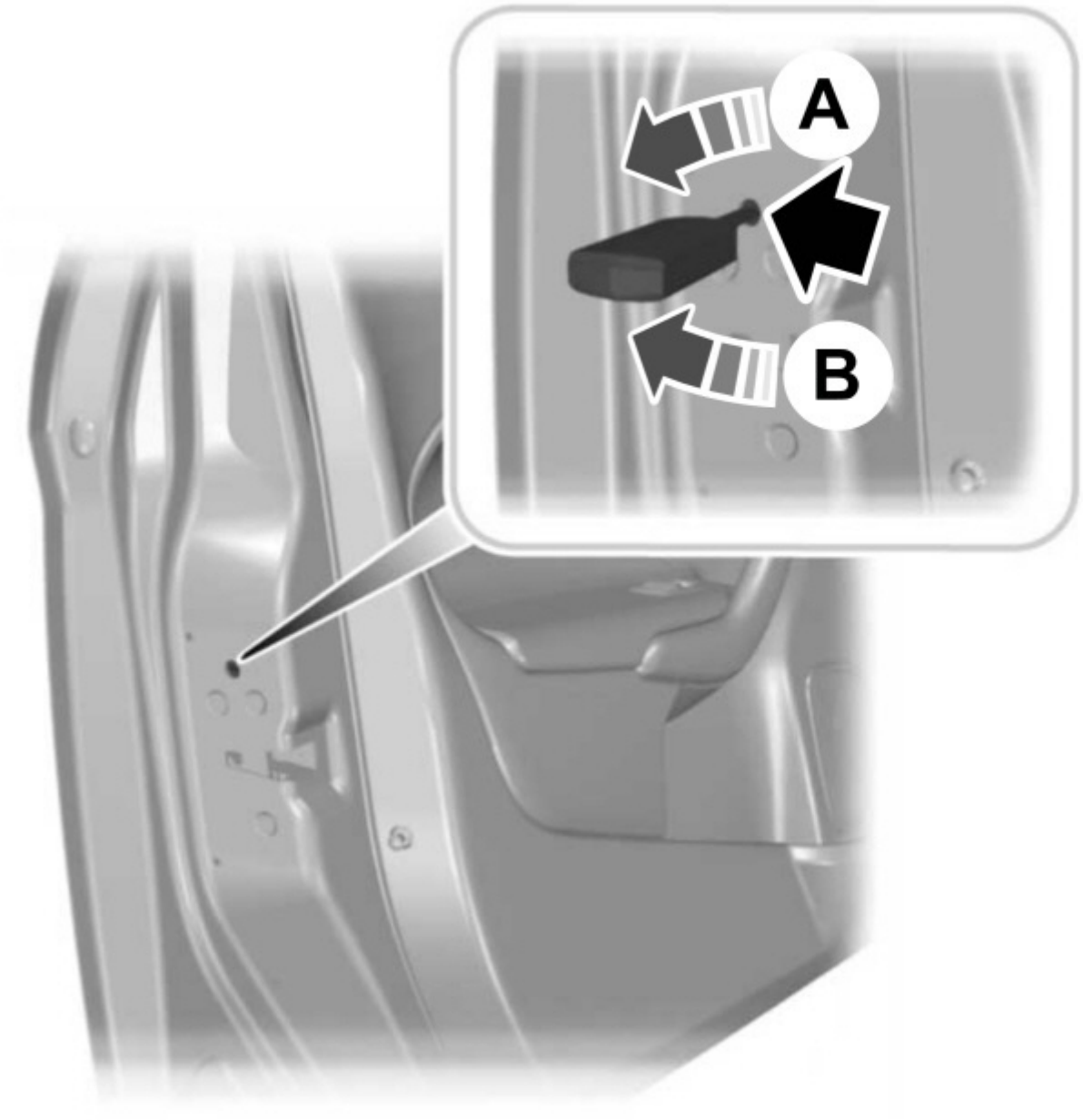


A Lock.
B Unlock.

You can individually lock or unlock all other doors. See **Individually Unlocking and Locking the Doors Using the Key Blade**.

Individually Unlocking and Locking the Doors Using the Key Blade

If there is a power door lock fault you can use the key blade to lock and unlock the doors.



A Lock.
B Unlock.

Operating the Doors From Inside Your Vehicle

Unlocking and Locking the Doors Using the Central Locking

The power door lock control is on the front doors.

Press the button to unlock all doors.

Press the button to lock all doors.

Note: The central locking only operates if the front doors are fully closed.

Opening the Doors From Inside Your Vehicle

Pull the interior door handle twice to unlock and open a rear door. The first pull unlocks the door and the second pull opens the door.

Door Lock Switch Inhibitor

How Does the Door Lock Switch Inhibitor Work

The door lock switch inhibitor is a theft protection feature that prevents someone unlocking the vehicle from inside using the power door lock control switch.
When you lock your vehicle with the remote control, the power door lock control switch does no longer operate after 20 seconds.
Note: You must unlock your vehicle with the remote control, or switch the ignition on, to restore the power door lock control switch function.

Autounlock

What Is Autounlock

Autounlock is a feature that centrally unlocks the vehicle doors when your vehicle comes to a stop and you open the driver door using the interior door handle.

Autounlock Requirements

Autounlock unlocks all the doors when all of the following occur:

- Your vehicle has come to a complete stop and all of the doors are closed.
- You open the driver door using the interior door handle within 10 minutes of stopping the vehicle.

Switching Autounlock On and Off

1. From the settings menu, press Vehicle.
2. Press Locks.
3. Switch Autounlock on or off.

Autolock

What Is Autolock

Autolock is a locking feature that centrally locks your vehicle doors when driving.

Autolock Requirements

Autolock locks all the doors after:

1. All doors are closed and the ignition is on.
2. Your vehicle speed exceeds 12 mph (20 km/h).

Autolock repeats if:

1. Your vehicle is stopped.
2. Any door is opened and closed again.
3. Your vehicle speed exceeds 12 mph (20 km/h).

Mislock

What Is Mislock

Mislock is a locking feature that warns you if your vehicle has not locked after requesting a lock.

Mislock Limitations

When you press the lock button once, the direction indicators do not flash if:

- Any door or the liftgate is open.
- The hood is open.

When you press the lock button twice within three seconds, the horn sounds if:

- Any door or the liftgate is open.
- The hood is open.

If you switch mislock off, the horn does not sound if you press the lock button on the remote control when a door is open.

Switching Mislock On and Off

1. From the settings menu, press Vehicle.
2. Press Locks.
3. Switch Mislock Chirp on or off.

Doors and Locks – Troubleshooting

Doors and Locks – Warning Lamps

Door Ajar Warning Lamp

 Illuminates when you switch the ignition on and remains on if any door or the hood is open.

Doors and Locks – Information Messages

Message	Details
Driver Door Ajar	Displays if a door is open. Fully close the door.
Passenger Door Ajar	
Rear Left Door Ajar	
Rear Right Door Ajar	
Hood Ajar	Displays if a hood is open. Fully close the hood.

Doors and Locks – Frequently Asked Questions

Can accessories such as steps or handles be used with the latch assembly?

- Do not use the door latch assembly to attach any accessory, such as handles or steps, as this can cause damage to your vehicle.

Keyless Entry

What Is Keyless Entry

The system allows you to lock and unlock your vehicle without taking the passive key out of your pocket or purse.

Keyless Entry Limitations

Make sure your remote control is within 3 ft (1 m) from the front door handles and the tailgate.

The system could not function if:

- The remote control remains stationary for about a minute.
- The vehicle battery has no charge.
- The remote control battery has no charge.
- There is interference causing issues with the remote control frequencies.
- The remote control is too close to metal objects or electronic devices, for example keys or a cell phone.

Keyless Entry Settings

Switching Keyless Entry On and Off

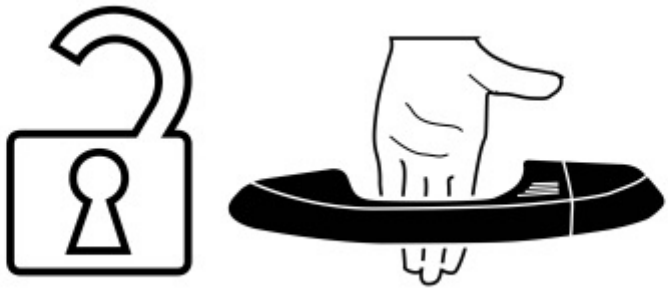
1. From the settings menu, press Vehicle.

2. Press Locks.

Reprogramming the Unlocking Function
You can enable the two-stage unlocking function allowing you to unlock only the driver door when you touch the unlock sensor.
Press and hold both the lock and unlock buttons on the remote control for four seconds to disable or enable two-stage unlocking.
If you program the unlocking function so that only the driver door unlocks, you can unlock all of the other doors from inside your vehicle using the power door lock control. You can unlock individual doors by pulling the interior door handles on those doors.
Keyless Detection Alert
Displays a message in the instrument cluster if no valid key is detected, when you exit your vehicle with a key, after the last front door is closed and your keyless vehicle is in run, indicating your vehicle is still on. An audible alert sounds if you have driven the vehicle and reached a speed of 16 mph (25 km/h) and the above mentioned conditions are met.

Using Keyless Entry

Unlocking the Doors



With the remote control within 3 ft (1 m) of your vehicle, touch the unlock sensor on the back of the door handle for a brief period and then pull on the door handle to unlock, being careful not to touch the lock sensor at the same time or pull on the door handle too quickly. The system requires a brief delay to authenticate the remote control.
Locking the Doors



With your passive key within 3 ft (1 m) of your vehicle, touch the outer door handle lock sensor for approximately one second to lock, being careful not to touch the unlock sensor on the back of the door handle at the same time. After locking, you can immediately pull on the door handle to confirm locking occurred without inadvertently unlocking.
Opening the Liftgate with the Remote Control



Press the exterior liftgate release button inside of the liftgate handle. The liftgate unlocks and opens. See **Opening the Liftgate From Outside Your Vehicle**.

Keyless Entry – Frequently Asked Questions

Why does the keyless entry system not function?

- If the system does not function, check to see what may be causing the limitation. See **Keyless Entry Limitations**.
- If the system still does not function, use the remote control or the key blade to lock and unlock your vehicle.

Why can I not lock my vehicle?

- If you electronically lock your vehicle with a rear door or the liftgate open, the system searches for a passive key inside your vehicle after you close the last door. If the system detects a key, all doors unlock indicating that a key is inside. Your vehicle locks if another passive key is within the detection range after you close the last door.

Keyless Entry – Troubleshooting

Keyless Entry – Frequently Asked Questions

Why does the keyless entry system not function?

- If the system does not function, check to see what may be causing the limitation. See **Keyless Entry Limitations**.
- If the system still does not function, use the remote control or the key blade to lock and unlock your vehicle.

Why can I not lock my vehicle?

- If you electronically lock your vehicle with a rear door or the liftgate open, the system searches for a passive key inside your vehicle after you close the last door. If the system detects a key, all doors unlock indicating that a key is inside. Your vehicle locks if another passive key is within the detection range after you close the last door.

Easy Entry and Exit

How Does Easy Entry and Exit Work

Easy entry and exit moves the driver seat rearward and the steering column up when you switch the ignition off. The driver seat and steering column return to their previous positions when you switch the ignition on. Note: Depending on your vehicle, the column may move up and in.

Switching Easy Entry and Exit On and Off

1. Using the touchscreen, select **Settings**.

2. Select **Vehicle**.
3. Select **Easy Entry/Exit**.

If you press any adjustment or memory button when in easy exit mode, the system cancels the operation.

Liftgate

Liftgate Precautions

WARNING: Make sure all persons are clear of the power liftgate area before opening or closing the liftgate.

WARNING: It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a crash, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and seatbelts. Make sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and properly using a seatbelt. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

WARNING: Make sure that you fully close the liftgate to prevent exhaust fumes from entering your vehicle. If you are unable to fully close the liftgate, open the air vents or the windows to allow fresh air to enter your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

WARNING: Keep keys out of reach of children. Do not allow children to operate or play near an open or moving power liftgate. You should supervise the operation of the power liftgate at all times.

Opening the Liftgate From Inside Your Vehicle

With the transmission in park (P), press the button on the instrument panel.

Note: Be careful when opening or closing the liftgate in a garage or other enclosed area to avoid damaging the liftgate.

Note: Do not hang anything, for example a bike rack, from the glass or liftgate.This could damage the liftgate and its components.

Note: Do not leave the liftgate open while driving.This could damage the liftgate and its components.

Opening the Liftgate From Outside Your Vehicle

1. Unlock the liftgate with the remote control or power door unlock control.If a passive key is within 3 ft (1 m) of the liftgate, the liftgate unlocks when you press the liftgate release button.



2. Press and release the liftgate control button.

Note: Allow the power system to open the liftgate. Manually pushing or pulling the liftgate could activate the system’s obstacle detection feature and stop the power operation or reverse its direction, replicate a strut failure, or damage mechanical components.
Note: Be careful when opening or closing the liftgate in a garage or other enclosed area to avoid damaging the liftgate.
Note: Do not hang anything, for example a bike rack, from the glass or liftgate.This could damage the liftgate and its components.
Note: Do not leave the liftgate open while driving.This could damage the liftgate and its components.
Switching the Power Liftgate On or Off
You can switch the power liftgate on or off through the vehicle settings on your touchscreen.
When switched off, the liftgate only unlatches and does not power open or close.

Opening the Liftgate Using the Remote Control

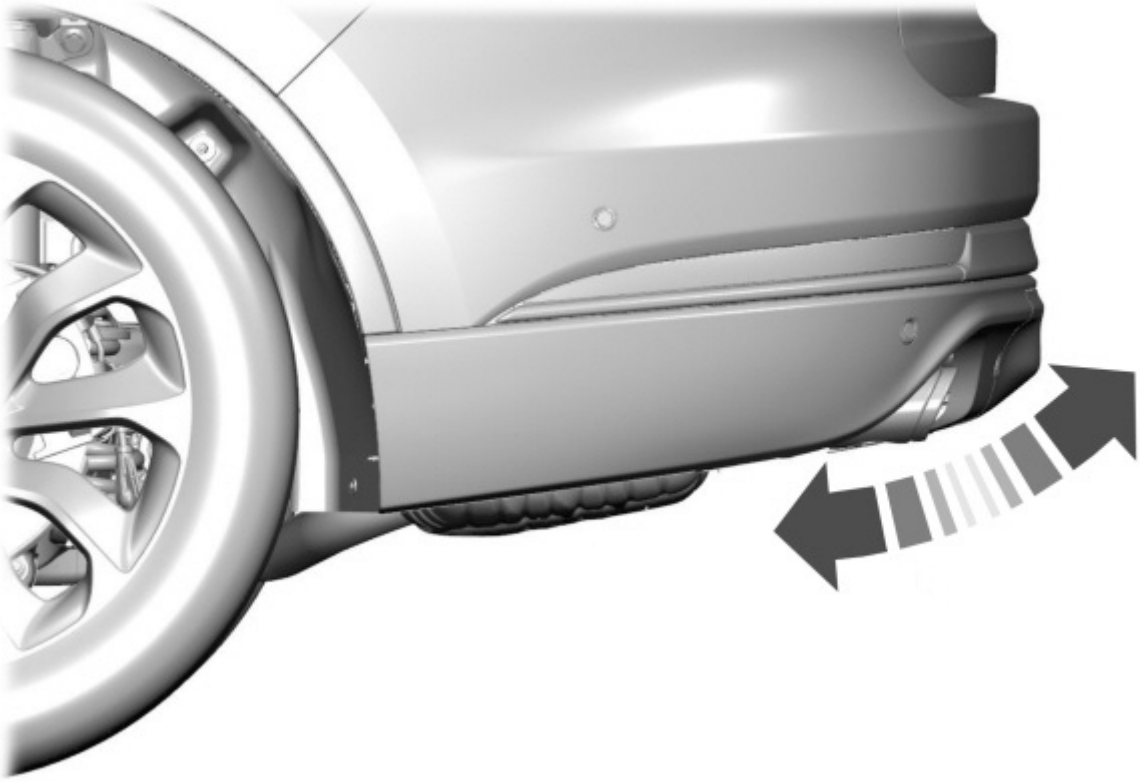
Press the remote control button twice within a few seconds.

Opening the Hands-Free Liftgate (If Equipped)

Make sure you have the passive key within 3 ft (1 m) of the liftgate.

1. Stand behind your vehicle, and face the liftgate.

2. Move your foot, in a single-kick motion, without pausing, under and away from the rear bumper detection area.

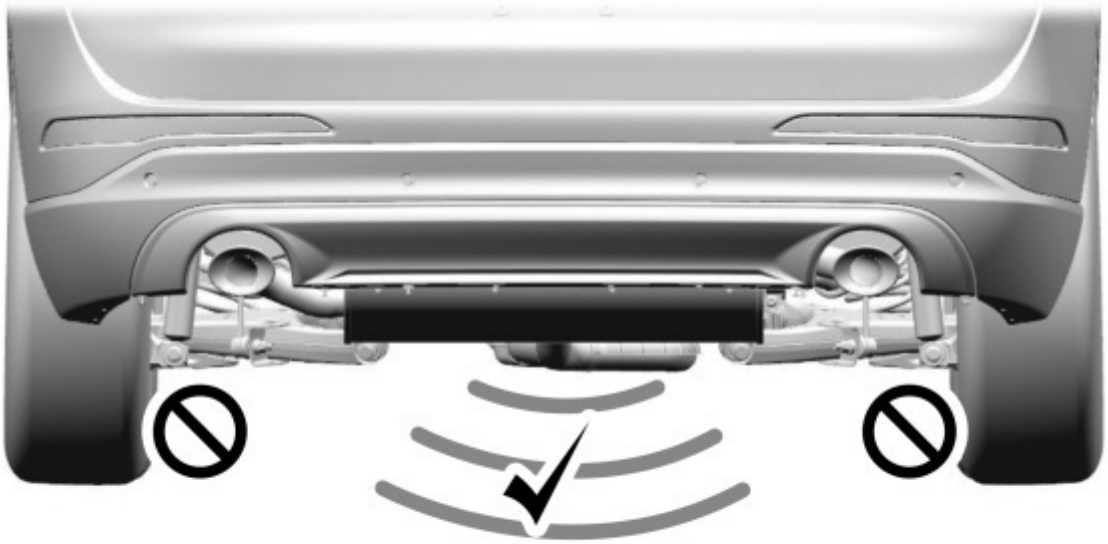


3. The liftgate opens.

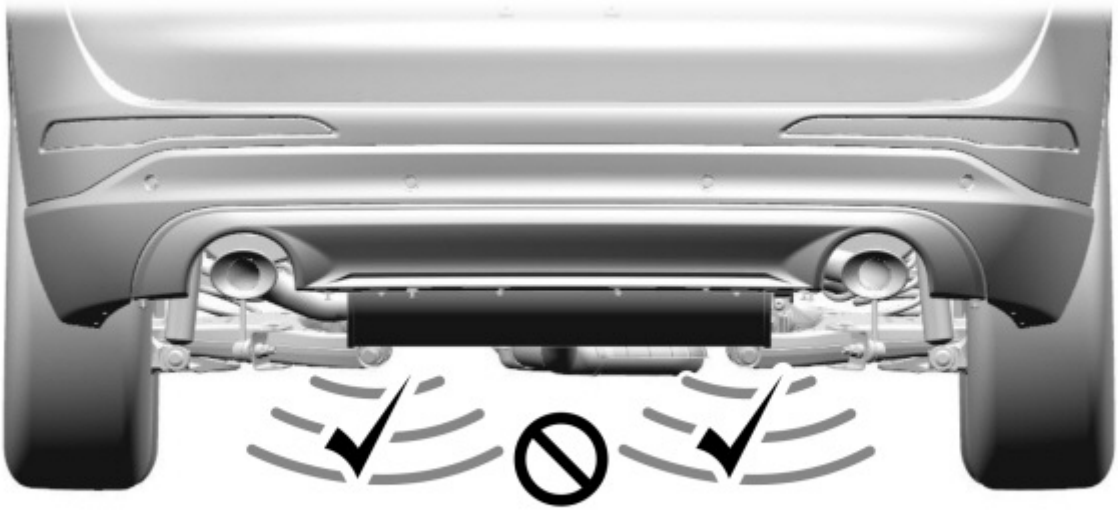
Avoid the following actions when using the hands-free opening feature:

- Making physical contact with the bumper.
- Holding your foot under the bumper.
- Sweeping your foot from side to side, or kicking at an odd angle.

Detection Zones
Vehicles Without a Trailer Hitch



The detection area is in the center of the rear bumper.
Vehicles With a Trailer Hitch



The detection area is on the left-hand side and right-hand side of the hitch, between the exhaust and the hitch.

Note: Allow the power system to open the liftgate. Manually pushing or pulling the liftgate may activate the system’s obstacle detection feature and stop the power operation or reverse its direction, replicate a strut failure, or damage mechanical components.
Note: Splashing water may cause the hands-free liftgate to open.Keep the passive key away from the rear bumper detection area when you wash your vehicle.

Setting the Liftgate Opening Height

1. Open the liftgate.
2. Stop the liftgate movement by pressing the control button on the liftgate when it reaches the desired height.

Note: Once the liftgate stops moving, you can manually move it to the desired height.

3. Press and hold the control button on the liftgate until a tone sounds, indicating programming is complete.

Note: You can only use the liftgate control button to program the height.
Note: You cannot program the height if the liftgate position is too low.

4. The power liftgate now opens at the programmed height. To change the programmed height, repeat the steps.

Note: You can fully open the liftgate by manually pushing it upward to the maximum open position if it opens in a lower position.
Note: The system recalls the new programmed height until you reprogram it, even if you disconnect the battery.

Closing the Liftgate From Inside Your Vehicle

WARNING: Make sure all persons are clear of the power liftgate area before using the power liftgate control.

With the transmission in park (P), press the button on the instrument panel.
Note: Make sure that you close the liftgate before operating or moving your vehicle, especially in an enclosure, like a garage or a parking structure.This could damage the liftgate and its components.
Note: Make sure the area behind your vehicle is free from obstruction and that there is enough room for you to operate the liftgate.Objects too close to your vehicle, for example a wall, garage door or another vehicle may come into contact with the moving liftgate.This could damage the liftgate and its components.
Note: Make sure that you fully close the liftgate to prevent cargo from falling out.

Closing the Liftgate From Outside Your Vehicle

WARNING: Make sure all persons are clear of the power liftgate area before opening or closing the liftgate.



Press and release the liftgate button.
Note: Make sure that you close the liftgate before operating or moving your vehicle, especially in an enclosure, like a garage or a parking structure.This could damage the liftgate and its components.
Note: Make sure the area behind your vehicle is free from obstruction and that there is enough room for you to operate the liftgate. Objects too close to your vehicle, for example a wall, garage door or another vehicle may come into contact with the moving liftgateThis could damage the liftgate and its components.
Note: Make sure you fully close the liftgate to prevent cargo from falling out.

Closing the Liftgate Using the Remote Control

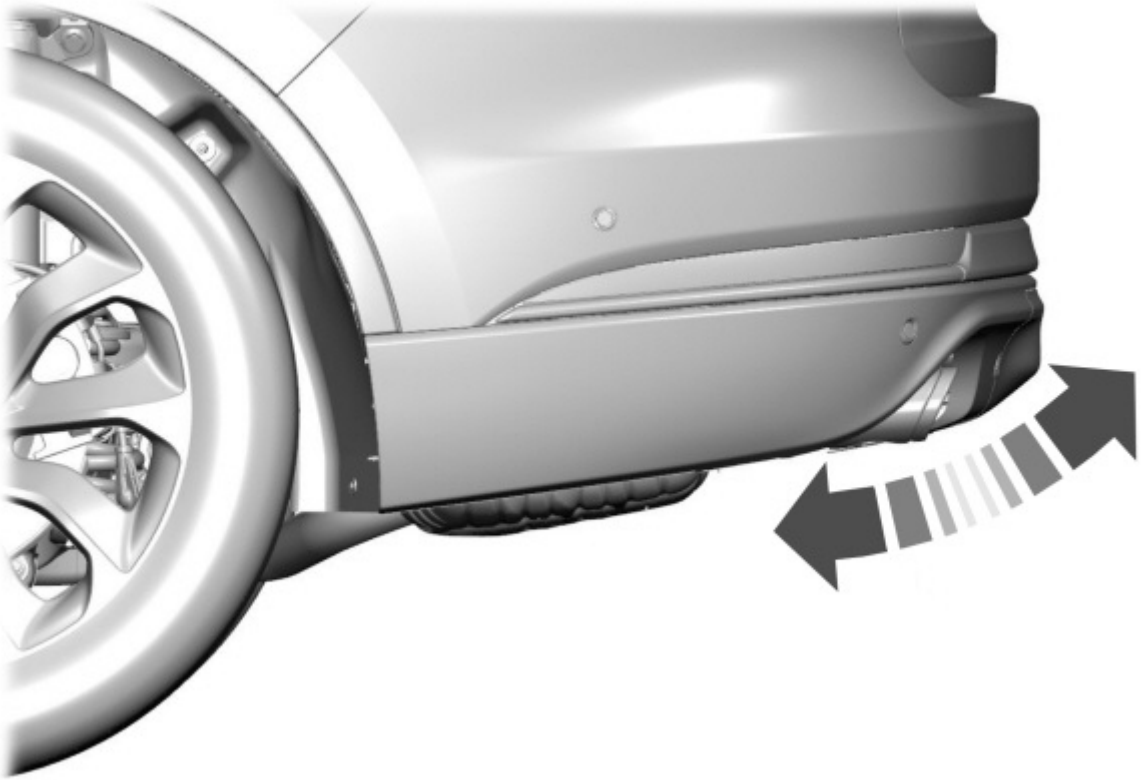


Press the remote control button twice within three seconds.

Closing the Hands-Free Liftgate (If Equipped)

Make sure you have the passive key within 3 ft (1 m) of the liftgate.

1. Stand behind your vehicle, and face the liftgate.
2. Move your foot, in a single-kick motion, without pausing, under and away from the rear bumper detection area.



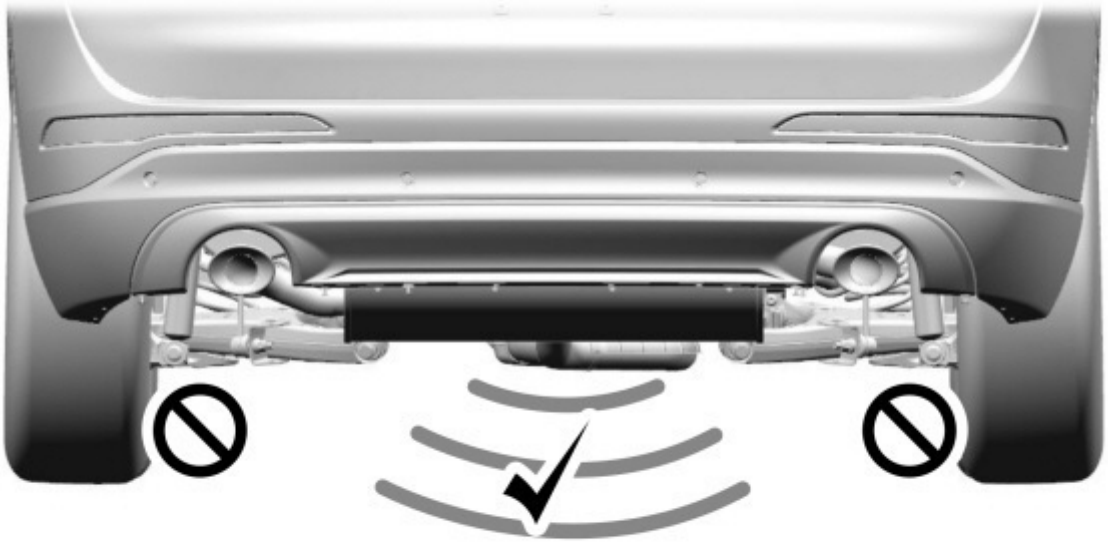
3. The liftgate closes.

Avoid the following actions when using the hands-free opening feature:

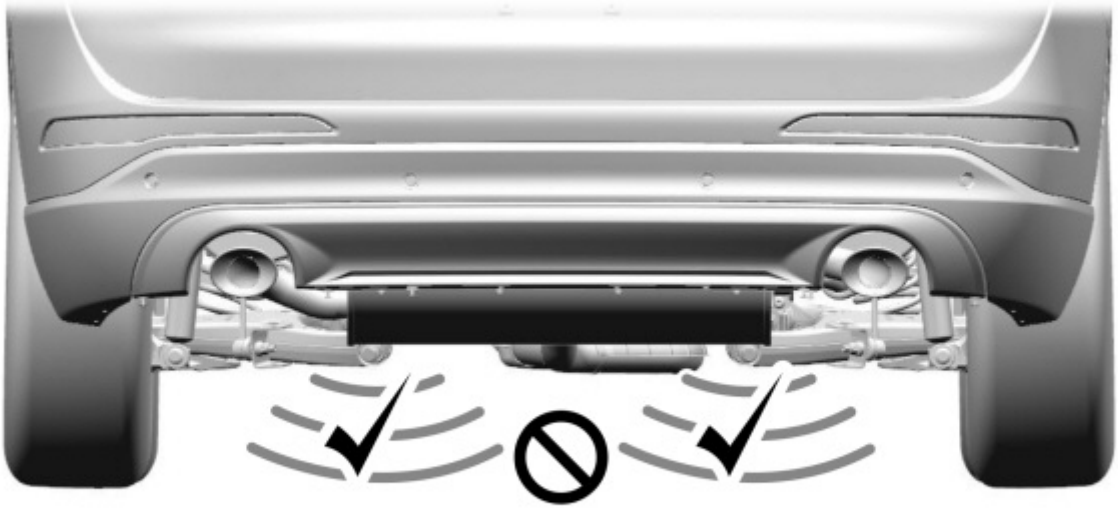
- Making physical contact with the bumper.
- Holding your foot under the bumper.
- Sweeping your foot from side to side, or kicking at an odd angle.

Detection Zones

Vehicles Without a Trailer Hitch



The detection area is in the center of the rear bumper.
Vehicles With a Trailer Hitch



The detection area is on the left-hand side and right-hand side of the hitch, between the exhaust and the hitch.
Note: Allow the power system to close the liftgate. Manually pushing or pulling the liftgate may activate the system’s obstacle detection feature and stop the power operation or reverse its direction, replicate a strut failure, or damage mechanical components.
Note: Any physical actions that mimic a kicking motion such as splashing water, trailer chains or vacuum hoses may cause the hands-free liftgate to activate. Switch the power liftgate off through your vehicle settings or keep the passive key away from the rear bumper detection area.

Stopping the Liftgate Movement

Note: Do not apply sudden excessive force to the liftgate while it is in motion.This could damage the power liftgate and its components.
Note: Selections will vary depending on region or options.

You can stop the liftgate movement by doing any of the following:

- Pressing the liftgate control button on the liftgate.
- Pressing the liftgate control button inside the vehicle.
- Pressing the liftgate button on the remote control twice.
- Pressing the liftgate button on an authorized device.
- Moving your foot under and away from the center rear bumper in a single-kick motion.

Liftgate Obstacle Detection

Closing the Liftgate
The system stops when it detects an obstacle. A tone sounds and the system reverses to open.Once you remove the obstacle, you can power close the liftgate.
Note: To prevent accidental obstacle detection, let the power liftgate close completely before you enter your vehicle.
Opening the Liftgate
The system stops when it detects an obstacle and a tone sounds. Once you remove the obstacle, you can continue to operate the liftgate.

Liftgate – Warning Lamps

 Illuminates when the liftgate is not completely closed.

Liftgate – Information Messages

Message	Action
Liftgate Ajar	The liftgate is not completely closed. Close the liftgate.

Liftgate – Frequently Asked Questions

Why won't my power liftgate function?

- It can happen in freezing conditions or when parking on downhill slopes.
- Make sure the power liftgate is enabled in the vehicle settings menu.
- Make sure the transmission is in park (P), ensure nothing is obstructing the liftgate path and there is not excessive weight on the liftgate.
- If there are continued issues, the battery voltage may be low or there may be other system issues. See an authorized dealer.

Opening the Liftgate

Opening the Liftgate From Inside Your Vehicle

 With the transmission in park (P), press the button on the instrument panel.

Note: Be careful when opening or closing the liftgate in a garage or other enclosed area to avoid damaging the liftgate.

Note: Do not hang anything, for example a bike rack, from the glass or liftgate.This could damage the liftgate and its components.

Note: Do not leave the liftgate open while driving.This could damage the liftgate and its components.

Opening the Liftgate From Outside Your Vehicle

1. Unlock the liftgate with the remote control or power door unlock control.If a passive key is within 3 ft (1 m) of the liftgate, the liftgate unlocks when you press the liftgate release button.



2. Press and release the liftgate control button.

Note: Allow the power system to open the liftgate. Manually pushing or pulling the liftgate could activate the system's obstacle detection feature and stop the power operation or reverse its direction, replicate a strut failure, or damage mechanical components.
Note: Be careful when opening or closing the liftgate in a garage or other enclosed area to avoid damaging the liftgate.
Note: Do not hang anything, for example a bike rack, from the glass or liftgate.This could damage the liftgate and its components.
Note: Do not leave the liftgate open while driving.This could damage the liftgate and its components.
Switching the Power Liftgate On or Off
You can switch the power liftgate on or off through the vehicle settings on your touchscreen.
When switched off, the liftgate only unlatches and does not power open or close.

Opening the Liftgate Using the Remote Control

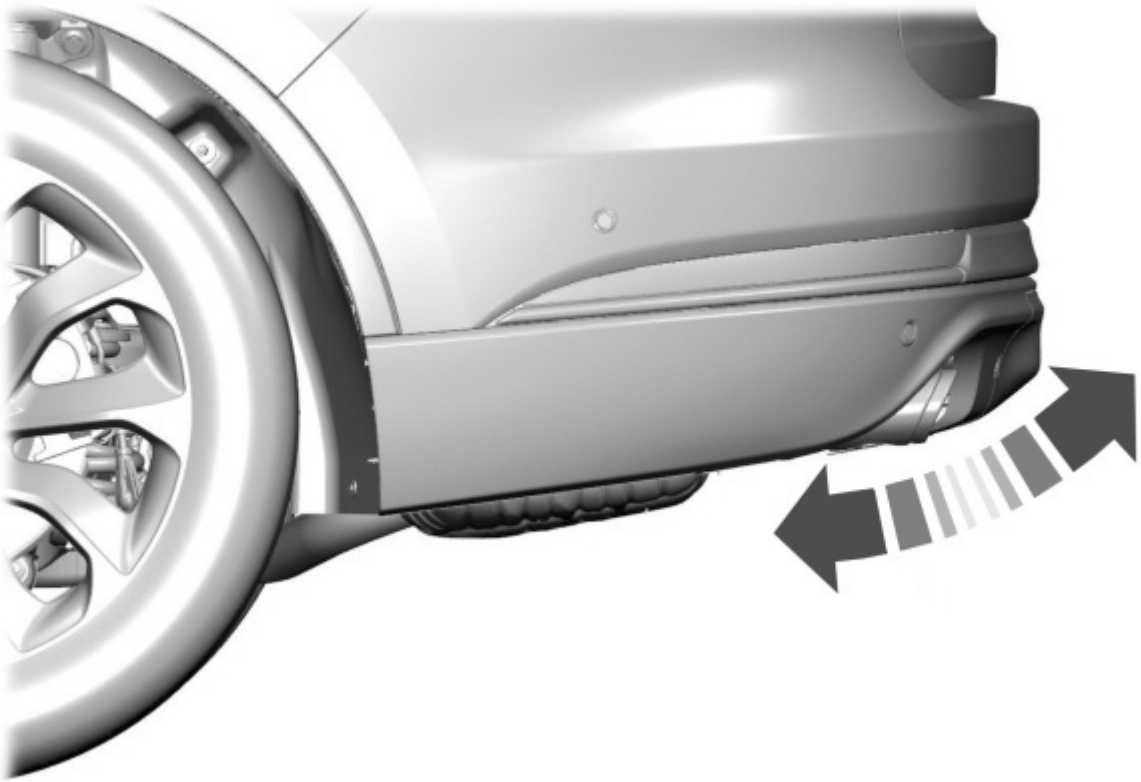


Press the remote control button twice within a few seconds.

Opening the Hands-Free Liftgate (If Equipped)

Make sure you have the passive key within 3 ft (1 m) of the liftgate.

1. Stand behind your vehicle, and face the liftgate.
2. Move your foot, in a single-kick motion, without pausing, under and away from the rear bumper detection area.

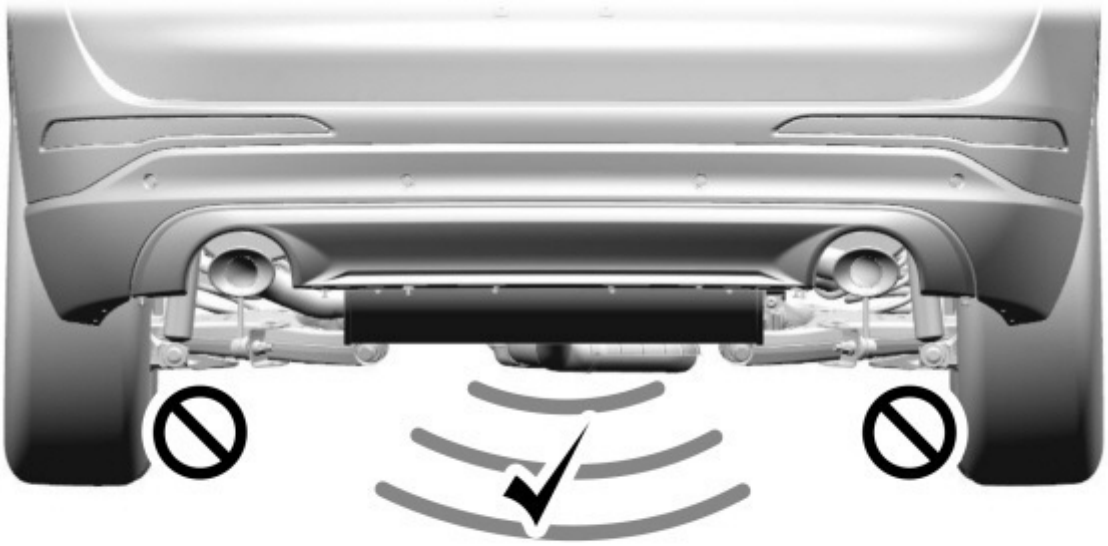


3. The liftgate opens.

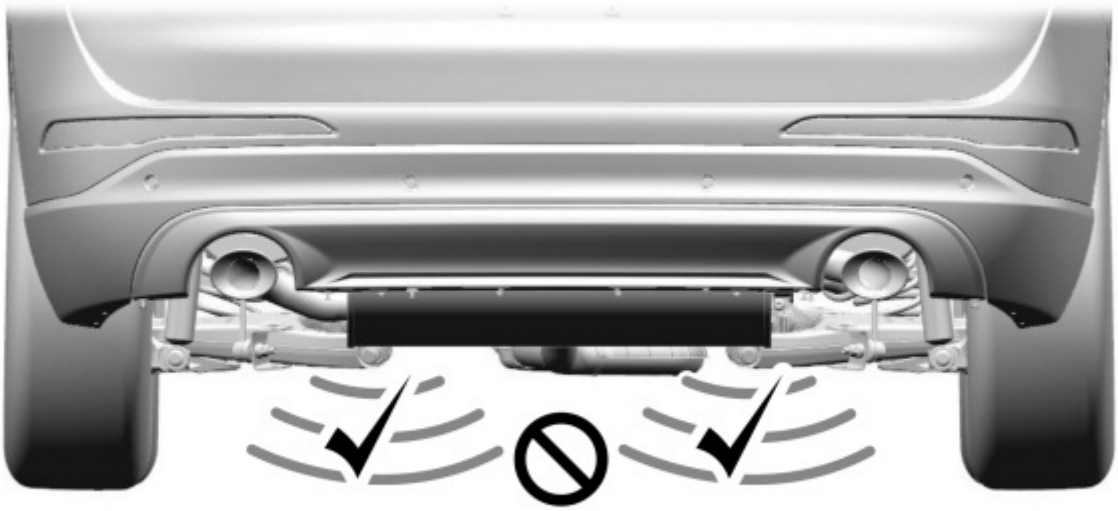
Avoid the following actions when using the hands-free opening feature:

- Making physical contact with the bumper.
- Holding your foot under the bumper.
- Sweeping your foot from side to side, or kicking at an odd angle.

Detection Zones
Vehicles Without a Trailer Hitch



The detection area is in the center of the rear bumper.
Vehicles With a Trailer Hitch



The detection area is on the left-hand side and right-hand side of the hitch, between the exhaust and the hitch.
Note: Allow the power system to open the liftgate. Manually pushing or pulling the liftgate may activate the system’s obstacle detection feature and stop the power operation or reverse its direction, replicate a strut

failure, or damage mechanical components.
Note: Splashing water may cause the hands-free liftgate to open.Keep the passive key away from the rear bumper detection area when you wash your vehicle.

Closing the Liftgate

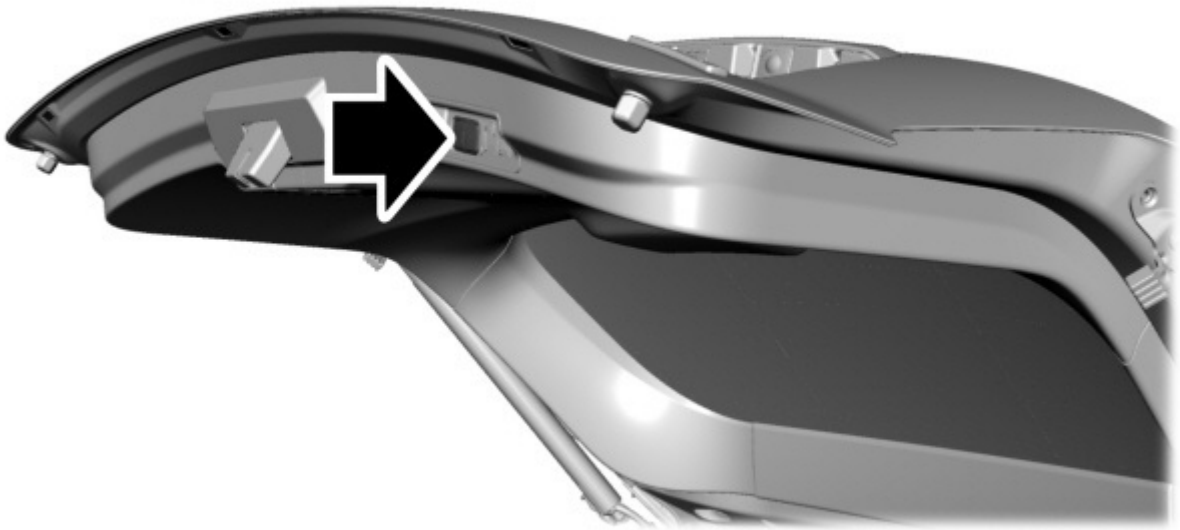
Closing the Liftgate From Inside Your Vehicle

WARNING: Make sure all persons are clear of the power liftgate area before using the power liftgate control.

With the transmission in park (P), press the button on the instrument panel.
Note: Make sure that you close the liftgate before operating or moving your vehicle, especially in an enclosure, like a garage or a parking structure.This could damage the liftgate and its components.
Note: Make sure the area behind your vehicle is free from obstruction and that there is enough room for you to operate the liftgate.Objects too close to your vehicle, for example a wall, garage door or another vehicle may come into contact with the moving liftgate.This could damage the liftgate and its components.
Note: Make sure that you fully close the liftgate to prevent cargo from falling out.

Closing the Liftgate From Outside Your Vehicle

WARNING: Make sure all persons are clear of the power liftgate area before opening or closing the liftgate.



E291351

Press and release the liftgate button.
Note: Make sure that you close the liftgate before operating or moving your vehicle, especially in an enclosure, like a garage or a parking structure.This could damage the liftgate and its components.

Note: Make sure the area behind your vehicle is free from obstruction and that there is enough room for you to operate the liftgate. Objects too close to your vehicle, for example a wall, garage door or another vehicle may come into contact with the moving liftgateThis could damage the liftgate and its components.
Note: Make sure you fully close the liftgate to prevent cargo from falling out.

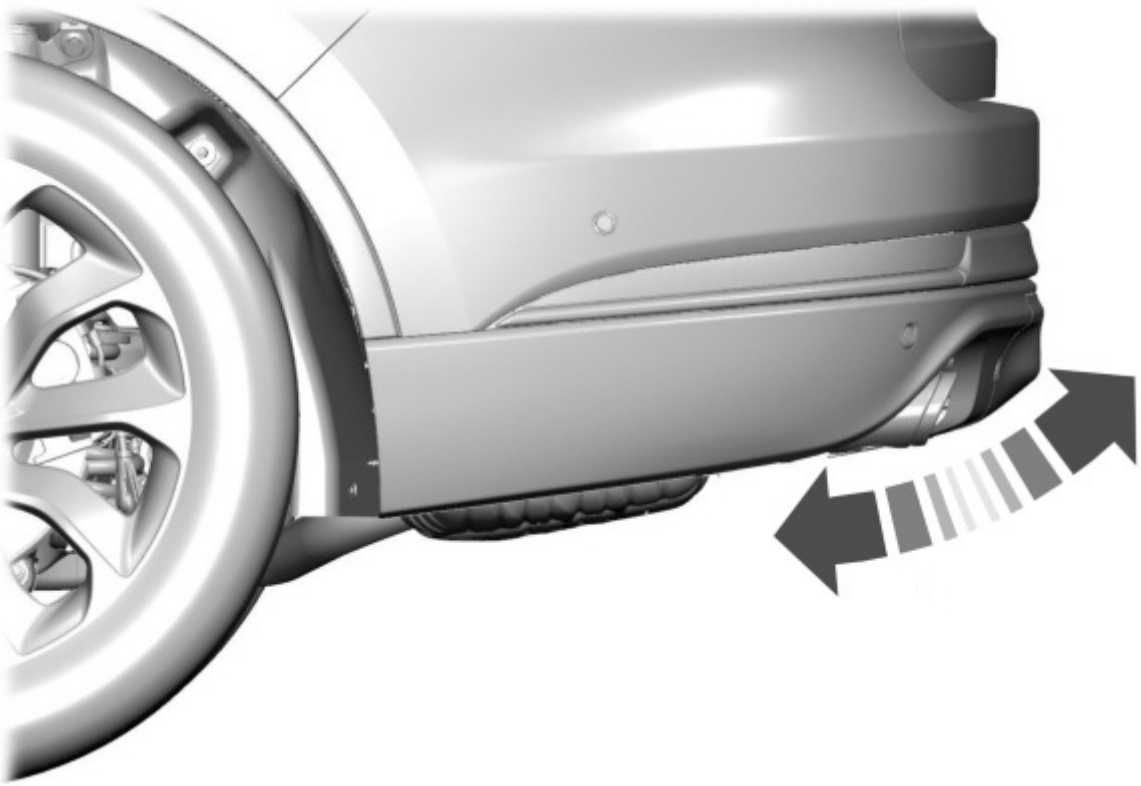
Closing the Liftgate Using the Remote Control

Press the remote control button twice within three seconds.

Closing the Hands-Free Liftgate (If Equipped)

Make sure you have the passive key within 3 ft (1 m) of the liftgate.

1. Stand behind your vehicle, and face the liftgate.
2. Move your foot, in a single-kick motion, without pausing, under and away from the rear bumper detection area.



3. The liftgate closes.

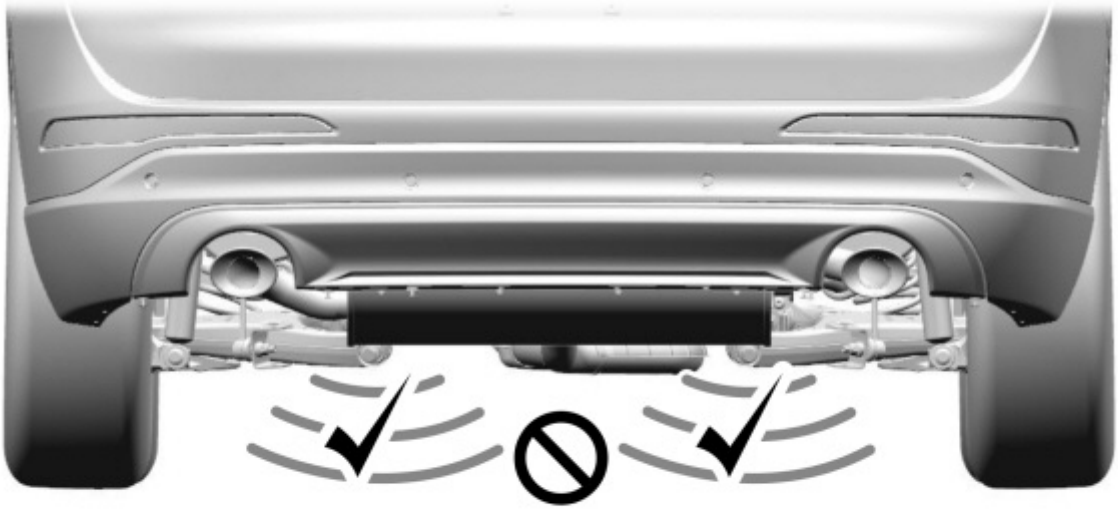
Avoid the following actions when using the hands-free opening feature:

- Making physical contact with the bumper.
- Holding your foot under the bumper.
- Sweeping your foot from side to side, or kicking at an odd angle.

Detection Zones
Vehicles Without a Trailer Hitch



The detection area is in the center of the rear bumper.
Vehicles With a Trailer Hitch



The detection area is on the left-hand side and right-hand side of the hitch, between the exhaust and the hitch.
Note: Allow the power system to close the liftgate. Manually pushing or pulling the liftgate may activate the system’s obstacle detection feature and stop the power operation or reverse its direction, replicate a strut failure, or damage mechanical components.
Note: Any physical actions that mimic a kicking motion such as splashing water, trailer chains or vacuum hoses may cause the hands-free liftgate to activate. Switch the power liftgate off through your vehicle settings or keep the passive key away from the rear bumper detection area.

Liftgate – Troubleshooting

Liftgate – Warning Lamps

 Illuminates when the liftgate is not completely closed.

Liftgate – Information Messages

Message	Action
Liftgate Ajar	The liftgate is not completely closed. Close the liftgate.

Liftgate – Frequently Asked Questions

Why won't my power liftgate function?

- It can happen in freezing conditions or when parking on downhill slopes.
- Make sure the power liftgate is enabled in the vehicle settings menu.
- Make sure the transmission is in park (P), ensure nothing is obstructing the liftgate path and there is not excessive weight on the liftgate.
- If there are continued issues, the battery voltage may be low or there may be other system issues. See an authorized dealer.

Security

What Is the Passive Anti-Theft System

The passive anti-theft system prevents someone from starting your vehicle with an incorrectly coded key.
Note: Do not leave a duplicate coded key in your vehicle. Always take the keys and lock all the doors when leaving your vehicle.

How Does the Passive Anti-Theft System Work

The passive anti-theft system arms when you switch your vehicle off.
It disarms when you switch your vehicle on with a correctly coded key.
Note: The system is not compatible with non-Ford aftermarket remote start systems.
Note: Do not leave a duplicate coded key in your vehicle. Always take the keys and lock all doors when leaving your vehicle.

Arming the Passive Anti-Theft System

The passive anti-theft system arms your vehicle after a short period of time when you switch the power off.

Disarming the Passive Anti-Theft System

The passive anti-theft system disarms when you switch the power on with a correctly coded key.
Note: You could have difficulty starting the vehicle if you have metallic objects, electronic devices or a second coded key on the same key chain.

What Is the Anti-Theft Alarm System

The anti-theft alarm system warns you of an unauthorized entry to your vehicle.

How Does the Anti-Theft Alarm System Work

When armed, the anti-theft alarm is triggered in any of the following ways:

- If someone opens a door, the liftgate or the hood without a correctly coded key or remote control.
- If you turn the power on without a correctly coded key.

If the anti-theft alarm is triggered, the alarm horn sounds for 30 seconds and the direction indicators flash for 5 minutes.

Any further attempts to carry out one of the above sounds the alarm again.

What Is the Perimeter Alarm

The perimeter alarm is designed to detect unauthorized access to your vehicle.

Arming the Anti-Theft Alarm System

The alarm is ready to arm when you switch your vehicle off.
Lock your vehicle with your remote control to arm the alarm.

Disarming the Anti-Theft Alarm System

Disarm the alarm by performing any of the following actions:

- Unlock the doors or luggage compartment with the remote control.
- Switch your vehicle on or start your vehicle.

Security – Information Messages

No key detected	The system has not detected a correctly coded key.
Starting system fault	The system has malfunctioned.Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Vehicle alarm To stop alarm, start vehicle	Displays when the alarm has been triggered due to unauthorized entry.

Security – Frequently Asked Questions

What should I do if there is a potential alarm problem with my vehicle?

- Take all remote controls to an authorized dealer if there is a potential alarm problem with your vehicle.

What should I do if my vehicle is unable to start with a correctly coded key?

- Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Passive Anti-Theft System

What Is the Passive Anti-Theft System

The passive anti-theft system prevents someone from starting your vehicle with an incorrectly coded key.
Note: Do not leave a duplicate coded key in your vehicle. Always take the keys and lock all the doors when leaving your vehicle.

How Does the Passive Anti-Theft System Work

The passive anti-theft system arms when you switch your vehicle off.
It disarms when you switch your vehicle on with a correctly coded key.
Note: The system is not compatible with non-Ford aftermarket remote start systems.
Note: Do not leave a duplicate coded key in your vehicle. Always take the keys and lock all doors when leaving your vehicle.

Arming the Passive Anti-Theft System

The passive anti-theft system arms your vehicle after a short period of time when you switch the power off.

Disarming the Passive Anti-Theft System

The passive anti-theft system disarms when you switch the power on with a correctly coded key.
Note: You could have difficulty starting the vehicle if you have metallic objects, electronic devices or a second coded key on the same key chain.

Anti-Theft Alarm System

What Is the Anti-Theft Alarm System

The anti-theft alarm system warns you of an unauthorized entry to your vehicle.

How Does the Anti-Theft Alarm System Work

When armed, the anti-theft alarm is triggered in any of the following ways:

- If someone opens a door, the liftgate or the hood without a correctly coded key or remote control.
- If you turn the power on without a correctly coded key.

If the anti-theft alarm is triggered, the alarm horn sounds for 30 seconds and the direction indicators flash for 5 minutes.
Any further attempts to carry out one of the above sounds the alarm again.

What Is the Perimeter Alarm

The perimeter alarm is designed to detect unauthorized access to your vehicle.

Arming the Anti-Theft Alarm System

The alarm is ready to arm when you switch your vehicle off.
Lock your vehicle with your remote control to arm the alarm.

Disarming the Anti-Theft Alarm System

Disarm the alarm by performing any of the following actions:

- Unlock the doors or luggage compartment with the remote control.
- Switch your vehicle on or start your vehicle.

Security – Troubleshooting

Security – Information Messages

No key detected	The system has not detected a correctly coded key.
Starting system fault	The system has malfunctioned.Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Vehicle alarm To stop alarm, start vehicle	Displays when the alarm has been triggered due to unauthorized entry.

Security – Frequently Asked Questions

What should I do if there is a potential alarm problem with my vehicle?

- Take all remote controls to an authorized dealer if there is a potential alarm problem with your vehicle.

What should I do if my vehicle is unable to start with a correctly coded key?

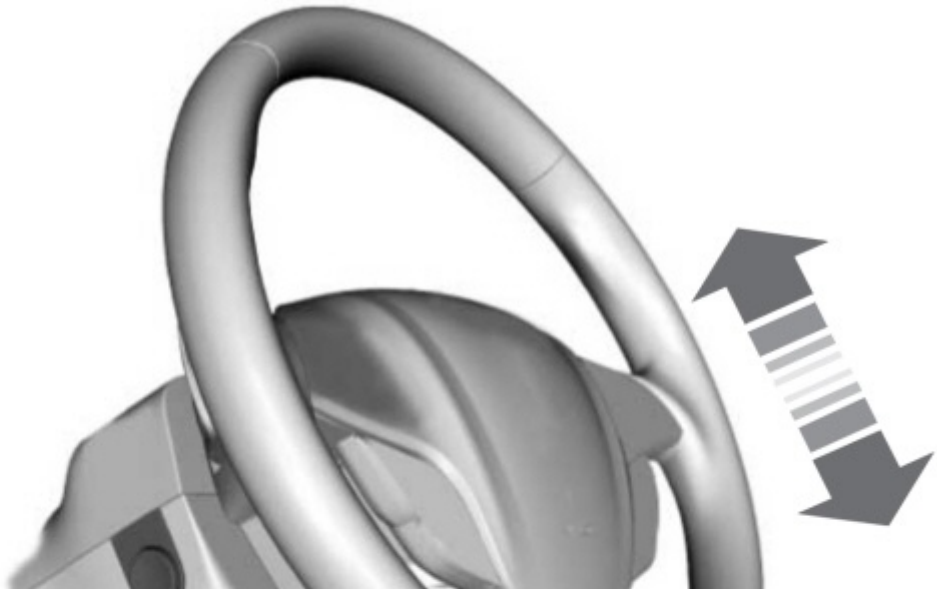
- Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Steering Wheel

Adjusting the Steering Wheel - Vehicles With: Power Adjustable Steering Column

WARNING: Do not adjust the steering wheel when your vehicle is moving. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of vehicle control, personal injury or death.

Note: Make sure that you are sitting in the correct position.See **Sitting in the Correct Position**.

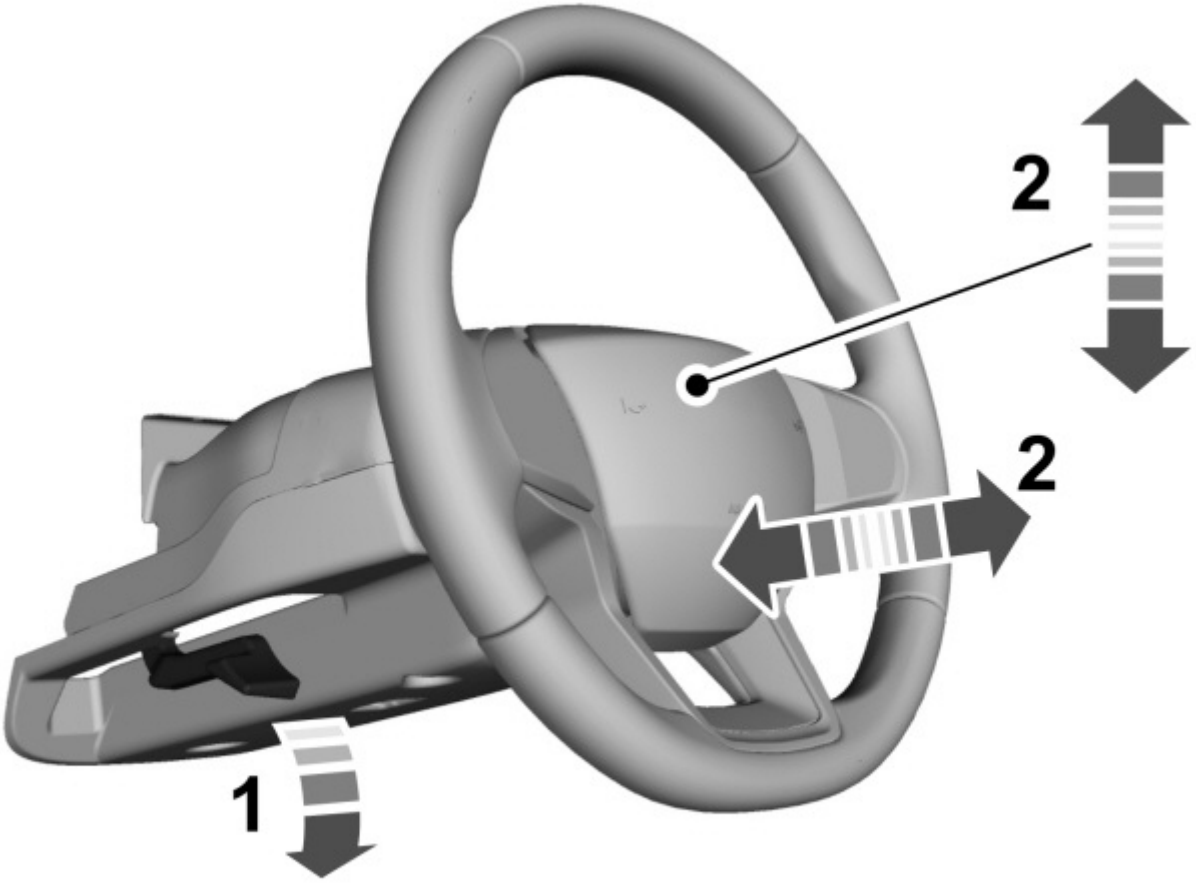


Press the top or bottom of the control to move the steering wheel up or down.
Press the front or rear of the control to move the steering wheel in or out.

Adjusting the Steering Wheel - Vehicles With: Manual Adjustable Steering Column

WARNING: Do not adjust the steering wheel when your vehicle is moving. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of vehicle control, personal injury or death.

Note: Make sure that you are sitting in the correct position. See **Sitting in the Correct Position**.



E279960

1. Unlock the steering column.
2. Adjust the steering wheel to the desired position.



3. Lock the steering column.

Resetting the Stopping Position - Vehicles With: Power Adjustable Steering Column

Note: The steering wheel stops when it detects an obstruction. This sets a new stopping position.
To reset the steering column to its normal stopping position:

1. Confirm there is nothing obstructing the motion of the steering column.
2. Press and hold the steering column control until the steering column stops moving.
3. Press the steering column control again.

Note: The steering column may start to move again.

4. When the steering column stops, continue holding the control for a few seconds.
5. Repeat for each direction, as necessary.

Horn

 Press on the center of the steering wheel near the horn icon to activate the horn.

Switching the Heated Steering Wheel On and Off - Vehicles With: Heated Steering Wheel

 **WARNING**: Use caution when using the heated steering wheel if you are unable to feel pain to your skin because of advanced age, chronic illness, diabetes, spinal cord injury, medication, exhaustion or other physical conditions. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury, especially if the heated steering wheel is used for long periods of time.

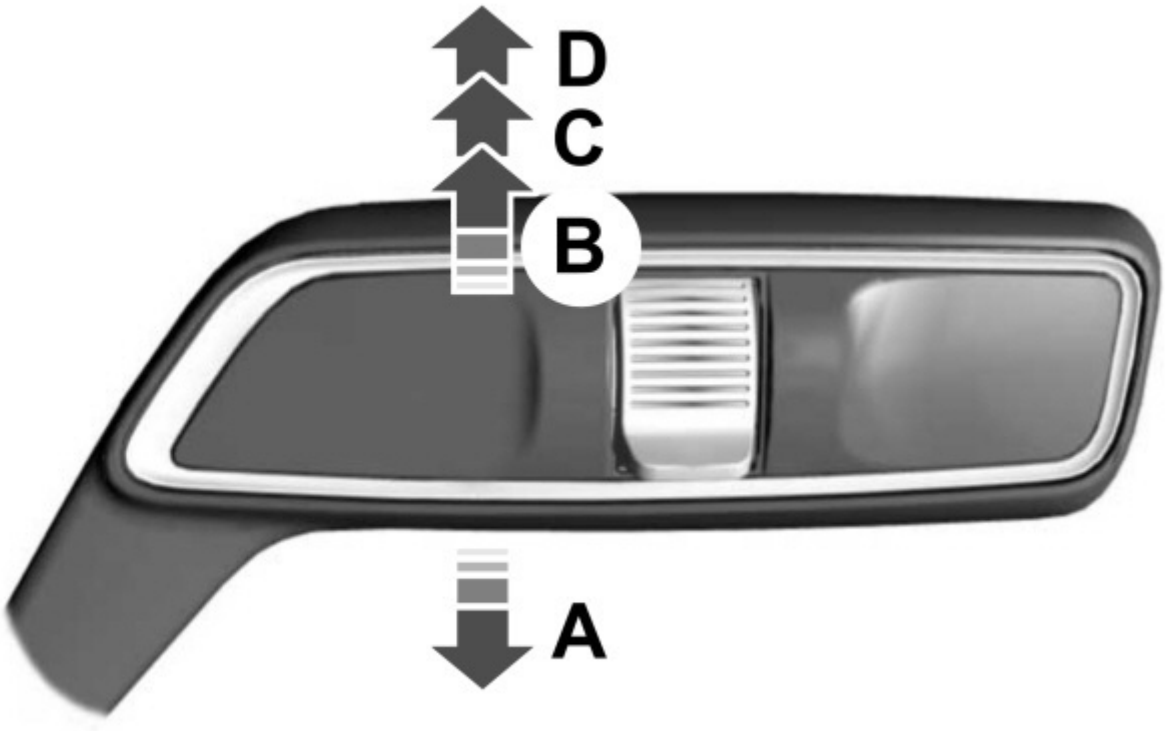
 To activate the heated steering wheel, press the button on the touchscreen. An indicator illuminates when the heated steering wheel is on. To turn it off, press the heated steering wheel button again.
Note: The engine must be running to use the heated steering wheel.
Note: A sensor regulates the temperature of the steering wheel.
Note: The heated steering wheel may remain on after remote starting your vehicle, depending on the remote start settings. It may also turn on when you start your vehicle if it was on the last time the engine was switched off.
Note: In warm temperatures, the steering wheel quickly reaches its maximum temperature and the system reduces the current to the heating element. This could cause you to think that the system has stopped working but it has not. This is normal.

Wipers and Washers

Wiper Precautions

Do not operate the wipers on a dry windshield. This could scratch the glass or damage the wiper blades. Use the windshield washers before wiping a dry windshield.
Fully defrost the windshield before you switch the windshield wipers on.
Switch the windshield wipers off before entering a car wash.

Switching Windshield Wipers On and Off



A Single wipe.
B Intermittent wipe/Auto wipe.
C Normal wipe.
D High-speed wipe.

Push the lever up or down to operate the windshield wipers.

What Are Autowipers

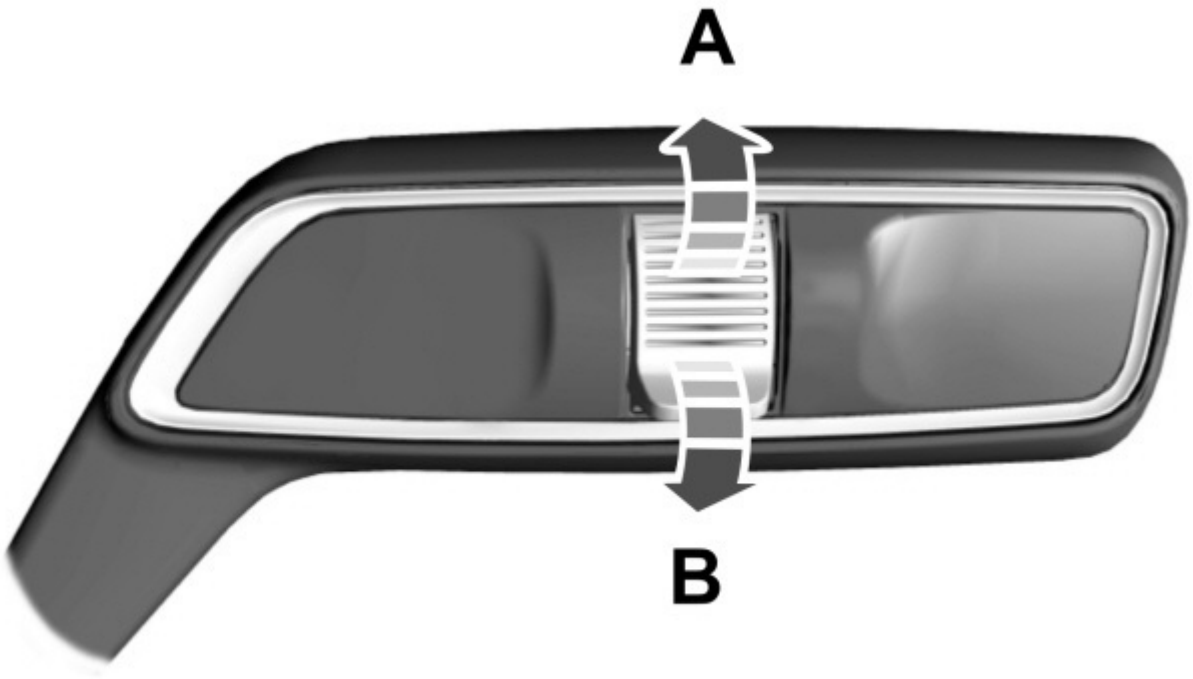
Autowipers, when turned on, automatically control the speed and frequency of the windshield wipers if the rain sensors detect moisture on the windshield.
Note: Keep the outside of the windshield clean. The rain sensor is very sensitive and the wipers may operate if dirt, mist or insects hit the windshield.

Autowipers Settings

1. From the settings menu, press Vehicle. See **Center Display**.
2. Press Wipers.
3. Switch Rain sensing on or off.

Note: When you switch the feature off, the wipers do not operate based on the rain sensor. When you switch on the windshield wipers to the intermittent wipe position with the feature on, the wipers use the wipe speed set by the rotary control.

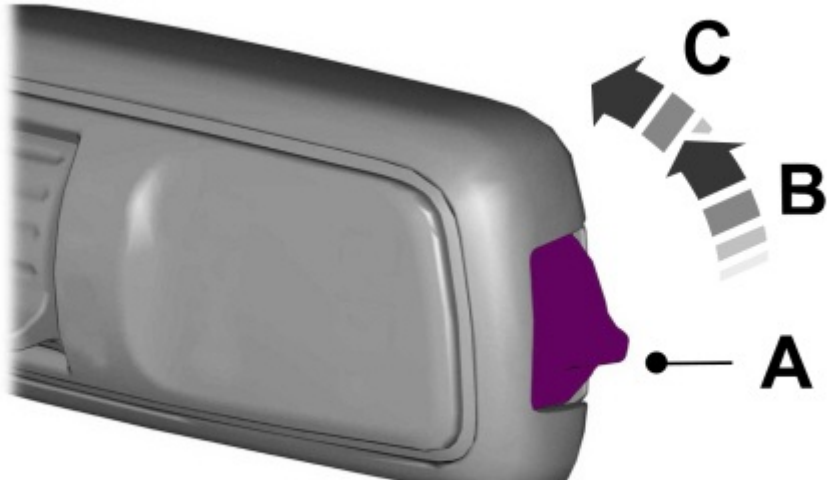
Adjusting the Sensitivity of the Rain Sensor



A High sensitivity.
B Low sensitivity.

Use the rotary control to set the sensitivity of the rain sensor.
When you select high sensitivity, the wipers operate when the sensor detects a small amount of water on the windshield.
When you select low sensitivity, the wipers operate when the sensor detects a large amount of water on the windshield.

Switching the Rear Window Wiper On and Off



A Rear window wiper off.
B Intermittent wipe.
C Continuous wipe.

What Is Reverse Wipe

Reverse wipe turns on the rear window wiper when you shift into reverse (R) and the windshield wipers are on.

Reverse Wipe Settings

1. From the settings menu, press Vehicle. See **Center Display**.
2. Press Wipers.
3. Switch Rear wiper on or off.

Checking the Wiper Blades



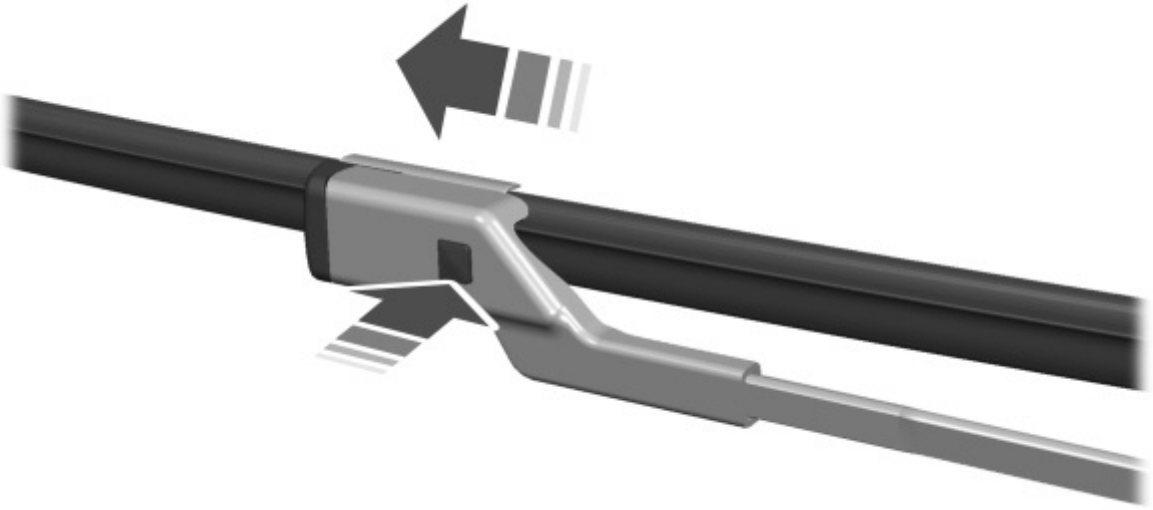
Run the tip of your fingers over the edge of the blade to check for roughness.

Replacing the Front Wiper Blades

1. Turn the vehicle off.
2. Move the wiper arm to the service position.
3. To place the wiper arm in the service position, switch your vehicle on in accessory mode.
4. Switch on the front wiper.
5. Switch your vehicle off when the wiper arm is in its highest position.

Note: This position should enable wiper arm lift without contacting the hood and easy for you to operate.

Note: Do not manually move the wiper arm to the service position unless the wiper path is obstructed by snow or ice.



6. Lift the wiper arm and then press the wiper blade locking button.

Note: Do not hold the wiper blade to lift the wiper arm.

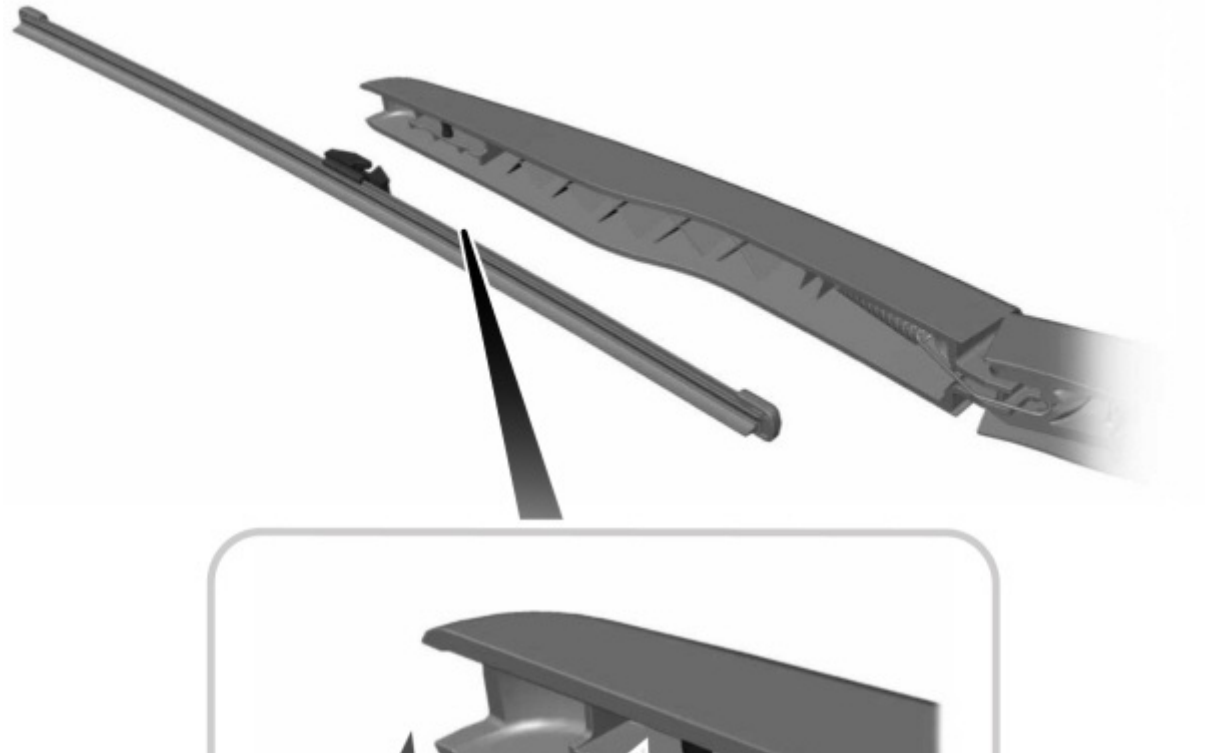
7. Remove the wiper blade.

Note: Make sure that the wiper arm does not spring back against the glass when the wiper blade is not attached.

8. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

Note: Make sure that the wiper blade locks into place.
Your vehicle may be equipped with a heated wiper park feature that allows the wipers to operate in cold temperatures. See **Switching the Heated Wiper Park On and Off**.

Replacing the Rear Wiper Blades



1. Lift the wiper arm.

Note: Do not hold the wiper blade to lift the wiper arm.
Note: Do not lift the wiper arm beyond the limited service-up position, as this might cause damage to the wiper arm. The limited service-up position is intended to protect the wiper arm against car washes.

2. Remove the wiper blade.

Note: Make sure that the wiper arm does not spring back against the glass when the wiper blade is not attached.

3. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

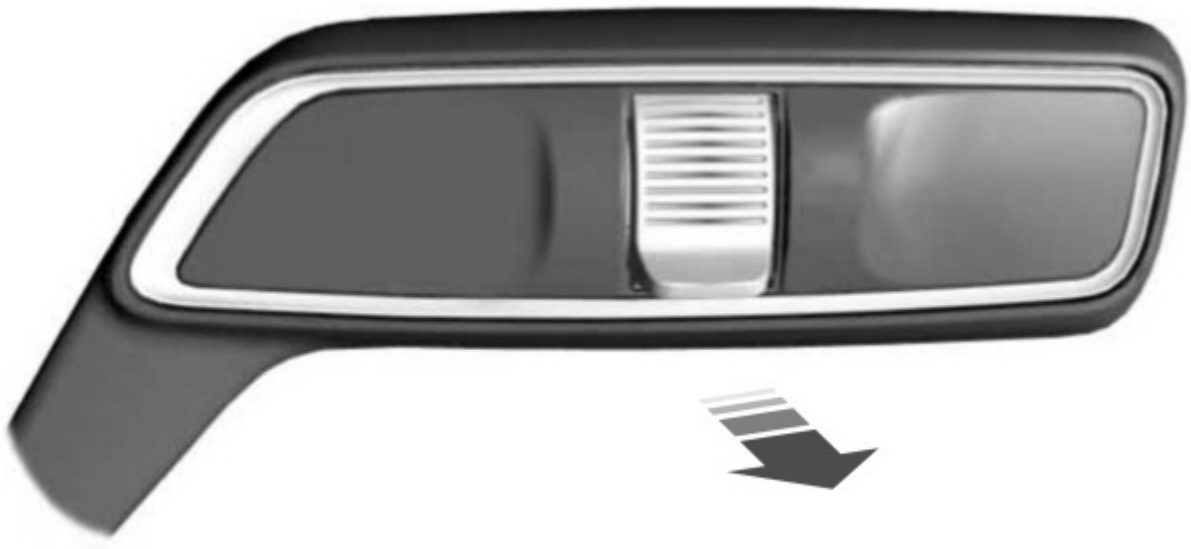
Note: Make sure that the wiper blade locks into place.

Washer Precautions

WARNING: If you operate your vehicle in temperatures below 41 °F (5 °C), use washer fluid with antifreeze protection. Failure to use washer fluid with antifreeze protection in cold weather could result in impaired windshield vision and increase the risk of injury or accident.

Do not operate the washers when the washer reservoir is empty. This could cause the washer pump to overheat.
Keep the outside of the windshield clean. The rain sensor is very sensitive and the wipers may operate if dirt, mist or insects hit the windshield.

Using the Windshield Washer



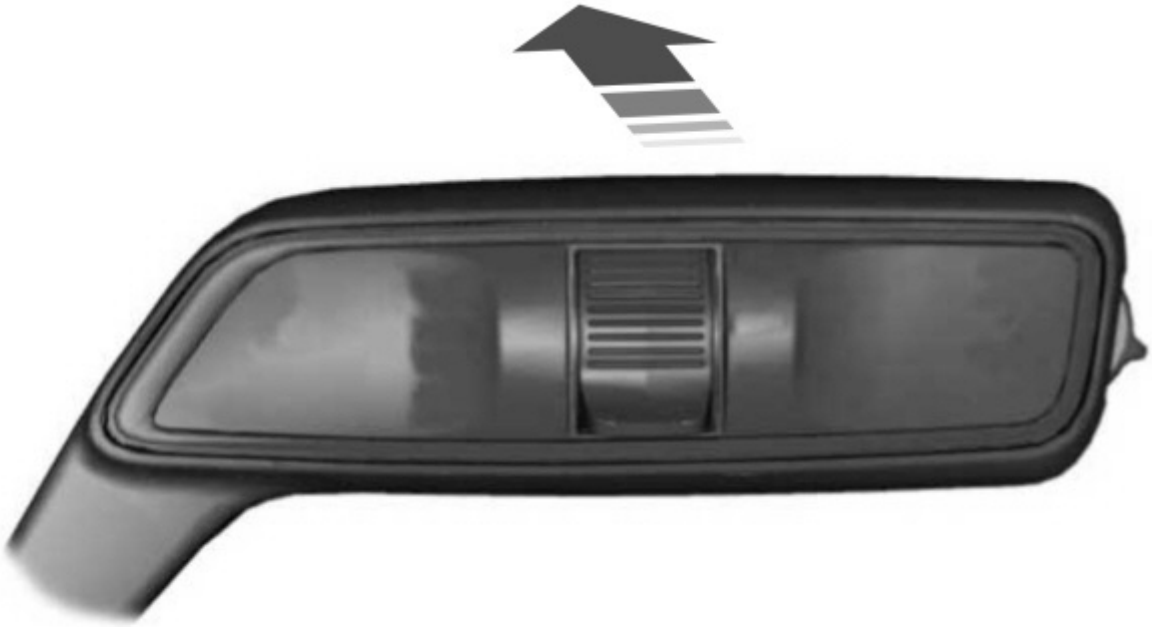
Pull the lever toward you to operate the windshield washer.

Note: A courtesy wipe occurs a short time after the wipers stop to clear any remaining washer fluid when switched on. See **Switching the Courtesy Wipe On and Off**.

Switching the Courtesy Wipe On and Off

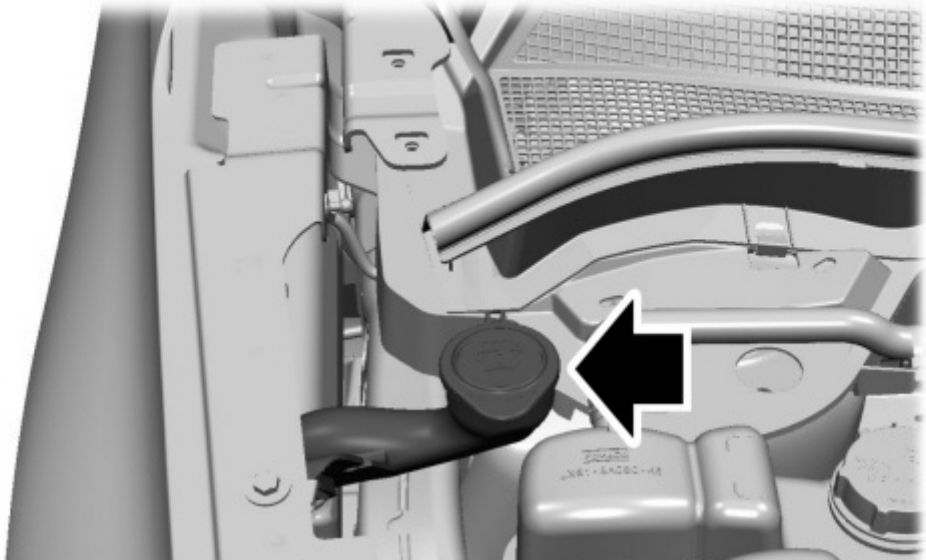
1. From the settings menu, press Vehicle. See **Center Display**.
2. Press Wipers.
3. Switch Courtesy wipe on or off.

Using the Rear Window Washer



Push the lever away from you to operate the rear window washer.

Adding Washer Fluid



Washer Fluid Specification

Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	Fill as required.

Materials

Name	Specification
Motorcraft® Premium Windshield Wash Concentrate with Bitterant ZC-32-B2	WSS-M14P19-A

Wipers and Washers – Warning Lamps

 Illuminates when the windshield washer fluid is low for vehicles equipped with a washer fluid level sensor.

Wipers and Washers – Frequently Asked Questions

Why are there streaks and smears on the windshield?

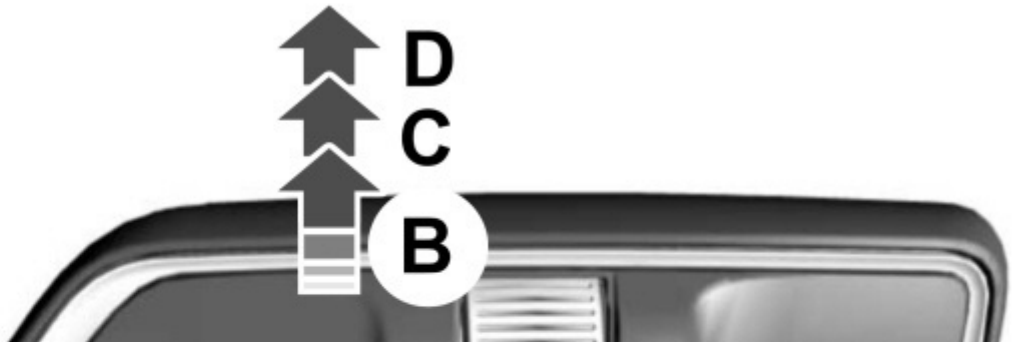
- The wiper blades could be dirty, worn or damaged. Check the wiper blades. See **Checking the Wiper Blades**. If the wiper blades are dirty, clean them with washer fluid or water applied with a soft sponge or cloth. If the wiper blades are worn or damaged, install new ones. See **Replacing the Front Wiper Blades**.

Wipers

Wiper Precautions

Do not operate the wipers on a dry windshield. This could scratch the glass or damage the wiper blades. Use the windshield washers before wiping a dry windshield.
Fully defrost the windshield before you switch the windshield wipers on.
Switch the windshield wipers off before entering a car wash.

Switching Windshield Wipers On and Off



A Single wipe.
B Intermittent wipe/Auto wipe.
C Normal wipe.
D High-speed wipe.

Push the lever up or down to operate the windshield wipers.

Autowipers (If Equipped)

What Are Autowipers

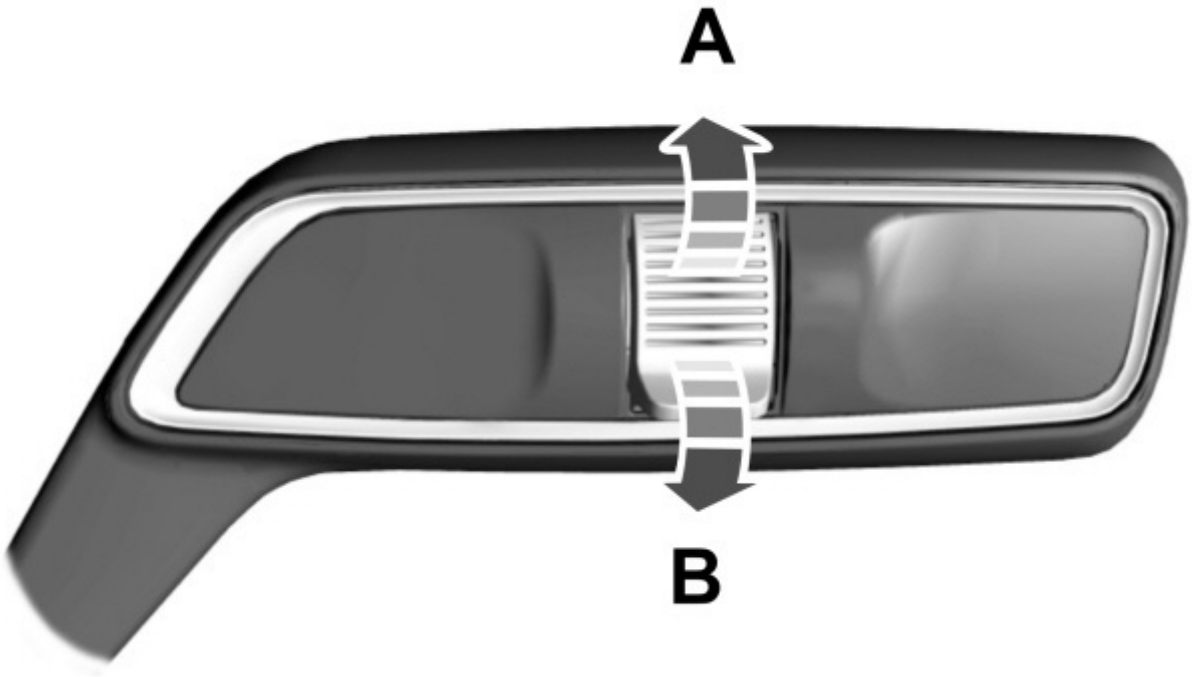
Autowipers, when turned on, automatically control the speed and frequency of the windshield wipers if the rain sensors detect moisture on the windshield.
Note: Keep the outside of the windshield clean. The rain sensor is very sensitive and the wipers may operate if dirt, mist or insects hit the windshield.

Autowipers Settings

1. From the settings menu, press Vehicle. See **Center Display**.
2. Press Wipers.
3. Switch Rain sensing on or off.

Note: When you switch the feature off, the wipers do not operate based on the rain sensor. When you switch on the windshield wipers to the intermittent wipe position with the feature on, the wipers use the wipe speed set by the rotary control.

Adjusting the Sensitivity of the Rain Sensor



A Image not found or type unknown High sensitivity.
B Image not found or type unknown Low sensitivity.

Use the rotary control to set the sensitivity of the rain sensor.
When you select high sensitivity, the wipers operate when the sensor detects a small amount of water on the windshield.
When you select low sensitivity, the wipers operate when the sensor detects a large amount of water on the windshield.

Reverse Wipe

What Is Reverse Wipe

Reverse wipe turns on the rear window wiper when you shift into reverse (R) and the windshield wipers are on.

Reverse Wipe Settings

1. From the settings menu, press Vehicle. See **Center Display**.
2. Press Wipers.
3. Switch Rear wiper on or off.

Washers

Washer Precautions

WARNING: If you operate your vehicle in temperatures below 41 °F (5 °C), use washer fluid with antifreeze protection. Failure to use washer fluid with antifreeze protection in cold weather could result in impaired windshield vision and increase the risk of injury or accident.

Do not operate the washers when the washer reservoir is empty. This could cause the washer pump to overheat.
Keep the outside of the windshield clean. The rain sensor is very sensitive and the wipers may operate if dirt, mist or insects hit the windshield.

Using the Windshield Washer

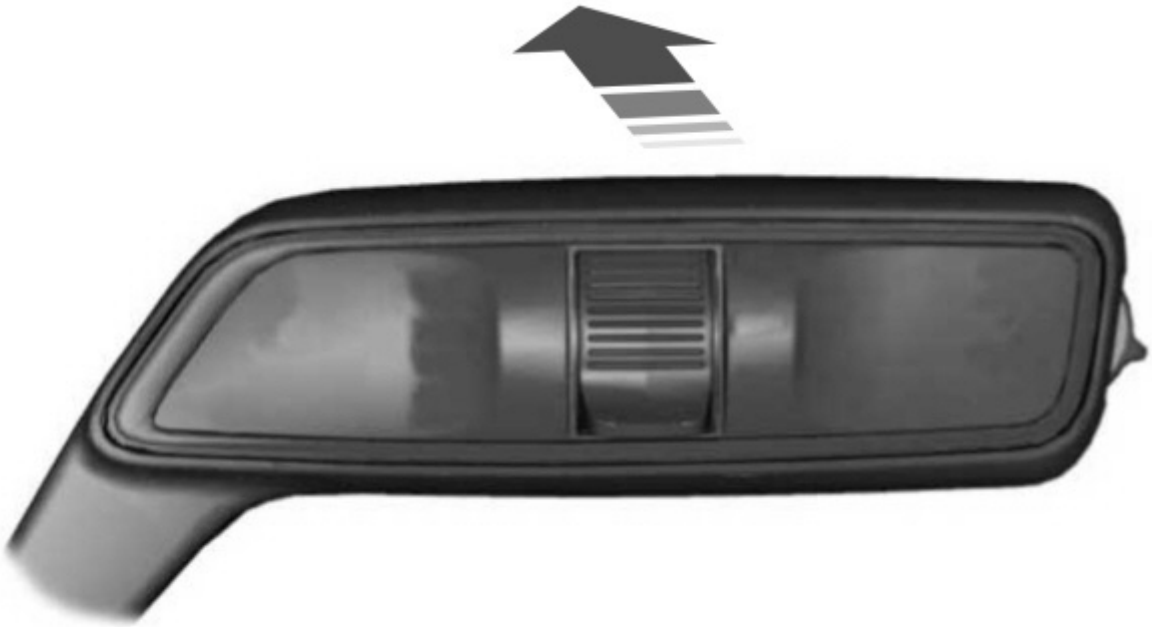


 Pull the lever toward you to operate the windshield washer.
Note: A courtesy wipe occurs a short time after the wipers stop to clear any remaining washer fluid when switched on. See **Switching the Courtesy Wipe On and Off**.

Switching the Courtesy Wipe On and Off

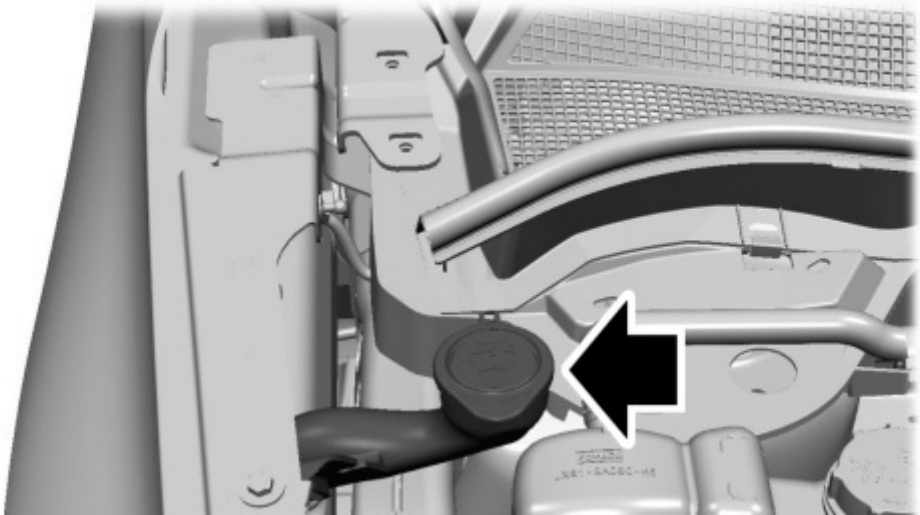
1. From the settings menu, press Vehicle. See **Center Display**.
2. Press Wipers.
3. Switch Courtesy wipe on or off.

Using the Rear Window Washer



Push the lever away from you to operate the rear window washer.

Adding Washer Fluid



Washer Fluid Specification

Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	Fill as required.

Materials

Name	Specification
Motorcraft® Premium Windshield Wash Concentrate with Bitterant ZC-32-B2	WSS-M14P19-A

Wipers and Washers – Troubleshooting

Wipers and Washers – Warning Lamps

 Illuminates when the windshield washer fluid is low for vehicles equipped with a washer fluid level sensor.

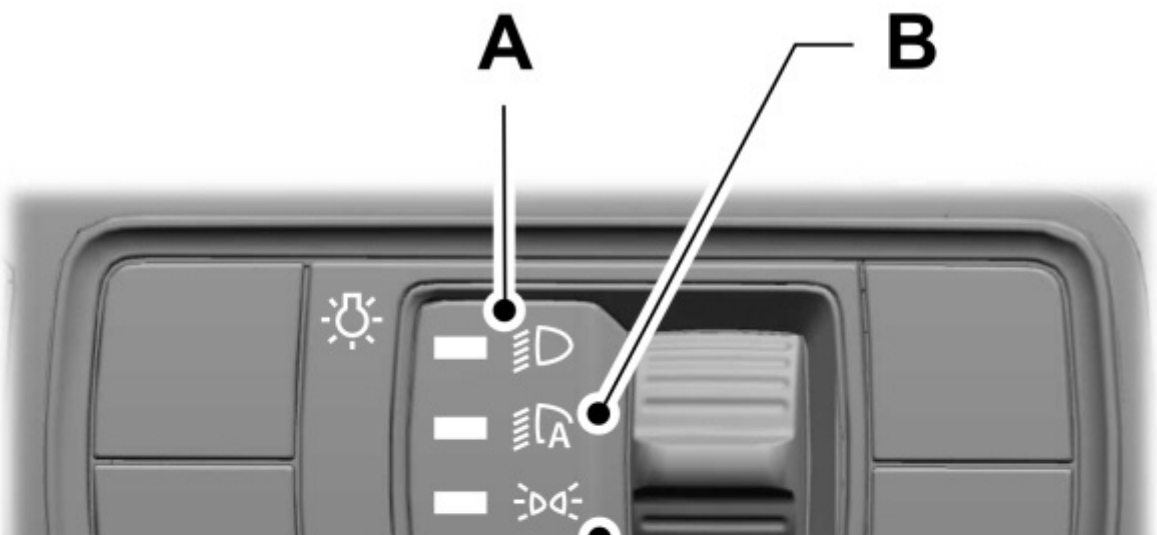
Wipers and Washers – Frequently Asked Questions

Why are there streaks and smears on the windshield?

- The wiper blades could be dirty, worn or damaged. Check the wiper blades. See **Checking the Wiper Blades**. If the wiper blades are dirty, clean them with washer fluid or water applied with a soft sponge or cloth. If the wiper blades are worn or damaged, install new ones. See **Replacing the Front Wiper Blades**.

Exterior Lighting

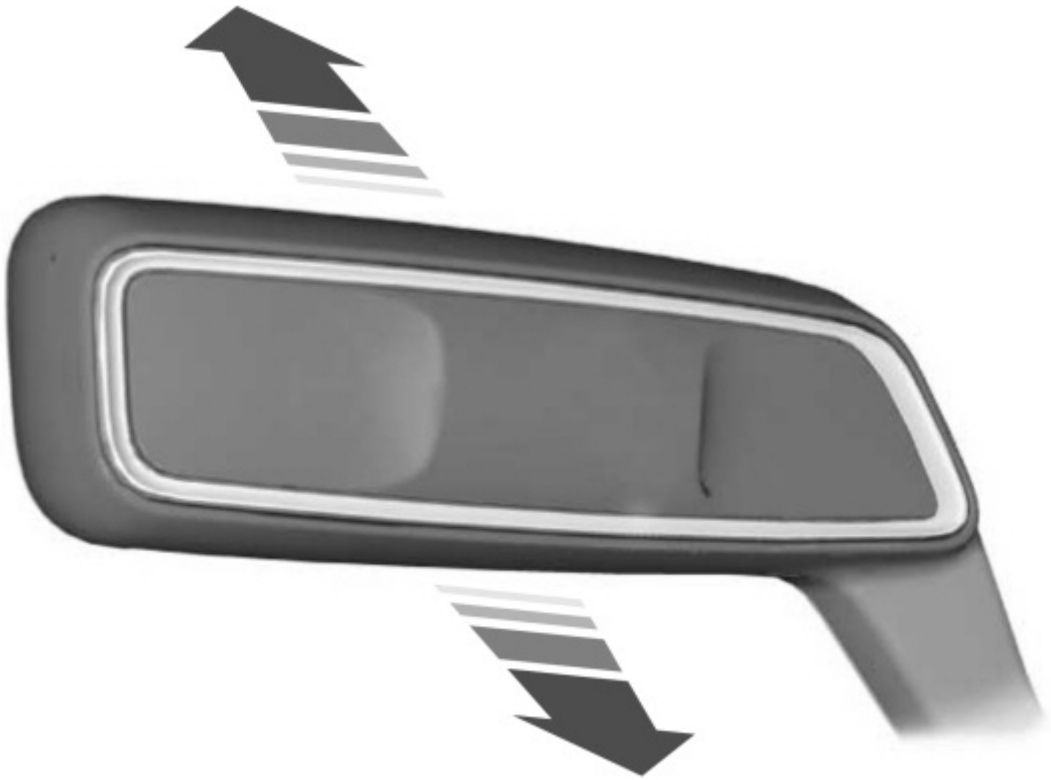
Exterior Lighting Control



A Headlamps on.
B Autolamps on.
C Parking lamps on.
D Lamps off.

Press the toggle switch upward or downward to make a selection.
Note: The lighting control defaults to autolamps each time you switch your vehicle on.

Using the High Beam Headlamps



Push the lever away from you to switch the high beam on.
Push the lever forward again or pull the lever toward you to switch the high beams off.
Slightly pull the lever toward you and release it to flash the headlamps.
Note: Continuous activation only with headlamps on.

Switching Headlamp Exit Delay On and Off

To switch headlamp exit delay on, pull the turn signal lever toward you when the headlamps are off and the ignition is off. A short tone sounds when the system is on.
To switch headlamp exit delay off, pull the turn signal lever toward you again or switch your vehicle on.
Note: The headlamps turn off after three minutes with any door open or 30 seconds after the last door closes.

Headlamp Indicators

Lamps On
Illuminates when you switch the low beam headlamps or the parking lamps on.
Headlamp High Beam

 Illuminates when you switch the high beam headlamps on.

Headlamps – Frequently Asked Questions

Why is there condensation in the headlamps?

- Headlamps have vents to accommodate normal changes in air pressure. Condensation can be a natural by-product of this design. When moist air enters the lamp assembly through the vents, there is a possibility that condensation can occur when the temperature is cold. When normal condensation occurs, a fine mist can form on the interior of the lens. The fine mist eventually clears and exits through the vents during normal operation.

How much condensation is acceptable?

- The presence of a fine mist or small droplets without streak marks is normal condensation. This may occur under certain environmental conditions and will clear on its own.

How long does it take for the acceptable condensation to clear?

- Clearing time may vary depending on the outside temperature and environment, the drive duration and speed.

How much condensation is unacceptable?

- A water puddle inside the lamp. Streaks, drip marks or large droplets present on the interior of the lens.

What should I do if unacceptable condensation is present?

- Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Why do my headlamps turn off when I have them switched on when I switch my vehicle off?

- The battery saver turns the headlamps off after a short period of time after you switch your vehicle off.

What Are Autolamps

WARNING: The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. You may need to override the system if it does not turn the headlamps on in low visibility conditions, for example daytime fog.

Autolamps turn the headlamps on in low light situations or when the windshield wipers operate.

Autolamp Settings

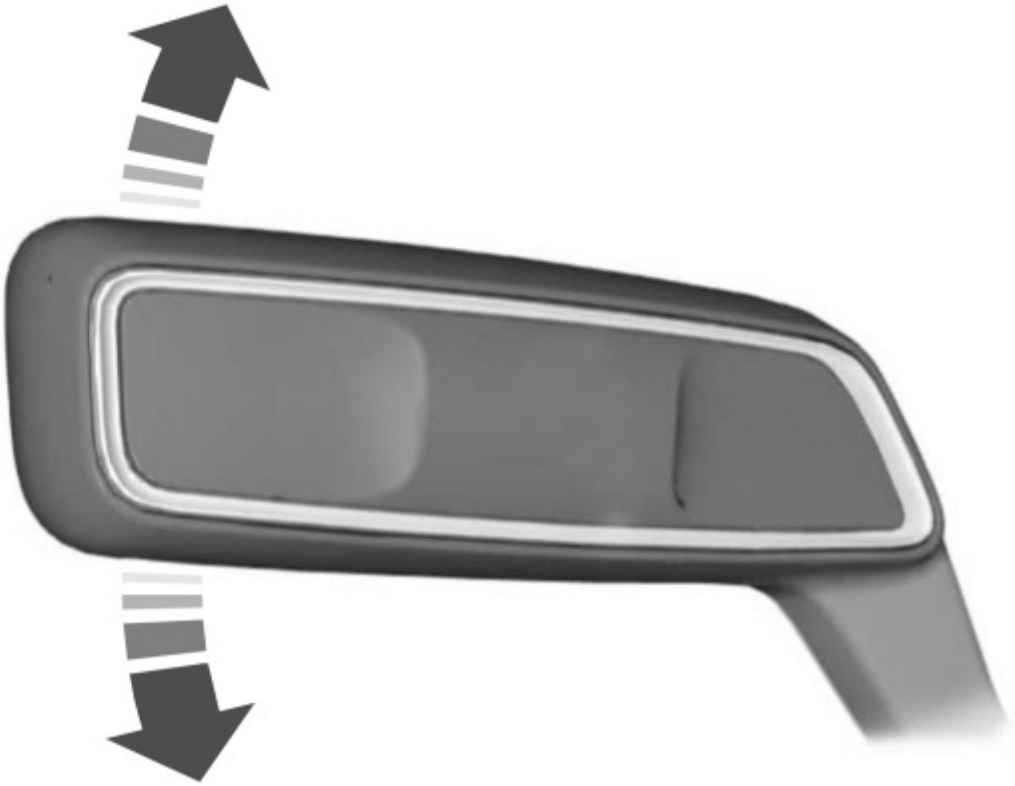
Autolamp Exit Delay
You can adjust the amount of time the autolamps remain on after you switch off your vehicle. Use the touchscreen to choose a delay setting.

1. From the settings menu, press Vehicle. See **Center Display**.

2. Press Lighting.
3. Press Autolamp Delay.
4. Select a setting.

Note: If the setting is off, the external lamps switch off immediately when you shut down your vehicle.
Note: You can pull the turn signal toward you to manually switch off the autolamp exit delay.

Using the Turn Signal Lamps



Push the lever up or down to switch the turn signal lamps on.
Set the lever to the middle position to switch the turn signal lamps off.
Note: Tap the lever up or down to make the turn signal lamps flash three times.
Turn Signal Lamp Indicator
It flashes when you switch the turn signal lamps on.
Note: An increase in the rate of flashing warns of a failed turn signal lamp.

Switching the Daytime Running Lamps On and Off - Vehicles With: Configurable Daytime Running Lamps

WARNING: The daytime running lamps system does not activate the rear lamps and may not provide adequate lighting during low visibility driving conditions. Make sure you switch the headlamps on, as appropriate, during all low visibility conditions. Failure to do so may result in a crash.

1. From the settings menu, press Vehicle. See **Center Display**.
2. Press Lighting.

3. Switch Daytime Running Lights on or off.

The daytime running lamps turn on when all of the following occur:

- You switch the system on.
- You switch the vehicle on.
- The transmission is not in park (P) for vehicles with automatic transmissions or you release the parking brake for vehicles with manual transmissions.
- The lighting control is in the autolamps position.
- The headlamps are off.

Note: Other lighting control positions do not turn on the daytime running lamps.

Switching the Daytime Running Lamps On and Off - Vehicles With: Daytime Running Lamps (DRL)

WARNING: The daytime running lamps system may not activate the rear lamps and may not provide adequate lighting during low visibility driving conditions. Make sure you switch the headlamps on, as appropriate, during all low visibility conditions. Failure to do so may result in a crash.

Daytime running lamps are always on unless you switch on the headlamps or your vehicle is in park (P).

Switching Welcome Lighting On and Off

Welcome lighting slowly turns on the exterior lamps when you approach your vehicle with an authenticated device or unlock the doors.

1. From the settings menu, press Vehicle. See **Center Display**.
2. Press Lighting.
3. Switch Welcome Lighting on or off.

Exterior Lamps On Audible Warning

Sounds when you open the driver door and the exterior lamps are on.

How Does Automatic High Beam Control Work

Automatic high beam control turns the high beams on if it is dark enough and no other traffic is present. If it detects an approaching vehicle’s headlamps or tail lamps, or street lighting ahead, the system turns the high beams off.
A camera sensor, centrally mounted behind the windshield of your vehicle, continuously monitors conditions to turn the high beams on and off.



A Without automatic high beam control.
B With automatic high beam control.

Automatic High Beam Control Precautions

WARNING: The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. You may need to override the system if it does not turn the high beams on or off.

WARNING: The system may not switch the high beams off if the lights of oncoming vehicles are hidden by obstacles, for example guard rails.

WARNING: You may need to override the system when approaching other road users.

WARNING: In situations with poor visibility, such as fog, heavy rain or other inclement weather, you may need to override or completely switch off the system.

Automatic High Beam Control Requirements

The system turns the high beams on if all of the following occur:

- You switch the system on.
- You set the lighting control to the autolamps position.
- The ambient light level is low enough that you require high beams.
- There is no traffic in front of your vehicle.
- The vehicle speed is greater than approximately 25 mph (40 km/h).

Automatic High Beam Control Limitations

The system turns the high beams off if any of the following occur:

- You switch the system off.
- You set the lighting control to any position except autolamps.
- The ambient light level is high enough that you do not require high beams.
- The system detects an approaching vehicle's headlamps or a leading vehicle's tail lamps.
- The system detects severe rain, snow or fog.
- The system detects street lighting.
- The camera has reduced visibility.
- The vehicle speed falls below approximately 19 mph (30 km/h).

Note: The deactivation speed may be lower on curves.

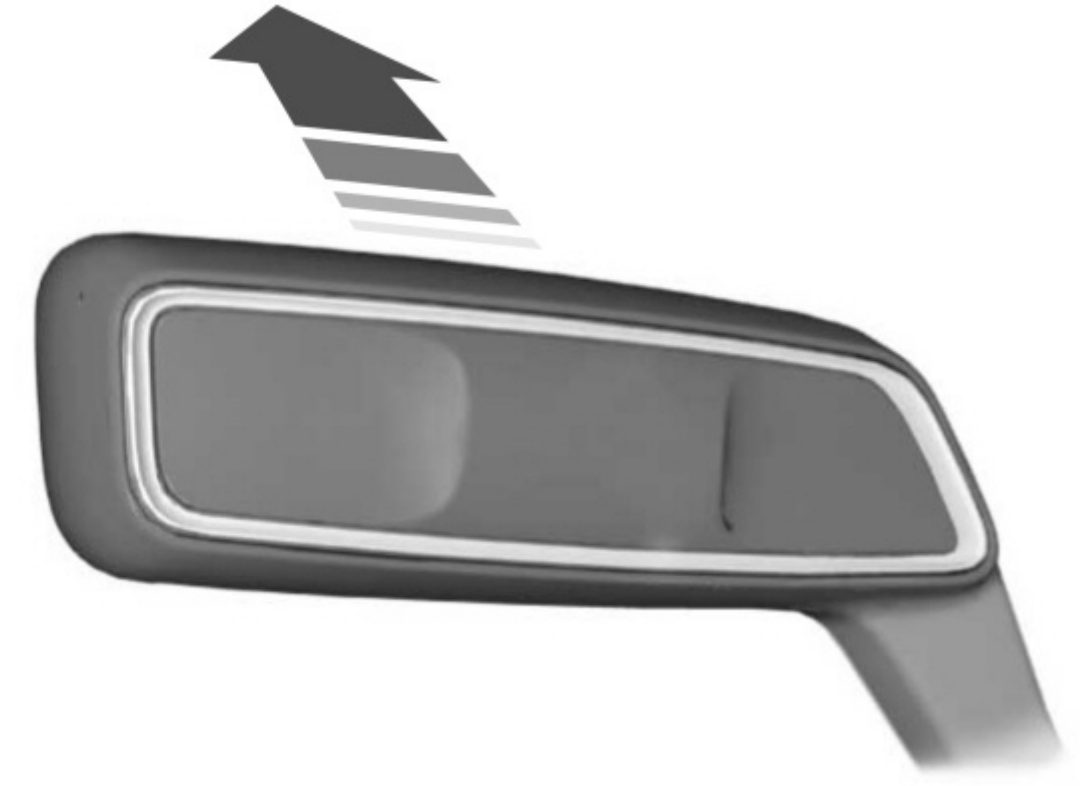
Switching Automatic High Beam Control On and Off

1. From the settings menu, press Vehicle. See **Center Display**.
2. Press Lighting.
3. Switch Auto High Beam on or off.

Automatic High Beam Control Indicators

 Illuminates to confirm when the system is ready to assist.

Overriding Automatic High Beam Control



Push the lever away from you to switch the high beam on.
Push the lever away from you again to switch the high beams off.
Push the lever away from you for a third time to switch automatic high beam control back on.

Automatic High Beam Control – Information Messages

Message	Details
Front Camera Low Visibility Clean Screen	The camera has reduced visibility.Clean the windshield.If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Front Camera Temporarily Not Available	The camera has malfunctioned.Wait a short period of time for the camera to cool down.If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Front Camera Malfunction Service Required	The camera has malfunctioned.Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

How Does Adaptive Front Lighting Work

Adaptive front lighting adjusts the headlamps to improve visibility in certain situations.
Note: There are several types of adaptive front lighting. Availability and activation conditions may vary based on your vehicle.
Switching Adaptive Front Lighting On or Off
Set the lighting control to the autolamps position to use adaptive front lighting.
Note: Other lighting control positions do not turn on adaptive front lighting.
Adaptive Front Lighting Types

Name	Details
Speed Dependent Light Mode	Provides additional light on the road depending on your vehicle speed and weather conditions.
Dynamic Bending Light	Directs the light beam based on your steering around a curve. Additionally, lane markings detected by the front windshield camera and map data also help direct the light beam.
Static Bending Light	Adds lighting at the inside of a curve or corner when you are turning the steering wheel.
Sign Based Light Mode	Activates targeted lighting when certain traffic signs are detected in intersection and roundabout scenarios.

Note: This feature may use map data. We recommend having all connected vehicle settings enabled to allow the map content to be updated to the latest version. See **Connected Vehicle Settings**. If your vehicle does not receive automatic updates, take your vehicle to an authorized dealer to receive periodic updates.

Switching Adaptive Front Lighting On and Off

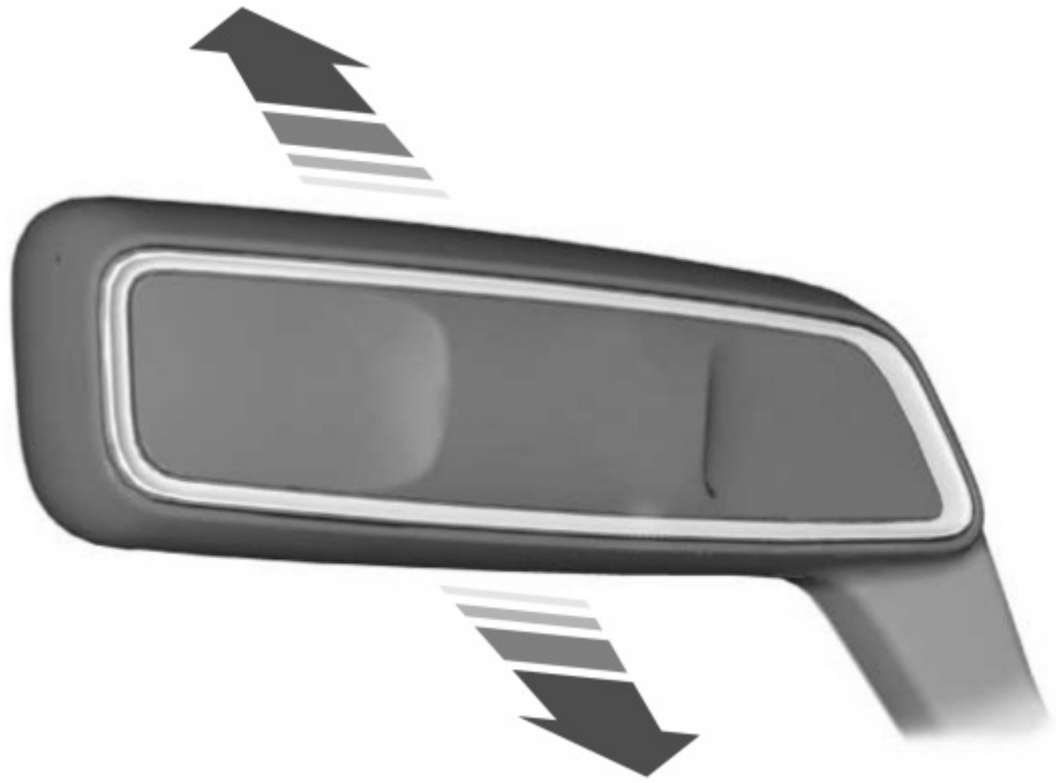
Set the lighting control to the autolamps position to use adaptive front lighting.
Note: Other lighting control positions do not turn on adaptive front lighting.

Adaptive Front Lighting – Information Messages

Message	Details
Front Camera Low Visibility Clean Screen	Displays when the front camera sensor has reduced visibility.Clean the windshield.If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Front Camera Temporarily Not Available	Displays if the front camera sensor malfunctions.Wait a short period of time for the sensor to cool down.If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Advanced front lighting features Temporarily unavailable See manual	Displays when adaptive front lighting malfunctions. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Check Headlamp System See Manual	Displays when adaptive front lighting malfunctions. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Headlamps

Using the High Beam Headlamps



Push the lever away from you to switch the high beam on.
Push the lever forward again or pull the lever toward you to switch the high beams off.
Slightly pull the lever toward you and release it to flash the headlamps.
Note: Continuous activation only with headlamps on.

Switching Headlamp Exit Delay On and Off

To switch headlamp exit delay on, pull the turn signal lever toward you when the headlamps are off and the ignition is off. A short tone sounds when the system is on.
To switch headlamp exit delay off, pull the turn signal lever toward you again or switch your vehicle on.
Note: The headlamps turn off after three minutes with any door open or 30 seconds after the last door closes.

Headlamp Indicators

Lamps On
Illuminates when you switch the low beam headlamps or the parking lamps on.
Headlamp High Beam
Illuminates when you switch the high beam headlamps on.

Headlamps – Troubleshooting

Headlamps – Frequently Asked Questions

Why is there condensation in the headlamps?

- Headlamps have vents to accommodate normal changes in air pressure. Condensation can be a natural by-product of this design. When moist air enters the lamp assembly through the vents, there is a possibility that condensation can occur when the temperature is cold. When normal condensation occurs, a fine mist can form on the interior of the lens. The fine mist eventually clears and exits through the vents during normal operation.

How much condensation is acceptable?

- The presence of a fine mist or small droplets without streak marks is normal condensation. This may occur under certain environmental conditions and will clear on its own.

How long does it take for the acceptable condensation to clear?

- Clearing time may vary depending on the outside temperature and environment, the drive duration and speed.

How much condensation is unacceptable?

- A water puddle inside the lamp. Streaks, drip marks or large droplets present on the interior of the lens.

What should I do if unacceptable condensation is present?

- Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Why do my headlamps turn off when I have them switched on when I switch my vehicle off?

- The battery saver turns the headlamps off after a short period of time after you switch your vehicle off.

Autolamps

What Are Autolamps

WARNING: The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. You may need to override the system if it does not turn the headlamps on in low visibility conditions, for example daytime fog.

Autolamps turn the headlamps on in low light situations or when the windshield wipers operate.

Autolamp Settings

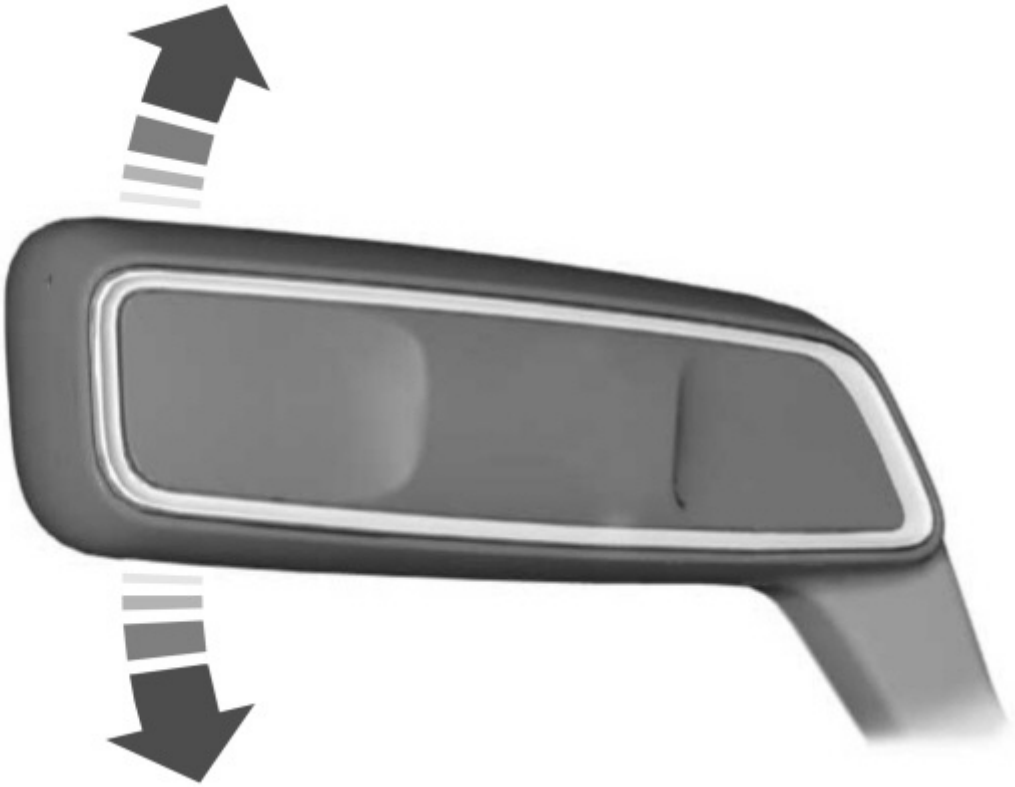
Autolamp Exit Delay
You can adjust the amount of time the autolamps remain on after you switch off your vehicle. Use the touchscreen to choose a delay setting.

1. From the settings menu, press Vehicle. See **Center Display**.
2. Press Lighting.
3. Press Autolamp Delay.
4. Select a setting.

Note: If the setting is off, the external lamps switch off immediately when you shut down your vehicle.
Note: You can pull the turn signal toward you to manually switch off the autolamp exit delay.

Exterior Lamps

Using the Turn Signal Lamps



Push the lever up or down to switch the turn signal lamps on.
Set the lever to the middle position to switch the turn signal lamps off.
Note: Tap the lever up or down to make the turn signal lamps flash three times.
Turn Signal Lamp Indicator
It flashes when you switch the turn signal lamps on.
Note: An increase in the rate of flashing warns of a failed turn signal lamp.

Switching the Daytime Running Lamps On and Off - Vehicles With: Configurable Daytime Running Lamps

WARNING: The daytime running lamps system does not activate the rear lamps and may not provide adequate lighting during low visibility driving conditions. Make sure you switch the headlamps on, as appropriate, during all low visibility conditions. Failure to do so may result in a crash.

1. From the settings menu, press Vehicle. See **Center Display**.
2. Press Lighting.
3. Switch Daytime Running Lights on or off.

The daytime running lamps turn on when all of the following occur:

- You switch the system on.
- You switch the vehicle on.
- The transmission is not in park (P) for vehicles with automatic transmissions or you release the parking brake for vehicles with manual transmissions.
- The lighting control is in the autolamps position.
- The headlamps are off.

Note: Other lighting control positions do not turn on the daytime running lamps.

Switching the Daytime Running Lamps On and Off - Vehicles With: Daytime Running Lamps (DRL)

WARNING: The daytime running lamps system may not activate the rear lamps and may not provide adequate lighting during low visibility driving conditions. Make sure you switch the headlamps on, as appropriate, during all low visibility conditions. Failure to do so may result in a crash.

Daytime running lamps are always on unless you switch on the headlamps or your vehicle is in park (P).

Switching Welcome Lighting On and Off

Welcome lighting slowly turns on the exterior lamps when you approach your vehicle with an authenticated device or unlock the doors.

1. From the settings menu, press Vehicle. See **Center Display**.
2. Press Lighting.
3. Switch Welcome Lighting on or off.

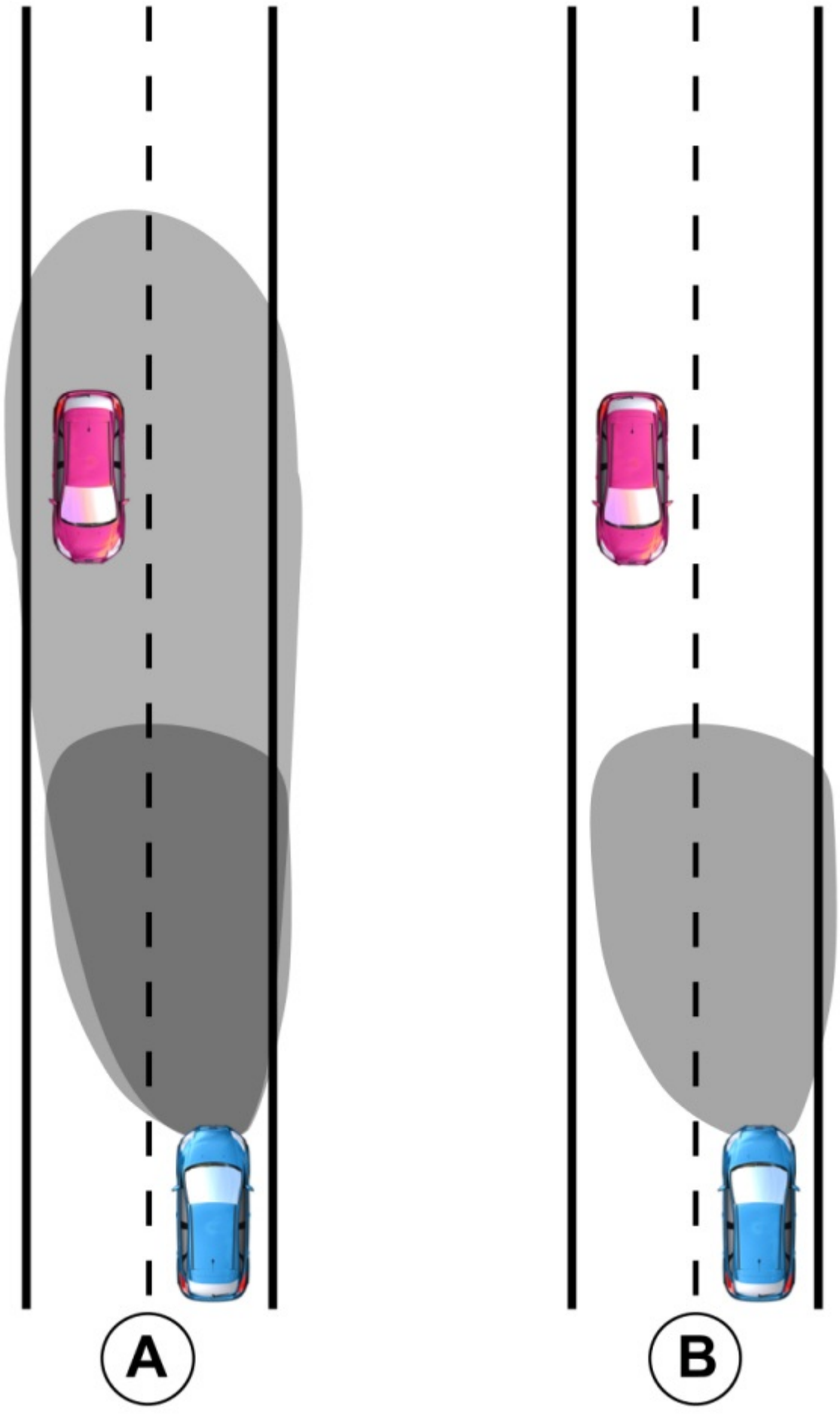
Exterior Lamps On Audible Warning

Sounds when you open the driver door and the exterior lamps are on.

Automatic High Beam Control

How Does Automatic High Beam Control Work

Automatic high beam control turns the high beams on if it is dark enough and no other traffic is present. If it detects an approaching vehicle’s headlamps or tail lamps, or street lighting ahead, the system turns the high beams off.
A camera sensor, centrally mounted behind the windshield of your vehicle, continuously monitors conditions to turn the high beams on and off.



A Without automatic high beam control.
B With automatic high beam control.

Automatic High Beam Control Precautions

WARNING: The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. You may need to override the system if it does not turn the high beams on or off.

WARNING: The system may not switch the high beams off if the lights of oncoming vehicles are hidden by obstacles, for example guard rails.

WARNING: You may need to override the system when approaching other road users.

WARNING: In situations with poor visibility, such as fog, heavy rain or other inclement weather, you may need to override or completely switch off the system.

Automatic High Beam Control Requirements

The system turns the high beams on if all of the following occur:

- You switch the system on.
- You set the lighting control to the autolamps position.
- The ambient light level is low enough that you require high beams.
- There is no traffic in front of your vehicle.
- The vehicle speed is greater than approximately 25 mph (40 km/h).

Automatic High Beam Control Limitations

The system turns the high beams off if any of the following occur:

- You switch the system off.
- You set the lighting control to any position except autolamps.
- The ambient light level is high enough that you do not require high beams.
- The system detects an approaching vehicle's headlamps or a leading vehicle's tail lamps.
- The system detects severe rain, snow or fog.
- The system detects street lighting.
- The camera has reduced visibility.
- The vehicle speed falls below approximately 19 mph (30 km/h).

Note: The deactivation speed may be lower on curves.

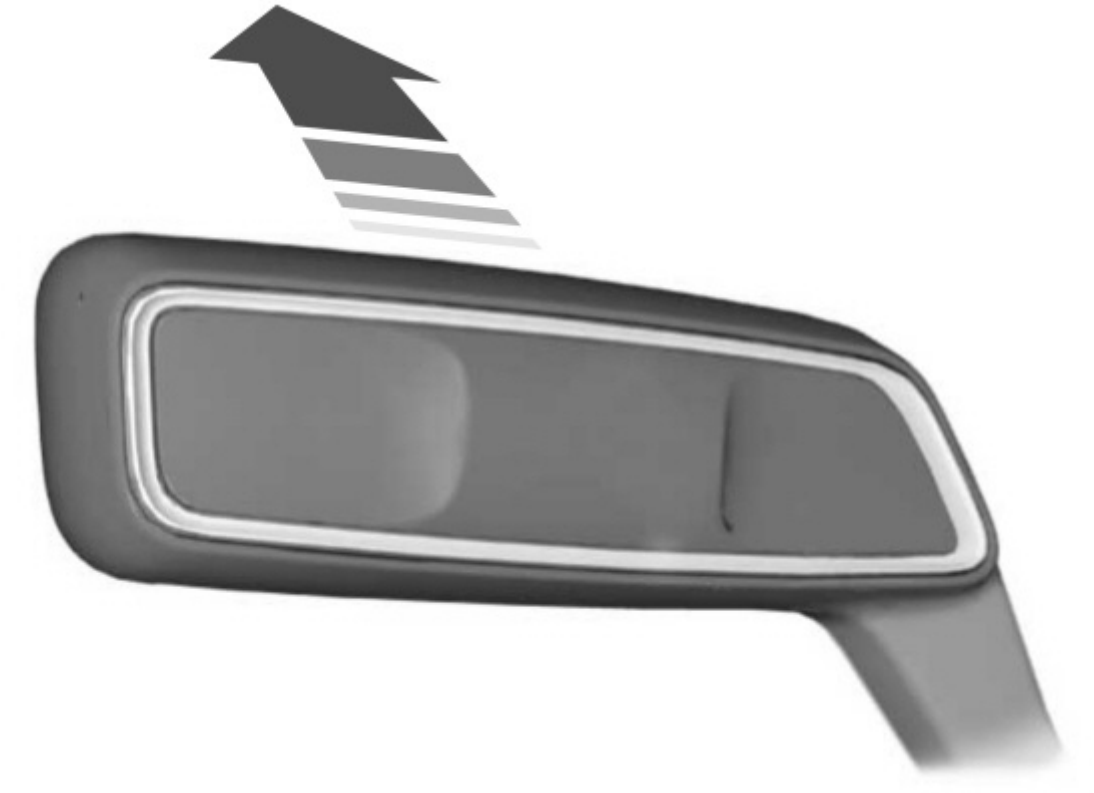
Switching Automatic High Beam Control On and Off

1. From the settings menu, press Vehicle. See **Center Display**.
2. Press Lighting.
3. Switch Auto High Beam on or off.

Automatic High Beam Control Indicators

 Illuminates to confirm when the system is ready to assist.

Overriding Automatic High Beam Control



Push the lever away from you to switch the high beam on.
Push the lever away from you again to switch the high beams off.
Push the lever away from you for a third time to switch automatic high beam control back on.

Automatic High Beam Control – Troubleshooting

Automatic High Beam Control – Information Messages

Message	Details
Front Camera Low Visibility Clean Screen	The camera has reduced visibility.Clean the windshield.If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Front Camera Temporarily Not Available	The camera has malfunctioned.Wait a short period of time for the camera to cool down.If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Front Camera Malfunction Service Required	The camera has malfunctioned.Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Adaptive Front Lighting (If Equipped)

How Does Adaptive Front Lighting Work

Adaptive front lighting adjusts the headlamps to improve visibility in certain situations.

Note: There are several types of adaptive front lighting. Availability and activation conditions may vary based on your vehicle.
Switching Adaptive Front Lighting On or Off
Set the lighting control to the autolamps position to use adaptive front lighting.
Note: Other lighting control positions do not turn on adaptive front lighting.
Adaptive Front Lighting Types

Name	Details
Speed Dependent Light Mode	Provides additional light on the road depending on your vehicle speed and weather conditions.
Dynamic Bending Light	Directs the light beam based on your steering around a curve. Additionally, lane markings detected by the front windshield camera and map data also help direct the light beam.
Static Bending Light	Adds lighting at the inside of a curve or corner when you are turning the steering wheel.
Sign Based Light Mode	Activates targeted lighting when certain traffic signs are detected in intersection and roundabout scenarios.

Note: This feature may use map data. We recommend having all connected vehicle settings enabled to allow the map content to be updated to the latest version. See **Connected Vehicle Settings**. If your vehicle does not receive automatic updates, take your vehicle to an authorized dealer to receive periodic updates.

Switching Adaptive Front Lighting On and Off

Set the lighting control to the autolamps position to use adaptive front lighting.
Note: Other lighting control positions do not turn on adaptive front lighting.

Adaptive Front Lighting – Troubleshooting (If Equipped)

Adaptive Front Lighting – Information Messages

Message	Details
Front Camera Low Visibility Clean Screen	Displays when the front camera sensor has reduced visibility.Clean the windshield.If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Front Camera Temporarily Not Available	Displays if the front camera sensor malfunctions.Wait a short period of time for the sensor to cool down.If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Advanced front lighting features Temporarily unavailable See manual	Displays when adaptive front lighting malfunctions. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Check Headlamp System See Manual	Displays when adaptive front lighting malfunctions. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Interior Lighting

Switching All of the Interior Lamps On and Off

The lamps turn on under the following conditions:

- You open any door.
- You press a button on the remote control.
- You press the all lamps on button on the overhead console.

 Press the button on the overhead console to switch all interior lamps on or off.

Switching the Front Interior Lamps On and Off



The front interior lamp switches are on the overhead console.
Note: The position of each button on the overhead console depends on your vehicle.
Individual Map Lamps

 Press to switch the left-hand individual dome lamp on and off.

 Press to switch the right-hand individual dome lamp on and off.

Switching the Rear Interior Lamps On and Off



The rear interior lamps may be above the rear seat or above the rear windows.
Press to switch the lamps on or off.
Note: If you switch the rear lamps on through the overhead console, you cannot switch them off with the rear lamp switch.

What Is the Interior Lamp Function

The interior lamp function switches the courtesy and door lamps on or off.

Switching the Interior Lamp Function On and Off

Press to switch the interior lamp function on and off.
Note: The indicator lamp illuminates amber when the door function is off.

Adjusting the Instrument Panel Lighting Brightness

The instrument lighting dimmer buttons are on the lighting control.
Repeatedly press one of the buttons to adjust the brightness.

Ambient Lighting

The ambient lighting system illuminates the interior of your vehicle in your choice of colors.
The ambient lighting controls are on the touchscreen and to access, press Ambient Lighting from the settings menu.
Switching Ambient Lighting On
Press the desired color.
Changing the Color
Press the desired color.
Adjusting the Brightness



Press a color and drag the slider up or down to adjust the ambient lighting intensity.
Switching Ambient Lighting Off
Press a color and drag the slider to zero brightness to switch off the ambient lighting.

Interior Lighting – Frequently Asked Questions

Why do my courtesy lamps or interior lamps turn off when I have them switched on when I switch my vehicle off?

- The battery saver turns the courtesy lamps and interior lamps off after a short period of time after you switch your vehicle off.

Interior Lamp Function

What Is the Interior Lamp Function

The interior lamp function switches the courtesy and door lamps on or off.

Switching the Interior Lamp Function On and Off

 Press to switch the interior lamp function on and off.
Note: The indicator lamp illuminates amber when the door function is off.

Interior Lighting – Troubleshooting

Interior Lighting – Frequently Asked Questions

Why do my courtesy lamps or interior lamps turn off when I have them switched on when I switch my vehicle off?

- The battery saver turns the courtesy lamps and interior lamps off after a short period of time after you switch your vehicle off.

Windows

Opening and Closing the Windows

WARNING: Do not leave children or pets unattended in your vehicle and do not let children play with the power windows. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

WARNING: When closing the power windows, verify that they are free of obstructions and make sure children and pets are not in the proximity of the window openings. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

WARNING: If an obstruction is detected, release the switch and reverse the window immediately. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

WARNING: Do not leave a key or remote control unattended in the vehicle. Children or pets could operate the power windows and could become trapped in a closing window. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

 Press the window control switch to open the window. Lift the window control switch to close the window.

Note: The power windows operate with the ignition on, and for several minutes after you switch the ignition off or until you open a front door.

To reduce wind noise or pulsing noise when one window is open, slightly open the opposite window.

One-Touch Open

Fully press the window control switch and release it. Press again or lift it to stop the window.

One-Touch Close

Fully lift the window control switch and release it.Lift again or press it to stop the window.

Resetting One-Touch Close

Carry out all steps within 30 seconds of starting the sequence.

1. Close the window.
2. Press and hold the window control switch until the window is fully open. Keep the window control switch pressed for a few seconds.
3. Lift and hold the window control switch until the window is fully closed. Keep the window control switch held for a few seconds.
4. Press and hold the window control switch until the window is fully open. Keep the window control switch pressed for a few seconds.
5. Lift and hold the window control switch until the window is fully closed. Keep the window control switch held for a few seconds.

Note: Repeat the procedure if the window does not close when you use one-touch.

What Is Global Opening and Closing

You can use the remote control to open the windows with the ignition off.

Using Global Opening

1. Press and release the unlock button on the remote control.
2. Press and hold the unlock button on the remote control.
3. Release the button when the windows start to open.

Press the lock or the unlock button on the remote control to stop global opening.
Note: You can use global opening for a short period of time when you unlock your vehicle using the remote control.

Switching Global Opening On and Off

1. From the settings menu, press Vehicle.
2. Press Windows.
3. Switch Remote open on or off.

Using Global Closing (If Equipped)

WARNING: When closing the power windows, verify that they are free of obstructions and make sure children and pets are not in the proximity of the window openings. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

1. Press and hold the lock button on the remote control.
2. Release the button when the windows start to close.

Press the lock or the unlock button on the remote control to stop global closing.
Note: Bounce-back is on during global closing. See **What Is Window Bounce-Back**.

Switching Global Closing On and Off

1. From the settings menu, press Vehicle.
2. Press Windows.
3. Switch Remote close on or off.

What Is Window Bounce-Back

The window stops and reverses some distance if it detects an obstacle when closing.

Overriding Window Bounce-Back

WARNING: If you override bounce-back, the window does not reverse if it detects an obstacle. Take care when closing the windows to avoid personal injury or damage to your vehicle.
WARNING: Bounce-back is off until you reset the memory. Take care when closing the windows to avoid personal injury or damage to your vehicle.

Note: The window stops if you release the switch before the window fully closes.

Pull up the window switch and hold within a few seconds of the window reaching the bounce-back position. The window travels up with no bounce-back protection. The window stops if you release the switch before the window fully closes.

Locking the Rear Window Controls

WARNING: When children and pets are in the rear seat, use the power window lockout button to prevent accidental operation of the power windows.

 Press the control to lock or unlock the rear window controls. It illuminates when you lock the rear window controls.

Global Opening and Closing (If Equipped)

What Is Global Opening and Closing

You can use the remote control to open the windows with the ignition off.

Using Global Opening

1. Press and release the unlock button on the remote control.
2. Press and hold the unlock button on the remote control.
3. Release the button when the windows start to open.

Press the lock or the unlock button on the remote control to stop global opening.
Note: You can use global opening for a short period of time when you unlock your vehicle using the remote control.

Switching Global Opening On and Off

1. From the settings menu, press Vehicle.
2. Press Windows.
3. Switch Remote open on or off.

Using Global Closing (If Equipped)

WARNING: When closing the power windows, verify that they are free of obstructions and make sure children and pets are not in the proximity of the window openings. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

1. Press and hold the lock button on the remote control.
2. Release the button when the windows start to close.

Press the lock or the unlock button on the remote control to stop global closing.
Note: Bounce-back is on during global closing. See **What Is Window Bounce-Back**.

Switching Global Closing On and Off

1. From the settings menu, press Vehicle.
2. Press Windows.
3. Switch Remote close on or off.

Window Bounce-Back

What Is Window Bounce-Back

The window stops and reverses some distance if it detects an obstacle when closing.

Overriding Window Bounce-Back

WARNING: If you override bounce-back, the window does not reverse if it detects an obstacle. Take care when closing the windows to avoid personal injury or damage to your vehicle.
WARNING: Bounce-back is off until you reset the memory. Take care when closing the windows to avoid personal injury or damage to your vehicle.

Note: The window stops if you release the switch before the window fully closes.
Pull up the window switch and hold within a few seconds of the window reaching the bounce-back position. The window travels up with no bounce-back protection. The window stops if you release the switch before the window fully closes.

Interior Mirror

Interior Mirror Precautions

WARNING: Do not adjust the mirrors when your vehicle is moving. This could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

Note: Do not clean the mirror housing or glass with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum-based cleaning products.

What Is the Auto-Dimming Interior Mirror

The mirror dims to reduce the effect of bright light from behind. It returns to normal when the bright light from behind is no longer present or if you shift into reverse (R).

Auto-Dimming Interior Mirror Limitations

Do not block the sensors on the front and back of the mirror.
Note: A rear center passenger or raised rear center head restraint could prevent light from reaching the sensor.

Auto-Dimming Interior Mirror

What Is the Auto-Dimming Interior Mirror

The mirror dims to reduce the effect of bright light from behind. It returns to normal when the bright light from behind is no longer present or if you shift into reverse (R).

Auto-Dimming Interior Mirror Limitations

Do not block the sensors on the front and back of the mirror.
Note: A rear center passenger or raised rear center head restraint could prevent light from reaching the sensor.

Exterior Mirrors

Adjusting the Exterior Mirrors

⚠ **WARNING**: Do not adjust the mirrors when your vehicle is moving. This could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.



A Power fold.
B Window lock.
C Adjustment control.
D Right-hand mirror.
E Left-hand mirror.

To adjust the mirrors, switch your vehicle on and place the ignition in accessory or start.

1. Select the mirror you want to adjust. The control light turns on.
2. Use the adjustment control to adjust the position of the mirror.
3. Press the mirror control again. The control light turns off.

Folding the Exterior Mirrors

With the auto-fold feature enabled, the exterior mirrors fold in toward the glass after you place the transmission into park (P), turn off the vehicle, open and close the driver side door and lock the vehicle. The exterior mirrors unfold and return to their driving position after you unlock the vehicle and open and close the driver side door.

 For tight parking conditions, press the control to fold the mirrors.

Press the control again to unfold the mirrors.

If you press the control to fold in the mirrors with auto-fold on, the mirrors do not unfold when you unlock your vehicle.

Note: The power folding mirrors operate with the ignition on, and for several minutes after you switch the ignition off.

Note: If you fold and unfold the mirrors several times within one minute, the power fold function may turn off to protect the motors from overheating.

Switching Auto-fold On and Off

1. Press Settings on the touchscreen.
2. Press Vehicle.
3. Press Mirrors.
4. Switch Autofold on or off.

Loose, Noisy or Intermittently Working Mirrors

If you manually fold the power folding mirrors, they may not work properly even after you reposition them. Reset the mirrors if:

- They vibrate when you drive.
- They feel loose.
- They do not stay in the folded or unfolded position.
- One of the mirrors is not in its normal driving position.
- The mirrors are intermittently working.

To reset the power fold feature, use the power folding mirror control to fold and unfold the mirrors. You may hear a loud noise as you reset the power folding mirrors. This sound is normal. Operate the power folding mirrors an additional 3 to 4 times to synchronize the mirrors.

If the above process does not help you to fix the mirror, perform the following steps.

1. Fold or retract both mirrors manually.
2. Using the power folding control switch, operate the mirrors until you hear an audible click.

3. Operate the power folding an additional 3 to 4 times to synchronize the mirrors.

Repeat this process as needed each time you manually fold the mirrors.

What Is the Auto-Dimming Exterior Mirror

The driver exterior mirror dims when the interior auto-dimming mirror turns on.
Memory Mirrors (If Equipped)
You can save and recall the mirror positions through the memory function. See **How Does the Memory Function Work**.
Heated Exterior Mirrors (If Equipped)
See **Switching the Heated Mirrors On and Off**.
Signal Indicator Mirrors (If Equipped)
The forward-facing portion of the appropriate mirror housing blinks when you switch on the direction indicator.
Lincoln Welcome Mat (If Equipped)
Projection lights, on the bottom of the mirror housings, project an image onto the ground a short distance from the vehicle when the mirrors are folded.
Blind Spot Monitor
See **What Is Blind Spot Information System**.
360 Degree Camera (If Equipped)
See **What Is the 360 Degree Camera**.

Auto-Dimming Exterior Mirror (If Equipped)

What Is the Auto-Dimming Exterior Mirror

The driver exterior mirror dims when the interior auto-dimming mirror turns on.
Memory Mirrors (If Equipped)
You can save and recall the mirror positions through the memory function. See **How Does the Memory Function Work**.
Heated Exterior Mirrors (If Equipped)
See **Switching the Heated Mirrors On and Off**.
Signal Indicator Mirrors (If Equipped)
The forward-facing portion of the appropriate mirror housing blinks when you switch on the direction indicator.
Lincoln Welcome Mat (If Equipped)
Projection lights, on the bottom of the mirror housings, project an image onto the ground a short distance from the vehicle when the mirrors are folded.
Blind Spot Monitor
See **What Is Blind Spot Information System**.
360 Degree Camera (If Equipped)
See **What Is the 360 Degree Camera**.

Glass Roof (If Equipped)

Opening and Closing the Sunshade

WARNING: Do not leave a key or remote control unattended in the vehicle. Children or pets could operate the sunshade and get caught in a closing sunshade. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

WARNING: Do not leave children or pets unattended in your vehicle and do not let children play with the sunshade. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

The controls are on the overhead console.

Opening the Sunshade



Press and release the switch to activate the one-touch open feature. To stop movement, press the switch a second time. The sunshade also opens when you open the glass roof.

Note: The sunshade stops short of its fully opened position for the comfort of rear passengers. To fully open the sunshade, press the switch again.

Closing the Sunshade

WARNING: When closing the sunshade, verify that it is free of obstructions and make sure children and pets are not in the proximity of the sunshade. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

WARNING: If an obstruction is detected, press the switch a second time and reverse the sunshade immediately. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



Press and release the switch to activate the one-touch close feature. To stop movement, press the switch a second time.

Note: If fully open, the sunshade stops after covering the rear glass panel. Press and release again to fully close the sunshade.

Note: If the glass roof is either in the open or vent position and the sunshade is in the mid-open position, press and release the switch to close the glass roof first and then the sunshade.

Opening and Closing the Glass Roof

WARNING: Do not allow anyone to stand or place any portion of their body through the open glass roof while the vehicle is in motion. Make sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and properly using a seatbelt. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious injury or death in the event of a sudden stop or crash.

WARNING: Do not leave children or pets unattended in your vehicle and do not let children play with the glass roof. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

WARNING: Do not leave a key or remote control unattended in the vehicle. Children or pets could operate the glass roof and could become trapped in a closing glass roof. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

The controls are on the overhead console.

Opening the Glass Roof



Press and release the switch to activate the one-touch open feature. To stop movement, press the switch a second time.

Note: The glass roof stops short of the fully opened position to reduce wind noise or rumbling that may happen with the glass roof fully open. Press and release the switch again to fully open the glass roof.

Closing the Glass Roof

WARNING: When closing the glass roof, verify that it is free of obstructions and make sure children and pets are not in the proximity of the glass roof. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

WARNING: If an obstruction is detected, release the switch and reverse the glass roof immediately. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



Press and release the switch to activate the one-touch close feature, from either the open or vent positions. To stop movement, press the switch a second time.

Venting the Glass Roof

WARNING: Do not leave children or pets unattended in your vehicle and do not let children play with the glass roof. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

The glass roof controls are on the overhead console.



With the glass roof in the closed position, press and release the switch to vent the glass roof. To close the glass roof from the vent position, press and release the switch again.

What Is Glass Roof Bounce-Back

The glass roof stops and reverses some distance if it detects an obstacle when closing.

Overriding Glass Roof Bounce-Back

Press and hold the close switch within two seconds after the glass roof comes to a stop.

Glass Roof Bounce-Back

What Is Glass Roof Bounce-Back

The glass roof stops and reverses some distance if it detects an obstacle when closing.

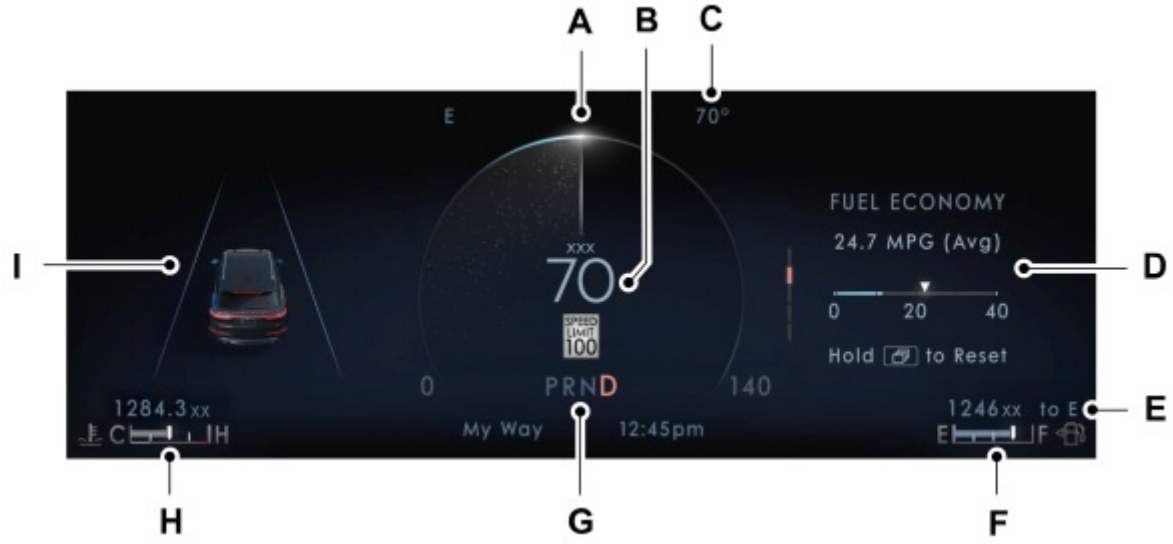
Overriding Glass Roof Bounce-Back

Press and hold the close switch within two seconds after the glass roof comes to a stop.

Instrument Cluster - Excluding: Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)

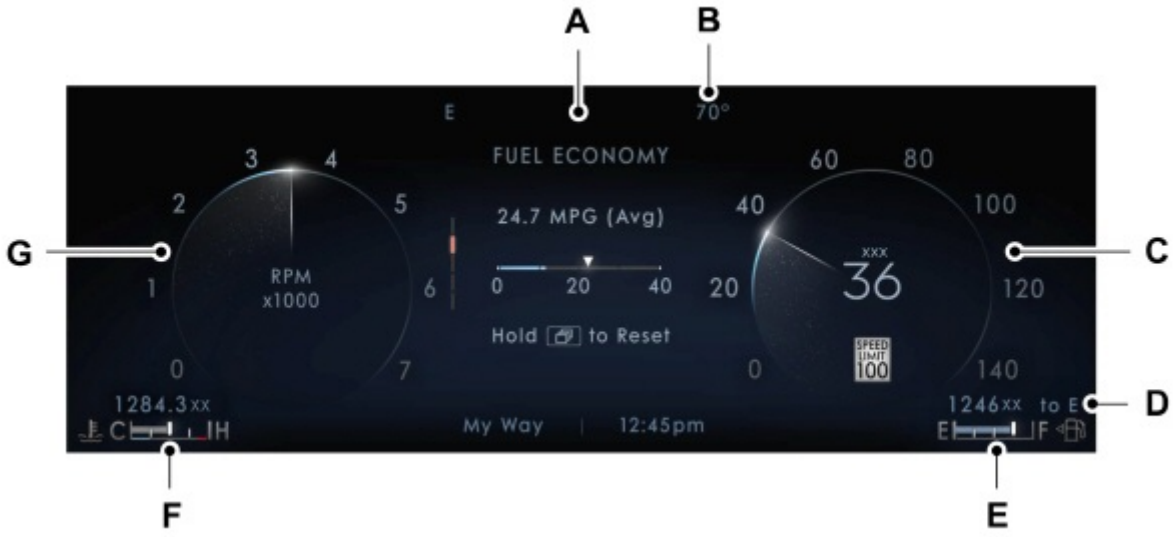
Instrument Cluster Overview

Single Gauge View



A Status Bar
B Speedometer.
C Outside air temperature.
D Right information group.
E Vehicle driving range.
F Fuel gauge.
G Automatic transmission position indicators
H Engine coolant temperature gauge.
I Left information group.
Note: Displays may appear slightly different depending on region.
Note: You can select from Fahrenheit or Celsius for the outside air temperature.

Dual Gauge View



A Status Bar.
B Outside air temperature.
C Speedometer.
D Vehicle driving range.
E Fuel gauge.
F Engine coolant temperature gauge.
G Tachometer
Note: Displays may appear slightly different depending on region.
Note: You can select from Fahrenheit or Celsius for the outside air temperature.

Tachometer

Indicates the rotational speed of the engine to the driver at any given moment.

Speedometer

Indicates the speed of the vehicle to the driver at any given moment.

What Is the Fuel Gauge

Indicates approximately how much fuel is in the fuel tank.

Fuel Gauge Limitations

The fuel gauge may not provide an accurate reading when your vehicle is on an incline.

Locating the Fuel Filler Door

The arrow adjacent to the fuel pump symbol indicates on which side of your vehicle the fuel filler door is located.

What Is the Low Fuel Reminder

A low fuel level reminder displays and sounds when the distance to empty reaches 50 mi (80 km), 25 mi (40 km), 10 mi (20 km) and 0 mi (0 km).
Note: The low fuel reminder can appear at different fuel gauge positions depending on fuel economy conditions. This variation is normal.

What Is Distance to Empty

Indicates the approximate distance your vehicle can travel on the fuel remaining in the tank. Changes in driving pattern can cause the value to not only decrease but also increase or stay constant for periods of time.

Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge

Indicates the engine coolant temperature.

Fuel Gauge

What Is the Fuel Gauge

Indicates approximately how much fuel is in the fuel tank.

Fuel Gauge Limitations

The fuel gauge may not provide an accurate reading when your vehicle is on an incline.

Locating the Fuel Filler Door

The arrow adjacent to the fuel pump symbol indicates on which side of your vehicle the fuel filler door is located.

What Is the Low Fuel Reminder

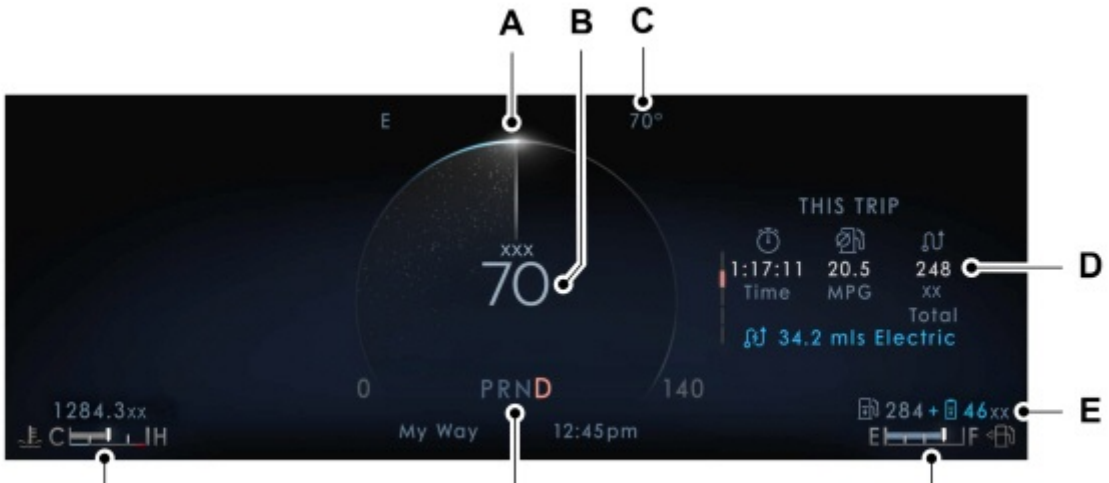
A low fuel level reminder displays and sounds when the distance to empty reaches 50 mi (80 km), 25 mi (40 km), 10 mi (20 km) and 0 mi (0 km).
Note: The low fuel reminder can appear at different fuel gauge positions depending on fuel economy conditions. This variation is normal.

What Is Distance to Empty

Indicates the approximate distance your vehicle can travel on the fuel remaining in the tank. Changes in driving pattern can cause the value to not only decrease but also increase or stay constant for periods of time.

Instrument Cluster - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)

Instrument Cluster Overview



A Status Bar
B Speedometer.
C Outside air temperature.
D Right information group.
E Vehicle driving range.
F Fuel gauge.
G Automatic transmission position indicators
H Engine coolant temperature gauge.
Note: Displays may appear slightly different depending on region.
Note: Outside air temperature can be selected in either degree Fahrenheit or degree Celsius.

Speedometer

Indicates the speed of the vehicle to the driver at any given moment.

What Is the Fuel Gauge

Indicates approximately how much fuel is in the fuel tank.

Fuel Gauge Limitations

The fuel gauge may not provide an accurate reading when your vehicle is on an incline.

Locating the Fuel Filler Door

The arrow adjacent to the fuel pump symbol indicates on which side of your vehicle the fuel filler door is located.

What Is the Low Fuel Reminder

A low fuel level reminder displays and sounds when the distance to empty reaches 50 mi (80 km), 25 mi (40 km), 10 mi (20 km) and 0 mi (0 km).
Note: The low fuel reminder can appear at different fuel gauge positions depending on fuel economy conditions. This variation is normal.

Vehicle Range Display

Displays the approximate range your vehicle can travel with the energy currently onboard. Estimates vary based on the energy used when driving.
Changes in driving pattern can cause the values to not only decrease but also increase or stay constant for periods of time.

The amount of energy being used when driving is affected by such as:

- Mild or aggressive acceleration or braking.
- Your vehicle's speed.

- Use of accessories, such as climate control.
- Ambient temperature and weather conditions.
- Driving in a city or on a highway.
- Driving on hilly road conditions.
- Towing.

Note: It is normal for vehicle range estimates to vary due to changes in average energy usage. This could cause different range estimates each time you fully charge your battery or fill your tank.
Note: Electric range is lower in cold temperatures due to reduced energy capacity in the high voltage battery. Set a departure time and cabin temperature to maintain battery temperature for best range and performance. See **Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle Information - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)**.
See **Charging Settings - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)**.
Gasoline Distance to Empty
Indicates the approximate distance your vehicle can travel on the fuel remaining in the tank.
Electric Range
Indicates the approximate distance your vehicle can travel on electric power only with the engine off.

Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge

Indicates the engine coolant temperature.

Fuel Gauge

What Is the Fuel Gauge

Indicates approximately how much fuel is in the fuel tank.

Fuel Gauge Limitations

The fuel gauge may not provide an accurate reading when your vehicle is on an incline.

Locating the Fuel Filler Door

The arrow adjacent to the fuel pump symbol indicates on which side of your vehicle the fuel filler door is located.

What Is the Low Fuel Reminder

A low fuel level reminder displays and sounds when the distance to empty reaches 50 mi (80 km), 25 mi (40 km), 10 mi (20 km) and 0 mi (0 km).
Note: The low fuel reminder can appear at different fuel gauge positions depending on fuel economy conditions. This variation is normal.

Instrument Cluster Display - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)

Using the Instrument Cluster Display Controls

WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

You can control various systems on your vehicle using the quick action menu (QAM) on the right-hand side of the steering wheel. The instrument cluster provides the corresponding information.

Instrument Cluster Display Controls



Note: The controls change when you enter a submenu.

Move the selector switch up to enter the navigation submenu.

Move the selector switch down to enter the settings submenu.

Move the selector switch to the right to enter the mode phone submenu.

Move the selector switch to the left to enter the media submenu.

Press the folder button to scroll through information on demand display screens. See **Customizing the Instrument Cluster Display - Excluding: Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)**.

Menu Controls

The following controls are only available once you enter a submenu:



Use the selector switch to toggle up and down.

 Press the home button to exit a submenu.

 Move the selector switch to the left to exit a submenu.

 Move the selector switch to the right to choose and confirm settings or messages.

Status Indicator

 This icon shows the features on or off status. A check in the box indicates the feature is on, and unchecked indicates the feature is off.

Note: Some menu items are regional specific or optional and may appear slightly different or not at all.

Instrument Cluster Display Main Menu

Depending on your vehicle options, some menu items can appear different or not at all.

Note: For your safety, some features are speed-dependent and could be unavailable when your vehicle is above a certain speed.

Menu Item
Settings
Audio
Phone
Navigation

Customizing the Instrument Cluster Display

You can customize the gauge displays through the following:

Menu Item	Details
Display	Press the OK button.

Fuel Economy Display

This display comes with an instant fuel economy gauge, along with the average fuel economy. The gauge continuously averages the fuel economy since your last reset.

The system includes both the electric only and the hybrid operation in the calculation. More electric only driving results in a greater average fuel economy.

When the gasoline engine is off, changes from the instant fuel economy gauge to an electric driving message.

Note: Press and hold the OK button on the controls on the steering wheel to reset your average fuel economy.

EV Coach

EV coach can help you get the most out of your vehicle's electric driving capabilities.

When you are accelerating or maintaining speed you see a blue or white solid bar indicating vehicle power. You may also see a blue rectangular box which shows the power level at which the engine turns on.

- When the power level is within the box, the color of the bar is blue. This means you are in electric operation and the engine is off.
- When the power level is outside of the box, the color of the bar is white. This means you are in hybrid operation with a combination of the electric motor and the engine providing vehicle power.

When you are decelerating with either your foot off the accelerator pedal or on the brake pedal, a green or white solid bar displays indicating the power being used to slow down your vehicle. You may also see a green rectangular box which shows the amount of power that can be recaptured by the regenerative braking system and returned to the high voltage battery.

- When the power level is within the box, the color of the bar will be all green. This means that the regenerative braking system is being used to efficiently slow your vehicle down and return the maximum percentage of energy to the high voltage battery.
- When the power level is outside of the box, then the bar is white. This means both the regenerative braking system and conventional braking system are being used.

Electric Economy

This screen shows your average driving distance per kilowatt-hour of electricity used on your plug-in hybrid vehicle. The value is calculated only when your available electric range is being used and the gasoline engine is off.
Distance per full charge is also shown. This is an estimate of the electric range you would have if you plugged in and fully charged your vehicle right now. The higher your electric economy, the higher your distance per full charge.
Your electric economy is affected by your driving style and route, climate control use, outside temperature and other factors. Best economy is achieved with mild to moderate acceleration and braking, moderate speeds and low climate control usage.
Note: Electric economy is a selectable screen. See **Customizing the Instrument Cluster Display - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)**.

Brake Coach

The brake coach appears after your vehicle has come to a stop. It coaches you to brake in a manner that maximizes the amount of energy returned through the regenerative braking system.
The percent displayed indicates the regenerative braking efficiency, with 100% representing the maximum amount of energy recovered.
Note: While regenerative braking works in all drive modes, the brake coach display may not be available in all drive modes.
Note: The brake coach does not appear while the lane keeping system or distance indication and alert are active.
You can switch the brake coach on or off in the settings menu. See **Instrument Cluster Display Main Menu - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)**.

Trip Summary

The trip summary displays upon shutting off your vehicle. The values are cumulative since you last started your vehicle.

The information shown is the same as the This Trip screen. See **Trip Data**.

Vehicle Charging Status

The vehicle charge status displays when you switch off your vehicle and when you switch on your vehicle when plugged in. Charging status includes the charge start or charge end time as appropriate. You can modify your charge settings though the touchscreen. See **Charging Settings - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)**.

Instrument Cluster Display - Excluding: Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)

Using the Instrument Cluster Display Controls

WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

You can control various systems on your vehicle using the quick action menu (QAM) on the right-hand side of the steering wheel. The instrument cluster provides the corresponding information.
Instrument Cluster Display Controls



Note: The controls change when you enter a submenu.

Move the selector switch up to enter the navigation submenu.

Move the selector switch down to enter the settings submenu.

Move the selector switch to the right to enter the mode phone submenu.

Move the selector switch to the left to enter the media submenu.

Press the folder button to scroll through information on demand display screens. See **Customizing the Instrument Cluster Display - Excluding: Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)**.

Menu Controls

The following controls are only available once you enter a submenu:



Use the selector switch to toggle up and down.

Press the home button to exit a submenu.

Move the selector switch to the left to exit a submenu.

OK Move the selector switch to the right to choose and confirm settings or messages.

Status Indicator

This icon shows the features on or off status. A check in the box indicates the feature is on, and unchecked indicates the feature is off.

Note: Some menu items are regional specific or optional and may appear slightly different or not at all.

Instrument Cluster Display Main Menu

Depending on your vehicle options, some menu items can appear different or not at all.

Note: For your safety, some features are speed-dependent and could be unavailable when your vehicle is above a certain speed.

Menu Item
Settings
Audio

Menu Item
Phone
Navigation

Customizing the Instrument Cluster Display

You can customize the gauge displays through the following:

Menu Item	Details
Display	Press the OK button.

Trip Computer

Accessing the Trip Computer

1. From the settings menu, select Display setup. See **Using the Instrument Cluster Display Controls - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)**.
2. Select Information Screens.
3. Select a trip and press the OK button.

Once a trip screen has been added, use the instrument cluster display controls on the steering wheel to view it.

Resetting the Trip Computer

1. Use the instrument cluster display controls to navigate the home screen.
2. Select the trip screen you want to reset.
3. Press and hold the OK button until the system reset confirmation appears.

Configuring the Trip Computer

1. Using the instrument cluster display controls on the steering wheel, select a trip screen.
2. Press the menu button on the steering wheel.
3. Select Configure View.
4. Select the values to display.

Trip Data

Trip 1 and 2
Provides trip timer, trip average fuel economy and total trip distance traveled. For hybrid vehicles, the trip also shows the distance traveled on electric power only with the engine off.
Note: Trip 1 and 2 are selectable screens. See **Accessing the Trip Computer**.
This Trip
Provides trip timer, trip average fuel economy, total trip distance traveled, and distance traveled on electric power only with the engine off. If the gasoline engine has not turned on during the trip then trip average fuel economy is not shown. This Trip resets each time you start your vehicle.
Note: This trip is a selectable screen. See **Accessing the Trip Computer**.

Head Up Display (If Equipped)

What Is the Head Up Display

The system displays information on a display screen in your field of vision, allowing you to keep your eyes on the road. You can select which information the system displays.

Switching the Head Up Display On and Off

Use the instrument cluster controls on the steering wheel to navigate to the head up display menu.

Menu Item	Action
HUD	Press the OK button.
HUD On	Press the OK button.

Note: The system remembers the last setting when you start the engine.

Head Up Display Settings

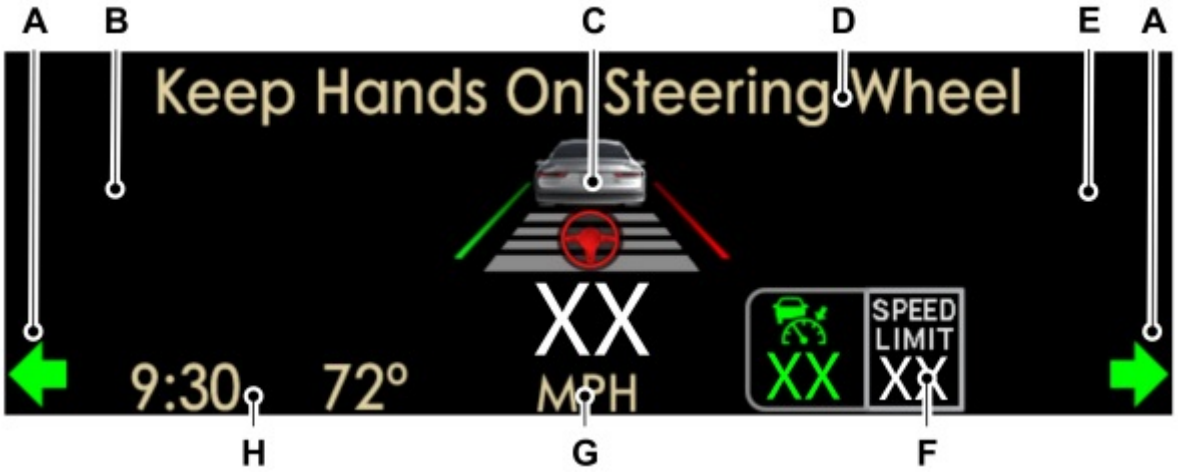
You can control the system's options through the instrument cluster display by using the HUD, OK and arrow buttons on your steering wheel.See **Using the Instrument Cluster Display Controls - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)**.
You can adjust the display according to your height to make viewing the content easier. You can also adjust what content displays and the brightness of the content. The system's options appear in the instrument cluster while the updates happen in the head up display.
Note: If HUD On is unchecked, other options of the system are hidden.
Note: The head up display menu automatically closes after a certain period of inactivity.
Note: The head up display image brightness automatically adjusts to the brightness of the ambient environment. You have the ability to adjust the brightness further according to your preference.
Note: In some instances, sunlight can cause some reflections in and around the head up display image.

Head-Up Display (HUD)		
Brightness	Follow onscreen directions to confirm or modify your settings.	
HUD Adjustments	Vertical Position	Follow onscreen directions to confirm or modify your settings.
	Image Rotation	
HUD Content	Turns the distance to empty, time and temperature on and off.	

Head-Up Display (HUD)	
Cruise and Lane Control	Select Your Setting

Note: When you save a memory preset position, your current HUD settings are also saved to that memory preset position. See **How Does the Memory Function Work**.

Head Up Display Indicators



A Signaling and traffic indication.
B Navigation display area.
C Advanced driver assistance systems display area.
D System message display area.
E Advanced driver assistance systems message display area.
F Speed limit display area.
G Speedometer display area.
H Status bar.

Signaling and Traffic Indication
Displays turn signals and blind spot information, if turn signals are active.
Navigation Display Area
Displays navigation next turn instructions.
Advanced Driver Assistance Systems Display Area
Displays adaptive cruise control, lane centering aid and lane keeping system status and warnings.
System Message Display Area
Displays system messages and notifications including incoming phone calls.
Advanced Driver Assistance Systems Message Display Area
Displays advanced driver assistance systems messages and image adjustment prompts.
Speed Limit Display Area
Displays the speed limit information if it is available in the map database or is detected by the camera.
Speedometer Display Area
Displays the current vehicle speed and the transmission gear selection.
Status Bar
Displays distance to empty, time and outside air temperature. Next to distance to empty, the fuel gauge fill color changes to yellow in low fuel conditions. You can switch off the status bar in the head up display settings menu.

Head Up Display – Information Messages

Message	Action
Head Up Display System Fault See Manual	The system is malfunctioning or something is obstructing the display. Make sure that the head up display is free from obstruction. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Head Up Display To Position Use the Information Display	Press the button on the steering wheel or center console. The head up display menu appears in the instrument cluster display. Make sure the blue frame is fully visible. Do not manually move the screen. This can cause damage not covered by your vehicle's warranty.

Head Up Display – Troubleshooting

Head Up Display – Information Messages

Message	Action
Head Up Display System Fault See Manual	The system is malfunctioning or something is obstructing the display. Make sure that the head up display is free from obstruction. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Head Up Display To Position Use the Information Display	Press the button on the steering wheel or center console. The head up display menu appears in the instrument cluster display. Make sure the blue frame is fully visible. Do not manually move the screen. This can cause damage not covered by your vehicle's warranty.

Remote Start

Using Remote Start - Vehicles With: Lincoln Way

WARNING: Do not start the engine in a closed garage or in other enclosed areas. Exhaust fumes are toxic. Always open the garage door before you start the engine. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

WARNING: Do not keep electrical devices plugged in the power outlet whenever the device is not in use. Power outlets power up during remote start.

The system allows you to remotely start your vehicle to heat or cool the interior to a preset temperature. Follow the instructions in the Ford app to start and stop your vehicle.
Note: The Ford app must be paired with your vehicle before using it to remotely start your vehicle.

After remotely starting your vehicle:

- The vehicle doors lock.
- The turn signal lamps flash twice.
- The parking lamps turn on when the vehicle is running.
- The vehicle remains secured when you have remotely started the vehicle. A valid key must be inside your vehicle to switch your vehicle on and drive your vehicle.
- All other vehicle systems remain off when you have remotely started the vehicle.

The horn sounds if the system fails to start.
Note: You cannot adjust any comfort settings until you switch your vehicle on from inside your vehicle.
Remote start does not work under the following conditions:

- Remote start is not enabled.
- The alarm horn is sounding.
- The hood is open.
- The transmission is not in park (P).
- Your vehicle is already on.

Note: Do not use remote start if your fuel level is low.
Note: A maximum of two remote starts are allowed. After that you have to switch your vehicle on and off before you can use remote start again.

Using Remote Start - Vehicles With: Remote Control

WARNING: Do not start the engine in a closed garage or in other enclosed areas. Exhaust fumes are toxic. Always open the garage door before you start the engine. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

WARNING: Do not keep electrical devices plugged in the power outlet whenever the device is not in use. Power outlets power up during remote start.

The system allows you to remotely start your vehicle to heat or cool the interior to a preset temperature.

1.  Press the button on the remote control.
2.  Press the button twice within a few seconds.

When you successfully remote start your vehicle:

- The vehicle doors lock.
- The turn signal lamps flash twice.
- The parking lamps turn on when the vehicle is running.
- The vehicle remains secured when you have remotely started the vehicle. A valid key must be inside your vehicle to switch your vehicle on and drive your vehicle.
- All other vehicle systems remain off when you have remotely started the vehicle.

The horn sounds if the system fails to start.
Note: You cannot adjust any comfort settings until you switch your vehicle on from inside your vehicle.
Remote start does not work under the following conditions:

- Remote start is not enabled.
- The alarm horn is sounding.
- The hood is open.
- The transmission is not in park (P).
- Your vehicle is already on.

Note: Do not use remote start if your fuel level is low.
Note: A maximum of two remote starts are allowed. After that you have to switch your vehicle on and off before you can use remote start again.

 To remotely stop your vehicle, press the button.

Remote Start Settings

1. From the settings menu, press Vehicle.

2. Press Remote Start Setup.

You can adjust the following in the remote start settings menu:

- Enable or disable remote start.
- Climate control settings.
- Heated seat settings.
- Heated steering wheel settings.
- Remote start duration.

Climate Control

Identifying the Climate Control Unit



Note: Depending on your vehicle options, the controls may look different from what you see here.

Switching Climate Control On and Off

 Press the button to activate the selection screen.

 Press the button.

Switching Recirculated Air On and Off

 Press the button to recirculate air currently in the passenger compartment.

Note: Recirculated air may automatically turn off, or prevent you from switching on in all air flow modes except MAX A/C to reduce the risk of fogging. Recirculation may also automatically turn on and off in various air distribution control combinations to improve heating or cooling efficiency.

Switching Air Conditioning On and Off



Press the button.

Note: Under certain conditions, the air conditioning compressor could continue to operate after you switch air conditioning off.

Note: To keep the system and its components fully functional, switch air conditioning on and let your vehicle idle at least once per month for a minimum of two minutes.

Switching Defrost On and Off


Press the button to activate the selection screen.


Make sure that the instrument panel air vents are switched off.


Press the button on the touchscreen to switch the windshield air vents on.


Make sure that the footwell air vents are switched off.

Switching Maximum Defrost On and Off



Press the button on the touchscreen.

Air flows through the windshield air vents, and the blower motor adjusts to the highest speed.

You can also use this setting to defog and clear the windshield of a thin covering of ice.

Note: You can also press the button on the instrument panel to switch the maximum defrost on or off.

Note: To prevent window fogging, you cannot select recirculated air when maximum defrost is on.

Note: The heated rear window and air conditioning also turn on when you select maximum defrost.

Switching Maximum Cooling On and Off


Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Press the button.

Note: When you switch maximum cooling off, air conditioning remains on.

Note: In certain conditions, for example, cold weather, maximum cooling may not activate or could run slow when switched on. This helps reduce power consumption from the battery.

Switching the Heated Wiper Park On and Off (If Equipped)




The heated wiper park is an auxiliary feature that supports the wipers to remain functional in cold temperatures. The feature assists in defrosting the bottom of the windshield where the wipers sit when not in use.

The feature can be activated in two ways;

-When Defrost or MAX defrost button is pressed and ambient temperature is less than 2°C.

- Automatically when ambient temperature is less than 0°C.

Switching the Heated Rear Window On and Off



Press the button to clear the rear window of thin ice and fog.The heated rear window turns off after a short period of time.

Note: Do not use harsh chemicals, razor blades or other sharp objects to clean or remove decals from the inside of the heated rear window as this could cause damage to the heated rear window grid lines not covered by the vehicle Warranty.
Note: The engine must be running or your vehicle must be ready to drive to switch the system on.

Setting the Blower Motor Speed

 Press the button to set the blower motor speed.  Slide the control to set the blower motor speed.
Note: You can press + or - to set the blower motor speed.

Switching the Heated Mirrors On and Off

When you switch the heated rear window on, the heated exterior mirrors turn on.See **Switching the Heated Rear Window On and Off**.
Note: Do not remove ice from the mirrors with a scraper or adjust the mirror glass when it is frozen in place.
Note: Do not clean the mirror housing or glass with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum-based cleaning products. The vehicle warranty may not cover damage caused to the mirror housing or glass.
Note: The engine must be running or your vehicle must be ready to drive to switch the system on.

Setting the Temperature

Press the temperature controls on either side of the climate control to set the temperature for that side.
 Slide the control to set the temperature.
Note: You can press + or - to set the temperature.

Directing the Flow of Air

Directing Air to the Windshield Air Vents
 Press the button to activate the selection screen.
 Press the button on the touchscreen.
Directing Air to the Instrument Panel Air Vents
 Press the button to activate the selection screen.
 Press the button on the touchscreen.
Directing Air to the Footwell Air Vents
 Press the button to activate the selection screen.
 Press the button on the touchscreen.

Switching Auto Mode On and Off



Press the button to switch auto mode on. Repeatedly press the button to adjust auto mode.
Note: When you switch auto mode on, lights on the blower motor control do not illuminate to indicate the blower motor speed.
Adjust the blower motor control or air distribution control to switch auto mode off.

Auto Mode Indicators

The indicators are on the Auto Mode button.

Auto Mode Indicator Status	Description
One indicator illuminated.	The blower motor speed is reduced. Use this setting to minimize the amount of noise from the blower motor. This setting increases the time taken to cool the interior.
Two indicators illuminated.	The blower motor speed is moderate.
Three indicators illuminated.	The blower motor speed is increased. Use this setting to reduce the time taken to cool the interior. This setting increases the amount of noise from the blower motor.

Switching Dual Mode On and Off

 Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Press the button.

Note: When dual mode is off, setting the temperature using the driver side controls, sets the temperature for both sides.

Note: Setting the temperature using the passenger side controls, sets the passenger temperature and switches dual mode on.

Climate Control Hints

General Hints

- Prolonged use of recirculated air may cause the windows to fog up.
- You may feel a small amount of air from the footwell air vents regardless of the air distribution setting.
- To reduce humidity build-up inside your vehicle, do not drive with the system switched off or with recirculated air always switched on.
- Do not place objects under the front seats as this may interfere with the airflow to the rear seats.
- Remove any snow, ice or leaves from the air intake area at the base of the windshield.
- To improve the time to reach a comfortable temperature in hot weather, drive with the windows open until you feel cold air through the air vents.

Automatic Climate Control

- Adjusting the settings when your vehicle interior is extremely hot or cold is not necessary. Automatic mode is best recommended to maintain set temperature.
- The system adjusts to heat or cool the interior to the temperature you select as quickly as possible.
- For the system to function efficiently, the instrument panel and side air vents should be fully open.
- If you press AUTO during cold outside temperatures, the system directs air flow to the windshield and side window air vents.In addition, the blower motor may run at a slower speed until the engine warms up.
- If you press AUTO during hot temperatures and the inside of the vehicle is hot, the system uses recirculated air to maximize interior cooling. Blower motor speed may also reduce until the air cools.

Quickly Heating the Interior

1. Press AUTO.
2. Adjust the temperature function to the setting you prefer.

Recommended Settings for Heating

1. Press AUTO.
2. Adjust the temperature function to the setting you prefer. Use 72 °F (22 °C) as a starting point, then adjust the setting as necessary.

Quickly Cooling the Interior

1. Press MAX A/C.
2. Drive with the windows open for a short period of time.

Recommended Settings for Cooling

1. Press AUTO.
2. Adjust the temperature function to the setting you prefer. Use 72 °F (22 °C) as a starting point, then adjust the setting as necessary.

Defogging the Side Windows in Cold Weather

1. Press and release defrost or maximum defrost.
2. Adjust the temperature control to the setting you prefer. Use 72 °F (22 °C) as a starting point, then adjust the setting as necessary.

Climate Control – Warning Lamps

WARNING: Even if the temperature rises to above 39 °F (4 °C) there is no guarantee that the road is free of hazards caused by inclement weather.

 Illuminates when the outside air temperature is between 39.2 °F (4 °C) and 32.0 °F (0 °C).

Air Conditioning System Refrigerant

WARNING: The air conditioning refrigerant system contains refrigerant under high pressure. Only qualified personnel should service the air conditioning refrigerant system. Opening the air conditioning refrigerant system can cause personal injury.

Your vehicle has an under hood label that identifies the refrigerant used by the air conditioning system.
Note: Only allow a trained and certified technician service the refrigerant system to ensure proper and safe operation, as per local regulatory requirements.
Note: Never repair or replace the air conditioning evaporator with one from a salvage vehicle. Only replace it with a new evaporator to ensure proper and safe operation.
The meaning of each symbol on the under hood label are as follows:

 Caution

 System lubricant type.

 Requires registered technician to service.

 Replace safety system components. Do not repair, reuse or try to salvage.

 Air conditioning system.

 See vehicle service manual for service information.

 Flammable refrigerant.

Auto Mode

Switching Auto Mode On and Off

 Press the button to switch auto mode on. Repeatedly press the button to adjust auto mode.

Note: When you switch auto mode on, lights on the blower motor control do not illuminate to indicate the blower motor speed.

Adjust the blower motor control or air distribution control to switch auto mode off.

Auto Mode Indicators

The indicators are on the Auto Mode button.

Auto Mode Indicator Status	Description
One indicator illuminated.	The blower motor speed is reduced. Use this setting to minimize the amount of noise from the blower motor. This setting increases the time taken to cool the interior.
Two indicators illuminated.	The blower motor speed is moderate.
Three indicators illuminated.	The blower motor speed is increased. Use this setting to reduce the time taken to cool the interior. This setting increases the amount of noise from the blower motor.

Switching Dual Mode On and Off

 Press the button to activate the selection screen.

 Press the button.

Note: When dual mode is off, setting the temperature using the driver side controls, sets the temperature for both sides.

Note: Setting the temperature using the passenger side controls, sets the passenger temperature and switches dual mode on.

Interior Air Quality

What Is the Cabin Air Filter

Your vehicle is equipped with a cabin air filter, which gives you and your passengers the following benefits:

- It improves your driving comfort by reducing particle and odor concentration.
- It improves the interior compartment cleanliness.
- It protects the climate control components from particle deposits.

Replacing the Cabin Air Filter

Replace the filter at regular intervals. See **Scheduled Maintenance**.
Note: Make sure you have a cabin air filter installed at all times. This prevents foreign objects from entering the system. Running the system without a filter in place could result in degradation or damage to the system.
Note: Using an aftermarket cabin air filter could reduce cabin air filtration and climate control performance.

What Is Auto Air Refresh

Auto air refresh helps improve or maintain the quality of air within your vehicle cabin.

How Does Auto Air Refresh Work

Auto air refresh uses an air quality sensor to automatically adjust the climate control system to change from outside air to recirculated air to help reduce the entry of outside odors into the cabin. It uses a particulate matter sensor in the cabin to estimate and provide information about particulate matter pollution in the cabin. It also allows you to refresh the cabin air with outside air on-demand or automatically.

Checking the Interior Air Quality

Press the button on the touchscreen.

1. Press Auto Air Refresh.



A Cabin air quality.
B Cabin air history.
C Help button.

Particulate Matter Pollution Information
Press Help for more information about particulate matter pollution.

The numbers provided by the cabin's PM2.5 sensor are estimates of the concentration of particles in the cabin air. The measurement unit is µg/m3, representing mass (micrograms of particulates) per unit of air volume (cubic meter of air).
The colors around the PM2.5 numbers provide visual cues about the concentration levels.
Note: PM2.5 is only one pollution type contributing to an Air Quality Index and by itself does not represent the Air Quality Index.

Auto Air Refresh Indicators

The indicator area is on the touchscreen feature bar and displays one of the following:

 Indicates blower motor is on for filtering and PM2.5 is low.

 Indicates the blower motor is on for filtering.

 Indicates the blower motor is off.

 Indicates the status is not available.

Manually Refreshing the Interior Air

 Press the button on the touchscreen.

1. Press Auto Air Refresh.
2. Press Cabin Refresh.

Note: Climate control settings could change for about 90 seconds to help flow outside air into the cabin. You can change the blower motor speed to the settings you prefer.
Note: The climate control must be on to manually refresh the interior air.

Automatically Refreshing the Interior Air

If the cabin air recirculates continuously for longer than 35 minutes, climate control settings could change automatically for about 90 seconds to help flow outside air into the cabin.
Refreshing the Interior Air Upon Cabin Start
If the cabin is above 75 °F (24 °C) and the engine has been off for over 30 minutes, when you start the engine the climate control system settings could change for approximately 75 seconds to help flow outside air into the cabin.
Note: Refreshing may also occur if the climate control and blower motor were previously on.
Refreshing the Interior Air Upon Remote Start
If the cabin is above 75 °F (24 °C) while parked for over 30 minutes, when you remote start the engine the climate control system settings could change for approximately 75 seconds to help flow outside air into the cabin.

Auto Air Refresh Hints

To further improve the air quality in the cabin:

- Adjust the windows and other cabin openings such as the glass roof.
- Switch recirculated air on or off.
- Manually refresh the interior air.
- Adjust the blower motor speed.

- Replace the cabin air filter at regular intervals.

Interior Air Quality – Information Messages

Note: Depending on your vehicle options, not all messages display or are available.Certain messages may be abbreviated or shortened depending upon which cluster type you have.

Message	Details
Environmental Limit	Allow time for the cabin PM2.5 sensor to cool down, warm up, or dry out.

Auto Air Refresh (If Equipped)

What Is Auto Air Refresh

Auto air refresh helps improve or maintain the quality of air within your vehicle cabin.

How Does Auto Air Refresh Work

Auto air refresh uses an air quality sensor to automatically adjust the climate control system to change from outside air to recirculated air to help reduce the entry of outside odors into the cabin. It uses a particulate matter sensor in the cabin to estimate and provide information about particulate matter pollution in the cabin. It also allows you to refresh the cabin air with outside air on-demand or automatically.

Checking the Interior Air Quality

 Press the button on the touchscreen.

1. Press Auto Air Refresh.



A Image not found or type unknown Cabin air quality.
B Image not found or type unknown Cabin air history.
C Image not found or type unknown Help button.

Particulate Matter Pollution Information
Press Help for more information about particulate matter pollution.
The numbers provided by the cabin's PM2.5 sensor are estimates of the concentration of particles in the cabin air. The measurement unit is µg/m3, representing mass (micrograms of particulates) per unit of air volume (cubic meter of air).
The colors around the PM2.5 numbers provide visual cues about the concentration levels.
Note: PM2.5 is only one pollution type contributing to an Air Quality Index and by itself does not represent the Air Quality Index.

Auto Air Refresh Indicators

The indicator area is on the touchscreen feature bar and displays one of the following:

 Indicates blower motor is on for filtering and PM2.5 is low.

 Indicates the blower motor is on for filtering.

 Indicates the blower motor is off.

 Indicates the status is not available.

Manually Refreshing the Interior Air

 Press the button on the touchscreen.

1. Press Auto Air Refresh.
2. Press Cabin Refresh.

Note: Climate control settings could change for about 90 seconds to help flow outside air into the cabin. You can change the blower motor speed to the settings you prefer.
Note: The climate control must be on to manually refresh the interior air.

Automatically Refreshing the Interior Air

If the cabin air recirculates continuously for longer than 35 minutes, climate control settings could change automatically for about 90 seconds to help flow outside air into the cabin.
Refreshing the Interior Air Upon Cabin Start
If the cabin is above 75 °F (24 °C) and the engine has been off for over 30 minutes, when you start the engine the climate control system settings could change for approximately 75 seconds to help flow outside air into the cabin.
Note: Refreshing may also occur if the climate control and blower motor were previously on.
Refreshing the Interior Air Upon Remote Start
If the cabin is above 75 °F (24 °C) while parked for over 30 minutes, when you remote start the engine the climate control system settings could change for approximately 75 seconds to help flow outside air into the cabin.

Auto Air Refresh Hints

To further improve the air quality in the cabin:

- Adjust the windows and other cabin openings such as the glass roof.
- Switch recirculated air on or off.

- Manually refresh the interior air.
- Adjust the blower motor speed.
- Replace the cabin air filter at regular intervals.

Interior Air Quality – Troubleshooting

Interior Air Quality – Information Messages

Note: Depending on your vehicle options, not all messages display or are available.Certain messages may be abbreviated or shortened depending upon which cluster type you have.

Message	Details
Environmental Limit	Allow time for the cabin PM2.5 sensor to cool down, warm up, or dry out.

Front Seats

Front Seat Precautions

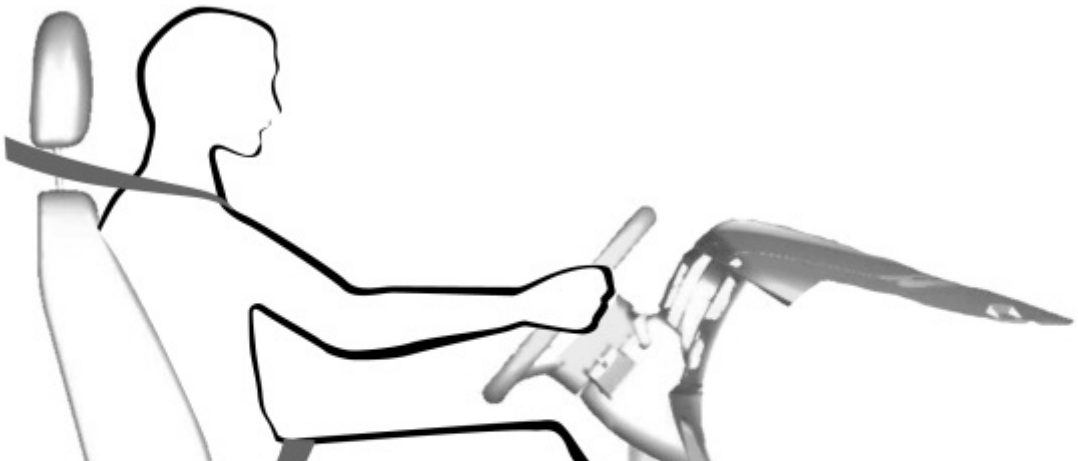
WARNING: Sitting improperly, out of position or with the seatback reclined too far can take weight off the seat cushion and affect the decision of the passenger sensing system, resulting in serious injury or death in the event of a crash. Always sit upright against your seat back, with your feet on the floor.

WARNING: Do not recline the seat backrest too far. This can cause an occupant to slide under the seatbelt in the event of a sudden stop or crash. Failure to follow this instruction can result in personal injury or death.

WARNING: Do not place objects higher than the top of the seat backrest. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death in the event of a sudden stop or crash.

WARNING: Do not adjust the driver seat or seat backrest when your vehicle is moving. This may result in sudden seat movement, causing the loss of control of your vehicle.

Sitting in the Correct Position



When you use them properly, the seat, head restraint, seatbelt and airbags will provide optimum protection in the event of a crash.

We recommend that you follow these guidelines:

- Sit in an upright position with the base of your spine as far back as possible.
- Do not recline the seat backrest so that your torso is more than 30 degrees from the upright position.
- Adjust the head restraint so that the top of it is level with the top of your head and as far forward as possible. Make sure that you remain comfortable.
- Keep sufficient distance between yourself and the steering wheel. We recommend a minimum of 10 in (25 cm) between your breastbone and the airbag cover.
- Hold the steering wheel with your arms slightly bent.
- Bend your legs slightly so that you can press the pedals fully.
- Position the shoulder strap of the seatbelt over the center of your shoulder and position the lap strap tightly across your hips.

Make sure that your driving position is comfortable and that you can maintain full control of your vehicle.

Head Restraint Components



The front seat head restraints consists of:

A Image not found or type unknown An energy absorbing head restraint.

B Image not found or type unknown Two steel stems.

C Image not found or type unknown Guide sleeve adjust and unlock button.

Adjusting the Head Restraint

WARNING: Fully adjust the head restraint before you sit in or operate your vehicle. This will help minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash. Do not adjust the head restraint when your vehicle is moving.

WARNING: The head restraint is a safety device. Whenever possible it should be installed and properly adjusted when the seat is occupied. Failure to adjust the head restraint properly could reduce its effectiveness during certain impacts.

WARNING: Adjust the head restraints for all passengers before you drive your vehicle. This will help minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash. Do not adjust the head restraints when your vehicle is moving.

To raise the head restraint, pull the head restraint up.
To lower the head restraint:

1. Press and hold the adjust and release button.
2. Push the head restraint down.

To tilt the head restraint - if equipped:



1. Adjust the seat backrest to an upright position.
2. Pivot the head restraint forward toward your head to the preferred position.

After the head restraint reaches the forward-most tilt position, pivot it forward again to release it to the rearward, untilted position.
Note: Do not attempt to force the head restraint backward after it is tilted. Instead, continue tilting it forward until the head restraint releases to the upright position.

Removing the Head Restraint

1. Pull up the head restraint until it reaches its highest position.

2. Press and hold the adjust and unlock button.
3. Pull up the head restraint.

Installing the Head Restraint

Align the steel stems into the guide sleeves and push the head restraint down until it locks.

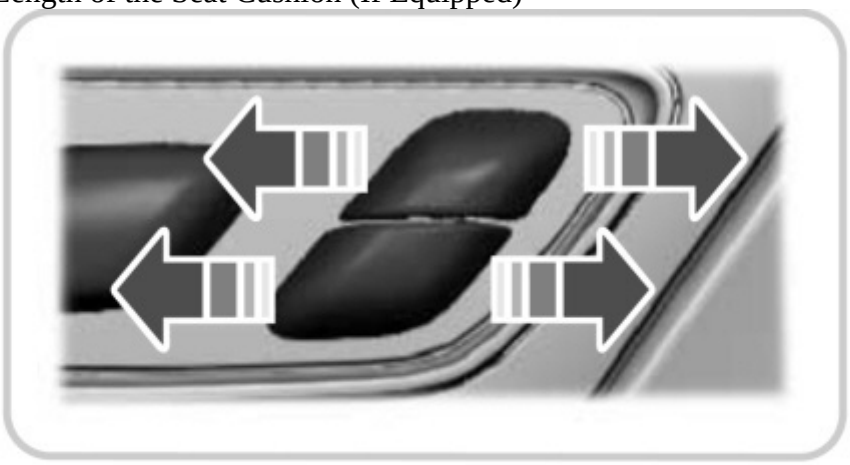
Moving the Seat Backward and Forward



Adjusting the Seat Cushion (If Equipped)



Adjusting the Length of the Seat Cushion (If Equipped)



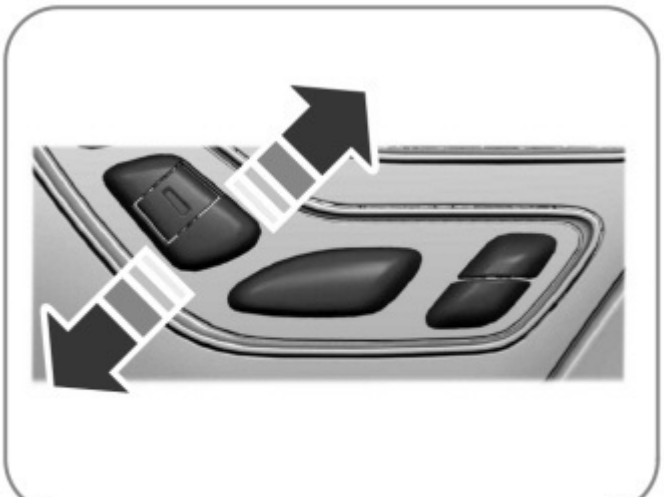


E285685

Adjusting the Seat Backrest

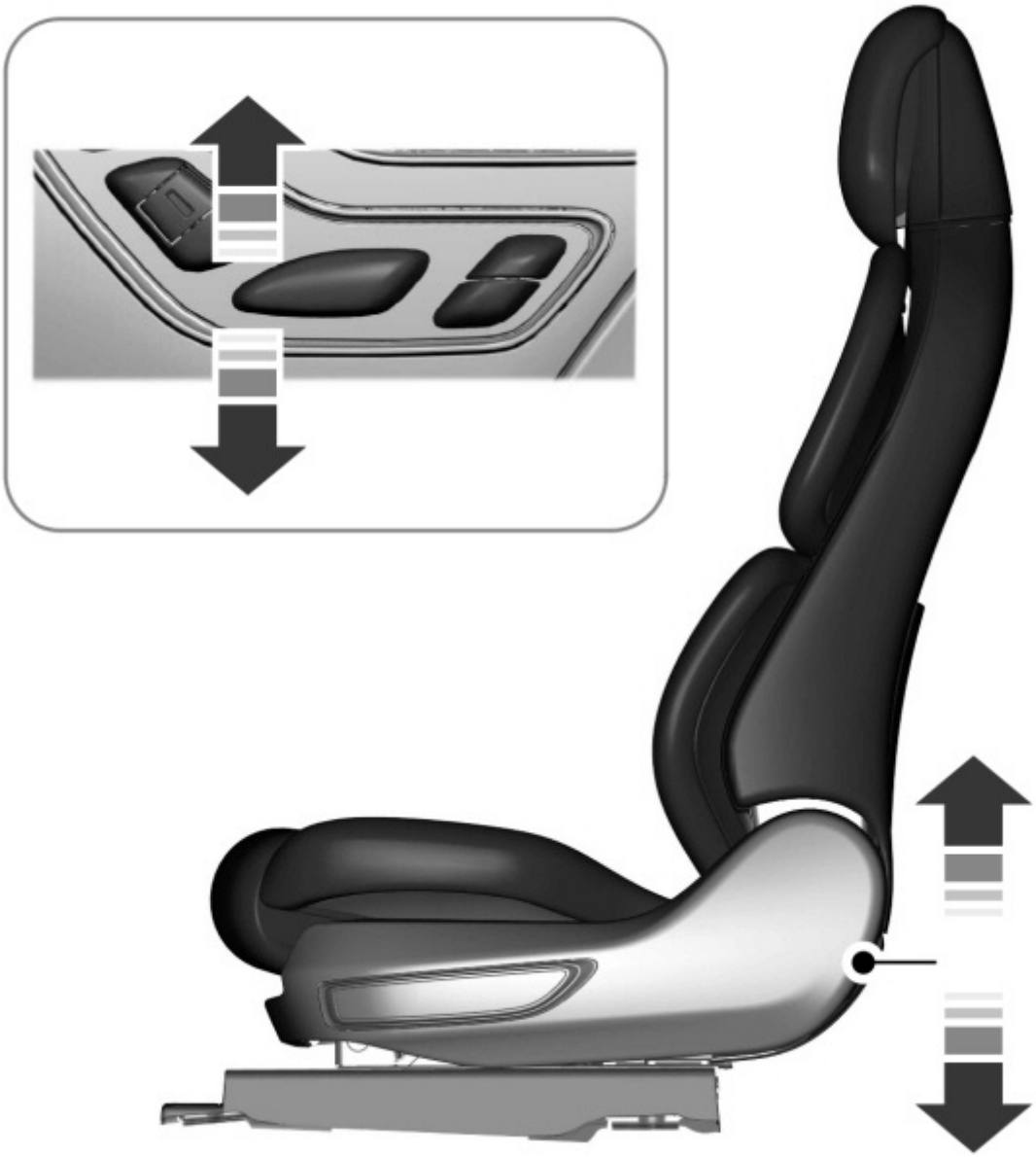
WARNING: Do not place cargo or any objects behind the seatback before returning it to the original position.

WARNING: Do not adjust the driver seat or seat backrest when your vehicle is moving. This may result in sudden seat movement, causing the loss of control of your vehicle.





Adjusting the Seat Height



Adjusting the Lumbar Support (If Equipped)

 Press this button on the door to access the lumbar menu on the touchscreen.

Massage Seat Limitations

The engine must be running or the vehicle must be in accessory mode to activate the seats.
Allow a few seconds for any selection to activate. The seat backrest and cushion massage cannot function at the same time.

Adjusting the Massage Seat Settings

You can adjust this feature through the touchscreen.

Heated Seat Precautions

WARNING: Use caution when using the heated seat if you are unable to feel pain to your skin because of advanced age, chronic illness, diabetes, spinal cord injury, medication, alcohol use, exhaustion or other physical conditions. The heated seat could cause burns even at low temperatures, especially if used for long periods of time. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

WARNING: Do not poke sharp objects into the seat cushion or seat backrest. This could damage the heated seat element and cause it to overheat. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

WARNING: Do not place anything on the seat that blocks the heat, for example a seat cover or a cushion. This could cause the seat to overheat. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

Do not:

- Place heavy objects on the seat.
- Operate the heated seat if water or any other liquid spills on the seat. Allow the seat to dry.

Switching the Heated Seats On and Off

The vehicle must be running to use this feature.



Press the seat symbol on the touchscreen to switch on the heated seats. Then, slide the menu bar up to control the heat intensity. The more indicators that display, the warmer the temperature of the seat.
Note: The heated seats may remain on after you remote start your vehicle, based on your remote start settings.
Note: The heated seats may turn on when you start your vehicle if they were on when you switched your vehicle off.

Switching the Ventilated Seats On and Off

The vehicle must be running to use this feature.



Press the seat symbol on the touchscreen to switch on the ventilated seats. Then, slide the menu bar down to control the fan speed. More indicator lights indicate higher fan speeds.
Note: The ventilated seats switch on during a remote start if they are enabled.
Note: The ventilated seats may switch on when you start your vehicle if they were on when you previously switched your vehicle off.

Power Seats

Head Restraint Components



The front seat head restraints consists of:
A An energy absorbing head restraint.
B Two steel stems.
C Guide sleeve adjust and unlock button.

Adjusting the Head Restraint

WARNING: Fully adjust the head restraint before you sit in or operate your vehicle. This will help minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash. Do not adjust the head restraint when your vehicle is moving.

WARNING: The head restraint is a safety device. Whenever possible it should be installed and properly adjusted when the seat is occupied. Failure to adjust the head restraint properly could reduce its effectiveness during certain impacts.

WARNING: Adjust the head restraints for all passengers before you drive your vehicle. This will help minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash. Do not adjust the head restraints when your vehicle is moving.

To raise the head restraint, pull the head restraint up.
To lower the head restraint:

1. Press and hold the adjust and release button.
2. Push the head restraint down.

To tilt the head restraint - if equipped:



1. Adjust the seat backrest to an upright position.
2. Pivot the head restraint forward toward your head to the preferred position.

After the head restraint reaches the forward-most tilt position, pivot it forward again to release it to the rearward, untilted position.
Note: Do not attempt to force the head restraint backward after it is tilted. Instead, continue tilting it forward until the head restraint releases to the upright position.

Removing the Head Restraint

1. Pull up the head restraint until it reaches its highest position.
2. Press and hold the adjust and unlock button.
3. Pull up the head restraint.

Installing the Head Restraint

Align the steel stems into the guide sleeves and push the head restraint down until it locks.

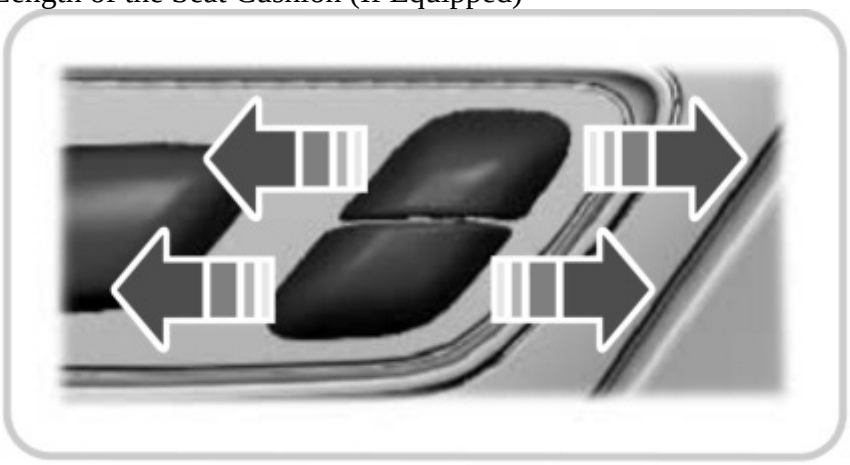
Moving the Seat Backward and Forward



Adjusting the Seat Cushion (If Equipped)



Adjusting the Length of the Seat Cushion (If Equipped)



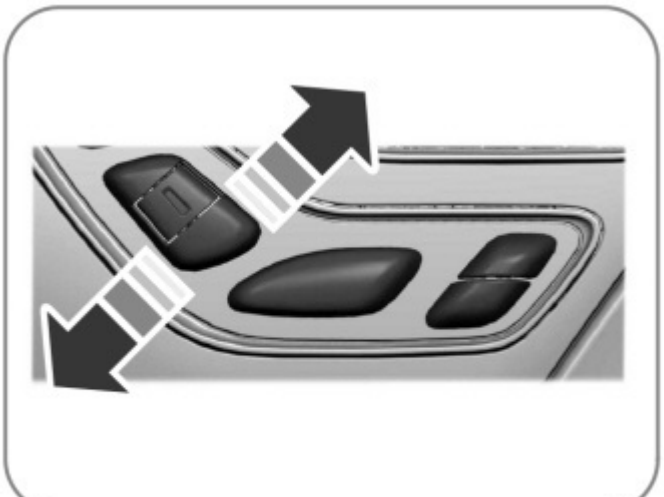


E285685

Adjusting the Seat Backrest

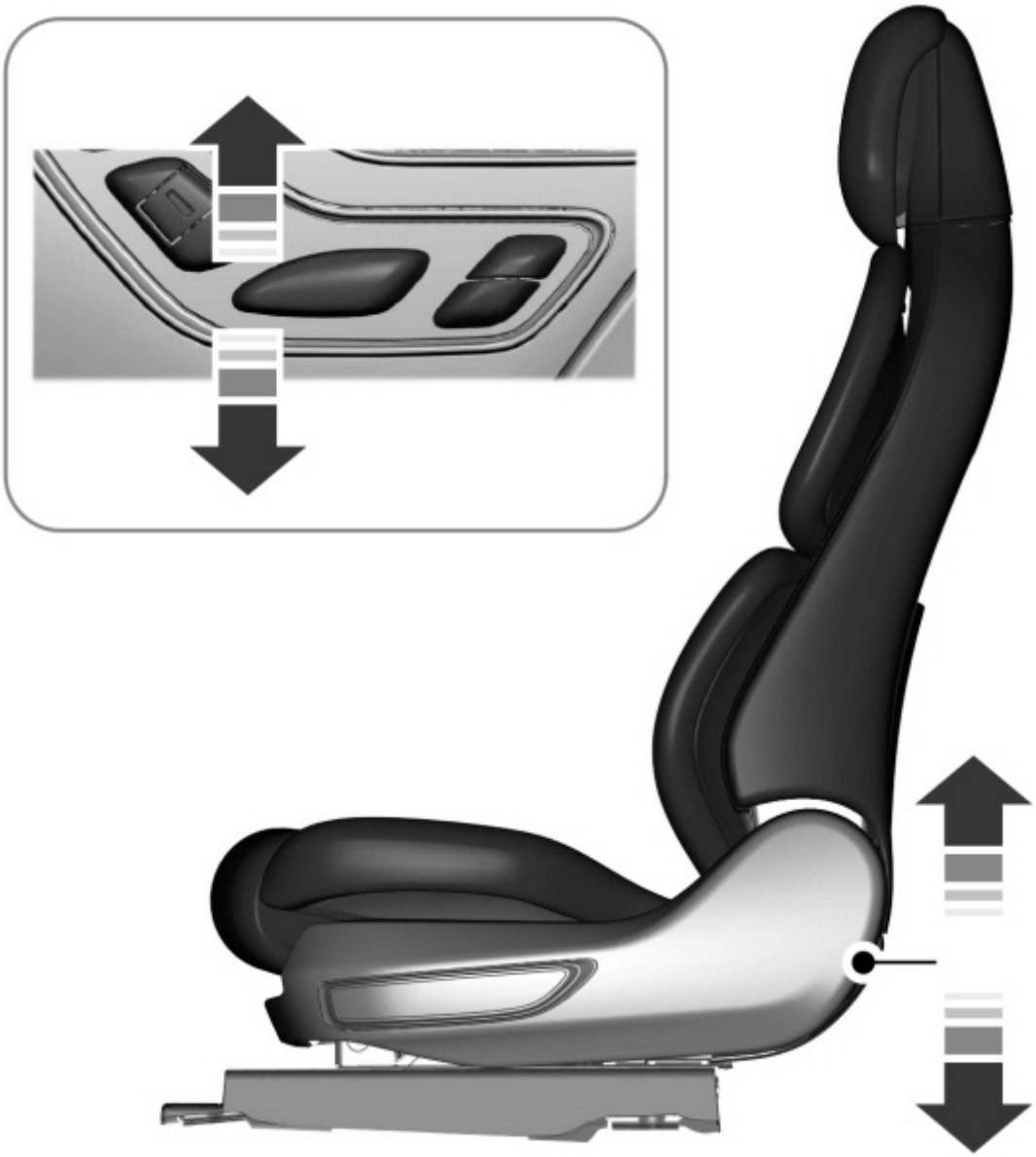
WARNING: Do not place cargo or any objects behind the seatback before returning it to the original position.

WARNING: Do not adjust the driver seat or seat backrest when your vehicle is moving. This may result in sudden seat movement, causing the loss of control of your vehicle.





Adjusting the Seat Height



Adjusting the Lumbar Support (If Equipped)

 Press this button on the door to access the lumbar menu on the touchscreen.

Massage Seats (If Equipped)

Massage Seat Limitations

The engine must be running or the vehicle must be in accessory mode to activate the seats.
Allow a few seconds for any selection to activate. The seat backrest and cushion massage cannot function at the same time.

Adjusting the Massage Seat Settings

You can adjust this feature through the touchscreen.

Heated Seats

Heated Seat Precautions

WARNING: Use caution when using the heated seat if you are unable to feel pain to your skin because of advanced age, chronic illness, diabetes, spinal cord injury, medication, alcohol use, exhaustion or other physical conditions. The heated seat could cause burns even at low temperatures, especially if used for long periods of time. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

WARNING: Do not poke sharp objects into the seat cushion or seat backrest. This could damage the heated seat element and cause it to overheat. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

WARNING: Do not place anything on the seat that blocks the heat, for example a seat cover or a cushion. This could cause the seat to overheat. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

Do not:

- Place heavy objects on the seat.
- Operate the heated seat if water or any other liquid spills on the seat. Allow the seat to dry.

Switching the Heated Seats On and Off

The vehicle must be running to use this feature.



Press the seat symbol on the touchscreen to switch on the heated seats. Then, slide the menu bar up to control the heat intensity. The more indicators that display, the warmer the temperature of the seat.
Note: The heated seats may remain on after you remote start your vehicle, based on your remote start settings.

Note: The heated seats may turn on when you start your vehicle if they were on when you switched your vehicle off.

Ventilated Seats (If Equipped)

Switching the Ventilated Seats On and Off

The vehicle must be running to use this feature.

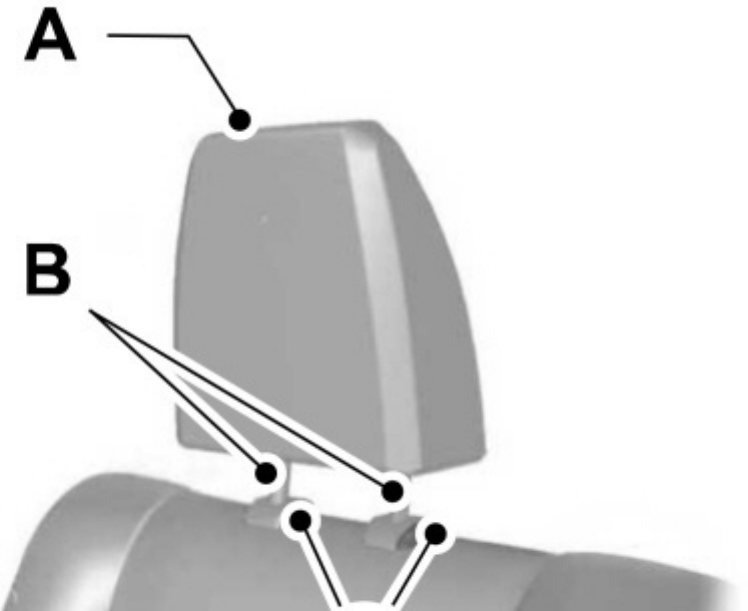


Press the seat symbol on the touchscreen to switch on the ventilated seats. Then, slide the menu bar down to control the fan speed. More indicator lights indicate higher fan speeds.
Note: The ventilated seats switch on during a remote start if they are enabled.
Note: The ventilated seats may switch on when you start your vehicle if they were on when you previously switched your vehicle off.

Rear Seats

Head Restraint Components

Outermost Head Restraints



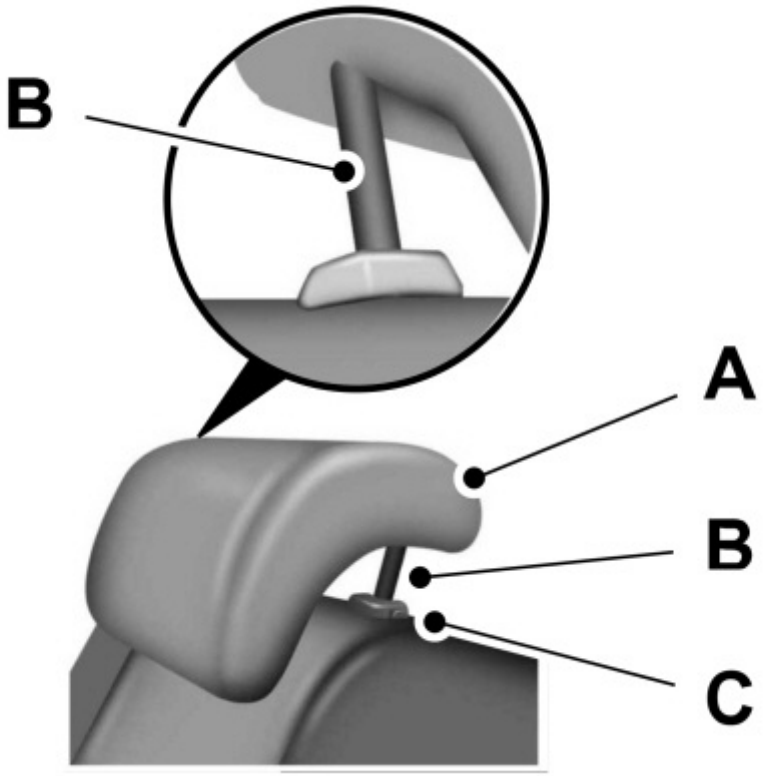
The head restraints consist of:

A. An energy absorbing head restraint.

B. Two steel stems.

C. Guide sleeve unlock and remove buttons.

Center Head Restraint



The head restraint consists of:

A. An energy absorbing head restraint.

B. Two steel stems.

C. Guide sleeve unlock and remove button.

Adjusting the Head Restraint

WARNING: Fully adjust the head restraint before you sit in or operate your vehicle. This will help minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash. Do not adjust the head restraint when your vehicle is moving.

WARNING: The head restraint is a safety device. Whenever possible it should be installed and properly adjusted when the seat is occupied. Failure to adjust the head restraint properly could reduce its effectiveness during certain impacts.

WARNING: Adjust the head restraints for all passengers before you drive your vehicle. This will help minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash. Do not adjust the head restraints when your vehicle is moving.

Raising the Head Restraint

To raise the center head restraint, pull the head restraint up.

Lowering the Head Restraint

1. Press and hold the adjust and unlock button.

2. Push the head restraint down.

Removing the Head Restraint

Outermost Head Restraints

1. Pull the head restraint up until it reaches its highest position.
2. Press and hold the guide sleeve adjust and unlock button, and the unlock and remove button.
3. Pull the head restraint up.

Center Head Restraint

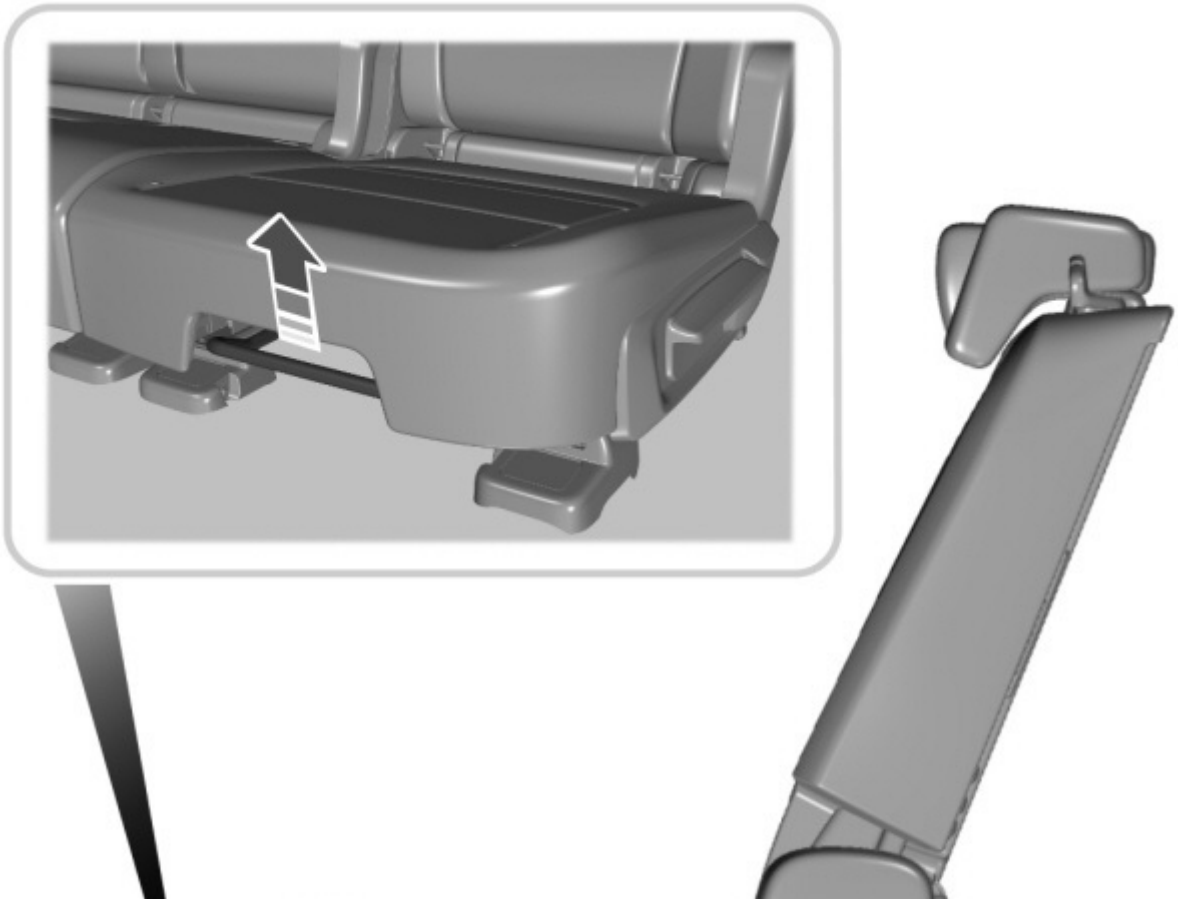
1. Pull the head restraint up until it reaches its highest position.
2. Press and hold the guide sleeve unlock and remove button.
3. Pull the head restraint up.

Installing the Head Restraint

Align the steel stems into the guide sleeves and push the head restraint down until it locks.

Moving the Seat Backward and Forward

⚠ **WARNING**: Make sure the seat fully locks into place by rocking it backward and forward.



Adjusting the Seat Backrest

With the seat occupied, pull the lever on the side of the seat cushion up to recline the seat backrest.

Folding the Seat Backrest

WARNING: To prevent possible damage to the seat or seatbelts, make sure that the seatbelts are not fastened before folding the seatback.

WARNING: When folding or unfolding the seats, take care not to get your fingers caught between the seat backrest and seat frame. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

WARNING: Do not place any objects on a folded seat. Hard objects may become projectiles in a crash or sudden stop, which may increase the risk of serious personal injury.



With the seat empty, pull the lever up to fold the seat backrest forward. You may need to lower the center head restraint first.

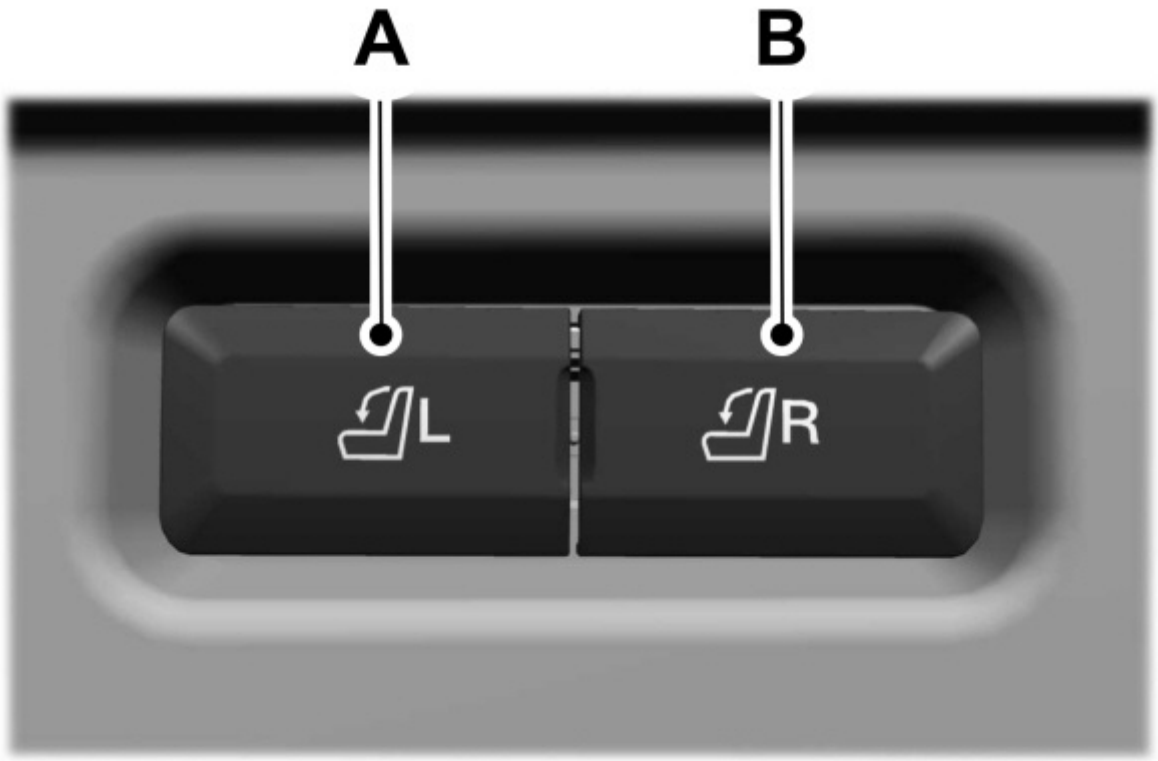
Unfolding the Seat Backrest

> ⚠ **WARNING**: When unfolding the seat backrests, make sure that the seatbelts are not trapped behind the seat.
>
> ⚠ **WARNING**: Make sure that the seats and the seat backrests are secure and fully locked in their catches.

Pull the seat backrest up to unfold.

Folding the Seat Backrest

> ⚠ **WARNING**: Do not fold a seat if it is occupied. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



A Folds the left-hand rear seat backrest.
B Folds the right-hand rear seat backrest.

Press and hold the button for a few seconds to fold the corresponding seat.

Heated Seat Precautions

WARNING: Use caution when using the heated seat if you are unable to feel pain to your skin because of advanced age, chronic illness, diabetes, spinal cord injury, medication, alcohol use, exhaustion or other physical conditions. The heated seat could cause burns even at low temperatures, especially if used for long periods of time. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

WARNING: Do not poke sharp objects into the seat cushion or seat backrest. This could damage the heated seat element and cause it to overheat. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

WARNING: Do not place anything on the seat that blocks the heat, for example a seat cover or a cushion. This could cause the seat to overheat. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

Do not:

- Place heavy objects on the seat.
- Operate the heated seat if water or any other liquid spills on the seat. Allow the seat to dry.

Switching the Heated Seats On and Off

The vehicle must be running to use this feature.
The rear seat heat controls are on the rear of the center console.

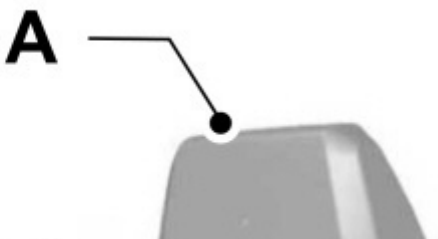


Press the heated seat symbol to cycle through the various heat settings and off. More indicator lights indicate warmer settings.
The heated seats turn off when you switch off the vehicle.

Manual Seats

Head Restraint Components

Outermost Head Restraints



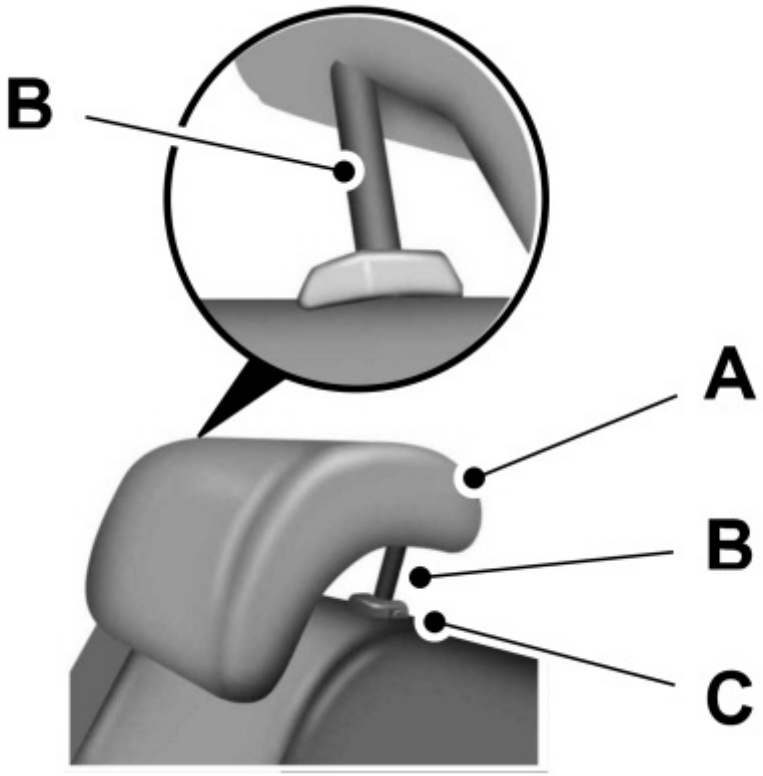
The head restraints consist of:

A. An energy absorbing head restraint.

B. Two steel stems.

C. Guide sleeve unlock and remove buttons.

Center Head Restraint



The head restraint consists of:

A. An energy absorbing head restraint.

B. Two steel stems.

C. Guide sleeve unlock and remove button.

Adjusting the Head Restraint

WARNING: Fully adjust the head restraint before you sit in or operate your vehicle. This will help minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash. Do not adjust the head restraint when your vehicle is moving.

WARNING: The head restraint is a safety device. Whenever possible it should be installed and properly adjusted when the seat is occupied. Failure to adjust the head restraint properly could reduce its effectiveness during certain impacts.

WARNING: Adjust the head restraints for all passengers before you drive your vehicle. This will help minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash. Do not adjust the head restraints when your vehicle is moving.

Raising the Head Restraint

To raise the center head restraint, pull the head restraint up.

Lowering the Head Restraint

1. Press and hold the adjust and unlock button.

2. Push the head restraint down.

Removing the Head Restraint

Outermost Head Restraints

1. Pull the head restraint up until it reaches its highest position.
2. Press and hold the guide sleeve adjust and unlock button, and the unlock and remove button.
3. Pull the head restraint up.

Center Head Restraint

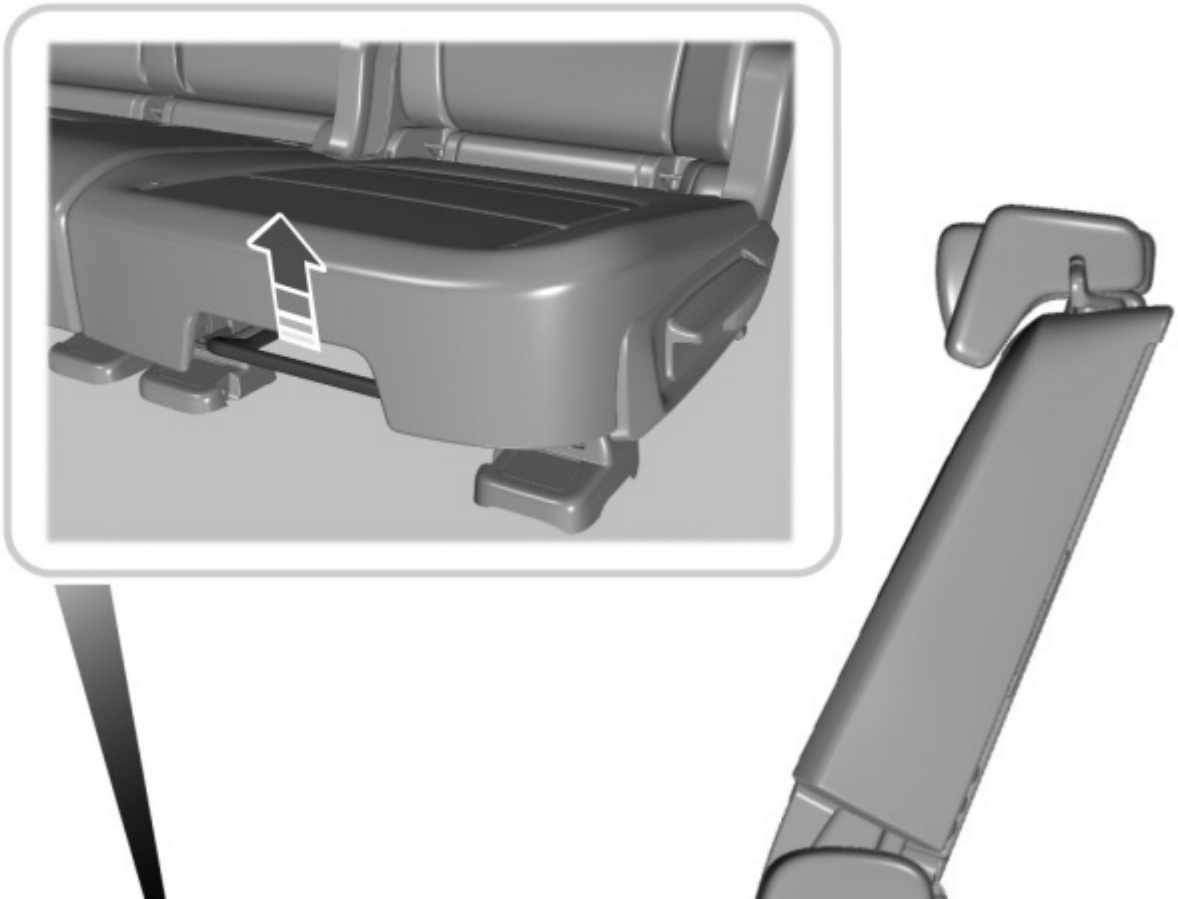
1. Pull the head restraint up until it reaches its highest position.
2. Press and hold the guide sleeve unlock and remove button.
3. Pull the head restraint up.

Installing the Head Restraint

Align the steel stems into the guide sleeves and push the head restraint down until it locks.

Moving the Seat Backward and Forward

⚠ **WARNING**: Make sure the seat fully locks into place by rocking it backward and forward.



Adjusting the Seat Backrest

With the seat occupied, pull the lever on the side of the seat cushion up to recline the seat backrest.

Folding the Seat Backrest

WARNING: To prevent possible damage to the seat or seatbelts, make sure that the seatbelts are not fastened before folding the seatback.

WARNING: When folding or unfolding the seats, take care not to get your fingers caught between the seat backrest and seat frame. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

WARNING: Do not place any objects on a folded seat. Hard objects may become projectiles in a crash or sudden stop, which may increase the risk of serious personal injury.



With the seat empty, pull the lever up to fold the seat backrest forward. You may need to lower the center head restraint first.

Unfolding the Seat Backrest

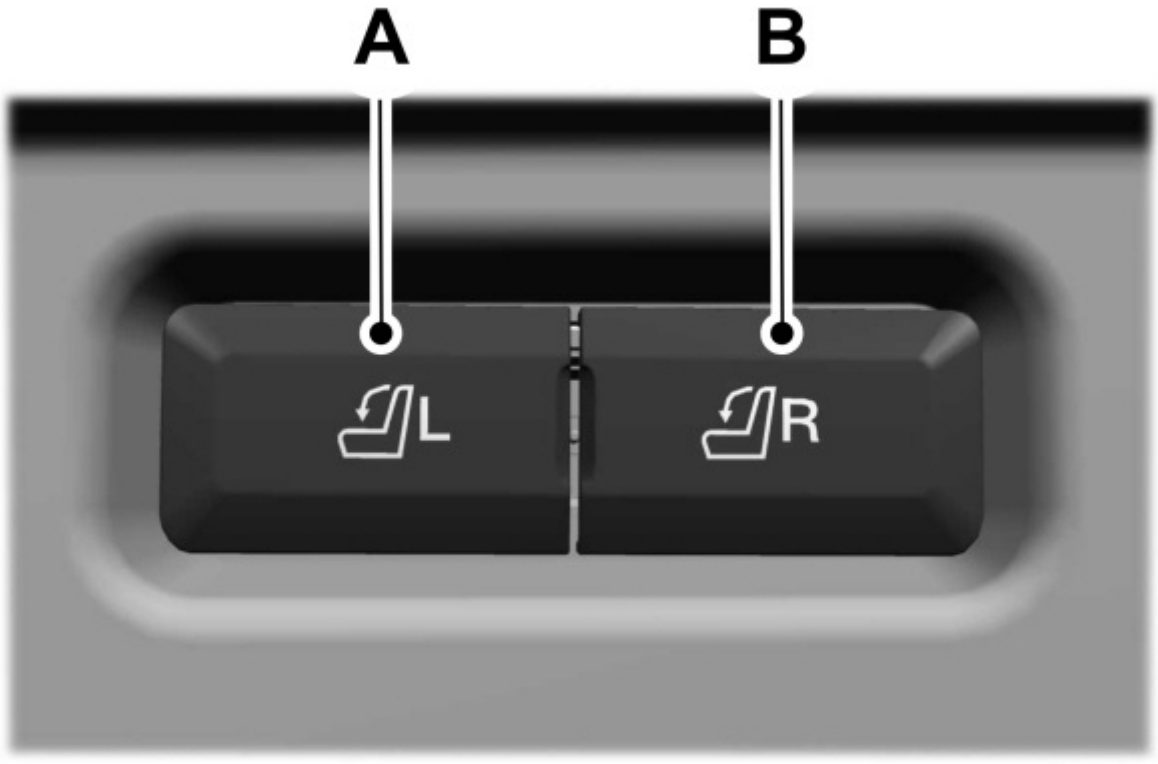
> ⚠ **WARNING**: When unfolding the seat backrests, make sure that the seatbelts are not trapped behind the seat.
> ⚠ **WARNING**: Make sure that the seats and the seat backrests are secure and fully locked in their catches.

Pull the seat backrest up to unfold.

Power Seats (If Equipped)

Folding the Seat Backrest

> ⚠ **WARNING**: Do not fold a seat if it is occupied. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



A Folds the left-hand rear seat backrest.
B Folds the right-hand rear seat backrest.

Press and hold the button for a few seconds to fold the corresponding seat.

Heated Seats (If Equipped)

Heated Seat Precautions

WARNING: Use caution when using the heated seat if you are unable to feel pain to your skin because of advanced age, chronic illness, diabetes, spinal cord injury, medication, alcohol use, exhaustion or other physical conditions. The heated seat could cause burns even at low temperatures, especially if used for long periods of time. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

WARNING: Do not poke sharp objects into the seat cushion or seat backrest. This could damage the heated seat element and cause it to overheat. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

WARNING: Do not place anything on the seat that blocks the heat, for example a seat cover or a cushion. This could cause the seat to overheat. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

Do not:

- Place heavy objects on the seat.
- Operate the heated seat if water or any other liquid spills on the seat. Allow the seat to dry.

Switching the Heated Seats On and Off

The vehicle must be running to use this feature.
The rear seat heat controls are on the rear of the center console.



Press the heated seat symbol to cycle through the various heat settings and off. More indicator lights indicate warmer settings.
The heated seats turn off when you switch off the vehicle.

Rear Occupant Alert System

What is the Rear Occupant Alert System

The rear occupant alert system monitors vehicle conditions and notifies you to check for rear seat occupants when you switch the ignition off. The notifications can be in the form of warnings inside the vehicle and sounding of the horn if activated for a short period of time.

How Does the Rear Occupant Alert System Work

The system monitors the activity of the buckle on the rear seatbelt and the opening and closing of the rear doors to indicate the potential presence of an occupant in the rear seat.
When Child Seat Installed is selected, the system monitors only the opening and closing of the rear doors to indicate the potential presence of an occupant in the rear seat.
When Child Seat Installed is not selected, the system monitors the rear seatbelt buckle activity and the opening and closing of the rear doors to indicate the potential presence of an occupant in the rear seat.

A message displays in the touchscreen and an audible warning sounds when you switch the ignition off after any of the following conditions have been met:

- A rear door is opened or closed while the ignition is on.
- You switch the ignition on within 15 minutes of a rear door opening and closing.
- You switch the ignition on within 15 minutes of the alert having displayed or sounded.

If you do not open a rear door within a short period of time of the message appearing in the center display, the first audible warning sounding and driver door open to close, the horn sounds for a short period of time.
Note: Horn sounds only when the Rear Occupant Alert is set to Alert & Horn. If you change the setting, then there is no horn sound.

Rear Occupant Alert System Precautions

WARNING: On hot days, the temperature inside the vehicle can rise very quickly. Exposure of people or animals to these high temperatures for even a short time can cause death or serious heat related injuries, including brain damage. Small children are particularly at risk.

WARNING: Do not leave children or pets unattended in your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

Rear Occupant Alert System Limitations

The system does not detect the presence of objects or passengers in the rear seat. It monitors the activity of the buckle on the rear seatbelt and the opening and closing of the rear doors.
Note: It is possible to receive an alert when there is no rear seat occupant, but alert conditions are met.
Note: It is possible to receive no alert when there is an occupant in the rear seat, if alert conditions are not met. For example, if a rear seat occupant does not enter the vehicle through a rear door.

Rear Occupant Alert System Settings

1. From the settings menu, press Vehicle. See **Center Display**.
2. Press Rear Occupant Alert.
3. Select Alert & Horn or Alert Only or Off.

Note: The default setting is Alert Only.
Note: If you choose Alert only, the horn does not sound even when the alert conditions are met.
Note: You may also be able to switch the system off through the alert when it appears.
Note: Performing a system reset causes the system to switch on again.
Switching Child Seat Installed On and Off

When the system is switched on, it monitors the opening and closing of the rear doors to indicate the potential presence of an occupant in the rear seat.

1. From the settings menu, press Vehicle. See **Center Display**.
2. Press Rear Occupant Alert.
3. Switch Child Seat Installed on or off.

Note: The default setting is on.

Switch the system on when the child restraint is mounted on any of the following:

- Forward facing seat.
- Rear facing seat.
- Toddler in a LATCH system child seat.

Switch the system off when the child is using any of the following:

- Seatbelt.
- Booster seat.

Semiannual Reminder
When you switch the system off, a message appears every six months as a reminder that the system is off. You can switch the system back on or leave it off.

Rear Occupant Alert System Indicators

When you turn off your vehicle after the alert conditions have been met, an image and message briefly appear on the touchscreen, reminding you to check the rear seat for occupants.
Acknowledge and dismiss the message by selecting the close option.
Note: The graphic may be different for your vehicle.



Rear Occupant Alert System Audible Warnings

The first audible warning is an alert tone within the vehicle, which sounds when you switch your vehicle off after the alert conditions are met. The warning sounds for a short period of time.
The second audible warning is from the horn. It sounds when you do not open a rear door within a short period of time of the message appearing in the center display, the first audible warning sounding, and driver door open to close. The warning sounds for a short period of time.

Memory Function

How Does the Memory Function Work

The memory function recalls the position of these features:

- Memory driver seat.
- Memory power side mirrors.
- Memory steering column.

Memory Function Precautions

WARNING: Before activating the memory seat, make sure that the area immediately surrounding the seat is clear of obstructions and that all occupants are clear of moving parts.

WARNING: Do not use the memory function when your vehicle is moving.

Locating the Memory Function Buttons



E283882

The memory function buttons are on the driver door.

Saving a Preset Position

1. Switch the ignition on.
2. Adjust the memory features to your preferred position.
3. Press and hold the preferred preset button until you hear a single tone.

A confirmation message appears in the information cluster display.
You can save up to three preset memory positions at any time.

Recalling a Preset Position

Press and release a memory function button.
Note: You can only recall a preset memory position when the ignition is off, or when the ignition is on and the vehicle is not moving.
Note: Pressing any of the memory feature controls during a memory recall cancels the operation.

You can also recall a preset memory position by:
- Pressing the unlock button on your remote control if you linked it to a preset position.
- Unlocking the intelligent driver door handle if a linked remote control is present.

Note: Using a linked remote control to recall your memory position when the ignition is off moves the seat and steering column to the easy entry position.

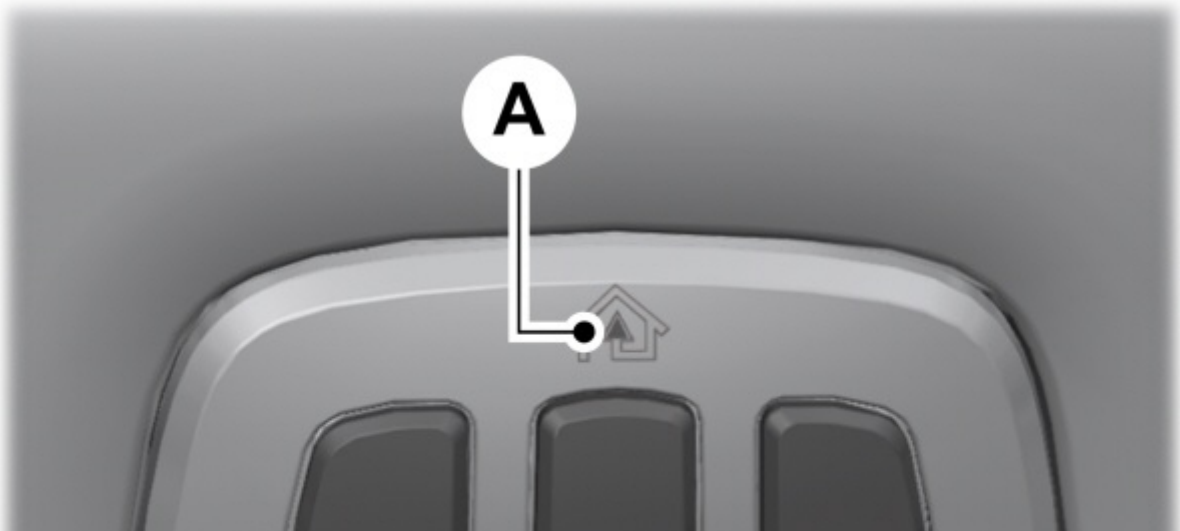
Garage Door Opener (If Equipped)

Universal Garage Door Opener

HomeLink Wireless Control System

WARNING: Do not use the system with any garage door opener that does not have the safety stop and reverse feature as required by U.S. Federal Safety Standards (this includes any garage door opener manufactured before April 1, 1982). A garage door opener which cannot detect an object, signaling the door to stop and reverse, does not meet current federal safety standards. Using a garage door opener without these features increases the risk of serious injury or death.

The universal garage door opener replaces the common handheld garage door opener with a three-button transmitter integrated into the driver side sun visor.



A Homelink indicator.
B Homelink function buttons.

The system includes two primary features, a garage door opener and a platform for remote activation of devices within the home. You can program garage doors as well as entry gate operators, security systems, entry door locks and home or office lighting. You can program a maximum of three devices.

To change or replace any of the three buttons after they have been initially programmed, you must either clear all codes, or reprogram each individual button. To clear all stored codes in the garage door opener in your vehicle, use the clear function. To override one button, use the reprogram function.

Clearing Stored Codes	Reprogramming Individual Buttons
To clear all stored codes in the garage door opener in the vehicle:	If a button on your garage door opener has already been programmed, you can override it. To program a device to a previously trained button:
1. Press and hold the outer two Homelink function buttons simultaneously for approximately 10 seconds until the Homelink indicator flashes rapidly. 2. When the indicator flashes, release the Homelink function buttons. This clears all stored codes. You cannot erase codes for individual buttons.	1. Press and hold the desired Homelink function button for approximately 20 seconds until the indicator begins to flash. 2. Without releasing the Homelink function button, proceed to Step 3 of **Programming the Garage Door Opener to your Handheld Transmitter**.

We recommend that upon the sale or lease termination of your vehicle, you erase the programmed function buttons for security reasons.

Additional assistance can be found online at https://www.homelink.com/Ford by scanning the code below or by calling the toll-free help line at 1-800-355-3515.

Programming the Garage Door Opener

Canadian radio frequency laws require transmitter signals to time out, or quit, after several seconds, which may not be long enough for HomeLink to pick up the signal. U.S. gate operators time out in the same manner. For these transmitters, use the Programming the Garage Door Opener to your Gate Opener Motor information.

Before programming:

- Put a new or unused battery in the handheld transmitter. This allows for quicker training and accurate transmission of the radio frequency signal. Using an old battery may result in the Homelink producing a weak signal.
- Make sure that the garage door and security device are free from obstruction when you are programming. Do not program the universal garage door opener with the vehicle in the garage.

Homelink Indicator Status

Indicator Status	Details
Slow Flash	The transmitter is searching for a program code.
Solid or Continuous Light	The transmitter is programmed to a fixed code.
Rapid Flash	The transmitter is programmed to a rolling code and may need additional programming.

Programming the Garage Door Opener to your Handheld Transmitter
The programming steps below assume you are programming a HomeLink that was not previously programmed. If your HomeLink was previously programmed, you may need to clear or reprogram your HomeLink buttons.
To program your in-vehicle HomeLink function button with your handheld transmitter:

1. With your vehicle parked outside the garage, switch the ignition on, but do not start the engine.

2. Press and release one of the three HomeLink function buttons that you would like to program. The indicator should begin to flash. If the indicator does not flash, press and hold the function button for 20 seconds until the indicator begins to flash.

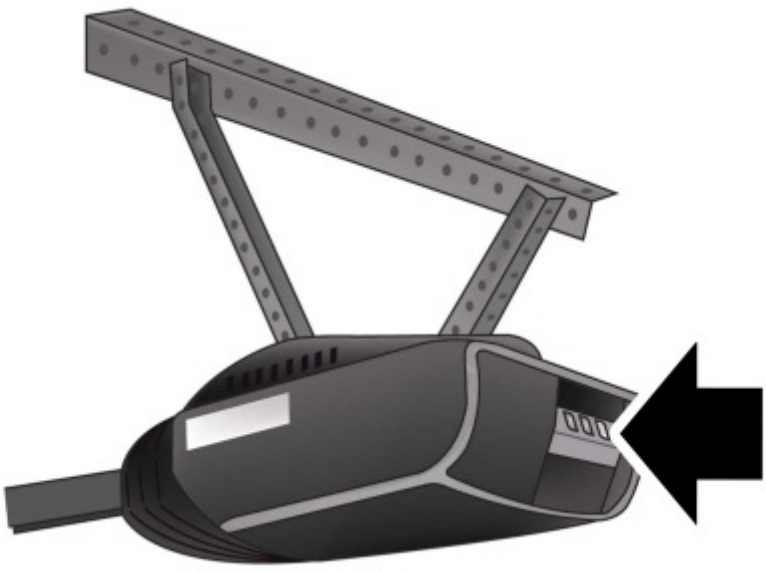
3. Hold your handheld garage door transmitter 1–3 in (2–8 cm) away from the HomeLink button you are programming.

4. Press and hold the handheld transmitter button you want to program while watching the indicator on HomeLink. Continue to hold the handheld button until the HomeLink indicator flashes rapidly or is continuously on. You may need to use a different method if you live in Canada or have difficulties programming your gate operator or garage door opener.

5. Press and hold the HomeLink button you programmed for two seconds, then release. You may need to do this twice to activate the door. If the HomeLink indicator stays on, the programming is complete. If the HomeLink indicator flashes rapidly, the transmitter is programmed to a rolling code system, repeat this step. If your device still does not operate, you must program your garage door opener to your garage door opener motor.

6. To program additional buttons, repeat Steps 1–4.

Make sure you keep the original remote control transmitter for use in other vehicles as well as for future system programming.
Programming the Garage Door Opener to your Garage Door Opener Motor



1. Press the Learn button on the garage door opener motor. You have 30 seconds to complete the next two steps.

2. Return to your vehicle.

3. Press and hold one of the three HomeLink function buttons you want to program for two seconds, then release.

4. Repeat Step 3. Depending on your brand of garage door opener, you may need to repeat this sequence a third time.

Programming the Garage Door Opener to your Gate Opener Motor
Gate Operator / Canadian Programming
Canadian radio frequency laws require transmitter signals to time out (or quit) after several seconds of transmission, which may not be long enough for HomeLink to pick up the signal during programming. Similar to this Canadian law, some U.S. gate operators are designed to time out in the same manner.
If programming a garage door opener or gate operator, unplug the device during the **cycling** process to prevent possible overheating.

1. Press and release your handheld transmitter, **every two seconds**, until the HomeLink indicator flashes rapidly or is continuously on.

2. Release the handheld transmitter button.

3. Press and hold the HomeLink function button you want to program for two seconds, then release. You may need to do this twice to activate the door. If the HomeLink indicator stays on, the programming is complete. If the HomeLink indicator flashes rapidly, the transmitter is programmed to a rolling code system, repeat Step 3.

4. To program additional buttons, repeat Steps 1–4.

Additional assistance can be found online at https://www.homelink.com/Ford or by calling the toll-free help line at 1-800-355-3515.
FCC and RSS-210 Industry Canada Compliance

WARNING: Changes or modifications not expressively approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term "IC:" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with RSS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.
This equipment complies with FCC radiation exposure limits set forth for an uncontrolled environment. End Users must follow the specific operating instructions for satisfying RF exposure compliance. This transmitter must be at least 8 in (20 cm) from the user and must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

USB Ports

Locating the USB Ports

Data Transfer USB Ports


The USB ports could be in the following locations:

- On the lower instrument panel.
- Inside the center console.

Note: These USB ports can also charge devices.
Note: Not all USB ports in your vehicle have data transfer capabilities.
Note: We recommend using only USB-IF certified cables and adapters. Non-certified cables and adapters may not work.
Charge Only USB Ports


The USB ports could be in the following locations:

- On the lower instrument panel.
- On the upper instrument panel.
- Inside the media bin.
- Inside the center console.
- On the rear of the center console.
- On the rearview mirror bracket.
- Behind the first row seats.
- On the rear interior trim.
- In the cargo area.

Playing Media Using the USB Port

WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Connect your device to a data transfer USB port.
Press the audio button on the feature bar.
Select Sources.
Select the USB option.

Press to play a track. Press again to pause the track.

Press to skip to the next track.
Press and hold to fast forward through the track.

Press once to return to the beginning of a track.
Repeatedly press to return to previous tracks.
Press and hold to fast rewind.

Charging a Device

Connect your device to the USB port.
Data Transfer USB Ports


You can charge your device through the data transfer USB port when SYNC is on.
Charge Only USB Ports


You can charge your device through the charge only USB port when the vehicle is in accessory mode or when the vehicle is running.

Power Outlet

What Is the Power Outlet

The power outlet can power devices using a 12 V outlet adapter.

Power Outlet Precautions

WARNING: Do not plug electrical devices into the power outlets that exceed the maximum power rating. Incorrect use of the power outlets can cause damage not covered by the vehicle warranty, and can result in fire or personal injury.

WARNING: Do not keep electrical devices plugged into the power outlet whenever the device is not in use. The outlet provides power when the vehicle is on. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

When you switch the vehicle on, you can use the power outlets to power 12 V appliances with a maximum current rating of 15 A.

To prevent damage to the vehicle's battery:

- Do not use the power outlets over the vehicle capacity of 12 V DC 180 W or a fuse could blow.
- Do not plug in any device that supplies power to the vehicle through the power outlets. This could result in damage to vehicle systems.
- Do not hang any accessory from the accessory plug. Always keep the power outlets caps closed when not in use.
- Do not insert objects other than an accessory plug into the power outlets.

To prevent the battery from running out of charge:

- Do not use the power outlets longer than necessary when the vehicle is off.
- Do not leave devices plugged in overnight or when you park your vehicle for extended periods.
- Using devices for extended periods may require starting and running the engine to recharge the battery.

Locating the Power Outlets

Power outlets may be in the following locations:

- On the lower instrument panel.
- Inside the center console.
- On the front of the center console.
- On the rear of the center console.
- In the cargo area.
- On the passenger side floor panel.
- 3rd row on the quarter trim panels.

Wireless Accessory Charger (If Equipped)

What Is the Wireless Accessory Charger

The wireless accessory charger allows you to charge one compatible Qi wireless charging device on the charging area.

Wireless Accessory Charger Precautions

WARNING: Wireless charging devices can affect the operation of implanted medical devices, including cardiac pacemakers. If you have any implanted medical devices, we recommend that you consult with your physician.

WARNING: Remove all metal objects like coins and keys from the charging surface and remove any metal objects attached to your mobile phone before placing the device on the charging surface. Some mobile devices or cases may attract metal objects. Metal objects on the charging surface or attached to the phone may become hot while charging is active. If an object is left on or near the charging surface or attached to the phone while the device is charging, let the objects cool before removing to prevent personal injury.

Keep the charging area clean and remove foreign objects prior to charging a device.
Do not place items with a magnetic strip or radio-frequency identification chip, for example passports, parking tickets, transportation passes or credit cards, near the charging area when charging a device. Damage could occur to the magnetic strip or radio-frequency identification chip.
Do not place metal objects, for example remote controls, coins and candy wrappers, on or near the charging area when charging a device. Metal objects may heat up and degrade the charging performance, in addition to causing interruptions in charging.
Charging could be interrupted, degraded, or could stop if any of the following occur:

- The system detects a foreign object.
- The device is misaligned on the charging area.
- The device moves on the active charging area when the vehicle is in motion.
- The vehicle ambient temperature is too high.
- You attempt to charge a non-Qi compatible device on the wireless charger.

Note: During charging, the device and the charger could heat up, this is normal. If the battery gets hotter than usual, the device may stop charging.

Locating the Wireless Accessory Charger

 The charging area is on the center console or in the media bin below the instrument panel.

Charging a Wireless Device

Place the device on the center of the charging surface with the charging side down. The charging stops after your device reaches a full charge.
You can use the charger when the vehicle is in accessory mode, when the vehicle is running or when the touchscreen is on.
 Displays on the status bar when wireless charging is in progress.
Note: The charging performance may be affected if your device is in a case. It may be necessary to remove the case to wirelessly charge your device.

Note: Software and firmware updates may affect device compatibility, including the use of unofficial software or firmware. You should verify charging functionality with your specific devices in-vehicle.

Wireless Accessory Charger – Information Messages

Message	Behavior	Description
Phone misaligned or object detected between phone and charger. Correct the condition to resume charging.	Pop-up window.	The system stops charging your device if the system detects the phone is misaligned, or a foreign metal object is on the charging surface.

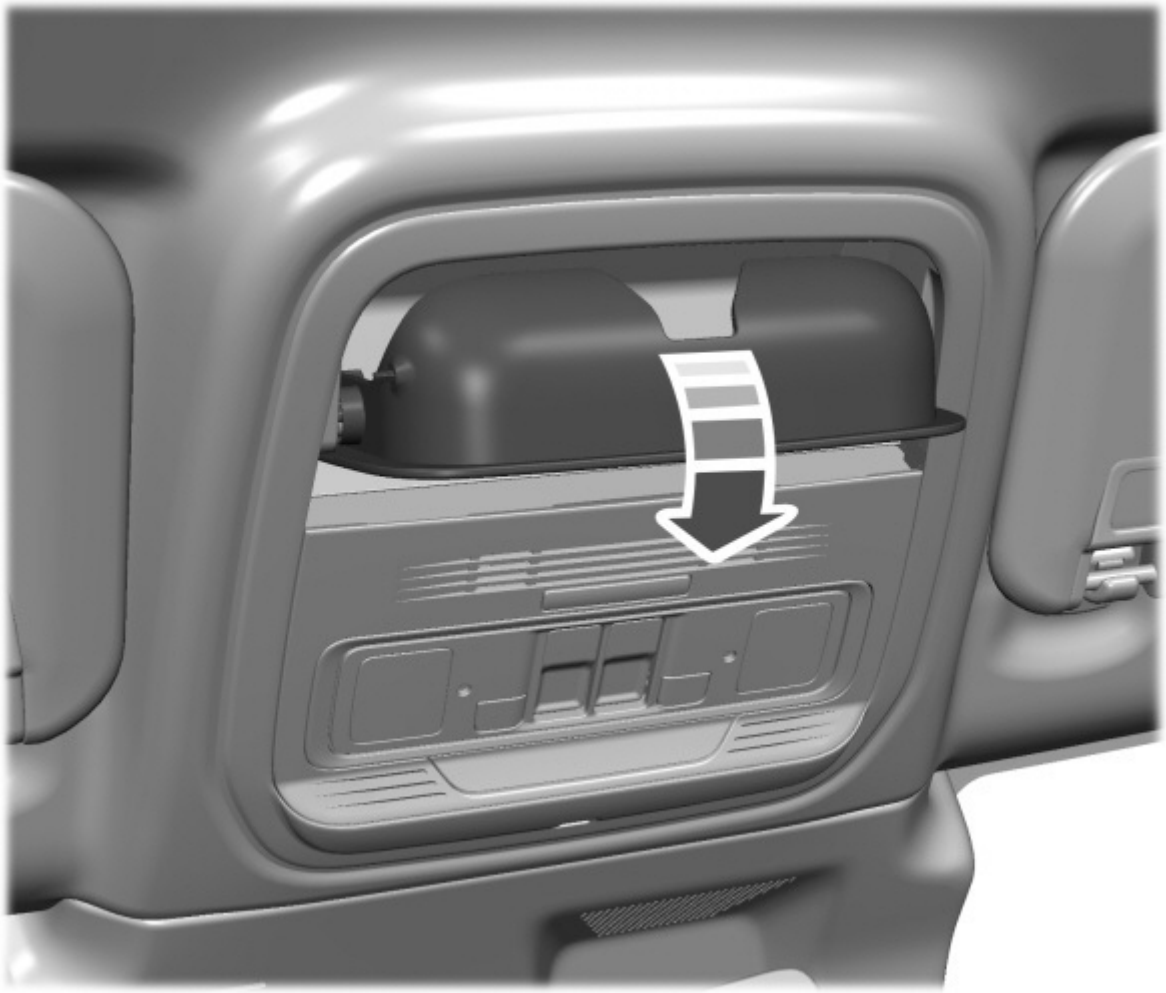
Wireless Accessory Charger – Troubleshooting

Wireless Accessory Charger – Information Messages

Message	Behavior	Description
Phone misaligned or object detected between phone and charger. Correct the condition to resume charging.	Pop-up window.	The system stops charging your device if the system detects the phone is misaligned, or a foreign metal object is on the charging surface.

Storage

Opening the Overhead Storage Compartment



Press near the rear edge of the door to open.

Opening the Glove Compartment



Pull the latch to the left to open.

Opening the Center Console



Pull the latch to open the center console.

Overhead Storage

Opening the Overhead Storage Compartment



Press near the rear edge of the door to open.

Glove Compartment

Opening the Glove Compartment



Pull the latch to the left to open.

Center Console

Opening the Center Console



Pull the latch to open the center console.

Starting and Stopping the Engine

Starting and Stopping the Engine – Precautions

WARNING: Extended idling at high engine speeds can produce very high temperatures in the engine and exhaust system, creating the risk of fire or other damage.

WARNING: Do not park, idle or drive your vehicle on dry grass or other dry ground cover. The emission system heats up the engine compartment and exhaust system, creating the risk of fire.

WARNING: Do not start the engine in a closed garage or in other enclosed areas. Exhaust fumes are toxic. Always open the garage door before you start the engine. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

WARNING: Do not use starting fluid, for example ether, in the air intake system. Such fluid could cause immediate explosive damage to the engine and possible personal injury.

WARNING: Exhaust leaks may result in entry of harmful and potentially lethal fumes into the passenger compartment. If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your vehicle inspected immediately. Do not drive if you smell exhaust fumes.

The powertrain control system meets all Canadian interference-causing equipment standard requirements regulating the impulse electrical field or radio noise.

If you stop your vehicle and leave the engine idling for long periods, we recommend that you do one of the following:

- Open the windows at least 1 in (2.5 cm).
- Set your climate control to outside air.

Push Button Ignition Switch



Switching the Ignition Off
When the ignition is on or in accessory mode, press the push button ignition switch once without your foot on the brake pedal.
Switching the Ignition to Accessory Mode
When the ignition is off, press the push button ignition switch once without your foot on the brake pedal. All electrical circuits and accessories are operational and the warning lamps and indicators illuminate.
Note: Your vehicle has a battery saver feature that shuts your vehicle off when it detects a certain amount of battery drain, or after approximately 30 minutes of inactivity in accessory mode.
Note: The system may not function if the passive key is close to metal objects or electronic devices, for example keys or a cell phone.

Note: You need a valid passive key inside your vehicle to switch the ignition on and start the engine.

Starting a Gasoline Engine

Before starting your vehicle, check the following:

- Make sure that the parking brake is on.
- Make sure that the transmission is in park (P).

1. Fully press the brake pedal.

Note: Do not touch the accelerator pedal.



2. Press the push button ignition switch.

Note: The engine may continue cranking for up to 15 seconds or until it starts.
Note: The engine takes longer to start at lower temperatures. It may crank for several seconds when very cold.

Starting a Hybrid Electric Vehicle System

Before starting your vehicle, check the following:

- Make sure the parking brake is on.
- Make sure the transmission is in park (P).

Note: Do not touch the accelerator pedal.

1. Fully press the brake pedal.



2. Press the push button ignition switch.

READY When you start your vehicle, a green indicator appears in the instrument cluster letting you know that your vehicle is ready for driving. Since your vehicle is equipped with a silent key start, the engine may not start when your vehicle starts.

When the engine starts for the first time on your drive, the idle speed increases, this helps warm up the engine. If the engine idle speed does not decrease, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.

The system does not function if:

- The passive key frequencies are jammed.
- The key battery has no charge.

Restarting the Engine After Stopping It

The system allows you to start the engine within 10 seconds of switching it off, even if it does not detect a valid passive key.
Within 10 seconds of switching the engine off, fully press the brake pedal and press the push button ignition switch. After 10 seconds, you can no longer start the engine if the system does not detect a valid passive key.
When you start the engine, it remains running until you press the push button ignition switch, even if your vehicle does not detect a valid passive key. If you open and close a door when the engine is running, the system searches for a valid passive key.

Engine Block Heater Precautions

WARNING: Failure to follow engine block heater instructions could result in property damage or serious personal injury.

WARNING: Do not use your heater with ungrounded electrical systems or two-pronged adapters. There is a risk of electrical shock.

WARNING: Do not fully close the hood, or allow it to drop under its own weight when using the engine block heater. This could damage the power cable and may cause an electrical short resulting in fire, injury and property damage.

WARNING: Before driving your vehicle, unplug the engine block heater cord, reattach the protective cover, and secure the cord away from any moving parts. Failure to follow these instructions could damage the cord and may cause an electrical short resulting in fire, personal injury, and property damage.

We recommend that you do the following for a safe and correct operation:

- Use a minimum 16-gauge outdoor extension cord that can handle at least 10 A of current and is certified by Underwriter’s Laboratory (UL) or Canadian Standards Association (CSA). This extension cord must be suitable for outdoor use in cold temperatures and clearly marked as Suitable for Use with Outdoor Appliances. Do not use an indoor extension cord outdoors. This could result in an electric shock or become a fire hazard.
- Use the shortest extension cord possible.
- Do not use multiple extension cords.
- Make sure the heater cord and extension cord are firmly connected.
- When in use, make sure the extension cord and engine block heater plug connections are dry. Moisture at the connection points could cause electric shock or fire.
- If the engine block heater cord is under the hood, do not remove the wiring from its original location. Do not close the hood on the extension cord.
- Park your vehicle in a clean area, clear of combustible materials.
- After the system has been operating for about 30 minutes, check the electrical connections for excessive heat.
- Check the engine block heater system before winter to ensure proper operation.

How Does the Engine Block Heater Work

The engine block heater warms the engine coolant. This allows the climate control system to quickly respond. The equipment includes a heater element installed in the engine block and a wire harness. You can connect the system to a grounded 110 volt AC electrical source.
Note: The engine block heater is most effective when outdoor temperatures are below 0 °F (-18 °C). We recommend the use of engine block heater to improve engine cold start performance.

Using the Engine Block Heater

1. Make sure the engine is off.
2. Locate the engine block heater cord plug. It may be found under the hood, in the front fog lamp bezel, or in the front lower grille.
3. Open the protective cover and make sure the terminals are clean and dry. Clean them with a dry cloth if necessary.
4. Check both the engine block heater cord and the extension cord for damage. Do not use them if damaged.
5. Connect the engine block heater cord to the extension cord.
6. Plug the extension cord into a grounded 110 volt AC outlet with ground fault protection.

Note: The heater uses 0.4 to 1.0 kilowatt-hours of energy per hour of use. The system does not have a thermostat. It achieves maximum temperature after approximately three hours of operation.
Note: To prevent damage to your vehicle and reduce electrical consumption, do not operate the engine block heater for more than three hours.

7. Before starting the engine, unplug the extension cord from the power outlet and the engine block heater cord.

Note: Make sure the protective cover is closed when not in use.

Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Stationary

1. Shift into park (P).
2. Apply the parking brake.
3. Wait until the engine reaches idle speed.



4. Press the push button ignition switch.

Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Moving

WARNING: Switching off the engine when your vehicle is still moving results in a significant decrease in braking assistance. Higher effort is required to apply the brakes and to stop your vehicle. A significant decrease in steering assistance could also occur. The steering does not lock, but higher effort could be required to steer your vehicle. When you switch the ignition off, some electrical circuits, for example airbags, also turn off. If you unintentionally switch the ignition off, shift into neutral (N) and restart the engine.

Only in case of emergency, do the following:



1. Press and hold the push button ignition switch until the engine stops, or press it three times within two seconds.
2. Shift into neutral (N) and use the brakes to safely bring your vehicle to a complete stop.
3. Shift into park (P).
4. Apply the parking brake.

What Is Automatic Engine Stop

Automatic engine stop is a feature that switches the engine off if it has been idling for an extended period to help you save fuel.

How Does Automatic Engine Stop Work

Automatic engine stop turns the engine off. The ignition also turns off in order to save battery power. Before the engine shuts down, a message appears in the information display showing a timer counting down. If you do not intervene within 30 seconds, the engine shuts down. Another message appears in the information display to inform you that the engine has shut down in order to save fuel. Start your vehicle as you normally do.

Switching Automatic Engine Stop On and Off

1. From the settings menu, press Vehicle.

2. Switch 30min Max Idle on or off.

Note: You cannot permanently switch off the automatic engine stop feature. If you switch it off, it turns on automatically at the next ignition cycle.

Overriding Automatic Engine Stop

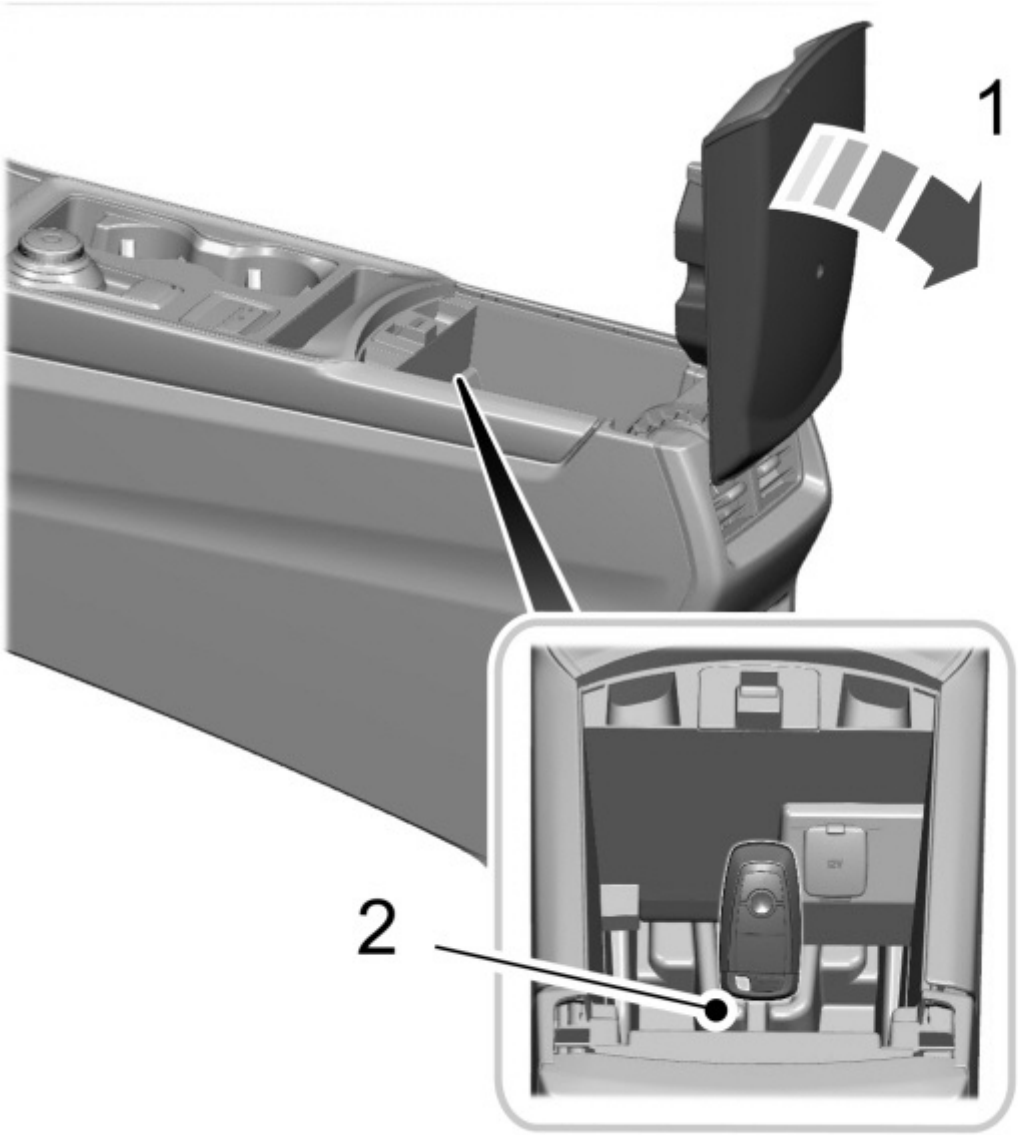
You can stop the engine shutdown, or reset the timer, at any point before the 30-second countdown has expired by doing any of the following:

- Pressing the brake pedal or accelerator pedal.
- Pressing the **OK** or **RESET** button during the countdown.

Note: You cannot permanently switch off the automatic engine stop feature. If you switch it off, it turns on automatically at the next ignition cycle.

Accessing the Passive Key Backup Position

If you are unable to start your vehicle, do the following:



1. Open the center console lid.
2. With the buttons facing the front of your vehicle, place the passive key into the backup slot.
3. With the key in this position, press the brake pedal, then press the push button ignition switch to switch the ignition on and start your vehicle.

Starting and Stopping the Engine – Warning Lamps

Malfunction Indicator Lamp

 If it illuminates when the engine is running, the on-board diagnostics system is detecting a malfunction of the vehicle emission control system. If it flashes, engine misfire could be occurring. Increased exhaust gas temperatures could damage the catalytic converter or other vehicle components. Avoid heavy acceleration and deceleration, and have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Powertrain Warning Lamp

 If it illuminates when the engine is running, this indicates a powertrain or four-wheel drive fault. If it flashes when you are driving, immediately reduce the vehicle speed.Avoid heavy acceleration and deceleration, and have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

If both lamps illuminate when the engine is running, stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.Continuing to drive your vehicle could cause reduced power or the engine to stop. Switch the ignition off and attempt to restart the engine. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Oil Pressure Warning Lamp

 It illuminates when you switch the ignition on.If it illuminates when the engine is running, this indicates a malfunction.Stop your vehicle and switch the engine off. Check the engine oil level. If the oil level is sufficient, this indicates a system malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Starting and Stopping the Engine – Information Messages

Message	Details
Cranking time exceeded	Displays if you exceed the starting time limit. You cannot attempt to start the engine for 15 minutes. If you cannot start the engine after 15 minutes passes, have your vehicle immediately checked.
Starting system fault	Displays if you are unable to start your vehicle with a correctly coded key. The system has detected a fault that requires service.Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Message	Details
No key detected	Displays if the system does not detect a valid passive key.

Starting and Stopping the Engine – Frequently Asked Questions - Gasoline

Why is the engine idle speed high when I start the engine?

- The speed the engine idles immediately after starting is optimized to minimize vehicle emissions and maximize cabin comfort and fuel economy.

Why is the engine not cranking?
The engine does not crank if:

- The system does not detect a valid passive key.
- The passive key battery has no charge.
- The vehicle battery does not have sufficient charge.
- The brake pedal is not pressed for automatic transmissions or the clutch pedal is not pressed for manual transmissions.
- The transmission is not in the park (P) or neutral (N) for automatic transmissions.
- The starting system has been disabled after multiple attempts of starting the engine.

What should I do if the starting system is disabled?

- You can only attempt to start the engine for a set number of times before the starting system temporarily disables. If you exceed the limit, a message may appear and you need to wait at least 15 minutes to start the engine again.

What should I do if the engine does not start?

- If you cannot start the engine after three attempts, wait 10 seconds and do the following:

1. Fully press the brake pedal for automatic transmissions or clutch pedal for manual transmissions.

Note: Make sure that the parking brake is applied.
Note: Make sure that the transmission is in park (P) or neutral (N) for automatic transmissions.

2. Fully press and hold the accelerator pedal.

3. Press the push button ignition switch. See **Push Button Ignition Switch**.

Note: The engine cranks for a short period of time and then stops.

4. Release the accelerator pedal.

5. Press the push button ignition switch. See **Push Button Ignition Switch**.

Why do I experience different driving characteristics?

- If you disconnect the battery, your vehicle may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics for about 5 mi (8 km) after you reconnect it. This is because the engine management system must realign itself with the engine. You can disregard any unusual driving characteristics during this period.

What happens if the system does not detect a valid passive key?

- If the system does not detect a valid passive key, the engine does not start and a warning message displays in the instrument cluster display. To start the engine insert the passive key into the backup position and press the push button ignition switch to start the engine. See **Accessing the Passive Key Backup Position**.

Starting and Stopping the Engine – Frequently Asked Questions - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)

Why does the engine not crank?

- When you start your vehicle, a green indicator light appears in the instrument cluster letting you know that your vehicle is ready for driving. Since your vehicle is equipped with a silent key start, the engine may not start when your vehicle starts.

Why is the engine speed high when the engine first starts?

- When the engine starts for the first time on your drive, the idle speed increases, this helps to warm up the engine. If the engine idle speed does not slow down, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.

Why can I not start my vehicle when the high voltage battery is charged?

- Your vehicle has a high voltage to low voltage energy transfer feature that keeps the 12-volt battery charged by the high voltage battery. However 12-volt battery depletion can still occur, and in such case you are unable to start your vehicle. See **Maintenance**.

What happens if the system does not detect a valid passive key?

- If the system does not detect a valid passive key, the engine does not start and a warning message displays in the instrument cluster display. To start the engine insert the passive key into the backup position and press the push button ignition switch to start the engine. See **Accessing the Passive Key Backup Position**.

Starting the Engine

Starting a Gasoline Engine

Before starting your vehicle, check the following:

- Make sure that the parking brake is on.
- Make sure that the transmission is in park (P).

1. Fully press the brake pedal.

Note: Do not touch the accelerator pedal.



2. Press the push button ignition switch.

Note: The engine may continue cranking for up to 15 seconds or until it starts.
Note: The engine takes longer to start at lower temperatures. It may crank for several seconds when very cold.

Starting a Hybrid Electric Vehicle System

Before starting your vehicle, check the following:

- Make sure the parking brake is on.
- Make sure the transmission is in park (P).

Note: Do not touch the accelerator pedal.

1. Fully press the brake pedal.



2. Press the push button ignition switch.

READY When you start your vehicle, a green indicator appears in the instrument cluster letting you know that your vehicle is ready for driving. Since your vehicle is equipped with a silent key start, the engine may not start when your vehicle starts.
When the engine starts for the first time on your drive, the idle speed increases, this helps warm up the engine. If the engine idle speed does not decrease, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.

The system does not function if:

- The passive key frequencies are jammed.
- The key battery has no charge.

Restarting the Engine After Stopping It

The system allows you to start the engine within 10 seconds of switching it off, even if it does not detect a valid passive key.
Within 10 seconds of switching the engine off, fully press the brake pedal and press the push button ignition switch. After 10 seconds, you can no longer start the engine if the system does not detect a valid passive key.
When you start the engine, it remains running until you press the push button ignition switch, even if your vehicle does not detect a valid passive key. If you open and close a door when the engine is running, the system searches for a valid passive key.

Engine Block Heater (If Equipped)

Engine Block Heater Precautions

WARNING: Failure to follow engine block heater instructions could result in property damage or serious personal injury.

WARNING: Do not use your heater with ungrounded electrical systems or two-pronged adapters. There is a risk of electrical shock.

WARNING: Do not fully close the hood, or allow it to drop under its own weight when using the engine block heater. This could damage the power cable and may cause an electrical short resulting in fire, injury and property damage.

WARNING: Before driving your vehicle, unplug the engine block heater cord, reattach the protective cover, and secure the cord away from any moving parts. Failure to follow these instructions could damage the cord and may cause an electrical short resulting in fire, personal injury, and property damage.

We recommend that you do the following for a safe and correct operation:

- Use a minimum 16-gauge outdoor extension cord that can handle at least 10 A of current and is certified by Underwriter's Laboratory (UL) or Canadian Standards Association (CSA). This extension cord must be suitable for outdoor use in cold temperatures and clearly marked as Suitable for Use with Outdoor Appliances. Do not use an indoor extension cord outdoors. This could result in an electric shock or become a fire hazard.
- Use the shortest extension cord possible.
- Do not use multiple extension cords.
- Make sure the heater cord and extension cord are firmly connected.
- When in use, make sure the extension cord and engine block heater plug connections are dry. Moisture at the connection points could cause electric shock or fire.
- If the engine block heater cord is under the hood, do not remove the wiring from its original location. Do not close the hood on the extension cord.
- Park your vehicle in a clean area, clear of combustible materials.
- After the system has been operating for about 30 minutes, check the electrical connections for excessive heat.
- Check the engine block heater system before winter to ensure proper operation.

How Does the Engine Block Heater Work

The engine block heater warms the engine coolant. This allows the climate control system to quickly respond. The equipment includes a heater element installed in the engine block and a wire harness. You can connect the system to a grounded 110 volt AC electrical source.
Note: The engine block heater is most effective when outdoor temperatures are below 0 °F (-18 °C). We recommend the use of engine block heater to improve engine cold start performance.

Using the Engine Block Heater

1. Make sure the engine is off.

2. Locate the engine block heater cord plug. It may be found under the hood, in the front fog lamp bezel, or in the front lower grille.

3. Open the protective cover and make sure the terminals are clean and dry. Clean them with a dry cloth if necessary.
4. Check both the engine block heater cord and the extension cord for damage. Do not use them if damaged.
5. Connect the engine block heater cord to the extension cord.
6. Plug the extension cord into a grounded 110 volt AC outlet with ground fault protection.

Note: The heater uses 0.4 to 1.0 kilowatt-hours of energy per hour of use. The system does not have a thermostat. It achieves maximum temperature after approximately three hours of operation.
Note: To prevent damage to your vehicle and reduce electrical consumption, do not operate the engine block heater for more than three hours.

7. Before starting the engine, unplug the extension cord from the power outlet and the engine block heater cord.

Note: Make sure the protective cover is closed when not in use.

Stopping the Engine

Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Stationary

1. Shift into park (P).
2. Apply the parking brake.
3. Wait until the engine reaches idle speed.



4. Press the push button ignition switch.

Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Moving

WARNING: Switching off the engine when your vehicle is still moving results in a significant decrease in braking assistance. Higher effort is required to apply the brakes and to stop your vehicle. A significant decrease in steering assistance could also occur. The steering does not lock, but higher effort could be required to steer your vehicle. When you switch the ignition off, some electrical circuits, for example airbags, also turn off. If you unintentionally switch the ignition off, shift into neutral (N) and restart the engine.

Only in case of emergency, do the following:



1. Press and hold the push button ignition switch until the engine stops, or press it three times within two seconds.
2. Shift into neutral (N) and use the brakes to safely bring your vehicle to a complete stop.
3. Shift into park (P).
4. Apply the parking brake.

Automatic Engine Stop

What Is Automatic Engine Stop

Automatic engine stop is a feature that switches the engine off if it has been idling for an extended period to help you save fuel.

How Does Automatic Engine Stop Work

Automatic engine stop turns the engine off. The ignition also turns off in order to save battery power. Before the engine shuts down, a message appears in the information display showing a timer counting down. If you do not intervene within 30 seconds, the engine shuts down. Another message appears in the information display to inform you that the engine has shut down in order to save fuel. Start your vehicle as you normally do.

Switching Automatic Engine Stop On and Off

1. From the settings menu, press Vehicle.
2. Switch 30min Max Idle on or off.

Note: You cannot permanently switch off the automatic engine stop feature. If you switch it off, it turns on automatically at the next ignition cycle.

Overriding Automatic Engine Stop

You can stop the engine shutdown, or reset the timer, at any point before the 30-second countdown has expired by doing any of the following:

- Pressing the brake pedal or accelerator pedal.
- Pressing the **OK** or **RESET** button during the countdown.

Note: You cannot permanently switch off the automatic engine stop feature. If you switch it off, it turns on automatically at the next ignition cycle.

Starting and Stopping the Engine – Troubleshooting

Starting and Stopping the Engine – Warning Lamps

Malfunction Indicator Lamp

 If it illuminates when the engine is running, the on-board diagnostics system is detecting a malfunction of the vehicle emission control system. If it flashes, engine misfire could be occurring. Increased exhaust gas temperatures could damage the catalytic converter or other vehicle components. Avoid heavy acceleration and deceleration, and have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Powertrain Warning Lamp

 If it illuminates when the engine is running, this indicates a powertrain or four-wheel drive fault. If it flashes when you are driving, immediately reduce the vehicle speed.Avoid heavy acceleration and deceleration, and have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

If both lamps illuminate when the engine is running, stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.Continuing to drive your vehicle could cause reduced power or the engine to stop. Switch the ignition off and attempt to restart the engine. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Oil Pressure Warning Lamp

 It illuminates when you switch the ignition on.If it illuminates when the engine is running, this indicates a malfunction.Stop your vehicle and switch the engine off. Check the engine oil level. If the oil level is sufficient, this indicates a system malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Starting and Stopping the Engine – Information Messages

Message	Details
Cranking time exceeded	Displays if you exceed the starting time limit. You cannot attempt to start the engine for 15 minutes. If you cannot start the engine after 15 minutes passes, have your vehicle immediately checked.

Message	Details
Starting system fault	Displays if you are unable to start your vehicle with a correctly coded key. The system has detected a fault that requires service.Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
No key detected	Displays if the system does not detect a valid passive key.

Starting and Stopping the Engine – Frequently Asked Questions - Gasoline

Why is the engine idle speed high when I start the engine?

- The speed the engine idles immediately after starting is optimized to minimize vehicle emissions and maximize cabin comfort and fuel economy.

Why is the engine not cranking?
The engine does not crank if:

- The system does not detect a valid passive key.
- The passive key battery has no charge.
- The vehicle battery does not have sufficient charge.
- The brake pedal is not pressed for automatic transmissions or the clutch pedal is not pressed for manual transmissions.
- The transmission is not in the park (P) or neutral (N) for automatic transmissions.
- The starting system has been disabled after multiple attempts of starting the engine.

What should I do if the starting system is disabled?

- You can only attempt to start the engine for a set number of times before the starting system temporarily disables. If you exceed the limit, a message may appear and you need to wait at least 15 minutes to start the engine again.

What should I do if the engine does not start?

- If you cannot start the engine after three attempts, wait 10 seconds and do the following:

1. Fully press the brake pedal for automatic transmissions or clutch pedal for manual transmissions.

Note: Make sure that the parking brake is applied.
Note: Make sure that the transmission is in park (P) or neutral (N) for automatic transmissions.

2. Fully press and hold the accelerator pedal.

3. Press the push button ignition switch. See **Push Button Ignition Switch**.

Note: The engine cranks for a short period of time and then stops.

4. Release the accelerator pedal.

5. Press the push button ignition switch. See **Push Button Ignition Switch**.

Why do I experience different driving characteristics?

- If you disconnect the battery, your vehicle may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics for about 5 mi (8 km) after you reconnect it. This is because the engine management system must realign itself with the engine. You can disregard any unusual driving characteristics during this period.

What happens if the system does not detect a valid passive key?

- If the system does not detect a valid passive key, the engine does not start and a warning message displays in the instrument cluster display. To start the engine insert the passive key into the backup position and press the push button ignition switch to start the engine. See **Accessing the Passive Key Backup Position**.

Starting and Stopping the Engine – Frequently Asked Questions - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)

Why does the engine not crank?

- When you start your vehicle, a green indicator light appears in the instrument cluster letting you know that your vehicle is ready for driving. Since your vehicle is equipped with a silent key start, the engine may not start when your vehicle starts.

Why is the engine speed high when the engine first starts?

- When the engine starts for the first time on your drive, the idle speed increases, this helps to warm up the engine. If the engine idle speed does not slow down, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.

Why can I not start my vehicle when the high voltage battery is charged?

- Your vehicle has a high voltage to low voltage energy transfer feature that keeps the 12-volt battery charged by the high voltage battery. However 12-volt battery depletion can still occur, and in such case you are unable to start your vehicle. See **Maintenance**.

What happens if the system does not detect a valid passive key?

- If the system does not detect a valid passive key, the engine does not start and a warning message displays in the instrument cluster display. To start the engine insert the passive key into the backup position and press the push button ignition switch to start the engine. See **Accessing the Passive Key Backup Position**.

Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle Information - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)

Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle Information

A plug-in hybrid electric vehicle combines a gasoline engine with an electric motor and rechargeable high voltage battery allowing you to use electricity to power your vehicle. Charging your vehicle adds electrical energy that propels the vehicle, providing extended electric-only driving range. System conditions could require the engine to operate while electric-only range is still available.
Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle Driving Characteristics
Your plug-in hybrid vehicle shares the driving characteristics of hybrid electric vehicles with the addition of extended electric- only driving range and unique selectable drive modes.

The system maximizes the use of electric-only operation in normal drive mode. System conditions could require the engine to operate, however, the system uses the available electric range whenever possible.
In Pure EV drive mode, your vehicle typically uses only electric power. The engine operates to provide extra power when you fully press the accelerator pedal. System conditions may also require the engine to operate.
Preserve EV drive mode saves the electric range for later use. If you select this mode and the battery is at full or near full charge, it uses some electric-only range to discharge the battery. This allows the regenerative braking system to fully operate. If battery charge is low when this mode is selected the engine charges the high voltage battery to provide some electric range for later.
Other drive modes use electric power as necessary to deliver the selected drive mode experience. See **What Is Drive Mode Control**.

Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle Indicators

READY When you start your vehicle, a green READY indicator light appears in the instrument cluster letting you know that your vehicle is ready for driving.
The engine may not start because your vehicle has a silent key start feature. This fuel saving feature allows your vehicle to be ready to drive without requiring the gas engine to be running.
The indicator remains on when your vehicle is on, whether the engine is running or not, to indicate your vehicle is capable of movement using the electric motor, gas engine or both.
Typically, the engine does not start unless the vehicle is cold, a climate control change is requested or you press the accelerator pedal.

Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle Information – Warning Lamps

 Illuminates if your vehicle's electrical system requires service to identify the cause for your vehicle to shut down or enter a limited operating mode.A message may appear in the instrument cluster display. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle Information – Information Messages

Message	Details
Is vehicle plugged in? Yes No	Your vehicle needs confirmation it is unplugged before allowing a start. Check to make sure you unplugged your vehicle and then respond to the message prompt before starting your vehicle.
Unplug prior to starting vehicle	Your vehicle detects it is still plugged in after you attempt to start it.
Engine enabled due to defrost setting	Your vehicle enables the engine due to the climate control defrost setting. This is normal operation.
Change drive mode for full defrost	For full defrost heat, select a drive mode other than Pure EV. The engine may run to provide more cabin heat.
Engine enabled for system performance	Your vehicle enables the engine for system performance. This is normal operation.
Stop safely now	Displays when a malfunction occurs in the high voltage electric system.Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Low Engine Use Mode

Low engine use mode maintains proper engine lubrication at sufficient temperature and activates when you drive your vehicle with limited engine operation.
When in low engine use mode, your vehicle runs the engine as necessary. When low engine use mode begins, a message appears in the information display. If low engine use mode does not complete before you switch your vehicle off, it continues the next time you start your vehicle and the message reappears.
Note: Pure EV now mode is not available when in low engine use mode.
Note: Cold temperatures affect the engine warm up time and the low engine use mode may operate more frequently.
Note: An oil change is not required but gives you the option of not running a low engine use cycle. Resetting the oil life monitoring system suspends the low engine use mode.

Power Flow

The power flow shows how power is being used in the vehicle and also displays the reasons for engine operation.
 The power flow information for your plug-in hybrid vehicle is available under the features menu.
Vehicle Operational States
Power flows to or from the front and rear wheels depending on operational state and driving conditions.

- Idling: The vehicle is running and in park (P). The engine and, or the high voltage battery are on.
- Electric driving: The vehicle is running and in drive (D) or neutral (N). The high voltage battery provides power to the wheels.
- Hybrid driving: The vehicle is running and in drive (D) or neutral (N). The engine and the high voltage battery provide power to the wheels.
- Regenerative braking: The vehicle is running in drive (D) and is slowing down. The regenerative braking system captures power and sends it back to the high voltage battery.
- Charging: The vehicle is plugged in and the high voltage battery is being charged.

Engine On Due To
The following conditions help explain why the engine is on and what you can do to allow all electric operation.

- Drive power: The engine is on due to accelerator pedal pressure or speed control activation. Reduce pressure on the accelerator pedal or switch off the speed control to return to full electric mode.
- High speed: The engine is on because the vehicle speed exceeds the level for full electric operation. Reduce the speed to return to electric operation.
- Heater setting: The engine is on because of the heater setting. Reduce or switch off the heater setting to return to electric operation.
- Neutral gear: The engine is on because the vehicle is in neutral (N). Shift out of neutral gear to return to electric operation.
- Engine cold: The engine is on because it is cold. The vehicle returns to electric operation once the engine is sufficiently warm.
- Battery charging: The engine is on to charge the high voltage battery. The vehicle returns to electric operation once the battery is sufficiently charged.
- Low gear: The engine is on because the vehicle is in low (L). Shift out of low (L) to return to electric operation.
- Normal operation: The engine is on to optimize vehicle operation. The vehicle returns to electric operation when possible.
- Low use: The engine is on to maintain engine oil quality. The vehicle returns to electric operation when low engine use mode is complete. See **Low Engine Use Mode - Plug-In Hybrid Electric**

Vehicle (PHEV).

- Engine braking active: The engine is on to provide increased powertrain braking. This can occur when you turn on the grade assist feature, when speed control is on or when driving with your foot off the accelerator pedal. Turning off grade assist or speed control may allow the vehicle to return to electric operation.
- Battery temperature: The engine is on due to high or low high voltage battery temperature. This is a normal operating condition. The vehicle returns to electric operation when possible.
- Drive mode: The engine is on due to the drive mode selection. Select an appropriate drive mode for electric only operation.

Auto-Start-Stop - Gasoline

What Is Auto-Start-Stop

The system is designed to help reduce fuel consumption and CO_2 emissions by stopping the engine when it is idling, for example at traffic lights.

Auto-Start-Stop Precautions

WARNING: Apply the parking brake, shift into park (P), switch the ignition off and remove the key before you leave your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

WARNING: Apply the parking brake, shift into park (P), switch the ignition off and remove the key before you open the hood or have any service or repair work completed. If you do not switch the ignition off, the engine could restart at any time. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

Switching Auto-Start-Stop On and Off

The system turns on when you switch the ignition on.

Press the button to switch the system off.

Note: OFF illuminates in the switch.

Note: Deactivating the system using the button lasts only one key cycle.

Press the button again to switch the system back on.

Note: The system turns off if it detects a malfunction.If the system malfunctions, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Stopping the Engine

Stop your vehicle, keep your foot on the brake pedal and the transmission in drive (D).

Restarting the Engine

Release the brake pedal or press the accelerator pedal.

A message appears in the instrument cluster display if the system requires you to take action.

Auto-Start-Stop Indicators

WARNING: The system may require the engine to automatically restart when the auto-start-stop indicator illuminates green or flashes amber. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

 The auto-start-stop indicator illuminates green when the engine stops. It flashes amber and a message appears when you need to take action.

 The auto-start-stop indicator illuminates gray with a strikethrough when the system is not available.

Auto-Start-Stop – Information Messages

A message appears in the instrument cluster display if the system requires you to take action.

Message	Condition	Action
Auto StartStop Press Brake to Start Engine	The system needs to restart the engine but requires your confirmation.	Press the brake pedal to restart the engine.
Auto StartStop Press a Pedal to Start Engine	The system needs to restart the engine but requires your confirmation.	Press the brake pedal or the accelerator pedal to restart the engine.

Auto-Start-Stop – Frequently Asked Questions

Why does the engine not always stop when I expect it to?
The system is designed to work in a way that complements other vehicle systems, allowing them to operate at optimum performance.

The system does not stop the engine if:

- The driver door is open.
- Your vehicle is at high altitude.
- The heated windshield is on.
- The engine is warming up.
- The outside temperature is too low or too high.
- The battery charge is low.
- The battery temperature is outside the optimal operating range.
- The engine is required to run to maintain interior climate and reduce fogging.

Why does the engine sometimes restart when I do not expect it to?
The system is designed to work in a way that complements other vehicle systems, allowing them to operate at optimum performance.

The system restarts the engine if:

- You switch the heated windshield on.
- You switch maximum defrost on.
- Your vehicle starts to roll downhill in neutral.
- The engine is required to run to maintain adequate brake system assistance.

- The engine is required to run to maintain interior climate and reduce fogging.

Can I permanently switch the system off?
No.The system plays an important role in reducing the fuel consumption and the CO_2 emissions.
Will the frequent engine starts cause parts to wear out?
Your vehicle has an enhanced battery and starter motor that are designed for the increased number of engine starts.

Auto-Start-Stop – Troubleshooting

Auto-Start-Stop – Information Messages

A message appears in the instrument cluster display if the system requires you to take action.

Message	Condition	Action
Auto StartStop Press Brake to Start Engine	The system needs to restart the engine but requires your confirmation.	Press the brake pedal to restart the engine.
Auto StartStop Press a Pedal to Start Engine	The system needs to restart the engine but requires your confirmation.	Press the brake pedal or the accelerator pedal to restart the engine.

Auto-Start-Stop – Frequently Asked Questions

Why does the engine not always stop when I expect it to?
The system is designed to work in a way that complements other vehicle systems, allowing them to operate at optimum performance.

The system does not stop the engine if:
- The driver door is open.
- Your vehicle is at high altitude.
- The heated windshield is on.
- The engine is warming up.
- The outside temperature is too low or too high.
- The battery charge is low.
- The battery temperature is outside the optimal operating range.
- The engine is required to run to maintain interior climate and reduce fogging.

Why does the engine sometimes restart when I do not expect it to?
The system is designed to work in a way that complements other vehicle systems, allowing them to operate at optimum performance.

The system restarts the engine if:
- You switch the heated windshield on.
- You switch maximum defrost on.
- Your vehicle starts to roll downhill in neutral.
- The engine is required to run to maintain adequate brake system assistance.
- The engine is required to run to maintain interior climate and reduce fogging.

Can I permanently switch the system off?
No.The system plays an important role in reducing the fuel consumption and the CO_2 emissions.

Will the frequent engine starts cause parts to wear out?
Your vehicle has an enhanced battery and starter motor that are designed for the increased number of engine starts.

Fuel and Refueling

Fuel and Refueling Precautions

WARNING: Fuels can cause serious injury or death if misused or mishandled.

WARNING: Fuel may contain benzene, which is a cancer-causing agent.

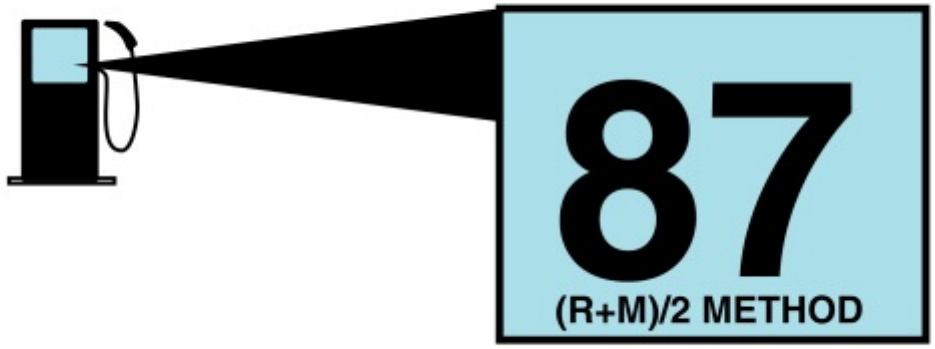
WARNING: Read and follow all the instructions on the pump island.

WARNING: When refueling always shut the engine off and never allow sparks or open flames near the fuel tank filler valve. Never smoke or use a cell phone while refueling. Fuel vapor is extremely hazardous under certain conditions. Avoid inhaling excess fumes.

Follow these guidelines when refueling:

- Extinguish all smoking materials and any open flames before refueling your vehicle.
- Switch the engine off before refueling.
- Automotive fuels can be harmful or fatal if swallowed. Fuel is highly toxic and if swallowed can cause death or permanent injury. If fuel is swallowed immediately call a physician, even if no symptoms are immediately apparent. The toxic effects of fuel may not be apparent for hours.
- Avoid inhaling fuel vapors.Inhaling fuel vapor can lead to eye and respiratory tract irritation.In severe cases, excessive or prolonged breathing of fuel vapor can cause serious illness and permanent injury.
- Avoid getting fuel in your eyes. If you splash fuel in your eyes, immediately remove contact lenses, if worn, flush with water for 15 minutes and seek medical attention.Failure to seek proper medical attention could lead to permanent injury.
- Fuels can be harmful if absorbed through the skin. If you splash fuel on your skin, clothing or both, promptly remove contaminated clothing and thoroughly wash your skin with soap and water. Repeated or prolonged skin contact causes skin irritation.
- Be particularly careful if you are taking Antabuse or other forms of Disulfiram for the treatment of alcoholism. Breathing fuel vapors could cause an adverse reaction, serious personal injury or sickness. Immediately call a physician if you experience any adverse reactions.

Selecting the Correct Fuel



Your vehicle operates on regular unleaded gasoline with a minimum pump (R+M)/2 octane rating of 87. Some fuel stations, particularly those in high altitude areas, offer fuels posted as regular unleaded gasoline with an octane rating below 87. The use of these fuels could result in engine damage that will not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.
For best overall vehicle and engine performance, premium fuel with an octane rating of 91 or higher is recommended. The performance gained by using premium fuel is most noticeable in hot weather as well as other conditions, for example when towing a trailer. See **Towing a Trailer**.
Do not be concerned if the engine sometimes knocks lightly. However, if the engine knocks heavily while using fuel with the recommended octane rating, contact an authorized dealer to prevent any engine damage.
We recommend Top Tier detergent gasolines, where available to help minimize engine deposits and maintain optimal vehicle and engine performance.
For additional information, visit https://www.toptiergas.com.

Note: Use of any fuel for which the vehicle was not designed can impair the emission control system, cause loss of vehicle performance, and cause damage to the engine which may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.

Do not use:

- Diesel fuel.
- Fuels containing kerosene or paraffin.
- Fuel containing more than 15% ethanol (E15) or E85 fuel.
- Fuels containing methanol.
- Fuels containing metallic-based additives, including manganese-based compounds.
- Fuels containing the octane booster additive, methylcyclopentadienyl manganese tricarbonyl (MMT).
- Leaded fuel, using leaded fuel is prohibited by law.

The use of fuels with metallic compounds such as methylcyclopentadienyl manganese tricarbonyl, which is a manganese-based fuel additive, will impair engine performance and affect the emission control system.

Locating the Fuel Filler Funnel

The fuel filler funnel is under the luggage compartment floor covering.

Filling a Portable Fuel Container

WARNING: Flow of fuel through a fuel pump nozzle can produce static electricity. This can cause a fire if you are filling an ungrounded fuel container.

Use the following guidelines to avoid electrostatic charge build-up, which can produce a spark, when filling an ungrounded fuel container:

- Only use an approved fuel container to transfer fuel to your vehicle.Place the container on the ground when filling it.
- Do not fill a fuel container when it is inside your vehicle (including the cargo area).
- Keep the fuel pump nozzle in contact with the fuel container when filling it.
- Do not use a device that holds the fuel pump nozzle lever in the fill position.

Adding Fuel From a Portable Fuel Container

WARNING: Do not insert the nozzle of a fuel container or an aftermarket funnel into the fuel filler neck. This may damage the fuel system filler neck or its seal and cause fuel to run onto the ground.

WARNING: Do not pry open the fuel tank filler valve. This could damage the fuel system. Failure to follow this instruction could result in fire, personal injury or death.

WARNING: Do not dispose of fuel in the household refuse or the public sewage system. Use an authorized waste disposal facility.

When refueling the vehicle fuel tank from a fuel container, use the fuel filler funnel included with your vehicle. See **Locating the Fuel Filler Funnel**.
Note: Do not use aftermarket funnels as they may not work with the capless fuel system and can damage it.
When refueling the vehicle fuel tank from a fuel container, do the following:

1. Fully open the fuel filler door.

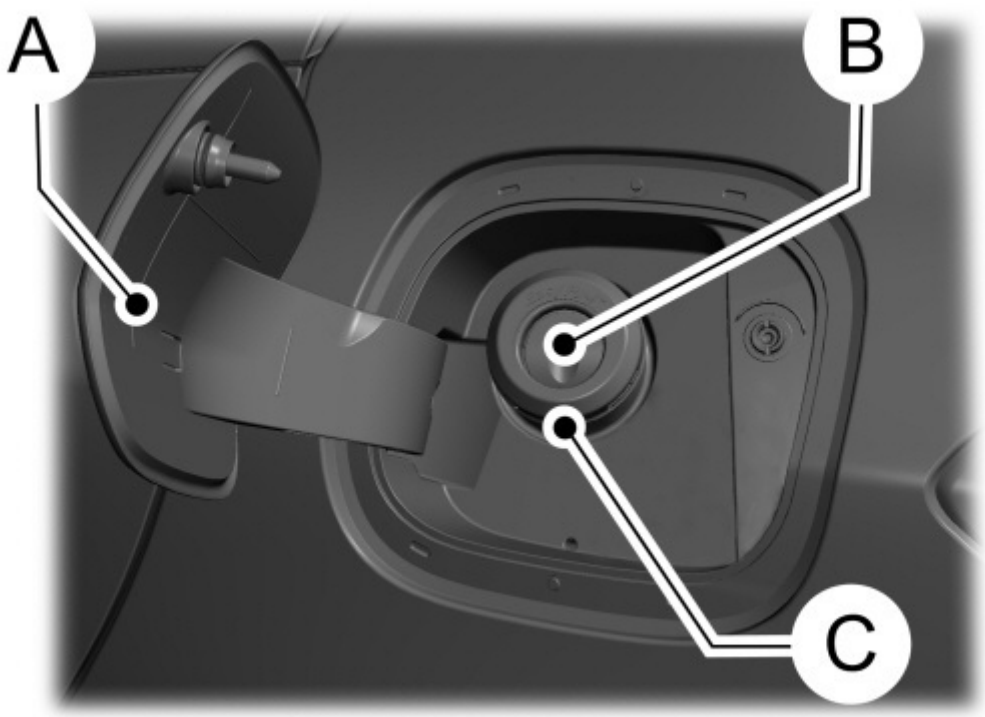


2. Fully insert the fuel filler funnel into the fuel filler inlet.

3. Add fuel to your vehicle from the fuel container.
4. Remove the fuel filler funnel.
5. Fully close the fuel filler door.
6. Clean the fuel filler funnel and place it back in your vehicle or correctly dispose of it.

Note: If your vehicle runs out of fuel add a minimum of 1.3 gal (5 L) of fuel to restart the engine.
Note: You may need to switch the ignition from off to on several times after refueling to allow the fuel system to pump the fuel from the tank to the engine. When restarting, cranking time takes a few seconds longer than normal.
Note: Extra funnels can be purchased from an authorized dealer if you choose to dispose of the funnel.

Refueling System Overview



A Fuel filler door.
B Fuel filler inlet.
C Fuel tank filler pipe.

Refueling Your Vehicle - Excluding: Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)

⚠ **WARNING**: Do not pry open the fuel tank filler valve. This could damage the fuel system. Failure to follow this instruction could result in fire, personal injury or death.

⚠ **WARNING**: Do not remove the fuel pump nozzle from its fully inserted position when refueling.

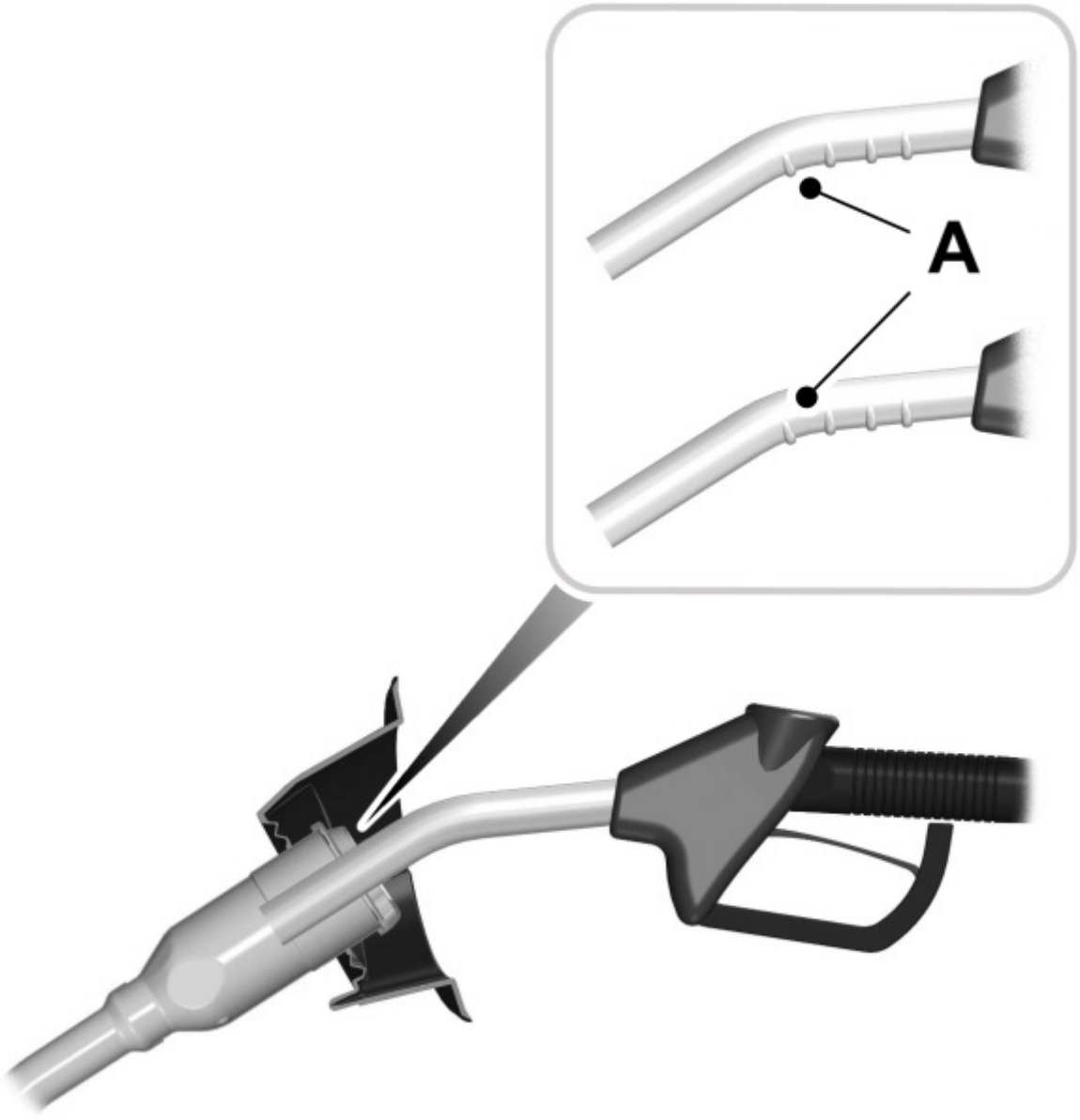
⚠ **WARNING**: Stop refueling when the fuel pump nozzle automatically shuts off for the first time. Failure to follow this will fill the expansion space in the fuel tank and could lead to fuel overflowing.

⚠ **WARNING**: Do not overfill the fuel tank. The pressure in an overfilled tank may cause leakage and lead to fuel spray and fire.

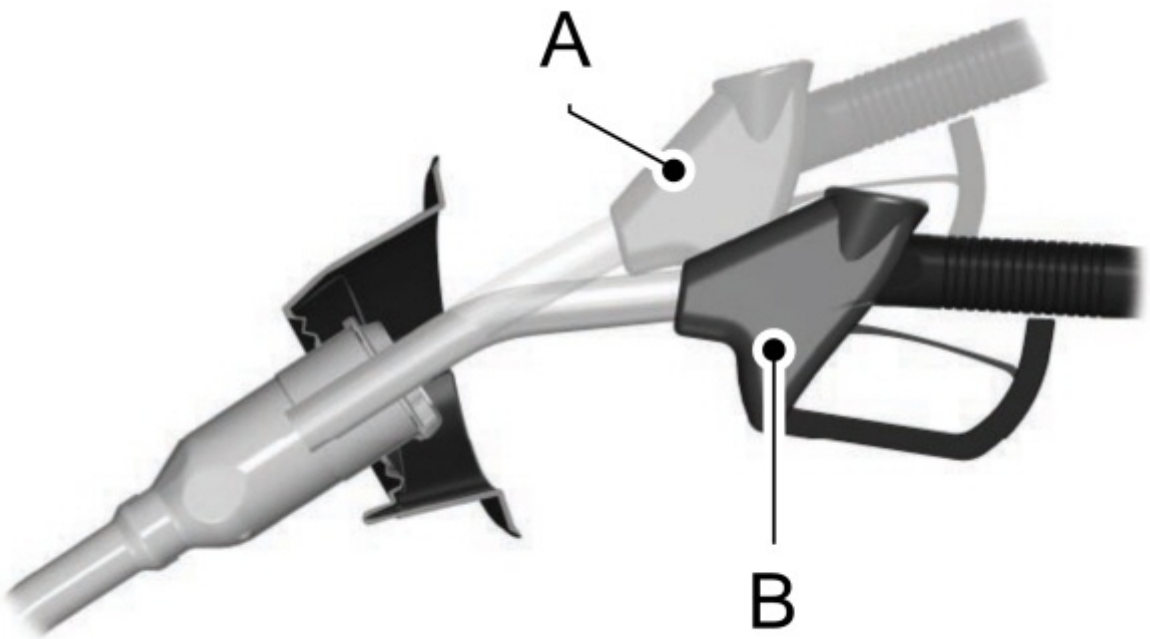
⚠ **WARNING**: Wait at least five seconds before removing the fuel pump nozzle to allow any residual fuel to drain into the fuel tank.

⚠ **WARNING**: Read and follow all the instructions on the pump island.

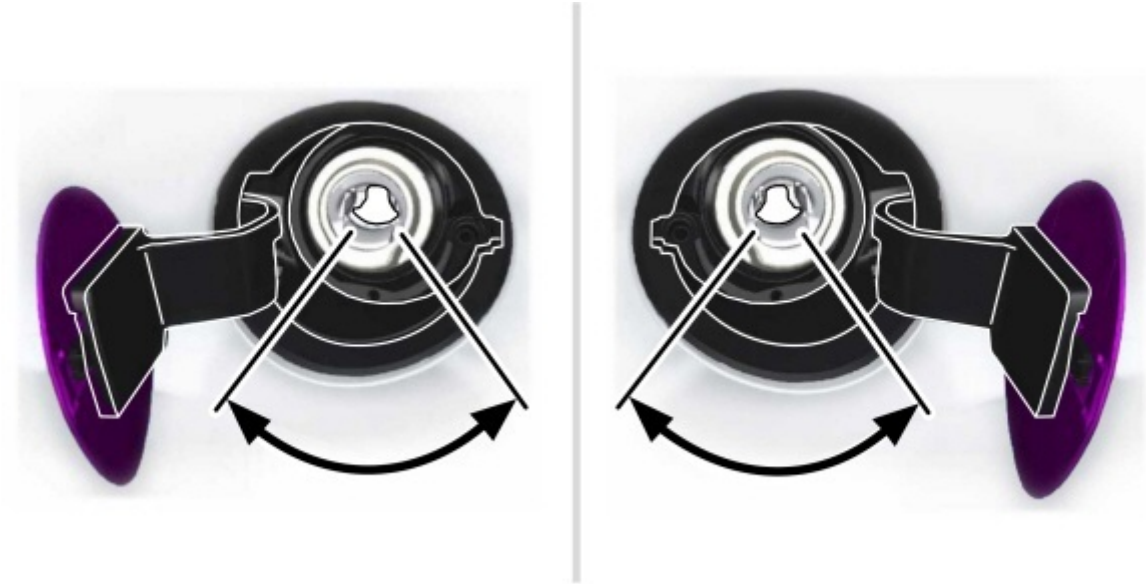
1. Fully open the fuel filler door.
2. Select the correct fuel pump nozzle for your vehicle.



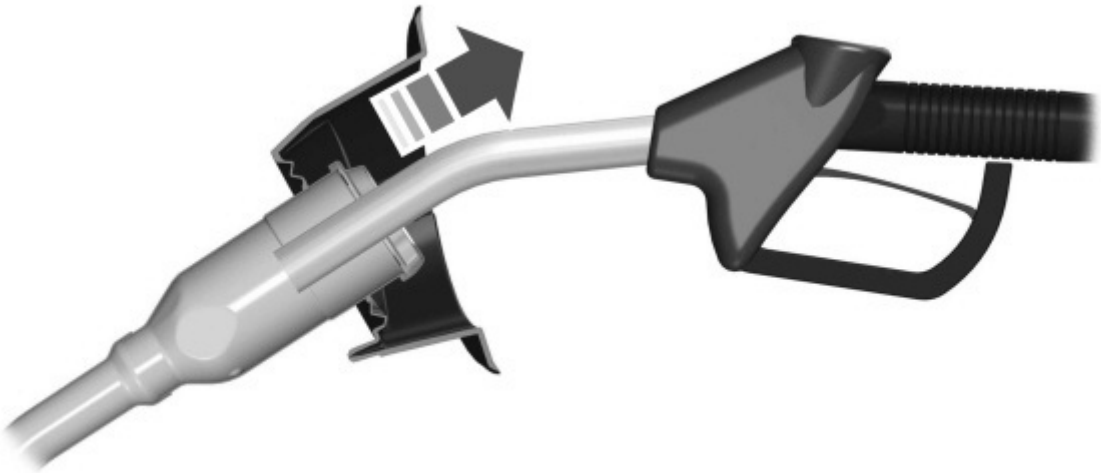
3. Insert the fuel pump nozzle up to the first notch on the nozzle A.Keep the fuel pump nozzle resting on the fuel tank filler pipe.



4. Hold the fuel pump nozzle in position B when refueling.Holding the fuel pump nozzle in position A can affect the flow of fuel and shut off the fuel pump nozzle before the fuel tank is full.



5. Operate the fuel pump nozzle within the area shown.



6. When the nozzle shuts off, wait at least 5 seconds, then slightly raise the fuel pump nozzle and slowly remove it.

7. Fully close the fuel filler door.

Do not attempt to start the engine if you have filled the fuel tank with incorrect fuel. Incorrect fuel use could cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty. Have your vehicle immediately checked.

Refueling Your Vehicle - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)

WARNING: When refueling always shut the engine off and never allow sparks or open flames near the fuel tank filler valve. Never smoke or use a cell phone while refueling. Fuel vapor is extremely hazardous under certain conditions. Avoid inhaling excess fumes.

WARNING: The fuel system may be under pressure. If you hear a hissing sound near the fuel filler inlet, do not refuel until the sound stops. Otherwise, fuel may spray out, which could cause serious personal injury.

WARNING: Fuel vapor burns violently and a fuel fire can cause severe injuries.

WARNING: Keep children away from the fuel pump. Never let children pump fuel.

WARNING: Stay outside your vehicle and do not leave the fuel pump unattended when refueling your vehicle.

WARNING: Do not pry open the fuel tank filler valve. This could damage the fuel system. Failure to follow this instruction could result in fire, personal injury or death.

WARNING: Do not remove the fuel pump nozzle from its fully inserted position when refueling.

WARNING: Stop refueling when the fuel pump nozzle automatically shuts off for the first time. Failure to follow this will fill the expansion space in the fuel tank and could lead to fuel overflowing.

WARNING: Do not overfill the fuel tank. The pressure in an overfilled tank may cause leakage and lead to fuel spray and fire.

WARNING: Wait at least five seconds before removing the fuel pump nozzle to allow any residual fuel to drain into the fuel tank.

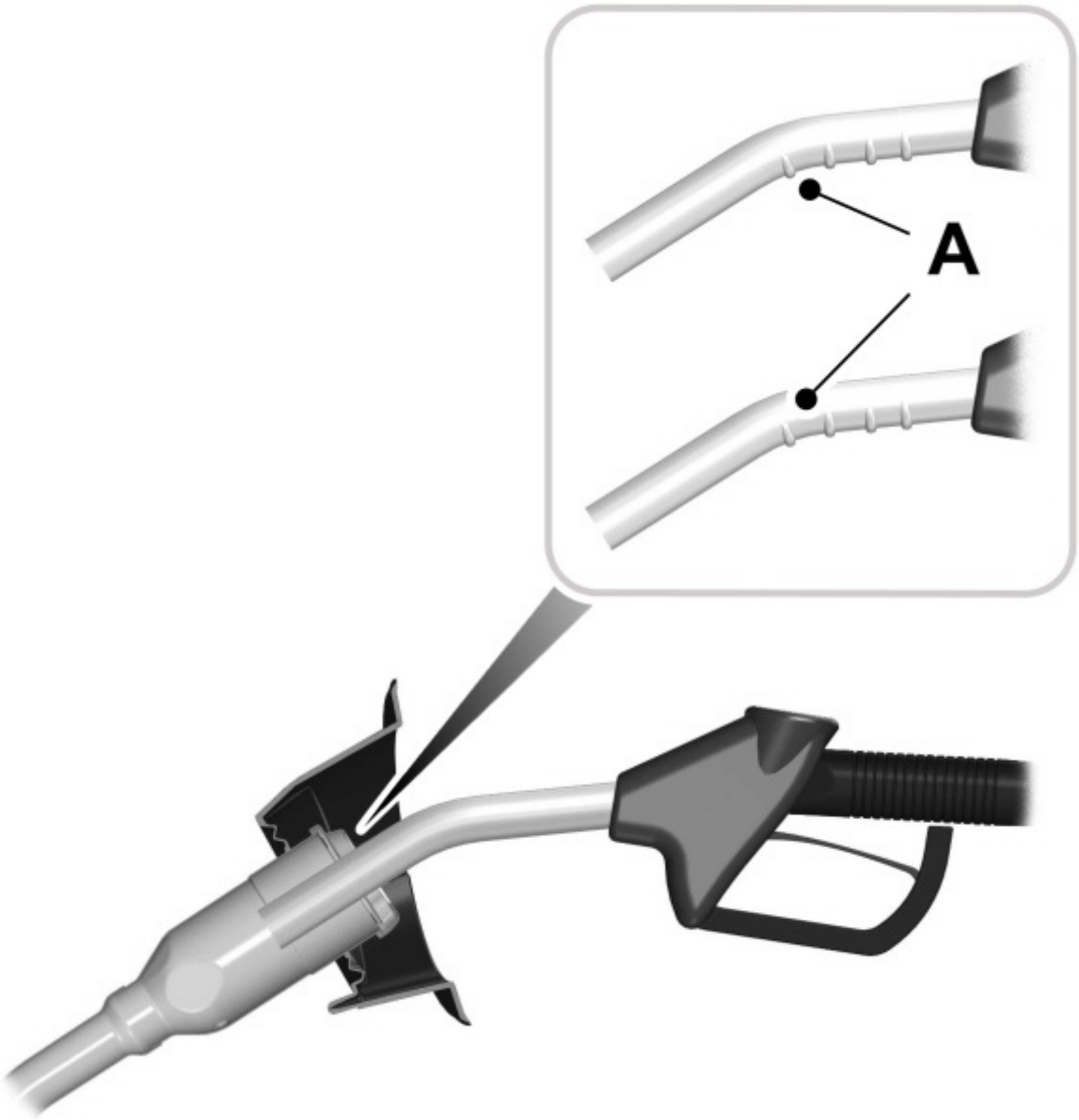
WARNING: Read and follow all the instructions on the pump island.

1. When you stop your vehicle, shift into park (P) and switch the ignition off.

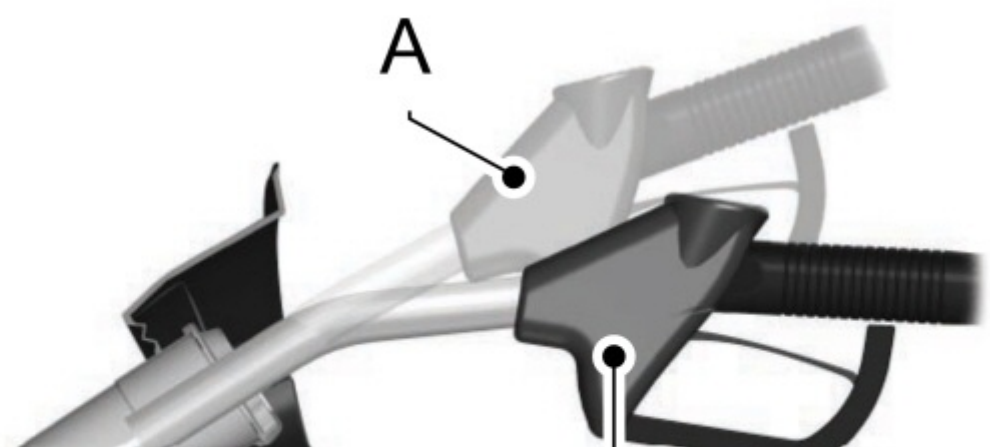


2. Press the button on the instrument panel next to the headlamp switch to open the fuel filler door.The fuel filler door can take up to 15 seconds to open before you can insert a fuel filler nozzle.

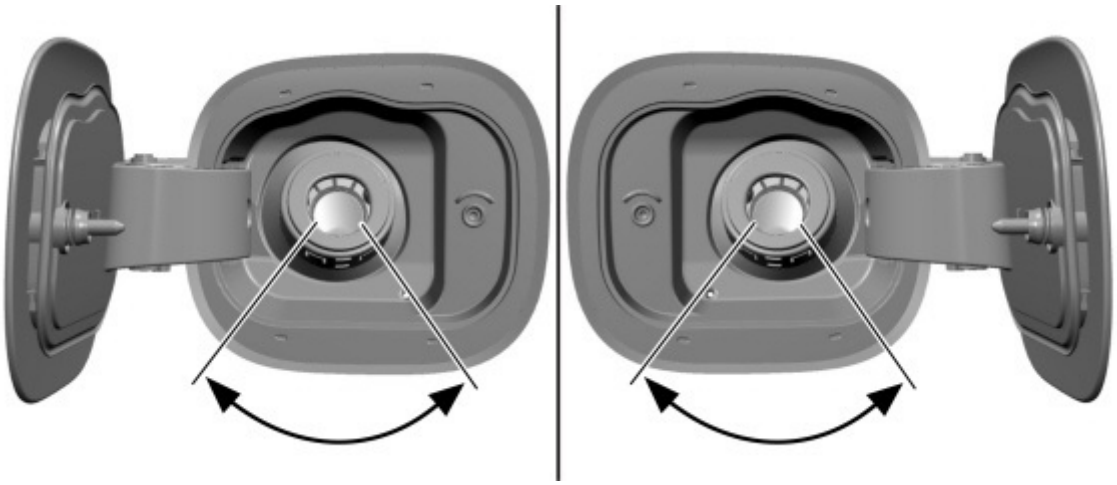
Note: Avoid pressing the button and blocking the fuel filler door at the same time. If an issue occurs, press the fuel filler door open button again to reset the fuel filler door lock mechanism.
Note: Do not pry open the fuel filler door as it can cause damage to your vehicle not covered by the vehicle Warranty.



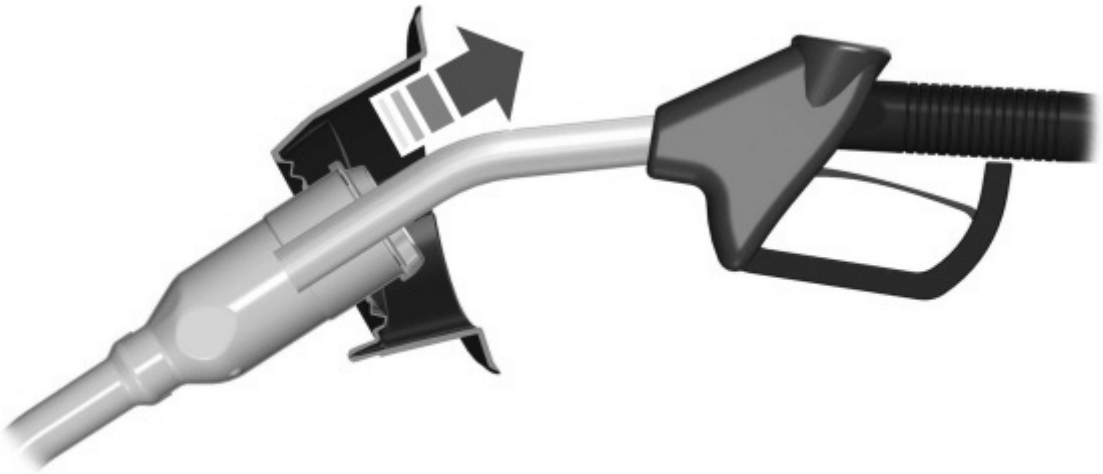
3. Insert the fuel pump nozzle up to the first notch on the nozzle A.Keep it resting on the cover of the fuel tank filler pipe opening.



4. Hold the fuel pump nozzle in position B when refueling.Holding the fuel pump nozzle in position A can affect the flow of fuel and shut off the fuel pump nozzle before the fuel tank is full.



5. Operate the fuel pump nozzle within the area shown.



6. When the nozzle shuts off, wait at least 5 seconds, then slightly raise the fuel pump nozzle and slowly remove it.

7. Close the fuel filler door.

Note: To close the fuel filler door, press the center rear edge of the fuel filler door and then release.
Note: Leaving the fuel door open could set a check engine lamp. See **Fuel and Refueling**.
Complete the refueling process within 20 minutes. If 20 minutes elapses, press the button on the instrument panel again.Fuel pump nozzle automatic shut off could occur if you do not press the button on the instrument panel.
Do not attempt to start the engine if you have filled the fuel tank with incorrect fuel. Incorrect fuel use could cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty. Have your vehicle immediately checked.

Manually Opening the Fuel Filler Door - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)

WARNING: The fuel system may be under pressure. If you hear a hissing sound near the fuel filler inlet, do not refuel until the sound stops. Otherwise, fuel may spray out, which could cause serious personal injury.

Note: The transmission must be in park (P) or neutral (N).
When using the manual override cable do the following:

1. Switch the ignition on.



Note: The manual override cable is in the left side rear wheel well area.

2. Pull the manual override cable down.

Note: Pull the manual override cable once. Repeated pulls can damage the manual override cable.

Note: Make sure the manual override cable moves freely without any obstructions.

3. Switch the ignition off.
4. Complete the refueling process within 20 minutes.
5. Return the manual override cable to its original position.

Note: Only follow this procedure if the fuel filler door fails to open. If the problem remains, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Fuel Tank Capacity - Excluding: Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)

Capacities

Variant	Quantity
2.0L	16.9 gal (64 L)

Advertised Capacity
The advertised capacity is the maximum amount of fuel that you can add to the fuel tank when the fuel gauge indicates empty.
In addition, the fuel tank contains an empty reserve.The empty reserve is an unspecified amount of fuel that remains in the fuel tank when the fuel gauge indicates empty.
Note: When refueling your vehicle after the fuel gauge indicates empty, you might not be able to refuel the full amount of the advertised capacity due to the empty reserve still present in the fuel tank.

Fuel Tank Capacity - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)

Capacities

Variant	Quantity
PHEV.	11.1 gal (42 L)

Advertised Capacity
The advertised capacity is the maximum amount of fuel that you can add to the fuel tank when the fuel gauge indicates empty.
In addition, the fuel tank contains an empty reserve.The empty reserve is an unspecified amount of fuel that remains in the fuel tank when the fuel gauge indicates empty.
Note: When refueling your vehicle after the fuel gauge indicates empty, you might not be able to refuel the full amount of the advertised capacity due to the empty reserve still present in the fuel tank.

Fuel and Refueling – Warning Lamps

 If it illuminates when you are driving, refuel as soon as possible.

Fuel and Refueling – Information Messages - Excluding: Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)

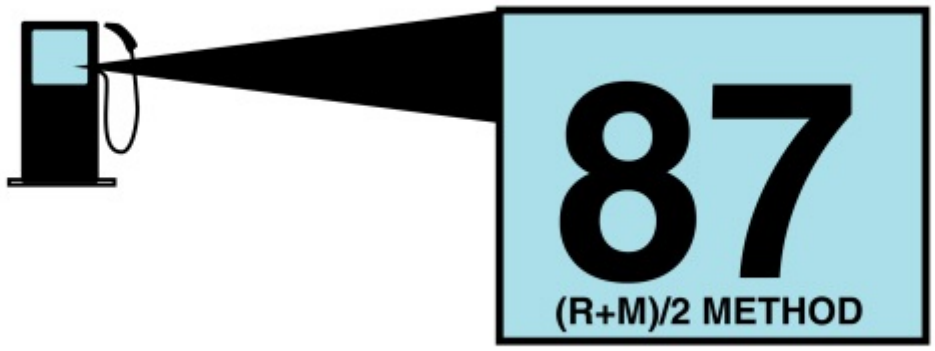
Message	Action
Fuel Level Low	An early reminder of a low fuel condition. Refill your vehicle.
Check Fuel Fill Inlet	Check to make sure the fuel fill inlet is fully closed.

Fuel and Refueling – Information Messages - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)

Message	Action
Fuel Level Low	An early reminder of a low fuel condition.
Check Fuel Fill Inlet	The fuel fill inlet may not be properly closed.
Please wait for fuel door to open	Appears while the fuel system is depressurizing with the fuel filler door closed. Wait for the fuel system to depressurize and for the fuel filler door to unlatch.
Fuel Door Open	Appears when the fuel system has depressurized and opened the fuel filler door. Open the fuel filler door to refuel and close the fuel filler door when refueling is complete.
Fuel door ajar Close fully to avoid Check engine light	Your vehicle is equipped with a sealed fuel system that requires the fuel filler door to be closed after refueling. This warning message appears when the fuel filler door is ajar. Close the fuel filler door to avoid the Check Engine light. If you see this message and the Check Engine light illuminates, close the fuel filler door. The Check Engine light should clear within five seconds. If the Check Engine light persists, see your dealer.
Refuel Error See Manual	Appears when the fuel system fails to depressurize, or the fuel filler door fails to open. You have to use the fuel filler door manual override cable when opening the fuel door.

Fuel Quality

Selecting the Correct Fuel



Your vehicle operates on regular unleaded gasoline with a minimum pump (R+M)/2 octane rating of 87. Some fuel stations, particularly those in high altitude areas, offer fuels posted as regular unleaded gasoline with an octane rating below 87. The use of these fuels could result in engine damage that will not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.
For best overall vehicle and engine performance, premium fuel with an octane rating of 91 or higher is recommended. The performance gained by using premium fuel is most noticeable in hot weather as well as other conditions, for example when towing a trailer. See **Towing a Trailer**.
Do not be concerned if the engine sometimes knocks lightly. However, if the engine knocks heavily while using fuel with the recommended octane rating, contact an authorized dealer to prevent any engine damage.
We recommend Top Tier detergent gasolines, where available to help minimize engine deposits and maintain optimal vehicle and engine performance.
For additional information, visit https://www.toptiergas.com.

Note: Use of any fuel for which the vehicle was not designed can impair the emission control system, cause loss of vehicle performance, and cause damage to the engine which may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.

Do not use:

- Diesel fuel.
- Fuels containing kerosene or paraffin.
- Fuel containing more than 15% ethanol (E15) or E85 fuel.
- Fuels containing methanol.
- Fuels containing metallic-based additives, including manganese-based compounds.
- Fuels containing the octane booster additive, methylcyclopentadienyl manganese tricarbonyl (MMT).
- Leaded fuel, using leaded fuel is prohibited by law.

The use of fuels with metallic compounds such as methylcyclopentadienyl manganese tricarbonyl, which is a manganese-based fuel additive, will impair engine performance and affect the emission control system.

Running Out of Fuel

Filling a Portable Fuel Container

WARNING: Flow of fuel through a fuel pump nozzle can produce static electricity. This can cause a fire if you are filling an ungrounded fuel container.

Use the following guidelines to avoid electrostatic charge build-up, which can produce a spark, when filling an ungrounded fuel container:

- Only use an approved fuel container to transfer fuel to your vehicle.Place the container on the ground when filling it.

- Do not fill a fuel container when it is inside your vehicle (including the cargo area).
- Keep the fuel pump nozzle in contact with the fuel container when filling it.
- Do not use a device that holds the fuel pump nozzle lever in the fill position.

Adding Fuel From a Portable Fuel Container

WARNING: Do not insert the nozzle of a fuel container or an aftermarket funnel into the fuel filler neck. This may damage the fuel system filler neck or its seal and cause fuel to run onto the ground.

WARNING: Do not pry open the fuel tank filler valve. This could damage the fuel system. Failure to follow this instruction could result in fire, personal injury or death.

WARNING: Do not dispose of fuel in the household refuse or the public sewage system. Use an authorized waste disposal facility.

When refueling the vehicle fuel tank from a fuel container, use the fuel filler funnel included with your vehicle. See **Locating the Fuel Filler Funnel**.
Note: Do not use aftermarket funnels as they may not work with the capless fuel system and can damage it.
When refueling the vehicle fuel tank from a fuel container, do the following:

1. Fully open the fuel filler door.



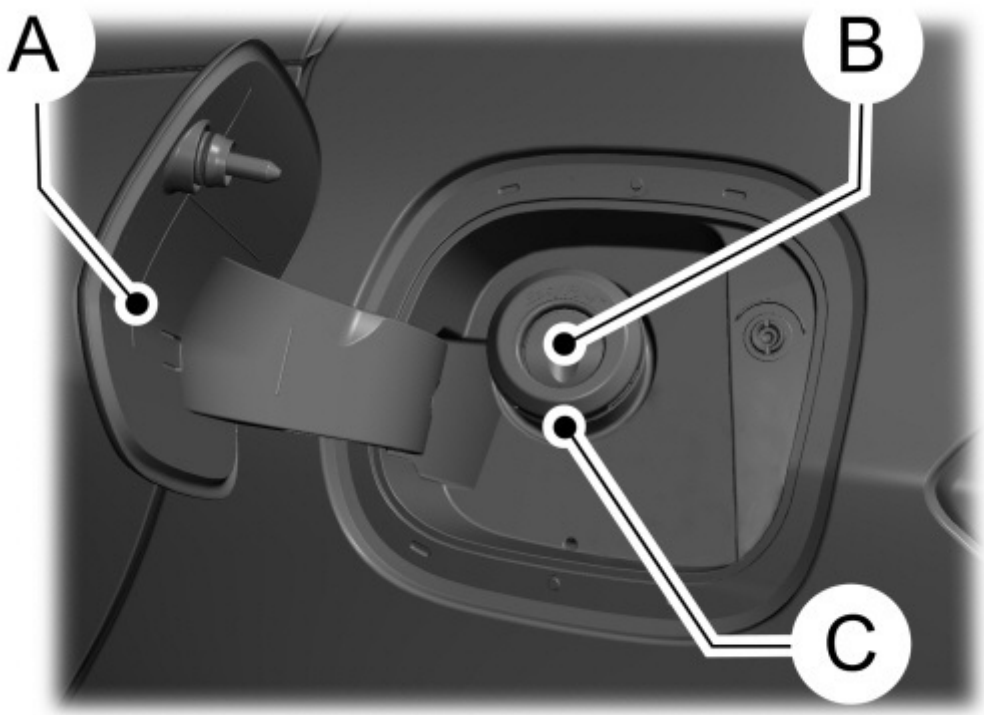
2. Fully insert the fuel filler funnel into the fuel filler inlet.
3. Add fuel to your vehicle from the fuel container.

4. Remove the fuel filler funnel.
5. Fully close the fuel filler door.
6. Clean the fuel filler funnel and place it back in your vehicle or correctly dispose of it.

Note: If your vehicle runs out of fuel add a minimum of 1.3 gal (5 L) of fuel to restart the engine.
Note: You may need to switch the ignition from off to on several times after refueling to allow the fuel system to pump the fuel from the tank to the engine. When restarting, cranking time takes a few seconds longer than normal.
Note: Extra funnels can be purchased from an authorized dealer if you choose to dispose of the funnel.

Refueling

Refueling System Overview



A Fuel filler door.
B Fuel filler inlet.
C Fuel tank filler pipe.

Refueling Your Vehicle - Excluding: Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)

⚠ **WARNING**: Do not pry open the fuel tank filler valve. This could damage the fuel system. Failure to follow this instruction could result in fire, personal injury or death.

⚠ **WARNING**: Do not remove the fuel pump nozzle from its fully inserted position when refueling.

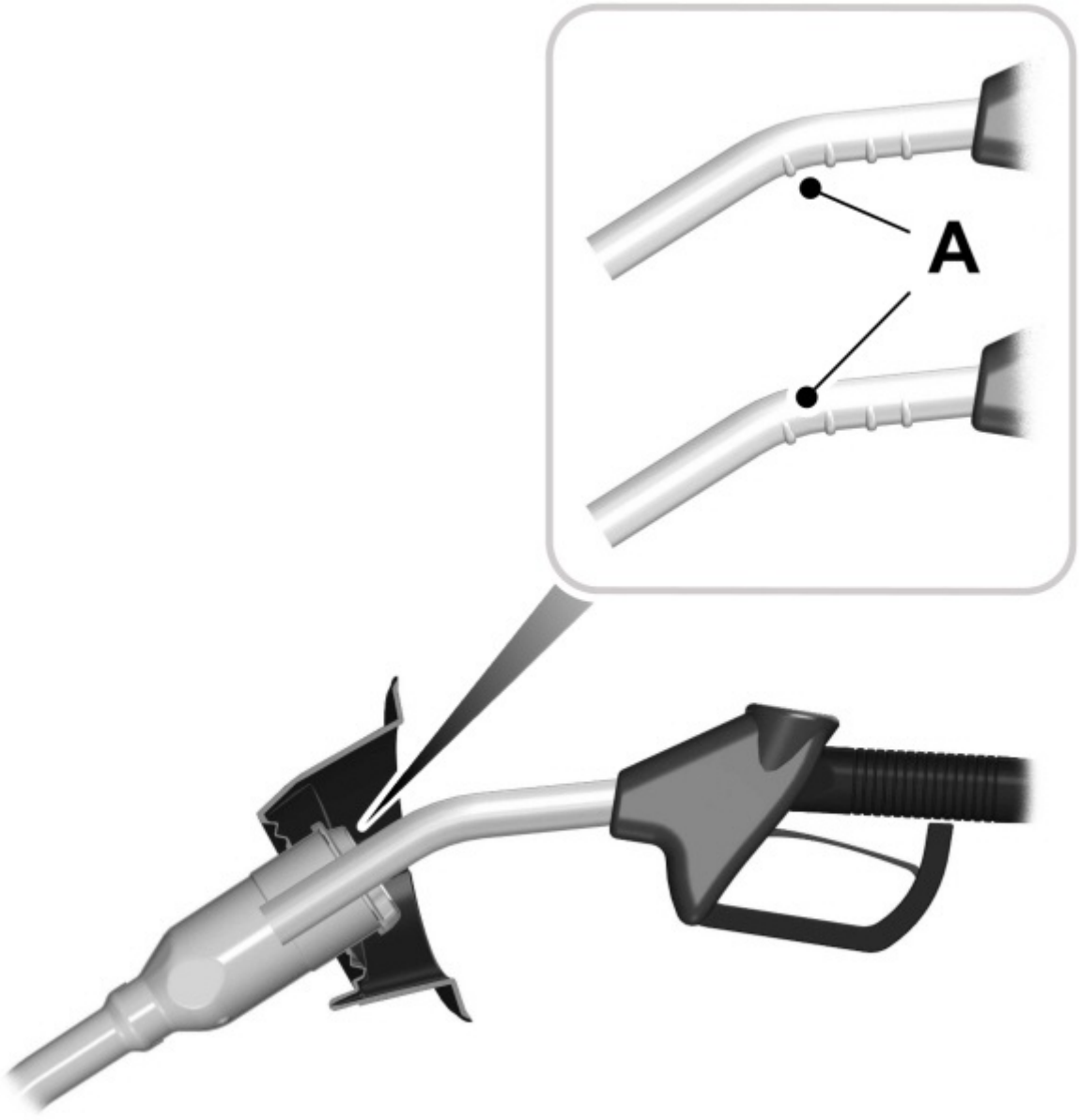
⚠ **WARNING**: Stop refueling when the fuel pump nozzle automatically shuts off for the first time. Failure to follow this will fill the expansion space in the fuel tank and could lead to fuel overflowing.

⚠ **WARNING**: Do not overfill the fuel tank. The pressure in an overfilled tank may cause leakage and lead to fuel spray and fire.

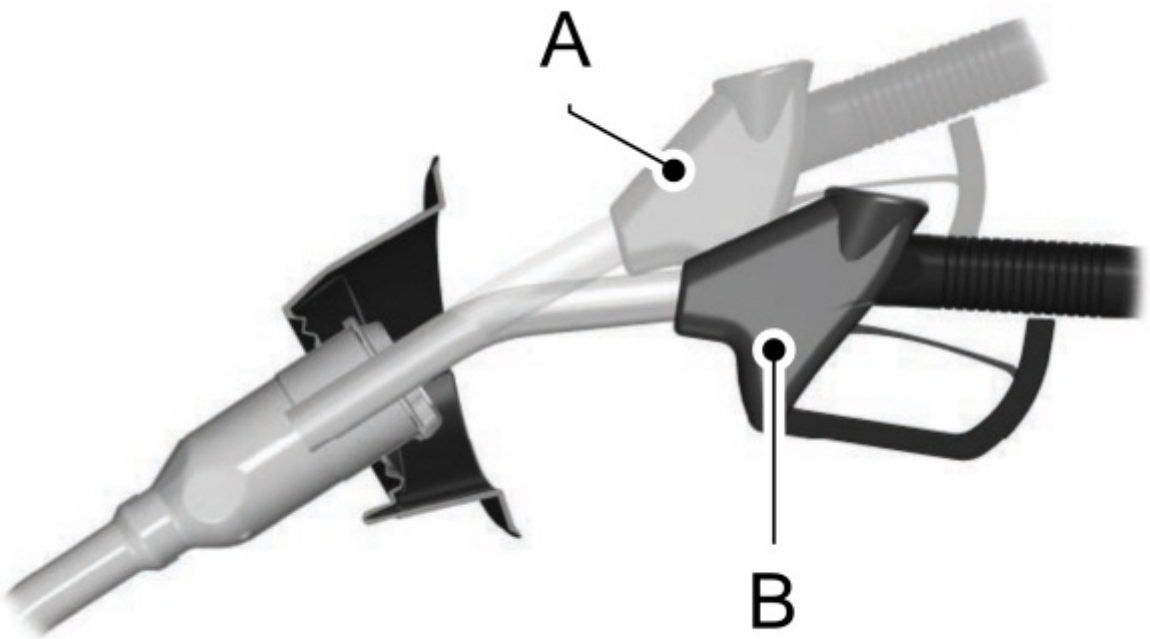
⚠ **WARNING**: Wait at least five seconds before removing the fuel pump nozzle to allow any residual fuel to drain into the fuel tank.

⚠ **WARNING**: Read and follow all the instructions on the pump island.

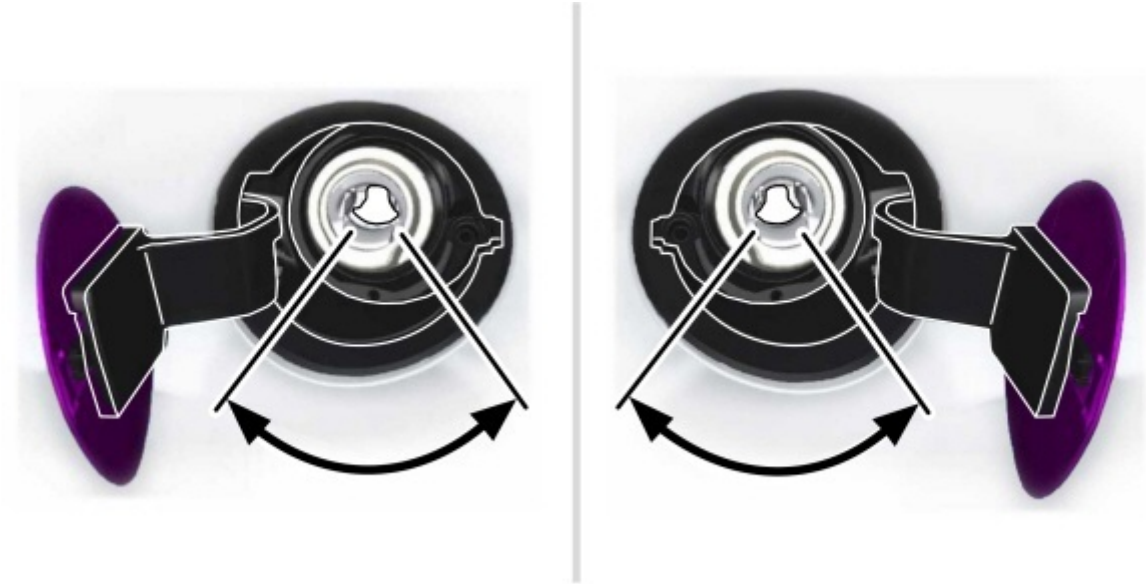
1. Fully open the fuel filler door.
2. Select the correct fuel pump nozzle for your vehicle.



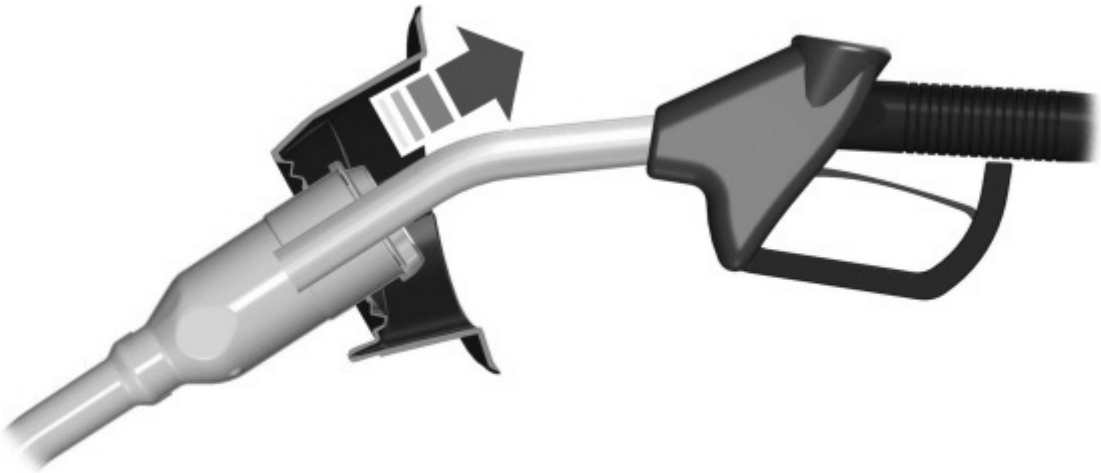
3. Insert the fuel pump nozzle up to the first notch on the nozzle A.Keep the fuel pump nozzle resting on the fuel tank filler pipe.



4. Hold the fuel pump nozzle in position B when refueling.Holding the fuel pump nozzle in position A can affect the flow of fuel and shut off the fuel pump nozzle before the fuel tank is full.



5. Operate the fuel pump nozzle within the area shown.



6. When the nozzle shuts off, wait at least 5 seconds, then slightly raise the fuel pump nozzle and slowly remove it.

7. Fully close the fuel filler door.

Do not attempt to start the engine if you have filled the fuel tank with incorrect fuel. Incorrect fuel use could cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty. Have your vehicle immediately checked.

Refueling Your Vehicle - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)

WARNING: When refueling always shut the engine off and never allow sparks or open flames near the fuel tank filler valve. Never smoke or use a cell phone while refueling. Fuel vapor is extremely hazardous under certain conditions. Avoid inhaling excess fumes.

WARNING: The fuel system may be under pressure. If you hear a hissing sound near the fuel filler inlet, do not refuel until the sound stops. Otherwise, fuel may spray out, which could cause serious personal injury.

WARNING: Fuel vapor burns violently and a fuel fire can cause severe injuries.

WARNING: Keep children away from the fuel pump. Never let children pump fuel.

WARNING: Stay outside your vehicle and do not leave the fuel pump unattended when refueling your vehicle.

WARNING: Do not pry open the fuel tank filler valve. This could damage the fuel system. Failure to follow this instruction could result in fire, personal injury or death.

WARNING: Do not remove the fuel pump nozzle from its fully inserted position when refueling.

WARNING: Stop refueling when the fuel pump nozzle automatically shuts off for the first time. Failure to follow this will fill the expansion space in the fuel tank and could lead to fuel overflowing.

WARNING: Do not overfill the fuel tank. The pressure in an overfilled tank may cause leakage and lead to fuel spray and fire.

WARNING: Wait at least five seconds before removing the fuel pump nozzle to allow any residual fuel to drain into the fuel tank.

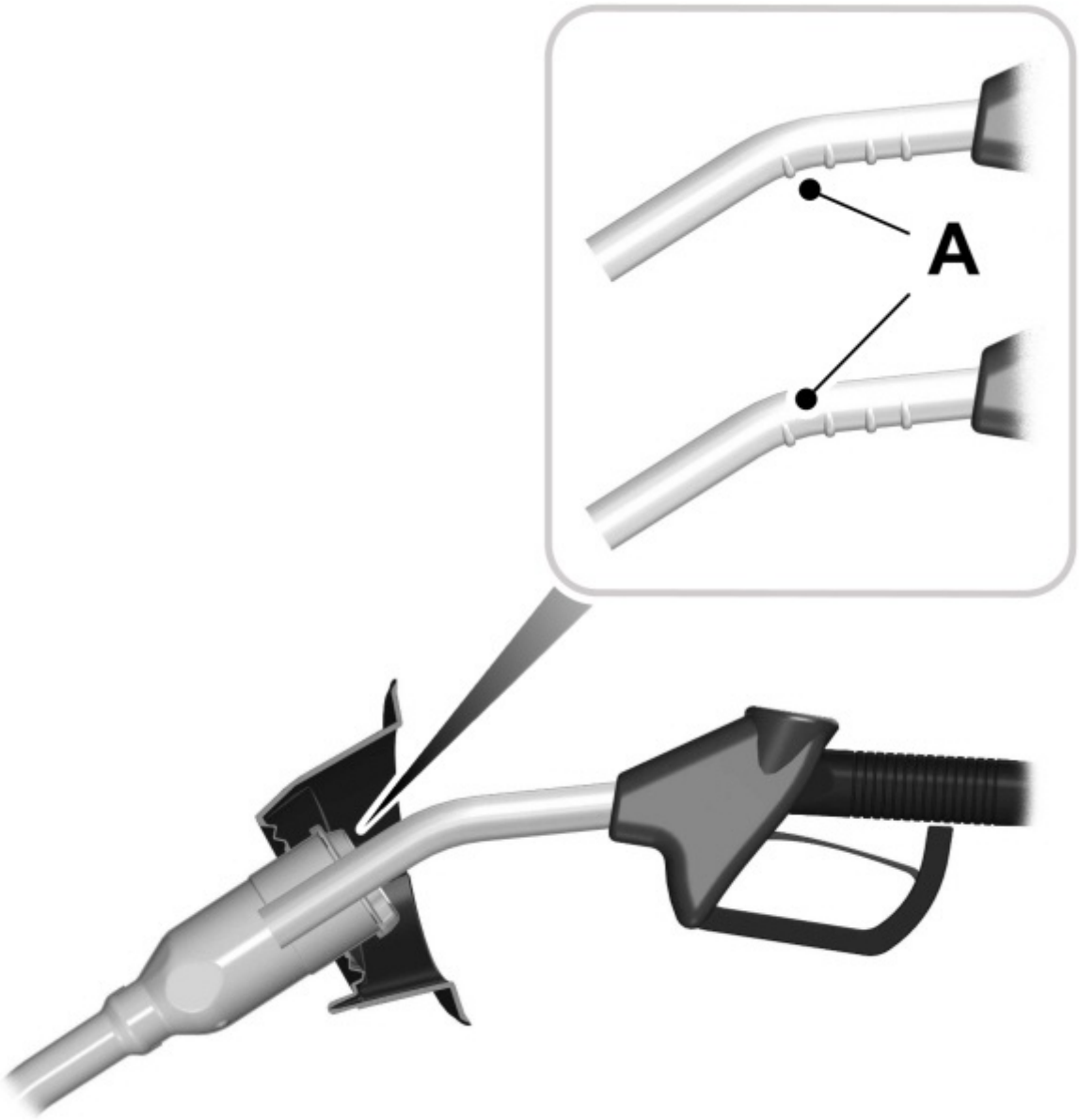
WARNING: Read and follow all the instructions on the pump island.

1. When you stop your vehicle, shift into park (P) and switch the ignition off.

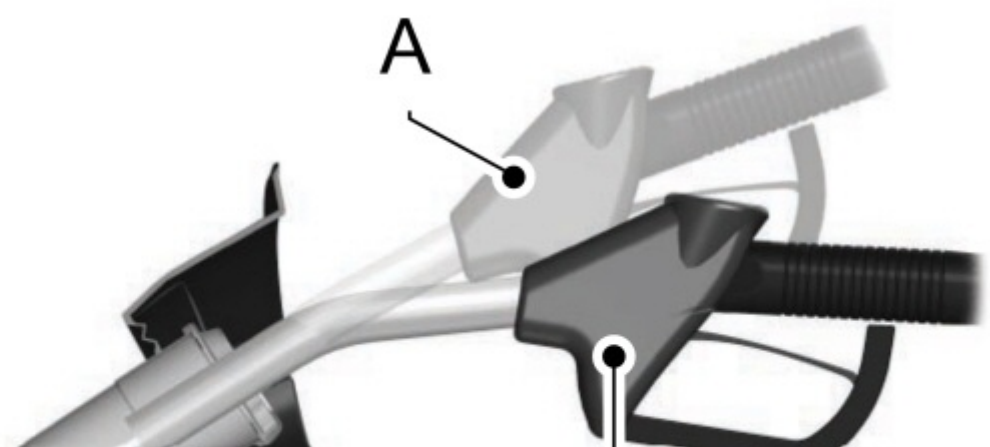


2. Press the button on the instrument panel next to the headlamp switch to open the fuel filler door.The fuel filler door can take up to 15 seconds to open before you can insert a fuel filler nozzle.

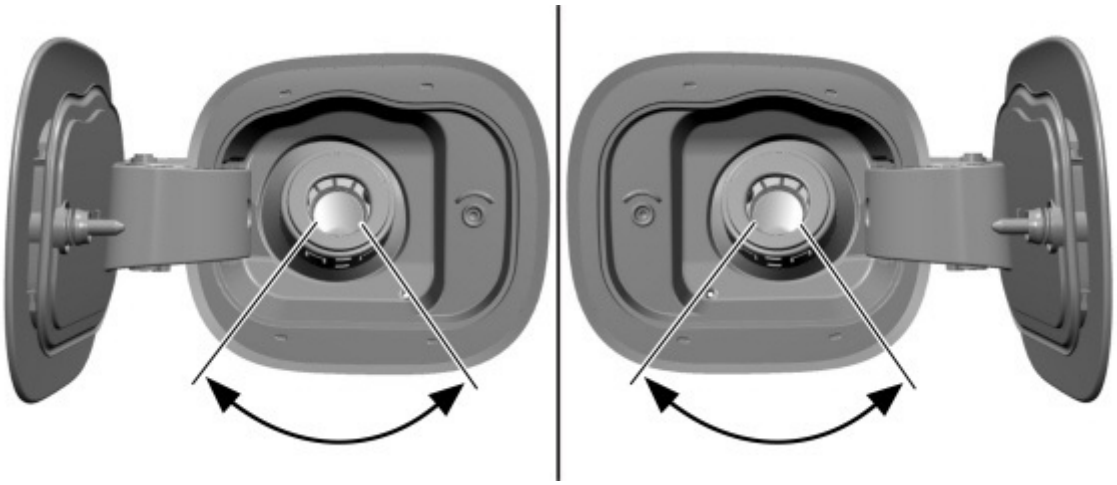
Note: Avoid pressing the button and blocking the fuel filler door at the same time. If an issue occurs, press the fuel filler door open button again to reset the fuel filler door lock mechanism.
Note: Do not pry open the fuel filler door as it can cause damage to your vehicle not covered by the vehicle Warranty.



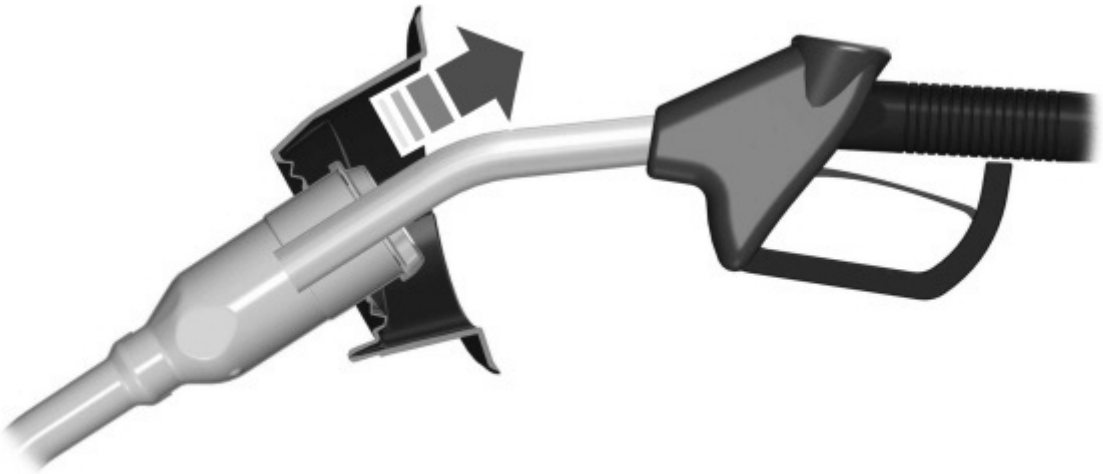
3. Insert the fuel pump nozzle up to the first notch on the nozzle A.Keep it resting on the cover of the fuel tank filler pipe opening.



4. Hold the fuel pump nozzle in position B when refueling.Holding the fuel pump nozzle in position A can affect the flow of fuel and shut off the fuel pump nozzle before the fuel tank is full.



5. Operate the fuel pump nozzle within the area shown.



6. When the nozzle shuts off, wait at least 5 seconds, then slightly raise the fuel pump nozzle and slowly remove it.

7. Close the fuel filler door.

Note: To close the fuel filler door, press the center rear edge of the fuel filler door and then release.
Note: Leaving the fuel door open could set a check engine lamp. See **Fuel and Refueling**.
Complete the refueling process within 20 minutes. If 20 minutes elapses, press the button on the instrument panel again.Fuel pump nozzle automatic shut off could occur if you do not press the button on the instrument panel.
Do not attempt to start the engine if you have filled the fuel tank with incorrect fuel. Incorrect fuel use could cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty. Have your vehicle immediately checked.

Manually Opening the Fuel Filler Door - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)

WARNING: The fuel system may be under pressure. If you hear a hissing sound near the fuel filler inlet, do not refuel until the sound stops. Otherwise, fuel may spray out, which could cause serious personal injury.

Note: The transmission must be in park (P) or neutral (N).
When using the manual override cable do the following:

1. Switch the ignition on.



Note: The manual override cable is in the left side rear wheel well area.

2. Pull the manual override cable down.

Note: Pull the manual override cable once. Repeated pulls can damage the manual override cable.

Note: Make sure the manual override cable moves freely without any obstructions.

3. Switch the ignition off.
4. Complete the refueling process within 20 minutes.
5. Return the manual override cable to its original position.

Note: Only follow this procedure if the fuel filler door fails to open. If the problem remains, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Fuel and Refueling – Troubleshooting

Fuel and Refueling – Warning Lamps

 If it illuminates when you are driving, refuel as soon as possible.

Fuel and Refueling – Information Messages - Excluding: Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)

Message	Action
Fuel Level Low	An early reminder of a low fuel condition. Refill your vehicle.
Check Fuel Fill Inlet	Check to make sure the fuel fill inlet is fully closed.

Fuel and Refueling – Information Messages - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)

Message	Action
Fuel Level Low	An early reminder of a low fuel condition.
Check Fuel Fill Inlet	The fuel fill inlet may not be properly closed.
Please wait for fuel door to open	Appears while the fuel system is depressurizing with the fuel filler door closed. Wait for the fuel system to depressurize and for the fuel filler door to unlatch.
Fuel Door Open	Appears when the fuel system has depressurized and opened the fuel filler door. Open the fuel filler door to refuel and close the fuel filler door when refueling is complete.
Fuel door ajar Close fully to avoid Check engine light	Your vehicle is equipped with a sealed fuel system that requires the fuel filler door to be closed after refueling. This warning message appears when the fuel filler door is ajar. Close the fuel filler door to avoid the Check Engine light. If you see this message and the Check Engine light illuminates, close the fuel filler door. The Check Engine light should clear within five seconds. If the Check Engine light persists, see your dealer.
Refuel Error See Manual	Appears when the fuel system fails to depressurize, or the fuel filler door fails to open. You have to use the fuel filler door manual override cable when opening the fuel door.

Catalytic Converter

What Is the Catalytic Converter

The catalytic converter is part of your vehicle's emissions system and filters harmful pollutants from the exhaust gas.

Catalytic Converter Precautions

WARNING: Do not park, idle or drive your vehicle on dry grass or other dry ground cover. The emission system heats up the engine compartment and exhaust system, creating the risk of fire.

WARNING: The normal operating temperature of the exhaust system is very high. Never work around or attempt to repair any part of the exhaust system until it has cooled. Use special care when working around the catalytic converter. The catalytic converter heats up to a very high temperature after only a short period of engine operation and stays hot after the engine is switched off.

WARNING: Exhaust leaks may result in entry of harmful and potentially lethal fumes into the passenger compartment. If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your vehicle inspected immediately. Do not drive if you smell exhaust fumes.

To avoid damaging the catalytic converter:

- Do not crank the engine for more than 10 seconds at a time.
- Do not run the engine with a spark plug lead disconnected.
- Do not push-start or tow-start your vehicle. Use booster cables. See **Jump Starting Precautions**.
- Use the correct fuel. See **Fuel and Refueling**.
- Do not switch the ignition off when your vehicle is moving.
- Avoid running out of fuel.
- Have the items listed in scheduled maintenance information performed according to the specified schedule.

Note: Do not make any unauthorized changes to your vehicle or engine. By law, vehicle owners and anyone who manufactures, repairs, or services a fleet of vehicles are not permitted to intentionally remove an emission control device or prevent it from working.

Catalytic Converter – Warning Lamps

Your vehicle has an on-board diagnostics system that monitors the emission control system. If any of the following warning lamps illuminate, this may indicate that the on-board diagnostics system has detected an emission control system malfunction.





Continuing to drive your vehicle may cause reduced power or the engine to stop.Failure to respond to a warning lamp may cause damage that your vehicle Warranty may not cover. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Catalytic Converter – Troubleshooting

Catalytic Converter – Warning Lamps

Your vehicle has an on-board diagnostics system that monitors the emission control system. If any of the following warning lamps illuminate, this may indicate that the on-board diagnostics system has detected an emission control system malfunction.





Continuing to drive your vehicle may cause reduced power or the engine to stop.Failure to respond to a warning lamp may cause damage that your vehicle Warranty may not cover. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

High Voltage Battery - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)

What Is the High Voltage Battery

The high voltage battery is a highly sophisticated lithium ion battery system, used to store electric energy to power your vehicle.

High Voltage Battery Precautions

WARNING: This battery pack should only be serviced by an authorized electric vehicle technician. Improper handling can result in personal injury or death.

WARNING: Keep your hands and clothing clear of the cooling fan.

WARNING: Apply the parking brake, shift into park (P), switch the ignition off and remove the key before you open the hood or have any service or repair work completed. If you do not switch the ignition off, the engine could restart at any time. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

WARNING: Do not touch the electronic ignition system parts after you have switched the ignition on or when the engine is running. The system operates at high voltage. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

Your vehicle consists of various high-voltage components and wiring.All of the high-voltage power flows through specific wiring assemblies labeled as such or covered with a solid orange convolute, or orange striped tape, or both. Do not come in contact with these components.

Recycling and Disposing of the High Voltage Battery

Please recycle in accordance with local regulations.

Charging Your Vehicle - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)

Charging Equipment Precautions

WARNING: Read all instructions and warnings in this publication before using the charging equipment.

WARNING: Do not use an electrical outlet that is immersed or submerged in water, snow, or in an electrical storm. When using the charging equipment, avoid moisture, water and snow at all times. Failure to follow these instructions could result in fire, electric shock, personal injury or death.

WARNING: The wall outlet and charging equipment must be in good condition and installed to comply with provisions of up-to-date local codes and regulations. Do not use an ungrounded wall outlet. Have a qualified, licensed electrician install and check the wall outlet, if you suspect that it is not properly grounded, the connection feels loose, or the outlet is damaged. The wall plug must fit firmly and fully into the outlet. Do not use extension cords, surge protectors, timers or other adapters. Failure to follow these instructions could result in electric shock, property damage, personal injury, or death.

WARNING: Do not drop the control box or coupler. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury, fire, electric shock, death or property damage.

WARNING: Visually inspect the charging equipment before each use. Do not use the charging equipment if it is damaged. Do not attempt to open or repair any part of the charging equipment components as it will not operate. Charging equipment components contain critical safety devices in the wall outlet plug and connector that cannot be serviced. Contact your local dealer for assistance. Failure to follow these instructions could result in fire, electric shock, or personal injury or death.

WARNING: Do not use the charging equipment in temperatures outside of the operation range of -22 °F (-30 °C) to 122 °F (50 °C). Store the charging equipment in a clean dry place between the temperatures of -22 °F (-30 °C) to 185 °F (85 °C). Stow the control box indoors on the hanger or all the charging equipment in the bag after use to prevent damage to the charging equipment and personal injury.

WARNING: Do not connect or disconnect any pluggable components of the charging equipment when in use or charging. Do not put fingers or any object into the electric charge coupler. Supervise any children in the vicinity of the charging equipment when plugged into the wall outlet. Failure to follow these instructions could result in damage to the charging equipment, fire, electric shock, personal injury or death.

WARNING: This equipment has arcing or sparking parts. Do not expose to flammable vapors. Position this equipment at least 18 in (450 mm) above the floor.

WARNING: To reduce the risk of fire, connect only to a circuit provided with 40 amps maximum branch circuit overcurrent protection installed in accordance with NEC and local electrical code.

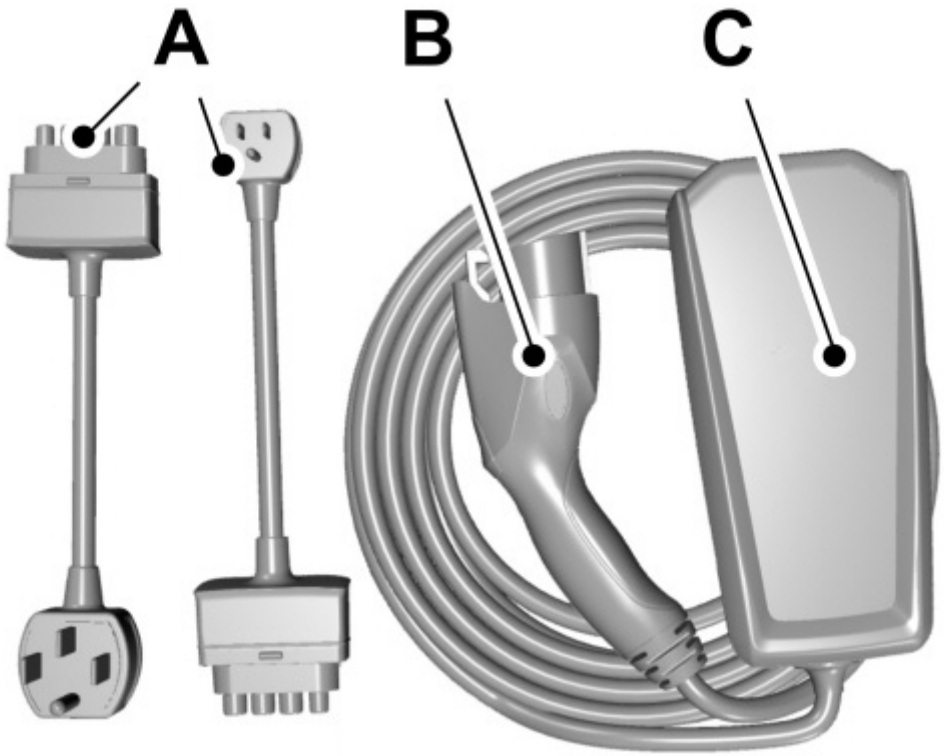
WARNING: High voltage is present in your electric meter housing and power distribution panel. Contact with high voltage can result in fire, electric shock, personal injury or death.

Charging Equipment Overview

Your vehicle comes with a mobile power cord that has a low power connector to use with a 120V plug NEMA 5-15 and a high power connector to use with a 240V plug NEMA 14-50.

Specification Type	Specification Value
Charger Model	SAE
Voltage	120-240 VAC
Maximum Current	32 Amps max continuous
Frequency	60Hz
Power draw when idle	< 2 Watts
Cable length	Approximately 20 ft (6.1 m)

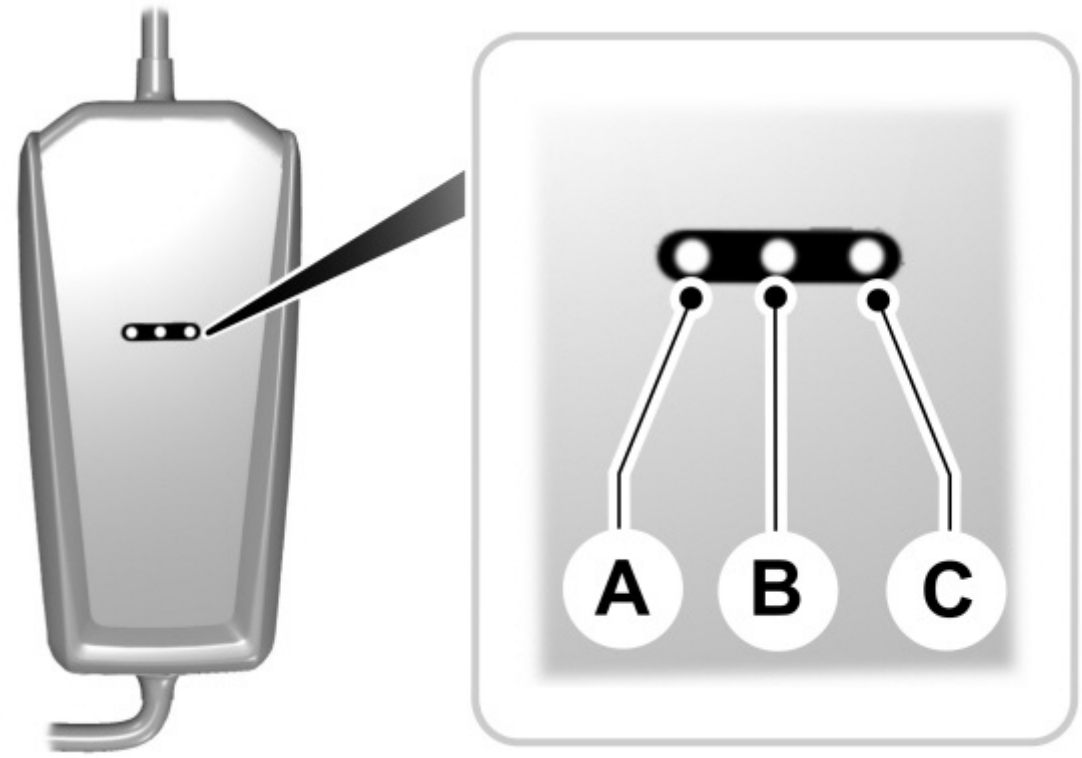
Specification Type	Specification Value
Weight	8.6 lb (3.9 kg)
Operating temperature	-22 °F (-30 °C) to 122 °F (50 °C)
Storage temperature	-22 °F (-30 °C) to 185 °F (85 °C)
CCID Environmental	IP67
Ventilation	Not required



A Image not found or type unknown Connector.
B Image not found or type unknown Coupler.
C Image not found or type unknown Control box.

The mobile power cord is located in the luggage compartment and allows you to charge the vehicle's battery using a standard household outlet.
You must plug the connector into the charger control box first. Then plug the connector into the household outlet, and then plug the coupler into the vehicle charge port.
The power indicator illuminates blue when the connector is properly inserted into the charger control box and dedicated wall outlet.
Note: To insert the connector, firmly grasp the connector by the cable or plug and push into the charger control box until an audible click is heard. Make sure the connector is fully inserted and flush with the charger control box before inserting it into the outlet. Improper insertion of the connector results in an amber fault light or intermittent charging, and a longer charge session.
Note: Follow the installation instructions provided with the mobile power cord.
Note: We recommend using the supplied plugs and connectors.
Note: If you do not use a dedicated circuit, the circuit breaker could trip or open. If a dedicated circuit is not available, contact a licensed professional electrician regarding the installation of a dedicated outlet.
Note: The mobile power cord does not charge and gives a fault indication if ground is not present.
Note: Plug the connector for the mobile power cord directly into the wall plug receptacle. Do not plug the mobile power cord into any form of extension cord.
Note: The wall bracket must be used to support the charge control box. The charge control box cannot be hung from the outlet or wall plug.

Charging Equipment Indicators



A Amber fault indicator.
B Blue status indicator.
C Red trouble indicator.

Note: When first plugged in, the amber, blue and red indicators will blink once. Then the blue indicator turns on, followed by a blink of the red indicator. The blue indicator then turns off and back on. This cycle happens twice if a different connector is used from a previous charge.

Mobile Power Cord Indicator Lights

Unpowered

AMBER	BLUE	RED	Details
OFF	OFF	OFF	The mobile power cord is not powered.

Make sure the outlet is operational, and the circuit breaker is in the ON position or try using another outlet. Make sure the connector is fully inserted into mobile power cord and the plug is not damaged or worn. If the error persists, contact us.

Charging

AMBER	BLUE	RED	Details
OFF	PULSING	OFF	The mobile power cord is charging.

No action required.

Standby

AMBER	BLUE	RED	Details
OFF	ON	OFF	The mobile power cord is powered and ready to charge. At the current time the mobile power cord is not charging the vehicle.

If you expect the mobile power cord to be charging the vehicle, make sure the vehicle coupler is properly inserted into the vehicle. Use the touchscreen to adjust your charging time preferences. If your vehicle is still not charging, contact us.
Startup and Rebooting

AMBER	BLUE	RED	Details
ON	ON	ON	The mobile power cord is recovering after encountering an error.

The mobile power cord is powering up or recovering after an error. If the mobile power cord cycles for more than 2-3 minutes, unplug the vehicle coupler, then plug it back in. If the issue persists, contact us.
Charging Reduced, Internal Issue

AMBER	BLUE	RED	Details
ON	PULSING	OFF	The mobile power cord is charging at a reduced rate due to overheating.

Make sure the connector and the control box are properly connected by unplugging then plugging it back in. If the mobile power cord is warm or in a hot environment, try charging in a cooler area, try a different outlet, or try a different connector if you have one available. If the error persists, contact us.
Charging Reduced, AC Plug Or Wall Outlet

AMBER	BLUE	RED	Details
BLINK	PULSING	OFF	The mobile power cord is charging at a reduced rate due to overheating of the connector or the wall outlet.

Make sure the connector and the control box are properly connected by unplugging then plugging it back in. If the mobile power cord is warm or in a hot environment, try charging in a cooler area, try a different outlet, or try a different connector if you have one available. Have a licensed electrician check for missing ground, utility under or overvoltage. If the error persists, contact us.
User Troubleshooting

AMBER	BLUE	RED	Details
ON	OFF	OFF	The mobile power cord has encountered a fault that requires troubleshooting.

Make sure the connector and the control box are properly connected by unplugging then plugging it back in. If the mobile power cord is warm or in a hot environment, try charging in a cooler area, try a different outlet, or try a different connector if you have one available. If the error persists, contact us.
Non - Recoverable Fault

AMBER	BLUE	RED	Details
OFF	OFF	ON	There is an internal fault in the mobile power cord that cannot be recovered.

Try a different connector if you have one available. If error persists, contact us.
Non - Recoverable Fault

AMBER	BLUE	RED	Details
OFF	OFF	BLINK	There is an internal fault in the connector that cannot be recovered.

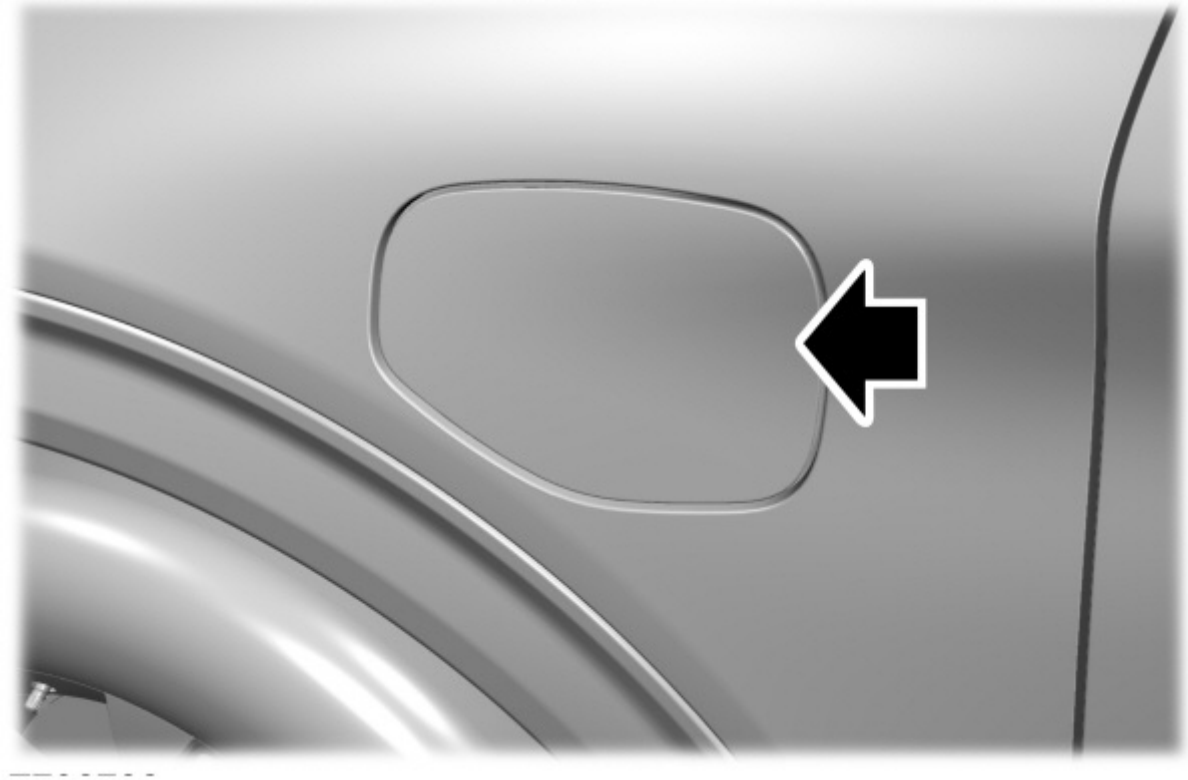
Try using another connector if you have one available. If not, contact us about obtaining a replacement. If your warranty has expired, you can order a replacement from your dealer.
Ground Leakage Fault

AMBER	BLUE	RED	Details
OFF	OFF	PULSING	Electrical current is leaking through a potentially unsafe path.

Potential shock hazard. Immediately turn off the circuit breaker for the outlet and discontinue use. Contact us about obtaining a replacement.
Note: When plugging into an unfamiliar outlet, allow the vehicle to charge for several minutes before leaving it unattended. The red indicator will illuminate if not charging. The unit will turn off if the circuit breaker or infrastructure ground fault circuit interrupter is tripped. You can view vehicle charging status remotely via the Lincoln app.

Locating the Charge Port

The charge port is on the front left side of the vehicle. Press and release the center right-hand edge of the charge port door to open.



Note: Do not apply excessive force. Forcing the door open or closed damages the charge port.
Note: Do not hang the charging cable on the charge port door. This can damage the hinge arm mechanism.

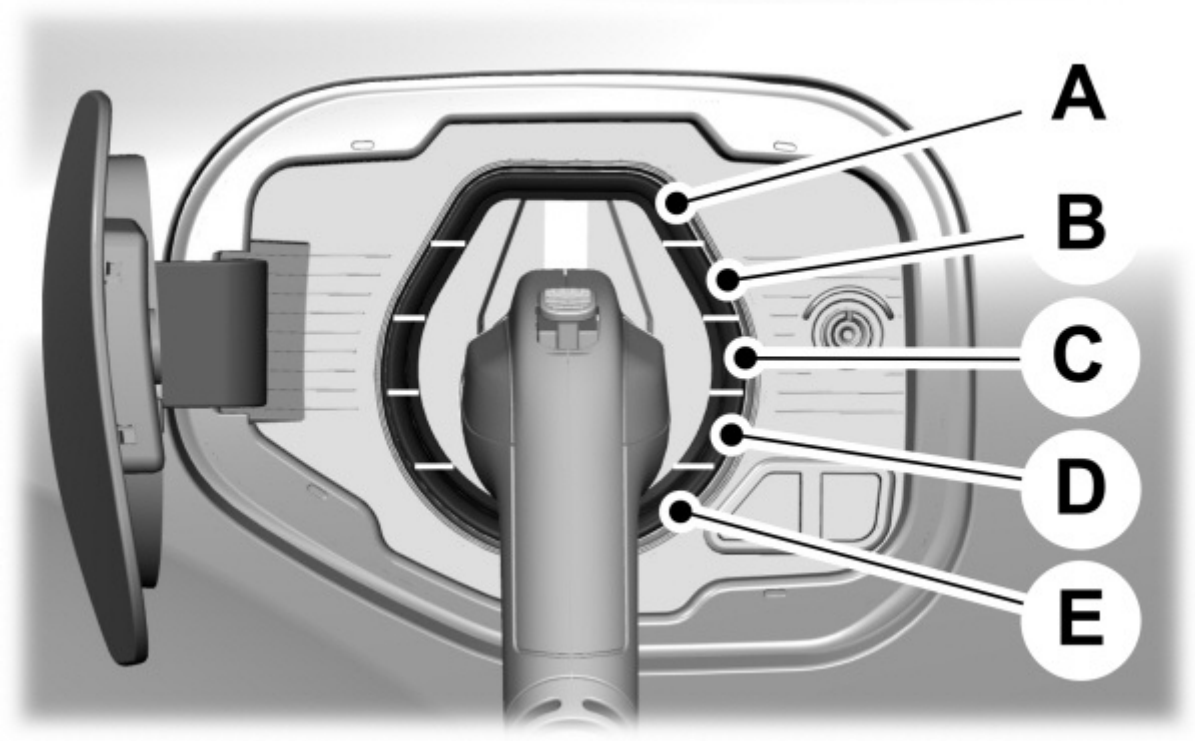
Charge Port Indicators

The charge status indicator around the charge port indicates the charge status of the high voltage battery in your vehicle.
Divided into five zones, the charge status indicator displays the state of charge in 20 percent increments.
We use the color white as a courtesy light to help with plugging in and to acknowledge actions such as plugging in, unplugging or pressing the charge times button.
We use the color blue when you plug the vehicle in and are either charging or waiting to charge.

We use the color orange to indicate charge faults.

The charge status indicator displays how far along the charge is:

- When the bottom zone is pulsing, the charge is between 0-20 percent.
- When the bottom zone illuminates and the next is pulsing, the charge is between 20-40 percent.
- When two zones illuminate and the next is pulsing, the charge is between 40-60 percent.
- When three zones illuminate and the next is pulsing, the charge is between 60-80 percent.
- When four zones illuminate and the top zone is pulsing, the charge is between 80-100 percent.
- When all zones illuminate, the charge is 100 percent.



A. 80%-100% state of charge.
B. 60%-80% state of charge.
C. 40%-60% state of charge.
D. 20%-40% state of charge.
E. 0%-20% state of charge.

Note: When charging stops, the charge status indicator shows all the completed zones illuminate in a blue color for 30 seconds before turning off. For example, if charging stops at 70 percent, then the bottom three zones illuminate to indicate a battery charge level of at least 60 percent but less than 80 percent. Charging stops when complete or when paused due to preferred charge settings or charge station actions.

Note: If the charge status indicator does not light up or pulse after plugging in, please verify that the charge port light setting is On. If you do not wish to have the charge status indicator light up at all while charging, then you can switch it Off. See charge port light settings under access menu in features on your touchscreen.

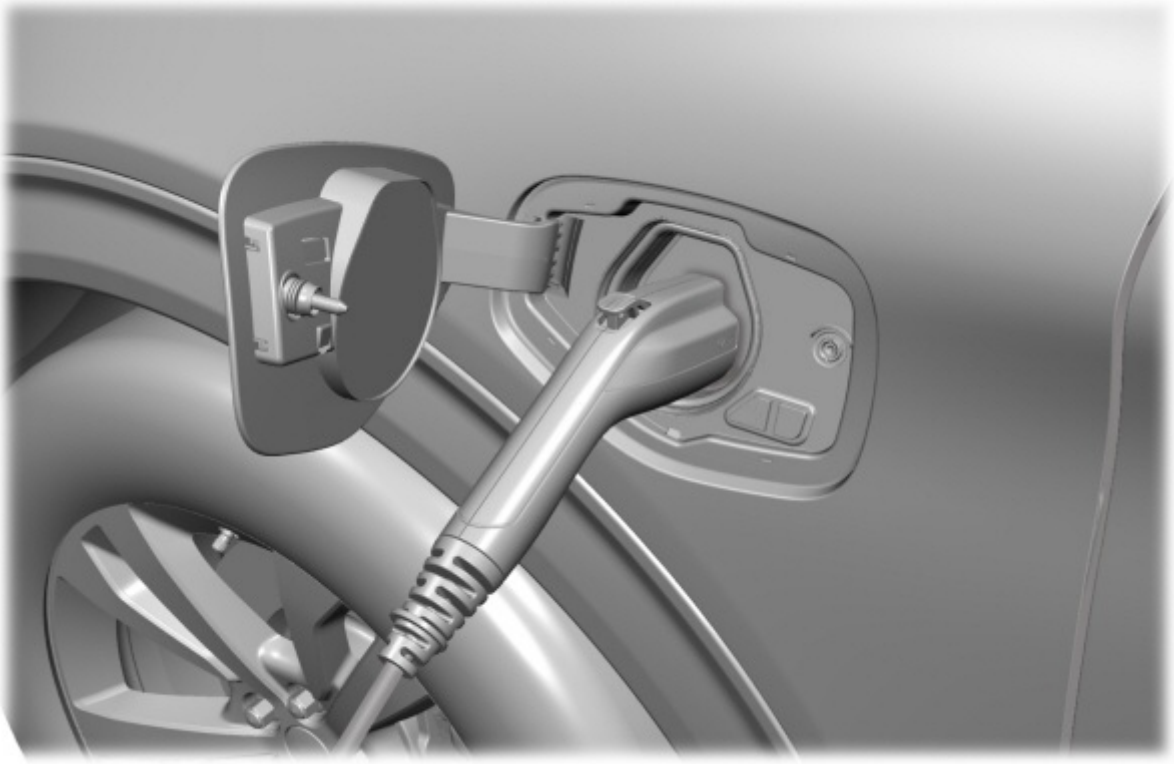
Charging at Home



To charge the high voltage battery:

1. Put the vehicle in park (P).
2. Press and release the center right edge of the charge port door to open.

3. Plug the charging coupler into the charge port receptacle on your vehicle. Make sure the button clicks confirming that you have completely engaged the coupler.



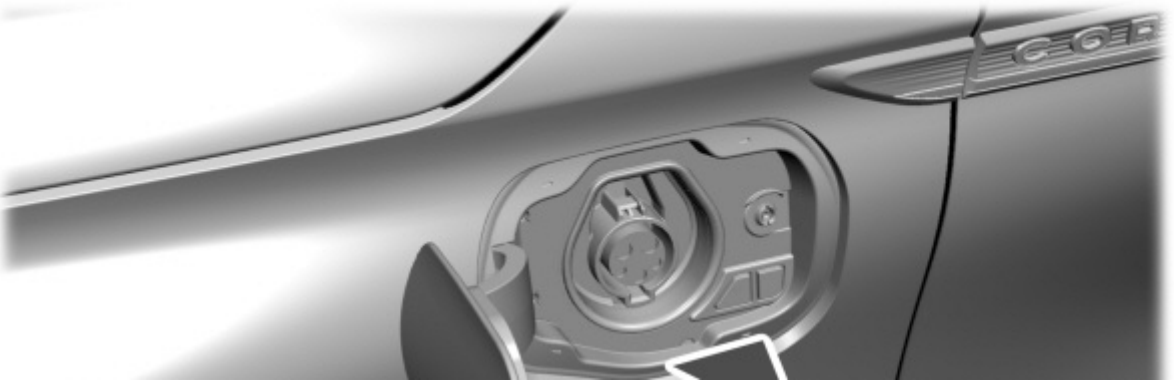
4. Verify that the cord acknowledgment feature activates. This indicates the beginning of a normal charge cycle.The charge status indicator lights up each zone alternately from bottom to top and from bottom to top again.



Note: You can identify charging faults by the color orange on the charge status indicator. Faults can occur within the vehicle charging system or outside the vehicle, such as with the charge cord, charge station or electrical supply.
Note: If the system detects a fault in the vehicle charging system at any point in a charge cycle, the entire charge status indicator illuminates in an orange color for 30 seconds and then turns off. If this happens, unplug the charging coupler and then plug it back into the charge port receptacle. If the problem persists, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Note: If the system detects a fault outside the vehicle, such as with the charge station or charge cord, the entire charge status indicator flashes continuously for 30 seconds and then turns off. If this happens, check the charge cord and the charge station or electrical supply.
Note: Put your vehicle in park (P) to charge, and for the charge status indicator to illuminate.
Stopping Charging

1. Press the button on the charging coupler.

2. While holding the button, remove the charging coupler from the charge port receptacle.



3. Press the center right edge of the charge port door to close.

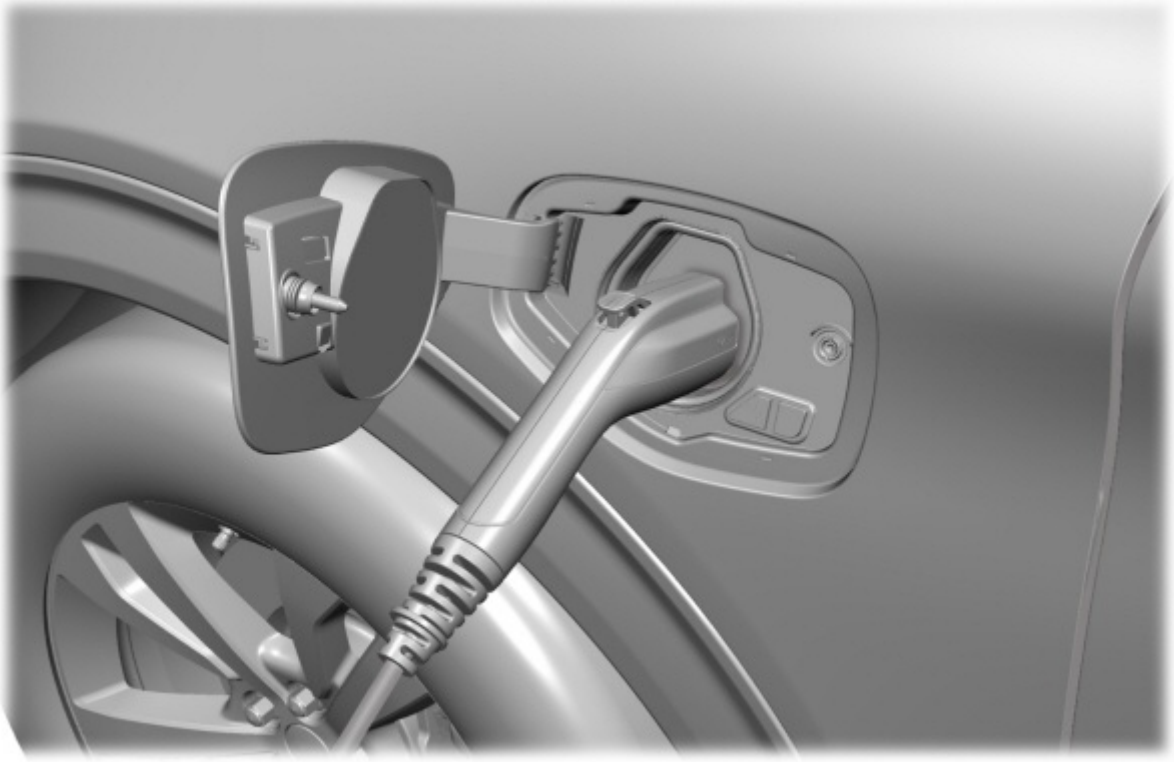
Note: Do not pull the wall plug from the wall when your vehicle is charging. Doing so could damage the outlet and the cord.

Charging in Public



To charge the high voltage battery:

1. Put the vehicle in park (P).
2. Press and release the center right edge of the charge port door to open.
3. Select the appropriate charge station coupler.
4. Plug the charging coupler into the charge port receptacle on your vehicle. Make sure the button clicks confirming that you have completely engaged the coupler.



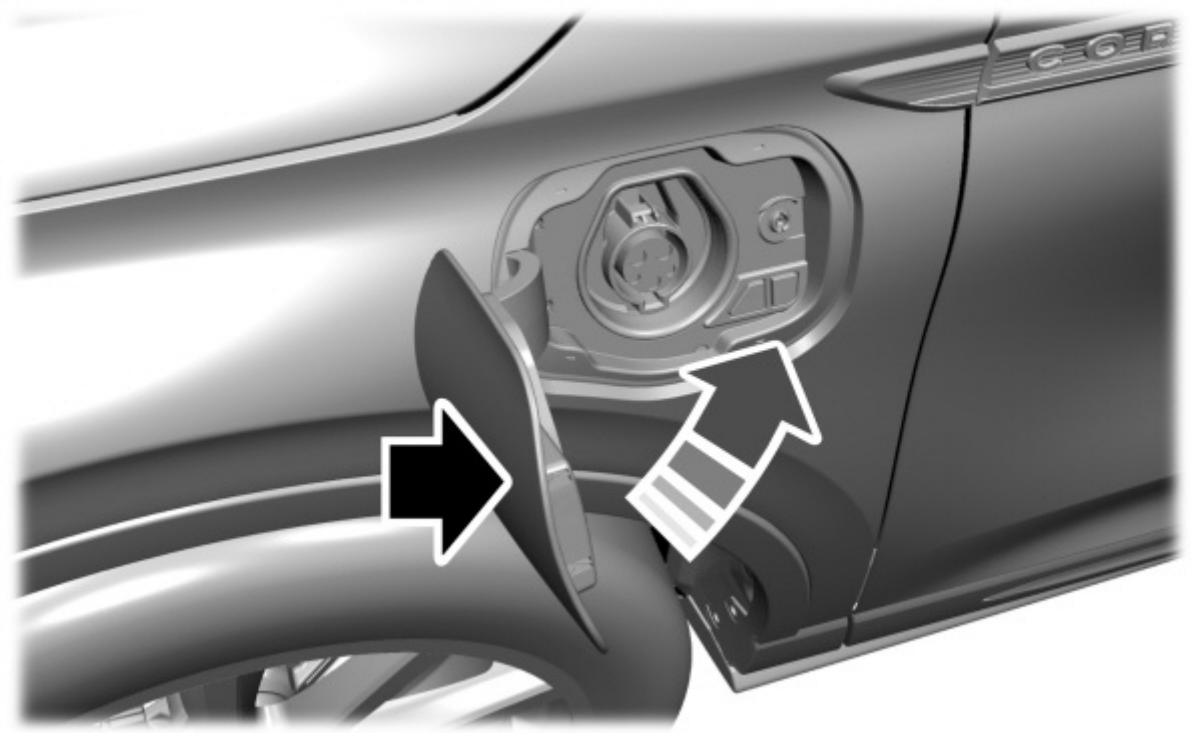
5. Verify that the cord acknowledgment feature activates. This indicates the beginning of a normal charge cycle.The charge status indicator lights up each zone alternately from bottom to top and from bottom to top again.
6. If using a charging station, follow the instructions on the charge station to begin the charging process.



Note: You can identify charging faults by the color orange on the charge status indicator. Faults can occur within the vehicle charging system or outside the vehicle, such as with the charge cord, charge station or electrical supply.
Note: If the system detects a fault in the vehicle charging system at any point in a charge cycle, the entire charge status indicator illuminates in an orange color for 30 seconds and then turns off. If this happens, unplug the charging coupler and then plug it back into the charge port receptacle. If the problem persists,

have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Note: If the system detects a fault outside the vehicle, such as with the charge station or charge cord, the entire charge status indicator flashes continuously for 30 seconds and then turns off. If this happens, check the charge cord and the charge station or electrical supply.
Note: Put your vehicle in park (P) to charge, and for the charge status indicator to illuminate.
Stopping Charging

1. Press the button on the charging coupler.
2. While holding the button, remove the charging coupler from the charge port receptacle.



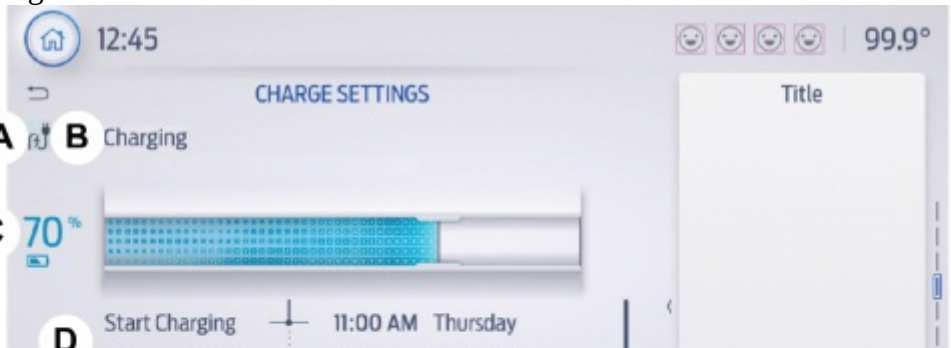
3. Press the center right edge of the charge port door to close.

Charging Settings

You can schedule charging to take advantage of lower electricity rates during off-peak hours, if you are enrolled in a time-of-use pricing plan with your utility provider. You can also set a maximum charge limit, a departure time, and a preferred cabin temperature so your vehicle is ready to go when you are. Scheduled charging can be set up in the touchscreen or in the Lincoln app.
To view your charge settings:

1. Press Features on the touchscreen.
2. Press Charge Settings on the touchscreen.

Charge Settings Screen



A Charging status icon.
B Charging status.
C High voltage battery state of charge.
D Charging time information.
E Departure and comfort settings.
F Charging locations.

Charging Status

Shows the present state of the charging system.

Charge Status	Details
Will charge when plugged in	The vehicle is unplugged and starts charging once plugged in.
Will wait for preferred charging time	The vehicle is unplugged at a location with charging time preferences enabled. Charging is scheduled to start at the time displayed based on your settings. You must plug in prior to the start time shown for the vehicle to begin charging at that time.
Waiting for preferred charging time	The vehicle is plugged in at a location with charging time preferences enabled. Charging starts at the time displayed based on your charge time settings.
Charging stopped	The vehicle is plugged in and charging has been stopped through the Lincoln app.
Charging	The vehicle is plugged in and charging.
Charged	The vehicle finished charging to the max charge limit setting.
Charging 12V battery	The vehicle is plugged in and charging the 12V battery.
Conditioning the cabin	The vehicle is plugged in and the climate control system is operating according to the departure and comfort settings.
Conditioning the battery	The vehicle is plugged in and conditioning the high voltage battery.
Vehicle charging fault	The vehicle is plugged in and there is a fault within the vehicle charging system. Unplug and plug back in. If the fault is still present, contact your authorized dealer.
Charging station fault	The vehicle is plugged in and a fault has been detected with the charge station or charging cord. Check the charging cord and the charging station or electrical supply.
Charging station not detected	A charging coupler has been plugged into the vehicle but there is no connection with a charging power source.
Charging station paused	The vehicle is plugged in and charging has been paused at the charge station.

Charging Status Indicators

Displays when your vehicle is plugged in.

 Not charging due to a fault.

 Charging.

 Not currently charging.

 Waiting to charge based on charge time settings.

High Voltage Battery State of Charge

Displays the battery's remaining charge with 100% meaning the battery is fully charged.

Charging Time Information

The start time and estimated end time display during charging.

If your vehicle is at a saved charging location but not plugged in, the system shows estimated end time based on available charging options at that location.

Note: Charging time is estimated and can vary.

Charging Locations

Press the edit button to set preferred charging times for a specific charging location.

Your vehicle prioritizes charging based on your preferred time settings. You can set two preferred charging time windows for weekdays and two for weekends. This feature allows you to take advantage of electric utility rate plans that offer lower pricing during certain times of day. Contact your utility company to see what plans are available.

Note: Your vehicle charges during your preferred time windows. If more time is needed to reach the charge limit saved for your current location by your next departure time, charging may start immediately after you plug in, even if it is outside your preferred windows.

Note: You can also access this feature using the Lincoln app.

Charging Location Setup

Follow these steps to set time and charge level preferences for a charging location.

1. Press the edit button for charging locations on the charge settings screen.
2. On the charging locations screen select add new location. You can also edit settings for previously saved locations listed on this screen.
3. Select an address from the list of recent charge locations.
4. Confirm that this is the location you want to save with the help of the map view. Edit the location name if desired and set a maximum charge limit. Press continue to schedule.

Note: Depending on the GPS location, the address on the navigation may not precisely match up with your charging location. Confirm on the map that the pin is in the expected location.

Note: Charging stops when your vehicle reaches the maximum charge limit setting.

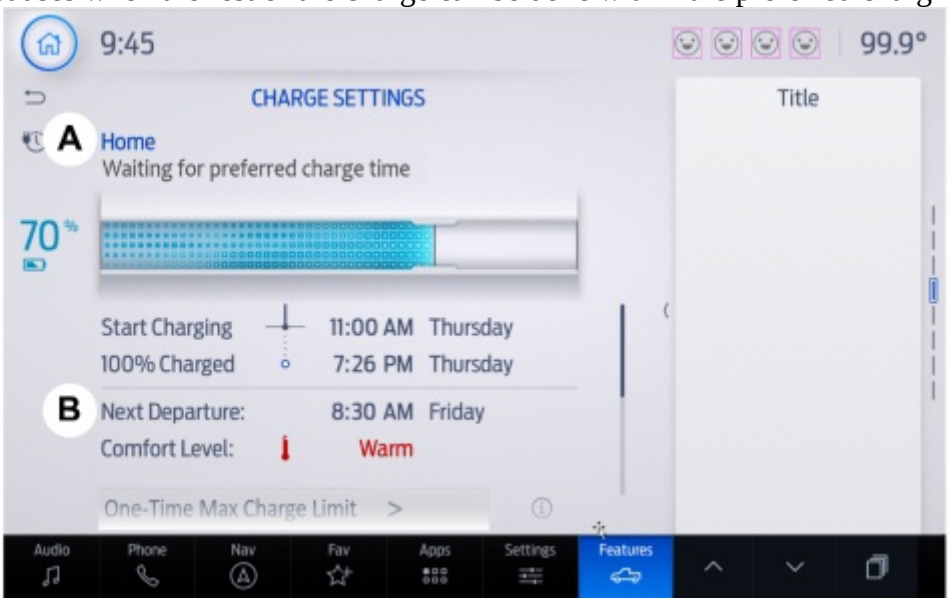


5. Set preferred charging times for weekday and/or weekend by pressing and dragging along the 24 hour time wheel. You can set up two blocks of time charge windows. Press Continue once you have your desired time settings for weekday and weekend

Note: Selecting all or none of the 24 hours results in any time of day given equal priority for charging.

6. The summary screen displays your settings for this location. Press save or press back to change your settings. Whenever your vehicle is at a saved charging location, the charge settings screen displays the location name, and the charging times are based on your preferred time settings for that location plus the next departure time.

Note: Reaching your max charge limit by your next departure time is always the priority. When charging time preferences are set, charging outside your preferred charging time windows could be necessary to finish by your next departure time. In this case, the vehicle begins charging immediately after plugging in. Charging pauses when the rest of the charge can be done within the preferred charging windows.



A Charging location name.
B Next departure time and cabin temperature.



A On/Off switch for departure and comfort.
B On/Off switch for charging locations.

Charging Location Name
Displays when your vehicle is at a saved charging location.
On/Off Switch for Charging Locations

This switch is visible when your vehicle is at a saved charging location. Use this switch to turn your settings off and on for this location only. Switching off for this location does not delete your settings, but you must turn the switch back on to enable them again.
Note: If the charging locations switch is off, the vehicle begins charging to 100% once plugged in.
Departure and Comfort
 Press the edit button for departure and comfort settings.
Setting a departure time prepares the vehicle for your drive by cooling or warming the cabin and conditioning the high voltage battery. It can also follow your preferred charging schedule to help reduce electricity costs while still making sure charging is complete before your departure.
You can set up to two departure times per day for each day of the week using the calendar view.
Note: While your vehicle is plugged in, it can use energy from the charging source to manage battery temperature and precondition the cabin. This helps improve driving performance and can reduce energy use at the start of your trip, helping to maximize range.
Note: You can also access this feature using the Lincoln app.
Departure and Comfort Setup
Follow these steps to set departure times and cabin comfort level.

1. Press the edit button for departure and comfort on the charge settings screen.

2. Two time settings show for each day of the week on the departure times schedule screen. Select any one.

3. On the Departure Times settings screen, set your desired time, cabin comfort level and days of the week to repeat. Press Save.

4. Your settings are now shown on the departure times schedule screen. Press back to return to the main charge settings screen. The next departure time and cabin temperature display.

Note: Cabin comfort may vary depending on your power source. Standard household outlets provide less power than higher-capacity chargers, which can limit heating or cooling performance. In cold weather, the vehicle may use some battery power to help warm the cabin if charging power is low.
Next Departure Time and Cabin Comfort Level
Displays the next departure time and associated cabin comfort setting.
On/Off Switch for Departure and Comfort
This switch is visible when you have at least one departure time set. Use this switch to turn all departure times off and on. Switching off departure and comfort does not delete your settings, however, you must switch back on to re-enable them.

Using Your Vehicle App and Charging

The Lincoln app allows you to:

- Monitor and manage your vehicle's charging, including charge schedules and preferences.
- Locate a charger and activate a charger on the Charging Network.
- Plan a trip and charging options along your route.
- Check charging station plug availability.
- Automatically initiate a charge session at Plug and Charge capable charge stations.
- Control your Connected Charge Station remotely.
- Override charge preferences and starting and stopping charging.

For additional information, visit https://www.owner.lincoln.com.

Charging Your Vehicle – Information Messages

Message	Action
Is vehicle plugged in?	Your vehicle needs confirmation that you unplugged it before allowing a start. Make sure your vehicle is unplugged and you respond to the message before starting your vehicle.
Unplug Prior to Starting Vehicle	Your vehicle detects it is still plugged in after you attempt to start it.
Charge Station Fault See Manual	A charging fault has been detected. Check the charging cord and the charge station or electrical supply.
Charge Station Communication Error Contact Station Provider	The charging station cannot communicate with your vehicle. Contact the station provider.

Charging Your Vehicle – Frequently Asked Questions

Why does my vehicle have a hum or fan noise when charging?

- A hum or a fan noise could be present when charging the high voltage battery. This is a normal operation as your vehicle is keeping the battery cool while charging.

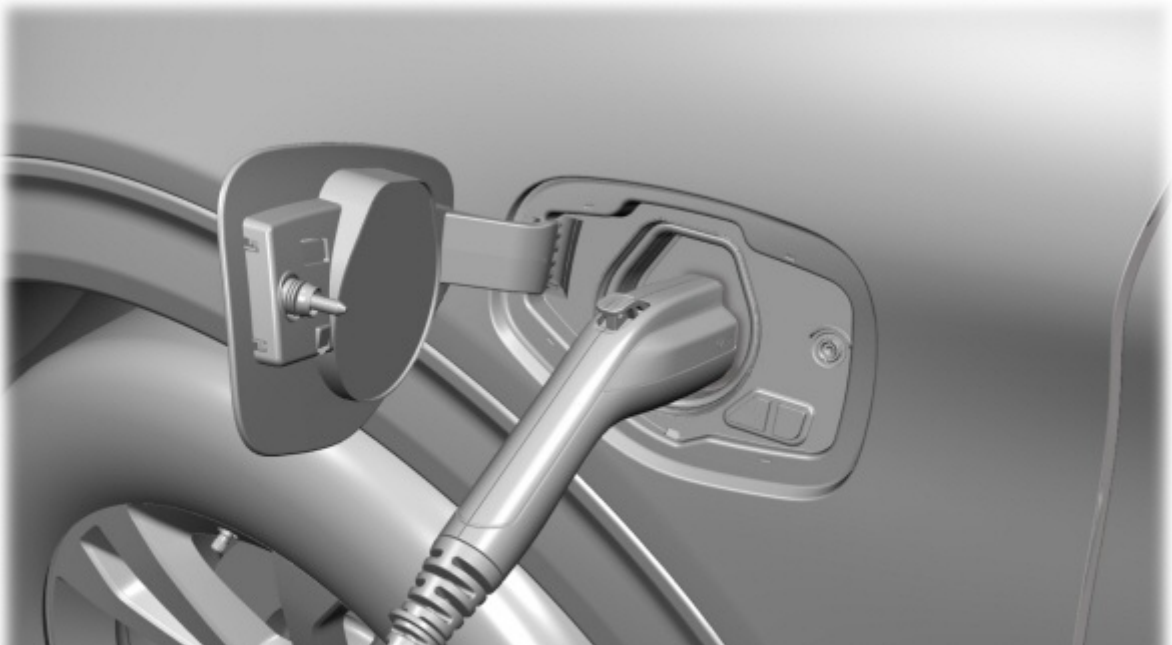
AC Charging

Charging at Home



To charge the high voltage battery:

1. Put the vehicle in park (P).
2. Press and release the center right edge of the charge port door to open.
3. Plug the charging coupler into the charge port receptacle on your vehicle. Make sure the button clicks confirming that you have completely engaged the coupler.

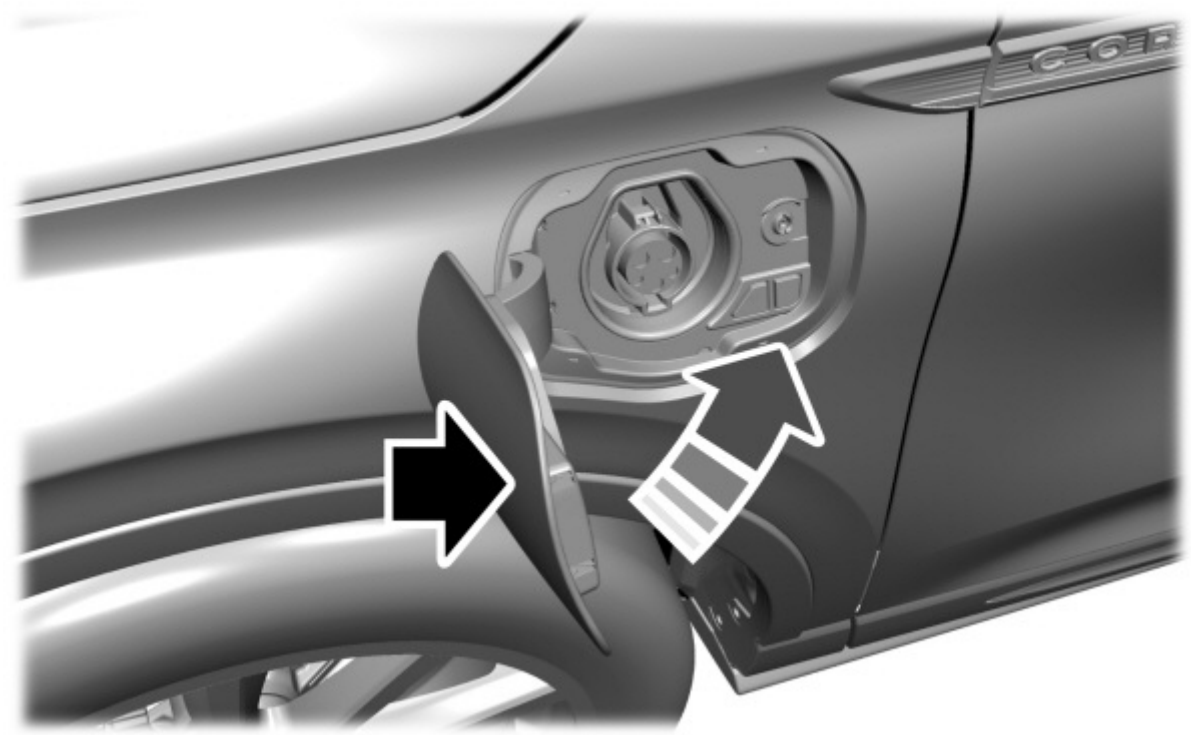


4. Verify that the cord acknowledgment feature activates. This indicates the beginning of a normal charge cycle.The charge status indicator lights up each zone alternately from bottom to top and from bottom to top again.



Note: You can identify charging faults by the color orange on the charge status indicator. Faults can occur within the vehicle charging system or outside the vehicle, such as with the charge cord, charge station or electrical supply.
Note: If the system detects a fault in the vehicle charging system at any point in a charge cycle, the entire charge status indicator illuminates in an orange color for 30 seconds and then turns off. If this happens, unplug the charging coupler and then plug it back into the charge port receptacle. If the problem persists, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Note: If the system detects a fault outside the vehicle, such as with the charge station or charge cord, the entire charge status indicator flashes continuously for 30 seconds and then turns off. If this happens, check the charge cord and the charge station or electrical supply.
Note: Put your vehicle in park (P) to charge, and for the charge status indicator to illuminate.
Stopping Charging

1. Press the button on the charging coupler.
2. While holding the button, remove the charging coupler from the charge port receptacle.



3. Press the center right edge of the charge port door to close.

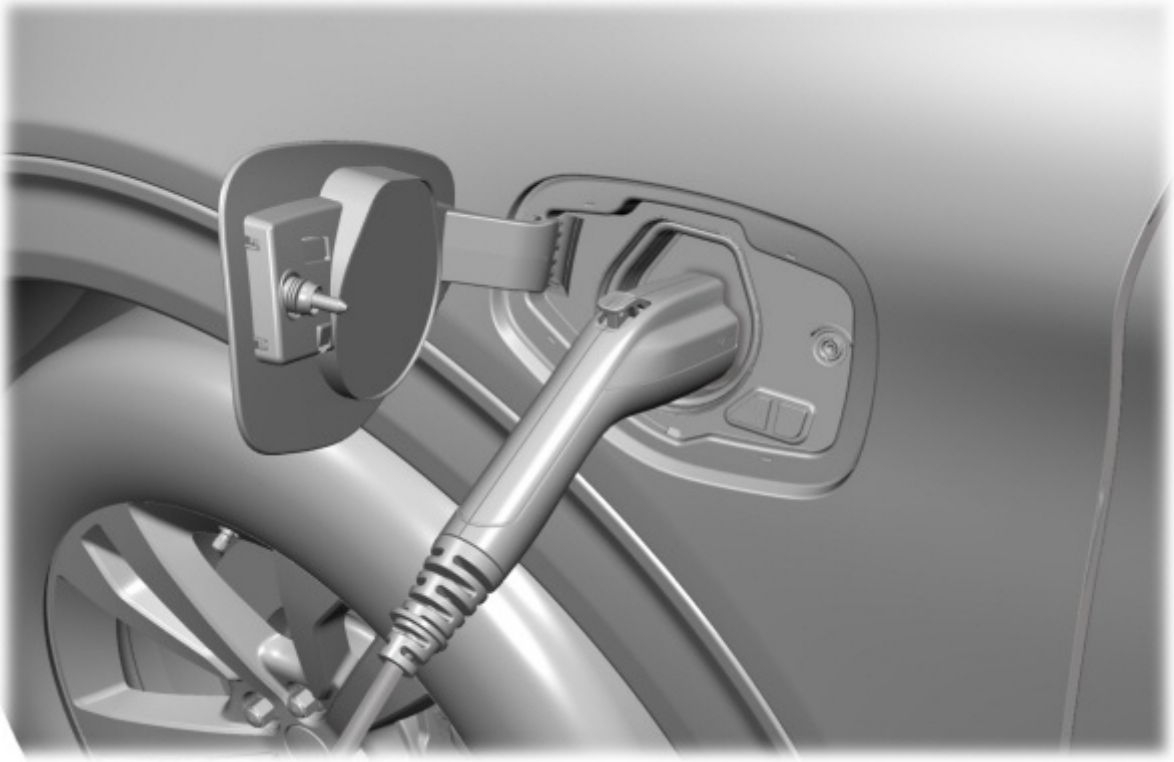
Note: Do not pull the wall plug from the wall when your vehicle is charging. Doing so could damage the outlet and the cord.

Charging in Public



To charge the high voltage battery:

1. Put the vehicle in park (P).
2. Press and release the center right edge of the charge port door to open.
3. Select the appropriate charge station coupler.
4. Plug the charging coupler into the charge port receptacle on your vehicle. Make sure the button clicks confirming that you have completely engaged the coupler.



5. Verify that the cord acknowledgment feature activates. This indicates the beginning of a normal charge cycle.The charge status indicator lights up each zone alternately from bottom to top and from bottom to top again.
6. If using a charging station, follow the instructions on the charge station to begin the charging process.



Note: You can identify charging faults by the color orange on the charge status indicator. Faults can occur within the vehicle charging system or outside the vehicle, such as with the charge cord, charge station or electrical supply.
Note: If the system detects a fault in the vehicle charging system at any point in a charge cycle, the entire charge status indicator illuminates in an orange color for 30 seconds and then turns off. If this happens, unplug the charging coupler and then plug it back into the charge port receptacle. If the problem persists, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Note: If the system detects a fault outside the vehicle, such as with the charge station or charge cord, the entire charge status indicator flashes continuously for 30 seconds and then turns off. If this happens, check the charge cord and the charge station or electrical supply.
Note: Put your vehicle in park (P) to charge, and for the charge status indicator to illuminate.
Stopping Charging

1. Press the button on the charging coupler.
2. While holding the button, remove the charging coupler from the charge port receptacle.



3. Press the center right edge of the charge port door to close.

Charging Your Vehicle – Troubleshooting

Charging Your Vehicle – Information Messages

Message	Action
Is vehicle plugged in?	Your vehicle needs confirmation that you unplugged it before allowing a start. Make sure your vehicle is unplugged and you respond to the message before starting your vehicle.
Unplug Prior to Starting Vehicle	Your vehicle detects it is still plugged in after you attempt to start it.
Charge Station Fault See Manual	A charging fault has been detected. Check the charging cord and the charge station or electrical supply.
Charge Station Communication Error Contact Station Provider	The charging station cannot communicate with your vehicle. Contact the station provider.

Charging Your Vehicle – Frequently Asked Questions

Why does my vehicle have a hum or fan noise when charging?

- A hum or a fan noise could be present when charging the high voltage battery. This is a normal operation as your vehicle is keeping the battery cool while charging.

Automatic Transmission

Automatic Transmission Precautions

WARNING: Apply the parking brake, shift into park (P), switch the vehicle off and remove the key or remote control before you leave your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

WARNING: When your vehicle is stationary, keep the brake pedal fully pressed when shifting gears. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury, death or property damage.

WARNING: Do not apply the brake pedal and accelerator pedal simultaneously. Applying both pedals simultaneously for more than a few seconds limits vehicle performance, which may result in difficulty maintaining speed in traffic and could lead to serious injury.

Note: Ford vehicles incorporate innovative transmissions to boost fuel efficiency and reduce greenhouse gases, among other benefits. Optimizing performance involves balancing many vehicle attributes including acceleration, handling, shift-feel, fuel economy, or hauling and towing capacity. Designing a transmission in light of that balance and to meet varied customer expectations and preferences, from smoother shift to quick shift and everything in between, may result in what some operators could perceive as a brief jerking or shaking sensation during gear changes. That is a normal part of transmission operation. If you have concerns about your transmission, please visit your Ford-authorized dealer. If the vehicle has a malfunction during

normal use because of a defect in factory-supplied materials or factory workmanship during the warranty term, Ford will service the vehicle under warranty. Transmission service may be a software modification (including calibration upgrades) to alter the subjective driving characteristics of your vehicle, such as transmission shift-feel, that may better fit your personal preferences. To the extent Ford offers a software modification to enhance customer satisfaction, the service is not evidence of the existence of a defect or to cure an impairment to the use, value or safety of the vehicle.

Shifting Your Vehicle Into Gear

The transmission selector is on the center stack.



1. Press and hold the brake pedal.
2. Press a button to select a position.

Note: The position illuminates on the transmission selector.

Park (P)

WARNING: Shift into park (P) only when your vehicle is stationary.

In park (P) power is not transmitted to the driven wheels.
Note: A tone sounds if you attempt to exit your vehicle without the vehicle in park (P).
Note: Your vehicle may not shift out of park (P) if the 12V battery has run out of charge.
Note: Your vehicle may not shift out of park (P) if a fuse is blown.
Note: Your vehicle may not shift out of park (P) unless the key or remote control is inside your vehicle.
Note: The electronic parking brake could apply when you power your vehicle on with the selector in park (P).
Note: The electronic parking brake could apply if you shift to park (P) without fully pressing the brake pedal.

Note: The electronic parking brake could apply if you shift to park (P) on a slope.
Note: Do not manually release the parking brake when the selector is in park (P). See **Automatically Releasing the Electric Parking Brake**.
Note: Your vehicle could shift into park (P) if you attempt to exit your vehicle without the transmission in park (P). See **Automatic Return to Park (P)**.
Note: A tone could sound when you select park (P).

Reverse (R)

WARNING: Shift into reverse (R) only when your vehicle is stationary.

In reverse (R) power is transmitted to the driven wheels.

Neutral (N)

WARNING: In neutral (N) your vehicle is free to roll.

In neutral (N) power is not transmitted to the driven wheels.

Drive (D)

In drive (D) power is transmitted to the driven wheels.

Automatic Transmission Position Indicators

The instrument cluster displays the current position.



Note: The position could illuminate on the transmission selector.

Manually Shifting Gears

Shifting Using the Paddle Shifters
The instrument cluster displays the current gear. The current gear flashes when your vehicle cannot shift into the requested gear. Your vehicle does not shift if the requested gear raises or lowers the engine speed beyond the limit.
Your vehicle could shift when you fully press the accelerator or brake pedal.

Note: Prolonged driving with high engine speed could cause vehicle damage not covered by vehicle warranty.
Note: Drive modes could affect when the vehicle shifts into the requested gear.



Manually Shifting in Drive (D)
Use this feature to temporarily change gear.
Note: We recommend using this feature for engine braking or driving on hilly or mountainous roads.

- Pull either paddle to switch the feature on.
- Pull the right (+) paddle to upshift.
- Pull the left (-) paddle to downshift.
- Hold the right (+) paddle for a few seconds to switch the feature off.

Note: The feature switches off after a short period of time if neither paddle is pulled.

Temporary Neutral Mode

How Does Temporary Neutral Mode Work
Use this mode to keep your vehicle in neutral (N), for a limited time, when you exit your vehicle or switch your vehicle off. For example, if you exit your vehicle before an automatic car wash.
Note: You do not need to use this mode at an automatic car wash if you shift into neutral (N) and stay in your vehicle with power on.
Note: Do not tow your vehicle in this mode.
Note: Automatic return to park (P) is delayed when your vehicle is in this mode. See **Automatic Return to Park (P)**.
Temporary Neutral Mode Limitations
This mode could be unavailable if your 12 V battery charge level is low. Connect an external power source and attempt the procedure again.
Your vehicle could shift to park (P) after 30 minutes, or when the vehicle battery charge level is low.
Prolonged use of this mode can cause the 12 V battery to run out of charge.
This mode could be unavailable if your vehicle is below operating temperature. Warm up your vehicle and attempt the procedure again.
Do not tow your vehicle in this mode. Failure to follow these instructions could result in vehicle damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.
Entering Temporary Neutral Mode

1. Bring your vehicle to a complete stop.

2. Press and hold the brake pedal.
3. Power your vehicle on.
4. Shift into neutral (N).

Note: An instructional message appears.

5. Shift into neutral (N) again within a few seconds.

Note: A confirmation message appears when your vehicle enters the mode.

6. Release the brake pedal.

Note: Your vehicle is free to roll.

7. Switch your vehicle off.

Note: Do not tow your vehicle in this mode.
Note: The neutral (N) indicator on the selector may flash in this mode.
Exiting Temporary Neutral Mode

1. Press the brake pedal.
2. Shift into park (P), or power your vehicle on and shift into drive (D) or reverse (R).

Automatic Return to Park (P)

How Does Automatic Return to Park (P) Work

Your vehicle shifts into park (P) when your vehicle is stationary and any of the following occur:
- You switch the vehicle off.
- You open the driver door with the driver seatbelt unfastened.
- You unfasten the driver seatbelt when the driver door is open.

Note: Do not use automatic return to park (P) when your vehicle is moving, except in an emergency. See **Starting and Stopping the Engine**.
Automatic Return to Park (P) Limitations
Automatic return to park (P) may not work if any of the following occur:

- The driver door ajar sensor is malfunctioning.
- The driver seatbelt sensor is malfunctioning.

See an authorized dealer if any of the following occur:

- Seatbelt indicator illuminates or tone sounds with the driver seatbelt fastened.
- Door ajar indicator does not illuminate with the driver door open.
- Door ajar indicator illuminates with the driver door closed.
- Transmission not in park message appears, with the driver door closed, after you shift out of park (P).

Grade Assist - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)

How Does Grade Assist Work?

This feature helps maintain vehicle speed when driving down a slope. The system uses a combination of engine motoring and regenerative braking to maintain vehicle speed.
Note: You could hear engine speed increasing and decreasing. This is normal operation.
The system activates when all the following occur:

- Your vehicle is on a downhill slope.
- The selector is in drive (D).
- You release the accelerator pedal.

Shifting Your Immobile Vehicle Out of Park (P)

WARNING: When doing this procedure, you need to take your vehicle out of park (P) which means your vehicle can roll freely. To avoid unwanted vehicle movement, apply the parking brake prior to doing this procedure. Use wheels chocks if appropriate.

Use this procedure to shift your vehicle out of park (P) in the event of an electrical malfunction or emergency.
Note: This mode could be unavailable if your 12 volt battery charge level is low. Connect an external power source and attempt the procedure again.
Note: Your vehicle could shift to park (P) after 30 minutes, or when the vehicle battery charge level is low. Prolonged use of this mode can cause the 12 volt battery to run out of charge.
Note: This mode could be unavailable if your vehicle is below operating temperature. Warm up your vehicle and attempt the procedure again.
Note: Do not tow your vehicle in this mode. Failure to follow these instructions could result in vehicle damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.
Shifting Your Vehicle Out of Park (P)

1. Apply the parking brake.

Note: If the battery is out of charge, use an external power source to apply the parking brake.

2. Power your vehicle on without your foot on the brake pedal.
3. Fully press and hold the brake pedal.
4. Fully press and hold the accelerator pedal.
5. Shift into neutral (N).
6. Shift into neutral (N) again within a few seconds.
7. Attempt to start your vehicle.

Note: A confirmation message appears when your vehicle enters the mode.
Note: You must complete this procedure within 15 seconds. If your vehicle shifts into park (P) attempt the procedure again.

8. Release the accelerator and brake pedals.
9. Release the parking brake.

Note: Your vehicle is free to roll.

10. Switch your vehicle off.

Note: Do not tow your vehicle in this mode.
Returning Your Vehicle to Normal Mode

1. Press the brake pedal.
2. Shift into park (P).

Automatic Transmission Audible Warnings

Transmission Not In Park (P) Audible Warning
Sounds if you open the driver door before shifting into park (P).
Park Selection Audible Warning
Sounds when you shift into park (P).

Automatic Transmission Fluid Capacity and Specification

Materials

Name	Specification
Motorcraft® MERCON® ULV Automatic Transmission Fluid XT-12-QULV	WSS-M2C949-A,

Note: Only use transmission fluid that conforms to the defined specification. Use of other fluids could result in vehicle damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.

Automatic Transmission – Information Messages

Message	Description
Park brake not applied	The electric parking brake is not fully applied.
Transmission not in Park	A reminder to shift into park (P).In addition, this message appears after reconnecting or recharging the battery until you cycle the ignition to the on mode.
Shift system fault Confirm park brake Apply before exiting the vehicle	Displays when there is a system fault and the parking brake needs to be pressed before exiting the vehicle.Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Transmission Malfunction Service Now	The system has detected a fault that requires service.Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Stay in Neutral Mode Engaged	Displays to confirm that your vehicle has entered Stay in Neutral Mode.
Select N To Confirm Stay In Neutral Mode	Displays when you shift into neutral (N).

Automatic Transmission Positions

Automatic Transmission Precautions

WARNING: Apply the parking brake, shift into park (P), switch the vehicle off and remove the key or remote control before you leave your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

WARNING: When your vehicle is stationary, keep the brake pedal fully pressed when shifting gears. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury, death or property damage.

WARNING: Do not apply the brake pedal and accelerator pedal simultaneously. Applying both pedals simultaneously for more than a few seconds limits vehicle performance, which may result in difficulty maintaining speed in traffic and could lead to serious injury.

Note: Ford vehicles incorporate innovative transmissions to boost fuel efficiency and reduce greenhouse gases, among other benefits. Optimizing performance involves balancing many vehicle attributes including acceleration, handling, shift-feel, fuel economy, or hauling and towing capacity. Designing a transmission in light of that balance and to meet varied customer expectations and preferences, from smoother shift to quick shift and everything in between, may result in what some operators could perceive as a brief jerking or shaking sensation during gear changes. That is a normal part of transmission operation. If you have concerns about your transmission, please visit your Ford-authorized dealer. If the vehicle has a malfunction during normal use because of a defect in factory-supplied materials or factory workmanship during the warranty term, Ford will service the vehicle under warranty. Transmission service may be a software modification (including calibration upgrades) to alter the subjective driving characteristics of your vehicle, such as transmission shift-feel, that may better fit your personal preferences. To the extent Ford offers a software modification to enhance customer satisfaction, the service is not evidence of the existence of a defect or to cure an impairment to the use, value or safety of the vehicle.

Shifting Your Vehicle Into Gear

The transmission selector is on the center stack.



1. Press and hold the brake pedal.
2. Press a button to select a position.

Note: The position illuminates on the transmission selector.

Park (P)

WARNING: Shift into park (P) only when your vehicle is stationary.

In park (P) power is not transmitted to the driven wheels.
Note: A tone sounds if you attempt to exit your vehicle without the vehicle in park (P).
Note: Your vehicle may not shift out of park (P) if the 12V battery has run out of charge.
Note: Your vehicle may not shift out of park (P) if a fuse is blown.
Note: Your vehicle may not shift out of park (P) unless the key or remote control is inside your vehicle.
Note: The electronic parking brake could apply when you power your vehicle on with the selector in park (P).
Note: The electronic parking brake could apply if you shift to park (P) without fully pressing the brake pedal.
Note: The electronic parking brake could apply if you shift to park (P) on a slope.
Note: Do not manually release the parking brake when the selector is in park (P). See **Automatically Releasing the Electric Parking Brake**.
Note: Your vehicle could shift into park (P) if you attempt to exit your vehicle without the transmission in park (P). See **Automatic Return to Park (P)**.
Note: A tone could sound when you select park (P).

Reverse (R)

WARNING: Shift into reverse (R) only when your vehicle is stationary.

In reverse (R) power is transmitted to the driven wheels.

Neutral (N)

WARNING: In neutral (N) your vehicle is free to roll.

In neutral (N) power is not transmitted to the driven wheels.

Drive (D)

In drive (D) power is transmitted to the driven wheels.

Automatic Transmission Position Indicators

The instrument cluster displays the current position.



Note: The position could illuminate on the transmission selector.

All-Wheel Drive (If Equipped)

How Does All-Wheel Drive Work

The all-wheel drive system is designed to continuously monitor and adjust power delivery to the front and rear wheels to optimize both traction and handling. The AWD system turns on when needed and does not require input from you.
Your all-wheel drive vehicle is not intended for off-road use. The AWD feature gives your vehicle some limited off-road capabilities in which driving surfaces are relatively level, obstruction-free and otherwise similar to normal on-road driving conditions. Operating your vehicle in conditions other than those, could subject the vehicle to excess stress which might result in damage which is not covered under your warranty.

All-Wheel Drive Precautions

 **WARNING**: Do not become overconfident in the ability of all-wheel drive vehicles. Although an all-wheel drive vehicle may accelerate better than a two-wheel drive vehicle in low traction situations, it won't stop any faster than two-wheel drive vehicles. Always drive at a safe speed.

All-Wheel Drive Limitations

Using different size tires other than the provided spare could cause system damage or disable the all-wheel drive system.

All-Wheel Drive – Information Messages

Message	Action
AWD Temporarily Disabled	The all-wheel drive system temporarily turns off to protect itself from overheating.
AWD Restored	The all-wheel drive system will resume normal function and clear this message after driving a short distance with the road tire re-installed or after the system cools.
AWD OFF	The all-wheel drive system temporarily turns off to protect itself from overheating or if you are using the temporary spare tire.
AWD Malfunction Service Required	The all-wheel drive system is not operating properly. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, contact an authorized dealer.

All-Wheel Drive – Troubleshooting

All-Wheel Drive – Information Messages

Message	Action
AWD Temporarily Disabled	The all-wheel drive system temporarily turns off to protect itself from overheating.
AWD Restored	The all-wheel drive system will resume normal function and clear this message after driving a short distance with the road tire re-installed or after the system cools.
AWD OFF	The all-wheel drive system temporarily turns off to protect itself from overheating or if you are using the temporary spare tire.
AWD Malfunction Service Required	The all-wheel drive system is not operating properly. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, contact an authorized dealer.

Drive Mode Control

What Is Drive Mode Control

This feature connects multiple vehicle systems through a single interface, providing you with enhanced vehicle control and driving dynamics for different driving scenarios, terrains, weather, or various road conditions.

How Does Drive Mode Control Work

When a drive mode is selected it alters various electrical and mechanical systems within the vehicle to a predetermined configuration. The systems altered and features available will depend on which mode is selected.
Note: The drive mode system reverts to the normal mode each time you start your vehicle.

Selecting a Drive Mode



Rotate the controller located on the center console. Rotate the drive mode controller once to activate the drive mode selection menu in the display. Rotate the controller a second time to select and engage the drive mode.
Note: Drive mode changes may not be available when the ignition is off.

Conserve

 This mode decreases accelerator pedal responsiveness to soften driver inputs and encourage efficient driving.
Depending on your vehicle's options, adaptive cruise control is slower to return to the set speed and auto start- stop engages more often. The system decreases air conditioning output to conserve energy when set to auto mode.
Use this mode for fuel efficient driving which allows for an extended driving range.

Excite

 This mode increases accelerator pedal responsiveness and holds the transmission in lower gears longer for enhanced acceleration. The system switches the chassis controls to their sport settings.
Depending on your vehicle's options, this feature sets the exhaust to a louder tone, inhibits auto-start stop, increases steering torque buildup, and it adjusts the suspension for enhanced driver connectivity and responsive driving dynamics.
Use this mode for a sportier and engaging driving experience.

Normal

 This mode adjusts all systems to their base settings and balances vehicle performance for all around drivability. Each time you switch your vehicle off it defaults to this mode.
Use this mode for everyday driving, such as city and highway routes or commuting.

Preserve EV

This mode prioritizes the use of the vehicles engine over electric only driving to save electric driving range for later use. Use this mode for electric battery energy conservation. For example, you first drive at high speeds on open roads where engine operation is appropriate. Later, you drive at low speeds in an urban area where electric only is most efficient. See **Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle Information**.

Pure EV

This mode prioritizes the use of the high voltage battery power and electric motor driving over engine operation. Use this mode for electric only driving.
Note: Your vehicle could accelerate more slowly, and the top speed could be reduced.
Note: For more power, you can temporarily enable your engine at any time by using one of the following methods:

- Press and hold the folder button on the steering wheel when viewing the pure EV information screen. Your vehicle enables the engine as needed, and returns to pure EV after several seconds, or when the vehicle no longer needs the engine.

- Press the accelerator pedal fully. A pop-up message appears. Press OK on the steering wheel to activate as needed. Your vehicle could enable the engine if system conditions require it. An engine enabled message displays if this occurs. See **Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle Information - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)**. Your engine could enable if the climate control is in a defrost mode and the outside temperature is cold. If the vehicle does not need defrost, select a different climate control mode to permit pure EV. Your vehicle changes from pure EV mode to normal mode when the vehicle electric range is zero.

Note: When in pure EV mode, your vehicle stays in this mode if there is electric driving range available and the system does not fault.

Slippery

 This mode lowers accelerator pedal responsiveness, adjusts transmission shift points, and optimizes traction and stability controls to help mitigate wheel spin and maintain vehicle control in slick driving conditions.
Depending on your vehicle's options, this feature adjusts the all-wheel drive control to provide optimum traction for slippery surfaces.
Use this mode for less than ideal road conditions such as snow and ice covered roads or for firm surfaces that are covered with loose or slippery materials.
Note: Do not use this mode when driving on dry pavement.

Drive Mode Control – Warning Lamps

 Some drive modes reduce traction and stability control performance and the indicator illuminates in the instrument cluster.
Note: The system has diagnostic checks that continuously monitor the system for proper operation. If a mode is unavailable due to a system fault, the drive mode system defaults to normal. When the system defaults to normal, the driveline settings remain the same as prior to the system fault.

Drive Mode Control – Information Messages

Message	Details
Drive mode not available	The system is not available.If it is still not available the next time you switch the ignition on, the system has malfunctioned.Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Drive Mode Control – Frequently Asked Questions

Why did the system default to normal mode?

- If a mode is unavailable due to a system fault, it defaults to normal mode and the driveline settings remain the same as prior to the system fault.

Can I switch drive modes while I am driving?

- In most instances, you can switch drive modes while you are driving (if you maintain attention on the road), or while the vehicle is stationary. However, you should not switch the vehicle into a drive mode intended for off-road or track use while driving on paved, public roads. For example, while driving on a paved highway, it would be acceptable to switch from normal mode to conserve mode, but not to deep conditions mode.

How long does it take for the vehicle to switch modes after I make a selection?

- After switching modes, the new drive mode activates within several seconds, if all the preconditions are met.

How should I decide which drive mode to use?

- Selecting a drive mode usually depends on the driving experience you would like to have, and the driving conditions. For example, if you want to have a more exciting on-road driving experience, you could switch into excite mode. If you find yourself driving on slick roads, you could switch into slippery mode.

Will drive modes impact my vehicle’s fuel consumption?

- Drive modes can have an impact on your vehicle’s fuel consumption. In addition to the active mode, your driving style also affects the fuel consumption.

Drive Modes

Conserve

 This mode decreases accelerator pedal responsiveness to soften driver inputs and encourage efficient driving.
Depending on your vehicle’s options, adaptive cruise control is slower to return to the set speed and auto start- stop engages more often. The system decreases air conditioning output to conserve energy when set to auto mode.
Use this mode for fuel efficient driving which allows for an extended driving range.

Excite

 This mode increases accelerator pedal responsiveness and holds the transmission in lower gears longer for enhanced acceleration. The system switches the chassis controls to their sport settings.
Depending on your vehicle’s options, this feature sets the exhaust to a louder tone, inhibits auto-start stop, increases steering torque buildup, and it adjusts the suspension for enhanced driver connectivity and responsive driving dynamics.
Use this mode for a sportier and engaging driving experience.

Normal

 This mode adjusts all systems to their base settings and balances vehicle performance for all around drivability. Each time you switch your vehicle off it defaults to this mode.
Use this mode for everyday driving, such as city and highway routes or commuting.

Preserve EV

This mode prioritizes the use of the vehicles engine over electric only driving to save electric driving range for later use. Use this mode for electric battery energy conservation. For example, you first drive at high speeds on open roads where engine operation is appropriate. Later, you drive at low speeds in an urban area where electric only is most efficient. See **Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle Information**.

Pure EV

This mode prioritizes the use of the high voltage battery power and electric motor driving over engine operation. Use this mode for electric only driving.
Note: Your vehicle could accelerate more slowly, and the top speed could be reduced.
Note: For more power, you can temporarily enable your engine at any time by using one of the following methods:

- Press and hold the folder button on the steering wheel when viewing the pure EV information screen. Your vehicle enables the engine as needed, and returns to pure EV after several seconds, or when the vehicle no longer needs the engine.
- Press the accelerator pedal fully. A pop-up message appears. Press OK on the steering wheel to activate as needed. Your vehicle could enable the engine if system conditions require it. An engine enabled message displays if this occurs. See **Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle Information - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)**. Your engine could enable if the climate control is in a defrost mode and the outside temperature is cold. If the vehicle does not need defrost, select a different climate control mode to permit pure EV. Your vehicle changes from pure EV mode to normal mode when the vehicle electric range is zero.

Note: When in pure EV mode, your vehicle stays in this mode if there is electric driving range available and the system does not fault.

Slippery

 This mode lowers accelerator pedal responsiveness, adjusts transmission shift points, and optimizes traction and stability controls to help mitigate wheel spin and maintain vehicle control in slick driving conditions.
Depending on your vehicle’s options, this feature adjusts the all-wheel drive control to provide optimum traction for slippery surfaces.
Use this mode for less than ideal road conditions such as snow and ice covered roads or for firm surfaces that are covered with loose or slippery materials.
Note: Do not use this mode when driving on dry pavement.

Drive Mode Control – Troubleshooting

Drive Mode Control – Warning Lamps

 Some drive modes reduce traction and stability control performance and the indicator illuminates in the instrument cluster.
Note: The system has diagnostic checks that continuously monitor the system for proper operation. If a mode is unavailable due to a system fault, the drive mode system defaults to normal. When the system defaults to normal, the driveline settings remain the same as prior to the system fault.

Drive Mode Control – Information Messages

Message	Details
Drive mode not available	The system is not available.If it is still not available the next time you switch the ignition on, the system has malfunctioned.Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Drive Mode Control – Frequently Asked Questions

Why did the system default to normal mode?

- If a mode is unavailable due to a system fault, it defaults to normal mode and the driveline settings remain the same as prior to the system fault.

Can I switch drive modes while I am driving?

- In most instances, you can switch drive modes while you are driving (if you maintain attention on the road), or while the vehicle is stationary. However, you should not switch the vehicle into a drive mode intended for off-road or track use while driving on paved, public roads. For example, while driving on a paved highway, it would be acceptable to switch from normal mode to conserve mode, but not to deep conditions mode.

How long does it take for the vehicle to switch modes after I make a selection?

- After switching modes, the new drive mode activates within several seconds, if all the preconditions are met.

How should I decide which drive mode to use?

- Selecting a drive mode usually depends on the driving experience you would like to have, and the driving conditions. For example, if you want to have a more exciting on-road driving experience, you could switch into excite mode. If you find yourself driving on slick roads, you could switch into slippery mode.

Will drive modes impact my vehicle’s fuel consumption?

- Drive modes can have an impact on your vehicle’s fuel consumption. In addition to the active mode, your driving style also affects the fuel consumption.

Brakes

Brake Precautions

Wet brakes result in reduced braking efficiency.Gently press the brake pedal a few times when leaving a car wash or driving from standing water to dry the brakes.
Note: Depending on applicable laws and regulations in the country for which your vehicle was originally built, your brake lamps may flash during heavy braking. Following this, your hazard lights may also flash when your vehicle comes to a stop.

Anti-Lock Braking System Limitations

The anti-lock braking system does not eliminate the risk of crash when:

- You drive too closely to the vehicle in front of you.
- Your vehicle is hydroplaning.
- You take corners too fast.
- The road surface is poor.

Note: If the system activates, the brake pedal could pulse and travel further.Maintain pressure on the brake pedal.

Anti-Lock Braking System Indicators

This system helps you maintain steering control during emergency stops by keeping the brakes from locking.  If the warning lamp illuminates when you are driving, this indicates a malfunction. Your vehicle continues to have normal braking without the anti-lock brake system function. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
The warning lamp also momentarily illuminates when you switch the ignition on to confirm the lamp is functional. If it does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, or begins to flash at any time, have the system checked by an authorized dealer.

Brake Over Accelerator

In the event the accelerator pedal becomes stuck or entrapped, apply steady and firm pressure to the brake pedal to slow the vehicle and reduce engine power. If you experience this condition, apply the brakes and bring your vehicle to a safe stop. Move the transmission to park (P), switch the engine off and apply the parking brake. Inspect the accelerator pedal for any interference. If none are found and the condition persists, have your vehicle towed to the nearest authorized dealer.

Locating the Brake Fluid Reservoir

See **Under Hood Overview - 2.0L EcoBoost™**.

Checking the Brake Fluid

WARNING: Do not use any fluid other than the recommended brake fluid as this will reduce brake efficiency. Use of incorrect fluid could result in the loss of vehicle control, serious personal injury or death.

WARNING: Only use brake fluid from a sealed container. Contamination with dirt, water, petroleum products or other materials may result in brake system damage or failure. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in the loss of vehicle control, serious personal injury or death.

WARNING: Do not allow the fluid to touch your skin or eyes. If this happens, rinse the affected areas immediately with plenty of water and contact your physician.

WARNING: The brake system could be affected if the brake fluid level is below the MIN mark or above the MAX mark on the brake fluid reservoir.

1. Park your vehicle on a level surface.



2. Look at the brake fluid reservoir to see where the brake fluid level is relative to the **MIN** and the **MAX** marks on the reservoir.

Note: To avoid fluid contamination, the reservoir cap must remain in place and fully tight, unless you are adding fluid.
Only use fluid that meets our specifications. See **Brake Fluid Specification**.

Brake Fluid Specification

Use fluid that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade.

If you do not use fluid that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade, it could result in:
- Component damage that your vehicle warranty does not cover.
- Reduced brake performance.

Note: We recommend you to use Dot 4 Low Viscosity (LV) High Performance Brake Fluid meeting WSS-M6C65-A2 specifications or ISO 4925 Class 6 standards. If you use any fluid other than the recommended fluid, it could cause reduced brake performance and not meet our performance standards. Keep brake fluid clean and dry. Contamination with dirt, water, petroleum products or other materials could result in brake

system damage and possible failure.
Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	Fill as required.

Materials

Name	Specification
Motorcraft® DOT 4 LV High Performance Motor Vehicle Brake Fluid PM-20	WSS-M6C65-A2

Brakes – Warning Lamps

WARNING: Driving your vehicle with the warning lamp on is dangerous. A significant decrease in braking performance may occur. It may take you longer to stop your vehicle. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. Driving extended distances with the parking brake engaged can cause brake failure and the risk of personal injury.

 If the ABS indicator illuminates when you are driving, this indicates a malfunction. Your vehicle continues to have normal braking without the anti-lock braking system function. See an authorized dealer.
It also momentarily illuminates when you switch the ignition on to confirm the lamp is functional. If it does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, or begins to flash at any time, have the system checked by an authorized dealer.

 The brake indicator momentarily illuminates when you switch the ignition on to confirm the lamp is functional. It may also illuminate when you apply the parking brake and the ignition is on. If it illuminates when your vehicle is moving, make sure the parking brake is disengaged. If the parking brake is disengaged, this indicates low brake fluid level or a brake system fault. See an authorized dealer.

Note: Lamps may vary depending on region.

Brakes – Information Messages

Brake Fluid Level Low	The brake fluid level is low and the brake system should be inspected immediately. See **Checking the Brake Fluid**.
Check Brake System	The brake system needs servicing. Stop the vehicle in a safe place. Contact an authorized dealer.

Brakes – Frequently Asked Questions

Is brake dust on the wheels normal?Brake dust could accumulate on the wheels, even under normal driving conditions. Some dust is inevitable as the brakes wear and does not contribute to brake noise. See **Cleaning Wheels**. Will wet driving conditions effect my braking abilities?Wet brakes result in reduced braking efficiency. Gently press the brake pedal a few times when driving from a car wash or standing water to dry

the brakes.Is brake noise considered normal?Occasional brake noise is normal. If a metal-to-metal, continuous grinding or continuous squeal sound is present, the brake linings may be worn-out and an authorized dealer should check them. If the vehicle has continuous vibration or shudder in the steering wheel while braking, an authorized dealer should check your vehicle.When should you replace the brake fluid?Brake fluid absorbs water over time which degrades the effectiveness of the brake fluid. Change the brake fluid at the specified intervals to prevent degraded braking performance.

Anti-Lock Braking System

Anti-Lock Braking System Limitations

The anti-lock braking system does not eliminate the risk of crash when:

- You drive too closely to the vehicle in front of you.
- Your vehicle is hydroplaning.
- You take corners too fast.
- The road surface is poor.

Note: If the system activates, the brake pedal could pulse and travel further.Maintain pressure on the brake pedal.

Anti-Lock Braking System Indicators

This system helps you maintain steering control during emergency stops by keeping the brakes from locking.  If the warning lamp illuminates when you are driving, this indicates a malfunction. Your vehicle continues to have normal braking without the anti-lock brake system function. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
The warning lamp also momentarily illuminates when you switch the ignition on to confirm the lamp is functional. If it does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, or begins to flash at any time, have the system checked by an authorized dealer.

Brakes – Troubleshooting

Brakes – Warning Lamps

 **WARNING**: Driving your vehicle with the warning lamp on is dangerous. A significant decrease in braking performance may occur. It may take you longer to stop your vehicle. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. Driving extended distances with the parking brake engaged can cause brake failure and the risk of personal injury.

 If the ABS indicator illuminates when you are driving, this indicates a malfunction. Your vehicle continues to have normal braking without the anti-lock braking system function. See an authorized dealer.
It also momentarily illuminates when you switch the ignition on to confirm the lamp is functional. If it does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, or begins to flash at any time, have the system checked by an authorized dealer.

 The brake indicator momentarily illuminates when you switch the ignition on to confirm the lamp is functional. It may also illuminate when you apply the parking brake and the ignition is on. If it illuminates when your vehicle is moving, make sure the parking brake is disengaged. If the parking brake is disengaged, this indicates low brake fluid level or a brake system fault. See an authorized dealer.

Note: Lamps may vary depending on region.

Brakes – Information Messages

Brake Fluid Level Low	The brake fluid level is low and the brake system should be inspected immediately. See **Checking the Brake Fluid**.
Check Brake System	The brake system needs servicing. Stop the vehicle in a safe place. Contact an authorized dealer.

Brakes – Frequently Asked Questions

Is brake dust on the wheels normal?Brake dust could accumulate on the wheels, even under normal driving conditions. Some dust is inevitable as the brakes wear and does not contribute to brake noise. See **Cleaning Wheels**. Will wet driving conditions effect my braking abilities?Wet brakes result in reduced braking efficiency. Gently press the brake pedal a few times when driving from a car wash or standing water to dry the brakes.Is brake noise considered normal?Occasional brake noise is normal. If a metal-to-metal, continuous grinding or continuous squeal sound is present, the brake linings may be worn-out and an authorized dealer should check them. If the vehicle has continuous vibration or shudder in the steering wheel while braking, an authorized dealer should check your vehicle.When should you replace the brake fluid?Brake fluid absorbs water over time which degrades the effectiveness of the brake fluid. Change the brake fluid at the specified intervals to prevent degraded braking performance.

Electric Parking Brake

What Is the Electric Parking Brake

The electric parking brake is used to hold your vehicle on slopes and flat roads.

Applying the Electric Parking Brake

WARNING: Apply the parking brake, shift into park (P), switch the ignition off and remove the key before you leave your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

WARNING: If you drive extended distances with the parking brake applied, you could cause damage to the brake system.

WARNING: The electric parking brake does not operate if the vehicle battery has run out of charge.

WARNING: If the parking brake is fully released, but the brake warning lamp remains illuminated, the brakes may not be working properly. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

 The switch is on the lower part of the instrument panel.
Pull the switch up to apply the electric parking brake. The red warning lamp flashes, then steadily illuminates when the parking brake is applied.
Note: You can apply the electric parking brake when the ignition is off.
Note: The electric parking brake could automatically apply when park (P) is selected. See **Park (P)**.

Applying the Electric Parking Brake in an Emergency

You can use the electric parking brake to slow or stop your vehicle in an emergency.
Pull the switch up and hold it.
The red warning lamp illuminates, a tone sounds and the stoplamps turn on when you use the electric parking brake in an emergency.
The electric parking brake continues to slow your vehicle down unless you release the switch.
Note: Do not apply the electric parking brake when your vehicle is moving, except in an emergency. If you repeatedly use the electric parking brake to slow or stop your vehicle, you could cause damage to the brake system.

Manually Releasing the Electric Parking Brake

1. Switch the ignition on.
2. Press and hold the brake pedal.
3. Push the switch down.

The red warning lamp turns off.
Pulling Away When Towing a Trailer Uphill

1. Press and hold the brake pedal.
2. Pull the switch upward and hold it.
3. Shift into gear.
4. Press the accelerator pedal until engine has developed sufficient torque to prevent your vehicle from rolling down the hill.
5. Release the switch and pull away in a normal manner.

Automatically Releasing the Electric Parking Brake

1. Close the driver door.
2. Shift into gear.
3. Press the accelerator pedal and pull away in a normal manner.

Electric Parking Brake Audible Warning

Sounds when the parking brake is on and your vehicle is moving with at least 5 km/h. If the warning tone continues after you have released the parking brake, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Releasing the Electric Parking Brake if the Vehicle Battery Has Run Out of Charge

WARNING: The electric parking brake does not operate if the vehicle battery has run out of charge.

Connect a booster battery to the vehicle battery to release the electric parking brake if the vehicle battery has run out of charge. See **Jump Starting Precautions**.

Electric Parking Brake – Warning Lamps

Brake System
BRAKE It illuminates red when you apply the parking brake and your vehicle is on.If the lamp flashes when the parking brake has been released, this indicates the parking brake system requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Note: Lamps may vary depending on region.
Electric Parking Brake
When the lamp illuminates yellow, it indicates a malfunction in the electric parking brake. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Note: Lamps may vary depending on region.

Electric Parking Brake – Information Messages

Message	Details
To Release: Press Brake and Switch	The electric parking brake is set and a manual release is attempted without the brake pedal being pressed.
Park Brake Use Switch to Release	The electric parking brake is set and an automatic release is attempted but cannot be performed. Perform a manual release.
Release Park Brake	The electric parking brake is set and your vehicle speed exceeds 3 mph (5 km/h). Release the electric parking brake before continuing to drive.
Park Brake Not Applied	The electric parking brake is not fully applied.
Park Brake Not Released	The electric parking brake is not fully released.
Brake maintenance mode	The electric parking brake system has been put into a special mode to allow brake service. Have the system checked as soon as possible.
Park Brake Limited Function Service Required	The electric parking brake system has detected a condition that requires service. Some functionality may still be available. Have the system checked as soon as possible.
Park Brake Malfunction Service Now	The electric parking brake system has detected a condition that requires service. Have the system checked as soon as possible.

Electric Parking Brake – Troubleshooting

Electric Parking Brake – Warning Lamps

Brake System
BRAKE It illuminates red when you apply the parking brake and your vehicle is on.If the lamp flashes when the parking brake has been released, this indicates the parking brake system requires service. Have

your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Note: Lamps may vary depending on region.
Electric Parking Brake
 When the lamp illuminates yellow, it indicates a malfunction in the electric parking brake. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Note: Lamps may vary depending on region.

Electric Parking Brake – Information Messages

Message	Details
To Release: Press Brake and Switch	The electric parking brake is set and a manual release is attempted without the brake pedal being pressed.
Park Brake Use Switch to Release	The electric parking brake is set and an automatic release is attempted but cannot be performed. Perform a manual release.
Release Park Brake	The electric parking brake is set and your vehicle speed exceeds 3 mph (5 km/h). Release the electric parking brake before continuing to drive.
Park Brake Not Applied	The electric parking brake is not fully applied.
Park Brake Not Released	The electric parking brake is not fully released.
Brake maintenance mode	The electric parking brake system has been put into a special mode to allow brake service. Have the system checked as soon as possible.
Park Brake Limited Function Service Required	The electric parking brake system has detected a condition that requires service. Some functionality may still be available. Have the system checked as soon as possible.
Park Brake Malfunction Service Now	The electric parking brake system has detected a condition that requires service. Have the system checked as soon as possible.

Reverse Brake Assist (If Equipped)

How Does Reverse Brake Assist Work

Reverse brake assist is designed to reduce impact damage or assist in avoiding a collision while in reverse (R). It functions when in reverse (R) and traveling at a speed of 1–7 mph (2–12 km/h).
If the system detects an obstacle behind your vehicle, it provides a warning through the rear parking aid or cross traffic alert system. Using sensors on the rear of the vehicle, it can detect a possible collision and apply the brakes. If full braking occurs, the system attempts to stop the vehicle a safe distance from the obstacle.

Reverse Brake Assist Precautions

WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: To help avoid personal injury, always use caution when in reverse (R) and when using the sensing system.

WARNING: The system may not operate properly during severe weather conditions, for example snow, ice, heavy rain and spray. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.

WARNING: Traffic control systems, fluorescent lamps, inclement weather, air brakes, external motors and fans may affect the correct operation of the sensing system. This may cause reduced performance or false alerts.

WARNING: Some situations and objects prevent hazard detection. For example low or direct sunlight, inclement weather, unconventional vehicle types, and pedestrians. Apply the brakes when necessary. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: Do not use the system with accessories that extend beyond the front or rear of your vehicle, for example a trailer hitch or bike rack. The system is not able to make corrections for the additional length of the accessories.

The system only applies the brakes for a short period of time when an event occurs. Act as soon as you notice the brakes apply to remain in control of the vehicle. If you do not intervene the vehicle may start to move again.
Note: Certain add-on devices around the bumper or fascia may create false alerts. For example, large trailer hitches, bicycle or surfboard racks, license plate brackets, bumper covers or any other device that may block the normal detection zone of the system. Remove the add-on device to prevent false alerts.
Note: The system does not react to small or moving objects, particularly those close to the ground.
Note: The system does not operate during hard acceleration or steering.
Note: If your vehicle sustains damage to the bumper or fascia leaving it misaligned or bent, it could alter the sensing zone causing inaccurate measurement of obstacles or false alerts.
Note: Vehicle loading and suspension changes can impact the angle of the sensors and may change the normal detection zone of the system resulting in inaccurate measurement of obstacles or false alerts.
Note: When you connect a trailer, the system may detect the trailer and provide an alert, or the system turns off. If the system does not turn off, manually switch the system off after you connect the trailer.
Note: You may experience reduced system performance on road surfaces that limit deceleration. For example, roads with ice, loose gravel, mud or sand.

Switching Reverse Brake Assist On and Off

1. Press Features on the touchscreen.
2. Press Driver Assistance.
3. Switch Reverse Brake Assist on or off.

Note: The system is unavailable when the rear parking aid or cross traffic alert is off.
Note: If your vehicle is not equipped with cross traffic alert the reverse braking assist relies on input from the rear parking aid and rear camera sensors.
Note: The default setting is on in some regions.

Overriding Reverse Brake Assist

There could be instances when unexpected or unwanted braking occurs. Firmly pressing the accelerator pedal or switching the feature off overrides the system.

Reverse Brake Assist Indicators

If the system determines that a collision with an obstacle may occur, full braking may apply.

 A message and warning indicator appear when the system applies the brakes.

Reverse Brake Assist – Information Messages

Message	Details
Reverse Brake Assist	Displays for a few seconds when the system applies the brakes.
Reverse Brake Assist not available See manual	Make sure the rear parking aid and cross traffic alert systems are switched on. Make sure that all doors, liftgate or tailgate and hood are closed and no vehicle add-on devices or modifications are interfering with the system. Make sure the rear view camera is clear and the mirrors are not folded while in reverse if 360 degree cameras are installed. Drive the vehicle on a straight road for a short period. If the message remains, have the system checked as soon as possible.
Reverse Brake Assist Off	Displays when reverse brake assist is off.

Reverse Brake Assist – Frequently Asked Questions

What are the precautions to be followed when using the reverse brake assist system?

- The system uses a combination of rear parking aid cameras and parking sensors for operation. Poor visibility or low lighting conditions can impact performance. Make sure the rear parking aid cameras and parking sensors are not dirty or obstructed.
- Reverse your vehicle slowly. On rare occasions, detection issues can occur due to road infrastructure, for example sloped driveways and textured surfaces behind the vehicle or objects close to the reversing path.

Why is reverse brake assist unavailable?

- Make sure you switch the system on. See **Switching Reverse Brake Assist On and Off**.
- Make sure that the liftgate or tailgate, hood and all doors are closed.
- Make sure the cross traffic alert system is on. See **What Is Cross Traffic Alert**.
- Make sure the rear parking aid system is on. See **What is the Rear Parking Aid**.
- Make sure that traction control is on. See **Switching Traction Control On and Off**.
- Your vehicle may have sustained a rear end impact. Have the sensors checked for proper coverage and operation.

- Make sure the exterior cameras are not dirty or obstructed. If dirty, clean the cameras. If the reverse brake assist unavailable message still appears after cleaning the cameras, wait a short time for the message to clear. If the message does not clear, drive the vehicle on a straight road for a short period. If the message remains, have the system checked.
- Make sure the sensors are not blocked or faulted. See **Locating the Rear Parking Aid Sensors**. See **Locating the Cross Traffic Alert Sensors**.
- You recently had your vehicle serviced, or the battery disconnected. Drive your vehicle a short distance to resume system operation.
- The system does not function when you connect a trailer. Operation resumes when you disconnect the trailer.

Note: If you are still having problems with reverse brake assist, have the system checked as soon as possible.

Reverse Brake Assist – Troubleshooting

Reverse Brake Assist – Information Messages

Message	Details
Reverse Brake Assist	Displays for a few seconds when the system applies the brakes.
Reverse Brake Assist not available See manual	Make sure the rear parking aid and cross traffic alert systems are switched on. Make sure that all doors, liftgate or tailgate and hood are closed and no vehicle add-on devices or modifications are interfering with the system. Make sure the rear view camera is clear and the mirrors are not folded while in reverse if 360 degree cameras are installed. Drive the vehicle on a straight road for a short period. If the message remains, have the system checked as soon as possible.
Reverse Brake Assist Off	Displays when reverse brake assist is off.

Reverse Brake Assist – Frequently Asked Questions

What are the precautions to be followed when using the reverse brake assist system?

- The system uses a combination of rear parking aid cameras and parking sensors for operation. Poor visibility or low lighting conditions can impact performance. Make sure the rear parking aid cameras and parking sensors are not dirty or obstructed.

- Reverse your vehicle slowly. On rare occasions, detection issues can occur due to road infrastructure, for example sloped driveways and textured surfaces behind the vehicle or objects close to the reversing path.

Why is reverse brake assist unavailable?

- Make sure you switch the system on. See **Switching Reverse Brake Assist On and Off**.
- Make sure that the liftgate or tailgate, hood and all doors are closed.
- Make sure the cross traffic alert system is on. See **What Is Cross Traffic Alert**.

- Make sure the rear parking aid system is on. See **What is the Rear Parking Aid**.
- Make sure that traction control is on. See **Switching Traction Control On and Off**.
- Your vehicle may have sustained a rear end impact. Have the sensors checked for proper coverage and operation.
- Make sure the exterior cameras are not dirty or obstructed. If dirty, clean the cameras. If the reverse brake assist unavailable message still appears after cleaning the cameras, wait a short time for the message to clear. If the message does not clear, drive the vehicle on a straight road for a short period. If the message remains, have the system checked.
- Make sure the sensors are not blocked or faulted. See **Locating the Rear Parking Aid Sensors**. See **Locating the Cross Traffic Alert Sensors**.
- You recently had your vehicle serviced, or the battery disconnected. Drive your vehicle a short distance to resume system operation.
- The system does not function when you connect a trailer. Operation resumes when you disconnect the trailer.

Note: If you are still having problems with reverse brake assist, have the system checked as soon as possible.

Hill Start Assist

What Is Hill Start Assist

Hill Start Assist applies the brakes to hold your vehicle after you bring it to a stop on a slope. This makes it easier for you to pull away without using the parking brake.

How Does Hill Start Assist Work

When the system activates, your vehicle remains stationary for a few seconds after you release the brake pedal. This gives you time to move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator pedal. The brakes release when you apply the accelerator pedal and the vehicle begins to move forward, or the system exceeds the time allowed for automatically applying the brakes.
The system activates when your vehicle is in any forward gear and facing uphill, or when your vehicle is in reverse (R) and facing downhill.

Hill Start Assist Precautions

WARNING: The system does not replace the parking brake. When you leave your vehicle, always apply the parking brake.

WARNING: You must remain in your vehicle when the system turns on. At all times you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system, and intervening if required. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: The system turns off if there is a malfunction.

Hill Start Assist – Information Messages

Message	Details
Hill Start Assist Not Available	Displays when system is not available.Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Hill Start Assist – Troubleshooting

Hill Start Assist – Information Messages

Message	Details
Hill Start Assist Not Available	Displays when system is not available.Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Auto Hold

How Does Auto Hold Work

Auto hold applies the brakes to hold your vehicle after you bring the vehicle to a stop. This can help when waiting on a hill or in traffic.

Switching Auto Hold On and Off

WARNING: The system does not replace the parking brake. When you leave your vehicle, always apply the parking brake.

WARNING: You must remain in your vehicle when the system turns on. At all times you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system, and intervening if required. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

You can switch the system on or off by accessing the menu in the SYNC display screen.

1. From the features menu, press Driver Assistance. See **Center Display**.
2. Switch Auto Hold on or off.

Note: You can only switch the system on after you close the driver door, and fasten your seatbelt.
Note: The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.
Note: When using an automatic car wash, make sure to switch auto hold off, or shift to neutral (N) with the brake pedal applied to make sure auto hold is not active.

Using Auto Hold

1. Bring your vehicle to a complete stop. The auto hold active indicator illuminates in the instrument cluster display.

2. Release the brake pedal. The system holds your vehicle at a standstill. The auto hold active indicator remains illuminated in the instrument cluster display.

3. Apply the accelerator and drive off in a normal manner. The system releases the brakes and the auto hold active indicator switches off.

Note: The system only activates if you bring the vehicle to a complete stop.
Note: Under certain conditions, the system could apply the electric parking brake. The brake system warning lamp illuminates. The electric parking brake releases when you press the accelerator pedal. See **Automatically Releasing the Electric Parking Brake**.
Note: While auto hold is applying the brakes, if you shift into reverse (R) or neutral (N) with your foot on the brake pedal, auto hold releases the brake. However, while auto hold is applying the brakes, if you shift into reverse (R) or neutral (N) without your foot on the brake pedal, auto hold continues to apply the brakes. In this case, the driver pressing the brake pedal causes auto hold to release the brake.

The following situations can cause auto hold to not work:
- Your vehicle is in temporary neutral mode.
- The driver door is open.
- You shift into reverse (R) or neutral (N) before the system is active.

Auto Hold Indicators

 Illuminates when the system is active.

 Illuminates when the system is on but cannot hold your vehicle at a standstill at this particular time.

Traction Control

What Is Traction Control

The traction control system helps to avoid drive wheel spin and loss of traction.

How Does Traction Control Work

If your vehicle begins to slide, the system applies the brakes to individual wheels and, when needed, reduces power at the same time. If the wheels spin when accelerating on slippery or loose surfaces, the system reduces power in order to increase traction.

Switching Traction Control On and Off

WARNING: Operating your vehicle with the traction control disabled could lead to an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.



The traction control system turns on each time you switch the ignition on.
The button for your traction control system is located on the center console.
Press and release the button to switch traction control off. The stability control system remains fully active.
When you switch traction control off, a message and an illuminated icon appear on the instrument cluster.

Press the switch again to turn the traction control system back on to normal operation.
If your vehicle is stuck in mud or snow, switching traction control off may be beneficial as this allows the wheels to spin.
Note: When you switch traction control off, stability control remains fully active.

Traction Control Indicator

Stability and Traction Control Indicator

 If the indicator does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, or remains on when the engine is running, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer as soon as possible.

 The traction control off indicator illuminates when you switch the traction control system off, or when an alternative stability control mode is selected that requires the traction control off depending on the drive mode selected.

Traction Control – Warning Lamps

System Messages

 The traction control light temporarily illuminates on start-up and flashes when activated by a driving condition.
The traction control off light temporarily illuminates on start-up and stays on:

- When you switch the traction control system off.
- When you select an alternative stability control mode.
- If a problem occurs in the system.

Traction Control – Information Messages

AdvanceTrac™ and Traction Control

Message	Action
Service AdvanceTrac	The system detects a condition that requires service. Contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.
AdvanceTrac Off	The status of the AdvanceTrac system after you switched it off.
AdvanceTrac On	The status of the AdvanceTrac system after you switched it on.
AdvanceTrac SPORT MODE	The status of the AdvanceTrac sport mode after you switched it on.
Traction Control Off	The status of the traction control system after you switched it off.
Traction Control On	The status of the traction control system after you switched it on.

Traction Control – Troubleshooting

Traction Control – Warning Lamps

System Messages

 The traction control light temporarily illuminates on start-up and flashes when activated by a driving condition.
The traction control off light temporarily illuminates on start-up and stays on:

- When you switch the traction control system off.
- When you select an alternative stability control mode.
- If a problem occurs in the system.

Traction Control – Information Messages

AdvanceTrac™ and Traction Control

Message	Action
Service AdvanceTrac	The system detects a condition that requires service. Contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.
AdvanceTrac Off	The status of the AdvanceTrac system after you switched it off.
AdvanceTrac On	The status of the AdvanceTrac system after you switched it on.
AdvanceTrac SPORT MODE	The status of the AdvanceTrac sport mode after you switched it on.
Traction Control Off	The status of the traction control system after you switched it off.
Traction Control On	The status of the traction control system after you switched it on.

Stability Control

How Does Stability Control Work

WARNING: Vehicle modifications involving braking system, aftermarket roof racks, suspension, steering system, tire construction and wheel and tire size may change the handling characteristics of your vehicle and may adversely affect the performance of the electronic stability control system. In addition, installing any stereo speakers may interfere with and adversely affect the electronic stability control system. Reducing the effectiveness of the electronic stability control system could lead to an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

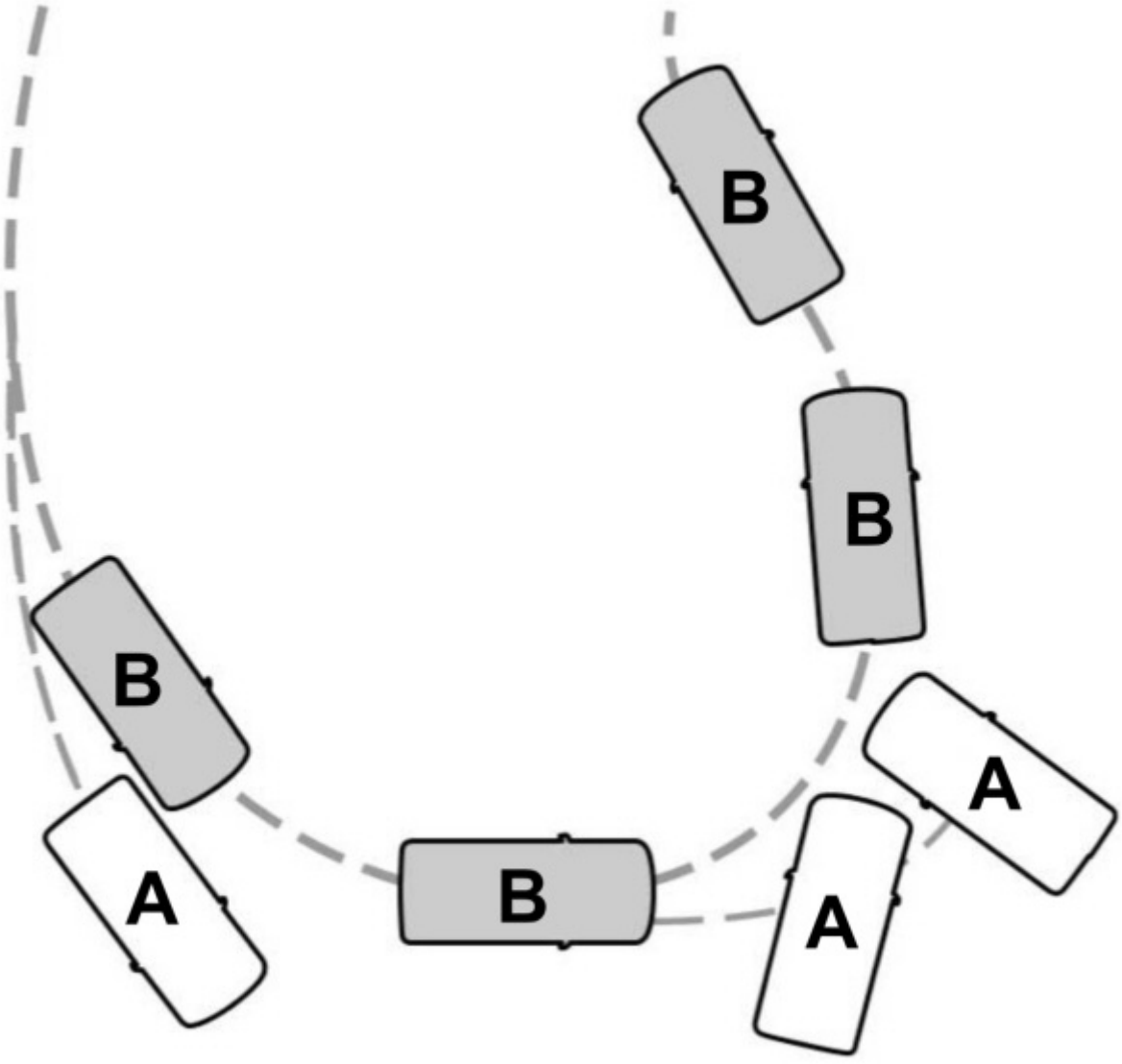
WARNING: Remember that even advanced technology cannot defy the laws of physics. It's always possible to lose control of a vehicle due to inappropriate driver input for the conditions. Aggressive driving on any road condition can cause you to lose control of your vehicle increasing the risk of personal injury or property damage. Activation of the electronic stability control system is an indication that at least some of the tires have exceeded their ability to grip the road; this could reduce the operator's ability to control the vehicle potentially resulting in a loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

If a driving condition activates either the stability control or traction control you may experience the following conditions:

- The stability and traction control light flashes.
- Your vehicle slows down.
- Reduced engine power.

The stability control system has several features built into it to help you maintain control of your vehicle:
Electronic Stability Control
Electronic stability control enhances your vehicle’s ability to prevent skids or lateral slides by applying brakes to one or more of the wheels individually and, if necessary, reducing engine power.
Roll Stability Control
Roll stability control enhances your vehicle’s ability to prevent rollovers by detecting your vehicle’s roll motion and the rate at which it changes by applying the brakes to one or more wheels individually.
Curve Control
Curve control enhances your vehicle’s ability to follow the road when cornering severely or avoiding objects in the roadway. Curve control operates by reducing engine power and, if necessary, applying brakes to one or more of the wheels individually.
Side Wind Stabilization
Side wind stabilization is an advanced feature that works by carefully applying the brakes on one side of the vehicle to reduce the effect of a side wind gust on the vehicle's path.
Traction Control
Traction control enhances your vehicle’s ability to maintain traction of the wheels by detecting and controlling wheel spin. See **What Is Traction Control**.



A Vehicle without stability control skidding off its intended route.
B Vehicle with stability control maintaining control on a slippery surface.

Switching Stability Control On and Off

The system turns on each time you switch the ignition on.
When you shift the transmission into reverse (R), the systems are disabled.
You can switch the traction control system off or on independently. See **Switching Traction Control On and Off**.

Stability Control Indicator

The system turns on each time you switch the ignition on. You can switch off the traction control portion of the system independently. See **How Does Traction Control Work**.

Stability Control – Warning Lamps

Stability Control
It flashes when the system is active. If it remains illuminated or does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, this indicates a system error. During a system error the system switches off. Have the system checked by an authorized dealer immediately.
Stability Control Off
Illuminates when you switch the system off. It goes out when you switch the system back on or when you switch the ignition off.

Stability Control – Information Messages

Message	Details
Service AdvanceTrac	Displayed when the system has detected a condition that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
AdvanceTrac Off	The traction control has been disabled by the driver.
AdvanceTrac On	The traction control has been enabled by the driver.

Stability Control – Troubleshooting

Stability Control – Warning Lamps

Stability Control

 It flashes when the system is active. If it remains illuminated or does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, this indicates a system error. During a system error the system switches off. Have the system checked by an authorized dealer immediately.

Stability Control Off

 Illuminates when you switch the system off. It goes out when you switch the system back on or when you switch the ignition off.

Stability Control – Information Messages

Message	Details
Service AdvanceTrac	Displayed when the system has detected a condition that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
AdvanceTrac Off	The traction control has been disabled by the driver.
AdvanceTrac On	The traction control has been enabled by the driver.

Steering

How Does Electric Power Steering Work

The electric power steering system assists the brake system to help operate advanced stability control and accident avoidance systems.
If your vehicle loses electrical power or detects a concern when you are driving, the system switches to reduced steering assist or manual steering. Additionally, whenever disconnecting the battery or installing a new one, you must drive your vehicle a short distance before the system relearns the strategy and reactivates all systems.

Electric Power Steering Precautions

WARNING: The electric power steering system has diagnostic checks that continuously monitor the system. If a fault is detected, a message displays in the information display. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Switch the vehicle off. After at least 10 seconds, switch the vehicle on and watch the information display for a steering system warning message. If a steering system warning message returns, have the system checked as soon as possible.

WARNING: If the system detects an error, you may not feel a difference in the steering, however a serious condition may exist. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. Failure to do so may result in loss of steering control.

Adapt your speed and driving behavior according to reduced steering assist.
Extreme continuous steering may increase the effort to steer. This occurs to prevent internal overheating and damage to the steering system. If this occurs, you will not lose the ability to steer your vehicle manually nor will it cause damage to the system. Normal steering and driving allows the system to cool down and steering assist returns to normal.
Note: There is no fluid reservoir to check or fill.
When your vehicle is still moving, a significant decrease in steering assistance or a loss of steering assistance could occur if:

- You switch your vehicle off.
- Your vehicle loses electrical power.
- Your vehicle detects a concern.

When your vehicle is off and your vehicle begins moving, there is no steering assistance.

Steering – Warning Lamps

 The electric power steering system indicator illuminates if the system detects a fault during the continuous diagnostic checks.
Note: If a red warning message displays, stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

Steering – Information Messages

Message	Details
Steering fault Service now	The power steering system has detected a condition that requires service.Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Steering loss Stop safely	The power steering system is not working.Stop your vehicle in a safe place.Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Steering assist fault Service required	The power steering system has detected a condition that requires service.Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Steering lock fault Service now	The steering system has detected a condition that requires service.Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Electric Power Steering

How Does Electric Power Steering Work

The electric power steering system assists the brake system to help operate advanced stability control and accident avoidance systems.
If your vehicle loses electrical power or detects a concern when you are driving, the system switches to reduced steering assist or manual steering. Additionally, whenever disconnecting the battery or installing a new one, you must drive your vehicle a short distance before the system relearns the strategy and reactivates all systems.

Electric Power Steering Precautions

WARNING: The electric power steering system has diagnostic checks that continuously monitor the system. If a fault is detected, a message displays in the information display. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Switch the vehicle off. After at least 10 seconds, switch the vehicle on and watch the information display for a steering system warning message. If a steering system warning message returns, have the system checked as soon as possible.

WARNING: If the system detects an error, you may not feel a difference in the steering, however a serious condition may exist. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. Failure to do so may result in loss of steering control.

Adapt your speed and driving behavior according to reduced steering assist.
Extreme continuous steering may increase the effort to steer. This occurs to prevent internal overheating and damage to the steering system. If this occurs, you will not lose the ability to steer your vehicle manually nor will it cause damage to the system. Normal steering and driving allows the system to cool down and steering assist returns to normal.
Note: There is no fluid reservoir to check or fill.
When your vehicle is still moving, a significant decrease in steering assistance or a loss of steering assistance could occur if:

- You switch your vehicle off.
- Your vehicle loses electrical power.
- Your vehicle detects a concern.

When your vehicle is off and your vehicle begins moving, there is no steering assistance.

Steering – Troubleshooting

Steering – Warning Lamps

 The electric power steering system indicator illuminates if the system detects a fault during the continuous diagnostic checks.
Note: If a red warning message displays, stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

Steering – Information Messages

Message	Details
Steering fault Service now	The power steering system has detected a condition that requires service.Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Steering loss Stop safely	The power steering system is not working.Stop your vehicle in a safe place.Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Steering assist fault Service required	The power steering system has detected a condition that requires service.Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Steering lock fault Service now	The steering system has detected a condition that requires service.Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Parking Aids

Parking Aid Precautions

WARNING: To help avoid personal injury, always use caution when in reverse (R) and when using the sensing system.

WARNING: The system may not detect objects with surfaces that absorb reflection. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.

WARNING: Traffic control systems, fluorescent lamps, inclement weather, air brakes, external motors and fans may affect the correct operation of the sensing system. This may cause reduced performance or false alerts.

WARNING: The system may not detect small or moving objects, particularly those close to the ground.

WARNING: The parking aid system can only assist you to detect objects when your vehicle is moving at parking speeds. To help avoid personal injury you must take care when using the parking aid system.

WARNING: The system may not function if the sensor is blocked.

WARNING: In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow and spray can all limit sensor performance.

WARNING: If damage occurs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Note: If your vehicle sustains damage leaving the sensors misaligned, this will cause inaccurate measurements or false alerts.
When you connect a trailer to your vehicle, the rear parking aid detects the trailer and provides an alert. Disable the parking aid when you connect a trailer to prevent the alert.
Note: Connected trailers might be detected by the vehicle and parking aid turns off automatically in those instances.
Note: Certain add-on devices installed around the bumper or fascia may create false alerts. For example, large trailer hitches, bike or surfboard racks, license plate brackets, bumper covers or any other device could block the normal detection zone of the parking aid system. Aftermarket spare tires or spare tire covers mounted to the rear tailgate could cause false alerts from the park aid system. Remove the add-on device to prevent false alerts.
Note: Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt.If the sensors are covered, the system's accuracy can be affected.
Use water to thoroughly clean mud, ice, or debris from the inner and outer surfaces of the bumper and parking sensors. Do not clean the sensors with sharp objects.

Switching Parking Aid On and Off

Press the parking aid button on the touchscreen and use the menu to switch the system on and off. You can also switch the system on and off by pressing the button on the rear view camera screen.

What is the Rear Parking Aid

Rear parking sensors detect objects behind your vehicle when in reverse (R).

Rear Parking Aid Limitations

There is a decreased coverage area at the outer corners.
The rear parking aid sensors are active when your vehicle is in reverse (R) and the vehicle speed is less than 5 mph (8 km/h).
The sensor coverage area is up to 71 in (180 cm) from the rear bumper.

The rear parking aid detects large objects when you shift into reverse (R) and any of the following occur:

- Your vehicle is moving backward at a low speed.
- Your vehicle is stationary but an object is approaching the rear of your vehicle at a low speed.
- Your vehicle is moving backward at a low speed and an object is moving towards your vehicle, for example another vehicle at a low speed.

The system shall provide no audible warning for the object behind the vehicle when in neutral (N) gear.

Locating the Rear Parking Aid Sensors



The rear parking aid sensors are in the rear bumper.

Rear Parking Aid Audible Warnings

A warning tone sounds when your vehicle approaches an object. As your vehicle moves closer to an object, the rate of the tone increases.The warning tone continuously sounds when an object is 12 in (30 cm) or less from the rear bumper.
If your vehicle remains stationary for a few seconds, the audible warning turns off. If your vehicle moves backward the tone sounds again.

Note: When the parking aid system sounds a tone, the audio system may reduce the set volume.

What is the Front Parking Aid

Front parking sensors detect objects in front of your vehicle.

Front Parking Aid Limitations

The front parking aid sensors are active when your vehicle is in any position other than park (P) and the vehicle speed is less than 5 mph (8 km/h).
The sensor coverage area is up to 28 in (70 cm) from the front bumper.
If your vehicle is in reverse (R), the front parking aid detects objects and provides an audible warning when your vehicle is moving at a low speed and when an object is moving toward your vehicle, for example, another vehicle at a low speed. If your vehicle remains stationary for a few seconds, the audible warning turns off. Visual indication is always active in reverse (R).
If your vehicle is in any forward gear, the front parking aid provides audible warnings and a visual indication when your vehicle is moving at a speed of 5 mph (8 km/h) or below and the system detects an object within the detection zone. If your vehicle remains stationary for a few seconds, the visual indication and audible warning turns off.
If your vehicle is in neutral (N), the front and rear sensors provide a visual indication only when your vehicle is moving below a speed of 5 mph (8 km/h) and the system detects obstacles inside the detection areas. Once your vehicle stops, the visual indication and audible warning stops after a few seconds.

Locating the Front Parking Aid Sensors



The front parking aid sensors are in the front bumper.

Front Parking Aid Audible Warnings

A warning tone sounds when there is an object within 28 in (70 cm) from the front bumper. As your vehicle moves closer to an object, the rate of the tone increases.
The warning tone continuously sounds when an object is 12 in (30 cm) or less from the front bumper.
Note: If the detected object is 12 in (30 cm) or less from your vehicle, visual indication remains on.

Parking Aid Indicators

Parking Aid Indicators Shown When 360 Degree Camera Views are not Available



The system provides object distance indication through the touchscreen.

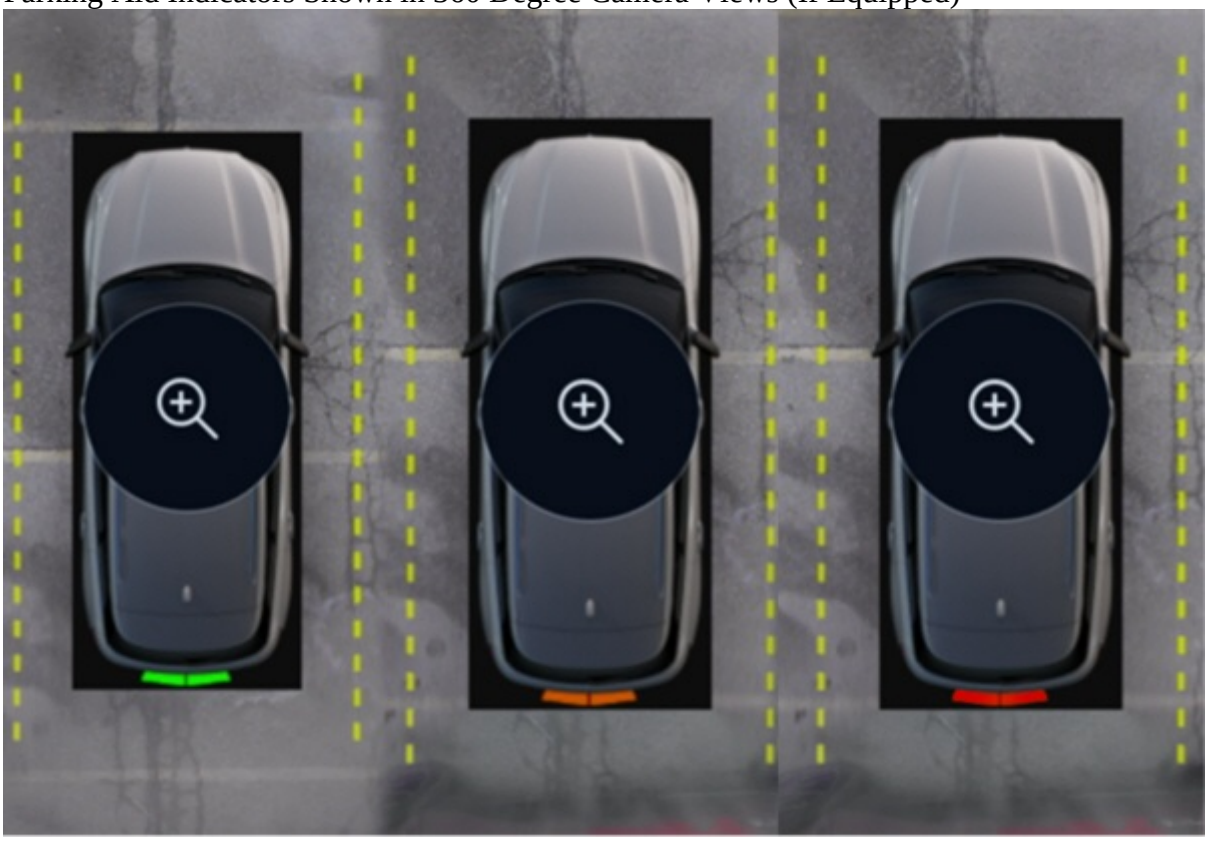
- As the distance to an object decreases, the indicators change color. The indicators for closer objects appear closer to the vehicle icon.
- The indicators are green when the object is at the farthest detection point. As the object gets closer, the indicators turn amber. When the object is at the closet detection point, the indicators turn red.
- If there is no object detected, the distance indicators are not activated.

The activated visual indicators continue displaying when your vehicle is stopped in reverse (R). If stopped in drive (D) or neutral (N), the activated visual indicators disappear after four seconds.
Note: If stopped in drive (D) or neutral (N) with rear camera delay mode showing the rear camera view, the activated visual indicators continue displaying.
Parking aids are not available in the following situations:

- The system is switched off.
- A trailer is connected.
- Sensors are blocked.
- A system fault occurs.

Note: If the parking aids are not available, the distance indicators do not display. See **Parking Aids**.
Note: Front park aid indicators may not be available.

Parking Aid Indicators Shown in 360 Degree Camera Views (If Equipped)



The system provides object distance indication through the touchscreen.

- As the distance to an object decreases, the indicators change color.
- The indicators are green when the object is at the farthest detection point. As the object gets closer, the indicators turn amber. When the object is at the closest detection point, the indicators turn red.
- If there is no object detected, the distance indicators are not activated.

The activated visual indicators continue displaying when your vehicle is stopped in reverse (R). If stopped in drive (D) or neutral (N), the activated visual indicators disappear after four seconds.
Note: If stopped in drive (D) or neutral (N) with rear camera delay mode showing the rear camera view, the activated visual indicators continue displaying.
Parking aids are not available in the following situations:

- The system is switched off.
- A trailer is connected.
- Sensors are blocked. The distance indicators appear white.
- A system fault occurs.

Note: If the parking aids are not available, the distance indicators do not display. See **Parking Aids**.

Parking Aids – Information Messages

If a fault is present in the parking aids, a warning message appears in the instrument cluster or the touchscreen.

Message	Details
Parking Sensors fault	You may be able to resolve by cleaning the sensors and restarting your vehicle. If this does not resolve the condition, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Message	Details
Parking Sensors not available Sensor blocked See manual Press OK to close	Inclement weather, ice, mud, or water is blocking the sensor, causing the system to become unavailable. You can typically clean the sensor to resolve.
Parking Sensors not available Sensor blocked See manual Press OK to close	Certain add-on devices installed around the bumper or fascia are blocking the sensor. Remove add-on devices to resolve.
Parking Sensors not available Sensor blocked See manual Press OK to close	This message may appear when you drive slowly at a constant distance from a stationary object. It disappears once the distance from the object changes. This may happen when driving slowly close to something like a wall.
Rear Park Aid Deactivated Trailer attached	The system senses an electrical trailer connection during a given ignition cycle.

Rear Parking Aid

What is the Rear Parking Aid

Rear parking sensors detect objects behind your vehicle when in reverse (R).

Rear Parking Aid Limitations

There is a decreased coverage area at the outer corners.
The rear parking aid sensors are active when your vehicle is in reverse (R) and the vehicle speed is less than 5 mph (8 km/h).
The sensor coverage area is up to 71 in (180 cm) from the rear bumper.

The rear parking aid detects large objects when you shift into reverse (R) and any of the following occur:

- Your vehicle is moving backward at a low speed.
- Your vehicle is stationary but an object is approaching the rear of your vehicle at a low speed.
- Your vehicle is moving backward at a low speed and an object is moving towards your vehicle, for example another vehicle at a low speed.

The system shall provide no audible warning for the object behind the vehicle when in neutral (N) gear.

Locating the Rear Parking Aid Sensors



The rear parking aid sensors are in the rear bumper.

Rear Parking Aid Audible Warnings

A warning tone sounds when your vehicle approaches an object. As your vehicle moves closer to an object, the rate of the tone increases.The warning tone continuously sounds when an object is 12 in (30 cm) or less from the rear bumper.
If your vehicle remains stationary for a few seconds, the audible warning turns off. If your vehicle moves backward the tone sounds again.
Note: When the parking aid system sounds a tone, the audio system may reduce the set volume.

Front Parking Aid (If Equipped)

What is the Front Parking Aid

Front parking sensors detect objects in front of your vehicle.

Front Parking Aid Limitations

The front parking aid sensors are active when your vehicle is in any position other than park (P) and the vehicle speed is less than 5 mph (8 km/h).
The sensor coverage area is up to 28 in (70 cm) from the front bumper.
If your vehicle is in reverse (R), the front parking aid detects objects and provides an audible warning when your vehicle is moving at a low speed and when an object is moving toward your vehicle, for example, another vehicle at a low speed. If your vehicle remains stationary for a few seconds, the audible warning turns off. Visual indication is always active in reverse (R).
If your vehicle is in any forward gear, the front parking aid provides audible warnings and a visual indication when your vehicle is moving at a speed of 5 mph (8 km/h) or below and the system detects an object within the detection zone. If your vehicle remains stationary for a few seconds, the visual indication and audible warning turns off.
If your vehicle is in neutral (N), the front and rear sensors provide a visual indication only when your vehicle is moving below a speed of 5 mph (8 km/h) and the system detects obstacles inside the detection areas. Once your vehicle stops, the visual indication and audible warning stops after a few seconds.

Locating the Front Parking Aid Sensors



The front parking aid sensors are in the front bumper.

Front Parking Aid Audible Warnings

A warning tone sounds when there is an object within 28 in (70 cm) from the front bumper. As your vehicle moves closer to an object, the rate of the tone increases.
The warning tone continuously sounds when an object is 12 in (30 cm) or less from the front bumper.
Note: If the detected object is 12 in (30 cm) or less from your vehicle, visual indication remains on.

Parking Aids – Troubleshooting

Parking Aids – Information Messages

If a fault is present in the parking aids, a warning message appears in the instrument cluster or the touchscreen.

Message	Details
Parking Sensors fault	You may be able to resolve by cleaning the sensors and restarting your vehicle. If this does not resolve the condition, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Parking Sensors not available Sensor blocked See manual Press OK to close	Inclement weather, ice, mud, or water is blocking the sensor, causing the system to become unavailable. You can typically clean the sensor to resolve.
Parking Sensors not available Sensor blocked See manual Press OK to close	Certain add-on devices installed around the bumper or fascia are blocking the sensor. Remove add-on devices to resolve.
Parking Sensors not available Sensor blocked See manual Press OK to close	This message may appear when you drive slowly at a constant distance from a stationary object. It disappears once the distance from the object changes. This may happen when driving slowly close to something like a wall.
Rear Park Aid Deactivated Trailer attached	The system senses an electrical trailer connection during a given ignition cycle.

Rear View Camera

What Is the Rear View Camera

The rear view camera provides a video image of the area behind your vehicle when the transmission is in reverse (R).

Rear View Camera Precautions

WARNING: The rear view camera system is a reverse aid supplement device that still requires the driver to use it in conjunction with the interior and exterior mirrors for maximum coverage.

WARNING: Objects that are close to either corner of the bumper or under the bumper, might not be seen on the screen due to the limited coverage of the camera system.

WARNING: Objects above the camera may not be visible. Check the area behind your vehicle when necessary.

WARNING: Reverse your vehicle slowly. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: Use caution when the liftgate or tailgate is ajar. If the liftgate or tailgate is ajar, the camera will be out of position and the video image could be incorrect. All guide lines disappear when the liftgate or tailgate is ajar. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

WARNING: Do not switch the camera features on or off when your vehicle is moving.

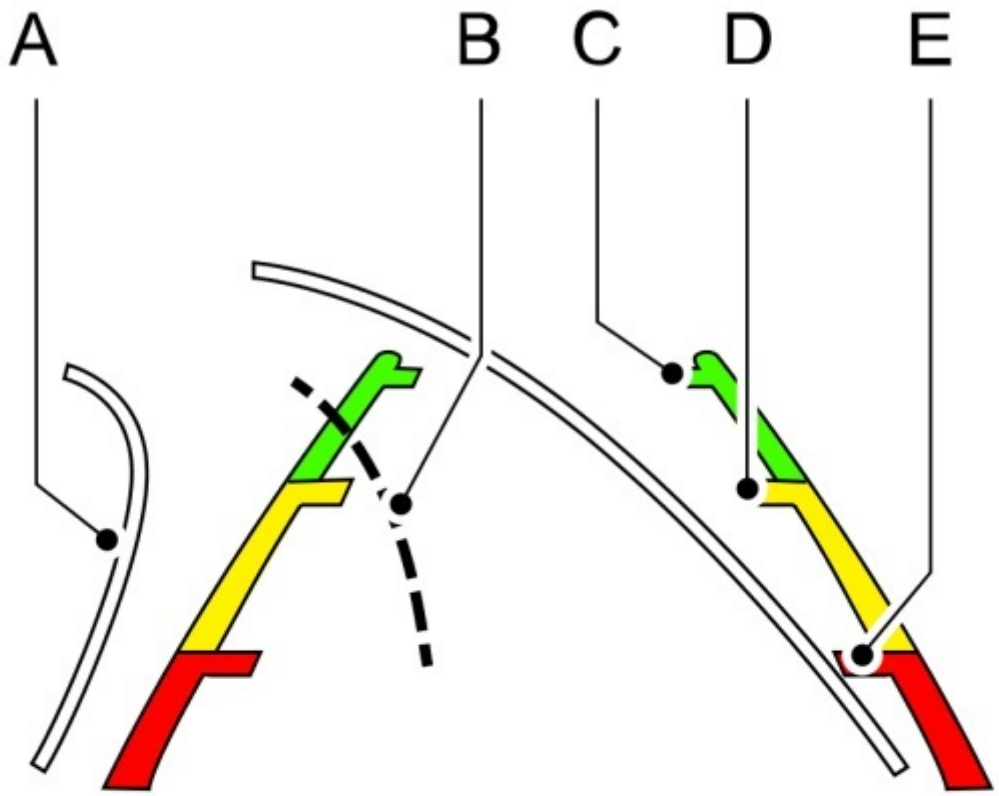
Note: When towing, the camera only sees what you are towing. This might not provide adequate coverage and you might not see some objects. In some vehicles, the guidelines may disappear when you connect the trailer tow connector.

Locating the Rear View Camera

The rear view camera is on the liftgate or tailgate. It provides a view of the area behind your vehicle.

Rear View Camera Guide Lines

Note: Active guide lines and fixed guide lines are only available when the transmission is in reverse (R).
Note: The centerline is only available if the active or fixed guide lines are on.



A. Active guide lines.
B. Centerline.
C. Fixed guide line: Green zone.
D. Fixed guide line: Yellow zone.
E. Fixed guide line: Red zone.
F. Rear bumper.

Active guide lines only show with fixed guide lines. To use active guide lines, turn the steering wheel to point the guide lines toward an intended path. If the steering wheel position changes while reversing, your vehicle might deviate from the intended path.
The fixed and active guide lines fade in and out depending on the steering wheel position. The active guide lines do not display when the steering wheel position is straight.
Use caution while reversing. Objects in the red zone are closest to your vehicle and objects in the green zone are farther away. Objects get closer to your vehicle as they move from the green zone to the yellow or red zones. Use the side view mirrors and rear view mirror to get better coverage on both sides and rear of your vehicle.

Rear View Camera Object Distance Indicators

The system provides an image of your vehicle and the sensor zones. The zones highlight green, yellow, and red when the parking aid sensors detect an object in the coverage area.

Zooming the Rear View Camera In and Out

WARNING: When manual zoom is on, the full area behind your vehicle may not show. Be aware of your surroundings when using the manual zoom feature.

Selectable settings for this feature are zoom in (+) and zoom out (-). Press the symbol on the camera screen to change the view. The default setting is zoom off.
This allows you to get a closer view of an object behind your vehicle. The zoomed image keeps the bumper in the image to provide a reference.
Note: Manual zoom is only available when the transmission is in reverse (R).
Note: Only the centerline shows when you enable manual zoom.

Switching Rear View Camera Delay On and Off

1. From the driver assistance menu, press Rear View Camera. See **Driver Assistance Menu**.
2. Switch rear view camera delay on or off.

When shifting the transmission out of reverse (R) and into any gear other than park (P), the camera image remains in the display until:

- Your vehicle speed reaches approximately 5 mph (8 km/h).
- You shift your vehicle into park (P).

Switching the Rear View Camera View

Press to access the different camera views.

 Rear normal view provides a view of what is directly behind your vehicle. This view is available at all speeds in reverse (R), drive (D) and neutral (N). When your vehicle is not in reverse (R), this view may be displayed with different text or graphics.

 Rear split view provides a wide-angle view of what is behind your vehicle.

 Zooms in on the view and park hold is activated when your vehicle is in park (P). See **Connecting a Trailer**.

Rear View Camera Settings

Zooming the Rear View Camera In and Out

 **WARNING**: When manual zoom is on, the full area behind your vehicle may not show. Be aware of your surroundings when using the manual zoom feature.

Selectable settings for this feature are zoom in (+) and zoom out (-). Press the symbol on the camera screen to change the view. The default setting is zoom off.
This allows you to get a closer view of an object behind your vehicle. The zoomed image keeps the bumper in the image to provide a reference.
Note: Manual zoom is only available when the transmission is in reverse (R).
Note: Only the centerline shows when you enable manual zoom.

Switching Rear View Camera Delay On and Off

1. From the driver assistance menu, press Rear View Camera. See **Driver Assistance Menu**.
2. Switch rear view camera delay on or off.

When shifting the transmission out of reverse (R) and into any gear other than park (P), the camera image remains in the display until:

- Your vehicle speed reaches approximately 5 mph (8 km/h).
- You shift your vehicle into park (P).

Switching the Rear View Camera View

Press to access the different camera views.

 Rear normal view provides a view of what is directly behind your vehicle. This view is available at all speeds in reverse (R), drive (D) and neutral (N). When your vehicle is not in reverse (R), this view may be displayed with different text or graphics.

 Rear split view provides a wide-angle view of what is behind your vehicle.

 Zooms in on the view and park hold is activated when your vehicle is in park (P). See **Connecting a Trailer**.

360 Degree Camera (If Equipped)

What Is the 360 Degree Camera

The 360 degree camera system provides visibility around your vehicle in parking maneuvers such as:

- Centering in a parking space.
- Obstacles near your vehicle.
- Parallel parking.

The 360 degree camera system consists of front, side and rear cameras.

How Does the 360 Degree Camera Work

The 360 degree camera system consists of front, side and rear cameras.
The 360 Degree Camera system:

- Allows you to see what is directly in front of or behind your vehicle.
- Provides a cross traffic view in front of and behind your vehicle.
- Allows you to see a top-down view of the area outside your vehicle, including the blind spots and obstacles near your vehicle.

360 Degree Camera Precautions

WARNING: The 360 degree camera system still requires the driver to use it in conjunction with looking out of the windows, and checking the interior and exterior mirrors for maximum coverage.

WARNING: Objects that are close to either corner of the bumper or under the bumper, might not be seen on the screen due to the limited coverage of the camera system.

WARNING: Use caution when turning camera features on or off when the transmission is not in park (P). Make sure your vehicle is not moving.

WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: Use caution when the liftgate is ajar. If the liftgate is ajar, the camera is out of position and the video image could be incorrect. All guide lines disappear when the liftgate is ajar. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

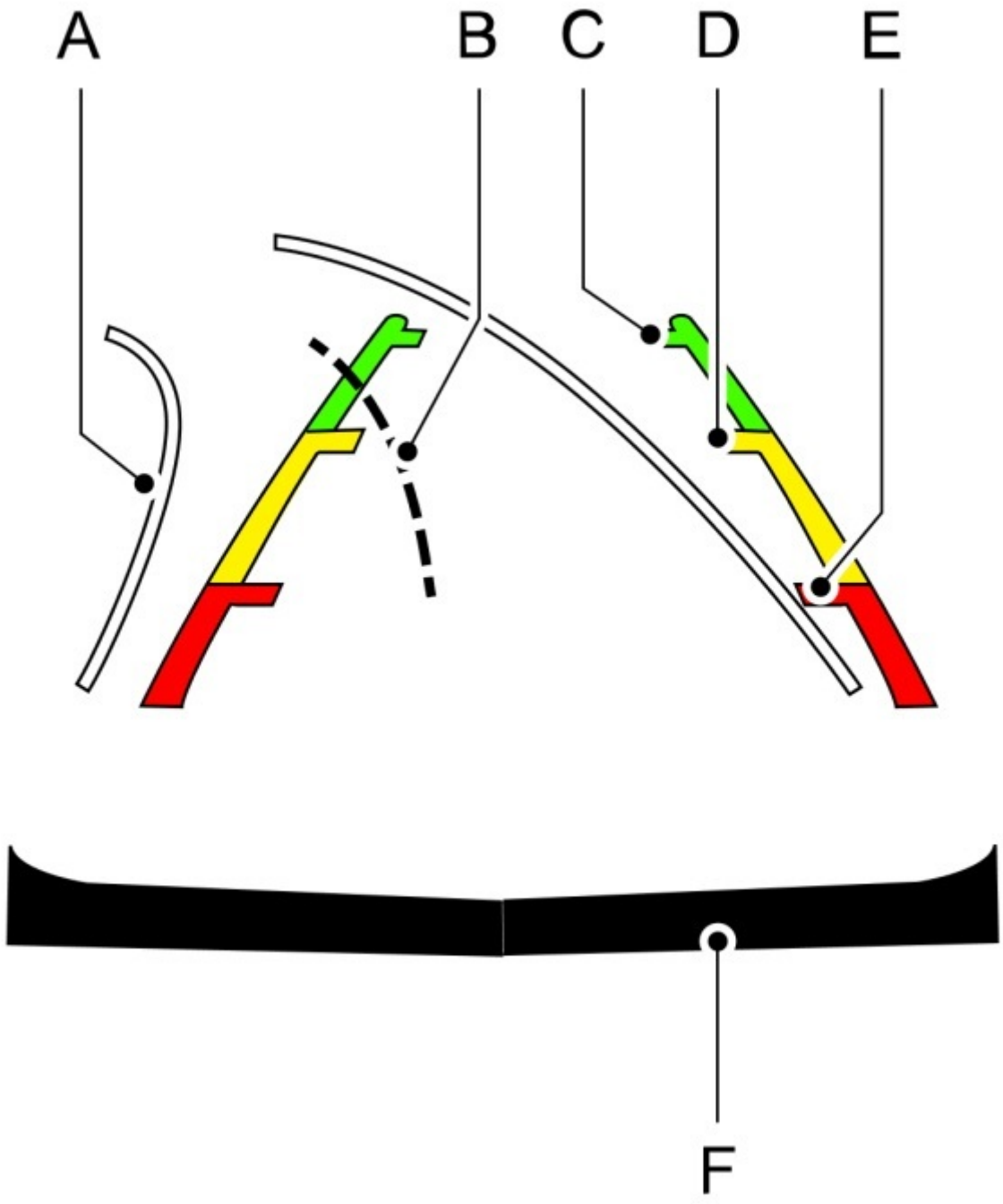
WARNING: When manual zoom is on, the full area behind your vehicle may not show. Be aware of your surroundings when using the manual zoom feature.

Locating the 360 Degree Cameras

Rear View Camera
The rear view camera is on the liftgate. It provides a video image of the area behind your vehicle.
Front View Camera
The front view camera is in the grille. It provides a video image of the area in front of your vehicle.
Side View Camera

The side view camera is on the outside mirror. It provides a video image of the area on the sides of your vehicle to aid you when parking.

360 Degree Camera Guide Lines



A. Active guide lines.
B. Centerline.
C. Fixed guide line: Green zone.
D. Fixed guide line: Yellow zone.
E. Fixed guide line: Red zone.
F. Rear bumper.

Active guide lines only show with fixed guide lines. Turn the steering wheel to point the guide lines toward an intended path. If the steering wheel position changes when reversing, your vehicle could deviate from the intended path.

The fixed and active guide lines fade in and out depending on the steering wheel position. The active guide lines do not display when the steering wheel position is straight.
Objects in the red zone are closest to your vehicle and objects in the green zone are farther away. Objects get closer to your vehicle as they move from the green zone to the yellow or red zones. Use the side view mirrors and rear view mirror to get better coverage on both sides and rear of your vehicle.
Note: Active guide lines and fixed guide lines are only available when the transmission is in reverse (R).
Note: The centerline is only available if the active or fixed guide lines are on.
Keep Out Zone



E225016
The yellow dotted lines running parallel to your vehicle represent the keep out zone.

Switching the 360 Degree Camera On and Off

 The 360 degree camera system button is on the instrument panel and allows you to toggle through different camera views. The front and rear cameras have multiple screens which consist of:

- Normal view
- Normal view with 360
- Split view

When in park (P), neutral (N) or drive (D), only the front images display when you press the button. When in reverse (R), only the rear images display when you press the button.
Note: The 360 degree camera system turns off when your vehicle is in motion at low speed, except when in reverse (R).

Switching the 360 Degree Camera View

 Press to access the different camera views.

 Front normal view provides an image of what is directly in front of your vehicle.

 Front split view provides an extended view of what is in front of your vehicle.

 Normal + 360 degree view contains the normal camera view next to a 360 degree camera view.

 Rear normal view provides an image of what is directly behind your vehicle.

 Rear split view provides an extended view of what is behind your vehicle.

 Zooms in on the image.

360 Degree Camera Settings

Switching the 360 Degree Camera On and Off

 The 360 degree camera system button is on the instrument panel and allows you to toggle through different camera views. The front and rear cameras have multiple screens which consist of:

- Normal view
- Normal view with 360
- Split view

When in park (P), neutral (N) or drive (D), only the front images display when you press the button. When in reverse (R), only the rear images display when you press the button.
Note: The 360 degree camera system turns off when your vehicle is in motion at low speed, except when in reverse (R).

Switching the 360 Degree Camera View

 Press to access the different camera views.

 Front normal view provides an image of what is directly in front of your vehicle.

 Front split view provides an extended view of what is in front of your vehicle.

 Normal + 360 degree view contains the normal camera view next to a 360 degree camera view.

 Rear normal view provides an image of what is directly behind your vehicle.

 Rear split view provides an extended view of what is behind your vehicle.

 Zooms in on the image.

Adaptive Cruise Control

How Does Adaptive Cruise Control With Stop and Go Work

Adaptive cruise control with stop and go uses radar and camera sensors to maintain a set gap between your vehicle and the vehicle in front of you while following it to a complete stop. Stop and go can also be set to follow a vehicle directly in front of you and adjust the set speed, while you are at a complete stop.

Adaptive Cruise Control Precautions

WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: Do not use adaptive cruise control on winding roads, in heavy traffic or when the road surface is slippery. This could result in loss of vehicle control, serious injury or death.

WARNING: Pay close attention to changing road conditions such as entering or leaving a highway, on roads with intersections or roundabouts, roads without visible lanes of travel, roads that are unpaved, or steep slopes. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: The system is not a crash warning or avoidance system.

WARNING: Do not use the system when towing a trailer that has aftermarket electronic trailer brake controls. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: Do not use tire sizes other than those recommended because this can affect the normal operation of the system. Failure to do so may result in a loss of vehicle control, which could result in serious injury.

WARNING: Do not use the system with a snow plow blade installed.

WARNING: In situations with poor visibility, such as fog, heavy rain or other inclement weather, you may need to override or completely switch off the system.

When Following a Vehicle

WARNING: When following a vehicle that is braking, your vehicle does not always decelerate quickly enough to avoid a crash without driver intervention. Apply the brakes when necessary. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

Hilly Condition Usage

Select a lower gear when the system is active in situations such as prolonged downhill driving on steep slopes, for example in mountainous areas.

Adaptive Cruise Control Limitations

Sensor Limitations

WARNING: On rare occasions, detection issues can occur due to the road infrastructures, for example bridges, tunnels and safety barriers. In these cases, the system may brake late or unexpectedly. At all times, you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening, if required.

WARNING: If the system malfunctions, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

WARNING: Large contrasts in outside lighting can limit sensor performance.

WARNING: The system only warns of vehicles detected by the radar sensor. In some cases there may be no warning or a delayed warning. Apply the brakes when necessary. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

WARNING: The system may not detect stationary or slow moving vehicles below 6 mph (10 km/h).

WARNING: The system does not detect pedestrians or objects in the road.

WARNING: The system does not detect oncoming vehicles in the same lane.

WARNING: The system may not operate properly if the sensor is blocked. Keep the windshield free from obstruction.

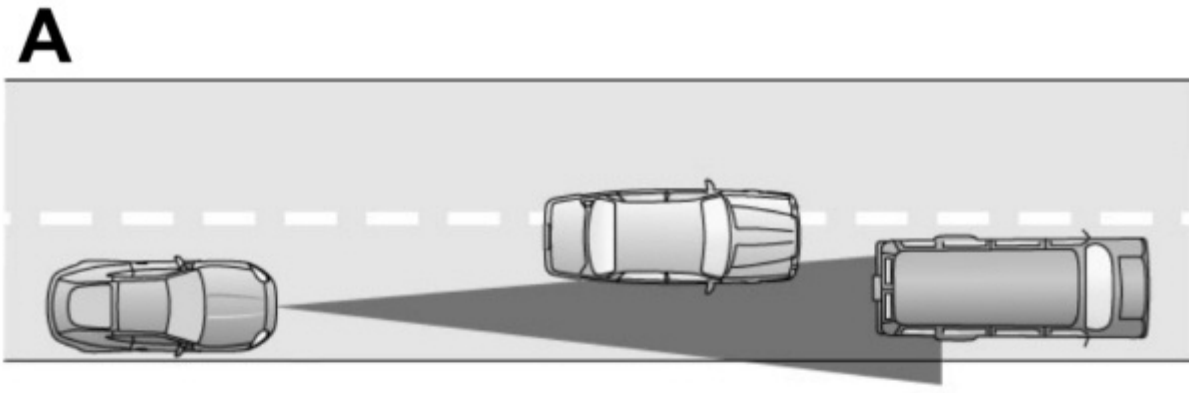
WARNING: The sensor may incorrectly track lane markings as other structures or objects. This can result in a false or missed warning.

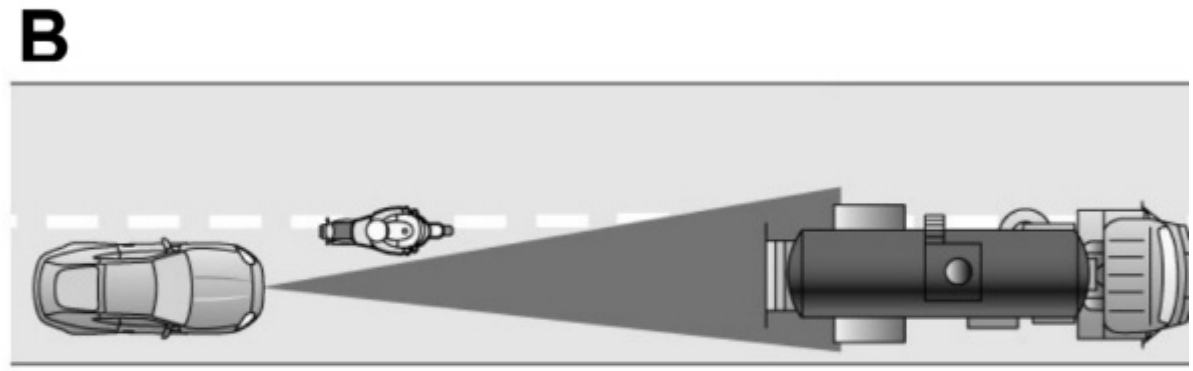


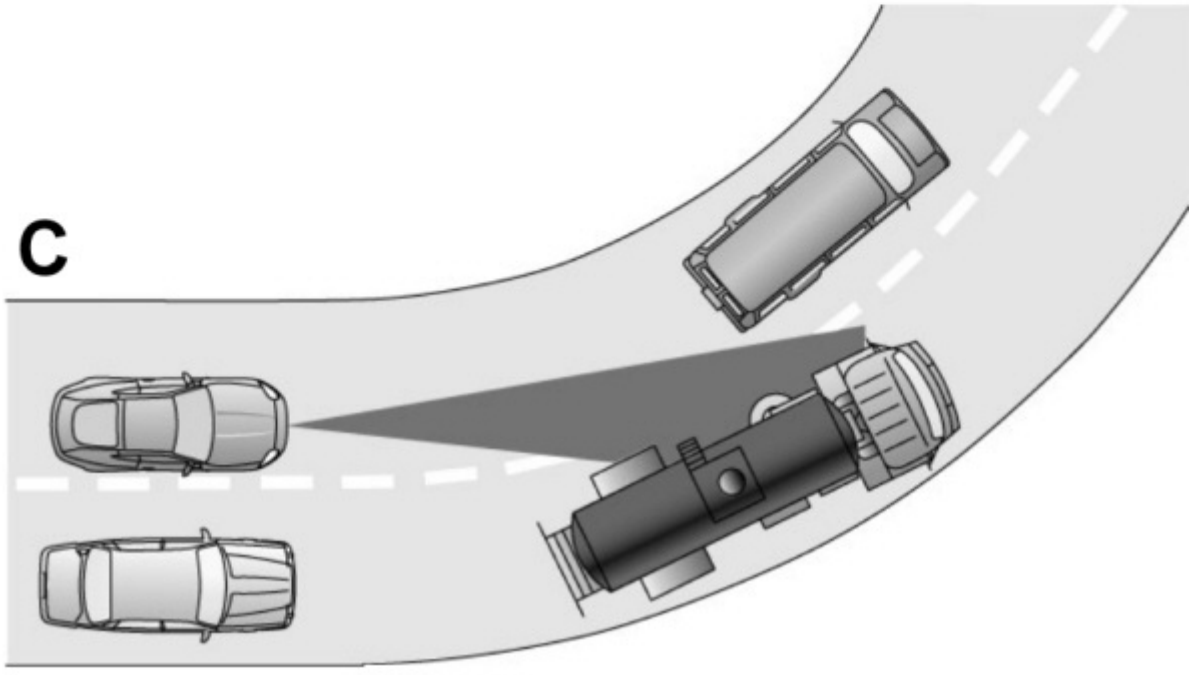
1. Camera.
2. Radar sensor.

The camera is on the windshield behind the interior mirror.
The radar sensor is in the lower grille.
Note: You cannot see the sensor. It is behind a fascia panel.

Note: Keep the front of your vehicle free of dirt, metal badges or objects. Vehicle front protectors, aftermarket lights, additional paint or plastic coatings could also degrade sensor performance.
A message displays if something obstructs the camera or the sensor. When something blocks the sensor, the system cannot detect a vehicle ahead and does not function. See **Adaptive Cruise Control – Information Messages**.
The radar sensor has a limited field of view. It may not detect vehicles at all or detect a vehicle later than expected in some situations. The lead vehicle image does not illuminate if the system does not detect a vehicle in front of you.
Detection Issues Can Occur:







A Image not found or type unknown When driving on a different line than the vehicle in front.
B Image not found or type unknown With vehicles that edge into your lane. The system can only detect these vehicles once they move fully into your lane.
C Image not found or type unknown There may be issues with the detection of vehicles in front when driving into and coming out of a bend or curve in the road.

In these cases, the system may brake late or unexpectedly.
If something hits the front end of your vehicle or damage occurs, the radar-sensing zone may change. This could cause missed or false vehicle detection.
Optimal system performance requires a clear view of the road by the windshield camera.
Optimal performance may not occur if:

- The camera is blocked.
- There is poor visibility or lighting conditions.
- There are bad weather conditions.

Switching Adaptive Cruise Control On and Off

The cruise controls are on the steering wheel.
Switching Adaptive Cruise Control On
 Press the button to activate the system. When the system activates, the set speed is equal to whichever is greater, the current vehicle speed, or 15 mph when in imperial units or 20 km/h when in metric units. If the speed is too low, or other conditions are not correct for adaptive cruise control activation, the system enters standby mode. When you are below 15 mph when in imperial units or 20 km/h when in metric units, adaptive cruise control does not activate unless you are following another vehicle.
The indicator, current gap setting and set speed appear in the instrument cluster display.
Switching Adaptive Cruise Control Off
 Press the button when the system is in standby mode or switch your vehicle off.
Note: When you switch the system off, the set speed clears.

Adaptive Cruise Control Automatic Cancellation

The system may cancel if:

- The tires lose traction.
- You apply the parking brake.

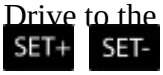
The system may cancel and set the parking brake if:

- You unbuckle the seatbelt and open the driver door after adaptive cruise control stops your vehicle.
- Adaptive cruise control holds your vehicle at a stop continuously for more than three minutes.

The system may deactivate or prevent activating when requested if:

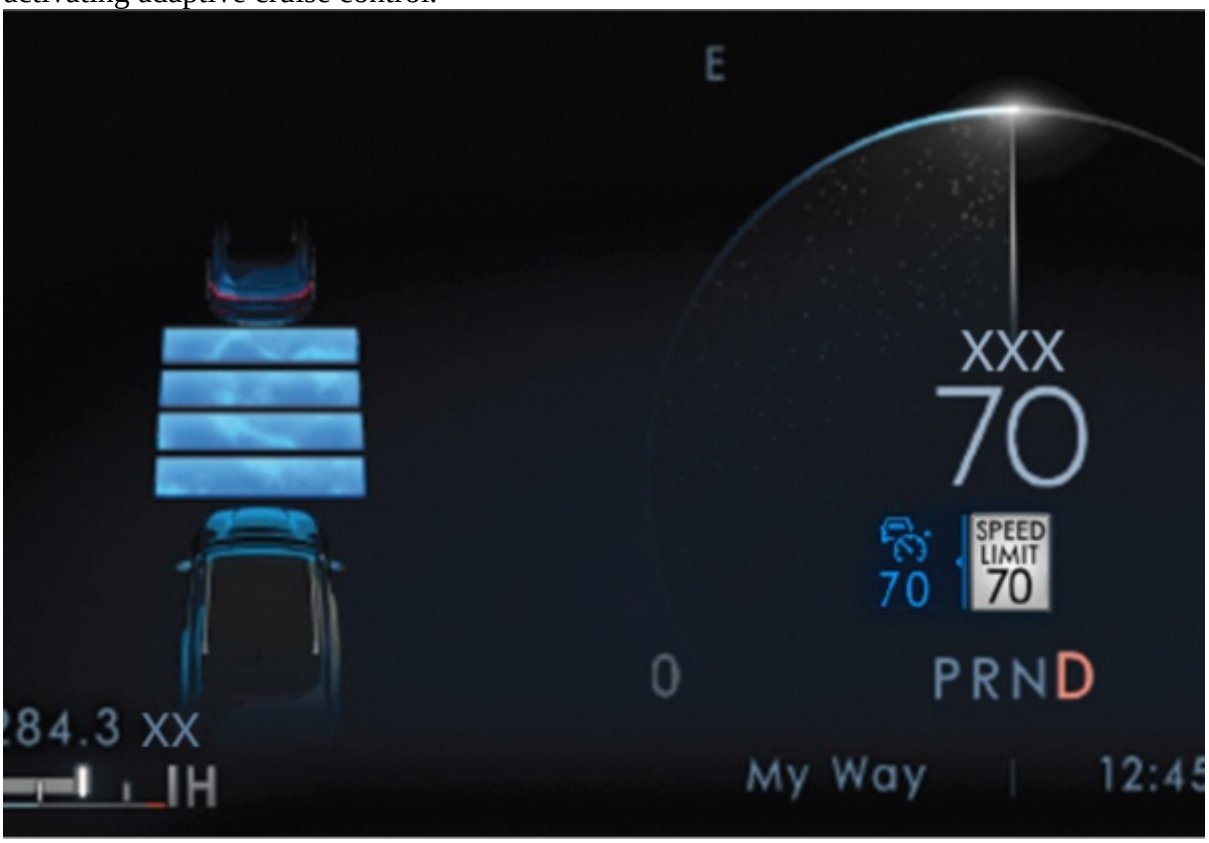
- The vehicle has a blocked sensor.
- The brake temperature is too high.
- There is a failure in the system or a related system.

Setting the Adaptive Cruise Control Speed

Drive to the speed you prefer.


Press either button to set the current speed.
Take your foot off the accelerator pedal.

The indicator, current gap setting and set speed appear in the instrument cluster display when initially activating adaptive cruise control.



After a few seconds, the graphic in the instrument cluster display changes to show that adaptive cruise control is active.



A vehicle image illuminates if there is a vehicle detected in front of you.

Note: When adaptive cruise control is active, the speedometer can vary slightly from the set speed displayed in the instrument cluster display.

Setting the Adaptive Cruise Speed from a Complete Stop

SET+ SET- Press the SET+ or SET- buttons while keeping the brake pedal fully depressed.

The set speed adjusts to 20 km/h when in metric units or 15 mph when in imperial units.

The indicator, current gap setting and set speed appear in the instrument cluster display.

Note: The system activates from a complete stop only when it detects a lead vehicle in close proximity.

Manually Changing the Set Speed

SET+ Press the button to increase the set speed in small increments. Press and hold the button to increase the set speed in large increments. Release the button when the set speed is equal to the desired speed.

SET- Press the button to decrease the set speed in small increments. Press and hold the button to decrease the set speed in large increments. Release the button when the set speed is equal to the desired speed.

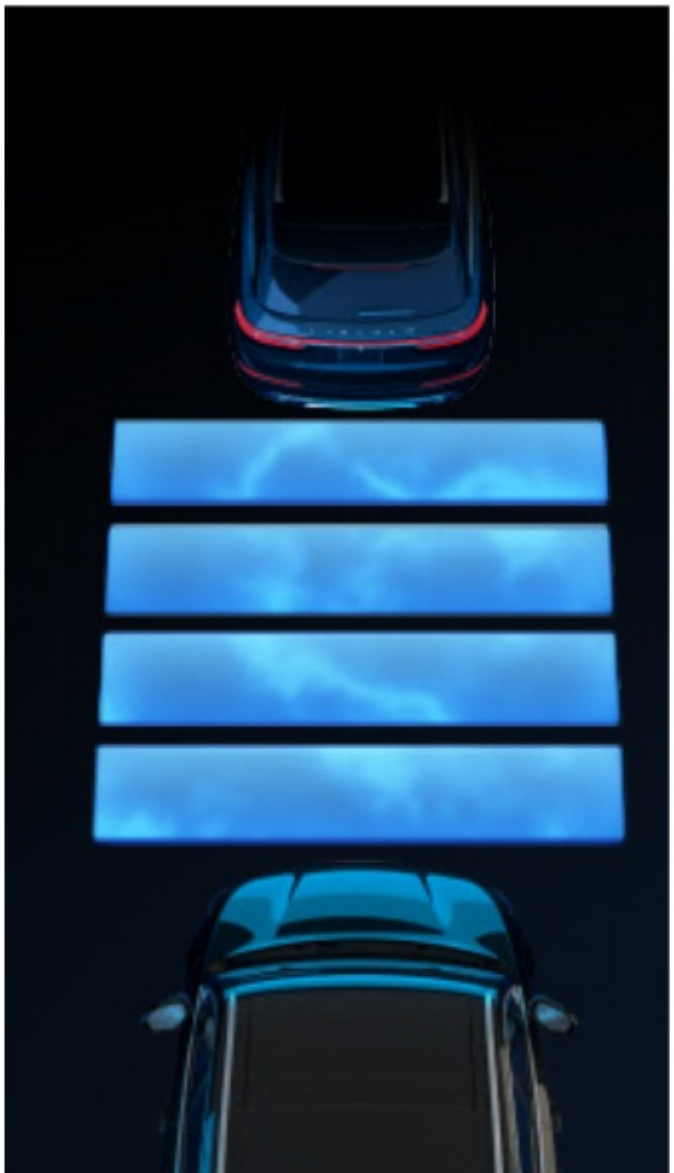
You can also press the accelerator or brake pedal until you reach the speed you prefer. Press either button to select the current speed as the set speed.

The system could apply the brakes to slow the vehicle to the new set speed. The set speed continuously displays in the instrument cluster display when the system is active.

Setting the Adaptive Cruise Control Gap

You can decrease or increase the distance between your vehicle and the vehicle in front by pressing the gap control.

Press the button to cycle through the four gap settings.



The selected gap appears in the instrument cluster display as shown by the bars in the image.
Note: The gap setting is time dependent and therefore, the distance adjusts with your vehicle speed.
Note: It is your responsibility to select a gap appropriate to the driving conditions.
Adaptive Cruise Control Gap Settings

Graphic Display, Bars Indicated Between Vehicles	Gap Distance	Dynamic Behavior
1	Closest	Sport
2	Close	Normal
3	Medium	Normal
4	Far	Comfort

Each time you switch the system on, it selects the last chosen gap setting.
Following a Vehicle
When a vehicle ahead of you enters the same lane or a slower vehicle is ahead in the same lane, the vehicle speed adjusts to maintain the gap setting.
Note: When you are following a vehicle and you switch on a turn signal lamp, adaptive cruise control may provide a small, temporary acceleration to help you pass.

Your vehicle maintains a consistent gap from the vehicle ahead until:
- The vehicle in front of you accelerates to a speed above the set speed.
- The vehicle in front of you moves out of the lane you are in.
- You set a new gap distance.

The system applies the brakes to slow down your vehicle to maintain a safe gap distance from the vehicle in front of you. The system only applies limited braking. You can override the system by applying the brakes.
Note: The brakes may emit noise when applied by the system.
If the system determines that its maximum braking level is not sufficient, an audible warning sounds, a message appears in the instrument cluster display and an indicator flashes when the system continues to brake. Take immediate action.

Canceling the Set Speed

CANCEL Press the button or tap the brake pedal.
The set speed does not erase.

Resuming the Set Speed

RESUME Press the button.
The vehicle speed returns to the previously set speed and gap setting. The set speed displays continuously in the instrument cluster display when the system is active.
Note: Only use resume if you are aware of the set speed and intend to return to it.
Resuming the Set Speed from a Complete Stop
Without an Active BlueCruise Service Plan:
If your vehicle follows a vehicle to a complete stop and remains stationary for less than a few seconds, your vehicle accelerates from a stationary position to follow the vehicle ahead.



With an Active BlueCruise Service Plan:
If your vehicle follows a vehicle to a complete stop and remains stationary for less than approximately three minutes, your vehicle accelerates from a stationary position to follow the vehicle ahead.
The following conditions must be met before your vehicle auto-resumes:

- You are facing forward and paying attention to the road ahead.
- The road is clear of obstacles such as pedestrians or other vehicles crossing your path.

If your vehicle follows a vehicle to a complete stop and remains stationary for more than a few seconds, an indicator and message displays.
Information Messages

Message	Details
Auto-Resume	(Only available with an active BlueCruise service plan). The vehicle is stopped behind a lead vehicle and all conditions are met for the vehicle to accelerate with the lead vehicle once the lead vehicle begins to accelerate.
Press button to resume	If the lead vehicle begins to move and all of the auto-resume conditions are not met, you are prompted to press the resume button. Pay attention to the road ahead and surroundings to make sure that it is safe to resume. Press and release the button or use the accelerator pedal to resume following the lead vehicle.
Stopped	Cruise control does not automatically resume when this display is active. Use the accelerator pedal to resume.

Note: If approximately three minutes at a stop is exceeded, the vehicle cancels adaptive cruise control and the electric parking brake is set. The driver is required to resume control of the vehicle and release the electric parking brake.

Overriding the Set Speed

 **WARNING**: If you override the system by pressing the accelerator pedal, it does not automatically apply the brakes to maintain a gap from any vehicle ahead.

When you press the accelerator pedal, you override the set speed and gap distance.
Use the accelerator pedal to intentionally exceed the set speed limit.
When you override the system, the indicator remains blue, the set speed is dimmed and the lead vehicle icon does not appear in the instrument cluster display.
The system resumes operation when you release the accelerator pedal. The vehicle speed decreases to the set speed, or a lower speed if following a slower vehicle.

Adaptive Cruise Control Indicators

 Illuminates when you switch adaptive cruise control on. The color of the indicator changes to indicate the system status.
White indicates the system is on but inactive.
Blue indicates that you set the speed and the system is active.

Switching From Adaptive Cruise Control to Cruise Control

WARNING: Normal cruise control will not brake when your vehicle is approaching slower vehicles. Always be aware of which mode you have selected and apply the brakes when necessary.

1. From the driver assistance menu, press Cruise Control. See **Driver Assistance Menu**.
2. Press Normal Cruise Control.

 When you select normal cruise control the cruise control indicator replaces the adaptive cruise control indicator.The gap setting does not display, and the system does not respond to lead vehicles. Automatic braking remains active to maintain the set speed. The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.

How Does Lane Centering Work

Adaptive cruise control with lane centering uses the vehicle's front radar sensor and front windshield camera sensor, together with the steering sensor to operate.
Using these sensors, the system applies continuous steering assistance towards driving in the middle of the lane.
Note: The gap setting for adaptive cruise control with lane centering, operates in the same way as normal adaptive cruise control.

Lane Centering Precautions

WARNING: Do not use the system when towing a trailer. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: Do not use the system if any changes or modifications to the steering wheel have been made. Any changes or modifications to the steering wheel could affect the functionality or performance of the system. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

Adaptive cruise control precautions apply to lane centering unless stated otherwise or contradicted by a lane centering precaution. See **Adaptive Cruise Control Precautions**.

Lane Centering Requirements

You must keep your hands on the steering wheel at all times.

Lane centering only activates when all of the following occur:

- Adaptive cruise control with lane centering is enabled in the touchscreen. See **Switching Lane Centering On and Off**.
- You have adaptive cruise control enabled and set.
- The steering system detects your hands on the steering wheel.
- The system detects both lane markings when driving on a straight road.

- Your vehicle is initially centered in the lane between two visible line markings.
- Automatic Emergency Braking is switched on. See **Switching Automatic Emergency Braking On and Off**.
- The driver seatbelt is fastened.
- A trailer is not detected.

Note: If the system does not detect valid lane line markings, the system remains in standby until valid line markings are available.
Note: If the system does not detect your hands on the steering wheel, apply a slight force to the steering wheel.

Lane Centering Limitations

Adaptive cruise control limitations apply to lane centering unless stated otherwise or contradicted by a lane centering limitation. See **Lane Centering Requirements**.

Lane Centering may not be able to center your vehicle in the lane in any of the following conditions:

- The lane is too narrow or wide.
- The curve in the road is too tight.
- The system does not detect the minimum required lane markings or when lanes merge or split.
- When the required steering effort to maintain lane center exceeds the lane centering system limit.
- When driving in areas that are under construction or when road work is in progress.
- If the front windshield camera and/or the front radar are blocked.
- When using a spare tire.
- Inclement weather conditions including, but not limited to, high wind, heavy rain, and fog.
- Driving into direct sunlight.
- When modification to the steering system has been made, including alterations to the steering wheel.
- When a trailer is detected, the system disables lane centering. See **Lane Centering Precautions**.

Note: The system steering assistance is limited and may not have sufficient effort for all driving situations and/or conditions, such as driving through tight curves or driving through curves at high speeds.
Note: In exceptional conditions, the system may deviate from the lane center.

Switching Lane Centering On and Off

You must keep your hands on the steering wheel at all times.



Press the button on the turn signal stalk to turn lane centering on or off.
The indicator appears in the instrument cluster. When the lane centering system is on, the color of the indicator changes to indicate the system status.
You can override the system at any time by steering your vehicle.
Note: The lane centering requirements must be met before you can enable the feature. See **Lane Centering Requirements**.
Enabling and Disabling Lane Centering

1. From the driver assistance menu, press Cruise Control. See **Driver Assistance Menu**.
2. Press Adaptive Cruise Control.
3. Switch Lane Centering on or off.

Lane Centering Alerts

You must keep your hands on the steering wheel at all times.
When the system is active and detects no steering activity for a period of time, the system alerts you to put your hands on the steering wheel. If you do not react appropriately to the warnings the adaptive cruise control with lane centering system cancels and slows your vehicle down to idle speeds while maintaining steering control. See **Lane Centering Automatic Cancellation**.
The system also alerts you if your vehicle crosses lane line markings without detected steering activity.
Note: The system could detect a light grip or light touch on the steering wheel as hands-off driving.

Lane Centering Automatic Cancellation

When an external condition cancels the system, for example, no lane line markings available, a tone sounds and a message appears in the instrument cluster display.


If your vehicle starts to slow down after system cancellation, you must take full control of the vehicle. To re-enable adaptive cruise control with lane centering after cancellation, press and release the resume button.

Automatic cancellation can also occur if:

- The lane becomes too wide or narrow.
- The system cannot detect valid lane markings.
- Lane markings cross over one another.
- The curve of the road is too sharp.

Note: If your vehicle slows down due to your inactivity twice within a key cycle, the system disables. To reset the system, when the vehicle is stationary, return the gear selector to park (P) and turn the vehicle off. Then, restart the vehicle with your foot on the brake pedal.

Lane Centering Manual Cancellation

When you perform the following actions, adaptive cruise control with lane centering cancels:

- The brake pedal is pressed.
- Adaptive cruise control button on the steering wheel is switched off.

The lane centering system is momentarily suppressed when either of the following actions are performed:

- Turn signal indicator is latched or tapped.
- You steer the vehicle out of lane.

Lane Centering Indicators

 Illuminates when you switch lane centering on.
The color of the indicator changes to indicate the system status.
Gray status indicates the system is on but in standby mode.
Green status indicates the system is enabled and applying steering assistance to keep the vehicle in the center of the lane.
Amber status with an audible tone, that then changes to gray status, indicates a system automatic cancellation.

Lane Centering – Information Messages

Note: Depending on your vehicle options and instrument cluster type, some messages can appear different or not at all.

Message	Details
Keep hands on steering wheel	You must return your hands to the steering wheel and provide steering input to cancel the message.
Lane Centering not available	Lane centering is currently not available, due to conditions that prevent the system from becoming active. To reset the system, when the vehicle is stationary, return the gear selector to park (P) and turn the vehicle off. Then, restart the vehicle with your foot on the brake pedal.
Resume control	Adaptive cruise control with lane centering is about to cancel. You must immediately take full control of the vehicle.
Press accelerator pedal to resume	Adaptive cruise control with lane centering is in standby mode. When safe to do so, you can resume adaptive cruise control with lane centering by applying pressure on the accelerator pedal. Alternatively, you can also re-enable adaptive cruise control with lane centering by pressing the resume button on the steering wheel.

How Does Predictive Speed Assist Work

Predictive Speed Assist works with adaptive cruise control and adjusts the vehicle speed to the road geometry and to the speed limit detected by the speed sign recognition system. As the system identifies curves and highway exits, the vehicle speed temporarily decreases ahead of and during the changing road geometry. When passing new speed signs, the set speed updates. See **Predictive Speed Assist Precautions**.
There are limitations that affect the accuracy of the speed sign recognition system and its ability to determine the current speed limit. Predictive speed assist and its ability to determine the current speed limit shares these limitations. See **Speed Sign Recognition**.

Note: The adaptive cruise control gap setting operates normally when the feature is enabled.

Predictive Speed Assist Precautions

WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: Pay close attention to changing road conditions. You may need to override the system by pressing the brake or accelerator pedal if the adjusted speed becomes higher or lower than necessary.

WARNING: The system only provides limited braking. Your vehicle may not always decelerate quickly enough to avoid a crash without driver intervention. Apply the brakes when necessary.

WARNING: The system does not activate the turn signal.

Adaptive cruise control precautions apply to predictive speed assist unless stated otherwise or contradicted by a predictive speed assist precaution. See **Adaptive Cruise Control Precautions**.
The system only applies limited braking.You can override the system with the accelerator pedal or cancel the system by applying the brakes.
The system may adapt to various factors such as time of day, lane width. This could influence speed adjustments and accelerations.
The system may adapt to various drive modes. See **Drive Mode Control**. This could influence speed adjustments and accelerations.
Note: The system does not activate the turn signal automatically.

Predictive Speed Assist Limitations

WARNING: The system may not always adjust vehicle speed in certain road or weather conditions such as crossing traffic, yield or stop signs, right of way, traffic lights, speed bumps, rain, snow, fog. You must always apply the brake or accelerator pedal when necessary.

The road geometry and speed limit information provided by the navigation map data could be inaccurate or out of date.
The system may not detect and read speed limit signs with conditional information, for example, when a sign is flashing, during specific time ranges, or when children are present.
Note: The system does not set the vehicle speed to speed limits shown with a supplementary traffic sign.
Under certain conditions, the system may not adjust the vehicle speed until after your vehicle passes the speed limit.
Detection of road geometry operates only where related information is available. Road geometry information may not be available in some areas.

Switching Predictive Speed Assist Mode On and Off

1. From the driver assistance menu, press Cruise Control. See **Driver Assistance Menu**.
2. Press Adaptive Cruise Control.
3. Switch Predictive Speed Assist on or off.

Adjusting the Set Speed Tolerance

1. From the driver assistance menu, press Cruise Control. See **Driver Assistance Menu**.
2. Press Adaptive Cruise Control.
3. Switch Predictive Speed Assist on.
4. Press Tolerance.
5. Adjust the slider to set the tolerance.

Note: You can set tolerance for vehicle speed adjustment based on speed sign recognition only.

Predictive Speed Assist Alerts

If the speed sign recognition system detects a speed limit below the minimum adaptive cruise control set speed, a tone sounds and the system returns to standby mode.

Predictive Speed Assist Indicators

A blue marker around the speed sign and a blue arrow next to the set speed indicates that the system is active.
Speed sign indicator



When the system detects a new speed sign, a gray indicator appears above the set speed while the system adjusts the vehicle speed to the speed limit. When the speed limit is reached, the set speed updates and the gray indicator disappears.
Road geometry indicator
When the system detects a curve or highway exit, the vehicle starts to decelerate, and the indicator appears and changes color.
Road geometry indicator symbols

 Left curve.

 Right curve.

Predictive Speed Assist – Information Messages

Message	Details
Adaptive Cruise Control Speed Sign Recognition Not Available	Navigation system based speed limit information is not available. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Driver Resume Control	The system is going to cancel and you must take control.

Adaptive Cruise Control – Information Messages

Note: Depending on your vehicle options and instrument cluster type, not all messages display or are available.
Note: The system could abbreviate or shorten certain messages depending upon which cluster type you have.

Message	Details
Front sensor not aligned	Contact an authorized dealer to have the radar checked for proper coverage and operation.
Cruise Control not available	Conditions exist preventing the system from being available.
Adaptive Cruise Control not available Sensor blocked See manual	You have a blocked radar because of poor radar visibility due to inclement weather or ice, mud, or water in front of the sensor. You can typically clean the sensor to resolve this issue. Due to the nature of sensor technology, it is possible to get a blockage warning with no actual block. This happens, for example, when driving in sparse rural or desert environments. A false blocked condition either self clears, or clears after you restart your vehicle.
Normal Cruise Control active Adaptive Braking off	You have selected normal cruise control. The system does not brake or react to traffic.
Resume control	Displays when the adaptive cruise control is going to cancel and you must take control.
Cruise Control Speed too low to activate	Displays when the vehicle speed is too slow to activate the adaptive cruise control and there is no lead vehicle in range.

Lane Centering

How Does Lane Centering Work

Adaptive cruise control with lane centering uses the vehicle's front radar sensor and front windshield camera sensor, together with the steering sensor to operate.
Using these sensors, the system applies continuous steering assistance towards driving in the middle of the lane.
Note: The gap setting for adaptive cruise control with lane centering, operates in the same way as normal adaptive cruise control.

Lane Centering Precautions

WARNING: Do not use the system when towing a trailer. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: Do not use the system if any changes or modifications to the steering wheel have been made. Any changes or modifications to the steering wheel could affect the functionality or performance of the system. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

Adaptive cruise control precautions apply to lane centering unless stated otherwise or contradicted by a lane centering precaution. See **Adaptive Cruise Control Precautions**.

Lane Centering Requirements

You must keep your hands on the steering wheel at all times.

Lane centering only activates when all of the following occur:

- Adaptive cruise control with lane centering is enabled in the touchscreen. See **Switching Lane Centering On and Off**.
- You have adaptive cruise control enabled and set.
- The steering system detects your hands on the steering wheel.
- The system detects both lane markings when driving on a straight road.
- Your vehicle is initially centered in the lane between two visible line markings.
- Automatic Emergency Braking is switched on. See **Switching Automatic Emergency Braking On and Off**.
- The driver seatbelt is fastened.
- A trailer is not detected.

Note: If the system does not detect valid lane line markings, the system remains in standby until valid line markings are available.
Note: If the system does not detect your hands on the steering wheel, apply a slight force to the steering wheel.

Lane Centering Limitations

Adaptive cruise control limitations apply to lane centering unless stated otherwise or contradicted by a lane centering limitation. See **Lane Centering Requirements**.

Lane Centering may not be able to center your vehicle in the lane in any of the following conditions:

- The lane is too narrow or wide.
- The curve in the road is too tight.
- The system does not detect the minimum required lane markings or when lanes merge or split.

- When the required steering effort to maintain lane center exceeds the lane centering system limit.
- When driving in areas that are under construction or when road work is in progress.
- If the front windshield camera and/or the front radar are blocked.
- When using a spare tire.
- Inclement weather conditions including, but not limited to, high wind, heavy rain, and fog.
- Driving into direct sunlight.
- When modification to the steering system has been made, including alterations to the steering wheel.
- When a trailer is detected, the system disables lane centering. See **Lane Centering Precautions**.

Note: The system steering assistance is limited and may not have sufficient effort for all driving situations and/or conditions, such as driving through tight curves or driving through curves at high speeds.
Note: In exceptional conditions, the system may deviate from the lane center.

Switching Lane Centering On and Off

You must keep your hands on the steering wheel at all times.



Press the button on the turn signal stalk to turn lane centering on or off.
The indicator appears in the instrument cluster. When the lane centering system is on, the color of the indicator changes to indicate the system status.
You can override the system at any time by steering your vehicle.
Note: The lane centering requirements must be met before you can enable the feature. See **Lane Centering Requirements**.
Enabling and Disabling Lane Centering

1. From the driver assistance menu, press Cruise Control. See **Driver Assistance Menu**.
2. Press Adaptive Cruise Control.
3. Switch Lane Centering on or off.

Lane Centering Alerts

You must keep your hands on the steering wheel at all times.
When the system is active and detects no steering activity for a period of time, the system alerts you to put your hands on the steering wheel. If you do not react appropriately to the warnings the adaptive cruise control with lane centering system cancels and slows your vehicle down to idle speeds while maintaining steering control. See **Lane Centering Automatic Cancellation**.
The system also alerts you if your vehicle crosses lane line markings without detected steering activity.
Note: The system could detect a light grip or light touch on the steering wheel as hands-off driving.

Lane Centering Automatic Cancellation

When an external condition cancels the system, for example, no lane line markings available, a tone sounds and a message appears in the instrument cluster display.


If your vehicle starts to slow down after system cancellation, you must take full control of the vehicle. To re-enable adaptive cruise control with lane centering after cancellation, press and release the resume button.

Automatic cancellation can also occur if:

- The lane becomes too wide or narrow.
- The system cannot detect valid lane markings.
- Lane markings cross over one another.
- The curve of the road is too sharp.

Note: If your vehicle slows down due to your inactivity twice within a key cycle, the system disables. To reset the system, when the vehicle is stationary, return the gear selector to park (P) and turn the vehicle off. Then, restart the vehicle with your foot on the brake pedal.

Lane Centering Manual Cancellation

When you perform the following actions, adaptive cruise control with lane centering cancels:

- The brake pedal is pressed.
- Adaptive cruise control button on the steering wheel is switched off.

The lane centering system is momentarily suppressed when either of the following actions are performed:

- Turn signal indicator is latched or tapped.
- You steer the vehicle out of lane.

Lane Centering Indicators

 Illuminates when you switch lane centering on. The color of the indicator changes to indicate the system status.
Gray status indicates the system is on but in standby mode.
Green status indicates the system is enabled and applying steering assistance to keep the vehicle in the center of the lane.
Amber status with an audible tone, that then changes to gray status, indicates a system automatic cancellation.

Lane Centering – Troubleshooting

Lane Centering – Information Messages

Note: Depending on your vehicle options and instrument cluster type, some messages can appear different or not at all.

Message	Details
Keep hands on steering wheel	You must return your hands to the steering wheel and provide steering input to cancel the message.
Lane Centering not available	Lane centering is currently not available, due to conditions that prevent the system from becoming active. To reset the system, when the vehicle is stationary, return the gear selector to park (P) and turn the vehicle off. Then, restart the vehicle with your foot on the brake pedal.
Resume control	Adaptive cruise control with lane centering is about to cancel. You must immediately take full control of the vehicle.
Press accelerator pedal to resume	Adaptive cruise control with lane centering is in standby mode. When safe to do so, you can resume adaptive cruise control with lane centering by applying pressure on the accelerator pedal. Alternatively, you can also re-enable adaptive cruise control with lane centering by pressing the resume button on the steering wheel.

Predictive Speed Assist

How Does Predictive Speed Assist Work

Predictive Speed Assist works with adaptive cruise control and adjusts the vehicle speed to the road geometry and to the speed limit detected by the speed sign recognition system. As the system identifies curves and highway exits, the vehicle speed temporarily decreases ahead of and during the changing road geometry. When passing new speed signs, the set speed updates. See **Predictive Speed Assist Precautions**.
There are limitations that affect the accuracy of the speed sign recognition system and its ability to determine the current speed limit. Predictive speed assist and its ability to determine the current speed limit shares these limitations. See **Speed Sign Recognition**.
Note: The adaptive cruise control gap setting operates normally when the feature is enabled.

Predictive Speed Assist Precautions

WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: Pay close attention to changing road conditions. You may need to override the system by pressing the brake or accelerator pedal if the adjusted speed becomes higher or lower than necessary.

WARNING: The system only provides limited braking. Your vehicle may not always decelerate quickly enough to avoid a crash without driver intervention. Apply the brakes when necessary.

WARNING: The system does not activate the turn signal.

Adaptive cruise control precautions apply to predictive speed assist unless stated otherwise or contradicted by a predictive speed assist precaution. See **Adaptive Cruise Control Precautions**.

The system only applies limited braking.You can override the system with the accelerator pedal or cancel the system by applying the brakes.

The system may adapt to various factors such as time of day, lane width. This could influence speed adjustments and accelerations.

The system may adapt to various drive modes. See **Drive Mode Control**. This could influence speed adjustments and accelerations.

Note: The system does not activate the turn signal automatically.

Predictive Speed Assist Limitations

WARNING: The system may not always adjust vehicle speed in certain road or weather conditions such as crossing traffic, yield or stop signs, right of way, traffic lights, speed bumps, rain, snow, fog. You must always apply the brake or accelerator pedal when necessary.

The road geometry and speed limit information provided by the navigation map data could be inaccurate or out of date.

The system may not detect and read speed limit signs with conditional information, for example, when a sign is flashing, during specific time ranges, or when children are present.

Note: The system does not set the vehicle speed to speed limits shown with a supplementary traffic sign. Under certain conditions, the system may not adjust the vehicle speed until after your vehicle passes the speed limit.

Detection of road geometry operates only where related information is available. Road geometry information may not be available in some areas.

Switching Predictive Speed Assist Mode On and Off

1. From the driver assistance menu, press Cruise Control. See **Driver Assistance Menu**.
2. Press Adaptive Cruise Control.
3. Switch Predictive Speed Assist on or off.

Adjusting the Set Speed Tolerance

1. From the driver assistance menu, press Cruise Control. See **Driver Assistance Menu**.
2. Press Adaptive Cruise Control.
3. Switch Predictive Speed Assist on.
4. Press Tolerance.
5. Adjust the slider to set the tolerance.

Note: You can set tolerance for vehicle speed adjustment based on speed sign recognition only.

Predictive Speed Assist Alerts

If the speed sign recognition system detects a speed limit below the minimum adaptive cruise control set speed, a tone sounds and the system returns to standby mode.

Predictive Speed Assist Indicators

A blue marker around the speed sign and a blue arrow next to the set speed indicates that the system is active.
Speed sign indicator



When the system detects a new speed sign, a gray indicator appears above the set speed while the system adjusts the vehicle speed to the speed limit. When the speed limit is reached, the set speed updates and the gray indicator disappears.
Road geometry indicator
When the system detects a curve or highway exit, the vehicle starts to decelerate, and the indicator appears and changes color.
Road geometry indicator symbols

 Left curve.

 Right curve.

Predictive Speed Assist – Troubleshooting

Predictive Speed Assist – Information Messages

Message	Details
Adaptive Cruise Control Speed Sign Recognition Not Available	Navigation system based speed limit information is not available. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Driver Resume Control	The system is going to cancel and you must take control.

Adaptive Cruise Control – Troubleshooting

Adaptive Cruise Control – Information Messages

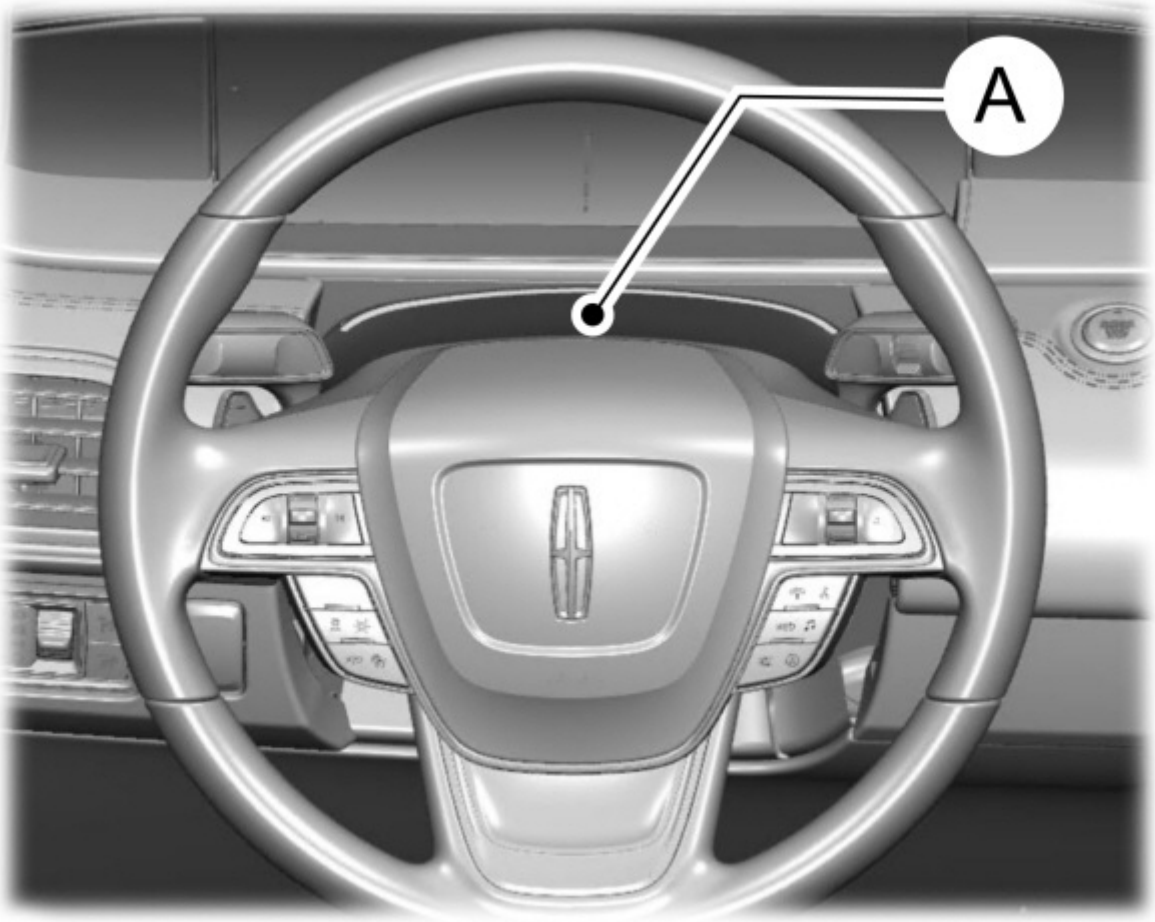
Note: Depending on your vehicle options and instrument cluster type, not all messages display or are available.
Note: The system could abbreviate or shorten certain messages depending upon which cluster type you have.

Message	Details
Front sensor not aligned	Contact an authorized dealer to have the radar checked for proper coverage and operation.
Cruise Control not available	Conditions exist preventing the system from being available.
Adaptive Cruise Control not available Sensor blocked See manual	You have a blocked radar because of poor radar visibility due to inclement weather or ice, mud, or water in front of the sensor. You can typically clean the sensor to resolve this issue. Due to the nature of sensor technology, it is possible to get a blockage warning with no actual block. This happens, for example, when driving in sparse rural or desert environments. A false blocked condition either self clears, or clears after you restart your vehicle.
Normal Cruise Control active Adaptive Braking off	You have selected normal cruise control. The system does not brake or react to traffic.
Resume control	Displays when the adaptive cruise control is going to cancel and you must take control.
Cruise Control Speed too low to activate	Displays when the vehicle speed is too slow to activate the adaptive cruise control and there is no lead vehicle in range.

Lincoln BlueCruise (If Equipped)

How Does BlueCruise Work

BlueCruise is a driver assistance system that allows your hands to be off the steering wheel in certain situations on compatible roads (blue zones) when using adaptive cruise control. When adaptive cruise control is active, the BlueCruise system steers the vehicle to maintain lane position. While using BlueCruise, even if your hands are off the steering wheel and your foot is not applying the accelerator or brake pedal, you must constantly supervise all driving tasks so that you are prepared to immediately steer, brake or accelerate if needed to maintain the safe operation of your vehicle. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to always remain alert.
BlueCruise uses cameras to monitor your vehicle position within a lane and applies steering support to keep your vehicle centered in the lane.
Using the cameras and location information, BlueCruise allows you to remove your hands from the steering wheel and offers a hands-free driving mode in certain areas.
When active, BlueCruise uses a driver facing camera and infrared lighting to monitor your eyes and head position to detect if you are distracted. If the system determines you are distracted, it alerts you to return your eyes to the road.



A Lighting and camera area.



Steering column too high, camera cannot see the face.



Appropriate position, camera can see the face.
For the most optimal experience from the driver facing camera:

- Make sure to not wear any facial coverings.
- Raise the seating position and/or lower the steering column so your face is seen by the driver facing camera.
- Avoid leaning the seat back so the driver facing camera can see your face.
- Avoid using infrared blocking sunglasses.
- Make sure your hands, arms or other objects are not blocking the driver facing camera.

Note: When BlueCruise is active, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an air bag deployment or hitting a road obstacle, camera data may record through the vehicle event data recorder. See **Event Data**.
Note: No data records under normal driving conditions.

BlueCruise Precautions

WARNING: You are responsible for keeping your eyes on the road at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: Do not use the system when towing a trailer. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: Obstructions to the driver facing camera or infrared lighting could prevent the system from properly operating. Keep the camera and lighting areas free from obstruction. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: Do not use the system if any changes or modifications to the steering wheel have been made. Any changes or modifications to the steering wheel could affect the functionality or performance of the system. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: The system may not function if the sensor is blocked.

WARNING: Pay close attention to changing road conditions such as entering or leaving a highway, on roads with intersections or roundabouts, roads without visible lanes of travel, roads that are unpaved, or steep slopes, railroad crossings, pedestrian crossings, and school zones. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: The system is not a crash warning or avoidance system.

WARNING: Large contrasts in outside lighting can limit sensor performance.

WARNING: The system attempts to keep your vehicle in the center of the lane as well as maintain speed and gap control. The system may not be able to perform these tasks in all situations. Do not use the system in complex or uncertain driving conditions. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: Your vehicle could drift out of the lane of travel. Always be prepared to manually steer your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: The system will not operate if the sensor cannot track the road lane markings.

BlueCruise Requirements

BlueCruise only activates when all of the following occur:

- BlueCruise subscription is active. See Lincoln.com (https://www.lincoln.com/connectedservices/) or the Lincoln app for details.
- Modem is enabled. See **Connected Vehicle**.
- BlueCruise is enabled in your center display screen. See **BlueCruise Settings**.
- Adaptive cruise control is switched on.
- Automatic Emergency Braking is switched on. See **Switching Automatic Emergency Braking On and Off**.
- The driver seatbelt is fastened.
- The system detects both lane markings.
- Your hands are on the steering wheel.
- Your eyes are on the road.

Note: For hands-free mode to work, your vehicle must be on certain limited access divided freeways.

Note: The system may require updated software for hands-free mode. See **Vehicle Software Updates**.
Note: Without an active BlueCruise subscription, your vehicle is still capable of lane centering. This system requires you to keep your hands on the steering wheel at all times. See **Lane Centering Requirements**.

BlueCruise Limitations

BlueCruise is a driver assistance system that allows your hands to be off the steering wheel in certain situations on compatible roads (blue zones) when using adaptive cruise control. It is not a crash avoidance system. The BlueCruise feature utilizes other driver assistance technologies. Refer to the Owner's Manual for information pertaining to each driver assistance system.
Before using BlueCruise, it is important to understand the limitations of:

- Adaptive Cruise Control. See **Adaptive Cruise Control**.
- Lane Centering Assist. See **Lane Keeping System**.
- Pre-Collision Assist, including Automatic Emergency Braking. See **Pre-Collision Assist**.

Any of the following conditions could result in BlueCruise not correctly operating:

- You do not have your vehicle centered in the lane.
- The lane is too narrow or too wide.
- The system does not detect at least one lane marking or when lanes merge or split.
- You are applying a low amount of steering input.
- Curve of the road is too sharp.
- You are using the system in areas under construction.
- If you make any aftermarket modifications to the steering system.
- You are using a spare tire.

The driver facing camera may not operate correctly due to any of the following:

- You have a pre-existing eye condition, such as an eye misalignment, or have had eye surgery.
- You cover your facial features by a mask, hat or other items.
- The lighting conditions change significantly.
- You are not in the field of view of the camera.
- You position or tilt yourself to one side.
- You are moving around a lot.
- You are wearing glasses or sunglasses that are too dark or reflective.

Note: The system has limited steering assistance and may not be sufficient for all driving situations.
Note: In conditions such as inclement weather or direct sunlight, the system could deviate from the center line.
Note: The information provided by the navigation map data could be inaccurate or out of date.

BlueCruise Settings

Enabling BlueCruise

1. From the driver assistance menu, press Cruise Control. See **Driver Assistance Menu**.
2. Press Adaptive Cruise Control.
3. Press Lane Centering With Hands Free.

Enabling Activation Prompts

1. From the driver assistance menu, press Cruise Control. See **Driver Assistance Menu**.
2. Press Adaptive Cruise Control.
3. Press Activation Prompts.

Switching BlueCruise On and Off

Switching BlueCruise On
The controls are on the steering wheel.
Using Activation Prompts
 When the prompt appears, press the button to switch BlueCruise on.
The indicator appears in the instrument cluster. When the system is on, the color of the indicator changes to indicate the system status.
Note: You must enable activation prompts in the touchscreen.
Using Steering Wheel Controls
  Using the adaptive cruise control and lane keeping buttons, make sure both systems are active. BlueCruise activates.
Switching BlueCruise Off
  Press either the lane keeping or adaptive cruise control button when system is active or in standby mode.
BlueCruise turns off through each ignition cycle.

BlueCruise Alerts

When BlueCruise is providing hands-on driving or transitioning to hands-on driving from hands-free driving and detects no steering activity for a certain period of time, the system alerts you with an audible warning and a message in the instrument cluster display to put your hands on the steering wheel.
When BlueCruise is providing hands-on or hands-free driving and detects you are not looking at the road for a certain period of time, the system alerts you to return your eyes to the road. Depending on where you are looking, the alert can be a message in the instrument cluster and an audible warning.
If you do not react to the warnings, the system alerts you to take control of your vehicle, quickly applies and releases the brakes, activates the hazard lights, and slows your vehicle to a stop within the lane of travel while maintaining steering control.
If your vehicle slows down or stops and you resume control, a message appears to prompt you to press the accelerator pedal to allow the system to resume.
Note: If the system detects significant inactivity, it disables until the next time you start your vehicle.

BlueCruise Automatic Cancellation

When an external condition cancels BlueCruise, for example, no lane markings available, a message appears in the instrument cluster, and an audible warning sounds.


If your vehicle starts to slow down, you must take control by returning your attention to the road and your hands to the steering wheel. Then press and release the button to reactivate BlueCruise.
System cancellation can also occur if:

- The lane becomes too narrow.

- The system cannot detect valid lane markings.
- Lane markings cross.
- Curve of the road is too sharp.
- Your eyes are not on the road or your hands are not on the steering wheel.

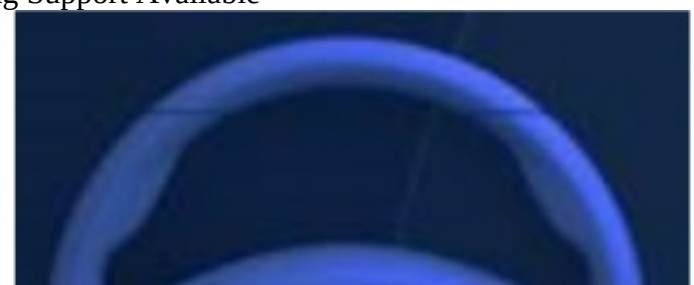
If you have your hands on the steering wheel and your eyes are on the road when the feature is active and a cancellation occurs, the system displays a canceled graphic in the instrument cluster and sounds an audible warning.
If you are not paying attention to the road or your hands are not on the steering wheel and a cancellation occurs, the system displays a message in the instrument cluster, and sounds an audible warning until you resume control.
If you do not resume control in time, BlueCruise quickly activates and releases the brakes, activates the hazard lights, and slows your vehicle to a stop within the lane of travel while maintaining steering control.
If your vehicle slows down or stops and you resume control, a message appears to prompt you to press the accelerator pedal to allow the system to resume.
Note: If the system detects repeated inactivity, it disables until the next time you start your vehicle.

BlueCruise Indicators

 When on, the color of the indicator changes to indicate the status.
Gray indicates BlueCruise is on but inactive.
Green indicates BlueCruise is active and applying continuous steering support.
Blue indicates BlueCruise is active and hands-free driving mode is available.
Hands-On Driving Support Available



The graphic in the cluster changes to a wheel with hands on it indicating hands-on driving mode is active. When this indicator is present, you must keep your hands on the steering wheel.
Hands-Free Driving Support Available



The graphic in the cluster changes to a wheel without hands on it indicating hands-free driving mode is available.
When this indicator is present, you can remove your hands from the steering wheel.

How Does Lane Change Assist Work



Lane change assist can automatically perform a single lane change when you request the lane change using the turn signal lever. This feature is available down to 40 mph (65 km/h).

⚠ **WARNING**: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

⚠ **WARNING**: Do not use the lane change assist system as a replacement for using the interior and exterior mirrors or looking over your shoulder before changing lanes. The lane change assist system is not a replacement for careful driving.

1. Make sure the lane you are requesting is clear of traffic or obstacles.
2. Tap or latch the lever in the direction of your planned lane change.
3. Once the lane change is complete, move the turn signal lever back to the middle position if necessary.

Note: When using lane change assist you can tap or latch the lever.
Lane Change Suggestion
If you are approaching or have been following a slower moving vehicle, the system may suggest a lane change to pass that vehicle using an available passing lane.

Lane Change Assist Limitations

Lane change assist will not perform the requested maneuver if traffic is identified in the selected lane.

Switching Lane Change Assist On and Off

1. From the driver assistance menu, press Cruise Control. See **Driver Assistance Menu**.
2. Press Adaptive Cruise Control.
3. Press Lane Centering with Hands Free.
4. Press Lane Change Assist to toggle the system on and off.

Lane Change Assist Cancellation

To cancel lane change assist, manually steer your vehicle or use the turn signal lever. If the turn signal lever is latched, return to the middle position. If not latched, tap the lever in the opposite direction.

Lane Change Assist – Information Messages

Message	Details
Lane is busy	The lane you have selected to enter has a vehicle or obstacle.
No lane detected	A lane is not recognized or available to perform the requested maneuver.
Driver canceled	The driver has manually overridden the lane change.
Changing lanes	The requested lane change is being performed.
Lane change suggested	If desired, press the turn signal lever in the direction indicated by the lane change suggestion to initiate the lane change.

Note: The instrument cluster display may abbreviate or shorten certain messages.

How Does In-Lane Repositioning Work

BlueCruise with in-lane repositioning uses the vehicle's front and corner radar sensors together with the front windshield camera sensor to operate.
Using these sensors, the system automatically adjusts your vehicle’s position in the lane based on the current driving situation.
Note: In-lane repositioning is active only when BlueCruise is enabled while traveling on divided highways and when any of the following occur:

- Passing or being passed by adjacent lane vehicles in close proximity.
- In a curve.
- Driving in outer lanes.

Note: In certain situations, the vehicle may bias without showing the indicators.
Note: Keep the front of your vehicle free of dirt, metal badges or objects. Vehicle front protectors, aftermarket lights, additional paint or plastic coatings could also degrade sensor performance.

Note: The radar sensor has a limited field of view. It may not detect vehicles at all or detect a vehicle later than expected in some situations.

Switching In-Lane Repositioning On and Off

1. From the driver assistance menu, press Cruise Control. See **Driver Assistance Menu**.
2. Press Adaptive Cruise Control.
3. Press Lane Centering with Hands Free.
4. Press In-Lane Repositioning to toggle the system on or off.

In-Lane Repositioning Indicators



Biased towards right-hand side of the lane.



Biased towards left-hand side of the lane.

BlueCruise – Information Messages

Depending on your vehicle options and instrument cluster type, not all messages display or are available.

Message	Details
Keep Hands on Steering Wheel	Make sure you return your hands to the steering wheel and provide steering input.
Resume Control	The system is going to cancel and you must take control by returning your attention to the road and your hands to the steering wheel.
Watch the Road	Return your attention to the road.
BlueCruise not available	Conditions exist preventing the system from being available. If the message continues to display, have the system checked as soon as possible.
Press Accelerator Pedal to Resume	Press the accelerator pedal and follow the prompts.
Driver monitor camera cannot detect face See manual	Make sure your facial features are visible and in the field of view of the driver facing camera.
Driver monitor camera is blocked See manual	Make sure your hands, arms or other objects are not obscuring the camera.
Driver monitor camera fault See manual	Conditions exist preventing the system from being available. If the message continues to display, have the system checked as soon as possible.
BlueCruise On Watch the road Be prepared to resume control	BlueCruise is active, keep your attention on the road.
BlueCruise available Press {ICON} to activate	The system is in standby mode, press the button on the steering wheel to activate.

Note: The instrument cluster display may abbreviate or shorten certain messages.

Lane Change Assist

How Does Lane Change Assist Work



Lane change assist can automatically perform a single lane change when you request the lane change using the turn signal lever. This feature is available down to 40 mph (65 km/h).

WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: Do not use the lane change assist system as a replacement for using the interior and exterior mirrors or looking over your shoulder before changing lanes. The lane change assist system is not a replacement for careful driving.

1. Make sure the lane you are requesting is clear of traffic or obstacles.
2. Tap or latch the lever in the direction of your planned lane change.
3. Once the lane change is complete, move the turn signal lever back to the middle position if necessary.

Note: When using lane change assist you can tap or latch the lever.
Lane Change Suggestion
If you are approaching or have been following a slower moving vehicle, the system may suggest a lane change to pass that vehicle using an available passing lane.

Lane Change Assist Limitations

Lane change assist will not perform the requested maneuver if traffic is identified in the selected lane.

Switching Lane Change Assist On and Off

1. From the driver assistance menu, press Cruise Control. See **Driver Assistance Menu**.
2. Press Adaptive Cruise Control.
3. Press Lane Centering with Hands Free.
4. Press Lane Change Assist to toggle the system on and off.

Lane Change Assist Cancellation

To cancel lane change assist, manually steer your vehicle or use the turn signal lever. If the turn signal lever is latched, return to the middle position. If not latched, tap the lever in the opposite direction.

Lane Change Assist – Troubleshooting

Lane Change Assist – Information Messages

Message	Details
Lane is busy	The lane you have selected to enter has a vehicle or obstacle.
No lane detected	A lane is not recognized or available to perform the requested maneuver.
Driver canceled	The driver has manually overridden the lane change.

Message	Details
Changing lanes	The requested lane change is being performed.
Lane change suggested	If desired, press the turn signal lever in the direction indicated by the lane change suggestion to initiate the lane change.

Note: The instrument cluster display may abbreviate or shorten certain messages.

In-Lane Repositioning

How Does In-Lane Repositioning Work

BlueCruise with in-lane repositioning uses the vehicle's front and corner radar sensors together with the front windshield camera sensor to operate.
Using these sensors, the system automatically adjusts your vehicle’s position in the lane based on the current driving situation.
Note: In-lane repositioning is active only when BlueCruise is enabled while traveling on divided highways and when any of the following occur:

- Passing or being passed by adjacent lane vehicles in close proximity.
- In a curve.
- Driving in outer lanes.

Note: In certain situations, the vehicle may bias without showing the indicators.
Note: Keep the front of your vehicle free of dirt, metal badges or objects. Vehicle front protectors, aftermarket lights, additional paint or plastic coatings could also degrade sensor performance.
Note: The radar sensor has a limited field of view. It may not detect vehicles at all or detect a vehicle later than expected in some situations.

Switching In-Lane Repositioning On and Off

1. From the driver assistance menu, press Cruise Control. See **Driver Assistance Menu**.
2. Press Adaptive Cruise Control.
3. Press Lane Centering with Hands Free.
4. Press In-Lane Repositioning to toggle the system on or off.

In-Lane Repositioning Indicators



Biased towards right-hand side of the lane.



Biased towards left-hand side of the lane.

BlueCruise – Troubleshooting

BlueCruise – Information Messages

Depending on your vehicle options and instrument cluster type, not all messages display or are available.

Message	Details
Keep Hands on Steering Wheel	Make sure you return your hands to the steering wheel and provide steering input.
Resume Control	The system is going to cancel and you must take control by returning your attention to the road and your hands to the steering wheel.
Watch the Road	Return your attention to the road.
BlueCruise not available	Conditions exist preventing the system from being available. If the message continues to display, have the system checked as soon as possible.
Press Accelerator Pedal to Resume	Press the accelerator pedal and follow the prompts.
Driver monitor camera cannot detect face See manual	Make sure your facial features are visible and in the field of view of the driver facing camera.

Message	Details
Driver monitor camera is blocked See manual	Make sure your hands, arms or other objects are not obscuring the camera.
Driver monitor camera fault See manual	Conditions exist preventing the system from being available. If the message continues to display, have the system checked as soon as possible.
BlueCruise On Watch the road Be prepared to resume control	BlueCruise is active, keep your attention on the road.
BlueCruise available Press {ICON} to activate	The system is in standby mode, press the button on the steering wheel to activate.

Note: The instrument cluster display may abbreviate or shorten certain messages.

Lane Keeping System

What Is the Lane Keeping System

The lane keeping system alerts you by providing temporary steering assistance or steering wheel vibration when it detects an unintended lane departure.

How Does the Lane Keeping System Work

The lane keeping system uses a forward looking camera mounted on the windshield to monitor vehicle movement within the lane of travel.
When the camera detects a drift out of the lane of travel, the lane keeping system alerts the driver by vibrating the steering wheel, or aids the driver by providing a small steering input to move the vehicle back into the lane of travel.
The driver can select one of three modes:

- Alert (if equipped)
- Aid
- Alert + Aid

Lane Keeping System Precautions

WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: The system will not operate if the sensor cannot track the road lane markings.

WARNING: The sensor may incorrectly track lane markings as other structures or objects. This can result in a false or missed warning.

WARNING: In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow and spray can all limit sensor performance.

WARNING: The system may not operate properly if the sensor is blocked. Keep the windshield free from obstruction.

WARNING: If damage occurs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

WARNING: The system may not function properly if your vehicle is fitted with a replacement windshield not approved by us.

WARNING: Large contrasts in outside lighting can limit sensor performance.

WARNING: The system may not correctly operate if your vehicle is fitted with a suspension kit not approved by us.

Lane Keeping System Limitations

The lane keeping system only operates when the vehicle speed is greater than 40 mph (64 km/h).
The system works when the camera can detect at least one lane marking or the edge of the road.

The lane keeping system may not correctly operate in any of the following conditions:

- The lane keeping system does not detect at least one lane marking.
- You switch the turn signal on.
- You apply direct steering, accelerate fast or brake hard.
- The vehicle speed is less than 40 mph (64 km/h).
- The anti-lock brake, stability control or traction control system activates.
- The lane is too narrow.
- Something is obscuring the camera or it is unable to detect the lane markings due to environment, traffic or vehicle conditions.

The lane keeping system may not correct lane positioning in any of the following conditions:

- High winds.
- Uneven road surfaces.
- Heavy or uneven loads.
- Incorrect tire pressure.

Switching the Lane Keeping System On and Off



To activate the lane keeping system, press the button on the turn signal stalk.
To deactivate the lane keeping system, press the button again.
Note: When switching the system on or off a message appears in the instrument cluster display to show the status.
Note: The system stores the on or off setting until manually changed.
Note: The brake coach will not show if the lane keeping system is activated.

Switching the Lane Keeping System Mode

1. From the settings menu, press Driver Assistance.
2. Press Lane-Keeping System.
3. Press Mode.
4. Select a mode.

Note: The system stores the on or off setting until manually changed. For some markets, the system defaults to the ON setting at every Ignition cycle.

Lane Keeping System Settings

Adjusting the Steering Wheel Vibration Intensity

1. Access the vehicle drawer on the touchscreen.
2. Press SETTINGS.
3. Press Driver Assistance.
4. Press Lane-Keeping System.
5. Press Lane-Keeping Intensity.
6. Select a setting.

Note: This setting is not available in all modes.

What Is Alert Mode

Alert mode vibrates the steering wheel when it detects an unintended lane departure.

How Does Alert Mode Work

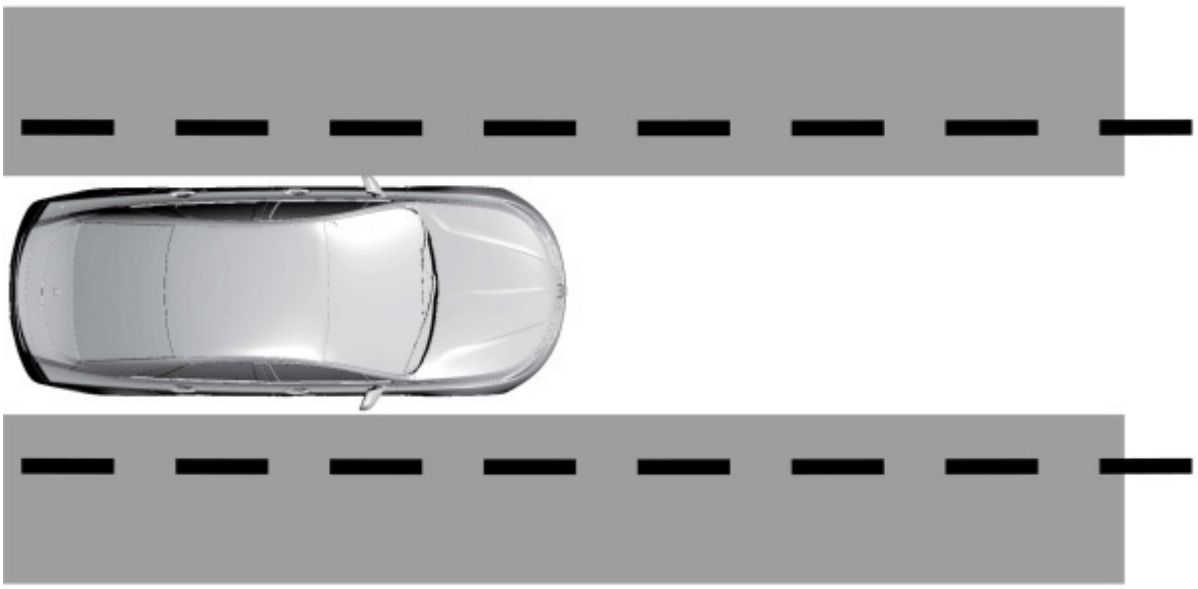


When in alert mode, the lane keeping system alerts you by vibrating the steering wheel. The intensity of the vibration is set through the lane keeping system menu.

What Is Aid Mode

Aid mode provides temporary steering assistance toward the center of the lane.

How Does Aid Mode Work

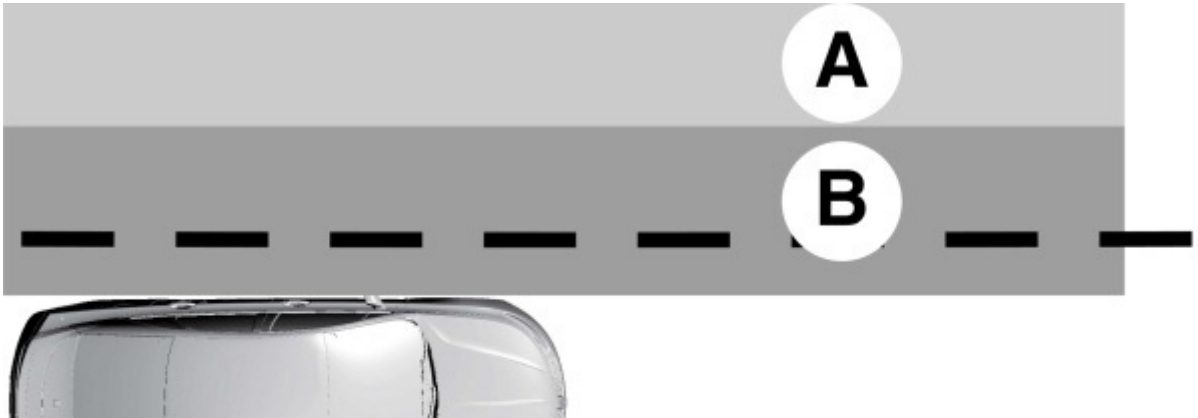


The lane keeping system aids you when an unintentional lane departure occurs. The system provides a small steering input to move the vehicle towards the center of the lane.

What Is Alert and Aid Mode

Alert and aid mode uses multiple features to keep you in your lane. The system first provides a small steering input to bring your vehicle back towards the center of the lane. If your vehicle moves too far from the center of the lane the system alerts you with vibration in the steering wheel.

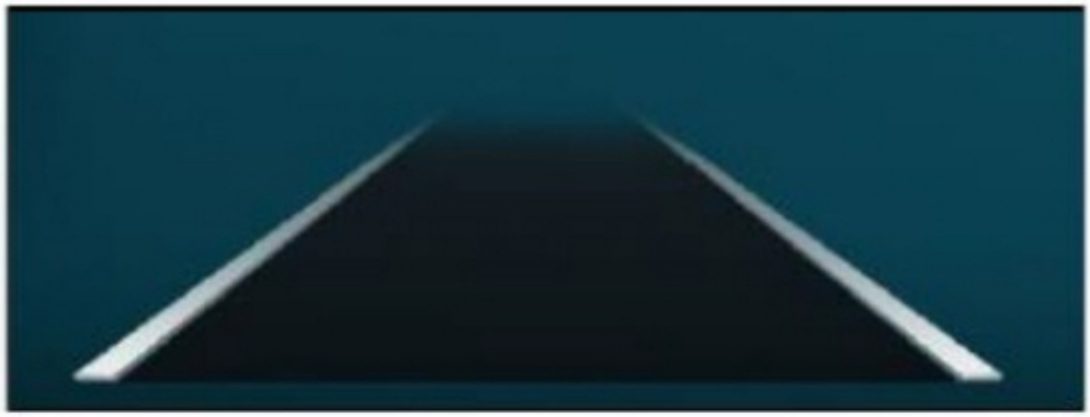
How Does Alert and Aid Mode Work

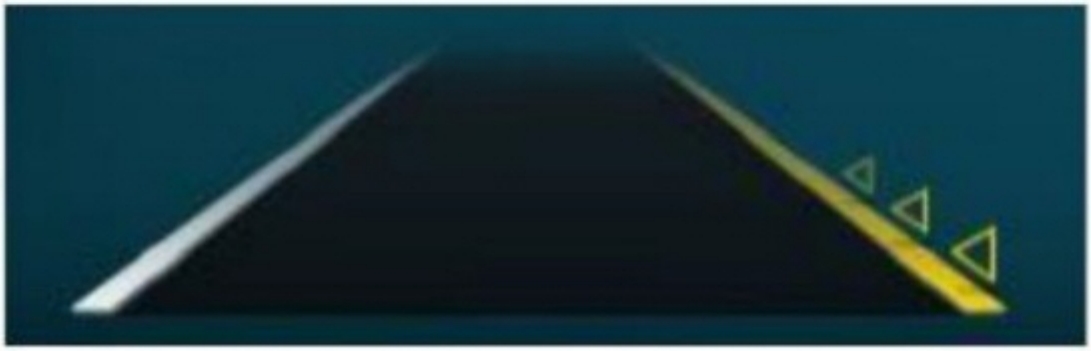


A Alert.
B Aid.

The lane keeping system detects a lane departure and provides aid when the vehicles enters **B** and applies the additional alert warning if **A** is entered.

Lane Keeping System Indicators





If you switch the lane keeping system on, a graphic with lane markings appears in the information display. When you switch the system off, the lane marking graphics do not display.
Note: The overhead vehicle graphic may still display if adaptive cruise control is enabled.
While the lane keeping system is on, the color of the lane markings change to indicate the system status.

Gray	White	Yellow	Red
Indicates that the system is temporarily unavailable to provide a warning or intervention on the indicated side.	Indicates that the system is available or ready to provide a warning or intervention on the indicated side.	Indicates that the system is providing or has just provided a lane keeping aid intervention.	Indicates that the system is providing or has just provided a lane keeping alert warning.

What Is Blind Spot Assist

Blind spot assist is an extension of the lane keeping system.

It helps you identify adjacent vehicles in your blind spot during a lane change.
The system provides a blind spot alert and steering assistance to help you steer away from detected adjacent vehicles.

How Does Blind Spot Assist Work

 Activate and deactivate the system using the lane keeping system button on the steering wheel.
The blind spot assist feature is enabled whenever you select Aid or Alert +Aid from the lane keeping system.
During lane changes, the blind spot assist feature detects vehicles in, or approaching your blind spot and provides a warning plus steering assistance to direct your vehicle back into your lane.
When active, this system functions with or without the use of turn signals and hazard flashers.
You must keep your hands on the steering wheel at all times.

Blind Spot Assist Limitations

All system limitations present in the basic lane keeping system also apply to blind spot assist.
Blind spot assist does not function under the following conditions:

- No lane markings are detected.
- One or both rear radar sensors become blocked or faulty.
- You attach a bicycle or cargo rack to your vehicle in a manner that causes false alerts.

Note: Blind spot assist may have reduced performance if you attach a trailer to your vehicle without a wiring connection.
Blind spot assist may have difficulty detecting hazards under the following conditions:

- If a vehicle is approaching in an adjacent lane at a higher speed than your vehicle.
- Bad weather conditions are present that obstruct the sensors.

Blind Spot Assist Indicators

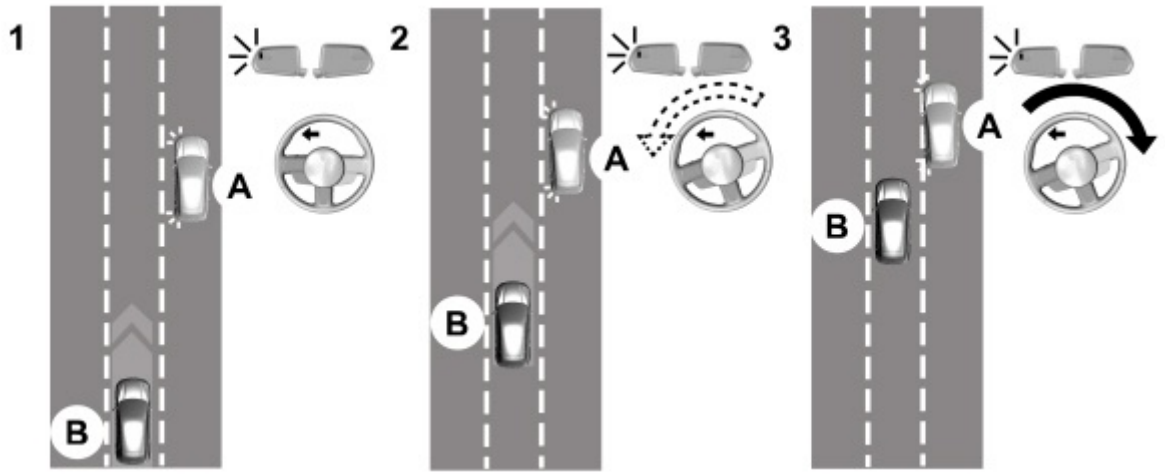


Diagram 1: Vehicle A uses its left turn signal preparing to change from the right lane to the middle lane. Vehicle B is already in the middle lane and just entered Vehicle A's blind spot causing the blind spot information system alert indicator to flash on the exterior mirror.
Diagram 2: The driver of Vehicle A begins to steer into the center lane not aware of Vehicle B.
Diagram 3: Blind spot assist counter steers to help alert the driver of Vehicle A to direct their vehicle back into the right lane to help avoid a possible collision with Vehicle B.

The lane keeping aid warning lamp or yellow lane marking in your instrument cluster display indicate blind spot assist activation. In addition, the blind spot information system alert indicator flashes on the exterior mirror on the same side as the detection. See **Blind Spot Information System**.
Blind Spot Assist Information Messages

Message	Action
Blind Spot Assist Not Available Trailer Attached	Displays if you attach a trailer to your vehicle.
Blind Spot Assist Not Available Side Sensor Blocked	Displays if something is blocking the blind spot information system sensors.
Blind Spot Assist System fault	The system detects a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Trailer Brake Module Fault	Lost communication with the trailer module. The system suppresses blind spot assist until you have the failure fixed.
Trailer Lighting Module Fault See Manual	Lost communication with the trailer module. The system suppresses blind spot assist until you have the failure fixed.
Front Camera Fault Service Required	Front camera fault. Blind spot assist disables until you have the failure fixed.

Lane Keeping System – Information Messages

Message	Action
Lane-Keeping System fault Service required	The system detects a fault.Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Front camera temporarily not available	The system is over-temperature due to environmental conditions. Cool the cabin by lowering the climate control temperature, parking your vehicle in the shade, or opening the windows. Clear any dirt or debris from the windshield at the front windshield camera.
Front camera low visibility Clean screen	The system detects a condition that requires you to clean the windshield in order for it to properly operate.
Front camera fault Service required	The system detects a fault.Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Keep hands on steering wheel	The system requests that you keep your hands on the steering wheel.

Lane Keeping System – Frequently Asked Questions

Why is the feature not available (lane markings are gray) when I can see the lane markings on the road?

- Your vehicle speed is less than 40 mph (65 km/h).

- The sun is shining directly into the camera lens.
- A quick intentional lane change has occurred.
- You are driving your vehicle too close to the lane markings for an extended interval of time.
- Driving at high speeds in curves.
- The last alert warning or aid intervention occurred a short time ago.
- Ambiguous lane markings, for example, in construction zones.
- Rapid transition from light to dark, or from dark to light.
- Sudden offset in lane markings.
- ABS or AdvanceTrac™ is active.
- There is a camera blockage due to dirt, grime, fog, frost or water on the windshield.
- You are driving too close to the vehicle in front of you.
- Transitioning between no lane markings to lane markings, or vice versa.
- There is standing water on the road.
- Faint lane markings, for example, partial yellow lane markings on concrete roads.
- Lane width is too narrow or too wide.
- The windshield camera was not properly calibrated after a windshield replacement.
- Driving on roads with tight curves or uneven surfaces.

Why does the vehicle not come back toward the middle of the lane, as expected, in the Aid, or Aid + Alert mode?

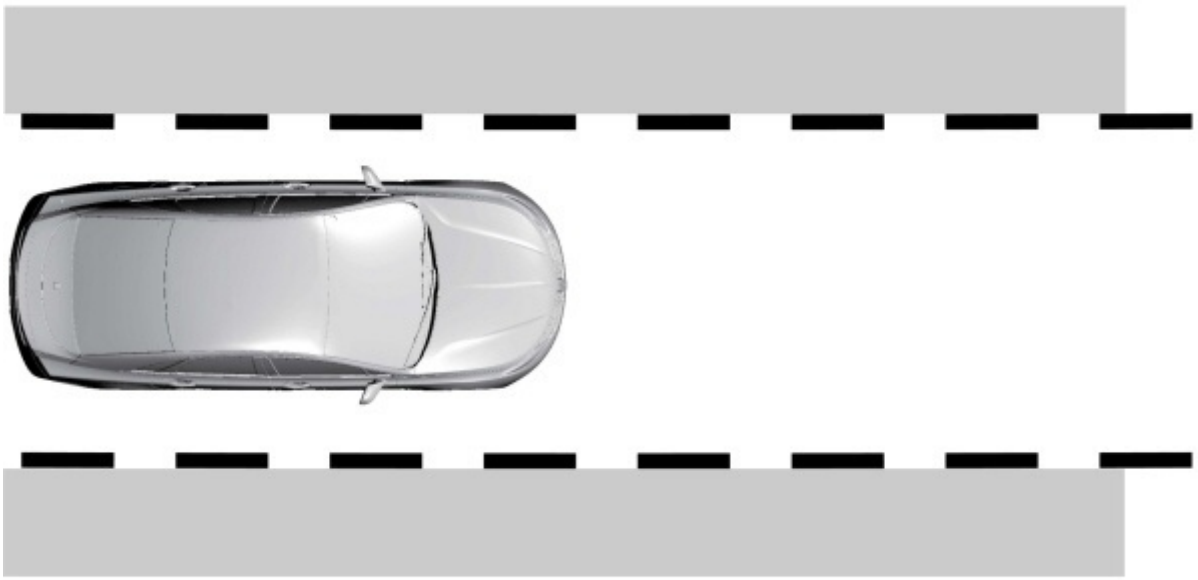
- High cross winds are present.
- There is a large road crown.
- Rough roads, grooves or shoulder drop-offs.
- Heavy, uneven loading of the vehicle or improper tire inflation pressure.
- The tires or suspension has been modified from what your vehicle was designed to use.

Alert Mode

What Is Alert Mode

Alert mode vibrates the steering wheel when it detects an unintended lane departure.

How Does Alert Mode Work



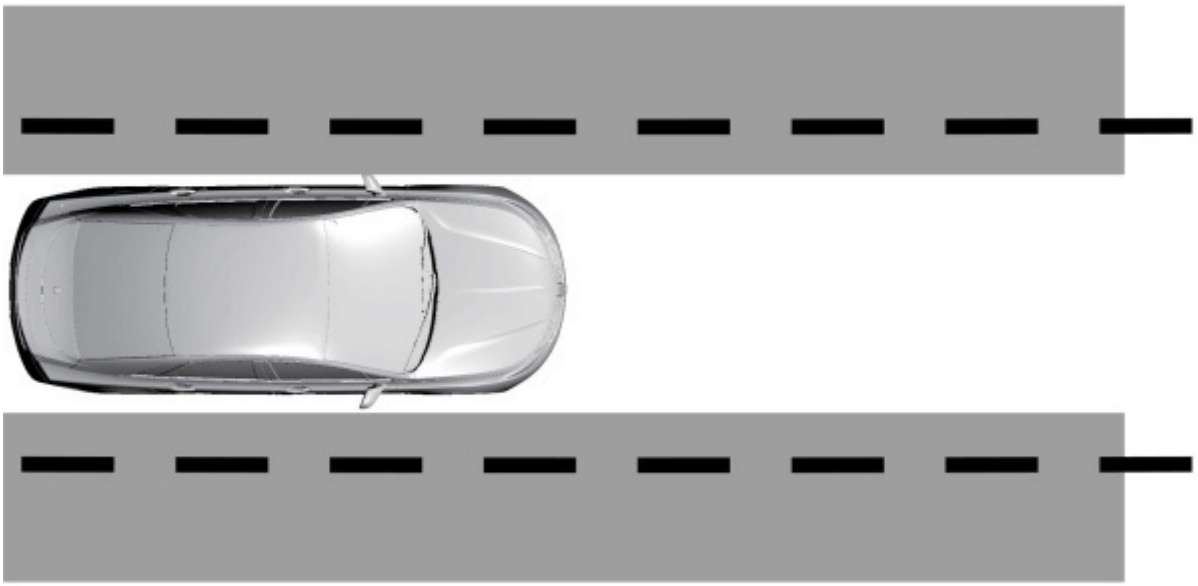
When in alert mode, the lane keeping system alerts you by vibrating the steering wheel. The intensity of the vibration is set through the lane keeping system menu.

Aid Mode

What Is Aid Mode

Aid mode provides temporary steering assistance toward the center of the lane.

How Does Aid Mode Work



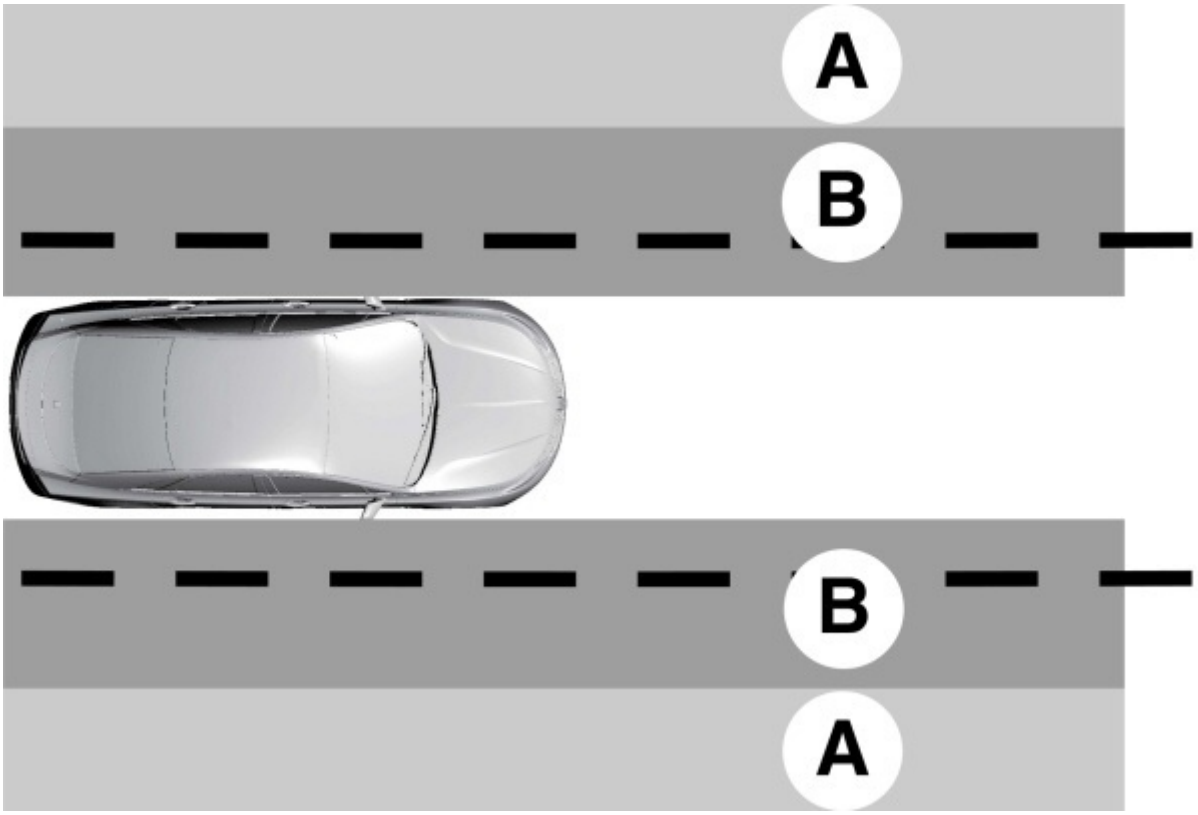
The lane keeping system aids you when an unintentional lane departure occurs. The system provides a small steering input to move the vehicle towards the center of the lane.

Alert and Aid Mode

What Is Alert and Aid Mode

Alert and aid mode uses multiple features to keep you in your lane. The system first provides a small steering input to bring your vehicle back towards the center of the lane. If your vehicle moves too far from the center of the lane the system alerts you with vibration in the steering wheel.

How Does Alert and Aid Mode Work



A Image not found or type unknown Alert.
B Image not found or type unknown Aid.

The lane keeping system detects a lane departure and provides aid when the vehicles enters **B** and applies the additional alert warning if **A** is entered.

Blind Spot Assist

What Is Blind Spot Assist

Blind spot assist is an extension of the lane keeping system.
It helps you identify adjacent vehicles in your blind spot during a lane change.
The system provides a blind spot alert and steering assistance to help you steer away from detected adjacent vehicles.

How Does Blind Spot Assist Work

 Activate and deactivate the system using the lane keeping system button on the steering wheel.
The blind spot assist feature is enabled whenever you select Aid or Alert +Aid from the lane keeping system.
During lane changes, the blind spot assist feature detects vehicles in, or approaching your blind spot and provides a warning plus steering assistance to direct your vehicle back into your lane.
When active, this system functions with or without the use of turn signals and hazard flashers.
You must keep your hands on the steering wheel at all times.

Blind Spot Assist Limitations

All system limitations present in the basic lane keeping system also apply to blind spot assist.
Blind spot assist does not function under the following conditions:

- No lane markings are detected.
- One or both rear radar sensors become blocked or faulty.
- You attach a bicycle or cargo rack to your vehicle in a manner that causes false alerts.

Note: Blind spot assist may have reduced performance if you attach a trailer to your vehicle without a wiring connection.
Blind spot assist may have difficulty detecting hazards under the following conditions:

- If a vehicle is approaching in an adjacent lane at a higher speed than your vehicle.
- Bad weather conditions are present that obstruct the sensors.

Blind Spot Assist Indicators

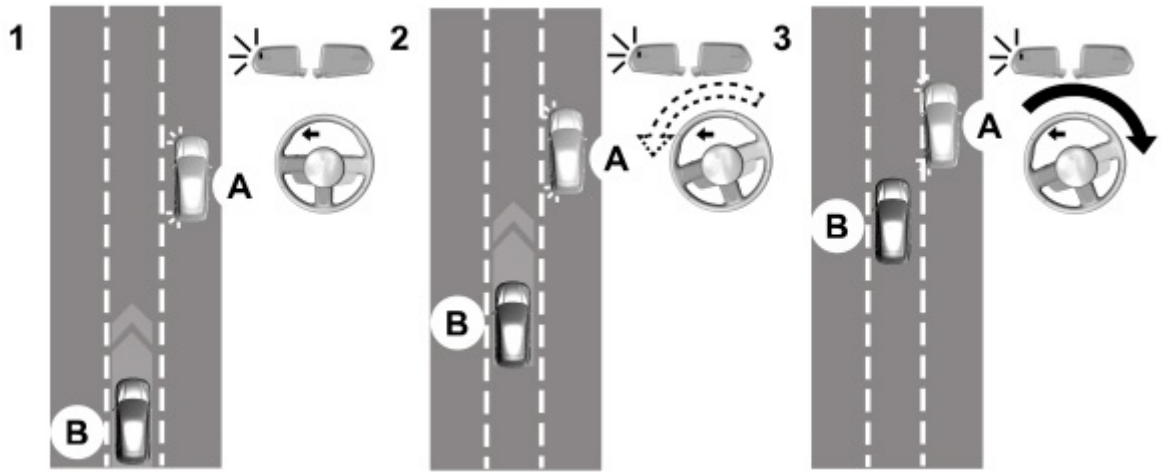


Diagram 1: Vehicle A uses its left turn signal preparing to change from the right lane to the middle lane. Vehicle B is already in the middle lane and just entered Vehicle A's blind spot causing the blind spot information system alert indicator to flash on the exterior mirror.
Diagram 2: The driver of Vehicle A begins to steer into the center lane not aware of Vehicle B.
Diagram 3: Blind spot assist counter steers to help alert the driver of Vehicle A to direct their vehicle back into the right lane to help avoid a possible collision with Vehicle B.
The lane keeping aid warning lamp or yellow lane marking in your instrument cluster display indicate blind spot assist activation. In addition, the blind spot information system alert indicator flashes on the exterior mirror on the same side as the detection. See **Blind Spot Information System**.
Blind Spot Assist Information Messages

Message	Action
Blind Spot Assist Not Available Trailer Attached	Displays if you attach a trailer to your vehicle.
Blind Spot Assist Not Available Side Sensor Blocked	Displays if something is blocking the blind spot information system sensors.
Blind Spot Assist System fault	The system detects a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Trailer Brake Module Fault	Lost communication with the trailer module. The system suppresses blind spot assist until you have the failure fixed.
Trailer Lighting Module Fault See Manual	Lost communication with the trailer module. The system suppresses blind spot assist until you have the failure fixed.
Front Camera Fault Service Required	Front camera fault. Blind spot assist disables until you have the failure fixed.

Lane Keeping System – Troubleshooting

Lane Keeping System – Information Messages

Message	Action
Lane-Keeping System fault Service required	The system detects a fault.Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Front camera temporarily not available	The system is over-temperature due to environmental conditions. Cool the cabin by lowering the climate control temperature, parking your vehicle in the shade, or opening the windows. Clear any dirt or debris from the windshield at the front windshield camera.
Front camera low visibility Clean screen	The system detects a condition that requires you to clean the windshield in order for it to properly operate.
Front camera fault Service required	The system detects a fault.Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Keep hands on steering wheel	The system requests that you keep your hands on the steering wheel.

Lane Keeping System – Frequently Asked Questions

Why is the feature not available (lane markings are gray) when I can see the lane markings on the road?

- Your vehicle speed is less than 40 mph (65 km/h).
- The sun is shining directly into the camera lens.
- A quick intentional lane change has occurred.

- You are driving your vehicle too close to the lane markings for an extended interval of time.
- Driving at high speeds in curves.
- The last alert warning or aid intervention occurred a short time ago.
- Ambiguous lane markings, for example, in construction zones.
- Rapid transition from light to dark, or from dark to light.
- Sudden offset in lane markings.
- ABS or AdvanceTrac™ is active.
- There is a camera blockage due to dirt, grime, fog, frost or water on the windshield.
- You are driving too close to the vehicle in front of you.
- Transitioning between no lane markings to lane markings, or vice versa.
- There is standing water on the road.
- Faint lane markings, for example, partial yellow lane markings on concrete roads.
- Lane width is too narrow or too wide.
- The windshield camera was not properly calibrated after a windshield replacement.
- Driving on roads with tight curves or uneven surfaces.

Why does the vehicle not come back toward the middle of the lane, as expected, in the Aid, or Aid + Alert mode?

- High cross winds are present.
- There is a large road crown.
- Rough roads, grooves or shoulder drop-offs.
- Heavy, uneven loading of the vehicle or improper tire inflation pressure.
- The tires or suspension has been modified from what your vehicle was designed to use.

Blind Spot Information System

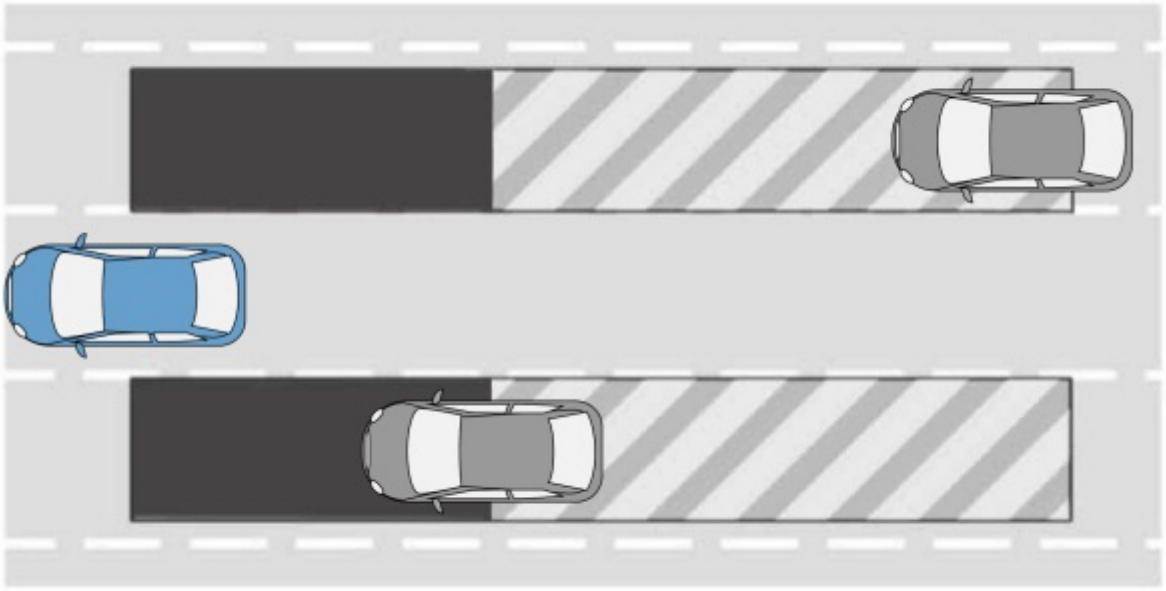
What Is Blind Spot Information System

Blind spot information system detects vehicles that may have entered the blind spot zone.

How Does Blind Spot Information System Work

Blind spot information system uses sensors on both sides of your vehicle, detecting rearward from the exterior mirrors to approximately 13 ft (4 m) beyond the rear bumper. The detection area extends to approximately 59 ft (18 m) beyond the rear bumper when the vehicle speed is greater than 30 mph (48 km/h)

to alert you of faster approaching vehicles.



Blind Spot Information System Precautions

WARNING: Do not use the blind spot information system as a replacement for using the interior and exterior mirrors or looking over your shoulder before changing lanes. The blind spot information system is not a replacement for careful driving.

WARNING: The system may not operate properly during severe weather conditions, for example snow, ice, heavy rain and spray. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.

Note: Blind spot information system does not prevent contact with other vehicles. It does not detect parked vehicles, pedestrians, animals or other infrastructure.

Blind Spot Information System Limitations

Blind spot information system does not operate in park (P) or reverse (R).
The system may not alert you if a vehicle quickly passes through the detection zone while overtaking.
Note: For vehicles without the trailer coverage feature, we recommend that you switch the blind spot information system off when you attach a trailer.

Blind Spot Information System Requirements

Blind spot information system turns on when all the following occur:

- You start your vehicle.
- You shift into drive (D).
- The vehicle speed is greater than 6 mph (10 km/h).

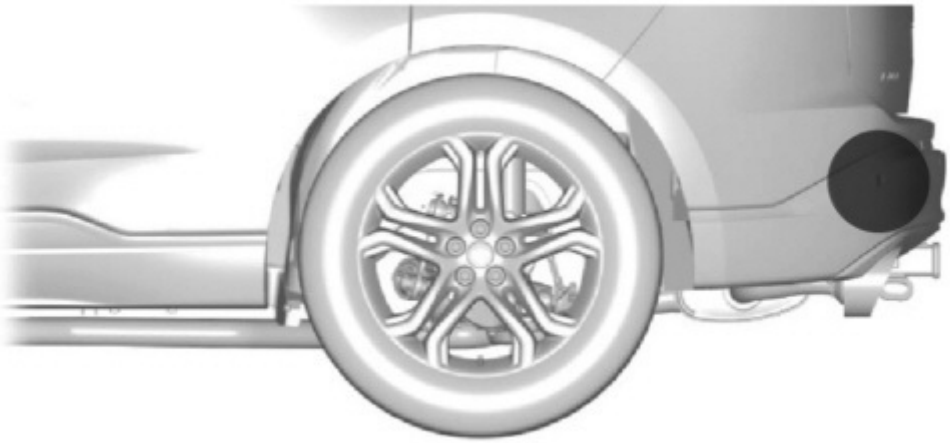
Switching Blind Spot Information System On and Off

1. From the driver assistance menu, press Blind Spot Information System. See **Driver Assistance Menu**.

2. Switch Blind Spot Information System on or off.

When you switch blind spot information system off, a warning lamp illuminates. When you switch the system on or off, the alert indicators flash twice. A telltale remains illuminated in the instrument cluster when the blind spot information system is switched off in the settings menu.
Note: The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.

Locating the Blind Spot Information System Sensors



The sensors are behind the rear fascia on both sides of your vehicle.
Note: Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt.
Note: Do not cover the sensors with bumper stickers, repair compound or other objects.
Note: Bike and cargo racks could cause false alerts due to obstruction of the sensor. We recommend switching the feature off when using a bike or cargo rack.
Note: Blocked sensors may affect system accuracy.
If the sensors become blocked, a message appears in the instrument cluster display. See **Blind Spot Information System – Information Messages**. The alert indicators illuminate but the system does not alert you.

Blind Spot Information System Indicators



 When blind spot information system detects a vehicle, an alert indicator illuminates in the exterior mirror on the side the approaching vehicle is coming from. If you turn the turn signal on for that side of your vehicle, the alert indicator flashes.

Blind Spot Information System – Information Messages

Message	Action
Blind Spot System fault	A fault with the system has occurred.Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Blind Spot not available Sensor blocked See manual	Something is blocking the sensors. Clean the sensors.
Blind Spot Alert deactivated Trailer attached	The system automatically turns off and displays this message when you connect a trailer to your vehicle under any of the following conditions: - Your vehicle does not have blind spot information system with trailer coverage. - You switch the blind spot information system off through the touchscreen. - Your trailer exceeds the limits for the system.Only appears if your vehicle has blind spot information system with trailer coverage.

Note: When connecting a trailer, the system may detect the trailer and turn the system OFF. If the system does not automatically turn OFF, manually switch the blind spot information system OFF. If your vehicle has the blind spot information system with trailer coverage, the system prompts you to set up a trailer that allows the feature to function, if your trailer meets the requirements of the system.

Blind Spot Information System – Troubleshooting

Blind Spot Information System – Information Messages

Message	Action
Blind Spot System fault	A fault with the system has occurred.Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Blind Spot not available Sensor blocked See manual	Something is blocking the sensors. Clean the sensors.
Blind Spot Alert deactivated Trailer attached	The system automatically turns off and displays this message when you connect a trailer to your vehicle under any of the following conditions: - Your vehicle does not have blind spot information system with trailer coverage. - You switch the blind spot information system off through the touchscreen. - Your trailer exceeds the limits for the system.Only appears if your vehicle has blind spot information system with trailer coverage.

Note: When connecting a trailer, the system may detect the trailer and turn the system OFF. If the system does not automatically turn OFF, manually switch the blind spot information system OFF. If your vehicle has the blind spot information system with trailer coverage, the system prompts you to set up a trailer that allows the feature to function, if your trailer meets the requirements of the system.

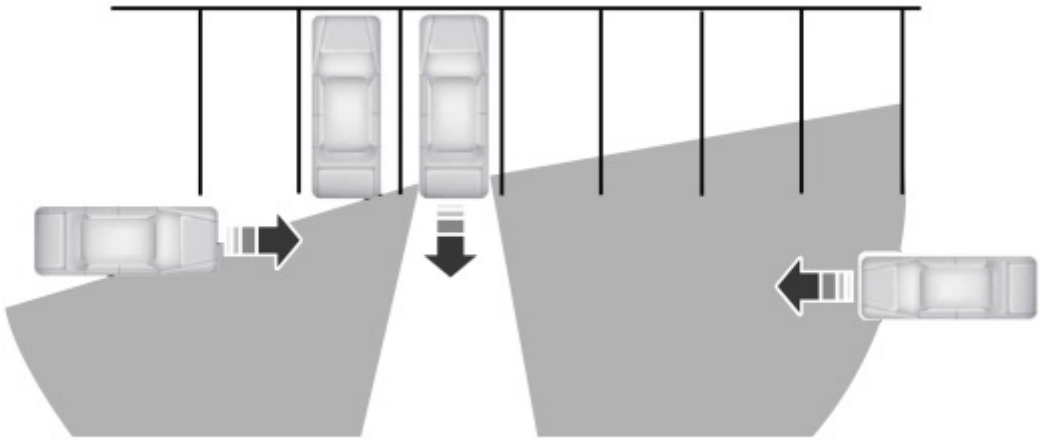
Cross Traffic Alert

What Is Cross Traffic Alert

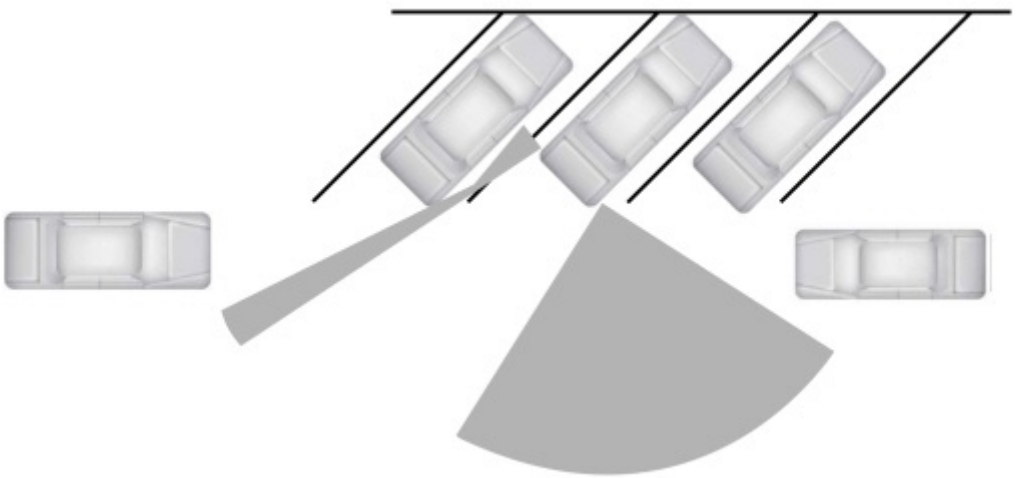
The system is designed to alert you of road users and traffic objects approaching from the rear sides and from behind your vehicle when you shift into reverse (R).
If you continue to reverse at a speed equal or higher than 1 mph (2 km/h) after the system alerts you, the system is designed to apply the brakes if it still detects approaching road users or traffic objects. If the system applies the brakes, a message appears in the instrument cluster display.
Note: There could be instances when unexpected or unwanted braking occurs. You can override this by firmly pressing the accelerator pedal.

How Does Cross Traffic Alert Work

Cross Traffic Alert is designed to detect road users or traffic objects approaching above a minimum speed of 5 mph (8 km/h). Coverage can decrease when the sensors are partially, mostly or fully obstructed.



The sensor on the left-hand side is only partially obstructed and zone coverage on the right-hand side is maximized.



Zone coverage also decreases when parking at narrow angles. The sensor on the left-hand side is mostly obstructed and zone coverage on that side is severely reduced.
Note: Slowly reversing helps increase the coverage area and effectiveness.
The system only applies the brakes for a short period of time when an event occurs. Take action as soon as you notice the system applying the brakes in order to remain in control of your vehicle, the system does not do this for you.

Cross Traffic Alert Precautions

WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: If damage occurs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

WARNING: To help avoid personal injury, always use caution when in reverse (R) and when using the sensing system.

WARNING: The system may not operate properly during severe weather conditions, for example snow, ice, heavy rain and spray. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.

WARNING: The system may not detect objects with surfaces that absorb reflection. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.

WARNING: Traffic control systems, fluorescent lamps, inclement weather, air brakes, external motors and fans may affect the correct operation of the sensing system. This may cause reduced performance or false alerts.

WARNING: Some situations and objects prevent hazard detection, for example, inclement weather, unconventional vehicle types and pedestrians. Apply the brakes when necessary. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: Do not use the system with accessories that extend beyond the front or rear of your vehicle, for example a trailer hitch or bike rack. The system is not able to make corrections for the additional length of the accessories.

WARNING: Do not use the cross traffic alert system as a replacement for using the interior and exterior mirrors or looking over your shoulder before reversing out of a parking space. The cross traffic alert system is not a replacement for careful driving.

Note: Certain add-on devices around the bumper or fascia may cause unexpected system behavior. For example, large trailer hitches, bicycle or surfboard racks, license plate brackets, fuel containers, bumper covers or any other device may block the normal detection zone of the system. Remove the add-on device to prevent unexpected system behavior.
Note: If your vehicle sustains damage to the bumper or fascia leaving it misaligned or bent, it could alter the sensing zone causing inaccurate measurement of obstacles or false alerts.
Note: Vehicle loading and suspension changes can impact the angle of the sensors and may change the normal detection zone of the system resulting in inaccurate measurement of obstacles or false alerts.
Note: You may experience reduced system performance on road surfaces that limit deceleration. For example, roads with ice, loose gravel, mud or sand.

Cross Traffic Alert Limitations

The system may not correctly operate when any of the following occur:

- Something is blocking the sensors.
- Adjacently parked vehicles or objects are obstructing the sensors.
- Traffic objects approach at speeds less than 5 mph (8 km/h) or greater than 37 mph (60 km/h).
- Your vehicle speed is greater than 7 mph (12 km/h).
- You reverse out of an angled parking space.

Note: The system does not alert for small stationary and moving objects.
Cross Traffic Alert Limitations with a Trailer Attached

The system remains on when you attach a trailer to vehicles with blind spot information system with trailer coverage under the following conditions:

- You connect a bike rack or cargo rack with a maximum length of 3 ft (1 m).
- You set the trailer length to 3 ft (1 m) in the touchscreen.

Note: The system may not correctly operate when towing a trailer. For vehicles with an approved trailer tow module and tow bar, the system turns off when you attach a trailer greater than 3 ft (1 m). For vehicles with an aftermarket trailer tow module or tow bar, we recommend that you switch the system off when you attach a trailer.

Switching Cross Traffic Alert On and Off

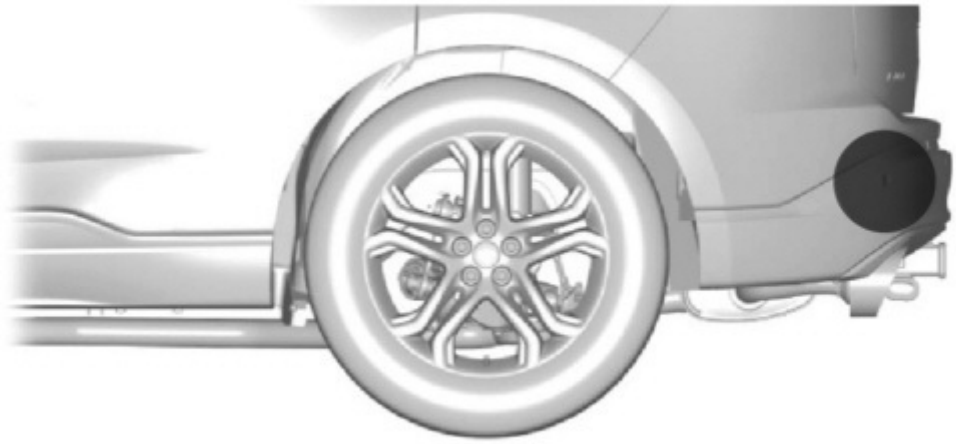
1. From the driver assistance menu, press Cross Traffic Alert. See **Driver Assistance Menu**.
2. Switch Cross Traffic Alert on or off.

When you switch the system on or off, the alert indicators flash twice.
Note: The system switches on every time you switch the ignition on.
Switching Cross Traffic Braking On and Off

1. From the driver assistance menu, press Cross Traffic Braking. See **Driver Assistance Menu**.
2. Switch Cross Traffic Braking on and off.

Note: The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.
Note: If your vehicle does not have a cross traffic braking menu item, this functionality is included in reverse brake assist. See **Reverse Brake Assist**.

Locating the Cross Traffic Alert Sensors



The sensors are located at the rear corners on both sides of your vehicle.
Note: Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt.
Note: Do not cover the sensors with bumper stickers, repair compound or other objects.
Note: Blocked sensors may affect system accuracy.
If something is blocking the sensors, a message may appear in the information display.
Note: Bike and cargo racks could cause false alerts due to obstruction of the sensor. We recommend switching the feature off when using a bike or cargo rack.

Cross Traffic Alert Indicators

When the system detects an approaching vehicle, a tone sounds, a pop-up message appears in the instrument cluster display, an alert indicator illuminates in the relevant exterior mirror and arrows appear in the touchscreen to show from which side the vehicle is approaching.
If the system malfunctions, a message appears. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Note: In exceptional conditions, the system could alert you or apply the brakes, even when there is nothing in the detection zone, for example a vehicle passing further away from your vehicle.

Cross Traffic Alert – Information Messages

Message	Details
Cross Traffic Alert	Displays when the system detects a vehicle.Check for approaching traffic.
Cross Traffic Not Available Sensor Blocked See Manual	Displays if the cross traffic alert system sensors are blocked. Clean the sensors. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Cross Traffic System Fault	The system has malfunctioned.Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Cross Traffic Alert Deactivated Trailer Attached	Displays if you attach a trailer to your vehicle.
Cross Traffic Alert Applying Brakes	Displays if the system applies the brakes. Check for approaching traffic.

Note: There could be different information messages if your vehicle has reverse brake assist. See **Reverse Brake Assist – Information Messages**.

Cross Traffic Alert – Troubleshooting

Cross Traffic Alert – Information Messages

Message	Details
Cross Traffic Alert	Displays when the system detects a vehicle.Check for approaching traffic.
Cross Traffic Not Available Sensor Blocked See Manual	Displays if the cross traffic alert system sensors are blocked. Clean the sensors. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Message	Details
Cross Traffic System Fault	The system has malfunctioned.Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Cross Traffic Alert Deactivated Trailer Attached	Displays if you attach a trailer to your vehicle.
Cross Traffic Alert Applying Brakes	Displays if the system applies the brakes. Check for approaching traffic.

Note: There could be different information messages if your vehicle has reverse brake assist. See **Reverse Brake Assist – Information Messages**.

Pre-Collision Assist

What Is Pre-Collision Assist

Pre-collision assist detects and warns of approaching hazards in the roadway. The system provides multiple levels of assistance to help avoid a collision if your vehicle is rapidly approaching another stationary vehicle, a vehicle traveling in the same direction as yours, or a pedestrian or cyclist within your driving path.

How Does Pre-Collision Assist Work

The system warns the driver of potential hazards by providing three levels of assistance.



If your vehicle is rapidly approaching potential hazards the system provides the following levels of functionality:

1. Alert.
2. Brake support.
3. Automatic emergency braking.

 **Alert**: When active, a flashing visual warning appears and an audible warning tone sounds.
Brake Support: The system helps reduce the impact speed by preparing the brakes for rapid braking. The system does not automatically apply the brakes. If you press the brake pedal, the system may apply additional braking up to maximum braking force, even if you lightly press the brake pedal.
Automatic Emergency Braking: Automatic emergency braking may activate if the system determines that a collision is imminent.
Note: If the pre-collision assist alerts are too frequent or disturbing, you can reduce the alert sensitivity. Setting the low sensitivity results in fewer and later warnings of a potential forward collision. The manufacturer recommends using the high sensitivity setting where possible.
Note: Automatic emergency braking performance is not affected by the sensitivity setting.
Each system has various levels of detection capabilities. See **Pre-Collision Assist Limitations**.

Pre-Collision Assist Precautions

WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: The system only provides limited braking. Your vehicle may not always decelerate quickly enough to avoid a crash without driver intervention. Apply the brakes when necessary.

WARNING: The system does not operate during hard acceleration or steering. Failure to take care may lead to a crash or personal injury.

WARNING: The system may operate with reduced function during cold and inclement weather conditions. Snow, ice, rain, spray and fog can adversely affect the system. Keep the front camera and radar free of snow and ice. Failure to follow this instruction may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

WARNING: The system may not function properly if your vehicle is fitted with a replacement windshield not approved by us.

WARNING: Do not perform windshield repairs around the rear-view mirror. Failure to follow this instruction could limit sensor performance.

WARNING: System performance could be reduced in situations where the vehicle camera has limited detection capability. These situations include but are not limited to direct or low sunlight, vehicles at night without tail lights, unconventional vehicle types, pedestrians or cyclists with complex backgrounds, running pedestrians or fast moving cyclists, partly obscured pedestrians or cyclists, pedestrians or cyclists that the system cannot distinguish from a group. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: The system cannot help prevent all crashes. Do not rely on this system to replace driver judgment and the need to maintain a safe distance and speed.

WARNING: Take additional care if your vehicle is heavily loaded or you are towing a trailer. These conditions could result in reduced performance of this system. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

Note: Automatic emergency braking may activate when a collision is imminent. The system cannot prevent all crashes, but may reduce crash severity. Do not test automatic emergency braking or forward collision warning. Testing this system must only be conducted by authorized test facilities using specialized equipment. Do not use automatic emergency braking to replace normal braking for any reason. Relying on automatic emergency braking to stop your vehicle may cause an unexpected accident which could lead to serious injury or death.

Note: The system does not detect animals.

Pre-Collision Assist Limitations

Pre-collision assist depends on the detection ability of its camera and sensors. Any obstructions or damage to these areas can limit detection or prevent the system from functioning. See **Locating the Pre-Collision Assist Sensors**.

The system is active at 3 mph (5 km/h) and above.

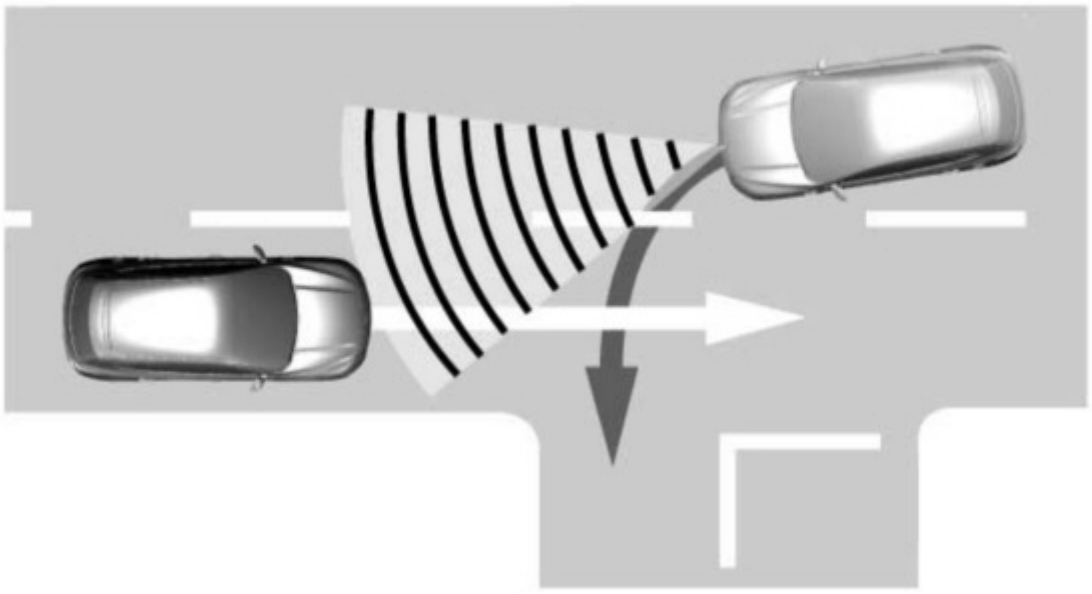
Note: The pre-collision assist system automatically disables when you select four-wheel drive low or manually disable AdvanceTrac™.

Note: Brake support and automatic emergency braking are active up to the maximum speed of your vehicle.

Pedestrian Detection Limitations

Pedestrian detection is active at speeds up to 50 mph (80 km/h).

Pedestrian detection operates optimally when detected hazards are clearly identifiable. System performance may reduce in situations where pedestrians are running, partly obscured, have a complex background, or cannot be distinguished from a group.
Cyclist Detection Limitations
Cyclist detection is active at speeds up to 50 mph (80 km/h).
Cyclist detection functions optimally when detected hazards are clearly identifiable. System performance may reduce in situations where cyclists are fast-moving, partly obscured, have a complex background, or cannot be distinguished from a group.
Intersection Assist (If Equipped)
If your vehicle comes with a radar sensor included in adaptive cruise control, the pre-collision assist system may operate in a scenario where you are turning across an oncoming vehicle's path. Detection of vehicles driving in an oncoming direction is active if your vehicle is driving at speeds up to 19 mph (30 km/h).



Switching Pre-Collision Assist On and Off

You cannot switch the system off.
Adjusting the Pre-Collision Assist Settings

You can adjust the following settings by using the touchscreen controls in the pre-collision assist menu:

- Change alert and distance alert sensitivity to one of three possible settings.
- Switch distance indication and alert on or off.
- If required, switch automatic emergency braking on or off.
- If required, switch evasive steering assist on or off.

Note: Automatic emergency braking and evasive steering automatically turn on every time you start your vehicle.
Note: If you switch automatic emergency braking off, evasive steering assist switches off.
Note: The brake coach will not show if the distance alert is activated.

Locating the Pre-Collision Assist Sensors



1. Image not found or type unknown Camera.
2. Image not found or type unknown Radar sensor.

If a message regarding a blocked sensor or camera appears in the instrument cluster display, something is obstructing the radar or front windshield camera. The radar sensor is behind the fascia in the center of the lower grille. With a blocked sensor or camera, the system may not function, or performance may reduce.
See **Pre-Collision Assist – Information Messages**.
Note: Proper system operation requires a clear view of the road by the camera. Repair any windshield damage in the area of the camera's field of view.
Note: If your vehicle has a radar sensor, and something hits the front end of your vehicle or damage occurs, the radar sensing zone could change. This may cause missed or false vehicle detections. Have your vehicle serviced to have the radar checked for proper coverage and operation.
Note: If your vehicle detects excessive heat at the camera or a potential misalignment condition, a message may display in the instrument cluster display indicating temporary sensor unavailability. When operational conditions are correct, the message disappears. For example, when the ambient temperature around the sensor decreases or the sensor successfully recalibrates.

What is Forward Collision Warning

A warning flashes and an audible warning sounds if your vehicle rapidly approaches another vehicle to warn you of the risk of a crash with the vehicle in front of you.

Adjusting the Sensitivity of Forward Collision Warning

1. From Driver Assistance menu, press Pre-Collision Assist. See **Driver Assistance Menu**.
2. Press Alert Sensitivity.
3. Select a setting.

What Is Distance Alert

The system alerts you with a warning lamp if the distance to the vehicle ahead is small.
Note: The warning lamp does not illuminate if cruise control or adaptive cruise control is active.

Adjusting the Sensitivity of Distance Alert

1. From the Driver Assistance menu, press Pre-Collision Assist. See **Driver Assistance Menu**.
2. Press Alert Sensitivity.

What Is Automatic Emergency Braking

Automatic emergency braking may activate if the system determines that a collision is imminent. The system may help to reduce impact damage or avoid the crash completely.
Automatic emergency braking is only available up to certain speeds. See **Pre-Collision Assist Limitations**
.

Switching Automatic Emergency Braking On and Off

1. From the Driver Assistance menu, press Pre-Collision Assist. See **Driver Assistance Menu**.
2. Press Automatic Emergency Braking.
3. Switch the feature on or off.

Note: A telltale remains illuminated in the instrument cluster when you switch off automatic emergency braking using the settings menu.
Note: Automatic emergency braking turns on each time you switch the ignition on.
Note: If you switch automatic emergency braking off, evasive steering assist also turns off.

What Is Evasive Steering Assist

If your vehicle is rapidly approaching a road user, evasive steering assist helps you steer around the road user.
After you turn the steering wheel in an attempt to avoid a crash with the road user, the system applies additional steering torque to help you steer around the road user. After you pass the road user, the system applies steering torque when you turn the steering wheel to steer back into the lane. The system deactivates after you fully pass the road user.
Note: Road users are defined as pedestrians or bicyclists in your vehicle's path or another stationary vehicle in the same lane or a vehicle traveling in the same lane in the same direction as you. See **Pre-Collision Assist Precautions**.

Evasive Steering Assist Limitations

Evasive steering assist only activates when all the following occur:

- Automatic emergency braking and evasive steering assist are on.
- The system detects a road user ahead and starts to apply the brakes.
- You significantly turn the steering wheel to steer around a road user.

Note: Evasive steering assist does not automatically steer around a road user. If you do not turn the steering wheel, evasive steering assist does not activate.
Note: Evasive steering assist does not activate if the distance to the road user ahead is too small and the system cannot avoid a crash.

Switching Evasive Steering Assist On and Off

1. From Driver Assistance menu, press Pre-Collision Assist. See **Driver Assistance Menu**.
2. Press Evasive Steering Assist.
3. Switch the feature on or off.

Note: If you switch automatic emergency braking off, evasive steering assist turns off.
Note: Automatic emergency braking and evasive steering assist turn on every time you start your vehicle.

Pre-Collision Assist – Warning Lamps

 A telltale illuminates in the instrument cluster display to indicate if the system is disabled, unavailable, or temporarily degraded due to external environmental conditions.
Note: No action is needed if the telltale illuminates without a corresponding information message. See **Pre-Collision Assist Precautions**.

Pre-Collision Assist – Information Messages

Message	Action
Pre-Collision Assist Not Available Sensor Blocked	You have a blocked sensor due to bad weather, ice, mud or water in front of the radar sensor. You can typically clean the sensor to resolve.
Pre-Collision Assist Not Available	A fault with the system has occurred.Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Pre-Collision Assist – Frequently Asked Questions

Camera Troubleshooting
The windshield in front of the camera is dirty or obstructed.

- Clean the outside of the windshield in front of the camera.

The windshield in front of the camera is clean, but the message remains in the instrument cluster display.

- Wait a short time. It could take several minutes for the camera to detect that there is no obstruction.

Radar Troubleshooting (If Equipped)
The surface of the radar in the grille is dirty or obstructed.

- Clean the grille surface in front of the radar or remove the object causing the obstruction.

The surface of the radar in the grille is clean, but the message remains in the instrument cluster display.

- Wait a short time. It could take several minutes for the radar to detect that there is no obstruction.

Heavy rain, spray or fog is interfering with the radar signals.

- Due to the current conditions, the system temporarily disables this feature. Pre-collision assist reactivates a short time after the weather conditions improve.

Swirling water, snow or ice on the surface of the road is interfering with the radar signals.

- Due to the current conditions, the system temporarily disables this feature. Pre-collision assist reactivates a short time after the weather conditions improve.

Radar is out of alignment due to a front-end impact.

- Have your vehicle serviced to have the radar checked for proper coverage and operation.

Forward Collision Warning

What is Forward Collision Warning

A warning flashes and an audible warning sounds if your vehicle rapidly approaches another vehicle to warn you of the risk of a crash with the vehicle in front of you.

Adjusting the Sensitivity of Forward Collision Warning

1. From Driver Assistance menu, press Pre-Collision Assist. See **Driver Assistance Menu**.
2. Press Alert Sensitivity.
3. Select a setting.

Distance Alert

What Is Distance Alert

The system alerts you with a warning lamp if the distance to the vehicle ahead is small.
Note: The warning lamp does not illuminate if cruise control or adaptive cruise control is active.

Adjusting the Sensitivity of Distance Alert

1. From the Driver Assistance menu, press Pre-Collision Assist. See **Driver Assistance Menu**.
2. Press Alert Sensitivity.

Automatic Emergency Braking

What Is Automatic Emergency Braking

Automatic emergency braking may activate if the system determines that a collision is imminent. The system may help to reduce impact damage or avoid the crash completely.
Automatic emergency braking is only available up to certain speeds. See **Pre-Collision Assist Limitations**.

Switching Automatic Emergency Braking On and Off

1. From the Driver Assistance menu, press Pre-Collision Assist. See **Driver Assistance Menu**.
2. Press Automatic Emergency Braking.
3. Switch the feature on or off.

Note: A telltale remains illuminated in the instrument cluster when you switch off automatic emergency braking using the settings menu.
Note: Automatic emergency braking turns on each time you switch the ignition on.
Note: If you switch automatic emergency braking off, evasive steering assist also turns off.

Evasive Steering Assist

What Is Evasive Steering Assist

If your vehicle is rapidly approaching a road user, evasive steering assist helps you steer around the road user.
After you turn the steering wheel in an attempt to avoid a crash with the road user, the system applies additional steering torque to help you steer around the road user. After you pass the road user, the system applies steering torque when you turn the steering wheel to steer back into the lane. The system deactivates after you fully pass the road user.
Note: Road users are defined as pedestrians or bicyclists in your vehicle's path or another stationary vehicle in the same lane or a vehicle traveling in the same lane in the same direction as you. See **Pre-Collision Assist Precautions**.

Evasive Steering Assist Limitations

Evasive steering assist only activates when all the following occur:

- Automatic emergency braking and evasive steering assist are on.
- The system detects a road user ahead and starts to apply the brakes.
- You significantly turn the steering wheel to steer around a road user.

Note: Evasive steering assist does not automatically steer around a road user. If you do not turn the steering wheel, evasive steering assist does not activate.
Note: Evasive steering assist does not activate if the distance to the road user ahead is too small and the system cannot avoid a crash.

Switching Evasive Steering Assist On and Off

1. From Driver Assistance menu, press Pre-Collision Assist. See **Driver Assistance Menu**.
2. Press Evasive Steering Assist.
3. Switch the feature on or off.

Note: If you switch automatic emergency braking off, evasive steering assist turns off.
Note: Automatic emergency braking and evasive steering assist turn on every time you start your vehicle.

Pre-Collision Assist – Troubleshooting

Pre-Collision Assist – Warning Lamps

 A telltale illuminates in the instrument cluster display to indicate if the system is disabled, unavailable, or temporarily degraded due to external environmental conditions.
Note: No action is needed if the telltale illuminates without a corresponding information message. See **Pre-Collision Assist Precautions**.

Pre-Collision Assist – Information Messages

Message	Action
Pre-Collision Assist Not Available Sensor Blocked	You have a blocked sensor due to bad weather, ice, mud or water in front of the radar sensor. You can typically clean the sensor to resolve.
Pre-Collision Assist Not Available	A fault with the system has occurred.Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Pre-Collision Assist – Frequently Asked Questions

Camera Troubleshooting
The windshield in front of the camera is dirty or obstructed.

- Clean the outside of the windshield in front of the camera.

The windshield in front of the camera is clean, but the message remains in the instrument cluster display.

- Wait a short time. It could take several minutes for the camera to detect that there is no obstruction.

Radar Troubleshooting (If Equipped)
The surface of the radar in the grille is dirty or obstructed.

- Clean the grille surface in front of the radar or remove the object causing the obstruction.

The surface of the radar in the grille is clean, but the message remains in the instrument cluster display.

- Wait a short time. It could take several minutes for the radar to detect that there is no obstruction.

Heavy rain, spray or fog is interfering with the radar signals.

- Due to the current conditions, the system temporarily disables this feature. Pre-collision assist reactivates a short time after the weather conditions improve.

Swirling water, snow or ice on the surface of the road is interfering with the radar signals.

- Due to the current conditions, the system temporarily disables this feature. Pre-collision assist reactivates a short time after the weather conditions improve.

Radar is out of alignment due to a front-end impact.

- Have your vehicle serviced to have the radar checked for proper coverage and operation.

Speed Sign Recognition (If Equipped)

What Is Speed Sign Recognition

Speed sign recognition detects speed limit signs to inform you of the current speed limit. Detected speed signs appear in the instrument cluster display.

How Does Speed Sign Recognition Work

Speed sign recognition uses the front windshield camera to detect speed signs.

If your vehicle has speed sign recognition with Map Data, stored speed sign data may influence the indicated speed limit value.

Speed Sign Recognition Precautions

WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow and spray can all limit sensor performance.

WARNING: The system may not operate properly if the sensor is blocked. Keep the windshield free from obstruction.

WARNING: Do not perform windshield repairs around the rear-view mirror. Failure to follow this instruction could limit sensor performance.

WARNING: The system may not function properly if your vehicle is fitted with a replacement windshield not approved by us.

WARNING: The system may not correctly operate if your vehicle is fitted with a suspension kit not approved by Ford.

WARNING: Not all traffic signs can be recognized by the system and displayed correctly.

Note: Use original parts when replacing headlamp bulbs. Other bulbs may reduce system performance.

Speed Sign Recognition Limitations

Speed sign recognition may not detect the correct speed due to:

- Construction zones.
- Outdated map data.
- Incorrect recognition of speed limits by the sensor of signs on parallel roads or exit ramps.
- Missed recognition of faded, dirty, or distorted signs.

Note: The system may not detect all speed signs and may incorrectly read signs.

Speed Sign Recognition Indicators



When the system detects a speed limit sign, it appears in the instrument cluster display.
Note: Sign indicator image may vary based on your vehicle's display type.

Speed Sign Recognition Settings

1. From the settings menu, press driver assistance. See **Center Display**.
2. Press Speed Limit Assist.

You can adjust the following settings:

- Switch the speed warning on or off.
- Set the speed limit tolerance (if equipped).

 If you see this icon next to a menu option, press it for more information.

Speed Sign Recognition – Information Messages

Message	Details
Traffic Sign Reduced Performance See Manual	The traffic sign data provided by the Map Data is unavailable due to weak or no signal. Wait for a short period of time for the signal to improve. If the message continues to appear, have the system checked as soon as possible.

Speed Sign Recognition – Frequently Asked Questions

Why does the speed limit change without any sign on the road?

- The speed limit changes due to the speed limit data stored in the map data.

Why does speed sign recognition show a wrong speed limit?

- The system shows a wrong speed limit due to incorrect and outdated map data or due to incorrect recognition of the speed limits by the camera.

Speed Sign Recognition – Troubleshooting

Speed Sign Recognition – Information Messages

Message	Details
Traffic Sign Reduced Performance See Manual	The traffic sign data provided by the Map Data is unavailable due to weak or no signal. Wait for a short period of time for the signal to improve. If the message continues to appear, have the system checked as soon as possible.

Speed Sign Recognition – Frequently Asked Questions

Why does the speed limit change without any sign on the road?

- The speed limit changes due to the speed limit data stored in the map data.

Why does speed sign recognition show a wrong speed limit?

- The system shows a wrong speed limit due to incorrect and outdated map data or due to incorrect recognition of the speed limits by the camera.

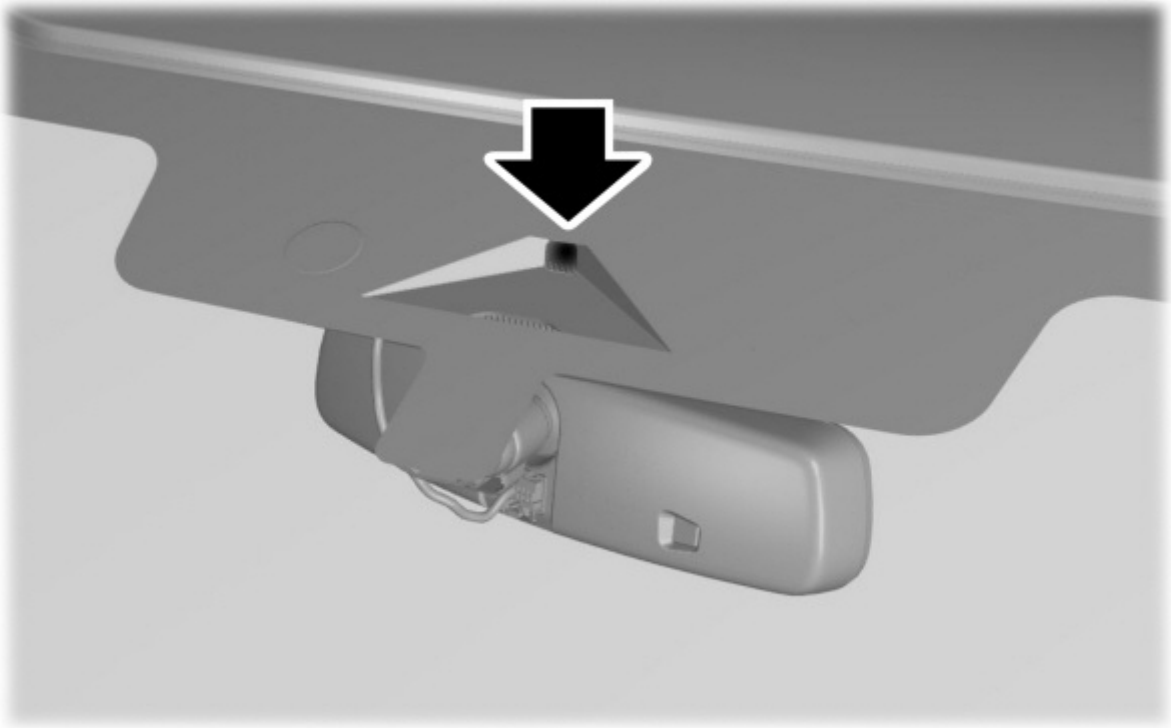
Driver Alert

What Is Driver Alert

Driver alert alerts you if it determines that you are becoming drowsy or if your driving deteriorates.

How Does Driver Alert Work

Driver alert determines your alertness level based on your driving behavior in relation to the lane markings and other factors using the front windshield camera.
If the system determines you are becoming drowsy, it alerts you to rest. If you continue to exhibit drowsy driving behavior, the system delivers an additional warning to rest as soon as it is safe to do so.



If your vehicle has a driver facing camera, driver alert determines if you are driving while distracted by monitoring your eyes and head position. If the system determines you are distracted, it alerts you to return your eyes to the road by sending a “watch the road” warning accompanied by a tone.
If you continue to not look at the road, another " watch the road” warning appears with an additional tone. This warning remains visible in the instrument cluster until you press the "OK" button on the steering wheel.



A Camera and lighting areas behind the steering wheel.

Driver Alert Precautions

WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: Take regular rest breaks if you feel tired. Do not wait for the system to warn you.

WARNING: Certain driving styles may result in the system warning you even if you are not feeling tired.

WARNING: In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow and spray can all limit sensor performance.

WARNING: The system will not operate if the sensor cannot track the road lane markings.

WARNING: If damage occurs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

WARNING: The system may not correctly operate if your vehicle is fitted with a suspension kit not approved by us.

WARNING: The system may not operate properly if the sensor is blocked. Keep the windshield free from obstruction.

WARNING: The system may not function properly if your vehicle is fitted with a replacement windshield not approved by us.

Note: If something is blocking the camera or damaged the windshield, Driver Alert may not function.

Driver Alert Limitations

Driver alert will not function correctly if:

- The sensor cannot track the road lane markings.
- Your vehicle's speed is less than the required activation speed.

Switching Driver Alert On and Off

1. Press Features on the touchscreen.
2. Press Driver Assistance.
3. Switch Driver Alert on or off.

Note: The system remains on or off depending on how it was last set.
Resetting Driver Alert

You can reset the system by either:

- Switching your vehicle off and on.
- Opening and closing the driver door when your vehicle is stationary, and it is safe to do so.

Driver Alert – Information Messages

Message	Details
Driver Alert Rest now	Stop and rest as soon as it is safe to do so.
Driver Alert Rest suggested	Take a rest soon.

Driver Alert – Troubleshooting

Driver Alert – Information Messages

Message	Details
Driver Alert Rest now	Stop and rest as soon as it is safe to do so.
Driver Alert Rest suggested	Take a rest soon.

Load Carrying

Load Carrying Precautions

Keep your loaded vehicle weight within its design rating capability, with or without a trailer. Properly loading your vehicle provides maximum return of vehicle design performance. Before you load your vehicle, become familiar with the following terms for determining your vehicle’s weight rating, with or without a trailer, from the vehicle’s Tire and Loading Information label or Safety Compliance Certification label.

WARNING: The appropriate loading capacity of your vehicle can be limited either by volume capacity (how much space is available) or by payload capacity (how much weight the vehicle should carry). Once you have reached the maximum payload of your vehicle, do not add more cargo, even if there is space available. Overloading or improperly loading your vehicle can contribute to loss of vehicle control and vehicle rollover.

WARNING: Exceeding the Safety Compliance Certification label vehicle weight limits can adversely affect the performance and handling of your vehicle, cause vehicle damage and can result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

WARNING: Do not use replacement tires with lower load carrying capacities than the original tires because they may lower your vehicle's Gross Vehicle Weight Rating and Gross Axle Weight Rating limitations. Replacement tires with a higher limit than the original tires do not increase the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating and Gross Axle Weight Rating limitations.

WARNING: Do not exceed the GVWR or the GAWR specified on the certification label.

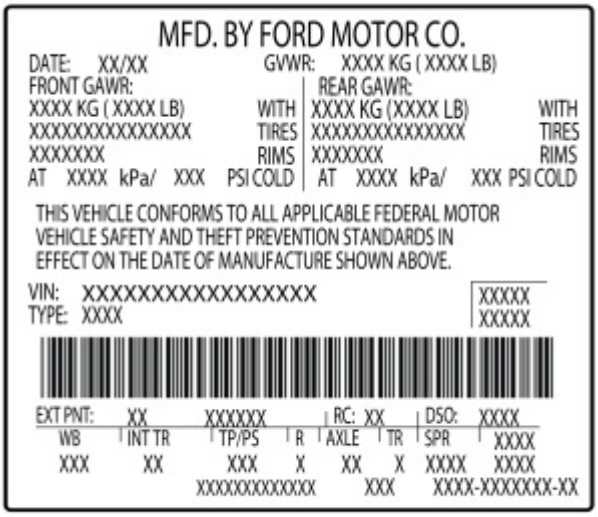
WARNING: Exceeding any vehicle weight rating can adversely affect the performance and handling of your vehicle, cause vehicle damage and can result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

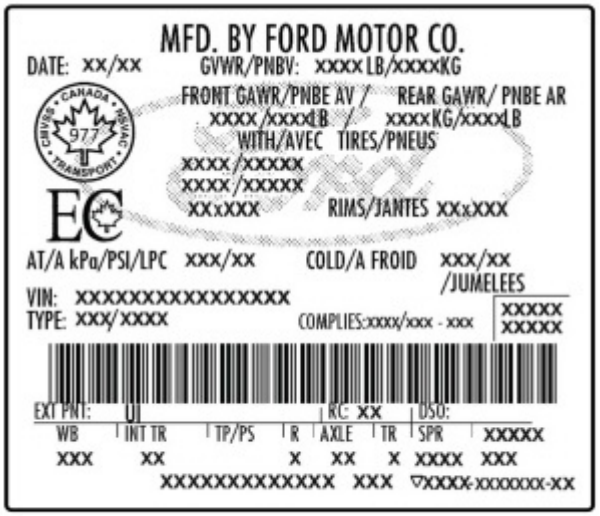
WARNING: When loading the roof racks, we recommend you evenly distribute the load, as well as maintain a low center of gravity. Loaded vehicles, with higher centers of gravity, may handle differently than unloaded vehicles. Take extra precautions, such as slower speeds and increased stopping distance, when driving a heavily loaded vehicle.

Load carrying can also impact other systems present in your vehicle. See **Lane Centering Precautions**.
See **BlueCruise Precautions**.
See **Adaptive Cruise Control Precautions**.
The gross combined weight must never exceed the Gross Combined Weight Rating.

Locating the Safety Compliance Certification Labels

Safety Compliance Certification Label Example:







The Safety Compliance Certification label is located on the door pillar, door latch post, or the door edge that meets the door latch post, next to the driver seat.

What Is the Gross Axle Weight Rating

GAWR (Gross Axle Weight Rating)
GAWR is the maximum allowable weight that a single axle (front or rear) can carry. These numbers are on the Safety Compliance Certification label.

What Is the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating

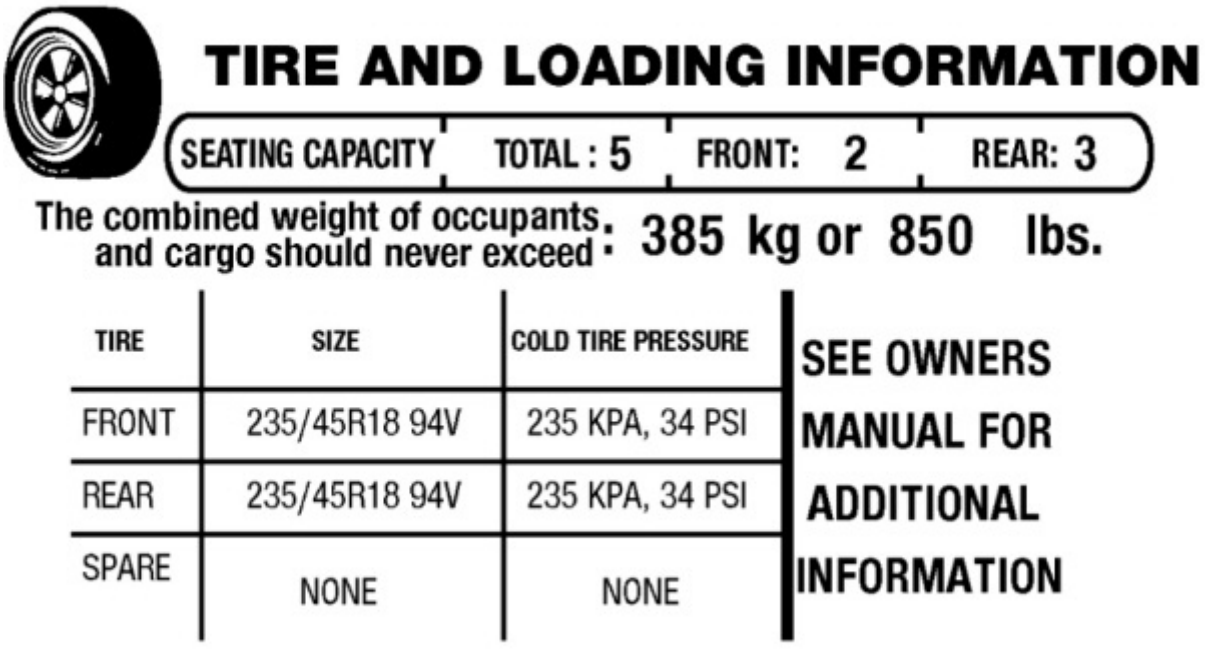
GVWR is the maximum allowable weight of the fully loaded vehicle. This includes all options, equipment, passengers and cargo. It appears on the Safety Compliance Certification label.

What Is the Gross Combined Weight Rating

Gross Combined Weight Rating (GCWR) is the maximum allowable weight of the vehicle and the loaded trailer, including all cargo and passengers, that the vehicle can handle without risking damage. (Important: The towing vehicle's braking system is rated for operation at Gross Vehicle Weight Rating, not at Gross Combined Weight Rating.) Separate functional brakes should be used for safe control of towed vehicles and for trailers where the Gross Combined Weight of the towing vehicle plus the trailer exceed the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating of the towing vehicle. See **Recommended Towing Weights**.

Calculating Payload

Tire and Loading Label Information Example:



TIRE AND LOADING INFORMATION

SEATING CAPACITY	TOTAL : 5	FRONT: 2	REAR: 3

The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed: 385 kg or 850 lbs.

TIRE	SIZE	COLD TIRE PRESSURE
FRONT	235/45R18 94V	235 KPA, 34 PSI
REAR	235/45R18 94V	235 KPA, 34 PSI
SPARE	NONE	NONE

SEE OWNERS MANUAL FOR ADDITIONAL INFORMATION



TIRE AND LOADING INFORMATION
RENSEIGNEMENTS SUR LES PNEUS ET LE CHARGEMENT

Payload is the combined weight of cargo and passengers that your vehicle is carrying. The maximum payload for your vehicle appears on the Tire and Loading label. The label is either on the B-pillar or the edge of the driver door. Vehicles exported outside the US and Canada may not have a tire and loading label. Look for “The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lb” for maximum payload. The payload listed on the Tire and Loading Information label is the maximum payload for your vehicle as built by the assembly plant. If you install any additional equipment on your vehicle, you must determine the new payload. Subtract the weight of the equipment from the payload listed on the Tire and Loading label. When towing, trailer tongue weight or king pin weight is also part of payload.

Calculating the Load Limit

Steps for determining the correct load limit:

1. Locate the statement "The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lb." on your vehicle’s placard.

2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.

3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kg or XXX lb.

4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the “XXX” amount equals 1,400 lb. and there will be five 150 lb. passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lb. (1400-750 (5 x 150) = 650 lb.)

5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.

6. If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle.

Helpful examples for calculating the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity
Suppose your vehicle has a 1400-pound (635-kilogram) cargo and luggage capacity. You decide to go golfing. Is there enough load capacity to carry you, four of your friends and all the golf bags? You and four friends average 220 pounds (99 kilograms) each and the golf bags weigh approximately 30 pounds (13.5 kilograms) each. The calculation would be: 1400 - (5 x 220) - (5 x 30) = 1400 - 1100 - 150 = 150 pounds. Yes, you have enough load capacity in your vehicle to transport four friends and your golf bags. In metric units, the calculation would be: 635 kilograms - (5 x 99 kilograms) - (5 x 13.5 kilograms) = 635 - 495 - 67.5 = 72.5 kilograms.
Suppose your vehicle has a 1400-pound (635-kilogram) cargo and luggage capacity. You and one of your friends decide to pick up cement from the local home improvement store to finish that patio you have been planning for the past two years. Measuring the inside of the vehicle with the rear seat folded down, you have room for twelve 100-pound (45-kilogram) bags of cement. Do you have enough load capacity to transport the cement to your home? If you and your friend each weigh 220 pounds (99 kilograms), the calculation would be: 1400 - (2 x 220) - (12 x 100) = 1400 - 440 - 1200 = - 240 pounds. No, you do not have enough cargo capacity to carry that much weight. In metric units, the calculation would be: 635 kilograms - (2 x 99 kilograms) - (12 x 45 kilograms) = 635 - 198 - 540 = -103 kilograms. You will need to reduce the load weight by at least 240 pounds (104 kilograms). If you remove three 100-pound (45-kilogram) cement bags, then the load calculation would be: 1400 - (2 x 220) - (9 x 100) = 1400 - 440 - 900 = 60 pounds. Now you have the load capacity to transport the cement and your friend home. In metric units, the calculation would be: 635 kilograms - (2 x 99 kilograms) - (9 x 45 kilograms) = 635 - 198 - 405 = 32 kilograms.
The above calculations also assume that the loads are positioned in your vehicle in a manner that does not overload the front or the rear gross axle weight rating specified for your vehicle on the Safety Compliance

Certification label.

Roof Rack Precautions

WARNING: Read and follow the manufacturer's instructions when you are fitting a roof rack.

WARNING: When loading the roof racks, we recommend you evenly distribute the load, as well as maintain a low center of gravity. Loaded vehicles, with higher centers of gravity, may handle differently than unloaded vehicles. Take extra precautions, such as slower speeds and increased stopping distance, when driving a heavily loaded vehicle.

Note: If you use a roof rack, the fuel consumption of your vehicle will be higher and you may experience different driving characteristics.
Note: Never place loads directly on the roof panel. The roof panel is not designed to directly carry a load. Make sure that you securely fasten the load. Check the tightness of the load before driving and at each fuel stop.

Roof Rack (If Equipped)

Roof Rack Precautions

WARNING: Read and follow the manufacturer's instructions when you are fitting a roof rack.

WARNING: When loading the roof racks, we recommend you evenly distribute the load, as well as maintain a low center of gravity. Loaded vehicles, with higher centers of gravity, may handle differently than unloaded vehicles. Take extra precautions, such as slower speeds and increased stopping distance, when driving a heavily loaded vehicle.

Note: If you use a roof rack, the fuel consumption of your vehicle will be higher and you may experience different driving characteristics.
Note: Never place loads directly on the roof panel. The roof panel is not designed to directly carry a load. Make sure that you securely fasten the load. Check the tightness of the load before driving and at each fuel stop.

Luggage Compartment

Luggage Compartment Precautions

WARNING: Make sure that you properly secure objects in the luggage compartment. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury in the event of a sudden stop or crash.

WARNING: Do not place objects on the luggage cover. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death in the event of a sudden stop or crash.

WARNING: The appropriate loading capacity of your vehicle can be limited either by volume capacity (how much space is available) or by payload capacity (how much weight the vehicle should carry). Once you have reached the maximum payload of your vehicle, do not add more cargo, even if there is space available. Overloading or improperly loading your vehicle can contribute to loss of vehicle control and vehicle rollover.

WARNING: Make sure that you fully close the liftgate to prevent exhaust fumes from entering your vehicle. If you are unable to fully close the liftgate, open the air vents or the windows to allow fresh air to enter your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

WARNING: Do not exceed the maximum front and rear axle loads for your vehicle.

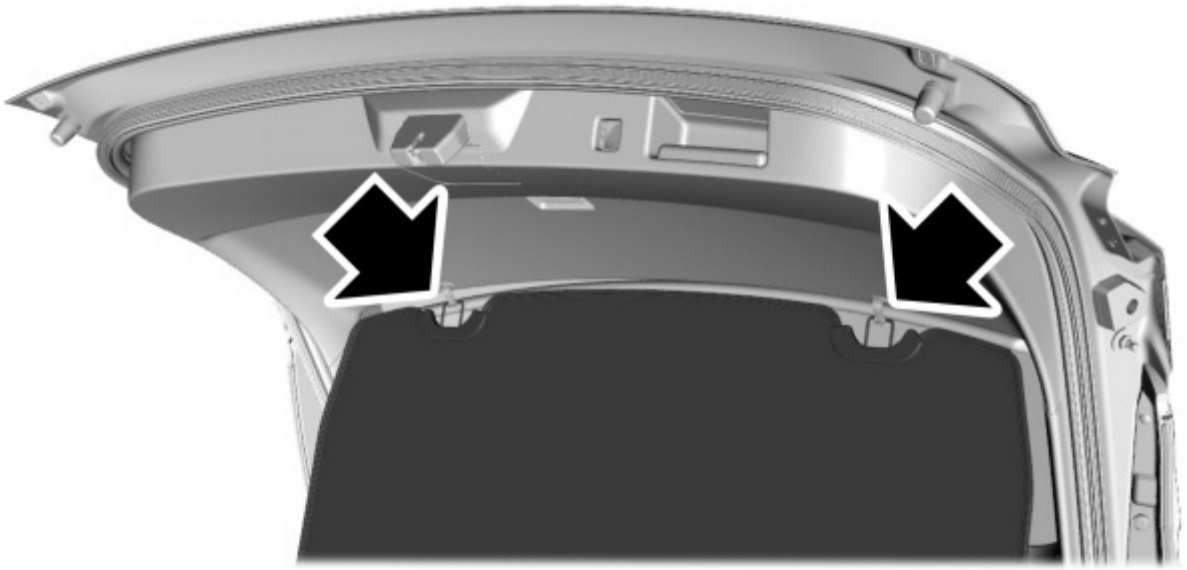
Note: When loading long objects into your vehicle, for example pipes, timber or furniture, be careful not to damage the interior trim.

Installing and Removing the Luggage Compartment Cover

WARNING: Make sure that you properly secure the luggage cover. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury in the event of a sudden stop or crash.

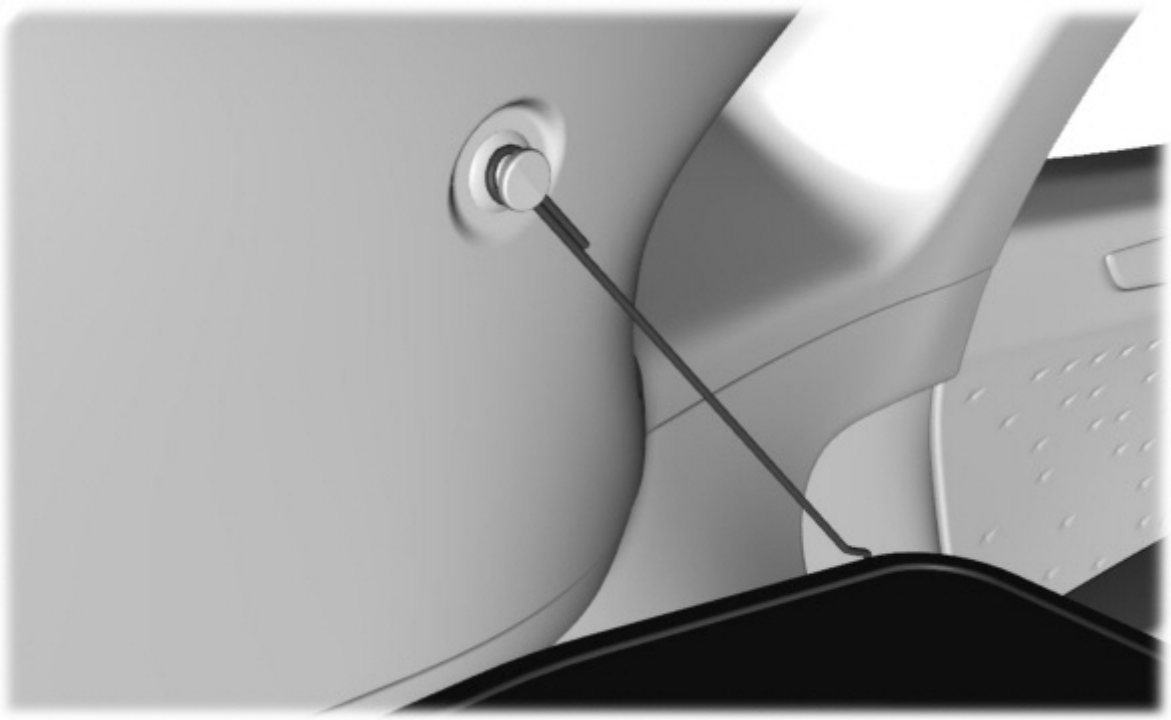
Installing the Luggage Cover

1. Insert the luggage cover.



2. Insert the retaining clips into the liftgate trim panel.

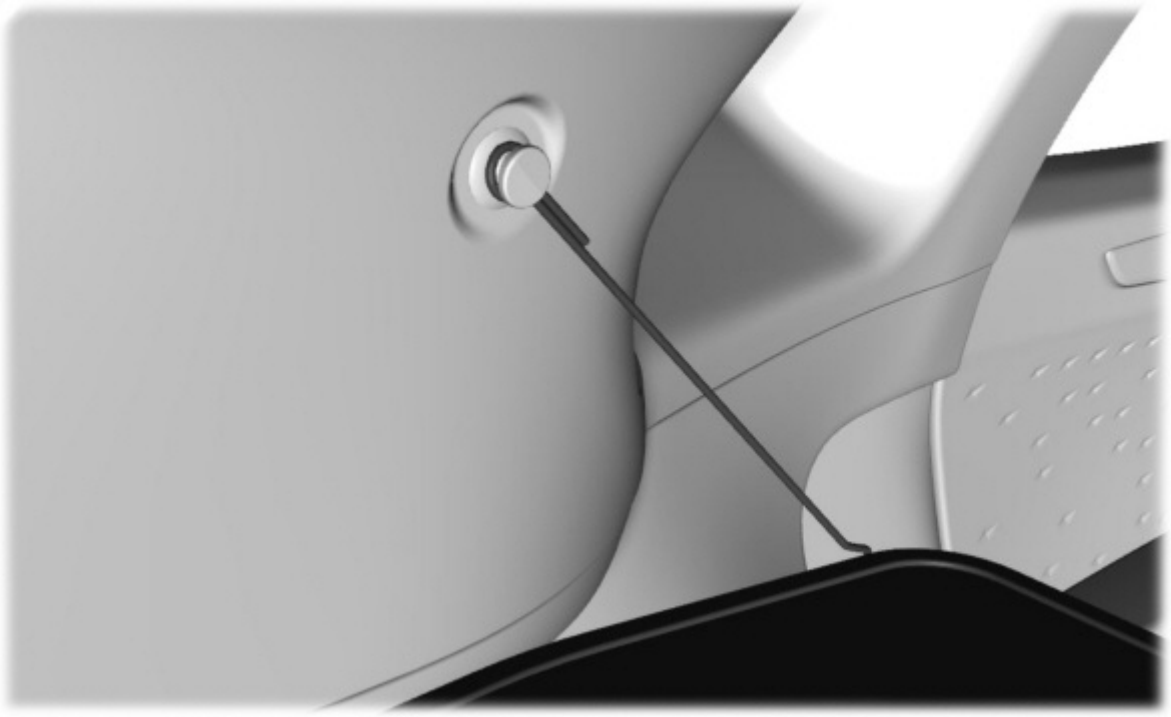
Note: Make sure to support the luggage cover when inserting the retaining clips.



3. Attach the retaining cord to the luggage compartment trim panel.

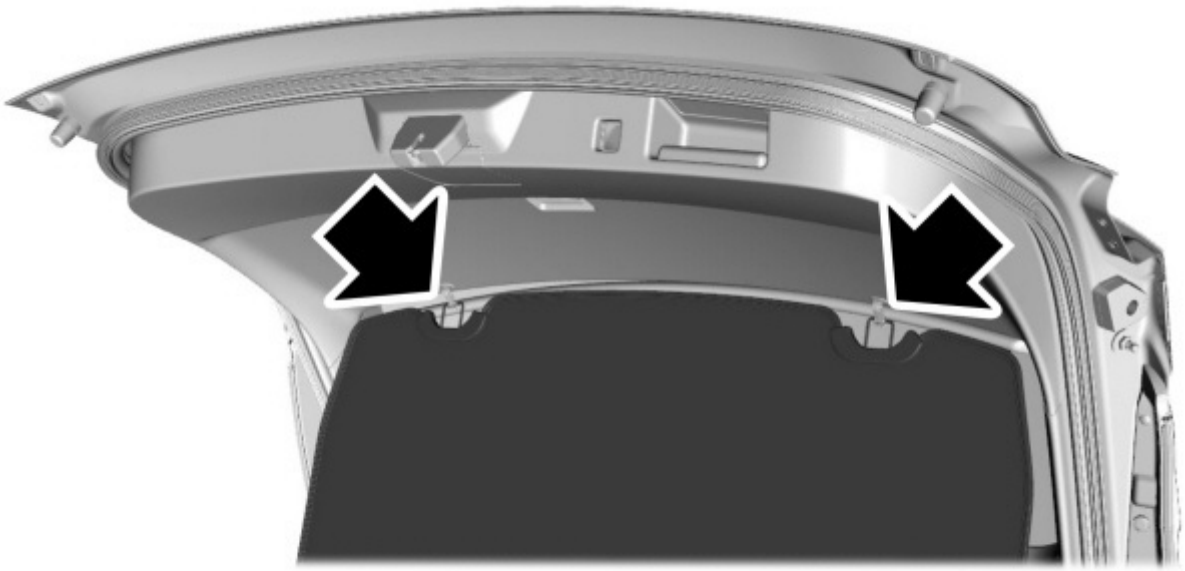
Removing the Luggage Cover

1. Open the liftgate.



2. Detach the retaining cord on the luggage compartment trim panel.

Note: Support the luggage cover when detaching the retaining cord.



3. Detach the retaining clips on the liftgate trim panel.
4. Lift the luggage cover out of the liftgate.

The luggage cover can be stowed in the luggage compartment.

Luggage Compartment Anchor Point Precautions

WARNING: Make sure that you properly secure objects in the luggage compartment. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury in the event of a sudden stop or crash.

Locating the Luggage Compartment Anchor Points

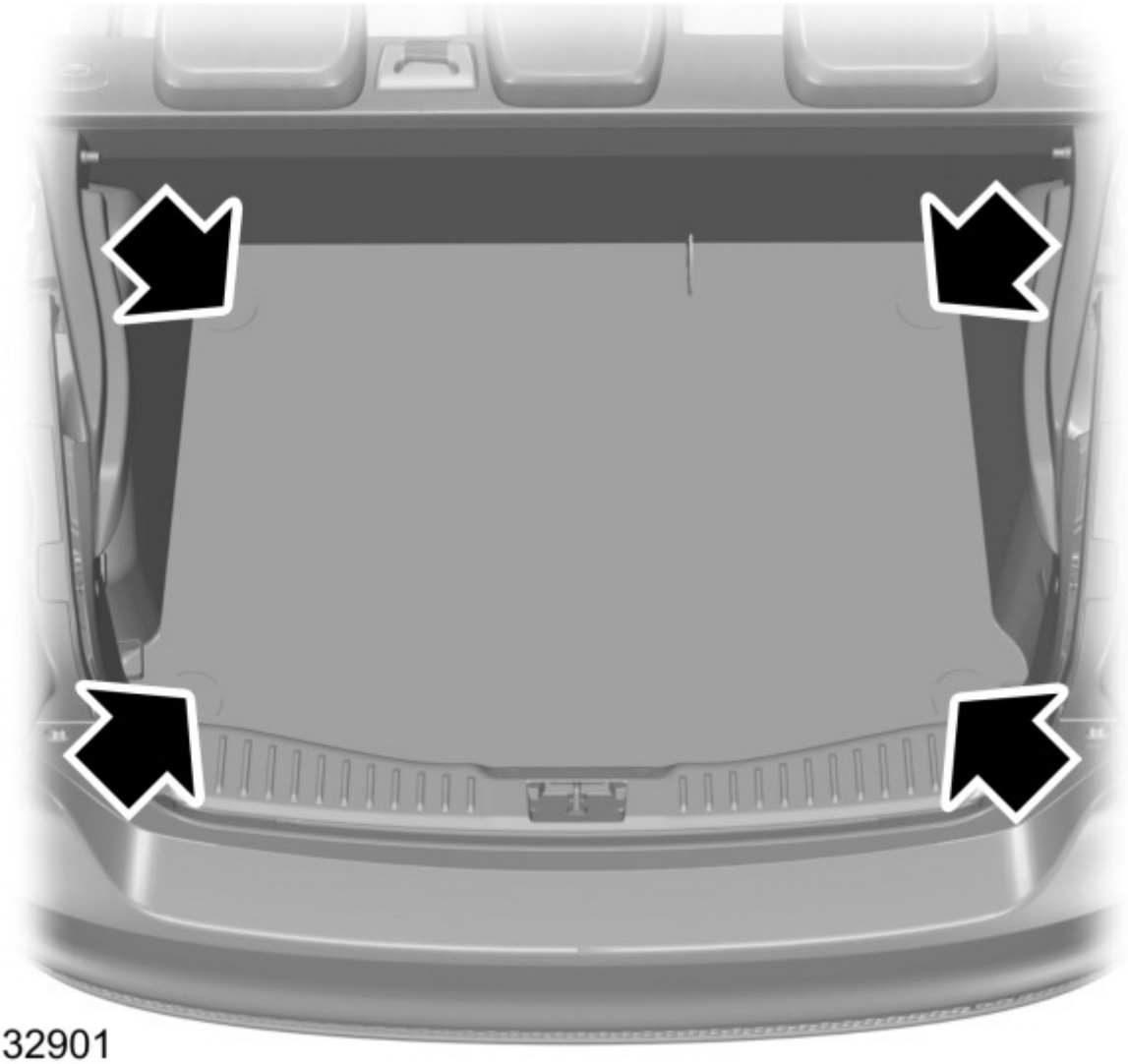


Luggage Compartment Anchor Points

Luggage Compartment Anchor Point Precautions

WARNING: Make sure that you properly secure objects in the luggage compartment. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury in the event of a sudden stop or crash.

Locating the Luggage Compartment Anchor Points



E132901

Connecting a Trailer (If Equipped)

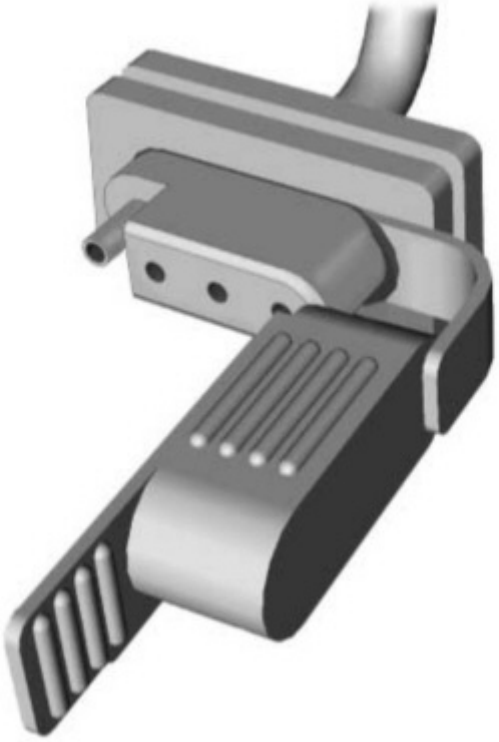
Connecting a Trailer Precautions

Do not tow a trailer until you drive your vehicle at least 1,000 mi (1,600 km).
Consult your local motor vehicle laws for towing a trailer.
See the instructions included with towing accessories for the proper installation and adjustment specifications.
Service your vehicle more frequently if you tow a trailer.
If you use a rental trailer, follow the instructions the rental agency gives you.
Account for the trailer coupler weight as part of your vehicle load when calculating the total vehicle weight.

Do not exceed the load limits. See **Calculating the Load Limit**.

Connecting a Trailer

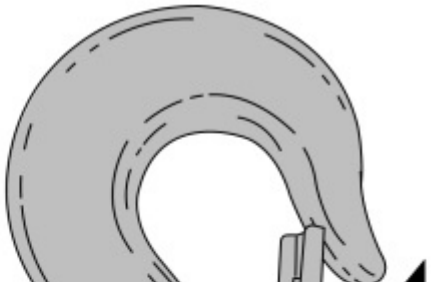
Trailer Towing Connector (If Equipped)



When attaching the trailer wiring connector to your vehicle, only use a proper fitting connector that works with the vehicle and trailer functions.
Note: Install the waterproof protection cap back onto the trailer towing connector whenever it is not in use. This helps to prevent water damage and trailer towing connector malfunction.
Trailer Lamps

> ⚠ **WARNING**: Never connect any trailer lamp wiring to the vehicle's tail lamp wiring; this may damage the electrical system resulting in fire. Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible for assistance in proper trailer tow wiring installation. Additional electrical equipment may be required.

Trailer lamps are required on most towed vehicles. Make sure all running lights, brake lights, turn signals and hazard lights are working.
Hitches
Do not use a hitch that either clamps onto the bumper or attaches to the axle.
Distribute the trailer load so 10-15% of the total trailer weight is on the tongue.
Safety Chains
Note: Do not attach safety chains to the bumper. Always connect the safety chains to the frame or hook retainers of your trailer hitch.
Install trailer safety chains to the trailer hitch as recommended by the manufacturer. Cross the chains under the trailer coupler and allow enough slack for turning tight corners. Do not allow the chains to drag on the ground.



If the trailer safety chain hook has a latch, make sure the latch is fully closed.

Towing a Trailer (If Equipped)

Towing a Trailer Precautions

WARNING: Do not exceed the GVWR or the GAWR specified on the certification label.

WARNING: Towing trailers beyond the maximum recommended gross trailer weight exceeds the limit of your vehicle and could result in engine damage, transmission damage, structural damage, loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover and personal injury.

WARNING: Do not exceed the lowest rating capacity for your vehicle or trailer hitch. Overloading your vehicle or trailer hitch can impair your vehicle stability and handling. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: Make sure that the vertical load on the tow ball is between the minimum and maximum recommended weight at all times. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: Do not cut, drill, weld or modify the trailer hitch. Modifying the trailer hitch could reduce the hitch rating.

WARNING: The anti-lock brake system does not control the trailer brakes.

Trailer Brake Precautions

WARNING: Do not connect a trailer's hydraulic brake system directly to your vehicle's brake system. Your vehicle may not have enough braking power and your chances of having a collision greatly increase.

WARNING: Do not tow a trailer fitted with electric trailer brakes unless your vehicle is fitted with a compatible aftermarket electronic trailer brake controller. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

Electric brakes and manual, automatic or surge-type trailer brakes are safe if you install them properly and adjust them to the manufacturer's specifications. The trailer brakes must meet local and federal regulations. The rating for the tow vehicle's braking system operation is at the gross vehicle weight rating, not the gross combined weight rating.
Certain states require functioning trailer brakes for trailers over a specified weight. Be sure to check state regulations for this specified weight.
Ford Motor Company recommends separate functioning brake systems for trailers weighing more than 1,500 lb (680 kg) when loaded.

Towing a Trailer Limitations

Your vehicle's load capacity designation is by weight, not by volume, so you cannot necessarily use all available space when loading a vehicle or trailer.
Towing a trailer also requires your understanding of how and when to use or not use additional systems present in your vehicle. The following systems referenced are to be used as a guide and are not a complete

list. See **Lane Centering Precautions**.
See **BlueCruise Precautions**.
See **Adaptive Cruise Control Precautions**.
Note: Your vehicle could have reduced performance when operating at high altitudes and when heavily loaded or towing a trailer. When driving at elevation, to match driving performance as perceived at sea level, reduce gross vehicle weight and gross combination weight by 2% per 1,000 ft (300 m) elevation.

Loading Your Trailer

To help minimize how trailer movement affects your vehicle when driving:

- Load the heaviest items closest to the trailer floor.
- Load the heaviest items centered between the left and right side trailer tires.
- Load the heaviest items above the trailer axles or just slightly forward toward the trailer tongue. Do not allow the final trailer tongue weight to go above or below 10-15% of the loaded trailer weight. The trailer tongue weight should never exceed 10% of the maximum towing capacity.
- Select a ball mount with the correct rise or drop. When both the loaded vehicle and trailer are connected, the trailer frame should be level, or slightly angled down toward your vehicle, when viewed from the side.

Trailer Towing Hints

Towing a trailer places an extra load on your vehicle's engine, transmission, axle, brakes, tires and suspension. Periodically inspect these components during and after any towing operation.
When driving with a trailer or payload, a slight takeoff vibration or shudder may be present due to the increased payload weight.
Your vehicle may have a temporary or conventional spare tire. A temporary spare tire is different in diameter or width, tread-type, or is from a different manufacturer than the road tires on your vehicle. Consult information on the tire label or Safety Compliance label for limitations when using.

When towing a trailer:

- Obey country specific regulations for towing a trailer.
- Do not drive faster than 70 mph (113 km/h) during the first 500 mi (800 km).
- Do not make full-throttle starts.
- Check your hitch, electrical connections and trailer wheel lug nuts thoroughly after you have traveled 50 mi (80 km).
- When stopped in congested or heavy traffic during hot weather, place the transmission in park (P) to aid engine and transmission cooling and to help A/C performance.
- Turn off the speed control with heavy loads or in hilly terrain. The speed control may turn off when you are towing on long, steep slopes.
- Shift to a lower gear when driving down a long or steep hill. Do not continuously apply the brakes, as they may overheat and become less effective.
- If your transmission has Grade Assist or Tow/Haul, use this feature when towing. This provides engine braking and helps eliminate excessive transmission shifting for optimum fuel economy and transmission cooling.
- Your vehicle has AdvanceTrac with roll stability control. When towing a trailer, additional loads could cause the AdvanceTrac system to engage during cornering maneuvers. Reduce cornering speeds to make sure that you can maintain control of the vehicle and trailer if the AdvanceTrac system engages.
- Allow more distance for stopping with a trailer attached. Anticipate stops and gradually brake.
- Avoid parking on a slope. However, if you must park on a slope, turn the steering wheel to point your vehicle tires away from traffic flow, set the parking brake, place the transmission in park (P) and place wheel chocks in front and back of the trailer wheels.

Note: Chocks are not included with your vehicle.

Launching or Retrieving a Boat or Personal Watercraft

When backing down a ramp during boat launching or retrieval:

- Do not allow the static water level to rise above the bottom edge of the rear bumper.
- Do not allow waves to break higher than 6 in (15 cm) above the bottom edge of the rear bumper.

Exceeding 6 in (15 cm) could allow water to enter vehicle components, causing internal damage to the components and affecting driveability, emissions and reliability.
Note: Replace the rear axle lubricant anytime the rear axle has been submerged in water.
Note: Disconnect the trailer wiring connector before backing the trailer into the water.
Note: Reconnect the trailer wiring connector after removing the trailer from the water.

Recommended Towing Weights

United States of America

https://www.fordpro.com/en-us/fleet-vehicles/manuals-and-guides/
Canada (English)

https://www.fordpro.ca/en-ca/fleet-vehicles/manuals-and-guides/
Canada (French)

https://www.fordpro.ca/fr-ca/fleet-vehicles/manuals-and-guides/

What Is the Maximum Loaded Trailer Weight

The maximum loaded trailer weight is the highest possible weight of a fully loaded trailer the vehicle can tow.

Calculating the Maximum Loaded Trailer Weight for Your Vehicle

1. Start with the gross combined weight rating for your vehicle model and axle ratio.
2. Subtract all of the following that apply to your vehicle:

- Vehicle curb weight.
- Hitch hardware weight, for example a draw bar, ball, locks or weight distributing hardware.
- Driver weight.
- Passenger weight.
- Payload, cargo and luggage weight.
- Aftermarket equipment weight.

This equals the maximum loaded trailer weight for this combination.
Note: The trailer tongue load is considered part of the payload for your vehicle. Reduce the total payload by the final trailer tongue weight.
Note: Consult an authorized dealer to determine the maximum trailer weight allowed for your vehicle if you are not sure.

Towing Weights and Dimensions

Recommended Towing Weights

United States of America



https://www.fordpro.com/en-us/fleet-vehicles/manuals-and-guides/
Canada (English)



https://www.fordpro.ca/en-ca/fleet-vehicles/manuals-and-guides/
Canada (French)



https://www.fordpro.ca/fr-ca/fleet-vehicles/manuals-and-guides/

What Is the Maximum Loaded Trailer Weight

The maximum loaded trailer weight is the highest possible weight of a fully loaded trailer the vehicle can tow.

Calculating the Maximum Loaded Trailer Weight for Your Vehicle

1. Start with the gross combined weight rating for your vehicle model and axle ratio.
2. Subtract all of the following that apply to your vehicle:

- Vehicle curb weight.
- Hitch hardware weight, for example a draw bar, ball, locks or weight distributing hardware.
- Driver weight.
- Passenger weight.
- Payload, cargo and luggage weight.
- Aftermarket equipment weight.

This equals the maximum loaded trailer weight for this combination.
Note: The trailer tongue load is considered part of the payload for your vehicle. Reduce the total payload by the final trailer tongue weight.
Note: Consult an authorized dealer to determine the maximum trailer weight allowed for your vehicle if you are not sure.

Trailer Sway Control (If Equipped)

How Does Trailer Sway Control Work

The system applies the brakes to the individual wheels and reduces engine torque to aid vehicle stability.
If the trailer begins to sway, the stability control lamp flashes and the message **Trailer Sway Reduce Speed** appears in the instrument cluster display.
Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Check the vertical weight on the tow ball and trailer load distribution.

Trailer Sway Control Precautions

WARNING: Turning off trailer sway control increases the risk of loss of vehicle control, serious injury or death. Ford does not recommend disabling this feature except in situations where speed reduction may be detrimental (such as hill climbing), the driver has significant trailer towing experience, and can control trailer sway and maintain safe operation.

Note: This feature only activates when significant trailer sway occurs.
Note: This feature does not prevent trailer sway, but reduces it once it begins.
Note: This feature cannot stop all trailers from swaying.
Note: In some cases, if vehicle speed is too high, the system may activate multiple times, gradually reducing vehicle speed.

Driving Hints

Breaking-In

You need to break in new tires for approximately 300 mi (480 km). During this time, your vehicle may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics.

Driving Economically

The following helps to improve fuel consumption:

- Drive smoothly, accelerate gently and anticipate the road ahead to avoid heavy braking.
- Regularly check your tire pressures and make sure that they are inflated to the correct pressure.
- Follow the recommended maintenance schedule and carry out the recommended checks.
- Plan your journey and check the traffic before you set off. It is more efficient to combine errands into a single trip whenever possible.
- Avoid idling the engine in cold weather or for extended periods. Start the engine only when you are ready to set off.
- Do not carry unnecessary weight in your vehicle as extra weight wastes fuel.
- Do not add unnecessary accessories to the exterior of your vehicle, for example running boards. If you use a roof rack, remember to fold it down or remove it when not in use.
- Do not shift into neutral when you are braking or when your vehicle is slowing down.
- Shut all windows when driving at high speeds.
- Switch off all electric systems when not in use, for example air conditioning. Make sure that you unplug any accessories from the auxiliary power points when not in use.

Driving in Cold Weather

The functional operation of some components and systems can be affected at temperatures below approximately -13 °F (-25 °C).
Driving on Snow and Ice

WARNING: If you are driving in slippery conditions that require tire chains or cables, then it is critical that you drive cautiously. Keep speeds down, allow for longer stopping distances and avoid aggressive steering to reduce the chances of a loss of vehicle control which can lead to serious injury or death. If the rear end of your vehicle slides while cornering, steer in the direction of the slide until you regain control of your vehicle.

On ice and snow, you should drive more slowly than usual. Your vehicle has a four wheel anti-lock brake system, do not pump the brake pedal. See **Anti-Lock Braking System Limitations**.
In snow and ice, all-wheel drive vehicles have advantages over two-wheel drive vehicles but can still skid. When driving on snowy or icy roads, should you start to slide, turn the steering wheel in the direction of the slide until you regain control.
On snow and ice, avoid suddenly applying power and avoid quick change of direction. Apply the accelerator slowly and steadily when starting from a stop.
Avoid sudden braking. An all-wheel drive vehicle may accelerate better than a two-wheel drive vehicle in snow and ice. However, an all-wheel drive vehicle will not stop any faster, as braking occurs at all four wheels. Do not become overconfident to road conditions.

Driving Through Mud and Water

Mud
Be cautious of sudden changes in vehicle speed or direction when you are driving in mud. Even all-wheel drive and four-wheel drive vehicles can lose traction in mud. If your vehicle slides, steer in the direction of the slide until you regain control of your vehicle. After driving through mud, clean off residue stuck to rotating driveshafts and tires. Excess residue can cause an imbalance that could damage drive components.
Note: If your vehicle gets stuck in mud, it could be rocked out by shifting between forward and reverse gears, stopping between shifts in a steady pattern. Press lightly on the accelerator in each gear.
Water
If you must drive though water approach it cautiously. See **Driving Through Shallow Water**.

Driving on Hilly or Sloping Terrain

WARNING: Extreme care should be used when steering the vehicle in reverse down a slope so as not to cause the vehicle to swerve out of control.

Although natural obstacles could make it necessary to travel diagonally up or down a hill or steep incline, you should try to drive straight up or straight down.
Note: Avoid turning on steep slopes or hills. A danger lies in losing traction, slipping sideways and possible vehicle rollover. Whenever driving on a hill, determine beforehand the route you can use. Do not drive over the crest of a hill without seeing what conditions are on the other side. Do not drive in reverse over a hill without the aid of an observer.
Apply just enough power to the wheels to climb the hill. Too much power causes the tires to slip, spin or lose traction, and you could lose control of your vehicle. When descending a steep hill, do not descend the hill in neutral. Avoid sudden hard braking to keep the front wheels rolling and to maintain your vehicle's steering.
Note: Your vehicle has an anti-lock braking system, apply the brake pedal steadily. Do not pump the brake pedal.

Driving In Sand

When driving over sand, try to keep all four wheels on the most solid area of the trail.Steadily drive through the terrain.Apply the accelerator slowly and avoid excessive wheel slip. Do not drive your vehicle in deep sand for an extended period of time.This could overheat the system.A message appears in the instrument cluster display.
Note: If your vehicle gets stuck in sand, it could be rocked out by shifting between forward and reverse gears, stopping between shifts in a steady pattern. Press lightly on the accelerator pedal in each gear.

Driving Through Shallow Water

WARNING: Do not attempt to cross a deep or flowing body of water. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

Note: Driving through standing water can cause vehicle damage.
Note: Engine damage can occur if water enters the air filter.
Before driving through standing water, check the depth. Never drive through water that is higher than the bottom of the front rocker area of your vehicle.



When driving through standing water, drive very slowly and do not stop your vehicle. Your brake performance and traction could be limited.After driving through water and as soon as it is safe to do so:

- Lightly press the brake pedal to dry the brakes and to check that they work.
- Turn the steering wheel to check that the steering power assist works.

Check the function of the following:

- Horn
- Exterior lights

Maximizing Your Driving Range

Driving in Cold Weather
Keep your vehicle fully charged in cold weather conditions.
Use the heated seats and steering wheel for comfort along with moderate cabin temperature and fan settings to reduce the energy needed for climate control.
Preconditioning Your Vehicle
Precondition your vehicle using the departure and comfort settings to heat or cool the cabin and the high voltage battery when you have your vehicle plugged in. Using energy from the charging source prior to your departure, the system can manage the battery temperature for the best driving performance and use less energy for heating or cooling the cabin at the start of your drive. This helps maximize your driving range.

See **Charging Your Vehicle**.

Note: You can also access departure and comfort settings using the Lincoln mobile app.

Note: Lower cabin temperature settings on the climate control system results in better trip range.

Parking Your Vehicle

At temperatures just above the freezing point and lower, plug your vehicle in when not in use to maintain high voltage battery performance.

When possible park your vehicle under a covered area or in a garage. This helps moderate temperatures which affect the performance of the high voltage battery and requires energy to heat or cool the cabin.

Driving Style

Range is reduced when driving aggressively or at consistently high speeds. Aggressive driving for extended periods could result in reducing your battery's efficiency and lifespan. Use the trip application on your touchscreen to see your driving scores. See **Trip Computer**.

Floor Mats

WARNING: Use a floor mat designed to fit the footwell of your vehicle that does not obstruct the pedal area. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: Pedals that cannot move freely can cause loss of vehicle control and increase the risk of serious personal injury.

WARNING: Secure the floor mat to both retention devices so that it cannot slip out of position and interfere with the pedals. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: Do not place additional floor mats or any other covering on top of the original floor mats. This could result in the floor mat interfering with the operation of the pedals. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: Always make sure that objects cannot fall into the driver foot well while your vehicle is moving. Objects that are loose can become trapped under the pedals causing a loss of vehicle control.



To install floor mats that have eyelets, position the floor mat eyelet over the retention post and press down to lock in position. Repeat for all eyelets on the floor mat.
If the driver side floor mat is not securely fastened, remove it, and contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible. Do not drive with a loose floor mat.
To remove the floor mats, reverse the installation procedure.
Note: Regularly check the floor mats to make sure they are secure.

Electric Vehicle - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)

Maximizing Your Driving Range

Driving in Cold Weather
Keep your vehicle fully charged in cold weather conditions.
Use the heated seats and steering wheel for comfort along with moderate cabin temperature and fan settings to reduce the energy needed for climate control.
Preconditioning Your Vehicle
Precondition your vehicle using the departure and comfort settings to heat or cool the cabin and the high voltage battery when you have your vehicle plugged in. Using energy from the charging source prior to your departure, the system can manage the battery temperature for the best driving performance and use less energy for heating or cooling the cabin at the start of your drive. This helps maximize your driving range.
See **Charging Your Vehicle**.
Note: You can also access departure and comfort settings using the Lincoln mobile app.
Note: Lower cabin temperature settings on the climate control system results in better trip range.
Parking Your Vehicle
At temperatures just above the freezing point and lower, plug your vehicle in when not in use to maintain high voltage battery performance.
When possible park your vehicle under a covered area or in a garage. This helps moderate temperatures which affect the performance of the high voltage battery and requires energy to heat or cool the cabin.
Driving Style
Range is reduced when driving aggressively or at consistently high speeds. Aggressive driving for extended periods could result in reducing your battery’s efficiency and lifespan. Use the trip application on your touchscreen to see your driving scores.
See **Trip Computer**.

Crash and Breakdown Information

Roadside Assistance

Vehicles Sold in the United States: Getting Roadside Assistance
If you have a vehicle concern, Lincoln offers a complimentary roadside assistance program. This program is separate from the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

The service is available:
- Throughout the life of the vehicle for original owners.
- For six years or 70,000 mi (110,000 km), whichever comes first, for subsequent owners.

Knowing your vehicle's VIN, mileage and your specific location allows help to get to you faster.

Roadside Assistance covers:
- A flat tire change with a good spare. For vehicles with an unusable tire inflation kit, we provide towing service.

- Battery jump start.
- Lock-out assistance - key replacement cost is the client's responsibility.
- Fuel delivery — independent service contractors, if not prohibited by state, local or municipal law shall deliver up to 2 gal (8 L) of gasoline fuel to a disabled vehicle. Roadside Assistance limits fuel delivery service to two no-charge occurrences within a 12-month period.
- Winch out — available within 100 ft (30 m) of a paved or county maintained road, no recoveries.
- Towing — independent service contractors, if not prohibited by state, local or municipal law shall tow Lincoln eligible vehicles to the client's selling or preferred dealer within 100 mi (160 km) of the disablement location or to the nearest Lincoln dealer. If a client requests a tow to a selling or preferred dealer that is more than 100 mi (160 km) from the disablement location, the client is responsible for any mileage costs in excess of 100 mi (160 km).
- Roadside Assistance includes up to $200 for a towed trailer if the disabled eligible vehicle requires service at the nearest authorized dealer.If the towing vehicle is operational but the trailer is not, then the trailer does not qualify for any roadside services.

Vehicles Sold in the United States: Using Roadside Assistance
United States clients who require roadside assistance, call 1-800-521-4140 or contact Roadside Assistance using the Lincoln app.
If you need to arrange roadside assistance on your own, Lincoln reimburses a reasonable amount for towing to the nearest Lincoln dealership within 100 mi (160 km). To obtain reimbursement information, United States clients, call 1-800-521-4140. Clients need to submit their original receipts.
Vehicles Sold in Canada: Getting Roadside Assistance
If you have a vehicle concern, Lincoln offers a complimentary roadside assistance program. This program is eligible within Canada or the continental United States.
The service is available 24 hours a day, seven days a week.
This program is separate from the New Vehicle Limited Warranty, beginning from the original warranty start date and lasts the life of the vehicle for the original owner. Subsequent owners receive coverage that is concurrent with the 6 years or 70,000 mi (110,000 km), whichever occurs first, powertrain warranty coverage period.
Note: Canadian roadside coverage and benefits may differ from the U.S. coverage.
For complete program coverage details, review your warranty guide, contact your dealer, call us in Canada at 1-844-665-2007, or visit our website at https://www.lincolncanada.com/

Download the Sykes4Lincoln Roadside Assistance App for access to your roadside assistance services. For more information, scan here:

If you purchased your vehicle in Canada and require roadside assistance, please call 1-844-665-2007 or contact Roadside Assistance using the Lincoln app.
Ford Motor Company of Canada, Limited reserves the right to modify or discontinue Roadside Assistance at any time. Certain restrictions apply to Roadside Assistance benefits.
For further details, call
1-844-665-2007

High Voltage Battery Vehicle Precautions - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)

In the event of damage or fire involving an electric vehicle or hybrid-electric vehicle:

- Assume the high-voltage battery and associated components are energized and fully charged.
- Exposed electrical components, wires and high-voltage batteries present potential high-voltage shock hazards.
- Venting high-voltage battery vapors are potentially toxic and flammable.
- Physical damage to the vehicle or high-voltage battery could result in immediate or delayed release of toxic, flammable gases and fire.

Vehicle information and general safety practices include reviewing the owner's manual and becoming familiar with your vehicle's safety information and recommended safety practices.
Crashes
A crash or impact significant enough to require an emergency response for conventional vehicles would also require the same response for an electric or hybrid-electric vehicle.
If Possible:

1. Move your vehicle to a safe, nearby location and remain on the scene.
2. Roll down the windows before you switch your vehicle off.
3. Place your vehicle in park (P), set the parking brake, switch off the vehicle, activate the hazard flashers and move your key(s) at least 16 ft (5 m) away from the vehicle.

Always:

- Call emergency assistance if needed and advise that an electric or hybrid-electric vehicle is involved.
- Avoid contact with leaking fluids and gases, and remain out of the way of oncoming traffic until emergency responders arrive.
- When emergency responders arrive, tell them that the vehicle involved is an electric vehicle or hybrid-electric vehicle.

Fires
As with any vehicle, call emergency assistance immediately if you see sparks, smoke or flames coming from the vehicle. Remain a safe distance from the vehicle and try to stay clear of the smoke.

1. Exit the vehicle immediately.
2. Advise emergency assistance that an electric or hybrid-electric vehicle is involved.
3. Never attempt to extinguish an electric vehicle fire or move a vehicle that is on fire.
4. As with any vehicle fire, do not inhale smoke, vapors or gas from the vehicle, as they may be hazardous.

Post-Incident

1. Do not store a severely damaged vehicle with a lithium-ion battery inside a structure or within 49 ft (15 m) of any structure or vehicle.
2. Make sure that passenger and luggage compartments remain ventilated.

3. Call emergency assistance if you observe leaking fluids, sparks, smoke or flames, or hear gurgling or bubbling from the high-voltage battery.

Switching the Hazard Flashers On and Off

 The hazard flasher button is on the instrument panel. Press the button to switch the hazard flashers on if your vehicle is creating a safety hazard for other road users.
When you switch the hazard flashers on, all front and rear direction indicators flash.
Note: The hazard flashers operate when the ignition is in any position, or if the key is not in the ignition. The battery loses charge and could have insufficient power to restart your vehicle.
Press the button again to switch them off.

Jump Starting Precautions

WARNING: Batteries normally produce explosive gases which can cause personal injury. Therefore, do not allow flames, sparks or lighted substances to come near the battery. When working near the battery, always shield your face and protect your eyes. Always provide correct ventilation.

WARNING: Keep batteries out of reach of children. Batteries contain sulfuric acid. Avoid contact with skin, eyes or clothing. Shield your eyes when working near the battery to protect against possible splashing of acid solution. In case of acid contact with skin or eyes, flush immediately with water for a minimum of 15 minutes and get prompt medical attention. If acid is swallowed, call a physician immediately.

WARNING: Use only adequately sized cables with insulated clamps.

WARNING: Make sure that the cables are clear of any moving parts and fuel delivery system parts.

WARNING: Connect batteries with only the same nominal voltage.

WARNING: Using the jump leads incorrectly or completing the jump start procedure incorrectly can cause the battery to explode, which can lead to severe injuries.

WARNING: All work on the vehicle battery and the electrical system can cause serious chemical burns, fire or electric shocks. Always read the warnings and safety information before carrying out any kind of work on the battery

WARNING: Never charge a 12-volt vehicle battery once it has been frozen. Discharged 12-volt vehicle batteries can even freeze at temperatures of approximately 0°C (+32°F).

WARNING: The battery should be replaced if it is or has ever been frozen.

WARNING: A highly explosive mixture of gases is given off when the vehicle battery is jump started. Always keep fire, sparks, naked flames and lit cigarettes away from the vehicle battery. Never use a mobile telephone when the jump leads are being connected or disconnected.

WARNING: Only charge the battery in a well-ventilated space as the battery emits a highly explosive mixture of gases when the vehicle is being jump started.

WARNING: Never confuse the negative and positive terminals or connect the jump leads incorrectly.

WARNING: Observe the jump lead manufacturer's instructions.

WARNING: If the engine is running while the hood is open, stay clear of moving engine components. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

Do not attempt to push-start an automatic transmission vehicle. This could cause transmission damage.

Do not disconnect the battery of the disabled vehicle. This could damage your vehicle's electrical system.

Preparing the Vehicle

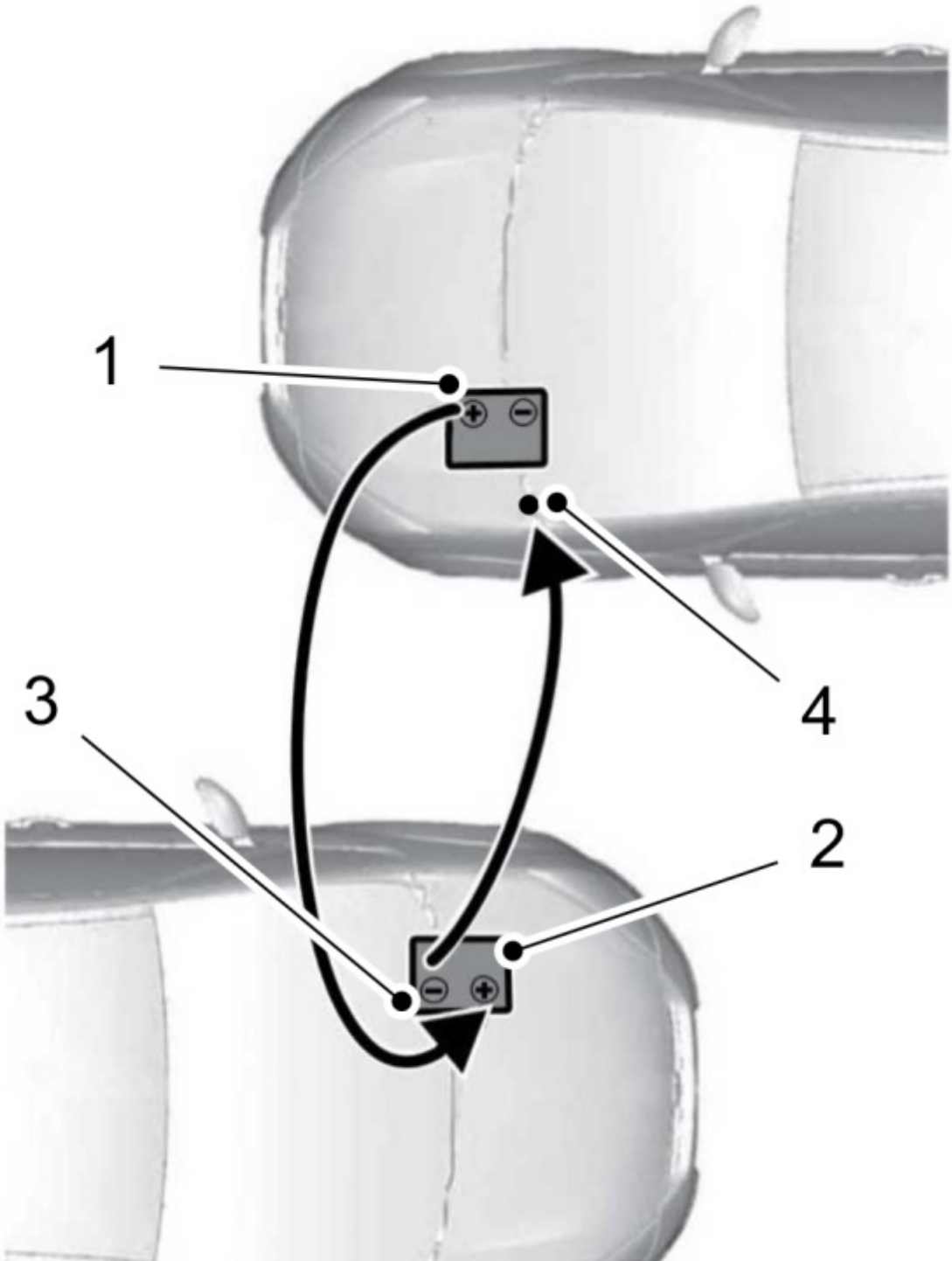
Use only a 12 volt supply to start your vehicle.
Park the booster vehicle close to the hood of the disabled vehicle, making sure the two vehicles do not touch.

Jump Starting the Vehicle - Gasoline

Connecting the Jumper Cables

WARNING: Do not connect the negative jumper cable to any other part of your vehicle. Use the ground point.

Note: If you are using a jump pack or booster box, follow the manufacturer's instructions.



1. Pull the red rubber boot backward. Connect the positive (+) jumper cable to the positive (+) terminal of the discharged battery.
2. Connect the other end of the positive (+) jumper cable to the positive (+) terminal of the booster vehicle battery.
3. Connect the negative (-) jumper cable to the negative (-) terminal of the booster vehicle battery.
4. Make the final connection of the negative (-) jumper cable to an exposed metal part of the disabled vehicle's engine, as shown in the following illustration, away from the battery and fuel injection system, or connect the negative (-) jumper cable to a ground connection point if available.



Starting the Engine

1. Start the engine of the booster vehicle and moderately rev the engine, or gently press the accelerator to keep the engine speed between 2000 RPM and 3000 RPM, as shown in your tachometer.
2. Start the engine of the disabled vehicle.
3. Once you start the disabled vehicle, run both vehicle engines for an additional three minutes before disconnecting the jumper cables.

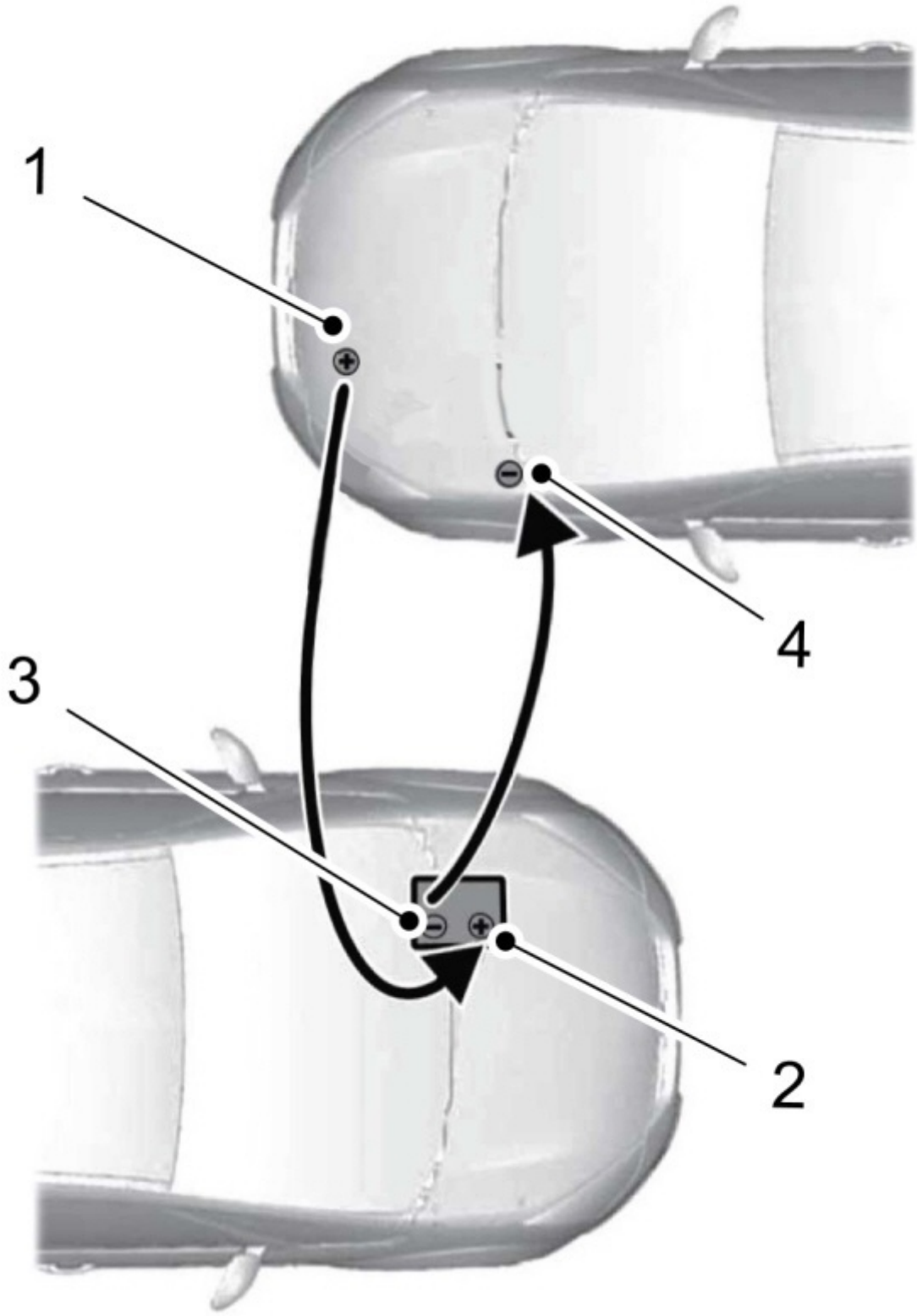
Removing the Jumper Cables
Remove the jumper cables in the reverse order that they were connected.
Note: Do not switch the headlamps on when disconnecting the cables. The peak voltage could blow the bulbs.

Jump Starting the Vehicle - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)

Connecting the Jumper Cables

WARNING: Do not connect the negative jumper cable to any other part of your vehicle. Use the ground point.

Note: If you are using a jump pack or booster box, follow the manufacturer's instructions.



Note: Make sure both vehicles are off before connecting the jumper cables.

1. Pull the red rubber boot back. Connect the positive (+) jumper cable to the positive (+) terminal.

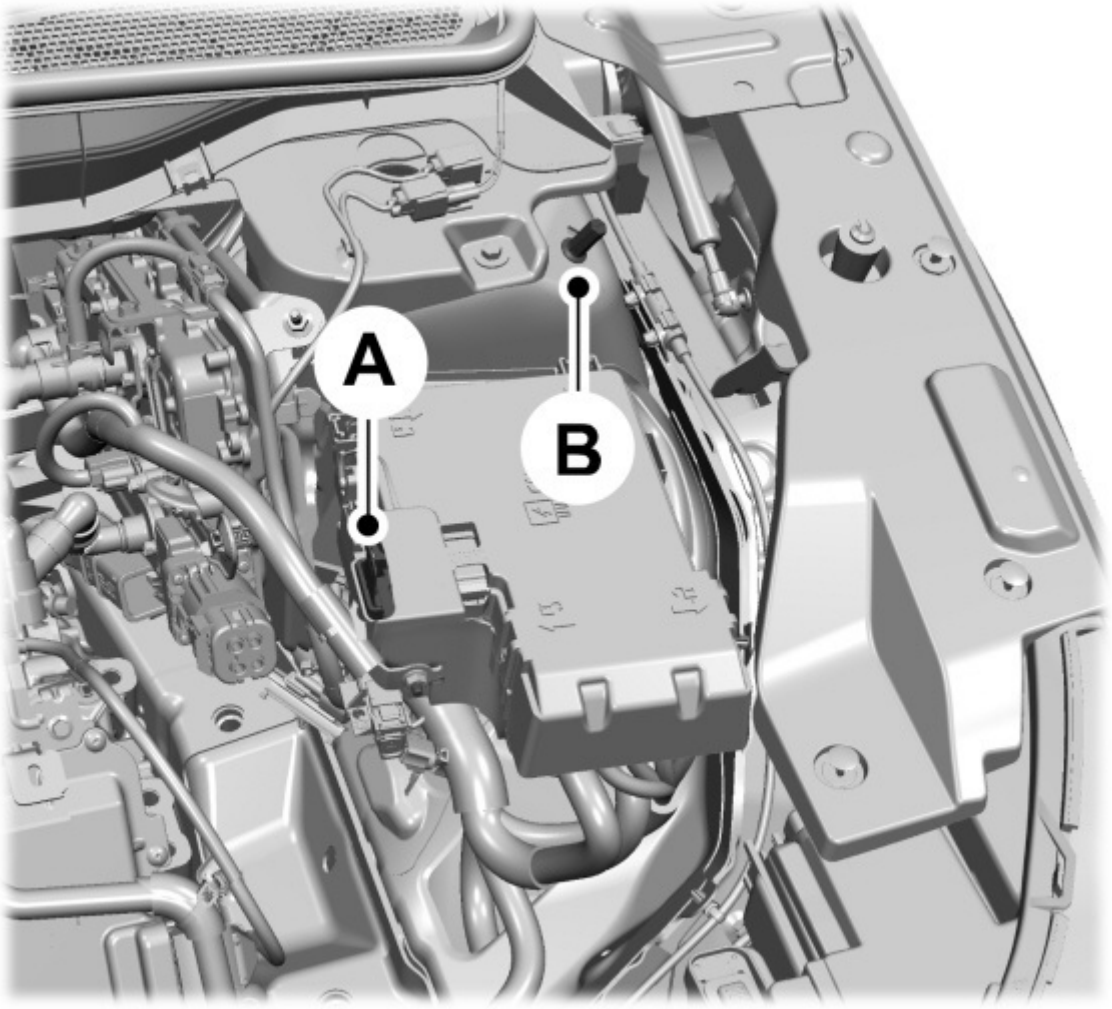
Note: The positive terminal is located in the under hood fuse box.

2. Connect the other end of the positive (+) jumper cable to the positive (+) terminal of the booster vehicle battery.

3. Connect the negative (-) jumper cable to the negative (-) terminal of the booster vehicle battery.

4. Make the final connection of the negative (-) jumper cable to an exposed metal part of the disabled vehicle's engine, as shown in the following illustration, away from the battery and fuel injection system, or connect the negative (-) jumper cable to a ground connection point if available.

Note: Do not use the hood latch as a negative (-) connection point. This could cause springs in the latch to burn and prevent the hood from operating correctly.



A Positive (+) pin.
B Ground connection point.

Starting the Engine

1. Start the engine of the booster vehicle and moderately rev the engine, or gently press the accelerator to keep the engine speed between 2000 and 3000 RPM, as shown in your tachometer.

2. Start the engine of the disabled vehicle.

3. Once you start the disabled vehicle, run both vehicle engines for an additional three minutes before disconnecting the jumper cables.

Removing the Jumper Cables

Remove the jumper cables in the reverse order that they were connected.

Note: Do not switch the headlamps on when disconnecting the cables. The peak voltage could blow the bulbs.

What Is the Post-Crash Alert System

The system helps draw attention to your vehicle in the event of a serious impact.

How Does the Post-Crash Alert System Work

The system is designed to turn the hazard flashers on, turn the courtesy lamps on, intermittently sound the horn and unlock all doors in the event of a serious impact that deploys an airbag or the seatbelt pretensioners.

Post-Crash Alert System Limitations

Depending on applicable laws in the country your vehicle was built for, the horn does not sound in the event of a serious impact.

Switching the Post-Crash Alert System Off

Press the hazard flasher switch, or the unlock button on the remote control, or the panic button on the remote control or turn your vehicle off and on twice to switch the system off.
Note: The alert turns off when the vehicle battery runs out of charge.

Post-Collision Braking

How Does Post-Collision Braking Work
In the event of a moderate to severe crash, the braking system reduces the vehicle's speed to prevent or reduce the impact of a potential secondary crash.
Post-Collision Braking Limitations
Post-collision braking does not activate if any of the following occur:

- The anti-lock braking system is damaged during the collision.
- Electronic stability control is disabled.

Overriding Post-Collision Braking
You can override post-collision braking by pressing the brake or accelerator pedal.
Post-Collision Braking Indicators
 It flashes when a post-collision braking event is occurring.

What Is Automatic Crash Shutoff

The automatic crash shutoff is designed to stop the fuel going to the engine in the event of a moderate or severe crash.
Note: Not every impact causes a shutoff.

Automatic Crash Shutoff Precautions

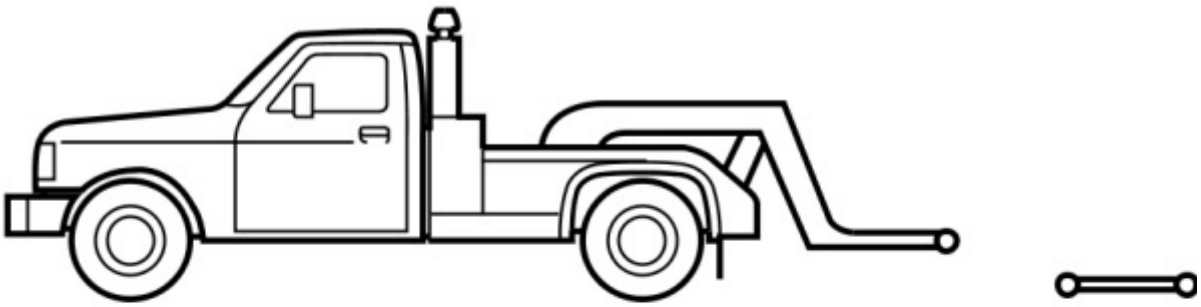
WARNING: If your vehicle has been involved in a crash, have the fuel system checked. Failure to follow this instruction could result in fire, personal injury or death.

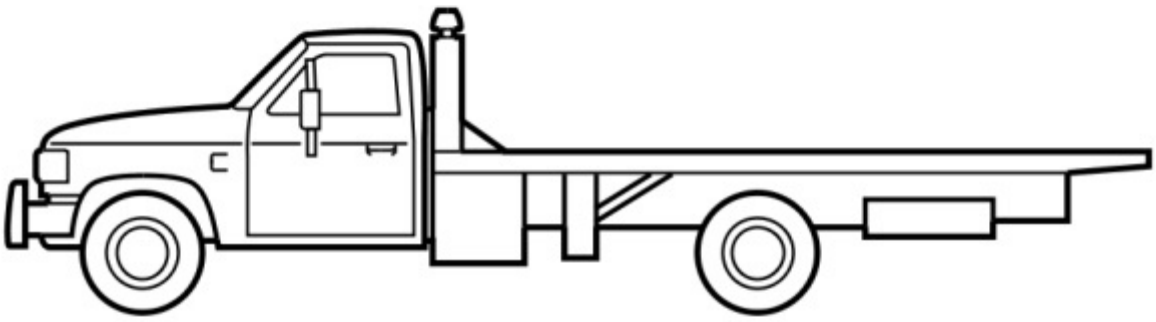
Re-Enabling Your Vehicle

1. Switch the ignition off.
2. Attempt to start your vehicle.
3. Switch the ignition off.
4. Attempt to start your vehicle.

Note: If your vehicle does not start after the third attempt, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Transporting the Vehicle







If you need to tow your vehicle, contact a professional towing service or your roadside assistance service provider.
Your manufacturer produces a towing manual for all authorized tow truck operators. Have your tow truck operator refer to this manual for proper hook-up and towing procedures.
We recommend the use of a wheel lift and dollies or flatbed equipment to tow your vehicle. Vehicle damage could occur if towed incorrectly, or by any other means.
Front-wheel and rear-wheel drive vehicles must have their designated drive wheels off the ground regardless of towing direction. Use tow dollies to prevent damage to the transmission.
All-wheel or four-wheel drive vehicles require that all wheels be off the ground using a wheel lift and dollies or flatbed equipment. This prevents damage to the transmission and drive system.
Note: You need to switch on the ignition to unlock the steering.
Note: Make sure you check the steering column before towing. It could lock if the battery is dead.

What Is Fail-Safe Cooling

Fail-safe cooling allows you to temporarily drive your vehicle before any incremental component damage occurs due to overheating.
The fail-safe distance depends on outside temperature, vehicle load and terrain.

How Does Fail-Safe Cooling Work

If the engine reaches a preset over-temperature condition, the engine automatically switches to alternating cylinder operation. Each disabled cylinder acts as an air pump and cools the engine.

When this occurs, your vehicle still operates, however:

- Engine power is limited.
- The air conditioning system turns off.

Continued operation increases the engine temperature, causing the engine to completely shut down. Your steering and braking effort increases in this situation.
When the engine temperature cools, you can re-start the engine.
Note: Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible to minimize engine damage.

Driving When Fail-Safe Mode Is Activated

WARNING: Fail-safe mode is for use during emergencies only. Operate your vehicle in fail-safe mode only as long as necessary to bring your vehicle to rest in a safe location and seek immediate repairs. When in fail-safe mode, your vehicle will have limited power, will not be able to maintain high-speed operation, and may completely shut down without warning, potentially losing engine power, power steering assist, and power brake assist, which may increase the possibility of a crash resulting in serious injury.

WARNING: Do not remove the coolant reservoir cap when the engine is on or the cooling system is hot. Wait 10 minutes for the cooling system to cool down. Cover the coolant reservoir cap with a thick cloth to prevent the possibility of scalding and slowly remove the cap. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

Continued operation increases the engine temperature, causing the engine to completely shut down. Your steering and braking effort increases in this situation.
When the engine temperature cools, you can re-start the engine. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible to minimize engine damage.

Your vehicle has limited engine power when in the fail-safe mode, drive your vehicle with caution. Your vehicle does not maintain high-speed operation and the engine may operate poorly.
Remember that the engine is capable of automatically shutting down to prevent engine damage. In this situation:

1. Pull off the road as soon as safely possible and switch the engine off.
2. If you are a member of a roadside assistance program, we recommend that you contact your roadside assistance service provider.
3. If this is not possible, wait for a short period of time for the engine to cool.
4. Check the coolant level. If the coolant level is at or below the minimum mark, add prediluted coolant immediately.
5. When the engine temperature cools, you can re-start the engine. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible to minimize engine damage.

Note: Driving your vehicle without repair increases the chance of engine damage.

Fail-Safe Cooling Indicators

 If the engine begins to overheat, the coolant temperature gauge moves toward the red zone.

 A warning lamp illuminates and a message may appear in the instrument cluster display.

Jump Starting the Vehicle

Jump Starting Precautions

WARNING: Batteries normally produce explosive gases which can cause personal injury. Therefore, do not allow flames, sparks or lighted substances to come near the battery. When working near the battery, always shield your face and protect your eyes. Always provide correct ventilation.

WARNING: Keep batteries out of reach of children. Batteries contain sulfuric acid. Avoid contact with skin, eyes or clothing. Shield your eyes when working near the battery to protect against possible splashing of acid solution. In case of acid contact with skin or eyes, flush immediately with water for a minimum of 15 minutes and get prompt medical attention. If acid is swallowed, call a physician immediately.

WARNING: Use only adequately sized cables with insulated clamps.

WARNING: Make sure that the cables are clear of any moving parts and fuel delivery system parts.

WARNING: Connect batteries with only the same nominal voltage.

WARNING: Using the jump leads incorrectly or completing the jump start procedure incorrectly can cause the battery to explode, which can lead to severe injuries.

WARNING: All work on the vehicle battery and the electrical system can cause serious chemical burns, fire or electric shocks. Always read the warnings and safety information before carrying out any kind of work on the battery

WARNING: Never charge a 12-volt vehicle battery once it has been frozen. Discharged 12-volt vehicle batteries can even freeze at temperatures of approximately 0°C (+32°F).

WARNING: The battery should be replaced if it is or has ever been frozen.

WARNING: A highly explosive mixture of gases is given off when the vehicle battery is jump started. Always keep fire, sparks, naked flames and lit cigarettes away from the vehicle battery. Never use a mobile telephone when the jump leads are being connected or disconnected.

WARNING: Only charge the battery in a well-ventilated space as the battery emits a highly explosive mixture of gases when the vehicle is being jump started.

WARNING: Never confuse the negative and positive terminals or connect the jump leads incorrectly.

WARNING: Observe the jump lead manufacturer's instructions.

WARNING: If the engine is running while the hood is open, stay clear of moving engine components. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

Do not attempt to push-start an automatic transmission vehicle. This could cause transmission damage.
Do not disconnect the battery of the disabled vehicle. This could damage your vehicle's electrical system.

Preparing the Vehicle

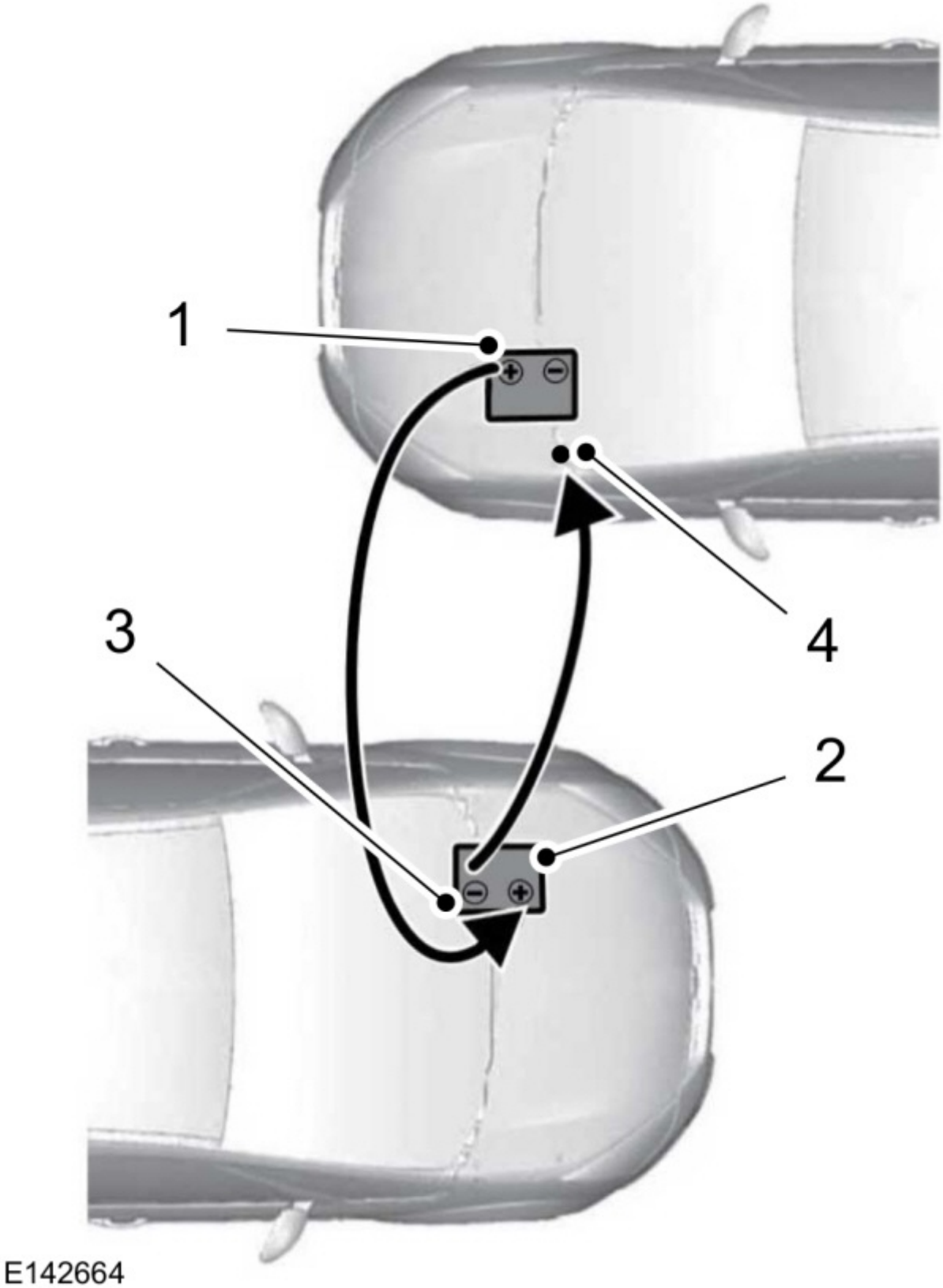
Use only a 12 volt supply to start your vehicle.
Park the booster vehicle close to the hood of the disabled vehicle, making sure the two vehicles do not touch.

Jump Starting the Vehicle - Gasoline

Connecting the Jumper Cables

WARNING: Do not connect the negative jumper cable to any other part of your vehicle. Use the ground point.

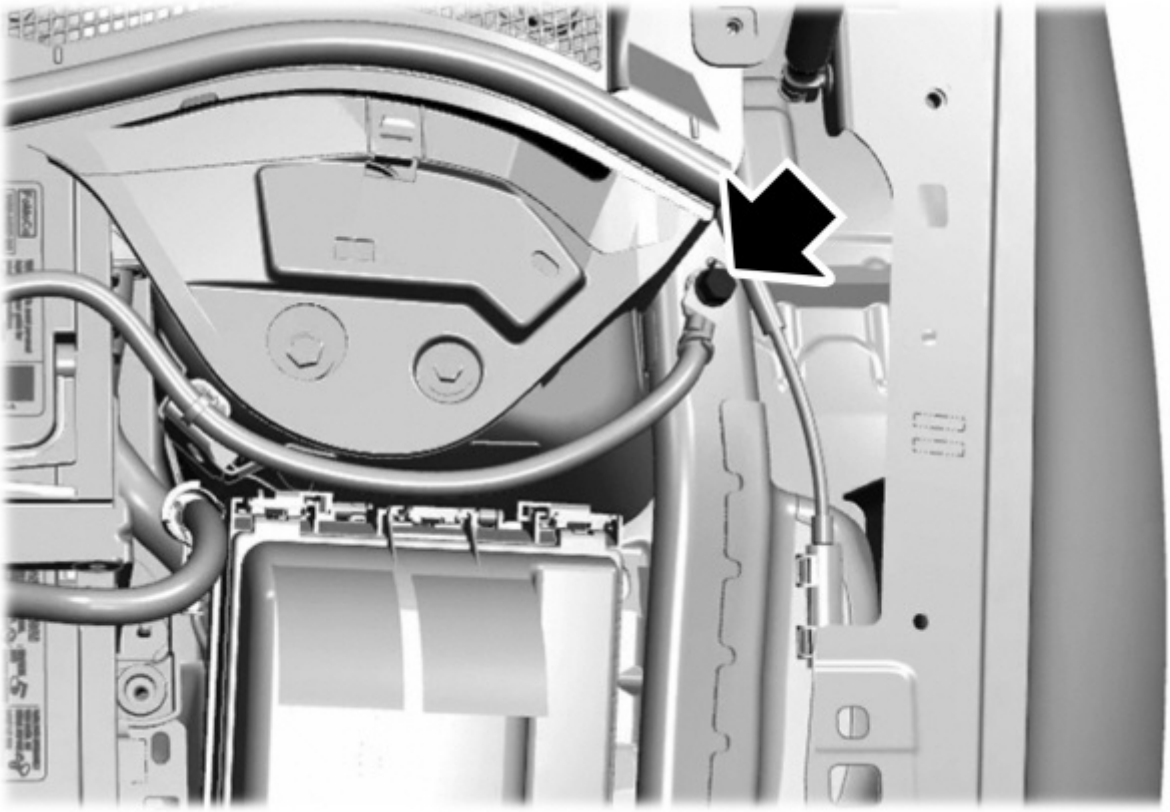
Note: If you are using a jump pack or booster box, follow the manufacturer's instructions.



E142664

1. Pull the red rubber boot backward. Connect the positive (+) jumper cable to the positive (+) terminal of the discharged battery.
2. Connect the other end of the positive (+) jumper cable to the positive (+) terminal of the booster vehicle battery.
3. Connect the negative (-) jumper cable to the negative (-) terminal of the booster vehicle battery.

4. Make the final connection of the negative (-) jumper cable to an exposed metal part of the disabled vehicle's engine, as shown in the following illustration, away from the battery and fuel injection system, or connect the negative (-) jumper cable to a ground connection point if available.



Starting the Engine

1. Start the engine of the booster vehicle and moderately rev the engine, or gently press the accelerator to keep the engine speed between 2000 RPM and 3000 RPM, as shown in your tachometer.
2. Start the engine of the disabled vehicle.
3. Once you start the disabled vehicle, run both vehicle engines for an additional three minutes before disconnecting the jumper cables.

Removing the Jumper Cables
Remove the jumper cables in the reverse order that they were connected.
Note: Do not switch the headlamps on when disconnecting the cables. The peak voltage could blow the bulbs.

Jump Starting the Vehicle - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)

Connecting the Jumper Cables

⚠ **WARNING**: Do not connect the negative jumper cable to any other part of your vehicle. Use the ground point.

Note: If you are using a jump pack or booster box, follow the manufacturer's instructions.



Note: Make sure both vehicles are off before connecting the jumper cables.

1. Pull the red rubber boot back. Connect the positive (+) jumper cable to the positive (+) terminal.

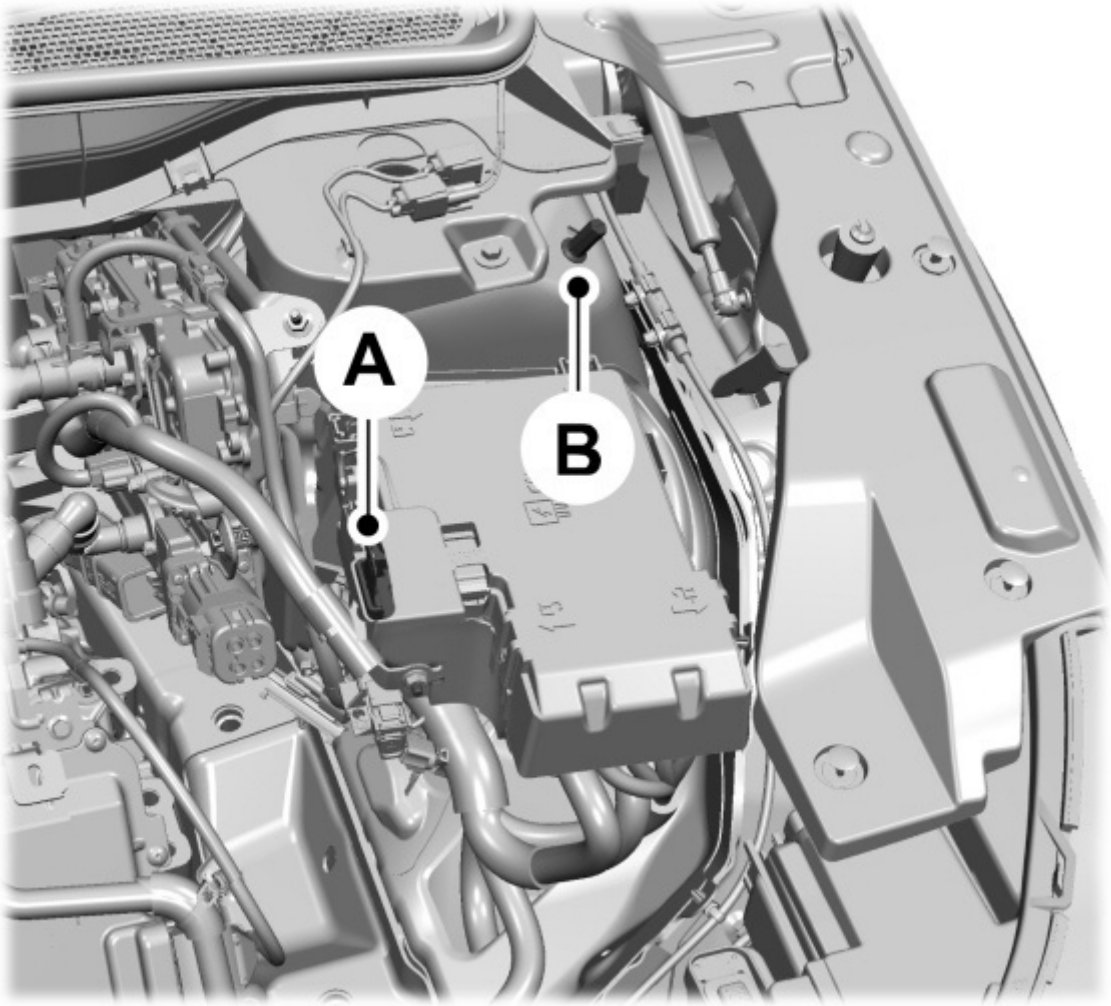
Note: The positive terminal is located in the under hood fuse box.

2. Connect the other end of the positive (+) jumper cable to the positive (+) terminal of the booster vehicle battery.

3. Connect the negative (-) jumper cable to the negative (-) terminal of the booster vehicle battery.

4. Make the final connection of the negative (-) jumper cable to an exposed metal part of the disabled vehicle's engine, as shown in the following illustration, away from the battery and fuel injection system, or connect the negative (-) jumper cable to a ground connection point if available.

Note: Do not use the hood latch as a negative (-) connection point. This could cause springs in the latch to burn and prevent the hood from operating correctly.



A Image not found or type unknown Positive (+) pin.
B Image not found or type unknown Ground connection point.

Starting the Engine

1. Start the engine of the booster vehicle and moderately rev the engine, or gently press the accelerator to keep the engine speed between 2000 and 3000 RPM, as shown in your tachometer.

2. Start the engine of the disabled vehicle.

3. Once you start the disabled vehicle, run both vehicle engines for an additional three minutes before disconnecting the jumper cables.

Removing the Jumper Cables
Remove the jumper cables in the reverse order that they were connected.
Note: Do not switch the headlamps on when disconnecting the cables. The peak voltage could blow the bulbs.

Post-Crash Alert System

What Is the Post-Crash Alert System

The system helps draw attention to your vehicle in the event of a serious impact.

How Does the Post-Crash Alert System Work

The system is designed to turn the hazard flashers on, turn the courtesy lamps on, intermittently sound the horn and unlock all doors in the event of a serious impact that deploys an airbag or the seatbelt pretensioners.

Post-Crash Alert System Limitations

Depending on applicable laws in the country your vehicle was built for, the horn does not sound in the event of a serious impact.

Switching the Post-Crash Alert System Off

Press the hazard flasher switch, or the unlock button on the remote control, or the panic button on the remote control or turn your vehicle off and on twice to switch the system off.
Note: The alert turns off when the vehicle battery runs out of charge.

Automatic Crash Shutoff

What Is Automatic Crash Shutoff

The automatic crash shutoff is designed to stop the fuel going to the engine in the event of a moderate or severe crash.
Note: Not every impact causes a shutoff.

Automatic Crash Shutoff Precautions

 **WARNING**: If your vehicle has been involved in a crash, have the fuel system checked. Failure to follow this instruction could result in fire, personal injury or death.

Re-Enabling Your Vehicle

1. Switch the ignition off.
2. Attempt to start your vehicle.
3. Switch the ignition off.

4. Attempt to start your vehicle.

Note: If your vehicle does not start after the third attempt, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Fail-Safe Cooling

What Is Fail-Safe Cooling

Fail-safe cooling allows you to temporarily drive your vehicle before any incremental component damage occurs due to overheating.
The fail-safe distance depends on outside temperature, vehicle load and terrain.

How Does Fail-Safe Cooling Work

If the engine reaches a preset over-temperature condition, the engine automatically switches to alternating cylinder operation. Each disabled cylinder acts as an air pump and cools the engine.

When this occurs, your vehicle still operates, however:

- Engine power is limited.
- The air conditioning system turns off.

Continued operation increases the engine temperature, causing the engine to completely shut down. Your steering and braking effort increases in this situation.
When the engine temperature cools, you can re-start the engine.
Note: Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible to minimize engine damage.

Driving When Fail-Safe Mode Is Activated

WARNING: Fail-safe mode is for use during emergencies only. Operate your vehicle in fail-safe mode only as long as necessary to bring your vehicle to rest in a safe location and seek immediate repairs. When in fail-safe mode, your vehicle will have limited power, will not be able to maintain high-speed operation, and may completely shut down without warning, potentially losing engine power, power steering assist, and power brake assist, which may increase the possibility of a crash resulting in serious injury.

WARNING: Do not remove the coolant reservoir cap when the engine is on or the cooling system is hot. Wait 10 minutes for the cooling system to cool down. Cover the coolant reservoir cap with a thick cloth to prevent the possibility of scalding and slowly remove the cap. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

Continued operation increases the engine temperature, causing the engine to completely shut down. Your steering and braking effort increases in this situation.
When the engine temperature cools, you can re-start the engine. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible to minimize engine damage.
Your vehicle has limited engine power when in the fail-safe mode, drive your vehicle with caution. Your vehicle does not maintain high-speed operation and the engine may operate poorly.
Remember that the engine is capable of automatically shutting down to prevent engine damage. In this situation:

1. Pull off the road as soon as safely possible and switch the engine off.

2. If you are a member of a roadside assistance program, we recommend that you contact your roadside assistance service provider.
3. If this is not possible, wait for a short period of time for the engine to cool.
4. Check the coolant level. If the coolant level is at or below the minimum mark, add prediluted coolant immediately.
5. When the engine temperature cools, you can re-start the engine. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible to minimize engine damage.

Note: Driving your vehicle without repair increases the chance of engine damage.

Fail-Safe Cooling Indicators

 If the engine begins to overheat, the coolant temperature gauge moves toward the red zone.

 A warning lamp illuminates and a message may appear in the instrument cluster display.

Towing Your Vehicle

Towing Your Vehicle Precautions

Use the following guidelines when towing your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in vehicle damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.
Note: Make sure you properly secure your vehicle to the tow vehicle.
Note: If you are unsure of the vehicle's configuration, contact an authorized dealer.

Recreationally Towing Your Vehicle - AWD

You cannot recreational tow your vehicle with all wheels on the ground because vehicle or transmission damage could occur. You must recreational tow your vehicle with all four wheels off the ground, such as when using a car-hauling trailer. Otherwise, you cannot recreational tow your vehicle.

Recreationally Towing Your Vehicle - FWD

You cannot recreational tow your vehicle with all wheels on the ground because vehicle or transmission damage could occur. Place the front wheels on a two-wheel tow dolly. If you are using a tow dolly, follow the instructions specified by the equipment provider.
Note: Release the parking brake before towing your vehicle. See **Manually Releasing the Electric Parking Brake**.

Emergency Towing - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)

If your vehicle becomes inoperable without access to wheel dollies or a vehicle transport trailer, it can be flat-towed with all wheels on the ground, regardless of the powertrain and transmission configuration, under the following conditions:

- Your vehicle is facing forward for towing in a forward direction.

- You switch Neutral Tow on.
- You release the parking brake.
- Maximum speed is 3 mph (5 km/h).
- Maximum distance is 328 ft (100 m).

Switching Neutral Tow On

1. Switch your vehicle on in accessory mode.
2. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
3. Select Settings.
4. Select Vehicle Settings.
5. Select Neutral Tow.
6. Follow the instructions on the instrument cluster display.
7. Fully press the brake pedal.
8. Shift into neutral (N).
9. Switch your vehicle off.

Note: Failure to follow these instructions could result in damage to the transmission.
Note: Switching neutral tow on requires battery power.
Note: Put your climate control system in recirculated air mode to prevent exhaust fumes from entering your vehicle. See **Climate Control**.
Note: If you press the towed vehicle's brake pedal during emergency tow, the battery may discharge during the remainder of the tow. You can perform one of the two following procedures to avoid battery discharge during the tow:

- Option 1: Connect a 12-volt external power source to the towed vehicle’s battery for the duration of the tow.
- Option 2: Disconnect the negative battery terminal for the duration of the tow.

Switching Neutral Tow Off

1. Switch your vehicle on in accessory mode.
2. Fully press the brake pedal.
3. Shift into park (P).

Emergency Towing - Gasoline

If you need to tow your vehicle, contact a professional towing service or, if you are a member of a roadside assistance program, your roadside assistance service provider.

Towing Your Vehicle – Information Messages - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)

Message	Description
Neutral Tow Engaged Turn Ignition Off for Towing	Reminder to switch off the ignition when in neutral tow.
Neutral tow engaged Depress Brake and Select Park to Exit Neutral Tow	Displays when neutral tow is active and you want to exit neutral tow.
Neutral Tow Remove Park Brake for Towing	Reminder to remove park brake when in neutral tow.
Neutral Tow Disengaged	Displays when the neutral tow is off.
Neutral Tow Enabled Leave Transmission in Neutral	Displays when neutral tow is on.

Towing Your Vehicle – Troubleshooting

Towing Your Vehicle – Information Messages - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)

Message	Description
Neutral Tow Engaged Turn Ignition Off for Towing	Reminder to switch off the ignition when in neutral tow.
Neutral tow engaged Depress Brake and Select Park to Exit Neutral Tow	Displays when neutral tow is active and you want to exit neutral tow.
Neutral Tow Remove Park Brake for Towing	Reminder to remove park brake when in neutral tow.
Neutral Tow Disengaged	Displays when the neutral tow is off.
Neutral Tow Enabled Leave Transmission in Neutral	Displays when neutral tow is on.

Fuses

Fuse Precautions

WARNING: Always disconnect the battery before servicing high current fuses.

WARNING: To reduce risk of electrical shock, always replace the cover to the power distribution box before reconnecting the battery or refilling fluid reservoirs.

WARNING: Always replace a fuse with one that has the specified amperage rating. Using a fuse with a higher amperage rating can cause severe wire damage and could start a fire.

Locating the Under Hood Fuse Box

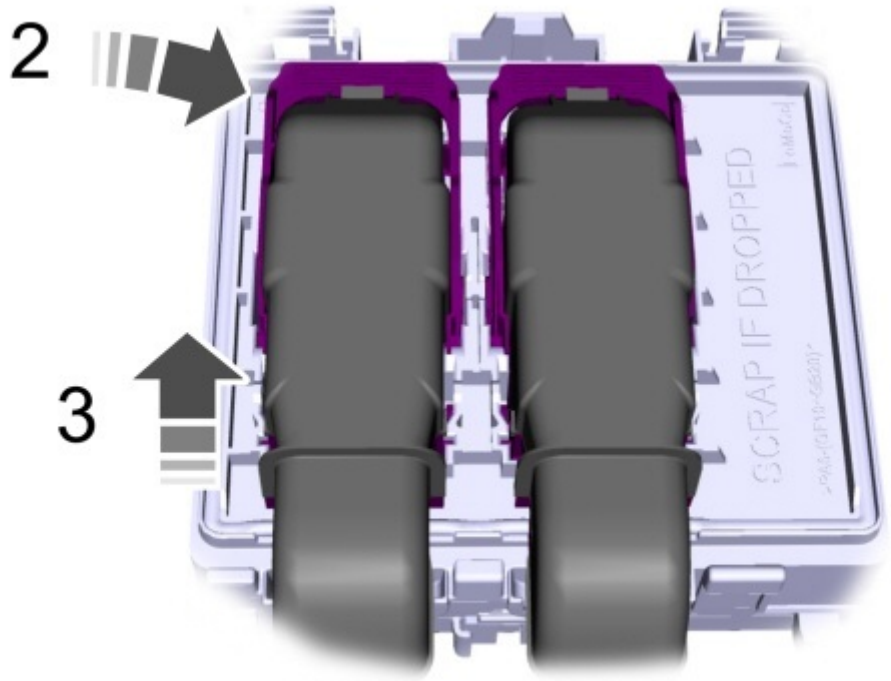


Accessing the Under Hood Fuse Box



E253688

1. Pull the latch toward you and remove the top cover.



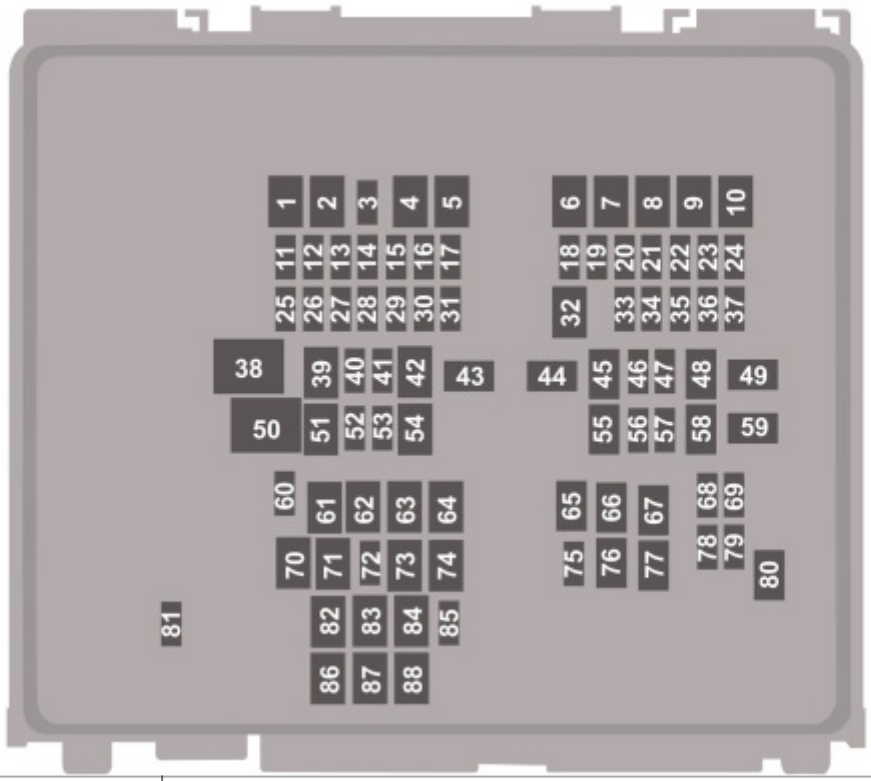
E253689

2. Pull the connector lever upward.
3. Pull the connector upward to remove it.



4. Pull both latches toward you and remove the fuse box.
5. Turn the fuse box over and open the lid.

Identifying the Fuses in the Under Hood Fuse Box



Item	Rating	Protected Component
1	—	Not used.
2	30 A	Rear defrost.
3	10 A	Not used (spare).
4	50 A	Electric water pump (hybrid).
5	—	Not used.
6	—	Not used.
7	40 A	Driveline control module.
8	—	Not used.
9	30 A	Second row seat release.
10	—	Not used.
11	15 A	Powertrain control module.
12	15 A	Powertrain control module.
13	15 A	Powertrain control module.
14	15 A	Powertrain control module.
15	10 A	Vehicle dynamics module.
16	—	Not used.
17	15 A	Heated wiper park.
18	10 A	Air conditioning clutch.

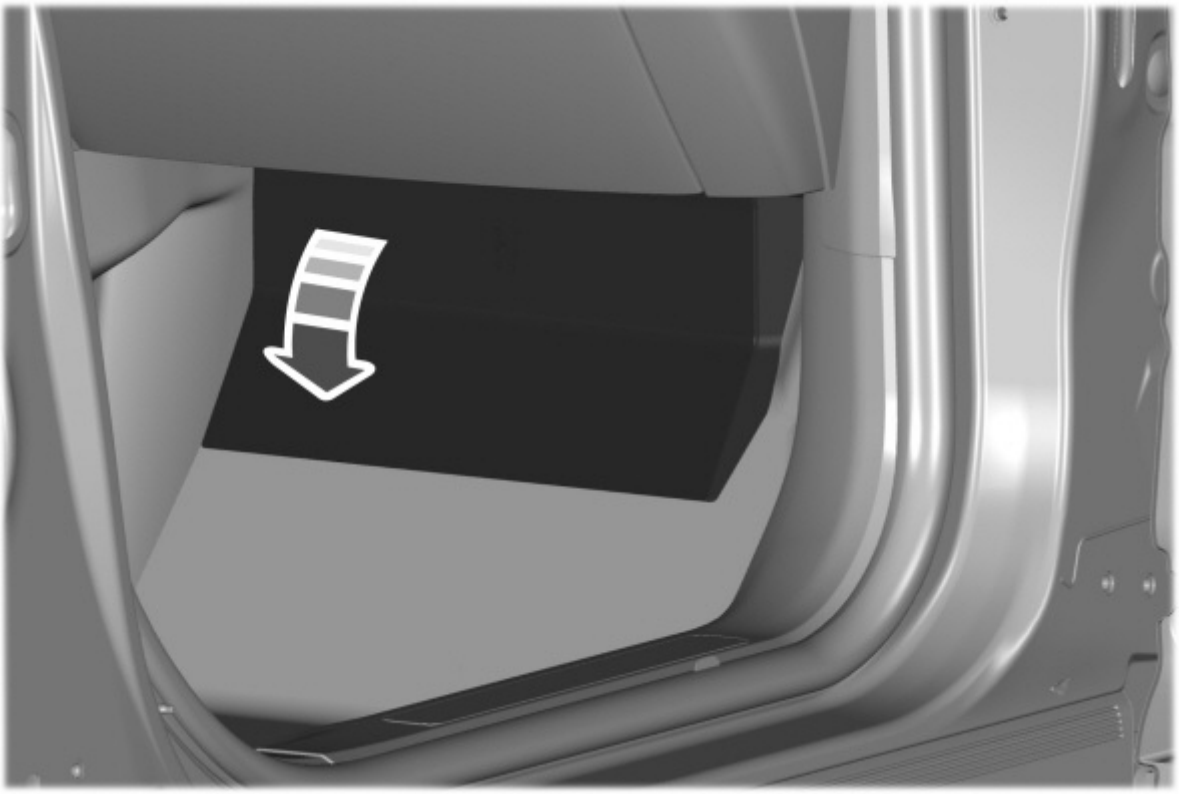
Item	Rating	Protected Component
19	10 A	Not used (spare).
20	5 A	DC/DC converter (hybrid).
21	10 A	Battery charge control module (hybrid).
22	5 A	Not used (spare).
23	5 A	Charge port light ring (hybrid).
24	5 A	Battery electronic control module (hybrid).
25	25 A	Left-hand enhanced exterior lighting module.
26	25 A	Right-hand enhanced exterior lighting module.
27	5 A	Powertrain control module (hybrid).
28	10 A	Anti-lock brake system module.
29	10 A	Powertrain control module.
30	10 A	Electronic stability control. Transmission oil pump.
31	5 A	Electronic power assist steering.
32	30 A	Body control module.
33	20 A	Advanced driver assistance system.
34	10 A	Headlamp leveling.
35	15 A	Heated steering wheel.
36	10 A	Powertrain control module (hybrid).
37	20 A	Horn.
38	40 A	Blower motor.
39	—	Not used.
40	5 A	USB smart charger.
41	20 A	Amplifier.
42	30 A	Driver power seat.
43	40 A	Anti-lock brake control valves.
44	40 A	Not used (spare).
45	30 A	Passenger power seat.
46	20 A	Not used (spare).
47	20 A	Heated seats.
48	30 A	Power liftgate.
49	60 A	Anti-lock brake control pump.
50	60 A	Cooling fan.
51	30 A	Glass roof.
52	5 A	USB charge port - rear console.
53	5 A	USB charge port - rear console.
54	20 A	Rear heated seat module.
55	30 A	Starter motor.
56	20 A	Amplifier.

Item	Rating	Protected Component
57	10 A	Data link connector.
58	30 A	Climate controlled seat module.
59	40 A	Body control module.
60	20 A	Rear window washer pump.
61	—	Not used.
62	—	Not used.
63	—	Not used.
64	—	Not used.
65	—	Not used.
66	—	Not used.
67	—	Not used.
68	5 A	Mass air flow and intake air temperature sensor.
69	15 A	Port fuel injectors.
70	20 A	Rear cargo power point.
71	20 A	Rear console power point.
72	20 A	Rear window wiper.
73	—	Not used.
74	30 A	Windshield wiper motor.
75	20 A	Not used (spare).
76	—	Not used.
77	—	Not used.
78	15 A	Multi-contour seats.
79	10 A	Not used (spare).
80	20 A	Fuel pump.
81	—	Not used.
82	40 A	Not used (spare).
83	—	Not used.
84	40 A	Auxiliary power distribution box (hybrid).
85	5 A	Rain sensor.
86	—	Not used.
87	—	Not used.
88	—	Not used.

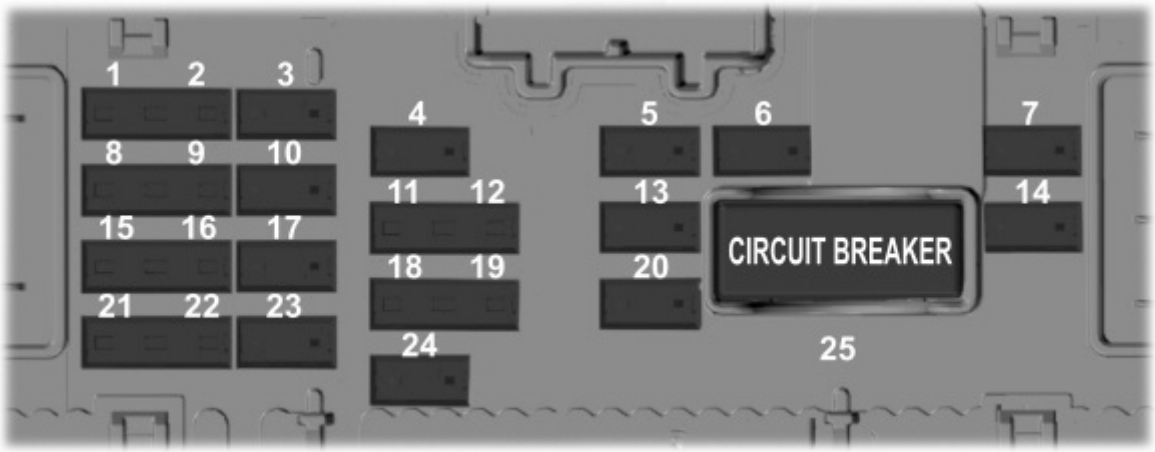
Locating the Body Control Module Fuse Box



Accessing the Body Control Module Fuse Box



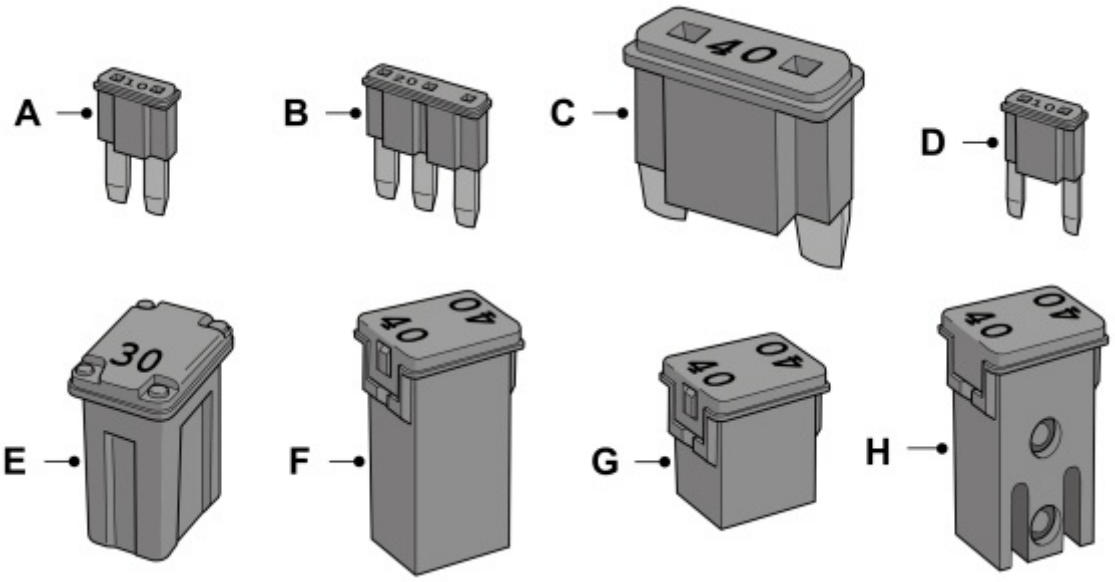
Identifying the Fuses in the Body Control Module Fuse Box



Item	Rating	Protected Component
1	5 A	Not used.
2	5 A	Rear heated seats. Air quality sensor. Particulate matter sensor.
3	10 A	Not used (spare).
4	10 A	Integrated control panel. Center display. Gateway module.
5	20 A	Lock. Unlock.
6	10 A	Glass roof.
7	30 A	Passenger door module.
8	5 A	Driveline control module.
9	5 A	Electrochromatic mirror.

Item	Rating	Protected Component
10	10 A	Extended power module.
11	5 A	Power liftgate. Hands-free liftgate actuation module. Telematics control unit module.
12	5 A	Keyless keypad switch. Head up display.
13	15 A	Driver door lock.
14	30 A	Driver door module.
15	15 A	Extended power module.
16	15 A	Not used (spare).
17	15 A	SYNC. Radio frequency transceiver module.
18	7.5 A	Driver power seat switch. Passenger power seat switch. Wireless accessory charging module. Selectable drive mode switch. Driver state monitor.
19	7.5 A	Headlamp switch pack. Telematics control unit module. Bluetooth low energy module.
20	10 A	Not used (spare).
21	7.5 A	Climate control. E-shifter module.
22	7.5 A	Instrument cluster. Steering column control module.
23	20 A	Audio unit.
24	20 A	Not used (spare).
25	30 A	Not used (spare).

Identifying Fuse Types



A Micro 2.
B Micro 3.
C Maxi.
D Mini.
E M Case.
F J Case.
G J Case Low Profile.
H Slotted M Case.

Fuses – Frequently Asked Questions

When do I need to check a fuse?

- If electrical components in the vehicle are not working.

When do I need to replace a fuse?

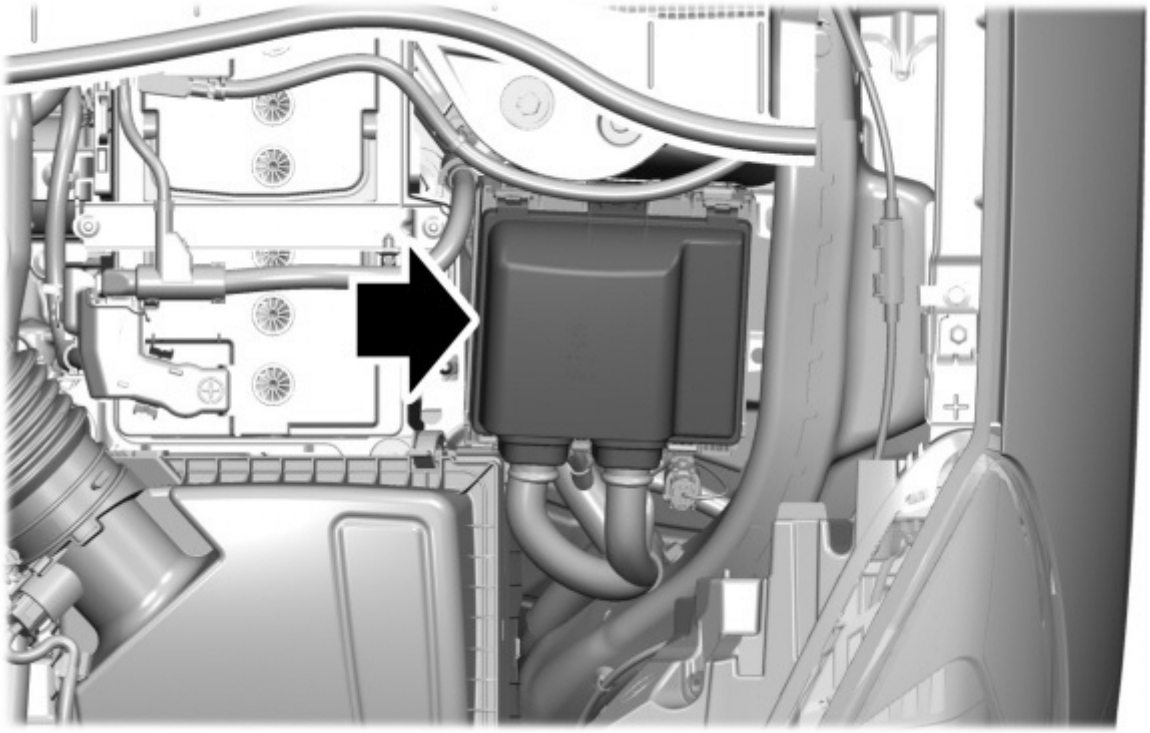
- If a fuse has blown.

How do I identify a blown fuse?

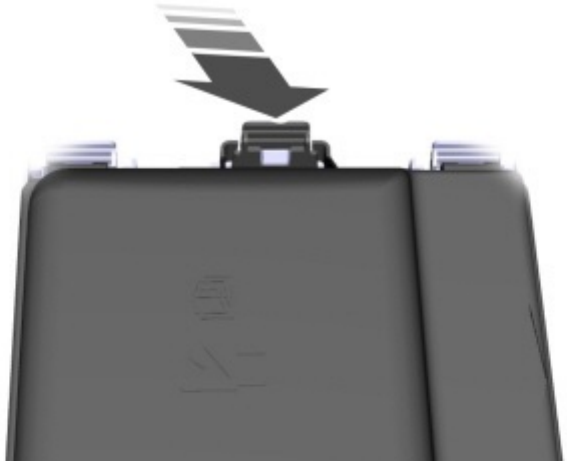
- You can identify a blown fuse by a broken wire within the fuse.

Under Hood Fuse Box

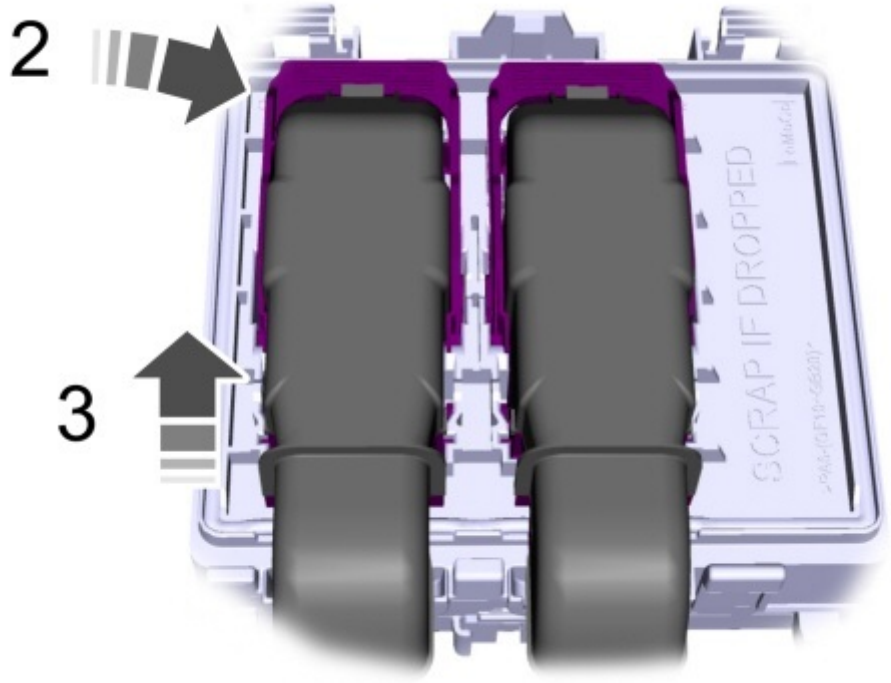
Locating the Under Hood Fuse Box



Accessing the Under Hood Fuse Box

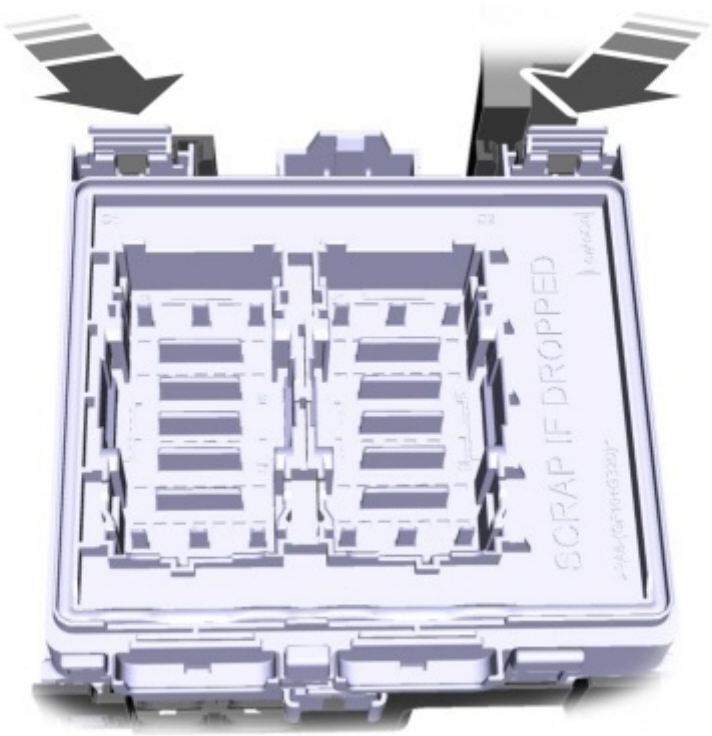


1. Pull the latch toward you and remove the top cover.



E253689

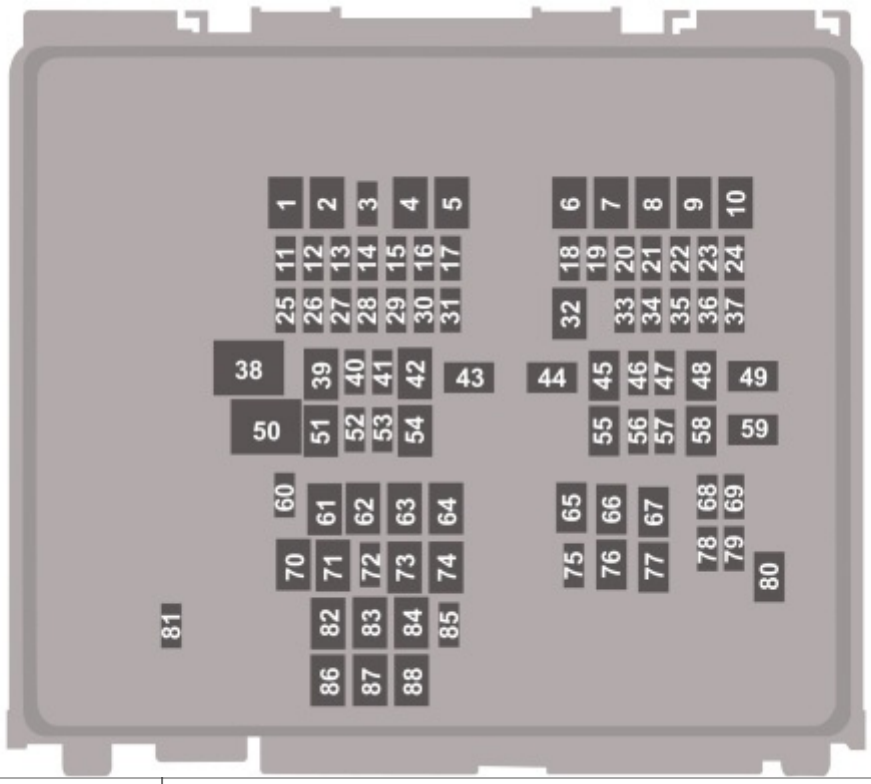
2. Pull the connector lever upward.
3. Pull the connector upward to remove it.



E253693

4. Pull both latches toward you and remove the fuse box.
5. Turn the fuse box over and open the lid.

Identifying the Fuses in the Under Hood Fuse Box



Item	Rating	Protected Component
1	—	Not used.
2	30 A	Rear defrost.
3	10 A	Not used (spare).
4	50 A	Electric water pump (hybrid).
5	—	Not used.
6	—	Not used.
7	40 A	Driveline control module.
8	—	Not used.
9	30 A	Second row seat release.
10	—	Not used.
11	15 A	Powertrain control module.
12	15 A	Powertrain control module.
13	15 A	Powertrain control module.
14	15 A	Powertrain control module.
15	10 A	Vehicle dynamics module.
16	—	Not used.
17	15 A	Heated wiper park.
18	10 A	Air conditioning clutch.
19	10 A	Not used (spare).
20	5 A	DC/DC converter (hybrid).
21	10 A	Battery charge control module (hybrid).
22	5 A	Not used (spare).

Item	Rating	Protected Component
23	5 A	Charge port light ring (hybrid).
24	5 A	Battery electronic control module (hybrid).
25	25 A	Left-hand enhanced exterior lighting module.
26	25 A	Right-hand enhanced exterior lighting module.
27	5 A	Powertrain control module (hybrid).
28	10 A	Anti-lock brake system module.
29	10 A	Powertrain control module.
30	10 A	Electronic stability control. Transmission oil pump.
31	5 A	Electronic power assist steering.
32	30 A	Body control module.
33	20 A	Advanced driver assistance system.
34	10 A	Headlamp leveling.
35	15 A	Heated steering wheel.
36	10 A	Powertrain control module (hybrid).
37	20 A	Horn.
38	40 A	Blower motor.
39	—	Not used.
40	5 A	USB smart charger.
41	20 A	Amplifier.
42	30 A	Driver power seat.
43	40 A	Anti-lock brake control valves.
44	40 A	Not used (spare).
45	30 A	Passenger power seat.
46	20 A	Not used (spare).
47	20 A	Heated seats.
48	30 A	Power liftgate.
49	60 A	Anti-lock brake control pump.
50	60 A	Cooling fan.
51	30 A	Glass roof.
52	5 A	USB charge port - rear console.
53	5 A	USB charge port - rear console.
54	20 A	Rear heated seat module.
55	30 A	Starter motor.
56	20 A	Amplifier.
57	10 A	Data link connector.
58	30 A	Climate controlled seat module.
59	40 A	Body control module.
60	20 A	Rear window washer pump.

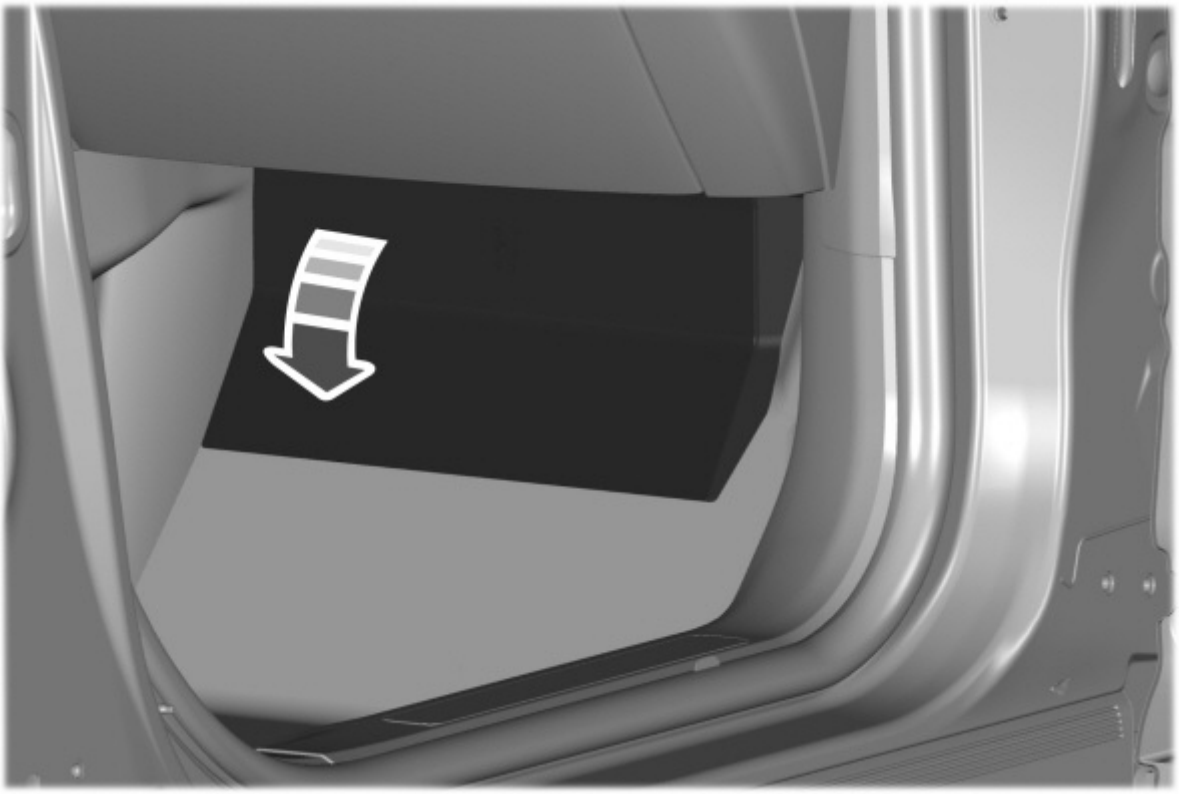
Item	Rating	Protected Component
61	—	Not used.
62	—	Not used.
63	—	Not used.
64	—	Not used.
65	—	Not used.
66	—	Not used.
67	—	Not used.
68	5 A	Mass air flow and intake air temperature sensor.
69	15 A	Port fuel injectors.
70	20 A	Rear cargo power point.
71	20 A	Rear console power point.
72	20 A	Rear window wiper.
73	—	Not used.
74	30 A	Windshield wiper motor.
75	20 A	Not used (spare).
76	—	Not used.
77	—	Not used.
78	15 A	Multi-contour seats.
79	10 A	Not used (spare).
80	20 A	Fuel pump.
81	—	Not used.
82	40 A	Not used (spare).
83	—	Not used.
84	40 A	Auxiliary power distribution box (hybrid).
85	5 A	Rain sensor.
86	—	Not used.
87	—	Not used.
88	—	Not used.

Body Control Module Fuse Box

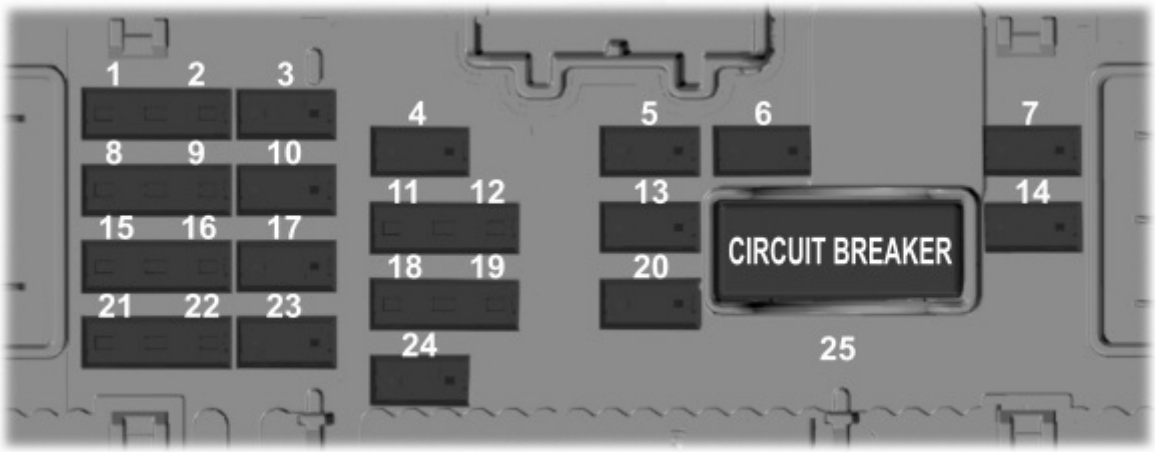
Locating the Body Control Module Fuse Box



Accessing the Body Control Module Fuse Box



Identifying the Fuses in the Body Control Module Fuse Box



Item	Rating	Protected Component
1	5 A	Not used.
2	5 A	Rear heated seats. Air quality sensor. Particulate matter sensor.
3	10 A	Not used (spare).
4	10 A	Integrated control panel. Center display. Gateway module.
5	20 A	Lock. Unlock.
6	10 A	Glass roof.
7	30 A	Passenger door module.
8	5 A	Driveline control module.
9	5 A	Electrochromatic mirror.

Item	Rating	Protected Component
10	10 A	Extended power module.
11	5 A	Power liftgate. Hands-free liftgate actuation module. Telematics control unit module.
12	5 A	Keyless keypad switch. Head up display.
13	15 A	Driver door lock.
14	30 A	Driver door module.
15	15 A	Extended power module.
16	15 A	Not used (spare).
17	15 A	SYNC. Radio frequency transceiver module.
18	7.5 A	Driver power seat switch. Passenger power seat switch. Wireless accessory charging module. Selectable drive mode switch. Driver state monitor.
19	7.5 A	Headlamp switch pack. Telematics control unit module. Bluetooth low energy module.
20	10 A	Not used (spare).
21	7.5 A	Climate control. E-shifter module.
22	7.5 A	Instrument cluster. Steering column control module.
23	20 A	Audio unit.
24	20 A	Not used (spare).
25	30 A	Not used (spare).

Fuses – Troubleshooting

Fuses – Frequently Asked Questions

When do I need to check a fuse?

- If electrical components in the vehicle are not working.

When do I need to replace a fuse?

- If a fuse has blown.

How do I identify a blown fuse?

- You can identify a blown fuse by a broken wire within the fuse.

Maintenance

Maintenance Precautions

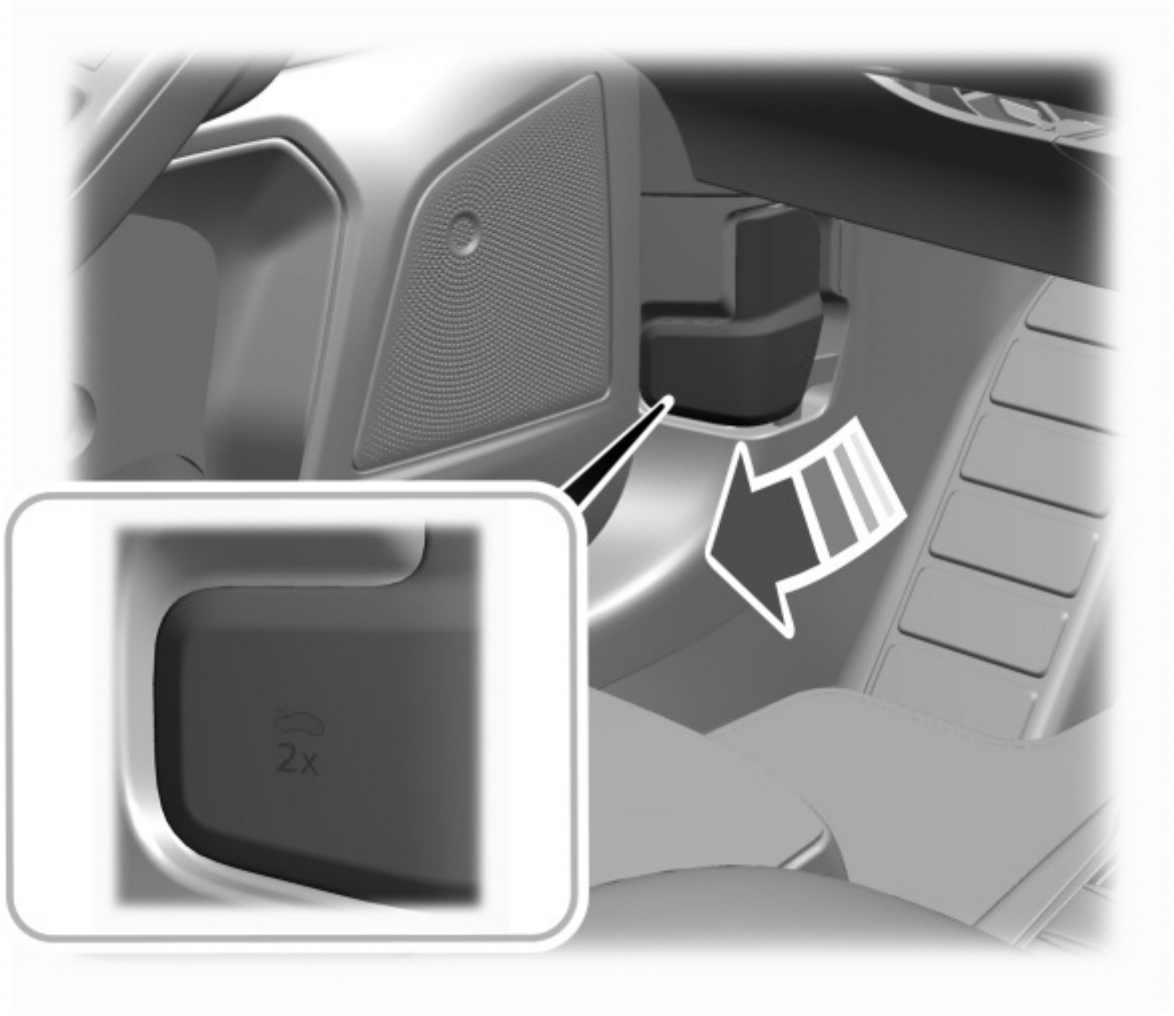
Service your vehicle regularly to help maintain its roadworthiness and resale value. There is a large network of authorized dealers that are there to help you with their professional servicing expertise. We believe that their specially trained technicians are best qualified to service your vehicle properly and expertly. They are supported by a wide range of highly specialized tools developed specifically for servicing your vehicle.

If your vehicle requires professional service, an authorized dealer can provide the necessary parts and service. Check your warranty information to find out which parts and services are covered.
Use only recommended fuels, lubricants, fluids and service parts conforming to specifications.

- Do not work on a hot engine.
- Make sure that nothing gets caught in moving parts.
- Do not work on a vehicle with the engine running in an enclosed space, unless you are sure you have enough ventilation.
- Keep all open flames and other burning material, such as cigarettes, away from the battery and all fuel related parts.
- Set the parking brake, shift the transmission to park (P) and block the wheels.

Opening and Closing the Hood

Opening the Hood



1. Open the left-hand front door.
2. Fully pull the hood release lever and let it completely retract.

Note: This action releases the hood latch.

3. Fully pull the hood release lever for a second time.

Note: This action fully releases the hood.



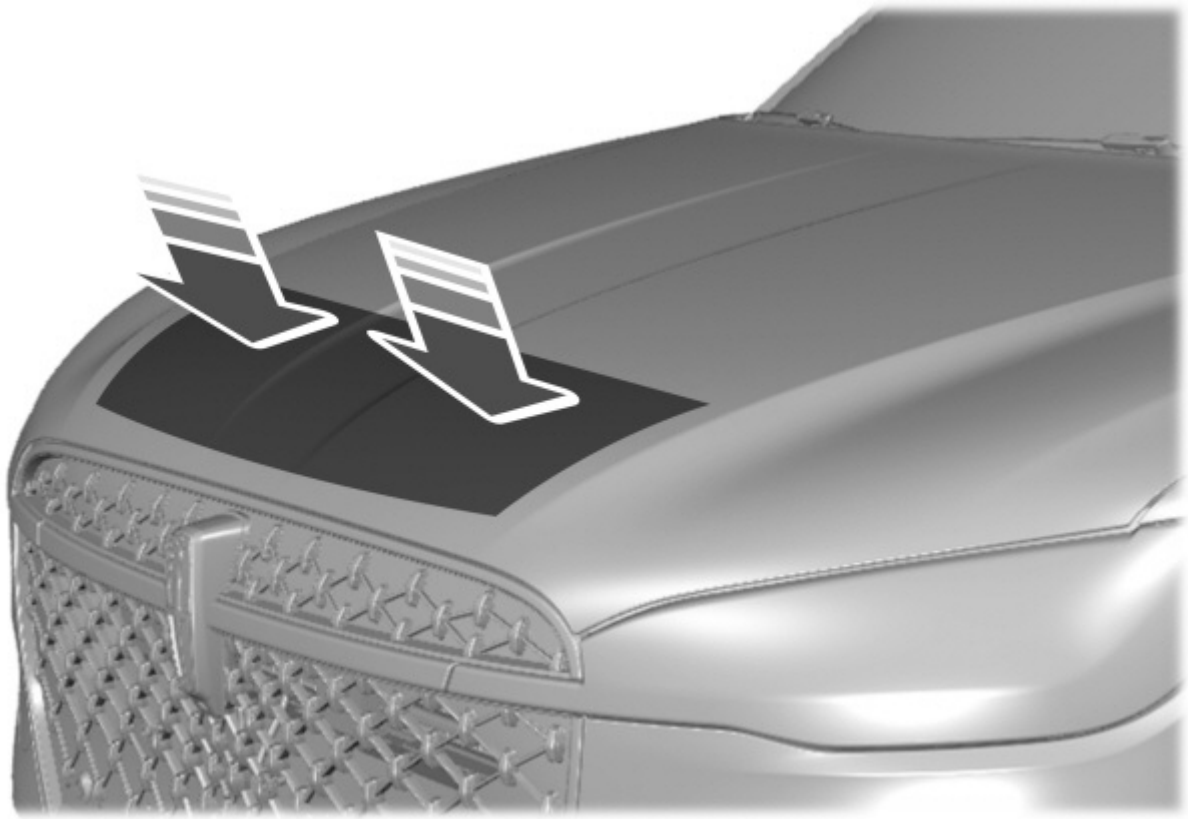
4. Open the hood. The hood struts will automatically support the hood.

Note: There is no secondary hood release under the hood.

Closing the Hood

WARNING: Make sure that you fully latch the hood before driving. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

1. Lower hood until it engages on to the latch.



2. Firmly push down on the front center of the hood using both hands to close it fully.

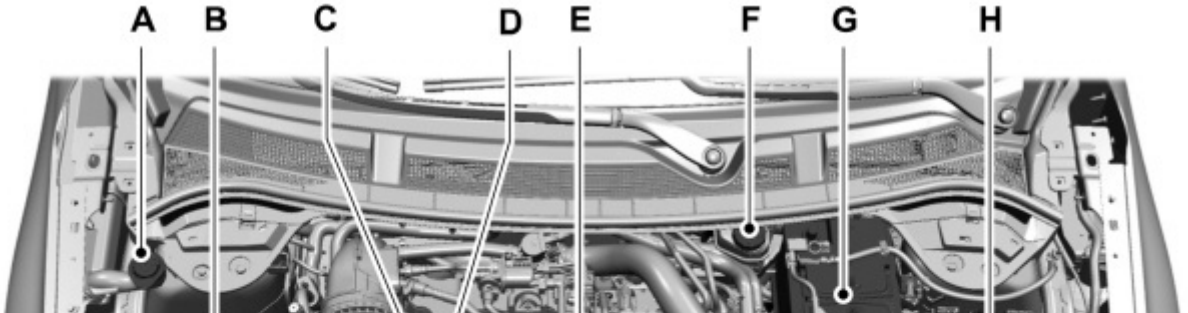
Warning Lamps and Indicators

This lamp illuminates when the ignition is on and the hood is not completely closed.

Information Messages

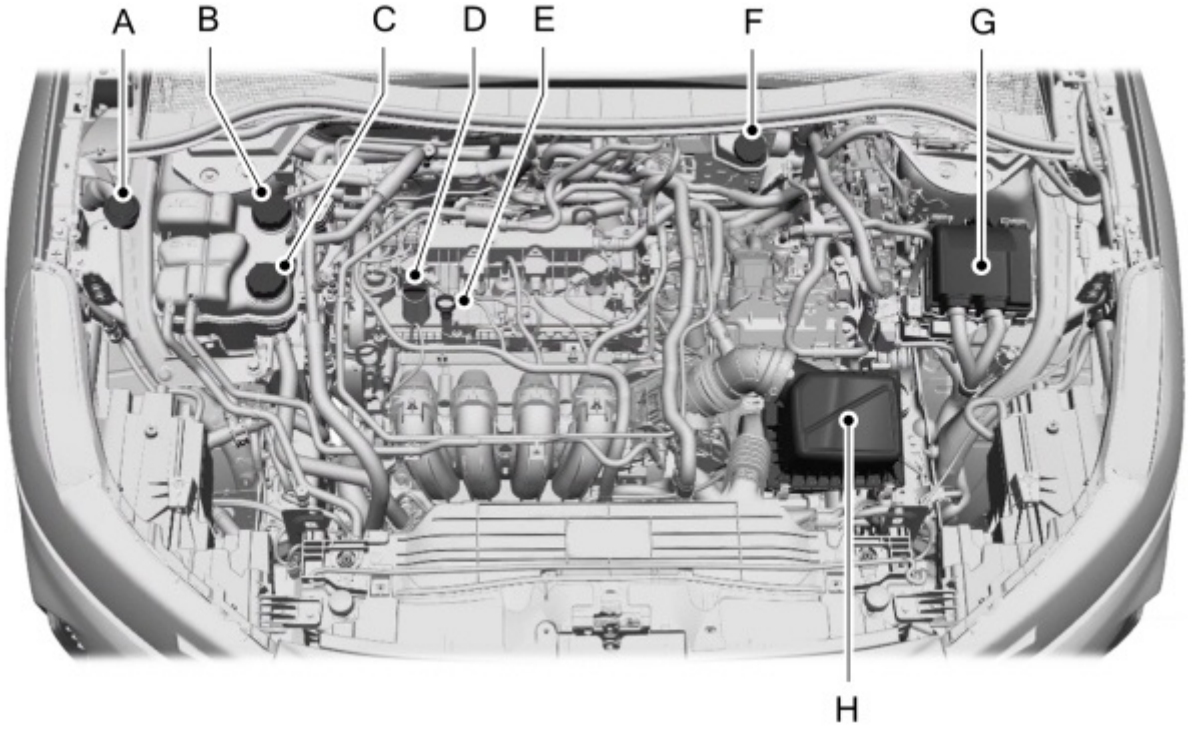
Message	Action
Hood Ajar	Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and close the hood.

Under Hood Overview - 2.0L EcoBoost™



A Windshield washer fluid reservoir See **Adding Washer Fluid**.
B Engine coolant reservoir. See **Changing the Coolant**.
C Engine oil dipstick. See **Engine Oil Dipstick Overview**.
D Engine oil filler cap. See **Adding Engine Oil**.
E Air filter assembly. See **Changing the Engine Air Filter - 2.0L EcoBoost™**.
F Brake fluid reservoir. See **Locating the Brake Fluid Reservoir**.
G Battery. See **Changing the 12V Battery - Excluding: Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)**.
H Engine compartment fuse box. See **Fuses**.

Under Hood Overview - 2.5L, Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)



A Windshield washer fluid reservoir: See **Adding Washer Fluid**.
B Low temperature coolant cap: See **Checking the Coolant Level**.
C High temperature coolant cap: See **Checking the Coolant Level**.
D Engine oil filler cap: See **Adding Engine Oil**.
E Engine oil dipstick: See **Engine Oil Dipstick Overview**.
F Brake fluid reservoir: See **Checking the Brake Fluid**.
G Power distribution box: See **Fuses**.
H Air filter assembly: See **Changing the Engine Air Filter - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)**.

Engine Oil Dipstick Overview

A Minimum.
B Fill Level.
C Maximum.

Checking the Engine Oil Level

1. Make sure that your vehicle is on level ground.
2. Check the oil level before starting the engine, or switch the engine off after warm up and wait 15 minutes for the oil to drain into the oil pan.

Note: Checking the oil level too soon could result in an inaccurate reading.

3. Remove the dipstick and wipe it with a clean, lint-free cloth.
4. Reinstall the dipstick and make sure it is fully seated.
5. Remove the dipstick again to check the oil level.

Note: Read both sides of the dipstick and use the lowest oil level as the correct reading.
Note: If the oil level is between the maximum and minimum marks, the oil level is acceptable.Do not add oil.

6. If the oil level is at the minimum mark, immediately add oil.
7. Reinstall the dipstick. Make sure it is fully seated.

Note: The oil consumption of new engines reaches its normal level after approximately 3,000 mi (5,000 km).
Note: Increases in oil level can occur from frequent short trips that do not allow the engine to get to operating temperature, as well as frequent idling or low speed driving for long periods of time.
Note: If oil levels are continuously noted above the maximum mark, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Adding Engine Oil

WARNING: Do not remove the filler cap when the engine is running.
WARNING: Do not add engine oil when the engine is hot. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

Do not use supplemental engine oil additives because they are unnecessary and could lead to engine damage that the vehicle warranty may not cover.

1. Clean the area surrounding the engine oil filler cap before you remove it.
2. Remove the engine oil filler cap.
3. Add engine oil that meets our specifications. See **Vehicle Specifications**.
   See **Engine Specifications - 2.5L**.
4. Reinstall the engine oil filler cap.Turn it clockwise until you feel a strong resistance.

Note: Do not add oil further than the maximum mark.Oil levels above the maximum mark may cause engine damage.
Note: Immediately soak up any oil spillage with an absorbent cloth.

Intelligent Oil Life Monitor

Under certain conditions the vehicle’s intelligent oil life monitor may determine your oil requires replacement prior to your general service. Should this occur it is recommended you replace your oil within two weeks or 500 mi (800 km) of being alerted.
Your authorized dealer will be able to advise you whether only an engine oil and filter change is recommended or whether you should complete your general service inclusive of oil and oil Filter.

Resetting the Intelligent Oil Life Monitor

Use the information display controls on the steering wheel to reset the oil change indicator.
From the main menu scroll to:

Message	Action and description
Settings	Press the right arrow button, then from this menu scroll to the following message.
Vehicle	Press the right arrow button, then from this menu scroll to the following message.
Oil Life	Press the right arrow button, then from this menu scroll to the following message.
Hold OK to Reset	Press and hold the OK button until the instrument cluster displays the following message.
	Reset Successful
	When the oil change indicator resets the instrument cluster displays 100%. Remaining Life
	{00}%
	If the instrument cluster displays one of the following messages, repeat the process. Not Reset
	Reset Cancelled

Engine Oil Capacity and Specification - 2.0L EcoBoost™

Use oil that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade.

If you do not use oil that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade, it could result in:

- Component damage that your vehicle warranty does not cover.
- Longer engine cranking periods.
- Increased emission levels.
- Reduced vehicle performance.
- Reduced fuel economy.



An oil that displays this symbol conforms to current engine, emission system and fuel economy performance standards of ILSAC.
We recommend Motorcraft motor oil for your vehicle. If Motorcraft oil is not available, use motor oils of the recommended viscosity grade that display the API Certification Mark for gasoline engines.
Do not use supplemental engine oil additives because they are unnecessary and could lead to engine damage that your vehicle warranty does not cover.
Capacities

Variant	Including the Oil Filter
All.	6.1 qt (5.8 L)

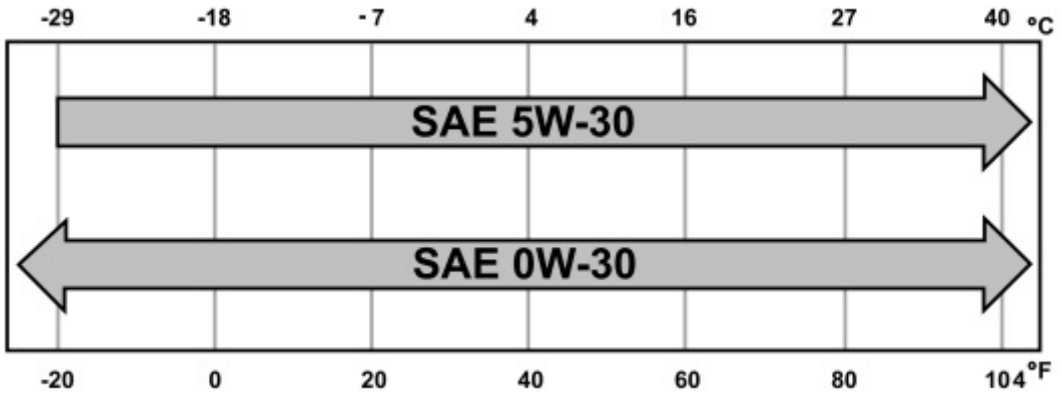
Materials

Name	Specification
Motorcraft® SAE 5W-30 Motor Oil XO-5W30-Q1SP, XO-5W30-Q1FS	WSS-M2C961-A1

Alternative Engine Oil for Extremely Cold Climates
To improve engine cold start performance, we recommend that you use the following alternative engine oil in extremely cold climates, where the ambient temperature reaches -22.0 °F (-30 °C) or below.

Materials

Name	Specification
Engine Oil - SAE 0W-30	WSS-M2C963-A1



Note: If you use your vehicle regularly above the altitude of 5,000 ft (1,524 m) and under the temperature of -4.0 °F (-20 °C), it is recommended to use the alternative engine oil.

Engine Oil Capacity and Specification - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)

Use oil that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade.

If you do not use oil that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade, it could result in:

- Component damage that your vehicle warranty does not cover.
- Longer engine cranking periods.
- Increased emission levels.
- Reduced vehicle performance.

- Reduced fuel economy.



An oil that displays this symbol conforms to current engine, emission system and fuel economy performance standards of ILSAC.
We recommend Motorcraft motor oil for your vehicle. If Motorcraft oil is not available, use motor oils of the recommended viscosity grade that display the API Certification Mark for gasoline engines.
Do not use supplemental engine oil additives because they are unnecessary and could lead to engine damage that your vehicle warranty does not cover.
Capacities

Variant	Including the Oil Filter
All.	5.7 qt (5.4 L)

Materials

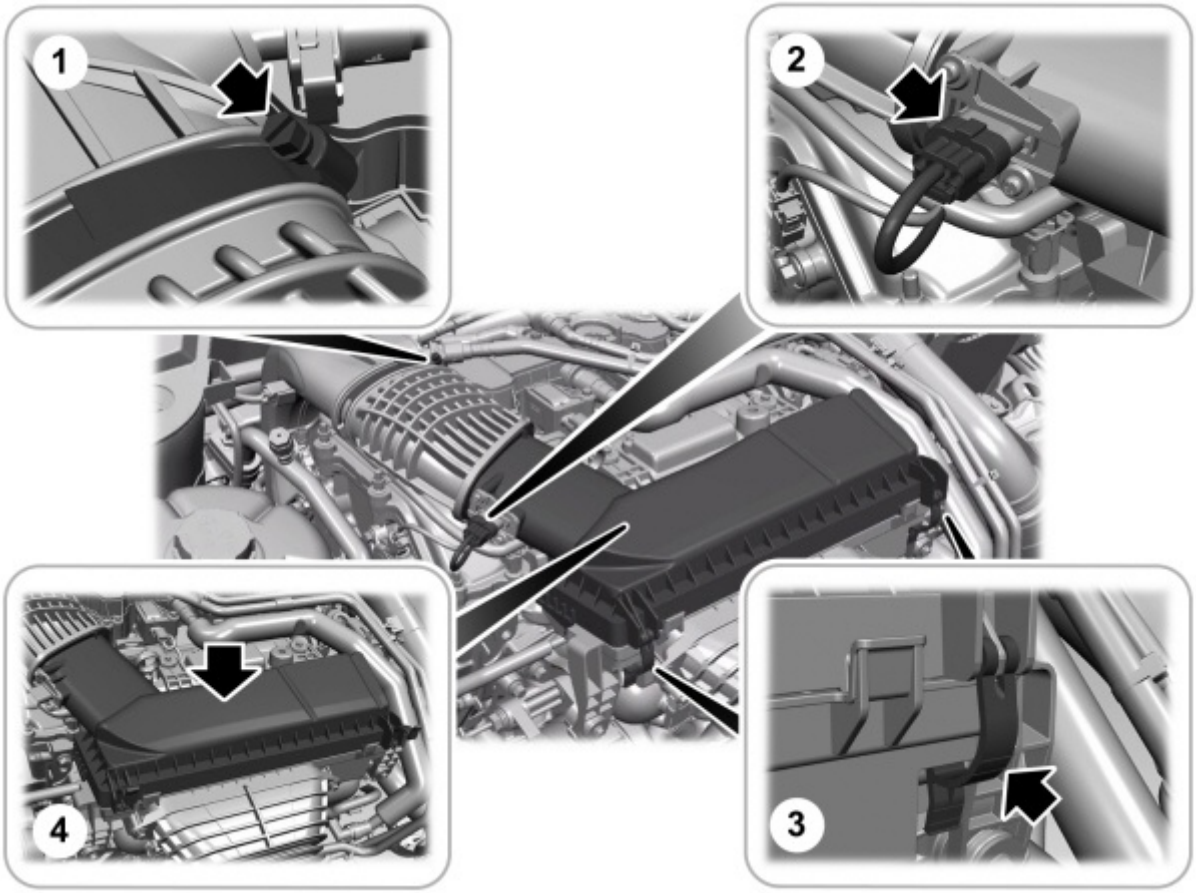
Name	Specification
Motorcraft® SAE 0W-20 Motor Oil XO-0W20-QFS	WSS-M2C962-A1

Changing the Engine Air Filter - 2.0L EcoBoost™

WARNING: To reduce the risk of vehicle damage and personal burn injuries, do not start your engine with the air cleaner removed and do not remove it while the engine is running.

Change the air filter element at the proper intervals.
When changing the air filter element, use only the air filter element listed. See **Motorcraft Parts - 2.0L EcoBoost™**.

Note: Failure to use the correct air filter element could result in severe engine damage that the vehicle warranty may not cover.
Note: When servicing the air filter, do not allow foreign material to enter the air induction system.The engine is susceptible to damage from even small particles.



1. Loosen the clamp.
2. Disconnect the connector.
3. Release the two clips securing the airbox cover to the housing.
4. Lift up on the airbox cover.
5. Remove the air filter element from the housing.
6. Wipe any dirt or debris from the housing.

Note: Do not allow dirt or debris to enter the air filter housing and make sure you have a good seal.

7. Install the new air filter element.

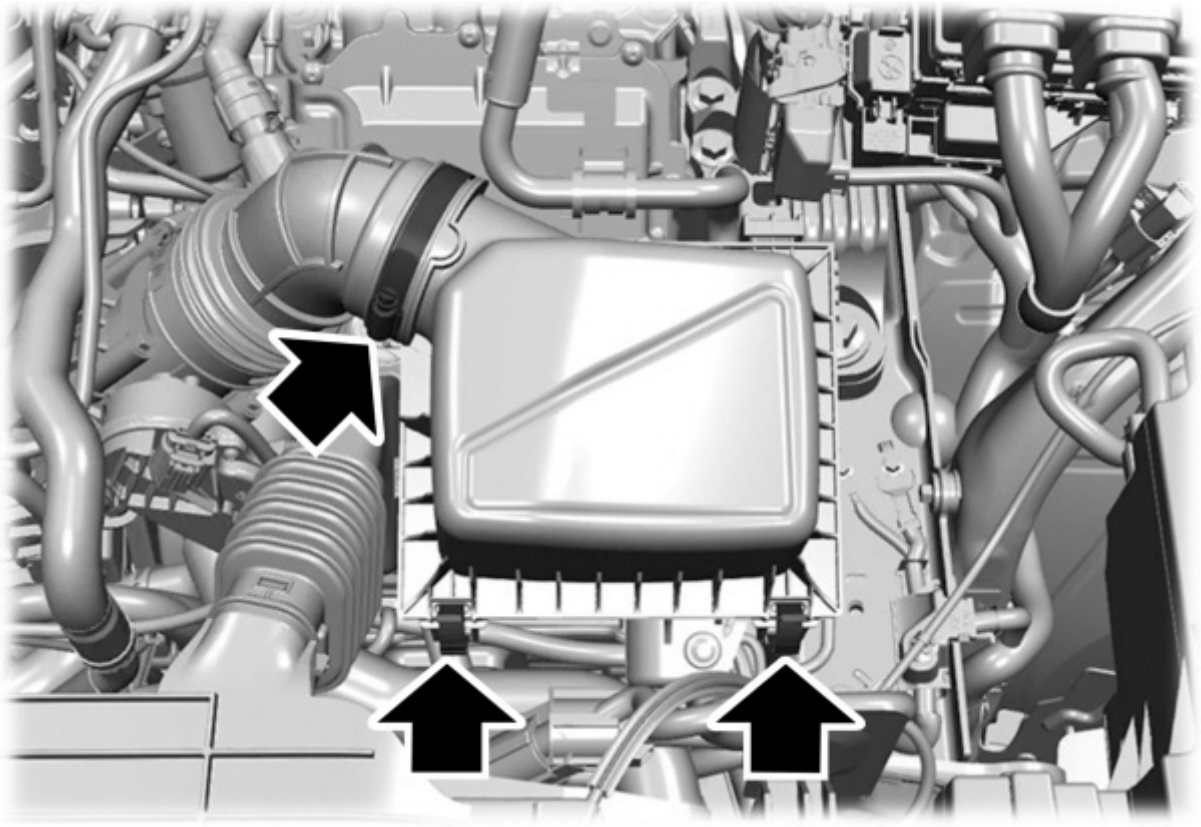
Note: Be careful not to crimp the air filter element edges between the housing and cover. This can cause filter damage and allow unfiltered air to enter the engine if not properly seated.

8. Install the airbox cover back into the housing. Make sure that all four cover fingers are seated in their corresponding housing windows. Press down with your right hand on the flexible tube, while pulling back on the housing bracket with your left hand.
9. Reverse Steps 3, 2 and 1. Make sure the clamp joint is fully seated.

Changing the Engine Air Filter - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)

WARNING: To reduce the risk of vehicle damage and personal burn injuries, do not start your engine with the air cleaner removed and do not remove it while the engine is running.

When changing the air filter element, use only parts that meet or exceed our specifications.
Change the air filter element at the proper interval. See **Maintenance**.
Note: If you do not use the correct air filter element, your vehicle warranty could be void.



1. Using a screwdriver, loosen the clamp on air filter housing cover.
2. Gently pull the boot back away from the air filter housing cover.
3. Release the two clips from the air filter housing cover.
4. Remove air filter housing cover.
5. Remove the air filter element from the air filter housing.
6. Wipe any dirt or debris from the air filter housing assembly to make sure no dirt gets in the engine and to make sure you have a good seal.



7. Install a new air filter element.Be careful not to crimp the filter element edges between the air filter housing and cover.This could cause filter damage and allow unfiltered air to enter the engine if it is not properly seated.
8. Install the air filter housing cover.
9. Engage the clips to secure the air filter housing cover to the air filter housing.
10. Reconnect the boot to the air filter housing cover and securely tighten the clamp.

Checking the Coolant Level

WARNING: Do not remove the coolant reservoir cap when the engine is on or the cooling system is hot. Wait 10 minutes for the cooling system to cool down. Cover the coolant reservoir cap with a thick cloth to prevent the possibility of scalding and slowly remove the cap. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

WARNING: To reduce the risk of personal injury, make sure the engine is cool before unscrewing the coolant pressure relief cap. The cooling system is under pressure. Steam and hot liquid can come out forcefully when you loosen the cap slightly.

When the engine is cold, check the concentration and level of the coolant at the intervals listed in the scheduled maintenance information. See **Scheduled Maintenance**.
Note: Make sure that the coolant level is between the MIN and the MAX marks on the coolant reservoir.
Note: Coolant expands when it is hot.The level may extend beyond the MAX mark.This is normal.
Maintain coolant concentration within 48% to 50%, which equates to a freeze point between -29 °F (-34 °C) and -35 °F (-37 °C). Coolant concentration should be checked using a refractometer. We do not recommend the use of hydrometers or coolant test strips for measuring coolant concentration.

Adding Coolant

WARNING: Do not add coolant when the vehicle is on or the cooling system is hot. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

WARNING: Do not remove the coolant reservoir cap when the engine is on or the cooling system is hot. Wait 10 minutes for the cooling system to cool down. Cover the coolant reservoir cap with a thick cloth to prevent the possibility of scalding and slowly remove the cap. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

WARNING: Do not allow the fluid to touch your skin or eyes. If this happens, rinse the affected areas immediately with plenty of water and contact your physician.

WARNING: Do not put coolant in the windshield washer reservoir. If sprayed on the windshield, coolant could make it difficult to see through the windshield.

WARNING: Do not add coolant further than the MAX mark.

Note: Do not use stop leak pellets, cooling system sealants, or non-specified additives as they can cause damage to the engine cooling or heating systems.Resulting component damage may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.
Note: Automotive fluids are not interchangeable.
It is very important to use prediluted coolant approved to the correct specification in order to avoid plugging the small passageways in the engine cooling system. See **Maintenance**.

See **Cooling System Capacity and Specification - 2.0L EcoBoost™**. Do not mix different colors or types of coolant in your vehicle. Mixing of engine coolants or using an incorrect coolant may harm the engine or cooling system components and may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.
Note: If prediluted coolant is not available, use the approved concentrated coolant diluting it to 50/50 with deionised or distilled water. See **Maintenance**.
See **Cooling System Capacity and Specification - 2.0L EcoBoost™**. Using water that has not been deionised may contribute to deposit formation, corrosion and plugging of the small cooling system passageways.
Note: Coolants marketed for all makes and models may not be approved to our specifications and may cause damage to the cooling system.Resulting component damage may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.
If the coolant level is at or below the minimum mark, add prediluted coolant immediately.
To top up the coolant level do the following:

1. Unscrew the cap slowly. Any pressure escapes as you unscrew the cap.
2. Add prediluted coolant approved to the correct specification. See **Maintenance**.
   See **Cooling System Capacity and Specification - 2.0L EcoBoost™**.
3. Add enough prediluted coolant to reach the correct level.
4. Replace the coolant reservoir cap. Turn the cap clockwise until it contacts the hard stop.
5. Check the coolant level in the coolant reservoir the next few times you drive your vehicle. If necessary, add enough prediluted engine coolant to bring the coolant level to the correct level.

If you have to add more than 1.1 qt (1 L) of engine coolant per month, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. Operating an engine with a low level of coolant can result in engine overheating and possible engine damage.
In case of emergency, you can add a large amount of water without engine coolant in order to reach a vehicle service location.
Water alone, without engine coolant, can cause engine damage from corrosion, overheating or freezing.

Do not use the following as a coolant substitute:
- Alcohol.
- Methanol.
- Brine.
- Any coolant mixed with alcohol or methanol antifreeze.

Alcohol and other liquids can cause engine damage from overheating or freezing.
Do not add extra inhibitors or additives to the coolant. These can be harmful and compromise the corrosion protection of the coolant.

Changing the Coolant

For coolant change, see your authorized dealer.
Changing the coolant is necessary at specific mileage intervals listed in the scheduled maintenance information.

Managing the Coolant Temperature

If you tow a trailer with your vehicle, the engine may temporarily reach a higher temperature during severe operating conditions, for example ascending a long or steep grade in high ambient temperatures.

At this time, you may notice the coolant temperature gauge moves toward the red zone and a message may appear in the information display.

WARNING: Do not drive your vehicle when the coolant warning lamp is on, as this may indicate your engine could be overheating. As a result, your vehicle speed may reduce, acceleration could be compromised, or the engine might stop without warning. Pull your vehicle over safely as soon as possible. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

You may notice a reduction in vehicle speed caused by reduced engine power in order to manage the engine coolant temperature.Your vehicle may enter this mode if certain high-temperature and high-load conditions take place.The amount of speed reduction depends on vehicle loading, grade and outside temperature. If this occurs, there is no need to stop your vehicle.You can continue to drive.See **Crash and Breakdown Information**.
The air conditioning may automatically turn on and off during severe operating conditions to protect the engine from overheating. When the coolant temperature decreases to the normal operating temperature, the air conditioning turns on.
If the coolant temperature gauge moves fully into the red zone, or if the coolant temperature warning or service engine soon messages appear in your information display, do the following:

1. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Fully apply the parking brake, shift into park (P) or neutral (N).
2. Leave the engine running until the coolant temperature gauge needle returns to the normal position.If the temperature does not drop after several minutes, follow the remaining steps.
3. Switch the engine off and wait for it to cool. Check the coolant level.
4. If the coolant level is at or below the minimum mark, add prediluted coolant immediately.
5. If the coolant level is normal, restart the engine and continue.

Cooling System Capacity and Specification - 2.0L EcoBoost™

Use coolant that meets the defined specification.

If you do not use coolant that meets the defined specification, it could result in:
- Component damage that your vehicle warranty does not cover.
- Reduced vehicle performance.

Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	9.2 ± 0.3 qt (8.75 ± 0.25 L)

Materials

Name	Specification
Motorcraft® Yellow Prediluted Antifreeze/Coolant VC-13DL-G	WSS-M97B57-A2

Cooling System Capacity and Specification - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)

Use coolant that meets the defined specification.

If you do not use coolant that meets the defined specification, it could result in:

- Component damage that your vehicle warranty does not cover.
- Reduced vehicle performance.

Capacities

Variant	Quantity
Low temperature cooling circuit.	6.6 qt (6.2 L)
High temperature cooling circuit.	10.1 qt (9.6 L)

Materials

Name	Specification
Motorcraft® Yellow Prediluted Antifreeze/Coolant VC-13DL-G	WSS-M97B57-A2

Coolant – Warning Lamps

 If the engine begins to overheat, the coolant temperature gauge moves toward the red zone.

 A warning lamp illuminates and a message may appear in the information display.

Coolant – Information Messages

Message	Description and Action
High engine temperature Stop safely	Displays when the engine temperature is too high. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so, switch the engine off and allow it to cool. If the problem persists, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. See **Checking the Coolant Level**.

Changing the Fuel Filter

Your vehicle has a lifetime fuel filter that integrates with the fuel tank. It does not need regular maintenance or replacement.

Drive Belt Routing Overview - 2.0L EcoBoost™



A. The long drive belt is on the first pulley groove closest to the engine.
B. The short drive belt is on the second pulley groove farthest from engine.

12V Battery Precautions

WARNING: Batteries normally produce explosive gases which can cause personal injury. Therefore, do not allow flames, sparks or lighted substances to come near the battery. When working near the battery, always shield your face and protect your eyes. Always provide correct ventilation.

WARNING: When lifting a plastic-cased battery, excessive pressure on the end walls could cause acid to flow through the vent caps, resulting in personal injury and damage to the vehicle or battery. Lift the battery with a battery carrier or with your hands on opposite corners.

WARNING: Keep batteries out of reach of children. Batteries contain sulfuric acid. Avoid contact with skin, eyes or clothing. Shield your eyes when working near the battery to protect against possible splashing of acid solution. In case of acid contact with skin or eyes, flush immediately with water for a minimum of 15 minutes and get prompt medical attention. If acid is swallowed, call a physician immediately.

WARNING: Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds, chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and reproductive harm. **Wash your hands after handling**.

WARNING: This vehicle may have more than one battery. Removing the battery cables from only one battery does not disconnect your vehicle electrical system. Make sure you disconnect the battery cables from all batteries when disconnecting power. Failure to do so may cause serious personal injury or property damage.

WARNING: For vehicles with Auto-Start-Stop the battery requirement is different. You must replace the battery with one of exactly the same specification.

WARNING: For vehicles equipped with a 12V battery vent tube, always properly reconnect the vent tube to the battery after disconnecting. Failure to follow this instruction could allow harmful gasses to enter the vehicle cabin, which could cause personal injury or death.

What Is the Battery Management System

The battery management system monitors battery conditions and takes actions to extend battery life.

How Does the Battery Management System Work

If excessive battery drain is detected, the system temporarily disables some electrical systems to protect the battery.

Systems included are:

- Heated rear window.
- Heated seats.
- Climate control.
- Heated steering wheel.
- Audio unit.
- Navigation system.

A message could appear in the information display to alert you that battery protection actions are active. This message is only for notification that an action is taking place, and not intended to indicate an electrical problem or that the battery requires replacement.

Battery Management System Limitations

After battery replacement, or in some cases after charging the battery with an external charger, the battery management system requires eight hours of vehicle sleep time to relearn the battery state of charge. During this time, your vehicle must remain fully locked with the ignition switched off.
Note: Prior to relearning the battery state of charge, the battery management system could temporarily disable some electrical systems.
Electrical Accessory Installation
To make sure the battery management system works correctly, do not connect an electrical device ground connection directly to the battery negative post. This can cause inaccurate measurements of the battery condition and potential incorrect system operation.
Note: If you add electrical accessories or components to the vehicle, it could adversely affect battery performance and durability. This could also affect the performance of other electrical systems in the vehicle.

Changing the 12V Battery - Excluding: Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)

The battery is in the engine compartment. See **Maintenance**.
Your vehicle has a maintenance-free battery. It does not require additional water during service.
Note: There may be additional components that need to be removed or disconnected before you can safely remove the battery from your vehicle. For specific guidance on which components may need to be addressed, it is best to contact your dealer for detailed information.
If the vehicle battery has a cover, make sure you correctly install it after cleaning or replacing the battery.
For longer, trouble-free operation, keep the top of the battery clean and dry and the battery cables tightly fastened to the battery terminals. If any corrosion is present on the battery or terminals, remove the cables from the terminals and clean with a wire brush. You can neutralize the acid with a solution of baking soda and water.
We recommend that you disconnect the negative battery cable terminal from the battery if you plan to store your vehicle for an extended period.
Note: If you only disconnect the negative battery cable terminal, make sure it is isolated or placed away from the battery terminal to avoid unintended connection or arcing.
If you disconnect or replace the battery and your vehicle has an automatic transmission, it must relearn its adaptive strategy. Because of this, the transmission may shift firmly when first driven. This is normal operation while the transmission fully updates its operation to optimum shift feel.
Removing the Battery

1. Apply the parking brake and switch the ignition off.
2. Switch all electrical equipment off, for example lights and radio.
3. Wait a minimum of two minutes before disconnecting the battery.

Note: The engine management system has a power hold function and remains powered for a period of time after you switch the ignition off. This allows the system to store diagnostic and adaptive tables.
Disconnecting the battery without waiting can cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

4. Disconnect and isolate the negative battery cable terminal.
5. Disconnect and isolate the positive battery cable terminal.

Note: Before removing batteries with a vent tube, disconnect and secure the tube.

6. Remove the battery securing clamp.

7. Remove the battery.

If you disconnect or replace the vehicle battery, you must reset the following features:

- Window bounce-back. See **Windows**.
- Clock Settings.
- Pre-set radio stations.

Replacing the Battery
Note: Before reconnecting the battery, make sure the ignition remains switched off.
You must replace the battery with one of exactly the same specification.
To install, reverse the removal procedure.
Note: Make sure that you correctly install the battery cable terminals, battery terminal covers, battery vent tube, battery securing clamp and battery cover.

Changing the 12V Battery - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)

The battery is in the luggage compartment.
Your vehicle has a maintenance-free battery. It does not require additional water during service.
If the vehicle battery has a cover, make sure you correctly install it after cleaning or replacing the battery.
For longer, trouble-free operation, keep the top of the battery clean and dry and the battery cables tightly fastened to the battery terminals. If any corrosion is present on the battery or terminals, remove the cables from the terminals and clean with a wire brush. You can neutralize the acid with a solution of baking soda and water.
Note: If you only disconnect the negative battery cable terminal, make sure it is isolated or placed away from the battery terminal to avoid unintended connection or arcing.
If you disconnect or replace the battery and your vehicle has an automatic transmission, it must relearn its adaptive strategy. Because of this, the transmission may shift firmly when first driven. This is normal operation while the transmission fully updates its operation to optimum shift feel.
Removing the Battery

1. Apply the parking brake and switch the ignition off.

2. Switch all electrical equipment off, for example lights and radio.

3. Wait a minimum of two minutes before disconnecting the battery.

Note: The engine management system has a power hold function and remains powered for a period of time after you switch the ignition off. This is to allow diagnostic and adaptive tables to be stored. Disconnecting the battery without waiting can cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

4. Remove the battery securing clamp.

5. Detach the vent hose from the battery.

6. Disconnect and isolate the negative battery cable terminal.

7. Disconnect and isolate the positive battery cable terminal.

8. Remove the battery.

If you disconnect or replace the vehicle battery, you must reset the following features:

- Window bounce-back. See **What Is Window Bounce-Back**.
- Clock Settings.
- Pre-set radio stations.

Replacing the Battery
Note: Before reconnecting the battery, make sure the ignition remains switched off.
You must replace the battery with one of exactly the same specification.
To install, reverse the removal procedure.
Note: Make sure that you correctly install the battery terminal covers, battery cover and battery cable terminals.

Resetting the Battery Sensor

When you install a new battery, reset the battery sensor by doing the following:

1. Switch the ignition on, and leave the engine off.

Note: Complete Steps 2 and 3 within 10 seconds.

2. Flash the high beam headlamps five times, ending with the high beams off.

3. Press and release the brake pedal three times.

The battery warning lamp flashes three times to confirm that the reset is successful.

Recycling and Disposing of the 12V Battery

 Make sure that you dispose of old batteries in an environmentally friendly way. Seek advice from your local authority about recycling old batteries.

Charging the 12V Battery - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)

Your vehicle has a high voltage to low voltage energy transfer feature that keeps the 12-volt battery charged by the high voltage battery. If the 12-volt battery level is low, the high voltage battery transfers energy to the 12-volt battery when the vehicle is off.
12-volt battery depletion can still occur if the high voltage battery state of charge is low.
Always take care not to deep discharge the 12-volt battery as it may cause premature wear.

12V Battery – Warning Lamps - Excluding: Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)

 If it illuminates while driving, it indicates a charging system error. Switch off all unnecessary electrical equipment and have your vehicle immediately checked.

12V Battery – Warning Lamps - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)

 If it illuminates when the green ready to drive indicator is activated, this indicates your vehicle requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

12V Battery – Information Messages - Excluding: Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)

Message	Details
Check charging system	The charging system needs servicing. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Electrical system fault Service soon Steering and brake assist limited	The charging system needs servicing. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Electrical system fault Service now Steering and brake assist limited	The charging system needs servicing. Have your vehicle immediately checked.
12V battery low Charge by driving Steering and brake assist limited	The battery management system determines that the 12V battery is at a low state of charge. Start the engine to charge the battery or charge the battery using an aftermarket battery charger. Always use the vehicle ground point when connecting the negative cable of the external battery charger. See **Jump Starting the Vehicle - Gasoline**. This message clears once you restart your vehicle and the battery state of charge has recovered. Do not switch on the ignition when a battery charger is in use to charge the battery.
Turn power off to save battery	The battery management system determines that the battery is at a low state of charge. Turn the ignition off as soon as possible to protect the battery. This message will clear once the vehicle has been started and the battery state of charge has recovered. Turning off unnecessary electrical loads will allow faster battery state-of-charge recovery.
Electrical power saver active Some features turned off See manual	Displayed when the battery management system detects an extended low-voltage condition. Various vehicle features will be disabled to help preserve the battery. Turn off as many of the electrical loads as soon as possible to improve system voltage. If the system voltage has recovered, the disabled features will operate again as normal.

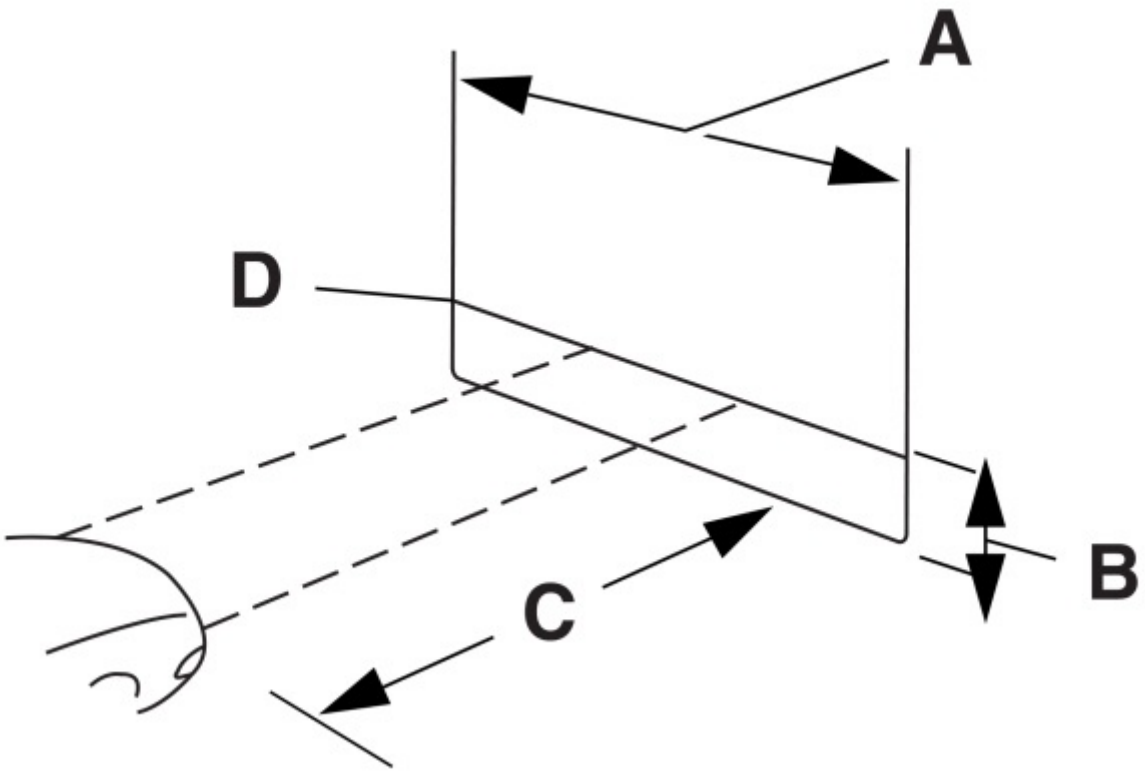
12V Battery – Information Messages - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)

Message	Action
12V Battery Fault Service Soon	Your vehicle has a 12 volt battery problem. We recommend having the battery system checked by an authorized EV dealer.
Electric Range Reduced due to Park/Hazard Lamps On While Vehicle Off	The electric vehicle range is reduced due to the park and/or hazard lamps on while your vehicle was off.

Message	Action
Electrical System Drain Service Required	Your vehicle has an electrical drain within the vehicle. Please check for any aftermarket devices that could be draining the battery. If none are found, please have your vehicle serviced by an authorized EV dealer.

Adjusting the Headlamps

Vertical Aim Adjustment
The headlamps on your vehicle are properly aimed at the assembly plant. If your vehicle has been in an accident, the alignment of your headlamps should be checked by your authorized dealer.



A 8 feet (2.4 meters)
B Center height of lamp to ground
C 25 feet (7.6 meters)
D Horizontal reference line

1. Park the vehicle directly in front of a wall or screen on a level surface, approximately 25 ft (7.6 m) away.

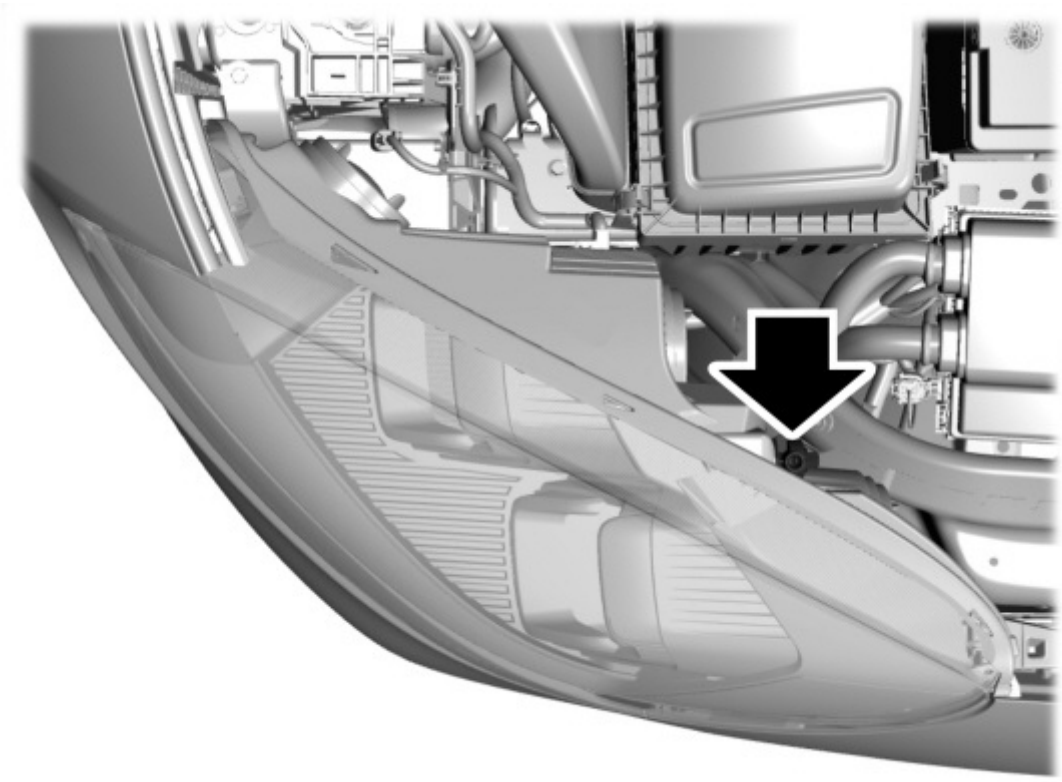
2. Measure the height of the low beam optical center. There is a reference cross-marking on the headlamp outer lens. Mark an 8 ft (2.4 m) horizontal reference line on the vertical wall or screen at this height.

Note: To see a clearer light pattern for adjusting, you may want to block the light from one headlamp when adjusting the other.

3. Switch on the low beam headlamps to illuminate the wall or screen and open the hood.



4. On the wall or screen you will observe a flat zone of high intensity light located at the top of the right hand portion of the beam pattern. If the top edge of the high intensity light zone is not at the horizontal reference line, the headlamp does need to be adjusted.



5. Locate the vertical adjuster on each headlamp.Using a Phillips #2 screwdriver, turn the adjuster either clockwise or counterclockwise in order to aim the headlamp.The horizontal edge of the brighter light should touch the horizontal reference line.

6. Close the hood and switch off the lamps.

Horizontal Aim Adjustment
Horizontal aim is not required for this vehicle and is non-adjustable.

Exterior Bulb Specification Chart

Your vehicle has LED lamps. These are not serviceable items. See an authorized dealer if they fail.

Interior Bulb Specification Chart

Your vehicle has LED lamps. These are not serviceable items. See an authorized dealer if they fail.

Engine Oil

Engine Oil Dipstick Overview

A Minimum.
B Fill Level.
C Maximum.

Checking the Engine Oil Level

1. Make sure that your vehicle is on level ground.
2. Check the oil level before starting the engine, or switch the engine off after warm up and wait 15 minutes for the oil to drain into the oil pan.

Note: Checking the oil level too soon could result in an inaccurate reading.

3. Remove the dipstick and wipe it with a clean, lint-free cloth.
4. Reinstall the dipstick and make sure it is fully seated.
5. Remove the dipstick again to check the oil level.

Note: Read both sides of the dipstick and use the lowest oil level as the correct reading.
Note: If the oil level is between the maximum and minimum marks, the oil level is acceptable.Do not add oil.

6. If the oil level is at the minimum mark, immediately add oil.
7. Reinstall the dipstick. Make sure it is fully seated.

Note: The oil consumption of new engines reaches its normal level after approximately 3,000 mi (5,000 km).
Note: Increases in oil level can occur from frequent short trips that do not allow the engine to get to operating temperature, as well as frequent idling or low speed driving for long periods of time.
Note: If oil levels are continuously noted above the maximum mark, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Adding Engine Oil

WARNING: Do not remove the filler cap when the engine is running.
WARNING: Do not add engine oil when the engine is hot. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

Do not use supplemental engine oil additives because they are unnecessary and could lead to engine damage that the vehicle warranty may not cover.

1. Clean the area surrounding the engine oil filler cap before you remove it.
2. Remove the engine oil filler cap.
3. Add engine oil that meets our specifications. See **Vehicle Specifications**.
   See **Engine Specifications - 2.5L**.
4. Reinstall the engine oil filler cap.Turn it clockwise until you feel a strong resistance.

Note: Do not add oil further than the maximum mark.Oil levels above the maximum mark may cause engine damage.
Note: Immediately soak up any oil spillage with an absorbent cloth.

Intelligent Oil Life Monitor

Under certain conditions the vehicle’s intelligent oil life monitor may determine your oil requires replacement prior to your general service. Should this occur it is recommended you replace your oil within two weeks or 500 mi (800 km) of being alerted.
Your authorized dealer will be able to advise you whether only an engine oil and filter change is recommended or whether you should complete your general service inclusive of oil and oil Filter.

Resetting the Intelligent Oil Life Monitor

Use the information display controls on the steering wheel to reset the oil change indicator.
From the main menu scroll to:

Message	Action and description
Settings	Press the right arrow button, then from this menu scroll to the following message.
Vehicle	Press the right arrow button, then from this menu scroll to the following message.
Oil Life	Press the right arrow button, then from this menu scroll to the following message.
Hold OK to Reset	Press and hold the OK button until the instrument cluster displays the following message.
	Reset Successful
	When the oil change indicator resets the instrument cluster displays 100%. Remaining Life
	{00}%
	If the instrument cluster displays one of the following messages, repeat the process. Not Reset
	Reset Cancelled

Engine Oil Capacity and Specification - 2.0L EcoBoost™

Use oil that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade.

If you do not use oil that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade, it could result in:

- Component damage that your vehicle warranty does not cover.
- Longer engine cranking periods.
- Increased emission levels.
- Reduced vehicle performance.
- Reduced fuel economy.



An oil that displays this symbol conforms to current engine, emission system and fuel economy performance standards of ILSAC.
We recommend Motorcraft motor oil for your vehicle. If Motorcraft oil is not available, use motor oils of the recommended viscosity grade that display the API Certification Mark for gasoline engines.
Do not use supplemental engine oil additives because they are unnecessary and could lead to engine damage that your vehicle warranty does not cover.
Capacities

Variant	Including the Oil Filter
All.	6.1 qt (5.8 L)

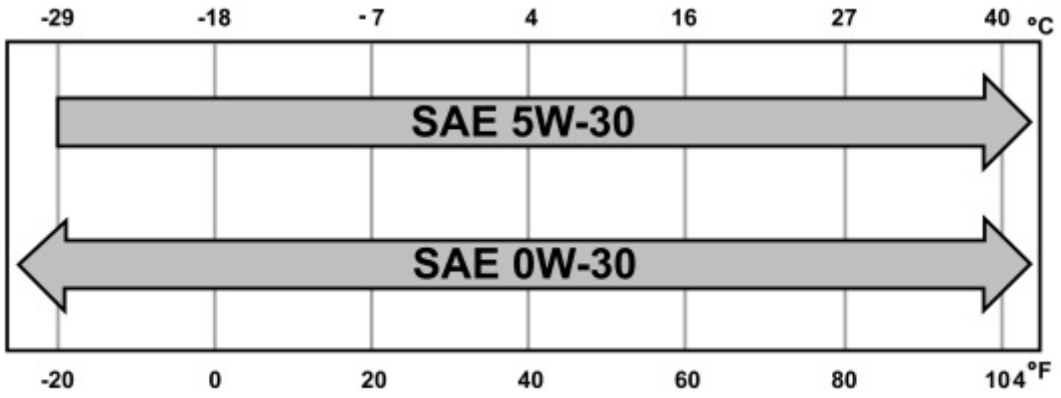
Materials

Name	Specification
Motorcraft® SAE 5W-30 Motor Oil XO-5W30-Q1SP, XO-5W30-Q1FS	WSS-M2C961-A1

Alternative Engine Oil for Extremely Cold Climates
To improve engine cold start performance, we recommend that you use the following alternative engine oil in extremely cold climates, where the ambient temperature reaches -22.0 °F (-30 °C) or below.

Materials

Name	Specification
Engine Oil - SAE 0W-30	WSS-M2C963-A1



Note: If you use your vehicle regularly above the altitude of 5,000 ft (1,524 m) and under the temperature of -4.0 °F (-20 °C), it is recommended to use the alternative engine oil.

Engine Oil Capacity and Specification - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)

Use oil that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade.

If you do not use oil that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade, it could result in:

- Component damage that your vehicle warranty does not cover.
- Longer engine cranking periods.
- Increased emission levels.
- Reduced vehicle performance.

- Reduced fuel economy.



An oil that displays this symbol conforms to current engine, emission system and fuel economy performance standards of ILSAC.
We recommend Motorcraft motor oil for your vehicle. If Motorcraft oil is not available, use motor oils of the recommended viscosity grade that display the API Certification Mark for gasoline engines.
Do not use supplemental engine oil additives because they are unnecessary and could lead to engine damage that your vehicle warranty does not cover.
Capacities

Variant	Including the Oil Filter
All.	5.7 qt (5.4 L)

Materials

Name	Specification
Motorcraft® SAE 0W-20 Motor Oil XO-0W20-QFS	WSS-M2C962-A1

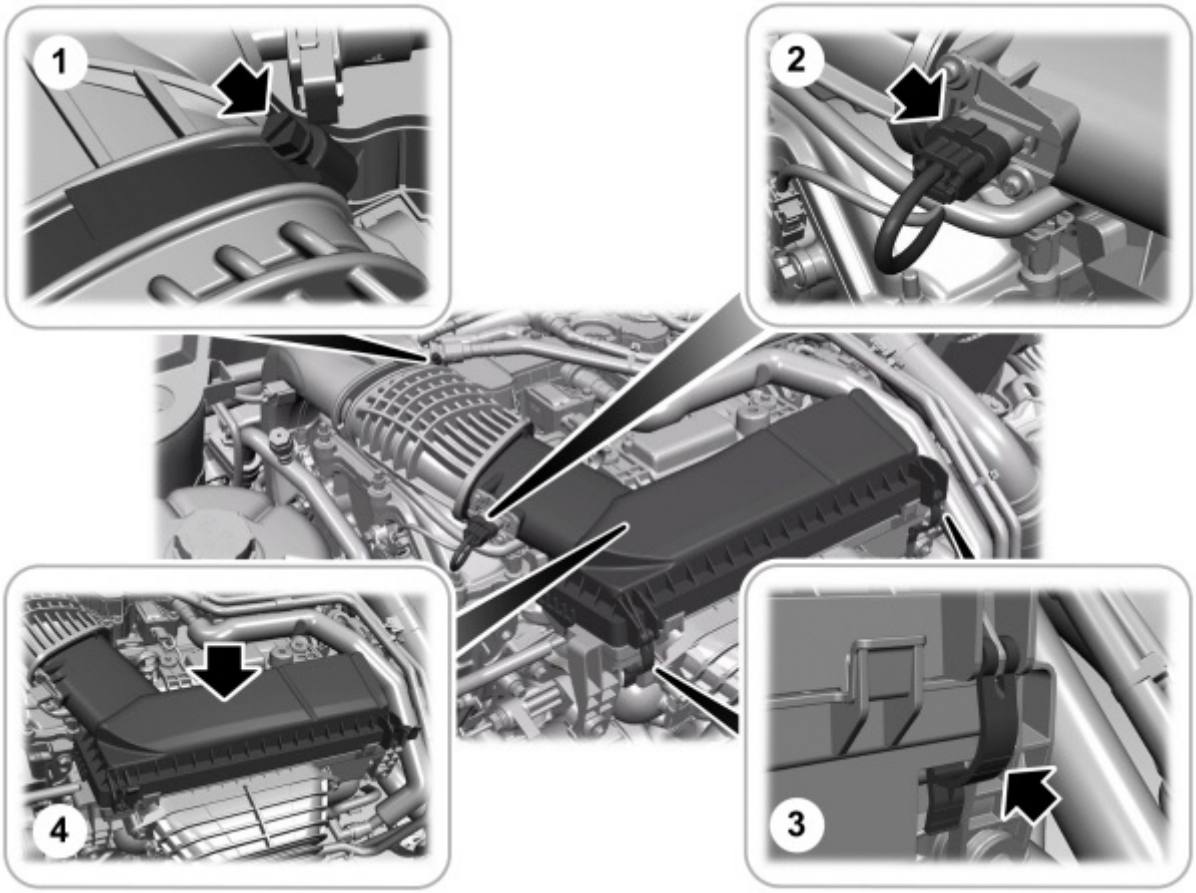
Engine Air Filter

Changing the Engine Air Filter - 2.0L EcoBoost™

WARNING: To reduce the risk of vehicle damage and personal burn injuries, do not start your engine with the air cleaner removed and do not remove it while the engine is running.

Change the air filter element at the proper intervals.

When changing the air filter element, use only the air filter element listed. See **Motorcraft Parts - 2.0L EcoBoost™**.
Note: Failure to use the correct air filter element could result in severe engine damage that the vehicle warranty may not cover.
Note: When servicing the air filter, do not allow foreign material to enter the air induction system.The engine is susceptible to damage from even small particles.



1. Loosen the clamp.
2. Disconnect the connector.
3. Release the two clips securing the airbox cover to the housing.
4. Lift up on the airbox cover.
5. Remove the air filter element from the housing.
6. Wipe any dirt or debris from the housing.

Note: Do not allow dirt or debris to enter the air filter housing and make sure you have a good seal.

7. Install the new air filter element.

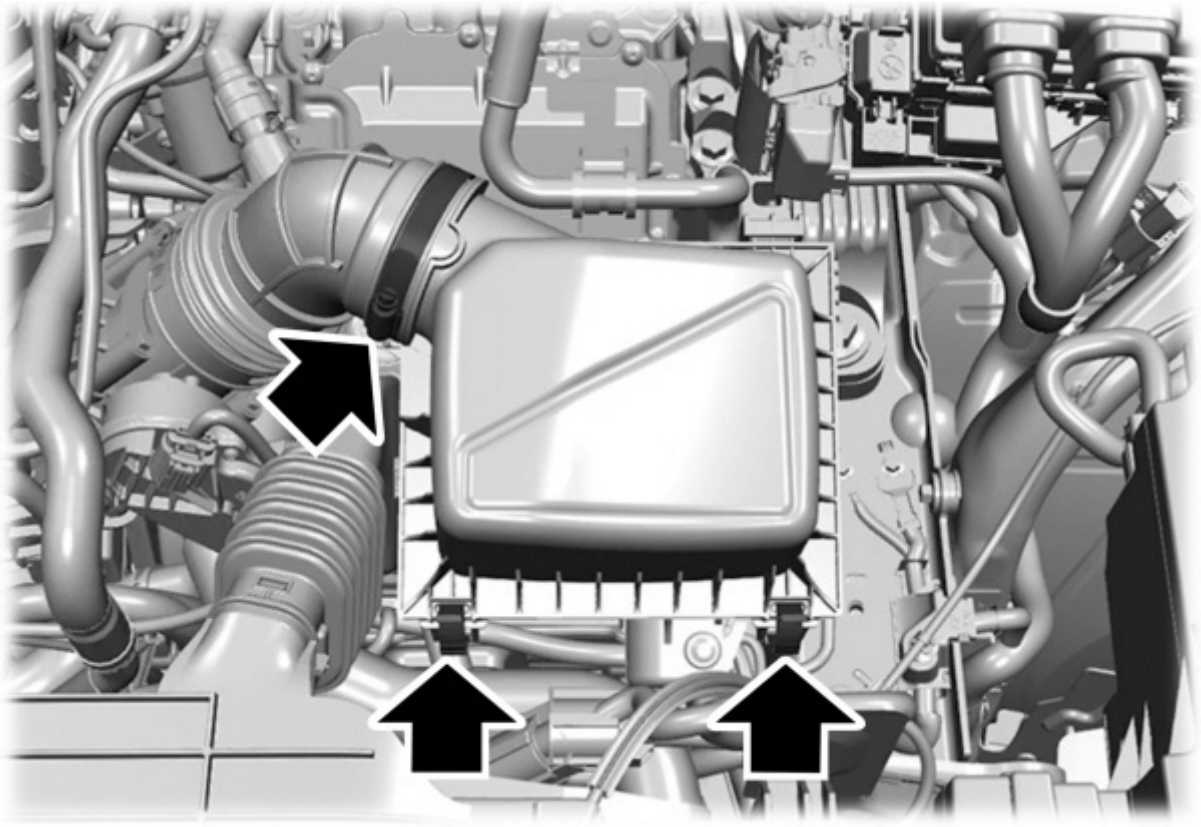
Note: Be careful not to crimp the air filter element edges between the housing and cover. This can cause filter damage and allow unfiltered air to enter the engine if not properly seated.

8. Install the airbox cover back into the housing. Make sure that all four cover fingers are seated in their corresponding housing windows. Press down with your right hand on the flexible tube, while pulling back on the housing bracket with your left hand.
9. Reverse Steps 3, 2 and 1. Make sure the clamp joint is fully seated.

Changing the Engine Air Filter - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)

WARNING: To reduce the risk of vehicle damage and personal burn injuries, do not start your engine with the air cleaner removed and do not remove it while the engine is running.

When changing the air filter element, use only parts that meet or exceed our specifications.
Change the air filter element at the proper interval. See **Maintenance**.
Note: If you do not use the correct air filter element, your vehicle warranty could be void.



1. Using a screwdriver, loosen the clamp on air filter housing cover.
2. Gently pull the boot back away from the air filter housing cover.
3. Release the two clips from the air filter housing cover.
4. Remove air filter housing cover.
5. Remove the air filter element from the air filter housing.
6. Wipe any dirt or debris from the air filter housing assembly to make sure no dirt gets in the engine and to make sure you have a good seal.



7. Install a new air filter element.Be careful not to crimp the filter element edges between the air filter housing and cover.This could cause filter damage and allow unfiltered air to enter the engine if it is not properly seated.
8. Install the air filter housing cover.
9. Engage the clips to secure the air filter housing cover to the air filter housing.
10. Reconnect the boot to the air filter housing cover and securely tighten the clamp.

Coolant

Checking the Coolant Level

WARNING: Do not remove the coolant reservoir cap when the engine is on or the cooling system is hot. Wait 10 minutes for the cooling system to cool down. Cover the coolant reservoir cap with a thick cloth to prevent the possibility of scalding and slowly remove the cap. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

WARNING: To reduce the risk of personal injury, make sure the engine is cool before unscrewing the coolant pressure relief cap. The cooling system is under pressure. Steam and hot liquid can come out forcefully when you loosen the cap slightly.

When the engine is cold, check the concentration and level of the coolant at the intervals listed in the scheduled maintenance information. See **Scheduled Maintenance**.
Note: Make sure that the coolant level is between the MIN and the MAX marks on the coolant reservoir.
Note: Coolant expands when it is hot.The level may extend beyond the MAX mark.This is normal.
Maintain coolant concentration within 48% to 50%, which equates to a freeze point between -29 °F (-34 °C) and -35 °F (-37 °C). Coolant concentration should be checked using a refractometer. We do not recommend the use of hydrometers or coolant test strips for measuring coolant concentration.

Adding Coolant

WARNING: Do not add coolant when the vehicle is on or the cooling system is hot. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

WARNING: Do not remove the coolant reservoir cap when the engine is on or the cooling system is hot. Wait 10 minutes for the cooling system to cool down. Cover the coolant reservoir cap with a thick cloth to prevent the possibility of scalding and slowly remove the cap. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

WARNING: Do not allow the fluid to touch your skin or eyes. If this happens, rinse the affected areas immediately with plenty of water and contact your physician.

WARNING: Do not put coolant in the windshield washer reservoir. If sprayed on the windshield, coolant could make it difficult to see through the windshield.

WARNING: Do not add coolant further than the MAX mark.

Note: Do not use stop leak pellets, cooling system sealants, or non-specified additives as they can cause damage to the engine cooling or heating systems.Resulting component damage may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.

Note: Automotive fluids are not interchangeable.
It is very important to use prediluted coolant approved to the correct specification in order to avoid plugging the small passageways in the engine cooling system. See **Maintenance**.
See **Cooling System Capacity and Specification - 2.0L EcoBoost™**. Do not mix different colors or types of coolant in your vehicle. Mixing of engine coolants or using an incorrect coolant may harm the engine or cooling system components and may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.
Note: If prediluted coolant is not available, use the approved concentrated coolant diluting it to 50/50 with deionised or distilled water. See **Maintenance**.
See **Cooling System Capacity and Specification - 2.0L EcoBoost™**. Using water that has not been deionised may contribute to deposit formation, corrosion and plugging of the small cooling system passageways.
Note: Coolants marketed for all makes and models may not be approved to our specifications and may cause damage to the cooling system.Resulting component damage may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.
If the coolant level is at or below the minimum mark, add prediluted coolant immediately.
To top up the coolant level do the following:

1. Unscrew the cap slowly. Any pressure escapes as you unscrew the cap.
2. Add prediluted coolant approved to the correct specification. See **Maintenance**.
   See **Cooling System Capacity and Specification - 2.0L EcoBoost™**.
3. Add enough prediluted coolant to reach the correct level.
4. Replace the coolant reservoir cap. Turn the cap clockwise until it contacts the hard stop.
5. Check the coolant level in the coolant reservoir the next few times you drive your vehicle. If necessary, add enough prediluted engine coolant to bring the coolant level to the correct level.

If you have to add more than 1.1 qt (1 L) of engine coolant per month, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. Operating an engine with a low level of coolant can result in engine overheating and possible engine damage.
In case of emergency, you can add a large amount of water without engine coolant in order to reach a vehicle service location.
Water alone, without engine coolant, can cause engine damage from corrosion, overheating or freezing.

Do not use the following as a coolant substitute:
- Alcohol.
- Methanol.
- Brine.
- Any coolant mixed with alcohol or methanol antifreeze.

Alcohol and other liquids can cause engine damage from overheating or freezing.
Do not add extra inhibitors or additives to the coolant. These can be harmful and compromise the corrosion protection of the coolant.

Changing the Coolant

For coolant change, see your authorized dealer.
Changing the coolant is necessary at specific mileage intervals listed in the scheduled maintenance information.

Managing the Coolant Temperature

If you tow a trailer with your vehicle, the engine may temporarily reach a higher temperature during severe operating conditions, for example ascending a long or steep grade in high ambient temperatures.
At this time, you may notice the coolant temperature gauge moves toward the red zone and a message may appear in the information display.

WARNING: Do not drive your vehicle when the coolant warning lamp is on, as this may indicate your engine could be overheating. As a result, your vehicle speed may reduce, acceleration could be compromised, or the engine might stop without warning. Pull your vehicle over safely as soon as possible. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

You may notice a reduction in vehicle speed caused by reduced engine power in order to manage the engine coolant temperature.Your vehicle may enter this mode if certain high-temperature and high-load conditions take place.The amount of speed reduction depends on vehicle loading, grade and outside temperature. If this occurs, there is no need to stop your vehicle.You can continue to drive.See **Crash and Breakdown Information**.
The air conditioning may automatically turn on and off during severe operating conditions to protect the engine from overheating. When the coolant temperature decreases to the normal operating temperature, the air conditioning turns on.
If the coolant temperature gauge moves fully into the red zone, or if the coolant temperature warning or service engine soon messages appear in your information display, do the following:

1. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Fully apply the parking brake, shift into park (P) or neutral (N).
2. Leave the engine running until the coolant temperature gauge needle returns to the normal position.If the temperature does not drop after several minutes, follow the remaining steps.
3. Switch the engine off and wait for it to cool. Check the coolant level.
4. If the coolant level is at or below the minimum mark, add prediluted coolant immediately.
5. If the coolant level is normal, restart the engine and continue.

Cooling System Capacity and Specification - 2.0L EcoBoost™

Use coolant that meets the defined specification.

If you do not use coolant that meets the defined specification, it could result in:
- Component damage that your vehicle warranty does not cover.
- Reduced vehicle performance.

Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	9.2 ± 0.3 qt (8.75 ± 0.25 L)

Materials

Name	Specification

Motorcraft® Yellow Prediluted Antifreeze/Coolant VC-13DL-G	WSS-M97B57-A2

Cooling System Capacity and Specification - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)

Use coolant that meets the defined specification.

If you do not use coolant that meets the defined specification, it could result in:

- Component damage that your vehicle warranty does not cover.
- Reduced vehicle performance.

Capacities

Variant	Quantity
Low temperature cooling circuit.	6.6 qt (6.2 L)
High temperature cooling circuit.	10.1 qt (9.6 L)

Materials

Name	Specification
Motorcraft® Yellow Prediluted Antifreeze/Coolant VC-13DL-G	WSS-M97B57-A2

Coolant – Warning Lamps

 If the engine begins to overheat, the coolant temperature gauge moves toward the red zone.

 A warning lamp illuminates and a message may appear in the information display.

Coolant – Information Messages

Message	Description and Action
High engine temperature Stop safely	Displays when the engine temperature is too high. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so, switch the engine off and allow it to cool. If the problem persists, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. See **Checking the Coolant Level**.

12V Battery

12V Battery Precautions

WARNING: Batteries normally produce explosive gases which can cause personal injury. Therefore, do not allow flames, sparks or lighted substances to come near the battery. When working near the battery, always shield your face and protect your eyes. Always provide correct ventilation.

WARNING: When lifting a plastic-cased battery, excessive pressure on the end walls could cause acid to flow through the vent caps, resulting in personal injury and damage to the vehicle or battery. Lift the battery with a battery carrier or with your hands on opposite corners.

WARNING: Keep batteries out of reach of children. Batteries contain sulfuric acid. Avoid contact with skin, eyes or clothing. Shield your eyes when working near the battery to protect against possible splashing of acid solution. In case of acid contact with skin or eyes, flush immediately with water for a minimum of 15 minutes and get prompt medical attention. If acid is swallowed, call a physician immediately.

WARNING: Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds, chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and reproductive harm. **Wash your hands after handling**.

WARNING: This vehicle may have more than one battery. Removing the battery cables from only one battery does not disconnect your vehicle electrical system. Make sure you disconnect the battery cables from all batteries when disconnecting power. Failure to do so may cause serious personal injury or property damage.

WARNING: For vehicles with Auto-Start-Stop the battery requirement is different. You must replace the battery with one of exactly the same specification.

WARNING: For vehicles equipped with a 12V battery vent tube, always properly reconnect the vent tube to the battery after disconnecting. Failure to follow this instruction could allow harmful gasses to enter the vehicle cabin, which could cause personal injury or death.

What Is the Battery Management System

The battery management system monitors battery conditions and takes actions to extend battery life.

How Does the Battery Management System Work

If excessive battery drain is detected, the system temporarily disables some electrical systems to protect the battery.

Systems included are:

- Heated rear window.
- Heated seats.
- Climate control.
- Heated steering wheel.
- Audio unit.
- Navigation system.

A message could appear in the information display to alert you that battery protection actions are active. This message is only for notification that an action is taking place, and not intended to indicate an electrical problem or that the battery requires replacement.

Battery Management System Limitations

After battery replacement, or in some cases after charging the battery with an external charger, the battery management system requires eight hours of vehicle sleep time to relearn the battery state of charge. During this time, your vehicle must remain fully locked with the ignition switched off.
Note: Prior to relearning the battery state of charge, the battery management system could temporarily disable some electrical systems.
Electrical Accessory Installation
To make sure the battery management system works correctly, do not connect an electrical device ground connection directly to the battery negative post. This can cause inaccurate measurements of the battery condition and potential incorrect system operation.
Note: If you add electrical accessories or components to the vehicle, it could adversely affect battery performance and durability. This could also affect the performance of other electrical systems in the vehicle.

Changing the 12V Battery - Excluding: Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)

The battery is in the engine compartment. See **Maintenance**.
Your vehicle has a maintenance-free battery. It does not require additional water during service.
Note: There may be additional components that need to be removed or disconnected before you can safely remove the battery from your vehicle. For specific guidance on which components may need to be addressed, it is best to contact your dealer for detailed information.
If the vehicle battery has a cover, make sure you correctly install it after cleaning or replacing the battery.
For longer, trouble-free operation, keep the top of the battery clean and dry and the battery cables tightly fastened to the battery terminals. If any corrosion is present on the battery or terminals, remove the cables from the terminals and clean with a wire brush. You can neutralize the acid with a solution of baking soda and water.
We recommend that you disconnect the negative battery cable terminal from the battery if you plan to store your vehicle for an extended period.
Note: If you only disconnect the negative battery cable terminal, make sure it is isolated or placed away from the battery terminal to avoid unintended connection or arcing.
If you disconnect or replace the battery and your vehicle has an automatic transmission, it must relearn its adaptive strategy. Because of this, the transmission may shift firmly when first driven. This is normal operation while the transmission fully updates its operation to optimum shift feel.
Removing the Battery

1. Apply the parking brake and switch the ignition off.
2. Switch all electrical equipment off, for example lights and radio.
3. Wait a minimum of two minutes before disconnecting the battery.

Note: The engine management system has a power hold function and remains powered for a period of time after you switch the ignition off. This allows the system to store diagnostic and adaptive tables. Disconnecting the battery without waiting can cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

4. Disconnect and isolate the negative battery cable terminal.
5. Disconnect and isolate the positive battery cable terminal.

Note: Before removing batteries with a vent tube, disconnect and secure the tube.

6. Remove the battery securing clamp.
7. Remove the battery.

If you disconnect or replace the vehicle battery, you must reset the following features:

- Window bounce-back. See **Windows**.
- Clock Settings.
- Pre-set radio stations.

Replacing the Battery
Note: Before reconnecting the battery, make sure the ignition remains switched off.
You must replace the battery with one of exactly the same specification.
To install, reverse the removal procedure.
Note: Make sure that you correctly install the battery cable terminals, battery terminal covers, battery vent tube, battery securing clamp and battery cover.

Changing the 12V Battery - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)

The battery is in the luggage compartment.
Your vehicle has a maintenance-free battery. It does not require additional water during service.
If the vehicle battery has a cover, make sure you correctly install it after cleaning or replacing the battery.
For longer, trouble-free operation, keep the top of the battery clean and dry and the battery cables tightly fastened to the battery terminals. If any corrosion is present on the battery or terminals, remove the cables from the terminals and clean with a wire brush. You can neutralize the acid with a solution of baking soda and water.
Note: If you only disconnect the negative battery cable terminal, make sure it is isolated or placed away from the battery terminal to avoid unintended connection or arcing.
If you disconnect or replace the battery and your vehicle has an automatic transmission, it must relearn its adaptive strategy. Because of this, the transmission may shift firmly when first driven. This is normal operation while the transmission fully updates its operation to optimum shift feel.
Removing the Battery

1. Apply the parking brake and switch the ignition off.
2. Switch all electrical equipment off, for example lights and radio.
3. Wait a minimum of two minutes before disconnecting the battery.

Note: The engine management system has a power hold function and remains powered for a period of time after you switch the ignition off. This is to allow diagnostic and adaptive tables to be stored. Disconnecting the battery without waiting can cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

4. Remove the battery securing clamp.
5. Detach the vent hose from the battery.
6. Disconnect and isolate the negative battery cable terminal.
7. Disconnect and isolate the positive battery cable terminal.
8. Remove the battery.

If you disconnect or replace the vehicle battery, you must reset the following features:
- Window bounce-back. See **What Is Window Bounce-Back**.
- Clock Settings.
- Pre-set radio stations.

Replacing the Battery
Note: Before reconnecting the battery, make sure the ignition remains switched off.
You must replace the battery with one of exactly the same specification.

To install, reverse the removal procedure.
Note: Make sure that you correctly install the battery terminal covers, battery cover and battery cable terminals.

Resetting the Battery Sensor

When you install a new battery, reset the battery sensor by doing the following:

1. Switch the ignition on, and leave the engine off.

Note: Complete Steps 2 and 3 within 10 seconds.

2. Flash the high beam headlamps five times, ending with the high beams off.
3. Press and release the brake pedal three times.

The battery warning lamp flashes three times to confirm that the reset is successful.

Recycling and Disposing of the 12V Battery

 Make sure that you dispose of old batteries in an environmentally friendly way. Seek advice from your local authority about recycling old batteries.

Charging the 12V Battery - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)

Your vehicle has a high voltage to low voltage energy transfer feature that keeps the 12-volt battery charged by the high voltage battery. If the 12-volt battery level is low, the high voltage battery transfers energy to the 12-volt battery when the vehicle is off.
12-volt battery depletion can still occur if the high voltage battery state of charge is low.
Always take care not to deep discharge the 12-volt battery as it may cause premature wear.

12V Battery – Troubleshooting

12V Battery – Warning Lamps - Excluding: Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)

 If it illuminates while driving, it indicates a charging system error. Switch off all unnecessary electrical equipment and have your vehicle immediately checked.

12V Battery – Warning Lamps - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)

 If it illuminates when the green ready to drive indicator is activated, this indicates your vehicle requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

12V Battery – Information Messages - Excluding: Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)

Message	Details
Check charging system	The charging system needs servicing. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Electrical system fault Service soon Steering and brake assist limited	The charging system needs servicing. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Electrical system fault Service now Steering and brake assist limited	The charging system needs servicing. Have your vehicle immediately checked.
12V battery low Charge by driving Steering and brake assist limited	The battery management system determines that the 12V battery is at a low state of charge. Start the engine to charge the battery or charge the battery using an aftermarket battery charger. Always use the vehicle ground point when connecting the negative cable of the external battery charger. See **Jump Starting the Vehicle - Gasoline**. This message clears once you restart your vehicle and the battery state of charge has recovered. Do not switch on the ignition when a battery charger is in use to charge the battery.
Turn power off to save battery	The battery management system determines that the battery is at a low state of charge. Turn the ignition off as soon as possible to protect the battery. This message will clear once the vehicle has been started and the battery state of charge has recovered. Turning off unnecessary electrical loads will allow faster battery state-of-charge recovery.
Electrical power saver active Some features turned off See manual	Displayed when the battery management system detects an extended low-voltage condition. Various vehicle features will be disabled to help preserve the battery. Turn off as many of the electrical loads as soon as possible to improve system voltage. If the system voltage has recovered, the disabled features will operate again as normal.

12V Battery – Information Messages - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)

Message	Action
12V Battery Fault Service Soon	Your vehicle has a 12 volt battery problem. We recommend having the battery system checked by an authorized EV dealer.
Electric Range Reduced due to Park/Hazard Lamps On While Vehicle Off	The electric vehicle range is reduced due to the park and/or hazard lamps on while your vehicle was off.

Message	Action
Electrical System Drain Service Required	Your vehicle has an electrical drain within the vehicle. Please check for any aftermarket devices that could be draining the battery. If none are found, please have your vehicle serviced by an authorized EV dealer.

Exterior Bulbs

Exterior Bulb Specification Chart

Your vehicle has LED lamps. These are not serviceable items. See an authorized dealer if they fail.

Interior Bulbs

Interior Bulb Specification Chart

Your vehicle has LED lamps. These are not serviceable items. See an authorized dealer if they fail.

Vehicle Specifications

Engine Specifications - 2.0L EcoBoost™

Engine	Specification
Compression ratio.	10.8:1
Displacement.	121.7 in^3 (1,995 cm^3)
Firing order.	1-3-4-2
Ignition system.	Coil on plug
Spark plug gap.	0.026–0.030 in (0.65–0.75 mm)

Engine Specifications - 2.5L

Engine	Specification
Compression ratio.	13.0:1
Displacement.	152 in^3 (2,490 cm^3)
Firing order.	1-3-4-2
Ignition system.	Coil on plug
Spark plug gap.	0.049–0.053 in (1.25–1.35 mm)

Motorcraft Parts - 2.0L EcoBoost™

Component	Motorcraft Part Number
Air filter element.	FA-2064
Battery.	BAGM-94RH7-800
Cabin air filter.	FP-90
Engine oil filter. [1]	FL-2127
Spark plug.	SP-597-X
Windshield wiper blade.	WW-2765-A (driver side) WW-1814-A (passenger side) WW-1003-A (rear window)

[1]If a Motorcraft oil filter is not available, use an oil filter that aligns to SAE/USCAR – 36 Performance Specifications. Filter Type B.
We recommend Motorcraft parts that are available at your authorized dealer or at www.fordparts.com. We engineer these parts for your vehicle to meet or exceed our specifications. Use of other parts could impact vehicle performance, emissions and durability. Your warranty could be void for any damage related to use of other parts.

Motorcraft Parts - 2.5L

Component	Motorcraft Part Number
Air filter element.	FA-1948
Oil filter.[1]	FL-910-S
Battery.	BAGM-48H6-760
Spark plug.	SP-530-X
Cabin air filter.	FP-90
Windshield wiper blade.	WW-2765-A (driver side) WW-1814-A (passenger side) WW-1003-A (rear window)

[1]If a Motorcraft oil filter is not available, use an oil filter that aligns to SAE/USCAR – 36 Performance Specifications. Filter Type B.
We recommend Motorcraft parts that are available at your authorized dealer or at www.fordparts.com. We engineer these parts for your vehicle to meet or exceed our specifications. Use of other parts could impact vehicle performance, emissions and durability. Your warranty could be void for any damage related to use of other parts.

Vehicle Care

Cleaning Products

Materials
For best results, use the following products or products of equivalent quality:
For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

Name	Specification
Motorcraft® Bug and Tar Remover, ZC-42 (U.S. & Canada)	
Motorcraft® Custom Bright Metal Cleaner, ZC-15 (U.S. & Canada)	ESR-M5B194-B
Motorcraft® Detail Wash, ZC-3-A (U.S. & Canada)	ESR-M14P4-A
Motorcraft® Engine Shampoo and Degreaser, ZC-20 (U.S.)	ESR-M14P3-A
Motorcraft® Engine Shampoo, CXC-66-A (Canada)	
Motorcraft® Premium Leather and Vinyl Cleaner, ZC-56 (U.S. & Canada)	
Motorcraft® Multi-Purpose Cleaner, CXC-101 (Canada)	
Motorcraft® Premium Windshield Wash Concentrate with Bitterant, ZC-32-B2 (U.S.)	WSS-M14P19-A
Motorcraft® Premium Quality Windshield Washer Fluid, CXC-37-F/M (Canada)	WSS-M14P19-A
Motorcraft® Professional Strength Carpet & Upholstery Cleaner, ZC-54 (U.S. & Canada)	
Motorcraft® Premium Glass Cleaner, CXC-100 (Canada)	ESR-M14P5-A
Motorcraft® Spot and Stain Remover, ZC-14 (U.S.)	
Motorcraft® Ultra-Clear Spray Glass Cleaner, ZC-23 (U.S.)	ESR-M14P5-A
Motorcraft® Wheel and Tire Cleaner, ZC-37-A (U.S. & Canada)	

Cleaning the Exterior Precautions

Immediately remove fuel spillages, additive residuals, bird droppings, insect deposits and road tar. These may damage your vehicle’s paintwork or trim over time. Remove any exterior accessories, for example antennas, before entering a car wash.
Note: If you intend to park your vehicle for an extended period after cleaning, drive it for few minutes before parking. This reduces the risk of corrosion of the brake discs, brake pads and linings.

Cleaning Headlamps and Rear Lamps

We recommend that you only use cold or lukewarm water containing car shampoo to clean the headlamps and the rear lamps.
Do not scrape the lamps.
Do not wipe lamps when they are dry.

Cleaning Windows and Wiper Blades

To clean the windshield and wiper blades:

- Clean the windshield with a non-abrasive glass cleaner.

Note: When cleaning the interior of the windshield, avoid getting any glass cleaner on the instrument panel or door panels. Wipe any glass cleaner off these surfaces immediately.

- Clean the wiper blades with washer fluid or water applied with a soft sponge or cloth.

Note: Do not use razor blades or other sharp objects to clean or remove decals from the inside of the heated rear window.This can cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.
Note: Do not use chemicals or corrosive products, as they can compromise surfaces and damage critical systems of your vehicle.

Cleaning Chrome, Aluminium or Stainless Steel

We recommend that you only use a car shampoo, a soft cloth and water on bumpers and other chrome, aluminium or stainless steel parts.
Note: For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.
Note: Rinse the area well after cleaning.
Note: Do not use abrasive materials, for example steel wool or plastic pads, as they can scratch these surfaces.
Note: Do not use chrome cleaner, metal cleaner or polish on wheels or wheel covers.

Cleaning Wheels

Only use a recommended wheel and tire cleaner to clean the wheels. For additional information and assistance, contact an authorized dealer.

1. Use a sponge to remove heavy deposits of dirt and brake dust.

2. Rinse well after cleaning.

Note: Do not apply a cleaning chemical to hot wheel rims, wheel covers, and wheel ornaments.
If you intend to park your vehicle for an extended period after cleaning the wheels, drive it for few minutes before parking. This reduces the risk of corrosion of the brake discs, brake pads and linings.
Do not clean hot wheel rims, wheel covers and wheel ornaments.
Note: Some car washes could damage wheel rims, wheel covers, and wheel ornaments.
Note: Using non-recommended cleaners, harsh acidic cleaning products, chrome wheel cleaners or abrasive materials could damage wheel rims and covers.
Note: Failure to properly clean the stainless steel lug nuts may result in a white, hazy finish, pitting, or an orange/brown rust appearance. Such damage is not covered by your vehicle warranty.

Cleaning the Engine Compartment

Use a vacuum cleaner to remove debris from the screen area below the windshield.
Note: If you are not familiar with the parts around the engine do not wash the engine compartment. Avoid frequent engine washes.

When washing the engine compartment:
- Never wash or rinse the engine while it is hot or running.
- Never wash or rinse any ignition coil, spark plug wire or spark plug well.
- Cover the battery, power distribution box, and air filter assembly to prevent water damage.

Note: If your vehicle has an engine cover remove the cover before application of shampoo and degreaser.

- Spray an approved engine shampoo and degreaser on all parts that require cleaning and rinse with water.

Note: Follow the manufacturer's instructions for using engine shampoo and degreaser.

Cleaning Stripes or Graphics

It is recommended to wash your vehicle by hand however, pressure washing may be used under the following conditions:

- Use a spray with a minimum of 40 ° wide spray angle pattern.
- Keep the nozzle 12 in (30 cm) and at a 90 ° angle to your vehicle.
- Do not use water pressure higher than 1,000 psi (6,895 kPa).
- Do not use water hotter than 73 °F (23 °C).

Note: Holding the pressure washer nozzle at an angle to the vehicle's surface may damage graphics and cause the edges to peel away.

Cleaning Camera Lenses and Sensors

We recommend that you only use lukewarm or cold water and a soft cloth to clean the camera lens and sensors.
Note: Do not pressure wash camera lens and sensors.

Cleaning the Underbody

Flush the complete underside of your vehicle frequently. Keep body and door drain holes free from packed dirt.
Suspension and steering components may require regular cleaning with a power washer or a thorough rinse with a strong stream of water if the vehicle is operated in dusty or muddy environments. Leaf springs or other suspension components may emit squeaking or popping noises while operating the vehicle if particles, such as dirt, rocks, or other debris, are present in the components.

Cleaning the Instrument Panel

 **WARNING**: Do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents when cleaning the steering wheel or instrument panel to avoid contamination of the airbag system.

We recommend that you only clean the instrument panel and cluster lens with a damp soft cloth. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.
For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.
Note: Avoid cleaners or polishes that increase the gloss of the upper portion of the instrument panel. The dull finish in this area helps protect you from undesirable windshield reflection.

Cleaning Plastic

We recommend that you only use a mild soap and water solution on a soft cloth. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.

Note: Do not allow air fresheners and hand sanitizers to spill onto interior surfaces. If a spill occurs, wipe off immediately. Your warranty may not cover these damages.

Cleaning Displays and Screens

We recommend that you only use a microfiber cloth in a circular motion to clean off the fingerprint or dust.
Note: Do not pour or spray alcohol onto the touchscreen.
Note: Do not use detergent or any type of solvent to clean the touchscreen.

Cleaning Fabric

WARNING: On vehicles equipped with seat-mounted airbags, do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents. Such products could contaminate the side airbag system and affect performance of the side airbag in a crash.

We recommend that you only clean fabric in the following way:

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution.Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.
3. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

For heavy stains, spot clean the area. If a ring forms on the fabric, clean the entire area immediately, but do not oversaturate or the ring could set.

Cleaning Leather

WARNING: On vehicles equipped with seat-mounted airbags, do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents. Such products could contaminate the side airbag system and affect performance of the side airbag in a crash.

We recommend that you only clean the leather surfaces in the following way:

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution.Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.
3. Make sure the leather is dry, then apply a small amount of conditioner to a clean, dry cloth.
4. Rub the conditioner into the leather until it disappears. Allow the conditioner to dry, then repeat the process for the entire interior. If a film appears, wipe it off with a dry, clean cloth.
5. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

Cleaning Vinyl

WARNING: On vehicles equipped with seat-mounted airbags, do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents. Such products could contaminate the side airbag system and affect performance of the side airbag in a crash.

We recommend that you only clean vinyl surfaces in the following way:

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution.Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.
3. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

Cleaning Carpets and Floor Mats

We recommend that you only clean your carpets in the following way:

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution.Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.
3. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

For heavy stains, spot clean the area. If a ring forms on the fabric, clean the entire area immediately, but do not oversaturate or the ring could set.
We recommend that you only clean your floor mats in the following way:

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wash rubber floor mats using mild soap and lukewarm or cold water.
3. Completely dry the floor mat before placing them back in your vehicle.

Cleaning Seatbelts

WARNING: Do not use cleaning solvents, bleach or dye on the vehicle's seatbelts, as these actions may weaken the belt webbing.

1. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution.Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.

Cleaning Glass Roof Tracks

1. Remove debris from the tracks with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wipe the bulb seal and mating painted roof metal surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution.

Note: The glass roof rail tracks are greased to maintain proper functionality. Do not wipe off the grease.

Repairing Minor Paint Damage

We recommend that you contact an authorized dealer to identify your vehicle color code. Authorized dealers have touch-up paint to match your vehicle's color.
Before repairing minor paint damage, use a cleaner to remove particles such as bird droppings, tree sap, insect deposits, tar spots, road salt and industrial fallout.
Read the instructions before using cleaning products.

Waxing Your Vehicle

Wax the high-gloss painted surface of your prewashed vehicle once or twice a year.
We recommend that you only use an approved quality wax that does not contain abrasives. Follow the manufacturer's instructions to apply and remove the wax. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.
When washing and waxing, park your vehicle in a shaded area out of direct sunlight.
Note: Avoid waxing unpainted or low-gloss black colored parts, they discolor over time.

Cleaning the Exterior

Cleaning the Exterior Precautions

Immediately remove fuel spillages, additive residuals, bird droppings, insect deposits and road tar. These may damage your vehicle’s paintwork or trim over time. Remove any exterior accessories, for example antennas, before entering a car wash.
Note: If you intend to park your vehicle for an extended period after cleaning, drive it for few minutes before parking. This reduces the risk of corrosion of the brake discs, brake pads and linings.

Cleaning Headlamps and Rear Lamps

We recommend that you only use cold or lukewarm water containing car shampoo to clean the headlamps and the rear lamps.
Do not scrape the lamps.
Do not wipe lamps when they are dry.

Cleaning Windows and Wiper Blades

To clean the windshield and wiper blades:

- Clean the windshield with a non-abrasive glass cleaner.

Note: When cleaning the interior of the windshield, avoid getting any glass cleaner on the instrument panel or door panels. Wipe any glass cleaner off these surfaces immediately.

- Clean the wiper blades with washer fluid or water applied with a soft sponge or cloth.

Note: Do not use razor blades or other sharp objects to clean or remove decals from the inside of the heated rear window.This can cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

Note: Do not use chemicals or corrosive products, as they can compromise surfaces and damage critical systems of your vehicle.

Cleaning Chrome, Aluminium or Stainless Steel

We recommend that you only use a car shampoo, a soft cloth and water on bumpers and other chrome, aluminium or stainless steel parts.
Note: For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.
Note: Rinse the area well after cleaning.
Note: Do not use abrasive materials, for example steel wool or plastic pads, as they can scratch these surfaces.
Note: Do not use chrome cleaner, metal cleaner or polish on wheels or wheel covers.

Cleaning Wheels

Only use a recommended wheel and tire cleaner to clean the wheels. For additional information and assistance, contact an authorized dealer.

1. Use a sponge to remove heavy deposits of dirt and brake dust.

2. Rinse well after cleaning.

Note: Do not apply a cleaning chemical to hot wheel rims, wheel covers, and wheel ornaments.
If you intend to park your vehicle for an extended period after cleaning the wheels, drive it for few minutes before parking. This reduces the risk of corrosion of the brake discs, brake pads and linings.
Do not clean hot wheel rims, wheel covers and wheel ornaments.
Note: Some car washes could damage wheel rims, wheel covers, and wheel ornaments.
Note: Using non-recommended cleaners, harsh acidic cleaning products, chrome wheel cleaners or abrasive materials could damage wheel rims and covers.
Note: Failure to properly clean the stainless steel lug nuts may result in a white, hazy finish, pitting, or an orange/brown rust appearance. Such damage is not covered by your vehicle warranty.

Cleaning the Engine Compartment

Use a vacuum cleaner to remove debris from the screen area below the windshield.
Note: If you are not familiar with the parts around the engine do not wash the engine compartment. Avoid frequent engine washes.

When washing the engine compartment:
- Never wash or rinse the engine while it is hot or running.
- Never wash or rinse any ignition coil, spark plug wire or spark plug well.
- Cover the battery, power distribution box, and air filter assembly to prevent water damage.

Note: If your vehicle has an engine cover remove the cover before application of shampoo and degreaser.

- Spray an approved engine shampoo and degreaser on all parts that require cleaning and rinse with water.

Note: Follow the manufacturer's instructions for using engine shampoo and degreaser.

Cleaning Stripes or Graphics

It is recommended to wash your vehicle by hand however, pressure washing may be used under the following conditions:

- Use a spray with a minimum of 40 ° wide spray angle pattern.
- Keep the nozzle 12 in (30 cm) and at a 90 ° angle to your vehicle.
- Do not use water pressure higher than 1,000 psi (6,895 kPa).
- Do not use water hotter than 73 °F (23 °C).

Note: Holding the pressure washer nozzle at an angle to the vehicle's surface may damage graphics and cause the edges to peel away.

Cleaning Camera Lenses and Sensors

We recommend that you only use lukewarm or cold water and a soft cloth to clean the camera lens and sensors.
Note: Do not pressure wash camera lens and sensors.

Cleaning the Underbody

Flush the complete underside of your vehicle frequently. Keep body and door drain holes free from packed dirt.
Suspension and steering components may require regular cleaning with a power washer or a thorough rinse with a strong stream of water if the vehicle is operated in dusty or muddy environments. Leaf springs or other suspension components may emit squeaking or popping noises while operating the vehicle if particles, such as dirt, rocks, or other debris, are present in the components.

Cleaning the Interior

Cleaning the Instrument Panel

 **WARNING**: Do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents when cleaning the steering wheel or instrument panel to avoid contamination of the airbag system.

We recommend that you only clean the instrument panel and cluster lens with a damp soft cloth. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.
For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.
Note: Avoid cleaners or polishes that increase the gloss of the upper portion of the instrument panel. The dull finish in this area helps protect you from undesirable windshield reflection.

Cleaning Plastic

We recommend that you only use a mild soap and water solution on a soft cloth. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.
Note: Do not allow air fresheners and hand sanitizers to spill onto interior surfaces. If a spill occurs, wipe off immediately. Your warranty may not cover these damages.

Cleaning Displays and Screens

We recommend that you only use a microfiber cloth in a circular motion to clean off the fingerprint or dust.
Note: Do not pour or spray alcohol onto the touchscreen.
Note: Do not use detergent or any type of solvent to clean the touchscreen.

Cleaning Fabric

WARNING: On vehicles equipped with seat-mounted airbags, do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents. Such products could contaminate the side airbag system and affect performance of the side airbag in a crash.

We recommend that you only clean fabric in the following way:

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution.Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.
3. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

For heavy stains, spot clean the area. If a ring forms on the fabric, clean the entire area immediately, but do not oversaturate or the ring could set.

Cleaning Leather

WARNING: On vehicles equipped with seat-mounted airbags, do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents. Such products could contaminate the side airbag system and affect performance of the side airbag in a crash.

We recommend that you only clean the leather surfaces in the following way:

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution.Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.
3. Make sure the leather is dry, then apply a small amount of conditioner to a clean, dry cloth.
4. Rub the conditioner into the leather until it disappears. Allow the conditioner to dry, then repeat the process for the entire interior. If a film appears, wipe it off with a dry, clean cloth.
5. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

Cleaning Vinyl

WARNING: On vehicles equipped with seat-mounted airbags, do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents. Such products could contaminate the side airbag system and affect performance of the side airbag in a crash.

We recommend that you only clean vinyl surfaces in the following way:

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution.Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.
3. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

Cleaning Carpets and Floor Mats

We recommend that you only clean your carpets in the following way:

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution.Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.
3. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

For heavy stains, spot clean the area. If a ring forms on the fabric, clean the entire area immediately, but do not oversaturate or the ring could set.
We recommend that you only clean your floor mats in the following way:

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wash rubber floor mats using mild soap and lukewarm or cold water.
3. Completely dry the floor mat before placing them back in your vehicle.

Cleaning Seatbelts

⚠ **WARNING**: Do not use cleaning solvents, bleach or dye on the vehicle's seatbelts, as these actions may weaken the belt webbing.

1. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution.Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.

Cleaning Glass Roof Tracks

1. Remove debris from the tracks with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wipe the bulb seal and mating painted roof metal surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution.

Note: The glass roof rail tracks are greased to maintain proper functionality. Do not wipe off the grease.

Storing Your Vehicle

Preparing Your Vehicle for Storage

If you plan on storing your vehicle for 30 days or more, the following maintenance recommendations makes sure your vehicle stays in good operating condition.
Under various conditions, long-term storage may lead to degraded engine performance or failure unless you use specific precautions to preserve your vehicle.
General

- Store all vehicles in a dry, ventilated place.
- If vehicles are stored outside, they require regular maintenance to protect against rust and weather damage.
- Make sure all linkages, cables, levers and pins under your vehicle are covered with grease to prevent rust.
- Move vehicles at least 25 ft (7.5 m) every 15 days to lubricate working parts and prevent corrosion.
- Fill the fuel tank with high-quality fuel until the first automatic shutoff of the fuel pump nozzle.

Engine

- Change the engine oil and filter prior to storage because used engine oil contains contaminants which may cause engine damage.
- Start the engine every 15 days for a minimum of 15 minutes.Run at fast idle with the climate controls set to defrost until the engine reaches normal operating temperature.
- With your foot on the brake, shift through all the gears while the engine is running.

Body

- Wash your vehicle thoroughly to remove dirt, grease, oil, tar or mud from exterior surfaces, rear wheel housings and the underside of front fenders.
- Periodically wash your vehicle if it is stored in exposed locations.
- Touch-up exposed or primed metal to prevent rust.
- Cover chrome and stainless steel parts with a thick coat of auto wax to prevent discoloration.Rewax as necessary when you wash your vehicle.
- Lubricate all hood, door and luggage compartment hinges and latches with a light grade oil.
- Cover interior trim to prevent fading.
- Keep all rubber parts free from oil and solvents.

12 Volt Battery

- When storing your vehicle for longer than 30 days the battery state of charge should be approximately 50%. Additionally, we recommend to disconnect the 12v battery to reduce system loads on the battery, or you can use a trickle charger for longer storage periods.
- Check and recharge as necessary. Keep connections clean.

Note: It is necessary to reset memory features if you disconnect the battery cables.
Tires

- Maintain recommended air pressure.
- To minimize flat spots on the tires, inflate all four tires to the recommended cold pressures listed on the Safety Compliance Certification label or Tire Label affixed to your vehicle. When the vehicle is taken out of storage, reset the tire pressures as necessary to the recommended levels listed on the Safety Compliance Certification label or Tire Label affixed to your vehicle.

Note: If you store your vehicle in a location with low ambient temperatures, follow the instructions for care of summer tires.
Brakes

Make sure the brakes and parking brake fully release.
Note: If you intend to park your vehicle for an extended period after cleaning, drive it for few minutes before parking. This reduces the risk of corrosion of the brake discs, brake pads and linings.

Removing Your Vehicle From Storage

When your vehicle is ready to come out of storage, do the following:

- We recommend that you change the engine oil before you use your vehicle again.
- Wash your vehicle to remove any dirt or grease film build-up on window surfaces.
- Check windshield wipers for any deterioration.
- Check the underhood for any foreign materials such as mice or squirrel nests.
- Check the exhaust for any foreign materials.
- Check tire pressures and set tire inflation per the Tire Label.
- Check brake pedal operation. Corroded brake rotors could cause brake noise. Drive your vehicle and gently apply and release the brakes repeatedly over a 10-minute drive to reduce the corrosion from the brakes.
- Check fluid levels (including coolant, oil and gas) to make sure there are no leaks, and fluids are at recommended levels.
- If you remove the battery, clean the battery cable ends and check for damage.

Contact an authorized dealer if you have any concerns or issues.

Wheel and Tire Information

Locating the Tire label

The tire label or safety certification label is on the driver side B-pillar or the edge of the driver door. It contains information on the recommended front and rear tire inflation pressures. See **Locating the Safety Compliance Certification Labels**.

Department of Transportation Uniform Tire Quality Grades



Tire Quality Grades apply to new pneumatic passenger car tires. The Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width. For example: **Treadwear 200 Traction AA Temperature A**.
These Tire Quality Grades are determined by standards that the United States Department of Transportation has set.
Tire Quality Grades apply to new pneumatic passenger car tires. They do not apply to deep tread, winter-type snow tires, space-saver or temporary use spare tires, light truck or LT type tires, tires with nominal rim diameters of 10 to 12 inches or limited production tires as defined in Title 49 Code of Federal Regulations Part 575.104 (c)(2).
U.S. Department of Transportation Tire quality grades: The U.S. Department of Transportation requires us to give you the following information about tire grades exactly as the government has written it.
Treadwear
The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear 1½ times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100. The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices, and differences in road characteristics and climate.
Traction AA A B C

⚠ **WARNING**: The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning or peak traction characteristics.

The traction grades, from highest to lowest are AA, A, B, and C. The grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.
Temperature A B C

⚠ **WARNING**: The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.

The temperature grades are A (the highest), B and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel. Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 139. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

Information on the Tire Sidewall

Both United States and Canada Federal regulations require tire manufacturers to place standardized information on the sidewall of all tires. This information identifies and describes the fundamental characteristics of the tire and also provides a U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number for safety standard certification and in case of a recall.
Information on P Type Tires



P215/65R15 95H is an example of a tire size, load index and speed rating. The definitions of these items are listed below. (Note that the tire size, load index and speed rating for your vehicle may be different from this example.)

A. **P:** Indicates a tire, designated by the Tire and Rim Association, that may be used for service on cars, sport utility vehicles, minivans and light trucks. **Note:** If your tire size does not begin with a letter this may mean it is designated by either the European Tire and Rim Technical Organization or the Japan Tire Manufacturing Association.

B. **215:** Indicates the nominal width of the tire in millimeters from sidewall edge to sidewall edge. In general, the larger the number, the wider the tire.

C. **65:** Indicates the aspect ratio which gives the tire's ratio of height to width.

D. **R:** Indicates a radial type tire.

E. **15:** Indicates the wheel or rim diameter in inches. If you change your wheel size, you will have to purchase new tires to match the new wheel diameter.

F. **95:** Indicates the tire's load index. It is an index that relates to how much weight a tire can carry. You may find this information in your owner’s manual. If not, contact a local tire dealer.

Note: You may not find this information on all tires because it is not required by federal law.

G. **H:** Indicates the tire's speed rating. The speed rating denotes the speed at which a tire is designed to be driven for extended periods of time under a standard condition of load and inflation pressure. The tires on your vehicle may operate at different conditions for load and inflation pressure. These speed ratings may need to be adjusted for the difference in conditions. The ratings range from 81 mph (130 km/h) to 186 mph (300 km/h). These ratings are listed in the following chart.

Note: You may not find this information on all tires because it is not required by federal law.

Letter rating	Speed rating
M	81 mph (130 km/h)
N	87 mph (140 km/h)
Q	99 mph (160 km/h)
R	106 mph (170 km/h)
S	112 mph (180 km/h)
T	118 mph (190 km/h)
U	124 mph (200 km/h)
H	130 mph (210 km/h)
V	149 mph (240 km/h)
W	168 mph (270 km/h)
Y	186 mph (300 km/h)

Note: For tires with a maximum speed capability over 149 mph (240 km/h), tire manufacturers sometimes use the letters ZR. For those with a maximum speed capability over 186 mph (300 km/h), tire manufacturers always use the letters ZR.

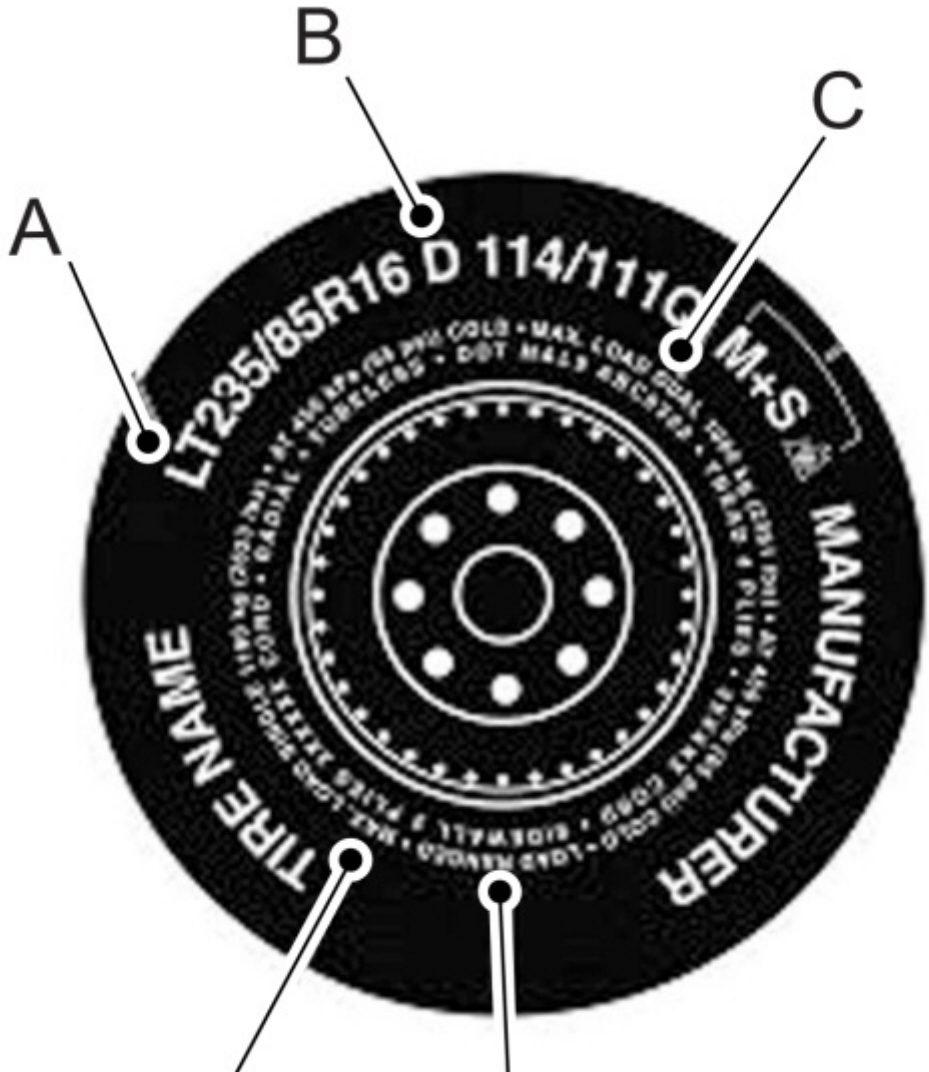
H. **U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number (TIN):** This begins with the letters DOT and indicates that the tire meets all federal standards. The next three numbers or letters are the plant code designating where it was manufactured, the next two are the tire size code and the last four numbers represent the week and year the tire was built. For example, the numbers 317 mean the 31st week of 1997. After 2000, the numbers go to four digits. For example, 2501 means the 25th week of 2001. The numbers in between are identification codes used for traceability. This information is used to contact customers if a tire defect requires a recall.

I. **M+S or M/S:** Mud and Snow, or

AT: All Terrain, or

AS: All Season.

J. **Tire Ply Composition and Material Used:** Indicates the number of plies or the number of layers of rubber-coated fabric in the tire tread and sidewall. Tire manufacturers also must indicate the ply materials in the tire and the sidewall, which include steel, nylon, polyester, and others.
K. **Maximum Load:** Indicates the maximum load in kilograms and pounds that can be carried by the tire. See the Safety Compliance Certification Label (affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position), for the correct tire pressure for your vehicle.
L. **Treadwear, Traction and Temperature Grades:**
*__Treadwear__ The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and one-half times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100.
*__Traction:__ The traction grades, from highest to lowest are AA, A, B, and C. The grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.
*__Temperature:__ The temperature grades are A (the highest), B and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel.
M. **Maximum Inflation Pressure:** Indicates the tire manufacturers' maximum permissible pressure or the pressure at which the maximum load can be carried by the tire. This pressure is normally higher than the vehicle manufacturer's recommended cold inflation pressure which can be found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label (affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position), or Tire Label which is located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver’s door. The cold inflation pressure should never be set lower than the recommended pressure on the vehicle label.
The tire suppliers may have additional markings, notes or warnings such as standard load or radial tubeless.
Additional Information Contained on the Tire Sidewall for LT Type Tires
Note: Tire Quality Grades do not apply to this type of tire.



LT type tires have some additional information beyond those of P type tires; these differences are described below.

A. **LT:** Indicates a tire, designated by the Tire and Rim Association, that is intended for service on light trucks.

B. **Load Range and Load Inflation Limits:** Indicates the tire's load-carrying capabilities and its inflation limits.

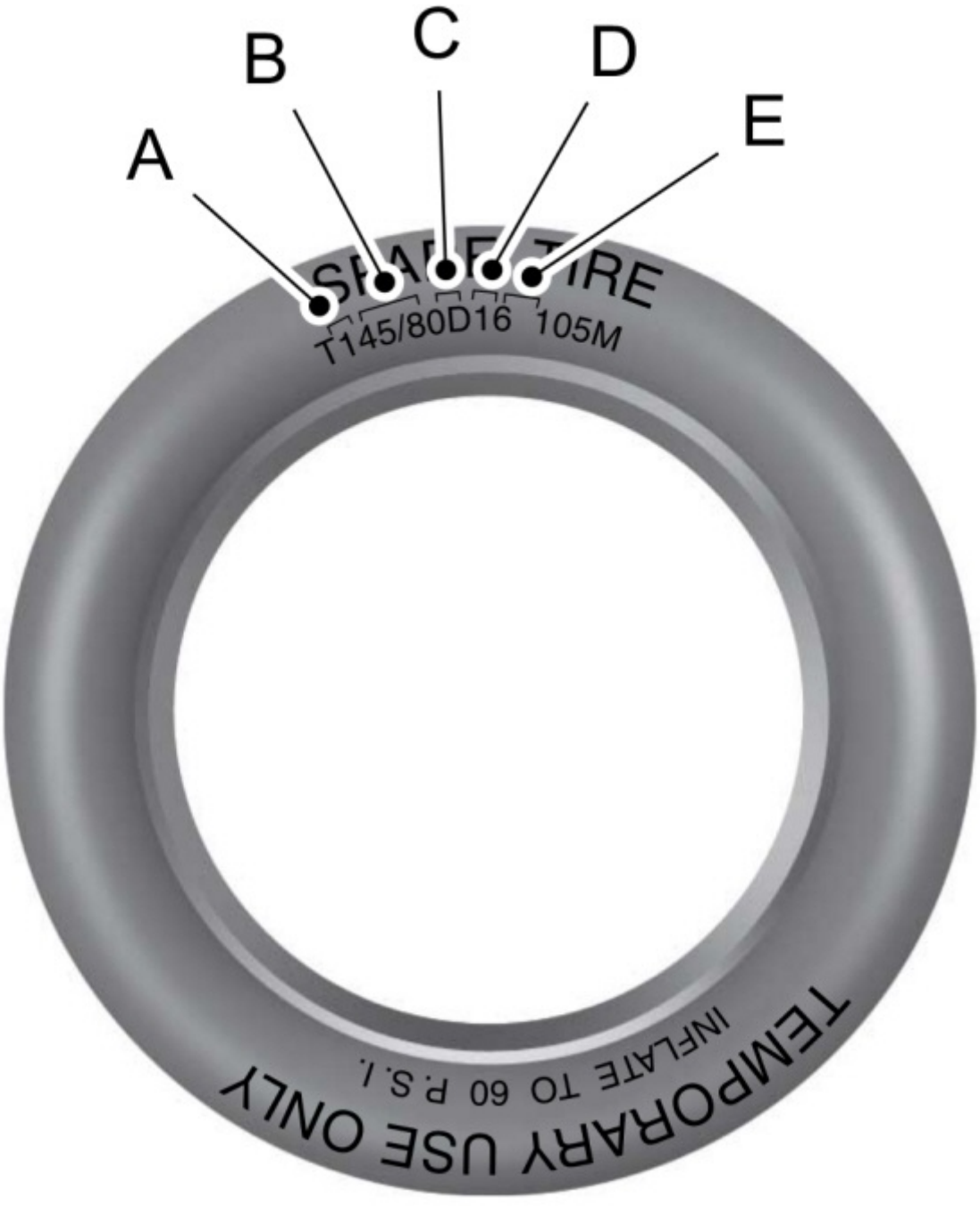
C. **Maximum Load Dual lb (kg) at psi (kPa) cold:** Indicates the maximum load and tire pressure when the tire is used as a dual, defined as four tires on the rear axle (a total of six or more tires on the vehicle).

D. **Maximum Load Single lb (kg) at psi (kPa) cold:** Indicates the maximum load and tire pressure when the tire is used as a single, defined as two tires (total) on the rear axle.

Information on T Type Tires

T145/80D16 is an example of a tire size.

Note: The temporary tire size for your vehicle may be different from this example. Tire Quality Grades do not apply to this type of tire.



T type tires have some additional information beyond those of P type tires; these differences are described below:
A. **T:** Indicates a type of tire, designated by the Tire and Rim Association, that is intended for temporary service on cars, sport utility vehicles, minivans and light trucks.
B. **145:** Indicates the nominal width of the tire in millimeters from sidewall edge to sidewall edge. In general, the larger the number, the wider the tire.
C. **80:** Indicates the aspect ratio which gives the tire's ratio of height to width. Numbers of 70 or lower indicate a short sidewall.
D. **D:** Indicates a diagonal type tire.
R: Indicates a radial type tire.
E. **16:** Indicates the wheel or rim diameter in inches. If you change your wheel size, you will have to purchase new tires to match the new wheel diameter.

Glossary of Tire Terminology

*__Tire label:__ A label showing the original equipment tire sizes, recommended inflation pressure and the maximum weight the vehicle can carry.
*__Tire Identification Number (TIN):__ A number on the sidewall of each tire providing information about the tire brand and manufacturing plant, tire size and date of manufacture. Also referred to as DOT code.
*__Inflation pressure:__ A measure of the amount of air in a tire.
*__Standard load:__ A class of P-metric or Metric tires designed to carry a maximum load at set pressure. For example: For P-metric tires 35 psi (2.4 bar) and for Metric tires 36 psi (2.5 bar). Increasing the inflation pressure beyond this pressure will not increase the tire’s load carrying capability.
*__Extra load:__ A class of P-metric or Metric tires designed to carry a heavier maximum load at 42 psi (2.9 bar). Increasing the inflation pressure beyond this pressure will not increase the tire’s load carrying capability.
*__kPa:__ Kilopascal, a metric unit of air pressure.
*__PSI:__ Pounds per square inch, a standard unit of air pressure.
*__Cold tire pressure:__ The tire pressure when the vehicle has been stationary and out of direct sunlight for an hour or more and prior to the vehicle being driven for 1 mi (1.6 km).
*__Recommended inflation pressure:__ The cold inflation pressure found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label (affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position), or Tire Label located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver door.
* __B-pillar:__ The structural member at the side of the vehicle behind the front door.
*__Bead area of the tire:__ Area of the tire next to the rim.
* __Sidewall of the tire:__ Area between the bead area and the tread.
*__Tread area of the tire:__ Area of the perimeter of the tire that contacts the road when mounted on the vehicle.
*__Rim:__ The metal support (wheel) for a tire or a tire and tube assembly upon which the tire beads are seated.

Tire Replacement Requirements

Your vehicle is equipped with tires designed to provide a safe ride and handling capability.

WARNING: Only use replacement tires and wheels that are the same size, as those originally provided for your vehicle. The required tire and wheel sizes, along with the minimum required Load and Speed Index, can be found on the Tire Label on the driver side door frame or the edge of the driver door. If this information is not found in those locations, or for additional options, contact your authorized dealer. Use of any tire or wheel not recommended, could affect the safety and performance of your vehicle, which could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

WARNING: To reduce the risk of serious injury, when mounting replacement tires and wheels, you should not exceed the maximum pressure indicated on the sidewall of the tire to set the beads without additional precautions listed below. If the beads do not seat at the maximum pressure indicated, re-lubricate and try again.

WARNING: For a mounting pressure more than 20 psi (1.38 bar) greater than the maximum pressure, a Ford dealer or other tire service professional should do the mounting.

WARNING: Always inflate steel carcass tires with a remote air fill with the person inflating standing at a minimum of 12 ft (3.66 m) away from the wheel and tire assembly.

WARNING: Only use the specified jacking points. If you use any other locations you could damage vehicle components, such as brake lines.

WARNING: When inflating the tire for mounting pressures up to 20 psi (1.38 bar) greater than the maximum pressure on the tire sidewall, the following precautions must be taken to protect the person mounting the tire:

- Make sure that you have the correct tire and wheel size.
- Lubricate the tire bead and wheel bead seat area again.
- Stand at a minimum of 12 ft (3.66 m) away from the wheel and tire assembly.
- Use both eye and ear protection.

Important: Remember to replace the wheel valve stems when the road tires are replaced on your vehicle.
It is recommended that the two front tires or two rear tires generally be replaced as a pair if the worn tires still have usable depth.
To avoid potential All-Wheel Drive (AWD) malfunction or (AWD) system damage, it is recommended to replace all four tires rather than mixing significantly worn tires with new tires.
The tire pressure sensors mounted in the wheels (originally installed on your vehicle) are not designed to be used in aftermarket wheels.
The use of wheels or tires not recommended may affect the operation of your tire pressure monitoring system.
If the tire pressure monitoring system indicator is flashing, your system is malfunctioning. Your replacement tire might be incompatible with your tire pressure monitoring system, or some component of the system may be damaged.

Age

WARNING: Tires degrade over time depending on many factors such as weather, storage conditions, and conditions of use (load, speed, inflation pressure) the tires experience throughout their lives.In general, tires should be replaced after six years regardless of tread wear. However, heat caused by hot climates or frequent high loading conditions can accelerate the aging process and may require tires to be replaced more frequently.You should replace your spare tire when you replace the road tires or after six years due to aging even if it has not been used.

U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number

Both United States and Canada Federal regulations require tire manufacturers to place standardized information on the sidewall of all tires. This information identifies and describes the fundamental characteristics of the tire and also provides a U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number for safety standard certification and in case of a recall.

This begins with the letters DOT and indicates that the tire meets all federal standards. The next three numbers or letters are the plant code designating where it was manufactured, the next two are the tire size code and the last four numbers represent the week and year the tire was built. For example, the numbers 317 mean the 31st week of 1997. After 2000, the numbers go to four digits. For example, 2501 means the 25th week of 2001. The numbers in between are identification codes used for traceability. This information is used to contact customers if a tire defect requires a recall.

Using Snow Chains

WARNING: Do not exceed 30 mph (50 km/h). Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: Do not use snow chains on snow-free roads.

WARNING: Only fit snow chains to specified tires.

WARNING: If your vehicle is fitted with wheel trims, remove them before fitting snow chains.

WARNING: If you are driving in slippery conditions that require tire chains or cables, then it is critical that you drive cautiously. Keep speeds down, allow for longer stopping distances and avoid aggressive steering to reduce the chances of a loss of vehicle control which can lead to serious injury or death. If the rear end of your vehicle slides while cornering, steer in the direction of the slide until you regain control of your vehicle.

WARNING: Remember that even advanced technology cannot defy the laws of physics. It's always possible to lose control of a vehicle due to inappropriate driver input for the conditions. Aggressive driving on any road condition can cause you to lose control of your vehicle increasing the risk of personal injury or property damage. Activation of the electronic stability control system is an indication that at least some of the tires have exceeded their ability to grip the road; this could reduce the operator's ability to control the vehicle potentially resulting in a loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

WARNING: Wheels and tires must be the same size, load index and speed rating as those originally fitted on the vehicle. Use of any other tire or wheel can affect the safety and performance of your vehicle. Additionally, the use of non-recommended tires and wheels can cause steering, suspension, axle, transfer case or power transfer unit failure. Follow the recommended tire inflation pressures found on the Safety Compliance Certification label, or the Tire Label on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver door. Failure to follow this instruction could result in loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, or personal injury or death.

The tires on your vehicle could have all-weather treads to provide traction in rain and snow. In some climates you will need to use snow tires and chains on your vehicle in emergency situations or if required by law.
Note: The suspension insulation and bumpers will help prevent vehicle damage. Do not remove these components from your vehicle when using snow tires and chains.
Note: Driving too fast for road conditions creates the possibility of loss of vehicle control. Driving at very high speeds for extended periods of time may result in damage to vehicle components.
Follow these guidelines when using snow tires and chains:

- The snow chains or cables must be mounted in pairs on the front tires only.
- Chains may damage aluminum wheels.
- Use ultra low profile cables, 10 mm or less in dimension as measured on the sidewall of your tire, only with 225/60R18 all season tires.
- Do not use snow chains or cables with 225/55R19, or 245/45R20.
- Not all S-class snow chains or cables meet these restrictions. Chains of this size restriction will include a tensioning device.
- Purchase chains or cables from a manufacturer that clearly labels body to tire dimension restrictions.

- When driving with snow chains do not exceed 30 mph (50 km/h) or the maximum speed recommended by the chain manufacturer, whichever is less.
- Install cables securely, verifying that the cables do not touch any wiring or brake lines.
- Drive cautiously. If you hear the cables rub or bang against the vehicle, stop and retighten them. If this does not work, remove the cables to prevent vehicle damage.
- Remove the tire chains when they are no longer needed. Do not use tire chains on dry roads.

If you have any questions regarding snow chains or cables, please contact your authorized dealer.

Tire Care

Checking the Tire Pressures

Safe operation of your vehicle requires that your tires are properly inflated. Every day before you drive, check your tires.
At least once a month and before long trips, inspect each tire and check the tire pressure with a tire gauge. Inflate all tires to the recommended inflation pressure. See **Inflating the Tires**.

Inflating the Tires

WARNING: Under-inflation is the most common cause of tire failures and may result in severe tire cracking, tread separation or blowout, with unexpected loss of vehicle control and increased risk of injury. Under-inflation increases sidewall flexing and rolling resistance, resulting in heat buildup and internal damage to the tire. It also may result in unnecessary tire stress, irregular wear, loss of vehicle control and accidents. A tire can lose up to half of its air pressure and not appear to be flat!

WARNING: Do not use the tire pressure displayed in the information display as a tire pressure gauge. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

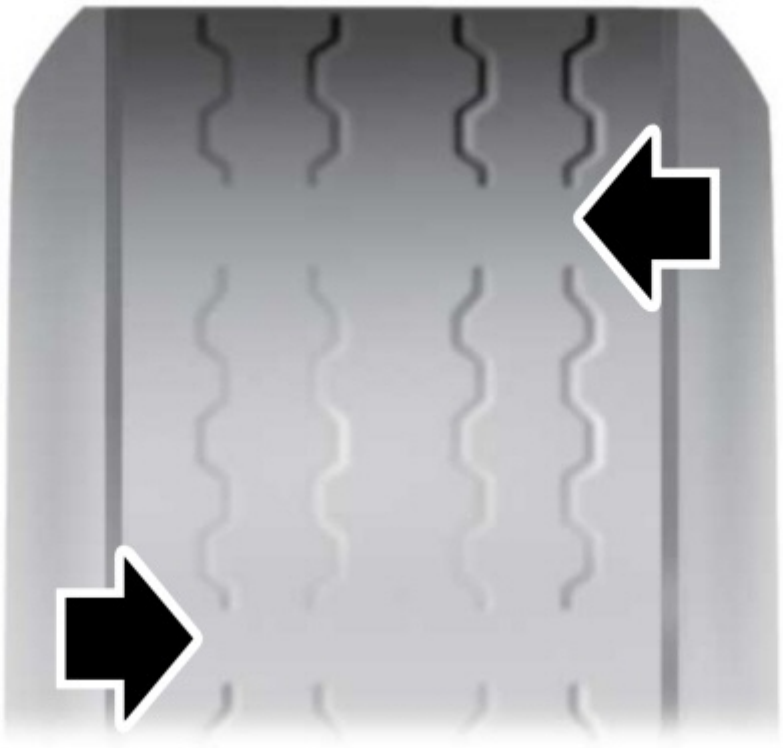
Use the recommended cold inflation pressure for optimum tire performance and wear. Under-inflation or over-inflation may cause uneven treadwear patterns.
Inflate your tires to the recommended inflation pressure even if it is less than the maximum inflation pressure information found on the tire. You can find the tire label with the recommended tire inflation pressure next to the tire size on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver door.
The recommended tire inflation pressure is also found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label, affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch on the B-pillar, or on the edge of the driver door.
Failure to follow the tire pressure recommendations can cause uneven treadwear patterns and adversely affect the way your vehicle handles.
Checking Pressure when tires are hot:
If pressures are checked after tires have been driven for more than three minutes or more than 1 mile, (2 km) the tires become hot and the pressures will increase by approximately 4 psi (27.6 kPa). Therefore when the tire pressure is adjusted under these conditions, it should be increased to a gauge reading of 4 psi (27.6 kPa) greater than the recommended cold inflation pressure.
After inflating the tires while hot, make sure to recheck tire pressure later once the tires are cold.
For Example Only

Gauge reading of hot tire	33 psi (230 kPa)
If recommended, cold inflation pressure is	32 psi (220 kPa)

The hot tire pressure is only 1 psi (10 kPa) greater than the recommended cold inflation pressure. Therefore, add 3 psi (20 kPa) more to increase the hot pressure to 4 psi (30 kPa) over the recommended cold inflation pressure.

New hot pressure	36 psi (250 kPa)

Inspecting the Tire for Wear



When the tread is worn down to 2/32 inch (1.6 mm), tires must be replaced to help prevent your vehicle from skidding and hydroplaning. Built-in treadwear indicators, or wear bars, which look like narrow strips of smooth rubber across the tread will appear on the tire when the tread is worn down to 2/32 inch (1.6 mm). When the tire tread wears down to the same height as these wear bars, the tire is worn out and must be replaced.
The tires should also be balanced periodically. An unbalanced tire and wheel assembly may result in irregular tire wear.
Periodically inspect the tire treads for uneven or excessive wear and remove objects such as stones, nails or glass that may be wedged in the tread grooves.

Inspecting the Tire for Damage

Inspect the tire sidewalls for cracking, cuts, bruises and other signs of damage or excessive wear. If internal damage to the tire is suspected, have the tire dismounted and inspected in case it needs to be repaired or replaced. For your safety, tires that are damaged or show signs of excessive wear should not be used because they are more likely to blow out or fail.

Periodically inspect the tire treads and sidewalls for damage, such as bulges in the tread or sidewalls, cracks in the tread groove and separation in the tread or sidewall. If damage is observed or suspected, have the tire inspected by a tire professional.

Safety Practices

WARNING: If your vehicle is stuck in snow, mud or sand, do not rapidly spin the tires; spinning the tires can tear the tire and cause an explosion. A tire can explode in as little as three to five seconds.

WARNING: Do not spin the wheels at over 34 mph (55 km/h). The tires may fail and injure a passenger or bystander.

HIGH SPEED DRIVING CAN BE DANGEROUS

Correct inflation pressure is especially important. However, at high speeds, even with the correct inflation pressure, a road hazard for example is more difficult to avoid and if contact is made, has a greater chance of causing tire damage than at a lower speed. Moreover, driving at high speed reduces the reaction time available to avoid accidents and bring your vehicle to a safe stop.

If you see any damage to a tire or wheel, replace it with the spare at once and visit a participating Tire Retailer.

Exceeding the maximum speeds shown on the following page for each type of tire will cause the tire to build up excessive heat which can cause tire damage that could result in sudden tire destruction and rapid air loss. Failure to control a vehicle when one or more tires experience a sudden air loss can lead to an accident.

In any case, you should not exceed reasonable speeds as indicated by the legal limits and driving conditions.

DO NOT OVERLOAD: DRIVING ON ANY OVERLOADED TIRE IS DANGEROUS

The maximum load rating of your tires is molded on the tire sidewall. Do not exceed this rating. Follow the loading instructions of the manufacturer of your vehicle and this will ensure that your tires are not overloaded. Tires which are loaded beyond their maximum allowable loads for the particular application will build up excessive heat that may result in sudden tire destruction. Do not exceed the gross axle weight rating for any axle on your vehicle.

TIRE ALTERATIONS

Do not make or allow to be made any alterations on your tires. Alterations may prevent proper performance, leading to tire damage which can result in an accident. Tires which become unserviceable due to alterations such as truing, whitewall inlays, addition of balancing or sealant liquids, or the use of tire dressing containing petroleum distillates are excluded from warranty coverage.

REPAIRS - WHEREVER POSSIBLE, SEE YOUR TIRE RETAILER AT ONCE

If any tire sustains a puncture, have the tire demounted and thoroughly inspected by a tire retailer for possible damage that may have occurred. A tread area puncture in any passenger or light truck tire can be repaired provided that the puncture hole is not more than 1/4” in diameter, not more than one radial cable per casing ply is damaged, and the tire has not been damaged further by the puncturing object or by running underinflated. Tire punctures consistent with these guidelines should only be repaired by following the US Tire Manufacturers Association (USTMA) recommended repair procedures. Plug-only repairs done on-the-wheel are considered improper and therefore, not recommended. Such repairs are not reliable and may cause further damage to the tire.

STORAGE

Tires contain waxes and emollients to protect their outer surfaces from ozone and weather checking. As the tire rolls and flexes, the waxes and emollients continually migrate to the surface, replenishing this protection throughout the normal use of the tire. Consequently, when tires sit unused for long periods of time (a month or more) their surfaces become dry and more susceptible to ozone and weather checking and the casing becomes susceptible to flat spotting. **For this reason, tires should always be stored in a cool, dry, clean, indoor environment. If storage is for one month or more, eliminate the weight from the tires by raising the vehicle or by removing the tires from the vehicle. Failure to store tires in accordance with these instructions could result in damage to your tires or premature aging of the tires and sudden tire failure.**

When tires are stored, be sure they are placed away from sources of heat and ozone such as direct sunlight, hot pipes and electric generators. Be sure that surfaces on which tires are stored are clean and free from

grease, gasoline or other substances, which could deteriorate the rubber. Failure to store tires in accordance with these instructions could result in damage to your tires or premature aging of the tires and sudden tire failure.

FOLLOW THESE MOUNTING RECOMMENDATIONS

Tire changing can be dangerous and must be done by professionally trained persons using proper tools and procedures as specified by the US Tire Manufacturers Association (USTMA). Single or dual assemblies must be completely deflated before demounting.

Your tires should be mounted on wheels of correct size and type and which are in good, clean condition. Wheels that are bent, chipped, rusted (steel wheels) or corroded (alloy wheels) may cause tire damage. The inside of the tire must be free from foreign material. Have your retailer check the wheels before mounting new tires. Mismatched tires and rims can explode during mounting. Also, mismatched tires and rims can result in dangerous tire failure on the road. If a tire is mounted by error on the wrong-sized rim, do not remount it on the proper rim - scrap it. It may have been damaged internally (which is not externally visible) by having been dangerously stretched and could fail on the highway.

Old valves may leak. When new tubeless tires are mounted, have new valves of the correct type installed. Tubeless tires must only be mounted on wheels designed for tubeless tires i.e., wheels which have safety humps or ledges.

It is recommended that you have your tires and wheels balanced. Tires and wheels, which are not balanced, may cause steering difficulties, a bumpy ride, and irregular tire wear.

Be sure that all your valves have suitable valve caps. The valve cap is the primary seal against air loss.

TEMPORARY SPARE TIRES

When using any temporary spare tire, be sure to follow the vehicle manufacturer’s instructions.

REMEMBER... TO AVOID DAMAGE TO YOUR TIRES AND POSSIBLE ACCIDENT:

- CHECK TIRE PRESSURE AT LEAST ONCE EACH MONTH WHEN TIRES ARE COLD AND BEFORE LONG TRIPS.
- DO NOT UNDERINFLATE/OVERINFLATE.
- DO NOT OVERLOAD.
- DRIVE AT MODERATE SPEEDS, OBSERVE LEGAL LIMITS.
- AVOID DRIVING OVER POTHOLES, OBSTACLES, CURBS OR EDGES OF PAVEMENT.
- AVOID EXCESSIVE WHEEL SPINNING.
- IF YOU SEE ANY DAMAGE TO A TIRE, REPLACE WITH THE SPARE AND VISIT ANY AUTHORIZED RETAILER AT ONCE.
- IF YOU HAVE ANY QUESTIONS, CONTACT YOUR AUTHORIZED RETAILER.

Highway Hazards

No matter how carefully you drive, there is always the possibility that you could eventually have a flat tire on the highway. Drive slowly to the closest safe area out of traffic. This could further damage the flat tire, but your safety is more important.

If you feel a sudden vibration or ride disturbance while driving, or you suspect your tire or vehicle has been damaged, immediately reduce your speed. Drive with caution until you can safely pull off the road. Stop and inspect the tires for damage. If a tire is under-inflated or damaged, deflate it, remove the wheel and replace it with your spare tire and wheel. If you cannot detect a cause, have the vehicle towed to the nearest repair facility or tire dealer to have the vehicle inspected.

Tire and Wheel Alignment

A bad jolt from hitting a curb or pothole can cause the front end of your vehicle to become misaligned or cause damage to your tires. If your vehicle seems to pull to one side when you are driving, the wheels could be out of alignment. Have an authorized dealer check the wheel alignment periodically.

Wheel misalignment in the front or the rear can cause uneven and rapid treadwear of your tires and should be corrected by an authorized dealer.

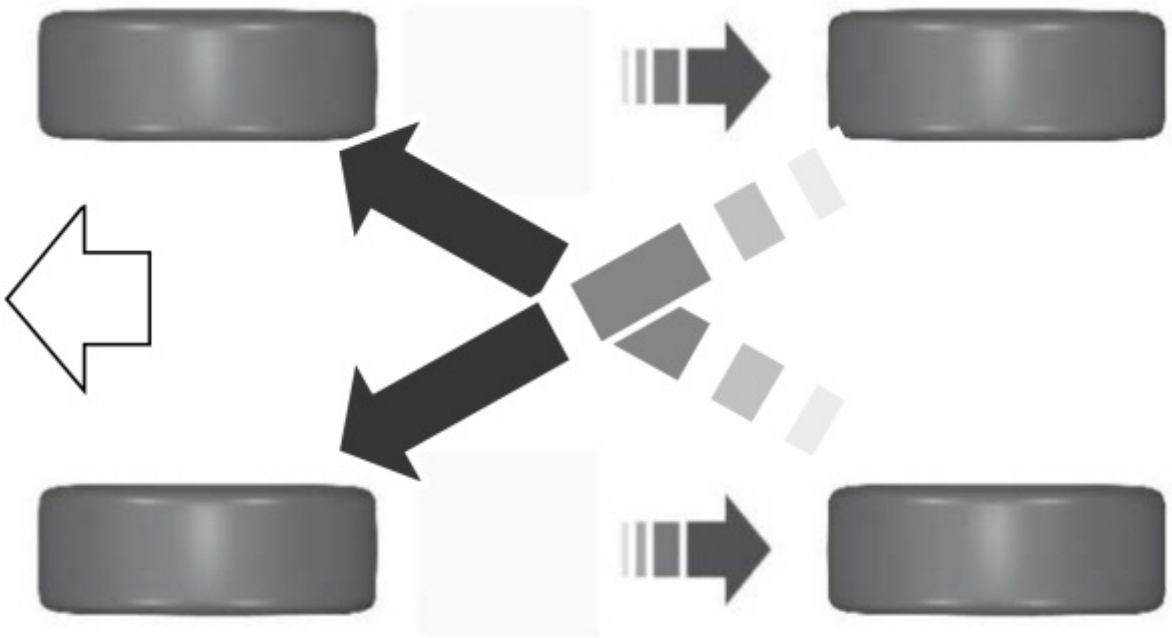
Inspecting the Wheel Valve Stems

Check the valve stems for holes, cracks, or cuts that could permit air leakage.

Tire Rotation

> **WARNING**: If the tire label shows different tire pressures for the front and rear tires and the vehicle has a tire pressure monitoring system, then you need to update the settings for the system sensors. Always perform the system reset procedure after tire rotation. If you do not reset the system, it may not provide a low tire pressure warning when necessary.

Rotating your tires at the recommended interval will help your tires wear more evenly, providing better tire performance and longer tire life.
Note: If your tires show any uneven wear have the alignment checked by an authorized dealer before rotating tires.
Note: If you have a dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly, it is intended for temporary use only and should not be used in a tire rotation.
Note: After having your tires rotated, inflation pressure must be checked and adjusted to the vehicle requirements.
Tire Rotation Diagram
Follow the diagram indicating the correct tire locations for rotating the tires.



Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit (If Equipped)

What Is the Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit

The kit consists of an air compressor to re-inflate the tire and a canister of sealing compound that effectively seals most punctures. This kit provides a temporary tire repair allowing you to drive your vehicle up to 120 mi (200 km) at a maximum speed of 50 mph (80 km/h) to reach a tire service location.
Note: The temporary mobility kit contains enough sealant compound in the canister for one tire repair only. See an authorized dealer for replacement sealant canisters.

Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit Precautions

WARNING: Failure to follow these guidelines could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, injury or death.

WARNING: Do not run the engine when operating the air compressor unless the vehicle is outdoors or in a well-ventilated area.

Note: Do not use the kit if a tire has become severely damaged. Only punctures located within the tire tread can be sealed with the kit.
Do not attempt to repair punctures larger than 0.24 in (6 mm) or damage to the tire's sidewall. The tire may not completely seal.

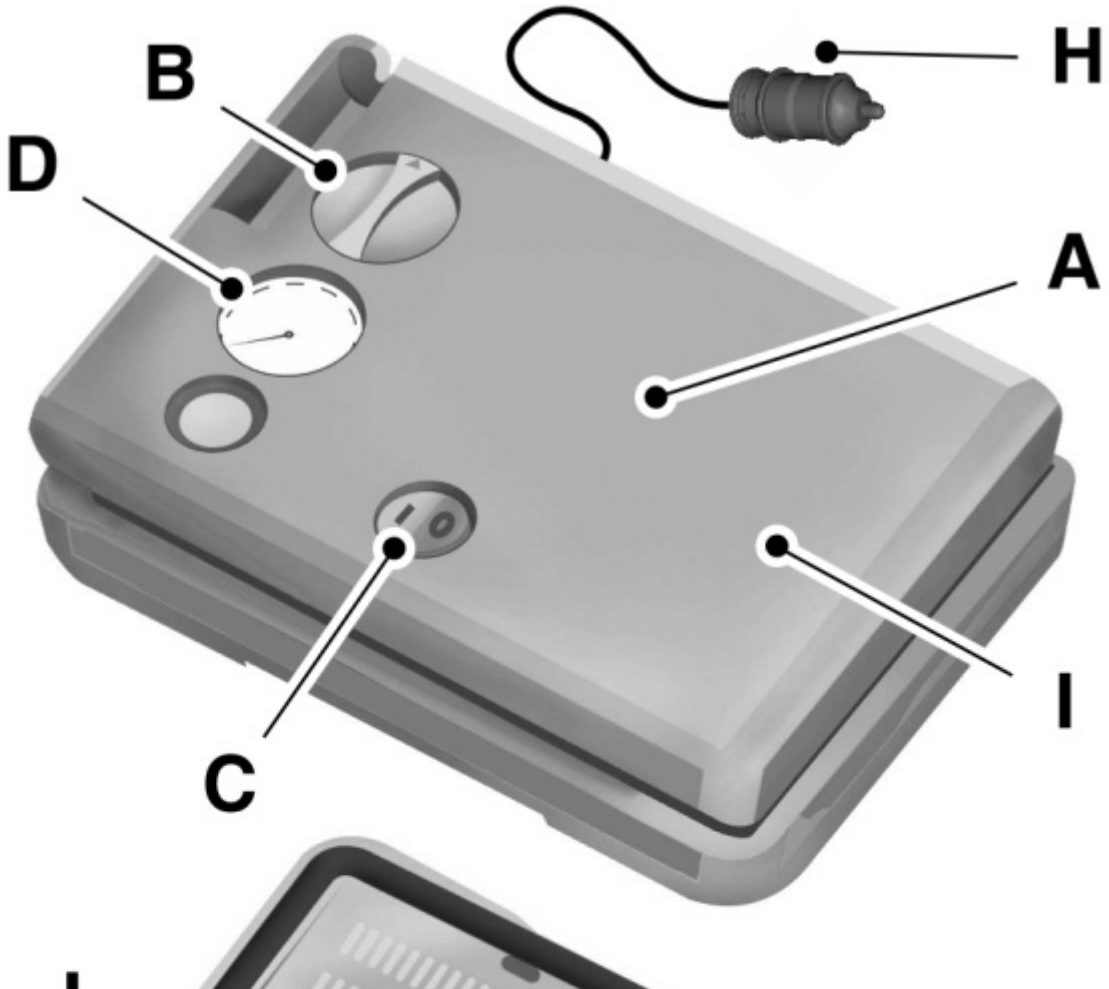
- Drive carefully and avoid abrupt steering maneuvers.
- Periodically monitor tire inflation pressure in the affected tire; if the tire is losing pressure, have the vehicle towed.
- Read the information in the Tips for Use of the Kit section to make sure safe operation of the kit and your vehicle.

After sealant use, the tire pressure monitoring system sensor and valve stem on the wheel must be replaced by an authorized dealer.

Locating the Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit

The kit is located under the load floor in the rear of the vehicle.

Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit Components



A Air compressor (inside)
B Selector switch
C On and Off button
D Air pressure gauge
E Sealant bottle and canister
F Dual purpose hose: air and repair
G Tire valve connector
H Accessory power plug
I Casing/housing
J Bike/raft/sports ball adapters

Using the Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit

Tips for use of the kit
To make sure the kit operates safely and properly, observe the following:

- Before operating the kit, make sure your vehicle is safely off the road and away from moving traffic.
- Do not remove any foreign objects, such as nails or screws, from the tire.
- Do not allow the compressor to operate continuously for more than 15 minutes. This prevents the compressor from overheating.
- Only use the kit when the ambient temperature is between -22 °F (-30 °C) and 158 °F (70 °C).
- Only use the sealing compound before the use-by date. The use-by date is on a label on the sealant canister and can be seen through the rectangular viewing window on the bottom of the compressor. Check the use-by date regularly and replace the canister when the sealant expires.

Note: Sealant compound contains latex. Use appropriate precautions to avoid any allergic reactions.

 Place the selector in the Air position when inflating a tire or other objects.

What to do when a tire is punctured
A tire puncture within the tire's tread area can be repaired in two stages with the kit.

- In the first stage, the tire is reinflated with a sealing compound and air. After the tire has been inflated, drive the vehicle a short distance approximately 4 mi (6 km) to distribute the sealant in the tire.
- In the second stage, check the tire pressure and adjust, if necessary, to the vehicle's specified tire inflation pressure.

First Stage: Reinflating the Tire with sealing compound and air

WARNING: Do not stand directly over the kit while inflating the tire. If you notice any unusual bulges or deformations in the tire's sidewall during inflation, stop and call roadside assistance.

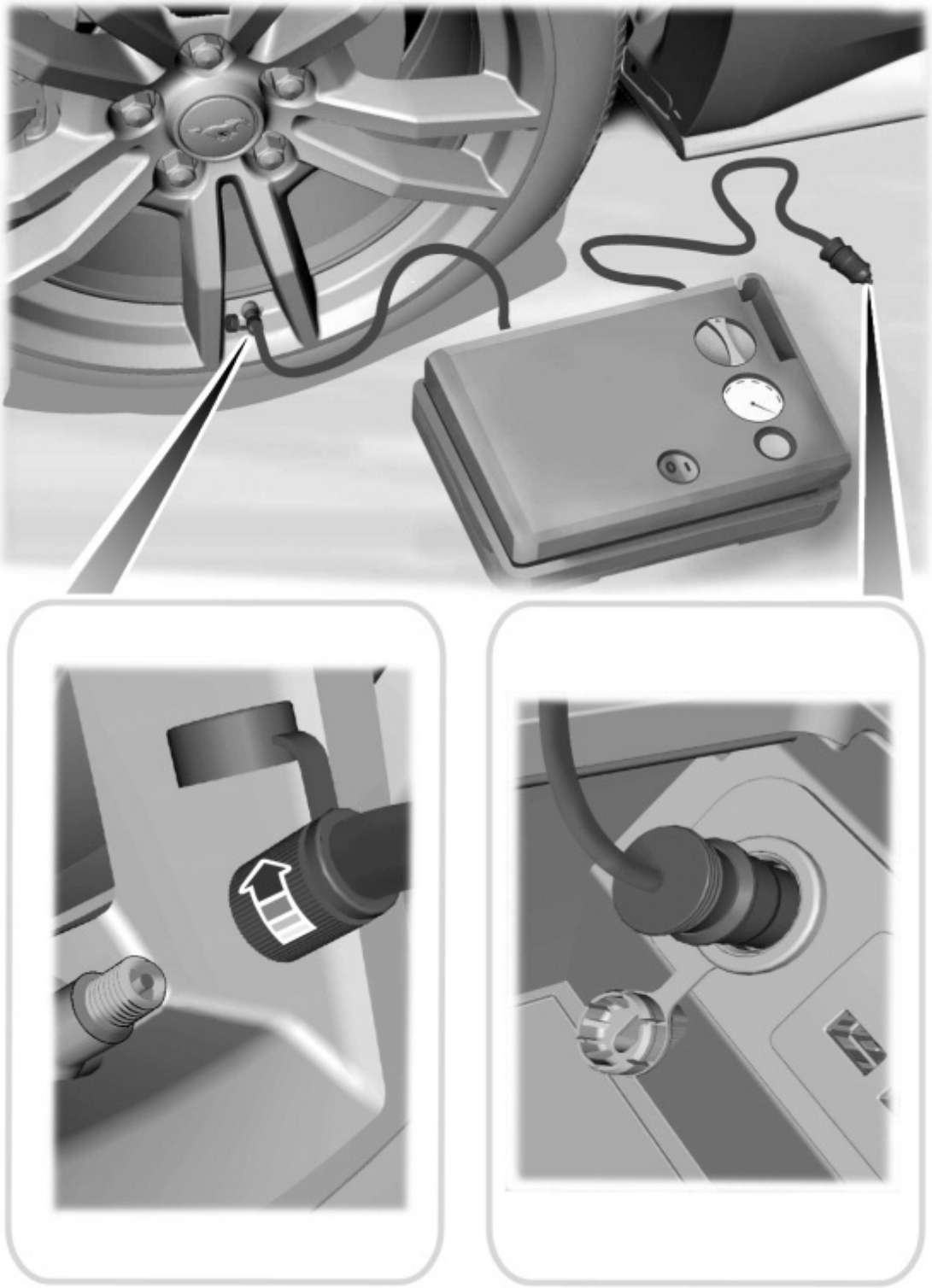
WARNING: If the tire does not inflate to the recommended tire pressure within 15 minutes, stop and call roadside assistance.

Park the vehicle in a safe, level and secure area, away from moving traffic.
Turn the hazard lights on. Apply the parking brake and power off the vehicle. Inspect the flat tire for visible damage.
If a puncture is located in the tire sidewall, stop and call roadside assistance.

1. Remove the valve cap from the tire valve.

2. Unwrap the dual purpose hose (black tube) from the back of the compressor housing.

3. Fasten the hose to the tire valve by turning the connector clockwise. Tighten the connection securely.



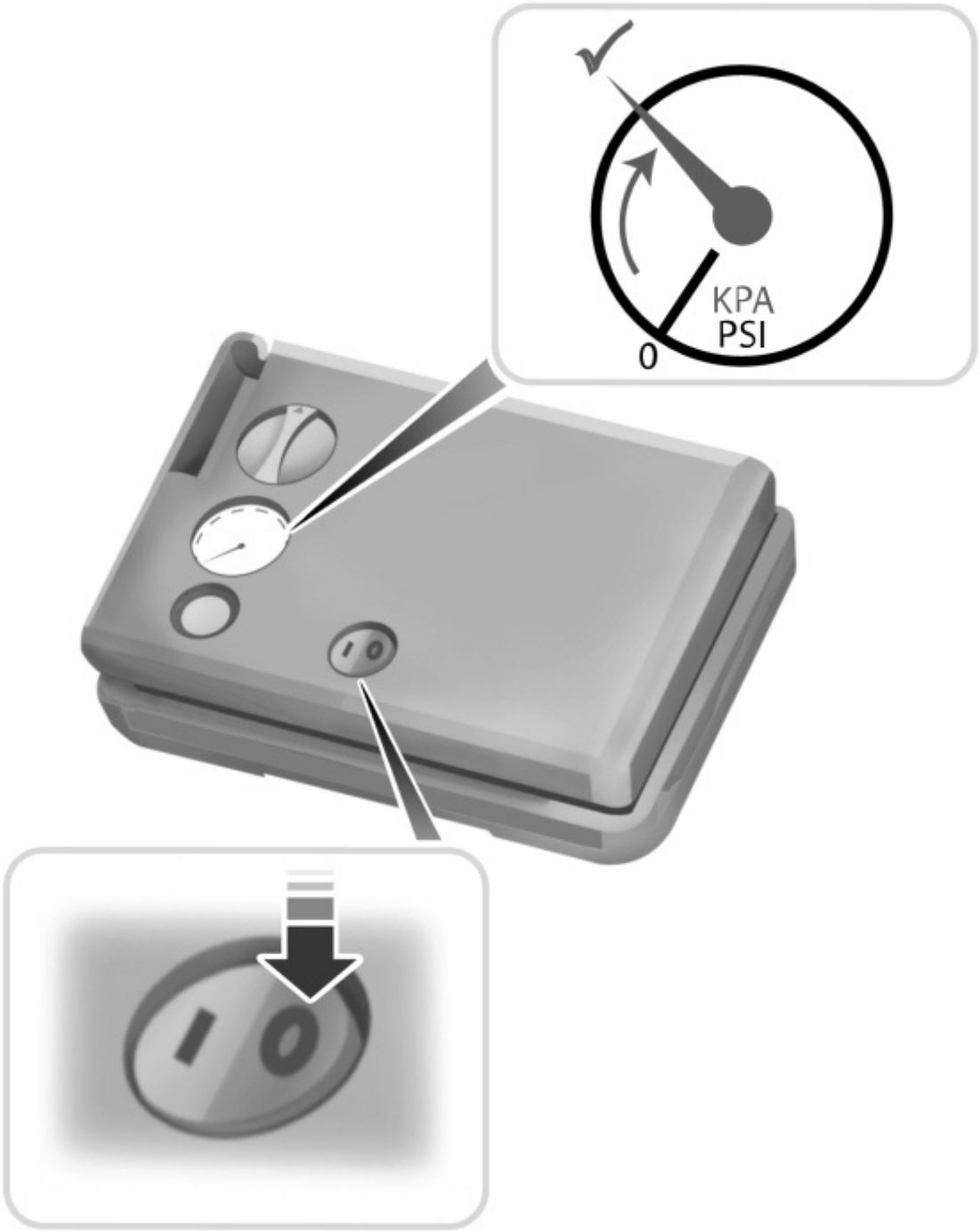
4. Plug the power cable into the 12-volt power point in the vehicle.

5. Remove the warning sticker found on the casing/housing and place it on the top of the instrument panel or the center of the dash.



6. Turn dial (A) clockwise to the sealant position. Turn the kit on by pressing the on/off button (B).

7. Inflate the tire to the pressure listed on the tire label located on the driver door or the door jamb area. Check the final tire pressure with the compressor turned off to get an accurate pressure reading.



8. When the recommended tire pressure is reached, turn off the kit, unplug the power cable, and disconnect the hose from the tire valve. Re-install the valve cap on the tire valve and return the kit to the rear of the vehicle.

9. Drive the vehicle 4 mi (6 km) to distribute the sealant evenly inside the tire.

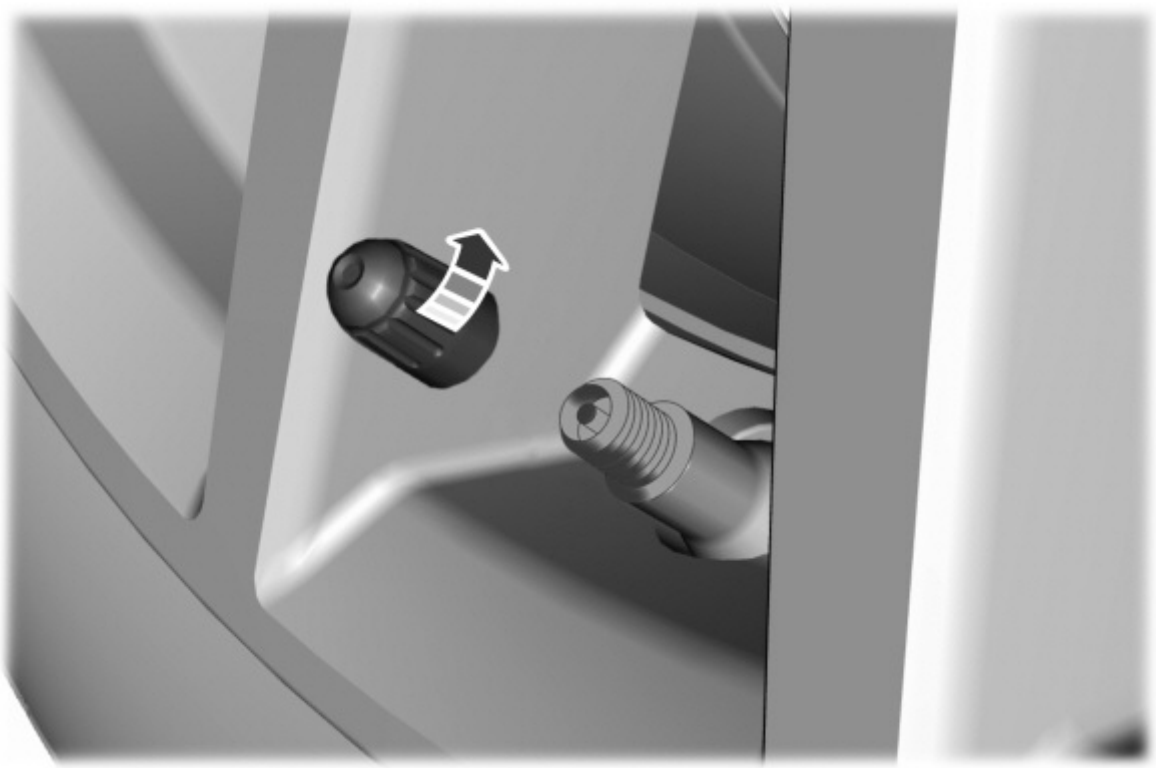
Note: If you experience any unusual vibration, ride disturbance or noise while driving, reduce your speed until you can safely pull off to the side of the road to call for roadside assistance. Do not proceed to the second stage of this operation.

Second Stage: Checking the tire pressure with the inflator kit

⚠ **WARNING**: If the tire does not inflate to the recommended tire pressure within 15 minutes, stop and call roadside assistance.

⚠ **WARNING**: The power plug may get hot after use and should be handled carefully when unplugging.

Check the air pressure of your tires as follows:

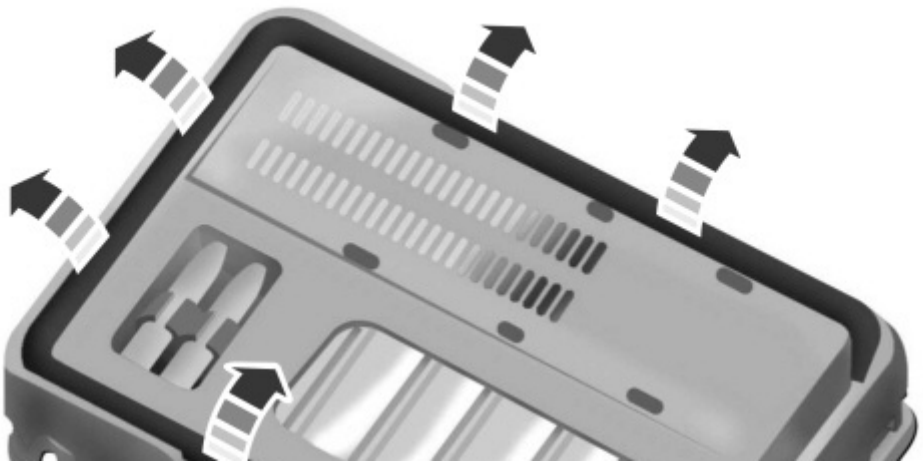


1. Remove the valve cap from the tire valve.
2. Firmly screw the air compressor hose onto the valve stem by turning clockwise.
3. Push and turn the dial clockwise to the air position.
4. If required, turn on the compressor and adjust the tire to the recommended inflation pressure.
5. Unplug the hoses, re-install the valve cap on the tire and return the kit to the rear of the vehicle.

What to do after the tire has been sealed

After using the kit to seal your tire, replace the sealant canister. Sealant canisters and spare parts can be obtained at an authorized dealer. Empty sealant canisters may be disposed of at home. However, canisters still containing liquid sealant should be disposed of in accordance with local waste disposal regulation.

Removal of the sealant canister from the kit



1. Unwrap the dual purpose hose (black tube) from the compressor housing.



2. Unwrap the power cord.



3. Remove the back cover.



4. Rotate the sealant canister up 90 degrees and pull away from casing/housing to remove.

Installation of the sealant canister to the kit

1. With the canister held perpendicular to the housing, insert the canister nozzle into the connector and push until seated.

2. Rotate the canister 90 degrees down into the housing/casing.



3. Snap the back cover back into place.



4. Wrap the dual purpose hose (black tube) around the channel on the bottom of the housing/casing.



5. Wrap the power cord around the housing and stow the accessory power plug.

Tire Pressure Monitoring System

What Is the Tire Pressure Monitoring System

The tire pressure monitoring system measures the vehicle's tire pressures. A warning lamp illuminates if one or more tires are significantly underinflated or if there is a system malfunction.

Tire Pressure Monitoring System Overview

WARNING: Under-inflation is the most common cause of tire failures and may result in severe tire cracking, tread separation or blowout, with unexpected loss of vehicle control and increased risk of injury. Under-inflation increases sidewall flexing and rolling resistance, resulting in heat buildup and internal damage to the tire. It also may result in unnecessary tire stress, irregular wear, loss of vehicle control and accidents. A tire can lose up to half of its air pressure and not appear to be flat!

WARNING: To determine the required pressure(s) for your vehicle, see the Safety Compliance Certification Label (on the door hinge pillar, door-latch post or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver seat) or the Tire Label on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver door.

Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires).

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.
Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale.
Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists.
When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

WARNING: Changes or modifications not expressively approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term "IC:" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with License exempt RSS Standards of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Tire Pressure Monitoring System Precautions

WARNING: The tire pressure monitoring system is not a substitute for manually checking tire pressures. You should periodically check tire pressures using a pressure gauge. Failure to correctly maintain tire pressures could increase the risk of tire failure, loss of control, vehicle rollover and personal injury.

WARNING: Do not use the tire pressure displayed in the information display as a tire pressure gauge. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

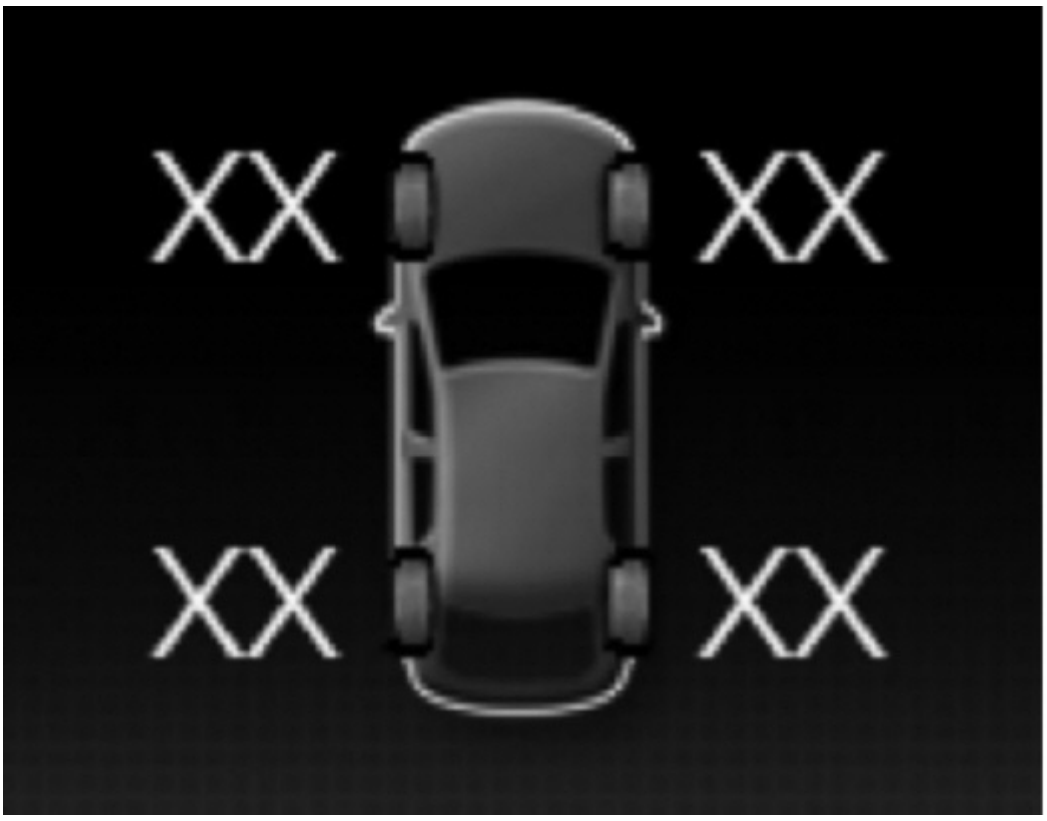
Note: The use of tire sealants can damage the tire pressure monitoring system.
Note: If the tire pressure monitor sensor becomes damaged it may not function.

Tire Pressure Monitoring System Limitations

When the outside temperature drops significantly, the tire pressure could decrease and activate the low tire pressure warning lamp.
The warning lamp could also illuminate when you use a spare wheel, or tire sealant from the inflator kit.
Note: Regularly checking the vehicle tire pressures can reduce the possibility for the warning lamp to illuminate due to outside air temperature changes.

Note: After you inflate the tires to the recommended pressure it could take up to two minutes of driving over 20 mph (32 km/h) for the warning indicator to turn off.

Viewing the Tire Pressures



To view the current tire pressures, use the information display or touchscreen.

Tire Pressure Monitoring System – Warning Lamps

The low tire pressure warning lamp has combined functions, as it warns you when your tires need air, and when the system is no longer capable of functioning as intended.

Warning Lamp	Possible Cause	Action Required
Solid warning lamp	One or more tires are significantly under inflated	After inflating your tires to the manufacturer's recommended pressure as shown on the tire label, on the edge of driver door or the B-pillar, drive your vehicle for at least two minutes over 20 mph (32 km/h) before the light turns off.
Solid warning lamp or flashing warning lamp	Temporary spare wheel in use	Repair the damaged road wheel and tire and refit it to your vehicle to restore operation of the system.
	Tire pressure monitoring system malfunction	If the tires are inflated to the recommended tire pressures and the temporary spare wheel is not in use, the system detected a fault that requires service.Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Tire Pressure Monitoring System – Information Messages

Message	Details
Tire pressure low	After inflating your tires to the manufacturer’s recommended pressure as shown on the tire label, on the edge of the driver door or the B-pillar, drive your vehicle for at least two minutes over 20 mph (32 km/h) before the light turns off.
Tire pressure monitor fault	The system has detected a fault that requires service.Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Tire pressure Sensor fault	The system has detected a fault that requires service or a spare tire is in use.Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Tire Pressure Monitoring System – Troubleshooting

Tire Pressure Monitoring System – Warning Lamps

 The low tire pressure warning lamp has combined functions, as it warns you when your tires need air, and when the system is no longer capable of functioning as intended.

Warning Lamp	Possible Cause	Action Required
Solid warning lamp	One or more tires are significantly under inflated	After inflating your tires to the manufacturer’s recommended pressure as shown on the tire label, on the edge of driver door or the B-pillar, drive your vehicle for at least two minutes over 20 mph (32 km/h) before the light turns off.
Solid warning lamp or flashing warning lamp	Temporary spare wheel in use	Repair the damaged road wheel and tire and refit it to your vehicle to restore operation of the system.
	Tire pressure monitoring system malfunction	If the tires are inflated to the recommended tire pressures and the temporary spare wheel is not in use, the system detected a fault that requires service.Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Tire Pressure Monitoring System – Information Messages

Message	Details
Tire pressure low	After inflating your tires to the manufacturer’s recommended pressure as shown on the tire label, on the edge of the driver door or the B-pillar, drive your vehicle for at least two minutes over 20 mph (32 km/h) before the light turns off.
Tire pressure monitor fault	The system has detected a fault that requires service.Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Tire pressure Sensor fault	The system has detected a fault that requires service or a spare tire is in use.Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Changing a Road Wheel

Changing a Flat Tire (If Equipped)

WARNING: Failure to follow these guidelines could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, injury or death.

WARNING: Do not attempt to change a tire on the side of the vehicle close to moving traffic. Pull far enough off the road to not obstruct the flow of traffic and avoid the danger of being hit when operating the jack or changing the wheel.

WARNING: If your vehicle has an automatic transmission, shift into park (P), apply the parking brake, and switch the vehicle off.

WARNING: Make sure that your vehicle is on firm and level ground with the front wheels pointing straight ahead and set up a warning triangle if available.

WARNING: To help prevent your vehicle from moving when changing a wheel, use an appropriate block or wheel chock to secure the wheel diagonally opposite to the wheel being changed. For example, when changing the front left wheel, place an appropriate block or wheel chock on the right rear wheel.

WARNING: Do not switch off stability control or select sport mode, when using a temporary spare wheel or after repairing a tire using the temporary mobility kit.

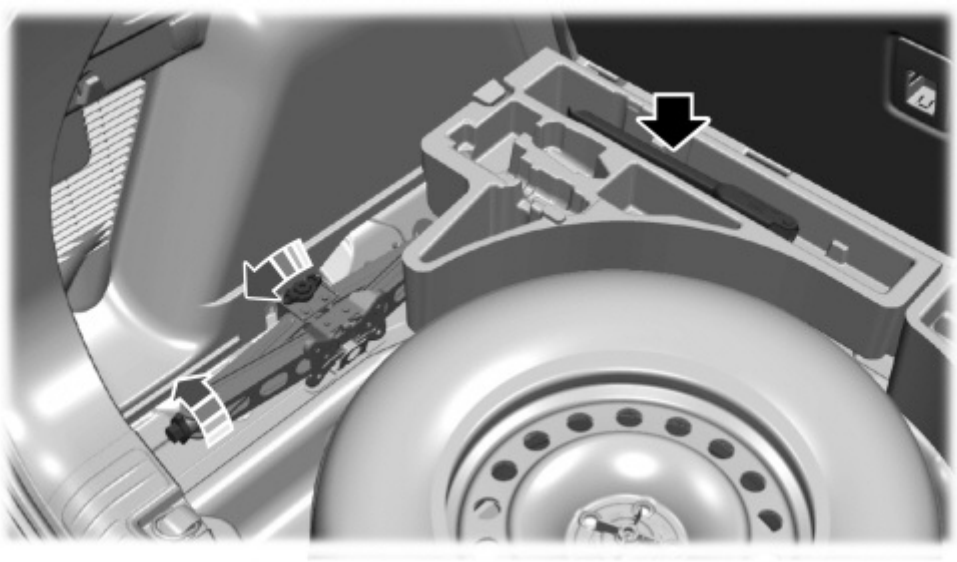
Make sure all passengers are out of your vehicle.
If the spare wheel is the same type and size as the your vehicle road wheels, you can fit the spare wheel and continue to drive in the normal manner. We recommend that you have the damaged road wheel and tire repaired or replaced as soon as possible.
If the spare wheel is not the same type and size as your vehicle road wheels, it has a label showing the maximum driving speed limit.
Note: Your vehicle may exhibit some different driving characteristics if you fit the spare wheel.
Note: The ground clearance of your vehicle may be reduced when the spare wheel is fitted.Take care when parking next to a curb.
Note: : If the spare wheel is fitted to your vehicle, do not drive through an automatic car wash.
On Plug-in and Full Hybrid Electric Vehicles you can find the jack and wrench to the left of the spare tire.
On Non Plug-in or Full Hybrid Electric Vehicles, you can find the jack and wrench under the spare tire.



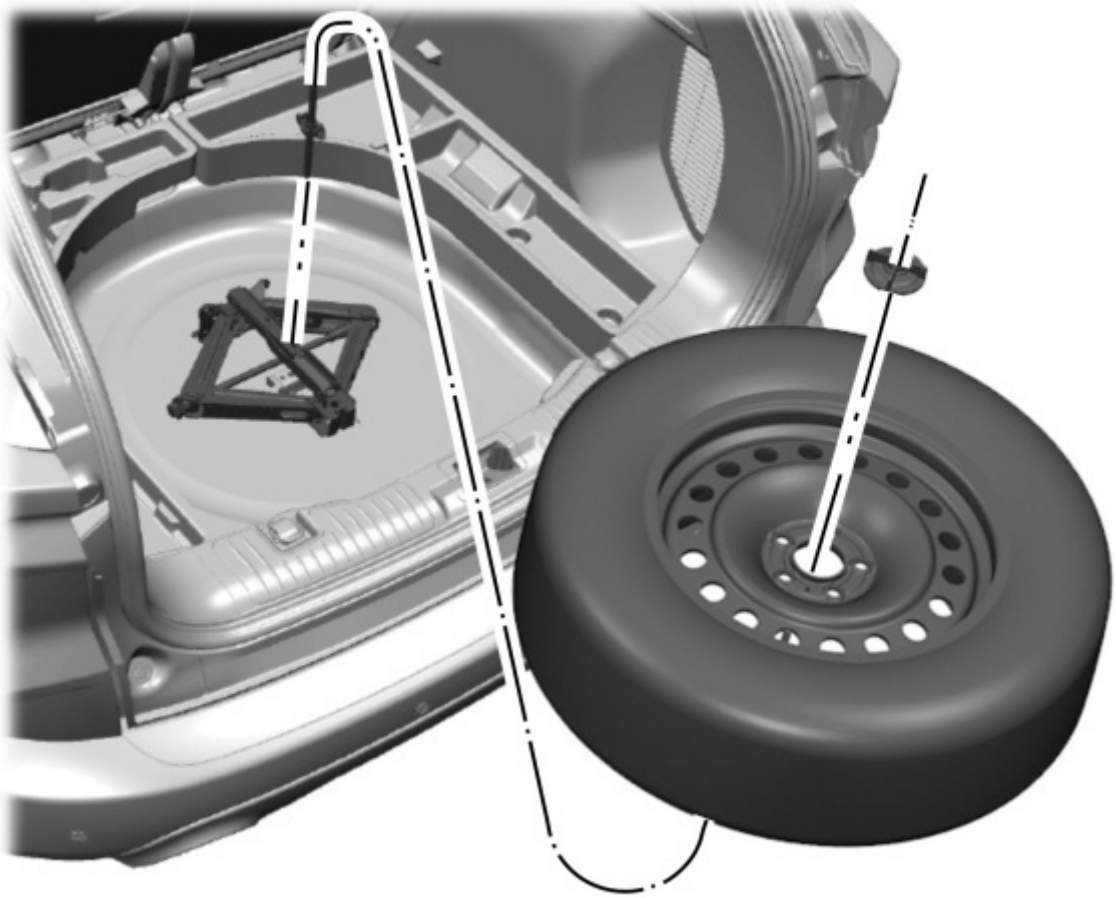
WARNING: No person should place any portion of their body under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.

Note: The jack does not require maintenance or additional lubrication over the service life of your vehicle with normal usage.

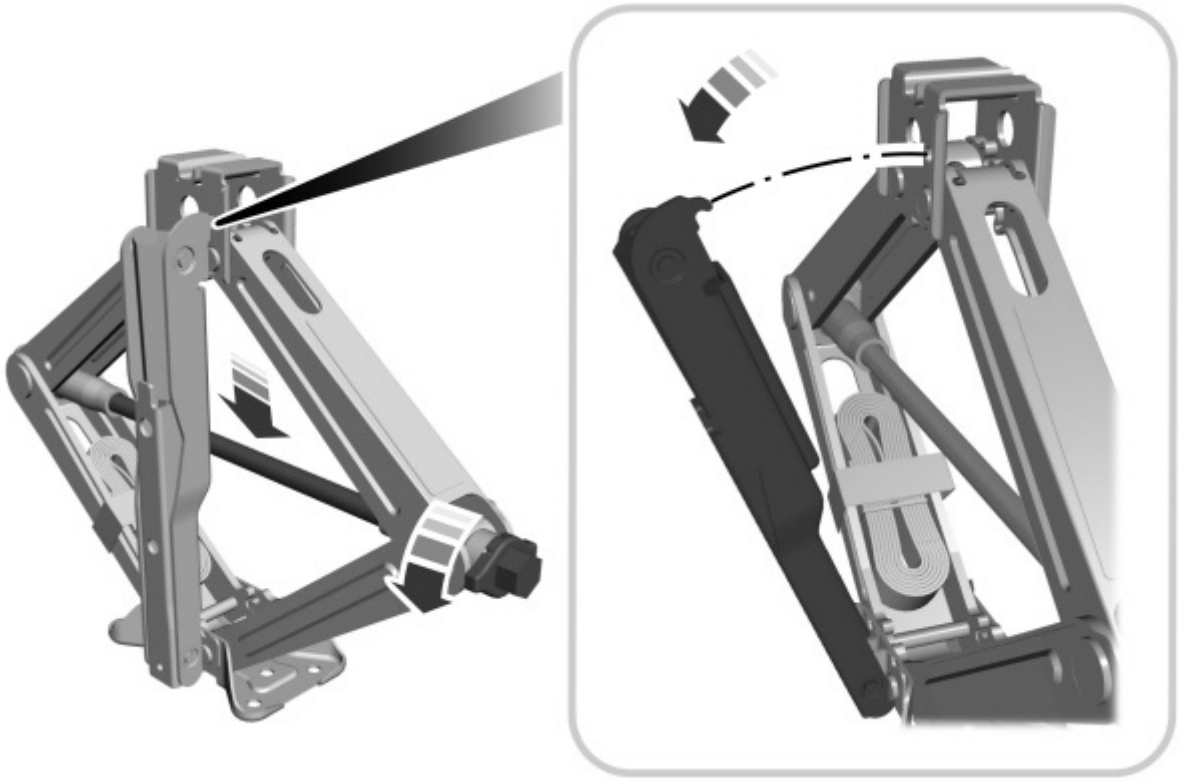
1. Park on a level surface, set the parking brake and activate the hazard flashers.
2. Place the transmission in park (P) and turn the engine off.
3. Lift and remove the carpeted cargo area floor to access the spare tire, jack and wheel nut wrench.
4. Remove the wing nut that secures the spare tire by turning it counterclockwise.
5. Remove the spare tire and jack kit from the spare tire compartment.



6. Remove the jack and the flat tire retainer strap from the jack base.



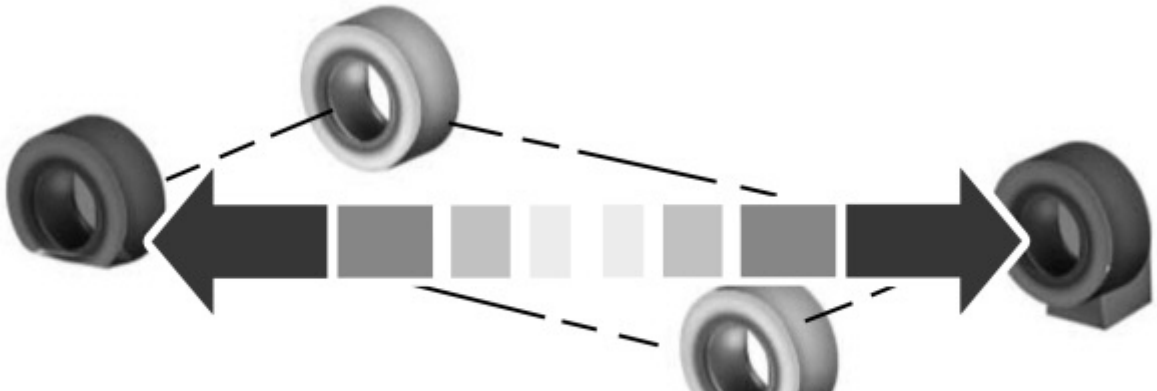
7. Turn the jack hex nut drive screw counterclockwise to detach the wheel nut wrench from the jack. This lowers the jack and releases the mechanical lock.



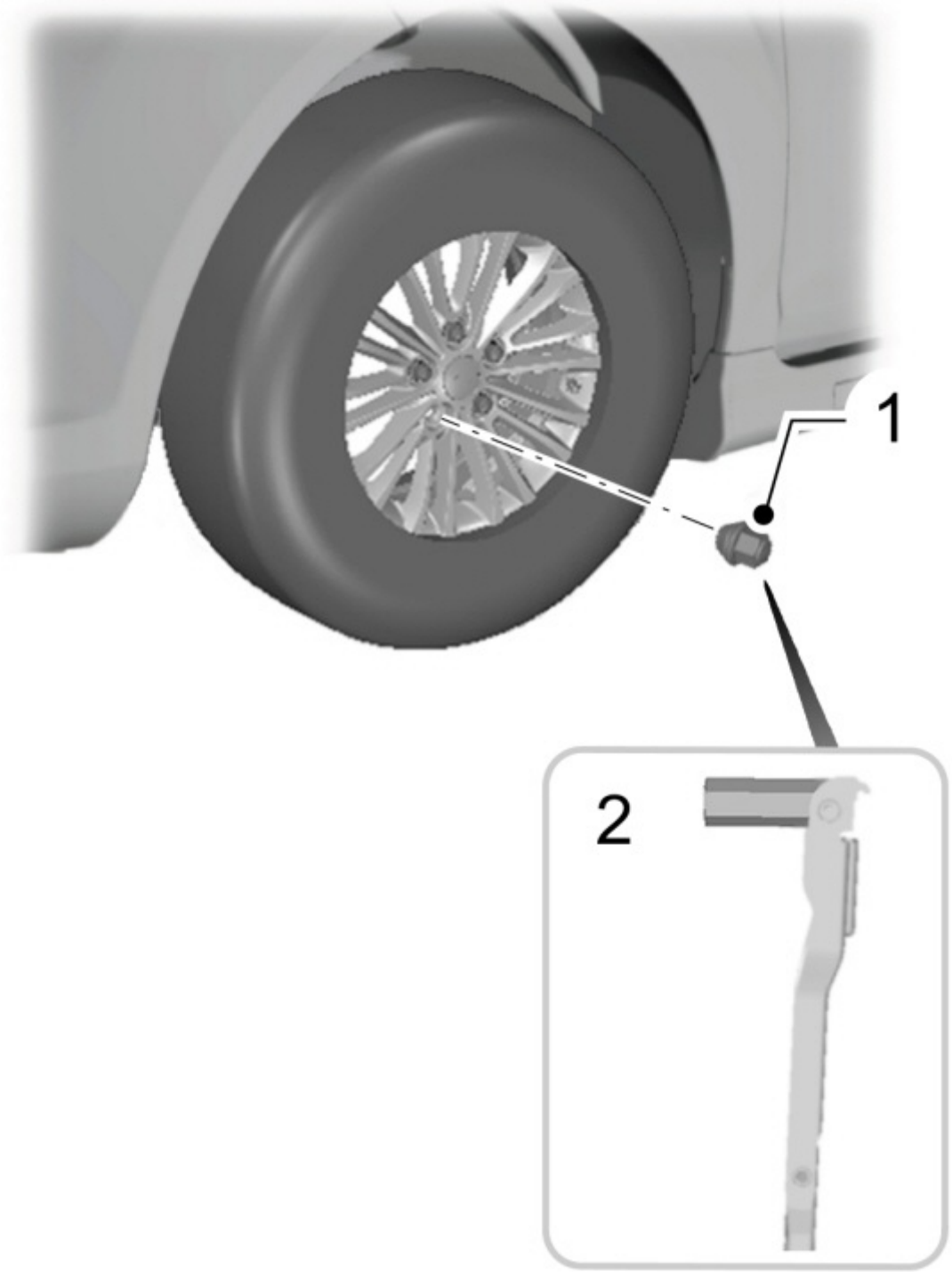
8. Unfold the wheel nut wrench for use.



9. Block the diagonally opposite wheel.



10. Loosen each wheel nut one-half turn counterclockwise, but do not remove them until the wheel is raised off the ground.



WARNING: Only use the jack provided as original equipment with your vehicle.

WARNING: The jack supplied with this vehicle is only intended for changing a flat tire in an emergency. Do not attempt to do any other work on your vehicle when it is supported by the jack, as your vehicle could slip off the jack. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

WARNING: Only use the specified jacking points. If you use any other locations you could damage vehicle components, such as brake lines.

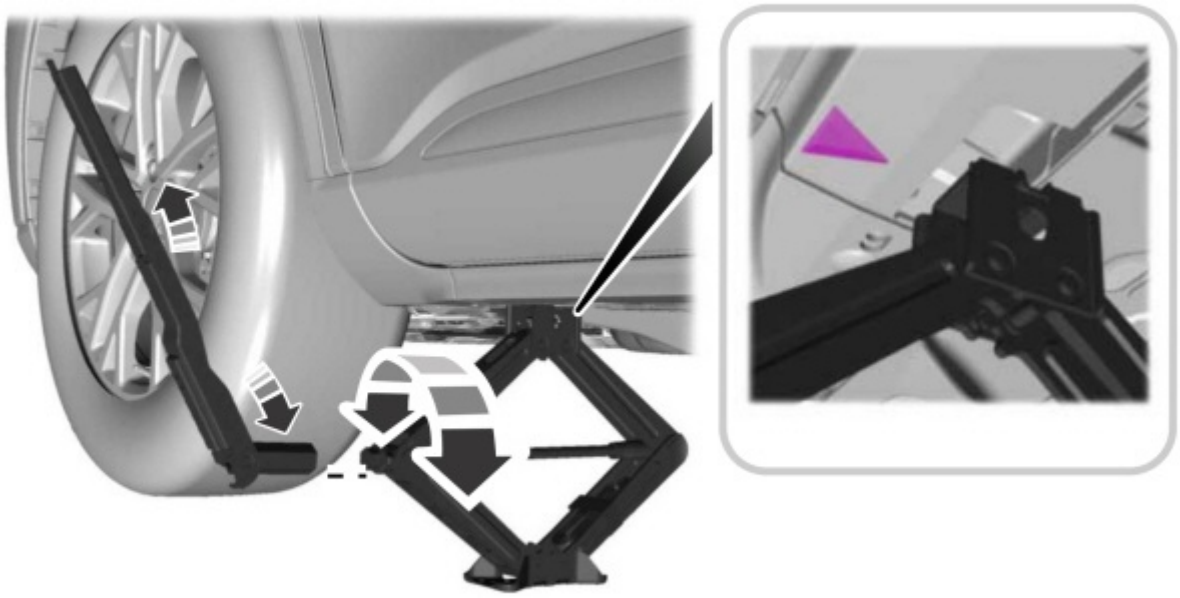
WARNING: Never place anything between the vehicle jack and the ground.

WARNING: Never place anything between the vehicle jack and your vehicle.

11. The vehicle jacking points shown here are also depicted on the warning label on the jack. Small arrow-shaped marks on the vehicle sills show the location of the jacking points.



12. Turn the wrench clockwise to raise the vehicle until the flat tire is completely off the ground.



13. Remove the wheel nuts with the wheel nut wrench.

Note: For vehicles with full wheel covers with exposed wheel nuts, remove the wheel nuts prior to removing the wheel cover or damage to the wheel cover may occur.

14. Replace the flat tire with the spare tire, making sure the valve stem is facing outward. Reinstall the wheel nuts until the wheel is snug against the hub. Do not fully tighten the wheel nuts until the wheel has been lowered.

15. Lower the wheel by turning the jack handle counterclockwise.

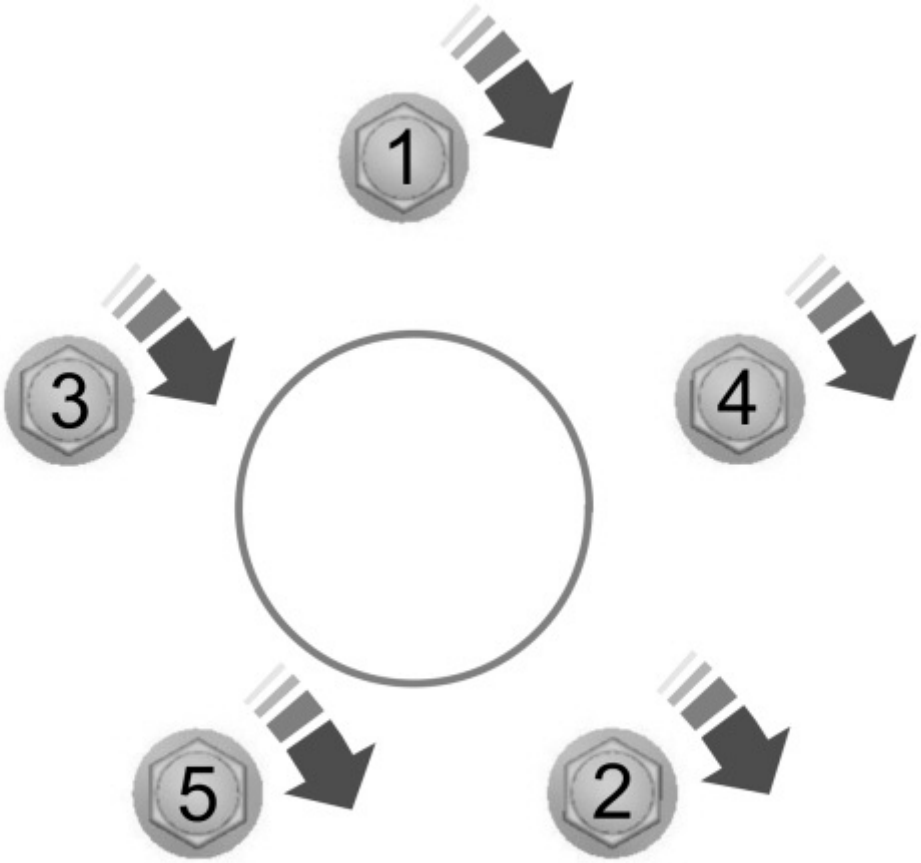
16. Remove the jack and fully tighten the wheel nuts in the order shown.

WARNING: Make sure there is no grease or oil on the threads or the surface between the wheel studs and the wheel nuts. This can cause the wheel nuts to loosen while driving.

WARNING: Only use the spare wheel and tire assembly provided as original equipment with your vehicle.

WARNING: When you install a wheel, remove any corrosion, dirt or foreign materials present on the mounting surfaces of the wheel or the surface of the wheel hub, brake drum or brake disc that contacts the wheel. Make sure to secure any fasteners that attach the rotor to the hub so they do not interfere with the mounting surfaces of the wheel. Installing wheels without following these steps can cause the wheel nuts to loosen and the wheel to come off while your vehicle is in motion, resulting in loss of vehicle control, personal injury or death.

WARNING: Have the wheel nuts checked for tightness and the tire pressure checked as soon as possible.



Stowing the flat tire

1. To store the jack kit on Non Plug-in or Full Hybrid Electric Vehicles, fold the jack and wrench handle and engage it to the bracket of the jack base using the wheel nut wrench pin.

Note: To store the jack and wrench on Plug-in and Full Hybrid Electric Vehicles, fold the jack and wrench into the closed position, and place the wrench into the storage compartment. Position the jack assembly into the closed position and make sure the jack is fastened securely before you drive.

2. When attaching the folded wrench on the jack, swing the wrench upward and adjust the jack height until the wrench hook engages the hole on the jack. Tighten the hex nut clockwise until secure.



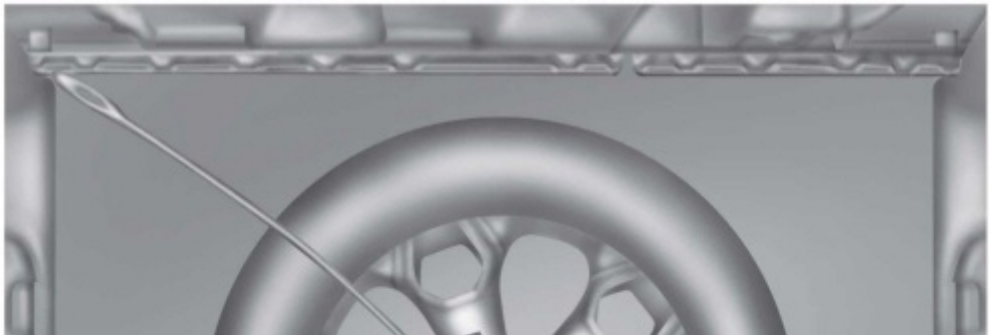
3. Re-position the jack kit assembly into the original vehicle position and secure with the plastic wing nut. Make sure the jack is fastened securely before you drive.

4. Unblock the wheels.

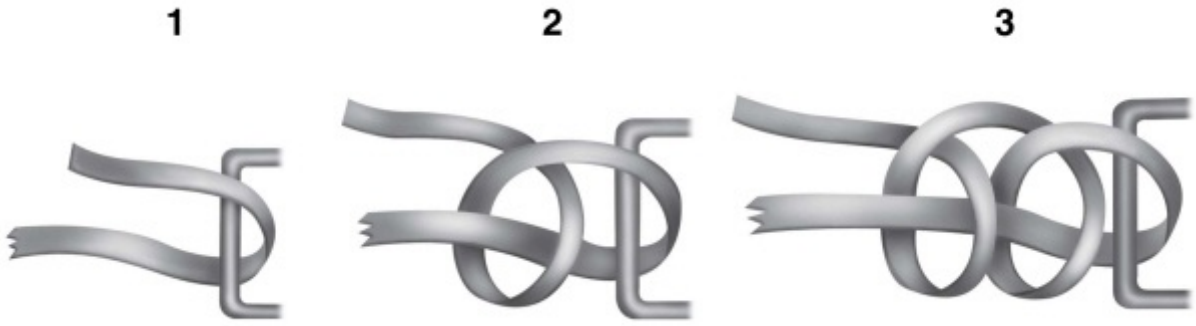
5. Stow the flat tire on the floor in the cargo area. Secure with the flat tire retainer strap by following the next steps:



6. Locate the cargo tie-down near the seatback. Push the loop of the retainer strap through the tie-down. Thread the non-loop end through the loop.



7. Weave the retainer strap through the wheel openings.
8. Locate the front cargo tie-down at the opposite corner of the cargo area to the tie-down used in Step 6. Thread the retainer strap through the tie-down and pull tight.
9. Secure by tying a 2-half hitch knot.



Wheel Nuts

WARNING: When you install a wheel, remove any corrosion, dirt or foreign materials present on the mounting surfaces of the wheel or the surface of the wheel hub, brake drum or brake disc that contacts the wheel. Make sure to secure any fasteners that attach the rotor to the hub so they do not interfere with the mounting surfaces of the wheel. Installing wheels without following these steps can cause the wheel nuts to loosen and the wheel to come off while your vehicle is in motion, resulting in loss of vehicle control, personal injury or death.

Bolt size	lb.ft (Nm)
M12 x 1.5	100 lb.ft (135 Nm)

*Torque specifications are for nut and bolt threads free of dirt and rust. Use only Ford recommended replacement fasteners.
Retighten the wheel nuts to the specified torque within 100 mi (160 km) after any wheel disturbance (such as tire rotation, changing a flat tire, wheel removal).



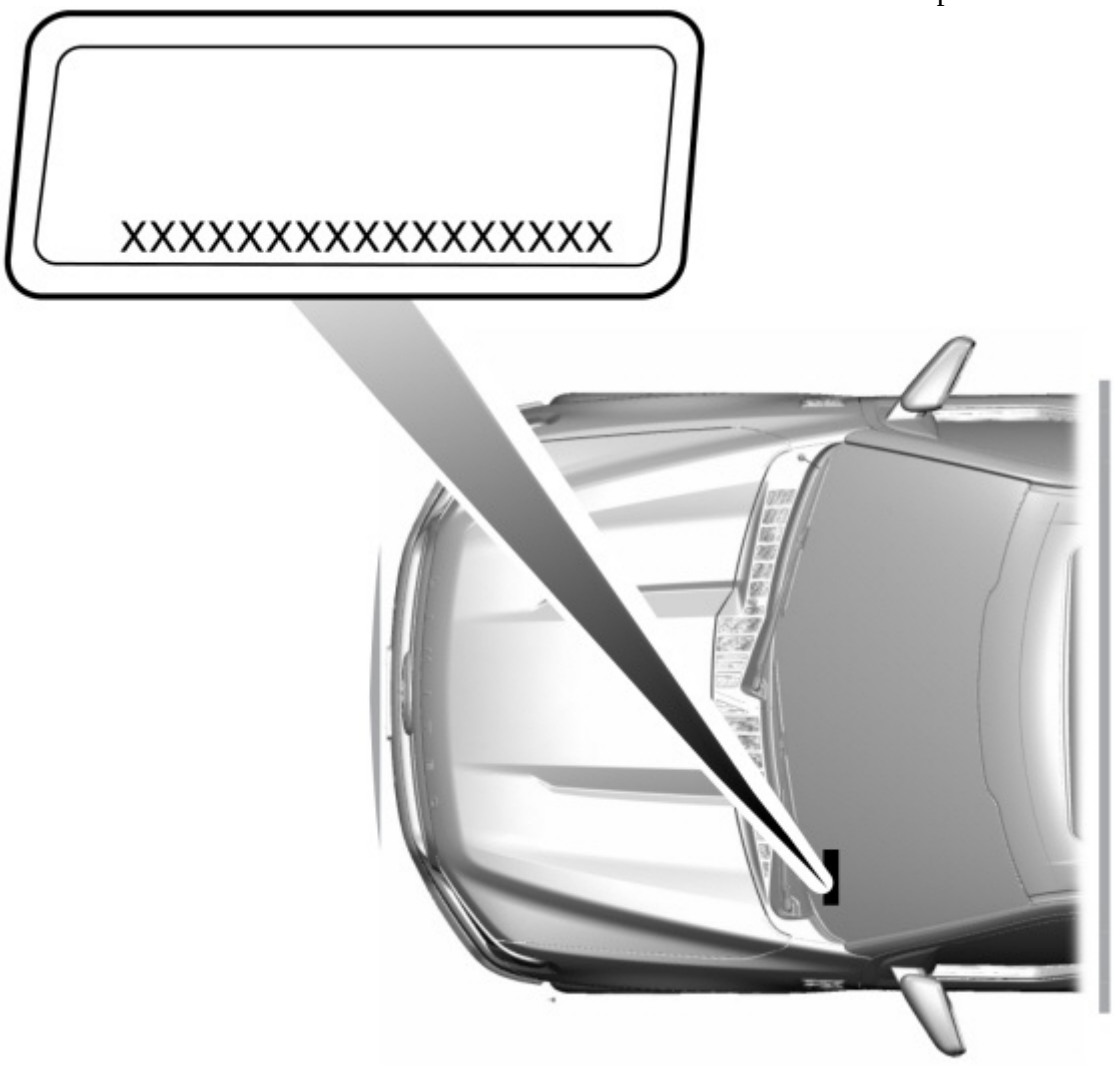
A. Wheel pilot bore.

Inspect the wheel pilot bore and mounting surface prior to installation.
Remove any visible corrosion or loose particles.

Vehicle Identification

Locating the Vehicle Identification Number

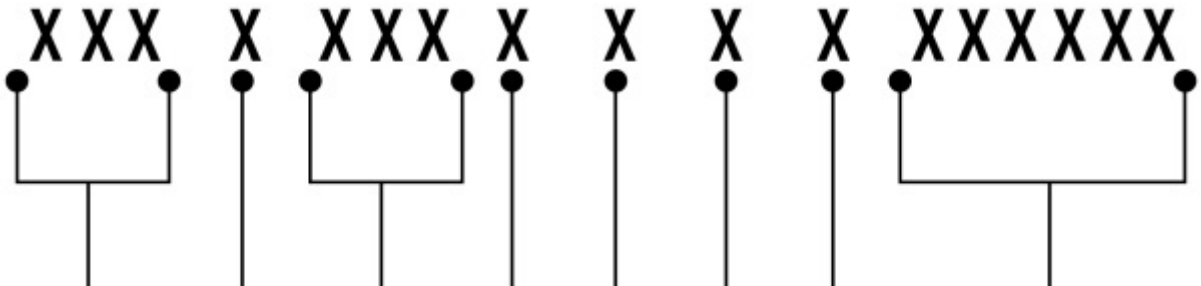
The vehicle identification number is on the left-hand side of the instrument panel.



Note: In the illustration, XXXX is representative of your vehicle identification number.

Vehicle Identification Number Overview

The vehicle identification number contains the following information:

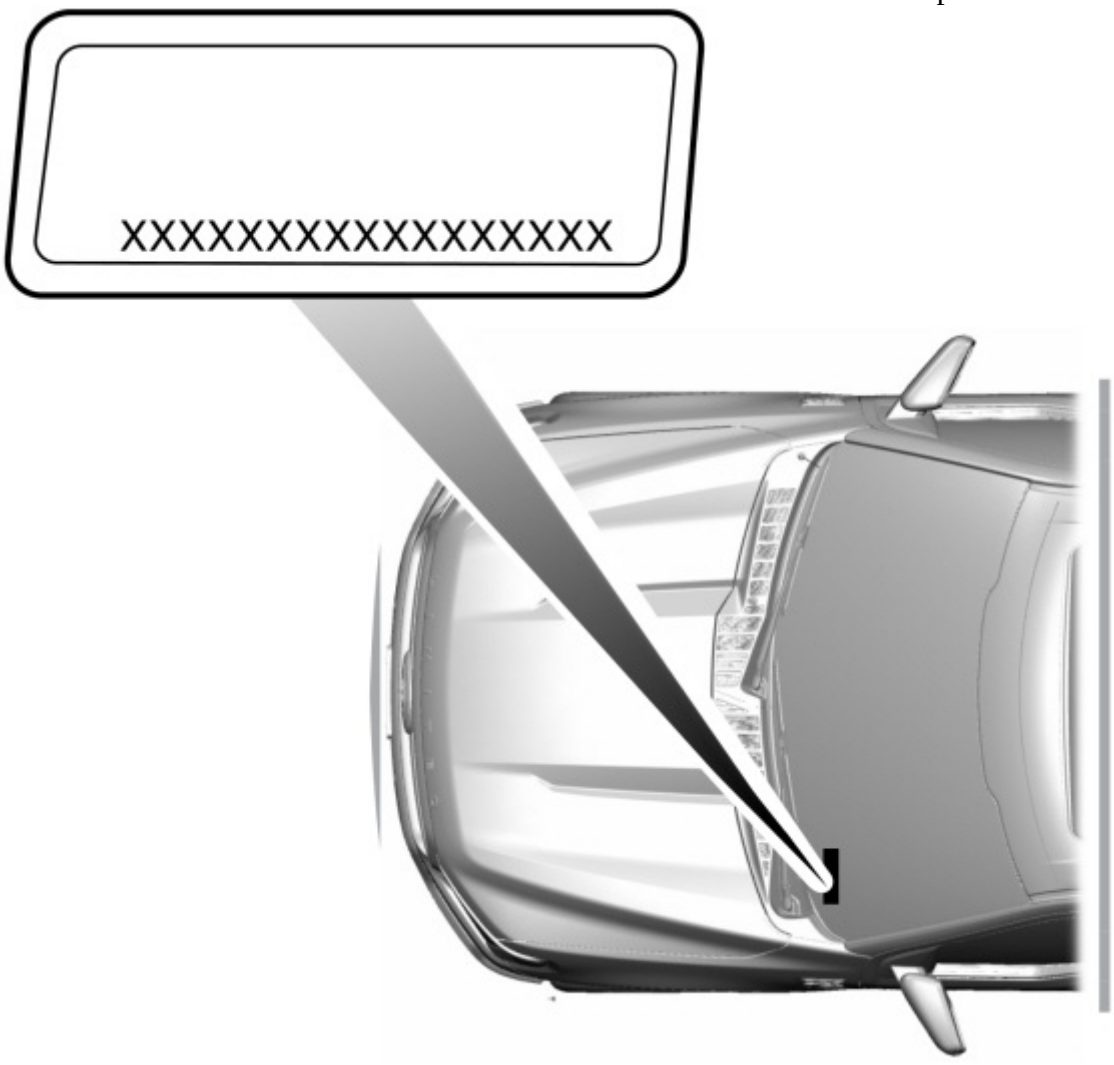


A Image not found or type unknown World manufacturer identifier.
B Image not found or type unknown Brake system, gross vehicle weight rating, restraint devices and their locations.
C Image not found or type unknown Make, vehicle line, series, body type.
D Image not found or type unknown Engine or motor type.
E Image not found or type unknown Check digit.
F Image not found or type unknown Model year.
G Image not found or type unknown Assembly plant.
H Image not found or type unknown Production sequence number.

Vehicle Identification Number

Locating the Vehicle Identification Number

The vehicle identification number is on the left-hand side of the instrument panel.



Note: In the illustration, XXXX is representative of your vehicle identification number.

Vehicle Identification Number Overview

The vehicle identification number contains the following information:

XXX X XXX X X X X XXXXXX

A World manufacturer identifier.
B Brake system, gross vehicle weight rating, restraint devices and their locations.
C Make, vehicle line, series, body type.
D Engine or motor type.
E Check digit.
F Model year.
G Assembly plant.
H Production sequence number.

Connected Vehicle

What Is a Connected Vehicle

A connected vehicle has technology that allows your vehicle to connect to a mobile network and for you to access a range of features. When used in conjunction with the Lincoln app, it could allow you to monitor and control your vehicle further, for example checking the tire pressures and the vehicle location. For additional information, refer to the local Lincoln website.

Connected Vehicle Requirements

Connected service and related feature functionality requires a compatible vehicle network.
Some remote features require additional service activation. Log in to your Lincoln account for details. Some restrictions, third party terms and message or data rates may apply.

Connected Vehicle Limitations

Evolving technology, cellular networks, or regulations could affect functionality and availability, or continued provision of some features. These changes could even stop some features from functioning.

What Is the Modem

 The modem allows access to a range of features built into your vehicle.

Enabling and Disabling the Modem

1. From the settings menu, press Connectivity.
2. Press Connected Vehicle Features.
3. Switch vehicle connectivity on or off.

Connecting the Lincoln App to the Modem

1. Make sure that the modem is enabled using the vehicle settings menu.
2. Open the Lincoln app on your device and log in.
3. Add your vehicle or select your vehicle if already added.
4. Select the option to activate your vehicle.
5. Make sure that the name on the screen matches the name shown in your Lincoln account.
6. Confirm that your Lincoln account is connected to the modem.

Note: Some connected vehicle services are subscription-based and may require activation through your Lincoln app. Go to your Lincoln app for more information.

Connecting the Vehicle to a Wi-Fi Network

1. From the settings menu, press Connectivity.
2. Press Wi-Fi.
3. Switch Wi-Fi on.
4. Press View Available Networks.
5. Select an available Wi-Fi network.

Note: Enter the network password to connect to a secure network.

Connected Vehicle Settings

You can adjust several settings on the touchscreen under the connected vehicle features menu, such as:

- Vehicle connectivity.
- Share vehicle data.
- Share vehicle location.
- Share driving data.

Note: Depending on your vehicle, different options may be available.
Note: Editing connectivity settings could result in some features not operating correctly or at all. When you edit connectivity settings, pop-up messages may appear to notify you that services will not work without that setting. If you switch a feature on, pop-up messages could appear informing you of the settings that will be turned on. Some features, for example driver assistance features, use map data. We recommend having all connected vehicle settings enabled to allow the map content to be updated to the latest version.

 Press the button next to a menu option for more information.

Connected Vehicle – Frequently Asked Questions

Why is my Lincoln app not connecting to my vehicle?

- The modem is not enabled. Switch vehicle connectivity on.

- The network signal is weak. Move your vehicle closer to a place where the network signal is not obstructed.
- The modem or gateway may need to be reset. Reboot the touchscreen to reset the modem or gateway. See **Rebooting the Center Display**.

Why can I not connect to a Wi-Fi network?

- You entered the wrong network password. Enter the correct password.
- The network signal is weak. Move your vehicle closer to the Wi-Fi router or to a place where the network signal is not obstructed.
- There are multiple access points in range with the same network name. Choose a unique name for your network. Do not use the default name unless it contains a unique identifier, for example, as part of the MAC address.

Why does the Wi-Fi connection disconnect after successful connection?

- The network signal is weak. Move your vehicle closer to the Wi-Fi router or to a place where the network signal is not obstructed.

What can I do if I am close to a Wi-Fi router but the network signal strength is weak?

- If your vehicle has a heated windshield, position your vehicle so that the windshield is not facing the Wi-Fi router.

- If your vehicle has metallic tinting on the windows but not on the windshield, position your vehicle so that the windshield is facing the Wi-Fi router or open the windows that are facing the router.
- If your vehicle has metallic tinting on the windows and the windshield, open the windows that are facing the router.
- If your vehicle is in a garage and you have the garage door closed, open the garage door as it could block the signal.

Why can I not see a network I expect to see in the list of available networks?

- The network is hidden. Make the network visible and try again, or manually add a network in the Wi-Fi settings menu.
- Some network security types are not supported, for example WEP.

Why do software downloads take too long?

- The network signal is weak. Move your vehicle closer to the Wi-Fi router or to a place where the network signal is not obstructed.
- Wi-Fi network is in high demand or has a slow Internet connection. Use a more reliable Wi-Fi network.

Why does the software not update when the system seems to connect to a Wi-Fi network and the signal strength is excellent?

- No software update is available at this time.
- Select automatic updates option in the settings menu to enable automatic software update or contact an authorized dealer.
- There could be a connection problem. Test the network using another device.

Why is a cloud-based feature not connecting to my vehicle?

- The modem or gateway may need to be reset. Reboot the touchscreen to reset the modem or gateway. See **Rebooting the Center Display**.

Connecting the Vehicle to a Mobile Network

What Is the Modem

 The modem allows access to a range of features built into your vehicle.

Enabling and Disabling the Modem

1. From the settings menu, press Connectivity.
2. Press Connected Vehicle Features.
3. Switch vehicle connectivity on or off.

Connecting the Lincoln App to the Modem

1. Make sure that the modem is enabled using the vehicle settings menu.
2. Open the Lincoln app on your device and log in.
3. Add your vehicle or select your vehicle if already added.
4. Select the option to activate your vehicle.
5. Make sure that the name on the screen matches the name shown in your Lincoln account.
6. Confirm that your Lincoln account is connected to the modem.

Note: Some connected vehicle services are subscription-based and may require activation through your Lincoln app. Go to your Lincoln app for more information.

Connected Vehicle – Troubleshooting

Connected Vehicle – Frequently Asked Questions

Why is my Lincoln app not connecting to my vehicle?

- The modem is not enabled. Switch vehicle connectivity on.
- The network signal is weak. Move your vehicle closer to a place where the network signal is not obstructed.
- The modem or gateway may need to be reset. Reboot the touchscreen to reset the modem or gateway. See **Rebooting the Center Display**.

Why can I not connect to a Wi-Fi network?

- You entered the wrong network password. Enter the correct password.
- The network signal is weak. Move your vehicle closer to the Wi-Fi router or to a place where the network signal is not obstructed.
- There are multiple access points in range with the same network name. Choose a unique name for your network. Do not use the default name unless it contains a unique identifier, for example, as part of the MAC address.

Why does the Wi-Fi connection disconnect after successful connection?

- The network signal is weak. Move your vehicle closer to the Wi-Fi router or to a place where the network signal is not obstructed.

What can I do if I am close to a Wi-Fi router but the network signal strength is weak?

- If your vehicle has a heated windshield, position your vehicle so that the windshield is not facing the Wi-Fi router.

- If your vehicle has metallic tinting on the windows but not on the windshield, position your vehicle so that the windshield is facing the Wi-Fi router or open the windows that are facing the router.
- If your vehicle has metallic tinting on the windows and the windshield, open the windows that are facing the router.
- If your vehicle is in a garage and you have the garage door closed, open the garage door as it could block the signal.

Why can I not see a network I expect to see in the list of available networks?

- The network is hidden. Make the network visible and try again, or manually add a network in the Wi-Fi settings menu.
- Some network security types are not supported, for example WEP.

Why do software downloads take too long?

- The network signal is weak. Move your vehicle closer to the Wi-Fi router or to a place where the network signal is not obstructed.
- Wi-Fi network is in high demand or has a slow Internet connection. Use a more reliable Wi-Fi network.

Why does the software not update when the system seems to connect to a Wi-Fi network and the signal strength is excellent?

- No software update is available at this time.
- Select automatic updates option in the settings menu to enable automatic software update or contact an authorized dealer.
- There could be a connection problem. Test the network using another device.

Why is a cloud-based feature not connecting to my vehicle?

- The modem or gateway may need to be reset. Reboot the touchscreen to reset the modem or gateway. See **Rebooting the Center Display**.

Vehicle Hotspot

Setting Up a Vehicle Hotspot

With a data plan, your hotspot can provide devices in and around your vehicle with Wi-Fi data.
Note: A mobile device is required to complete hotspot setup.

1. From the settings menu, press Vehicle Hotspot. See **Center Display**.
2. Press Settings.
3. Press Show Password.
4. Connect your device to the vehicle hotspot by selecting the hotspot from the list of Wi-Fi Networks.
5. When prompted, enter the password.

Activating a Trial or Purchasing a Data Plan

1. Connect a device to your vehicle hotspot. The vehicle network carrier's service activation website opens on your device.

Note: If the website does not open, open a new website and it redirects to the vehicle network carrier's website.

2. Follow the instructions on the carrier portal to purchase a plan or start a trial.

Note: Visit the vehicle network carrier's website to purchase more data.
Note: Hotspot services are subject to your vehicle network carrier agreement, coverage and availability.

Vehicle Hotspot Settings

You can change the following in the vehicle hotspot settings menu:

- Vehicle hotspot name or password.
- Vehicle hotspot frequency.

Changing the Vehicle Hotspot Name or Password
The hotspot information can only be updated once you activate the hotspot.

1. From the settings menu, press Vehicle Hotspot. See **Center Display**.
2. Press Settings.
3. Press Edit.
4. Press Change Network Name.
5. Enter your required network name.
6. Press enter to save the network name.
7. Press Change Password.
8. Enter your required password.
9. Press enter to save the password.

Changing the Vehicle Hotspot Frequency

The vehicle hotspot frequency band is selectable depending upon your device capabilities. You cannot connect your device to the vehicle hotspot if it does not support the selected frequency band.

1. From the settings menu, press Vehicle Hotspot. See **Center Display**.
2. Press Settings.
3. Press Edit.
4. Press Change Frequency Band.
5. Select a frequency.

Vehicle Hotspot – Frequently Asked Questions

Why can I not see the vehicle hotspot name when I search for Wi-Fi networks on my cell phone or other device?

- Make sure the vehicle hotspot visibility is on.
- Check what frequency the hotspot is transmitting in the vehicle hotspot settings menu. If the frequency is 5 GHz and your device cannot see the network, change the frequency to 2.4 GHz.
- The system does not provide a vehicle hotspot at this time.

What should I do if my phone shows "No internet connection" when connecting to the vehicle hotspot?

- Check the status of your data plan.
- If your subscription is active, try moving the vehicle to an open area to improve reception.

What should I do if my phone shows "This network is operating on Wi-Fi channels in use by several other nearby networks" when connecting to the vehicle hotspot?

- Restart your vehicle.
- Move your vehicle to a different location.
- In the vehicle hotspot settings, switch between the 2.4 GHz and 5 GHz frequency.

How do I remove the vehicle from the vehicle network carrier's account?

- Contact your vehicle network carrier.

Vehicle Hotspot – Troubleshooting

Vehicle Hotspot – Frequently Asked Questions

Why can I not see the vehicle hotspot name when I search for Wi-Fi networks on my cell phone or other device?

- Make sure the vehicle hotspot visibility is on.
- Check what frequency the hotspot is transmitting in the vehicle hotspot settings menu. If the frequency is 5 GHz and your device cannot see the network, change the frequency to 2.4 GHz.
- The system does not provide a vehicle hotspot at this time.

What should I do if my phone shows "No internet connection" when connecting to the vehicle hotspot?

- Check the status of your data plan.
- If your subscription is active, try moving the vehicle to an open area to improve reception.

What should I do if my phone shows "This network is operating on Wi-Fi channels in use by several other nearby networks" when connecting to the vehicle hotspot?

- Restart your vehicle.
- Move your vehicle to a different location.
- In the vehicle hotspot settings, switch between the 2.4 GHz and 5 GHz frequency.

How do I remove the vehicle from the vehicle network carrier's account?

- Contact your vehicle network carrier.

Audio System

Audio System Precautions

WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Listening to loud audio for long periods of time could damage your hearing.

Switching the Audio Unit On and Off

Press the button on the volume control.

Selecting the Audio Source

Press Sources on the touchscreen to open the media source menu.
Note: To select the USB source from the list of options, plug your device into the data transfer USB port.

Media Control Buttons

Press to play a track. Press again to pause the track.
Note: Not all sources can be paused.
Note: In case the source is not paused audio is muted.

Press the button to skip to the next track.
Press and hold the button to fast forward through the track.

Press the button once to return to the beginning of a track. Repeatedly press the button to return to previous tracks.
Press and hold the button to fast rewind through the track.

Press the button on the touchscreen to switch shuffle mode on or off.

Note: Not all sources have shuffle mode.

Press the button on the touchscreen to change repeat mode.

Note: Not all sources have repeat mode.

Adjusting the Volume



E391071

Turn to adjust the volume.

Some vehicles may be able to adjust the volume using buttons on the steering wheel.

Setting a Memory Preset

Your vehicle comes with set of presets by default that you cannot delete, but you can always save your own favorites over them.

1. Select a station or channel.
2. Press and hold one of the existing presets on the list to replace it with the current station or channel.

Note: The audio mutes briefly while the system saves the preset and returns once it is stored.

Setting the Number of Preset Pages

Depending on your vehicle options, you can adjust the number of preset pages up to six pages.

1. From the Settings menu, press Radio. See **Center Display**.

2. Press Preset pages.
3. Select the desired number of pages from the drop down option.

Note: You can store a maximum of thirty presets depending on the number of preset pages you select.

Muting the Audio

 Press the button on the steering wheel to mute the audio.

 Press to mute the signal. Press again to restore the signal.

Adjusting the Sound Settings

To access the sound settings menu:

1. From the settings menu, press Sound.

From the menu, you can adjust the following:

- Tone settings.
- Balance and fade.
- Speed compensated volume.
- Volume settings.
- Sound mode/Occupancy mode

Note: Depending on your vehicle options, not all settings are available.

Setting the Clock and Date

1. From the settings menu, press Clock. See **Center Display**.
2. Set the time.

Note: The AM and PM options are not available if 24-hour mode is on.
Switching Automatic Time Updates On and Off

1. From the settings menu, press Clock. See **Center Display**.
2. Switch Auto Time Update on or off

AM/FM Radio Limitations

The further you travel from an AM or FM station, the weaker the signal and the weaker the reception. Hills, mountains, tall buildings, bridges, tunnels, freeway overpasses, parking garages, dense tree foliage and thunderstorms can interfere with the reception.
When you pass a ground-based broadcast repeating tower, a stronger signal may overtake a weaker one and result in the audio system muting.

Selecting an AM/FM Radio Station

Manually Selecting a Radio Station

 Press the button on the radio tuner to go up the frequency band.

 Press the button on the radio tuner to go down the frequency band.

Using Seek

 Press to seek the next station up the frequency band.

Press and hold to quickly seek up the frequency band.

 Press to seek the next station down the frequency band.

Press and hold to quickly seek down the frequency band.

Switching the Display On and Off

1. Press Settings on the touchscreen.
2. Press Display.
3. Press Calm screen.
4. Press anywhere on the touchscreen to switch the display back on.

Note: The display defaults to on each time you switch your vehicle on.

What Is Digital Radio

HD Radio™ technology is the digital evolution of analog AM/FM radio.
For additional information, visit www.HDRadio.com.
HD Radio Technology is manufactured under license from iBiquity Digital Corporation and foreign patents. HD Radio and the HD and HD Radio logos are proprietary trademarks of XPERI. The vehicle manufacturer and XPERI are not responsible for the content sent using HD Radio technology. Content may be changed, added or deleted at any time at the station owner's discretion.

How Does Digital Radio Work

Your system has a special receiver that allows it to receive digital broadcasts in addition to analog broadcasts. HD1 signifies the main programming status and is available in both analog and digital broadcasts. Other multicast stations are only available digitally and could contain new or different content.
Note: When the system first receives an HD1 station, it plays the station in the analog version until it verifies the station is an HD Radio station. Then it shifts to the digital version.
Note: There is an audio mute delay when switching to an HD2 or HD3 station because the system has to reacquire and decode the digital signal.

Digital Radio Limitations

If you are outside the reception area, the system could not work.
If you are on the fringe of the reception area, the station could mute due to weak signal strength.
Note: If you are listening to HD1, the system changes back to the analog broadcast until the digital broadcast is available again. If you are listening to any other multicast channels, the station mutes and stays muted unless it is able to connect to the digital signal again.
Depending on the station quality, you could hear a slight sound change when the station changes between analog and digital audio.

You cannot access a saved HD station if your vehicle is outside the station’s reception area.

Switching Digital Radio Reception On and Off

1. From the settings menu, press Radio.
2. Switch HD Radio on or off.

Digital Radio Indicators

HD Radio Indicator
The indicator appears when HD Radio is on and you tune to a station broadcasting HD Radio technology.



The color of the indicator changes to indicate the system status.
Gray indicates the system is acquiring a digital station.
Orange indicates digital audio is playing.
Multicast Indicator
The multicast indicator appears if the current station is broadcasting multiple digital broadcasts. The highlighted numbers indicate additional digital channels available.
Note: For stations that have more than one HD multicast, the HD indicator and radio text appears as a button. Press the button to cycle through all of the HD stations on that specific frequency.

What Is Satellite Radio

Your factory-installed SiriusXM radio system includes a limited subscription term, which begins on the date of sale or lease of your vehicle. See an authorized dealer for availability.
For additional information about extended subscription terms, visit www.SiriusXM.com in the United States, www.SiriusXM.ca in Canada, or call SiriusXM at 1-888-539-7474.
Note: SiriusXM reserves the unrestricted right to change, rearrange, add or delete programming including canceling, moving or adding particular channels, and its prices, at any time, with or without notice to you. Neither SiriusXM and its affiliates nor Ford Motor Company and its affiliates will be liable to you or any third party for any such modification, suspension or termination.

Satellite Radio Limitations

For optimal reception performance, keep the antenna clear of snow and ice build-up and keep luggage and other material as far away from the antenna as possible. Placing luggage over the antenna may reduce performance. Factory-installed and aftermarket vehicle structures including, but not limited to, roof racks and soft top roofs in a partially open position could reduce reception performance.
Hills, mountains, tall buildings, bridges, tunnels, freeway overpasses, parking garages, dense tree foliage and thunderstorms can interfere with your reception.
When you pass a ground-based broadcast-repeating tower, a stronger signal may overtake a weaker one and could result in the audio system muting. Your display could show an error message to indicate the interference.

Locating the Satellite Radio Identification Number

1. Select SiriusXM as the audio source.
2. Tune to channel 0.

Selecting a Channel

Manually Selecting a Channel


Press the button to find the previous or next available radio channel.
Linear Tuner
The linear tuner is displayed when manually selecting a channel. You can swipe left or right on the linear tuner carousel to navigate through the channel list. Tap on a channel title to listen to it.
Using Direct Tune

1. Press the channel up or down button to open the linear tuner screen.
2. Press Direct Tune to open the number pad.
3. Enter the channel you prefer.

Using Seek

Press either button.
Using the Channel List

1. Press Browse.
2. Select a channel.

Satellite Radio Settings

Subscription
Your subscription status is displayed. You can subscribe or manage your subscription directly from the touchscreen.
SiriusXM Favorites
While you are listening to SiriusXM, you can save favorites by:

- Tapping the currently tuned channel or show logo on the SiriusXM audio screen.
- Tuning to a channel or show you want to save as a favorite. Navigate to the SiriusXM Favorites screen and press the Add Current button. The currently tuned channel or show is saved as a favorite.

- Saving a radio preset. This saves the currently tuned SiriusXM channel or show as a favorite

Note: Requires a trial or active subscription to use.
Listening History
Listening history is a list of recently listened to SiriusXM content. You can view, manage and reset the listening history using the controls on the touchscreen.
Note: Requires a trial or active subscription to use.
Help and Support
You can contact SiriusXM Customer Care directly from the operating system and view information required to manage your SiriusXM account.

Setting an Alert

 Set a notification for the current song, artist, or sports team by pressing the icon. The system alerts you when it plays again on any channel. Selecting this button allows you to enable and edit alerts.
Note: Notifications can be switched on or off and edited in the satellite radio settings.

Audio System – Information Messages

Satellite Radio Troubleshooting

Error Message	Potential Effects	Recommended Action
Connectivity Disabled	Internet streaming and On Demand shows are unavailable and some SiriusXM features are disabled.	Internet connectivity is turned off. See **Connected Vehicle**.
No Internet	Audio system may mute. Switch to Satellite button may be displayed on the SiriusXM audio screen if the channel is also available via satellite.	SYNC attempts to connect. See **Satellite Radio Limitations**. Switch to a satellite connection for the current channel if the option is available.
No Satellite Signal	Audio system may mute. Switch to Internet button may be displayed on the SiriusXM audio screen if the channel is also available via streaming.	Antenna may be obstructed or satellite reception is weak in your location. See **Satellite Radio Limitations**. Switch to an internet connection for the current channel if the option is available.
Slow Network Connection	Audio system may mute while the audio attempts to load.	Allow some time for the audio to load or tune to a different channel.

Error Message	Potential Effects	Recommended Action
Channel Unavailable	Audio system may mute. Radio may tune to a different channel.	A temporary update may be in progress. Allow some time before retrying to tune to the channel. If the issue continues, the channel may no longer be available.
Episode Unavailable	Audio system may mute. Radio may tune to a different channel.	A temporary update may be in progress. Allow some time before retrying to play the episode. If the issue continues, the episode may no longer be available.
Something went wrong	Audio system may mute. Radio may tune to a different channel.	Allow some time and retry the action.
Subscribe to Listen	Cannot listen to selected content. Content may appear grayed out and some features may be disabled.	Your subscription has expired or you have not yet subscribed for access to the listed content. Navigate to Subscription under the Satellite Radio Settings menu. If you have an active subscription which includes the listed channel or content and you see this error, you may need to refresh your radio. To refresh your SiriusXM radio, visit www.siriusxm.com/refresh in the US, or www.siriusxm.ca/refresh in Canada. You may need to provide your SiriusXM Radio identification number. See **Locating the Satellite Radio Identification Number**.
Upgrade to Listen	Cannot listen to selected content. Content may appear grayed out and some features may be disabled.	Your subscription does not include access to the listed content. You may need to upgrade your subscription. Navigate to Subscription under the Satellite Radio Settings menu. If you have an active subscription which includes the listed channel or content and you see this error, you may need to refresh your radio. To refresh your SiriusXM radio, visit www.siriusxm.com/refresh in the US, or www.siriusxm.ca/refresh in Canada. You may need to provide your SiriusXM Radio identification number. See **Locating the Satellite Radio Identification Number**.
Location Restricted Content	Audio may mute. Not available in your location or Unable to determine your location may be displayed.	Content is not available in your location or SiriusXM is unable to determine your location. Tuning to a different channel may resolve the issue.
Channel Blocked	Audio may mute. Radio may tune to a different channel.	The Block Explicit Content filter is turned on. Navigate to Listener Settings under the Satellite Radio Settings menu to access the Block Explicit Content filter. Navigate to Listener Settings. See **Satellite Radio Settings**.
Antenna Problem or Hardware Problem	Audio may mute. Access to SiriusXM features may be unavailable.	If issue persists, you may need to visit an authorized dealer for service.
SiriusXM Updating...	Audio may mute.	Allow SiriusXM some time to complete updating.

Error Message	Potential Effects	Recommended Action
Loading...	Audio may mute. Content may be temporarily unavailable while loading.	No action necessary. If loading time is longer than usual, See **Satellite Radio Settings**.
SiriusXM Loading...	Audio may mute. Content and controls may be temporarily unavailable.	No action necessary. Allow SiriusXM some time to finish loading.

AM/FM Radio

AM/FM Radio Limitations

The further you travel from an AM or FM station, the weaker the signal and the weaker the reception.
Hills, mountains, tall buildings, bridges, tunnels, freeway overpasses, parking garages, dense tree foliage and thunderstorms can interfere with the reception.
When you pass a ground-based broadcast repeating tower, a stronger signal may overtake a weaker one and result in the audio system muting.

Selecting an AM/FM Radio Station

Manually Selecting a Radio Station

 Press the button on the radio tuner to go up the frequency band.

 Press the button on the radio tuner to go down the frequency band.

Using Seek

 Press to seek the next station up the frequency band.
Press and hold to quickly seek up the frequency band.

 Press to seek the next station down the frequency band.
Press and hold to quickly seek down the frequency band.

Digital Radio (If Equipped)

What Is Digital Radio

HD Radio™ technology is the digital evolution of analog AM/FM radio.
For additional information, visit www.HDRadio.com.
HD Radio Technology is manufactured under license from iBiquity Digital Corporation and foreign patents. HD Radio and the HD and HD Radio logos are proprietary trademarks of XPERI. The vehicle manufacturer and XPERI are not responsible for the content sent using HD Radio technology. Content may be changed, added or deleted at any time at the station owner's discretion.

How Does Digital Radio Work

Your system has a special receiver that allows it to receive digital broadcasts in addition to analog broadcasts. HD1 signifies the main programming status and is available in both analog and digital broadcasts. Other multicast stations are only available digitally and could contain new or different content.
Note: When the system first receives an HD1 station, it plays the station in the analog version until it verifies the station is an HD Radio station. Then it shifts to the digital version.
Note: There is an audio mute delay when switching to an HD2 or HD3 station because the system has to reacquire and decode the digital signal.

Digital Radio Limitations

If you are outside the reception area, the system could not work.
If you are on the fringe of the reception area, the station could mute due to weak signal strength.
Note: If you are listening to HD1, the system changes back to the analog broadcast until the digital broadcast is available again. If you are listening to any other multicast channels, the station mutes and stays muted unless it is able to connect to the digital signal again.
Depending on the station quality, you could hear a slight sound change when the station changes between analog and digital audio.
You cannot access a saved HD station if your vehicle is outside the station’s reception area.

Switching Digital Radio Reception On and Off

1. From the settings menu, press Radio.
2. Switch HD Radio on or off.

Digital Radio Indicators

HD Radio Indicator
The indicator appears when HD Radio is on and you tune to a station broadcasting HD Radio technology.



The color of the indicator changes to indicate the system status.
Gray indicates the system is acquiring a digital station.
Orange indicates digital audio is playing.
Multicast Indicator

The multicast indicator appears if the current station is broadcasting multiple digital broadcasts. The highlighted numbers indicate additional digital channels available.
Note: For stations that have more than one HD multicast, the HD indicator and radio text appears as a button. Press the button to cycle through all of the HD stations on that specific frequency.

Satellite Radio (If Equipped)

What Is Satellite Radio

Your factory-installed SiriusXM radio system includes a limited subscription term, which begins on the date of sale or lease of your vehicle. See an authorized dealer for availability.
For additional information about extended subscription terms, visit www.SiriusXM.com in the United States, www.SiriusXM.ca in Canada, or call SiriusXM at 1-888-539-7474.
Note: SiriusXM reserves the unrestricted right to change, rearrange, add or delete programming including canceling, moving or adding particular channels, and its prices, at any time, with or without notice to you. Neither SiriusXM and its affiliates nor Ford Motor Company and its affiliates will be liable to you or any third party for any such modification, suspension or termination.

Satellite Radio Limitations

For optimal reception performance, keep the antenna clear of snow and ice build-up and keep luggage and other material as far away from the antenna as possible. Placing luggage over the antenna may reduce performance. Factory-installed and aftermarket vehicle structures including, but not limited to, roof racks and soft top roofs in a partially open position could reduce reception performance.
Hills, mountains, tall buildings, bridges, tunnels, freeway overpasses, parking garages, dense tree foliage and thunderstorms can interfere with your reception.
When you pass a ground-based broadcast-repeating tower, a stronger signal may overtake a weaker one and could result in the audio system muting. Your display could show an error message to indicate the interference.

Locating the Satellite Radio Identification Number

1. Select SiriusXM as the audio source.
2. Tune to channel 0.

Selecting a Channel

Manually Selecting a Channel
< Ch Ch > Press the button to find the previous or next available radio channel.
Linear Tuner
The linear tuner is displayed when manually selecting a channel. You can swipe left or right on the linear tuner carousel to navigate through the channel list. Tap on a channel title to listen to it.
Using Direct Tune

1. Press the channel up or down button to open the linear tuner screen.
2. Press Direct Tune to open the number pad.

3. Enter the channel you prefer.

Using Seek
 Press either button.
Using the Channel List

1. Press Browse.
2. Select a channel.

Satellite Radio Settings

Subscription
Your subscription status is displayed. You can subscribe or manage your subscription directly from the touchscreen.
SiriusXM Favorites
While you are listening to SiriusXM, you can save favorites by:

- Tapping the currently tuned channel or show logo on the SiriusXM audio screen.
- Tuning to a channel or show you want to save as a favorite. Navigate to the SiriusXM Favorites screen and press the Add Current button. The currently tuned channel or show is saved as a favorite.
- Saving a radio preset. This saves the currently tuned SiriusXM channel or show as a favorite

Note: Requires a trial or active subscription to use.
Listening History
Listening history is a list of recently listened to SiriusXM content. You can view, manage and reset the listening history using the controls on the touchscreen.
Note: Requires a trial or active subscription to use.
Help and Support
You can contact SiriusXM Customer Care directly from the operating system and view information required to manage your SiriusXM account.

Setting an Alert

 Set a notification for the current song, artist, or sports team by pressing the icon. The system alerts you when it plays again on any channel. Selecting this button allows you to enable and edit alerts.
Note: Notifications can be switched on or off and edited in the satellite radio settings.

Audio System – Troubleshooting (If Equipped)

Audio System – Information Messages

Satellite Radio Troubleshooting

Error Message	Potential Effects	Recommended Action

Connectivity Disabled	Internet streaming and On Demand shows are unavailable and some SiriusXM features are disabled.	Internet connectivity is turned off. See **Connected Vehicle**.
No Internet	Audio system may mute. Switch to Satellite button may be displayed on the SiriusXM audio screen if the channel is also available via satellite.	SYNC attempts to connect. See **Satellite Radio Limitations**. Switch to a satellite connection for the current channel if the option is available.
No Satellite Signal	Audio system may mute. Switch to Internet button may be displayed on the SiriusXM audio screen if the channel is also available via streaming.	Antenna may be obstructed or satellite reception is weak in your location. See **Satellite Radio Limitations**. Switch to an internet connection for the current channel if the option is available.
Slow Network Connection	Audio system may mute while the audio attempts to load.	Allow some time for the audio to load or tune to a different channel.
Channel Unavailable	Audio system may mute. Radio may tune to a different channel.	A temporary update may be in progress. Allow some time before retrying to tune to the channel. If the issue continues, the channel may no longer be available.
Episode Unavailable	Audio system may mute. Radio may tune to a different channel.	A temporary update may be in progress. Allow some time before retrying to play the episode. If the issue continues, the episode may no longer be available.
Something went wrong	Audio system may mute. Radio may tune to a different channel.	Allow some time and retry the action.
Subscribe to Listen	Cannot listen to selected content. Content may appear grayed out and some features may be disabled.	Your subscription has expired or you have not yet subscribed for access to the listed content. Navigate to Subscription under the Satellite Radio Settings menu. If you have an active subscription which includes the listed channel or content and you see this error, you may need to refresh your radio. To refresh your SiriusXM radio, visit www.siriusxm.com/refresh in the US, or www.siriusxm.ca/refresh in Canada. You may need to provide your SiriusXM Radio identification number. See **Locating the Satellite Radio Identification Number**.

Upgrade to Listen	Cannot listen to selected content. Content may appear grayed out and some features may be disabled.	Your subscription does not include access to the listed content. You may need to upgrade your subscription. Navigate to Subscription under the Satellite Radio Settings menu. If you have an active subscription which includes the listed channel or content and you see this error, you may need to refresh your radio. To refresh your SiriusXM radio, visit www.siriusxm.com/refresh in the US, or www.siriusxm.ca/refresh in Canada. You may need to provide your SiriusXM Radio identification number. See **Locating the Satellite Radio Identification Number**.
Location Restricted Content	Audio may mute. Not available in your location or Unable to determine your location may be displayed.	Content is not available in your location or SiriusXM is unable to determine your location. Tuning to a different channel may resolve the issue.
Channel Blocked	Audio may mute. Radio may tune to a different channel.	The Block Explicit Content filter is turned on. Navigate to Listener Settings under the Satellite Radio Settings menu to access the Block Explicit Content filter. Navigate to Listener Settings. See **Satellite Radio Settings**.
Antenna Problem or Hardware Problem	Audio may mute. Access to SiriusXM features may be unavailable.	If issue persists, you may need to visit an authorized dealer for service.
SiriusXM Updating...	Audio may mute.	Allow SiriusXM some time to complete updating.
Loading...	Audio may mute. Content may be temporarily unavailable while loading.	No action necessary. If loading time is longer than usual, See **Satellite Radio Settings**.
SiriusXM Loading...	Audio may mute. Content and controls may be temporarily unavailable.	No action necessary. Allow SiriusXM some time to finish loading.

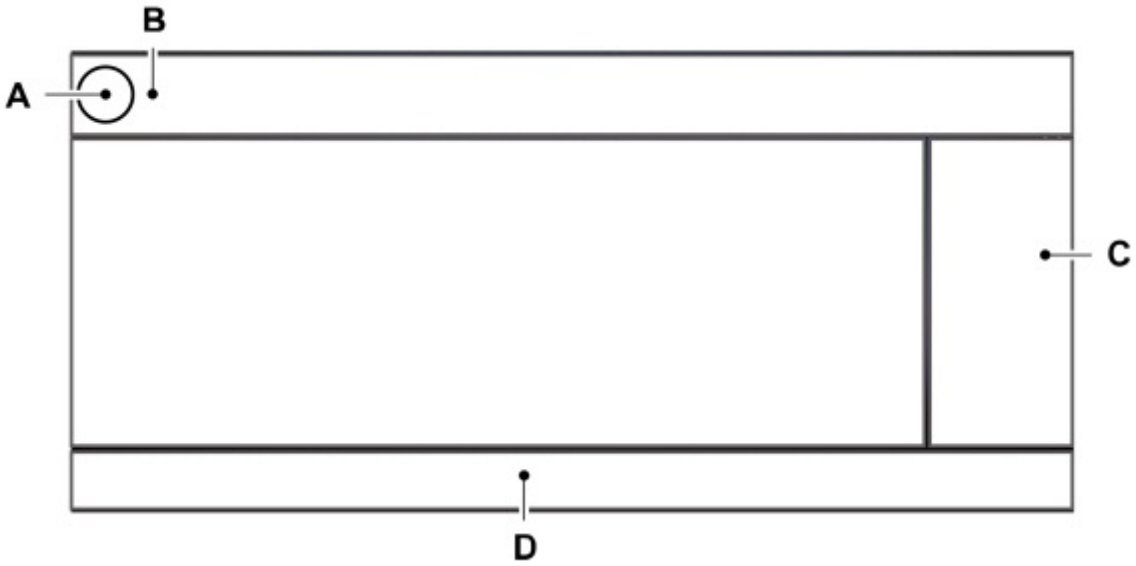
Center Display

Center Display Overview

WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

For your safety, features that are not critical while driving are not available when the vehicle is moving at or above 5 mph (8 km/h).

Note: Illustrations are provided for conceptual understanding only and may appear differently on your vehicle.



A Home screen button. See **Home Screen**.
B Status bar. See **Status Bar**.
C Information on demand screen. See **Information On Demand Screen**.
D Climate control. See **Climate Control**.

Home Screen

Press to open the home screen.
Features, such as navigation, audio and phone, are located in the main portion of the display. The icons located on the side of the display allow you to access other vehicle features and settings.
Press to access the settings menu.
You can change the display language and other measurement units under the General menu.
Press to view features.
Note: The icon may be different depending on your vehicle.
Press to see a list of apps. To open an app, select the app.
If you see this icon next to a menu option, press it for more information.

Status Bar

The status bar appears at the top of the display. The following buttons and icons can appear in the status bar.
Note: Some buttons and icons may not apply to your vehicle or may not appear exactly as shown.
Alexa Built-In
Press to set up Alexa. See **Alexa Built-In**.
Wireless Charging
Wireless charging active.
Device connected and not charging.
Traffic Announcements
Traffic announcements are turned on but are not supported by the selected station.
Traffic announcements are turned on and supported by the selected station but are not active.
Traffic announcements are active.

Note: If no traffic announcement icons are displayed, traffic announcements are turned off.

Vehicle Data

 Wi-Fi available.

 Wi-Fi connected.

 Vehicle data sharing on.

 Vehicle data sharing off.

 Vehicle location sharing on.

 Vehicle data and vehicle location sharing on.

Outside Air Temperature

 Outside air temperature is active.

Audio System

 Audio system muted.

Connected Device

 Cell phone microphone muted.

 Phone call in progress.

 Media player connected using Bluetooth®.

 Cell phone network signal strength.

 Cell phone roaming.

 Text message received.

 Unread email message.

 Automatic crash notification system off.

 Cell phone battery status.

Software Updates

 Press to see details about software updates.

See **Vehicle Software Updates**.

Back Button

 Some screens have a back button in the top corner. Press the button to return to the previous screen.

Information On Demand Screen

The information on demand screen displays cards on the side of the display and allows you to see information from different features.

You can swipe up or down to view a different card.

Note: On some screens, you can swipe a card toward the center of the screen to move the content into the main screen.

Settings

Display Settings

From the display menu you can do the following:

- Switch the calm screen on.
- Manually adjust the screen brightness.
- Set the display mode.

Touchscreen Brightness

To manually adjust the screen brightness, use the plus or minus buttons.

Note: The display brightness is limited if the settings of the instrument panel lighting brightness are set to the highest or lowest setting.

Driver Assistance Menu

To access the driver assistance menu:

1.  Press to open the home screen.
2.  Press to view features.

Note: The icon may be different depending on your vehicle.

3. Press Driver Assistance.

Rebooting the Center Display

You can reboot the center display using the controls on the steering wheel.

1. Simultaneously press and hold the seek forward and audio system power button for 10 seconds.

Voice Interaction

Using Lincoln Personal Assistant

The digital assistant allows you to control vehicle features using conversational requests.
To begin a voice interaction using the wake word, say the selected wake word, then say your command.
 Press the voice interaction button on the steering wheel. A tone sounds before you can say your command.
Note: You may need to enable your vehicle's modem to use certain voice commands. See **Enabling and Disabling the Modem**.
Voice Command Examples
To see examples of what voice commands you can use with different features:

1. From the settings menu, press Lincoln Assistant.
2. Press Voice Command Help.
3. Select a feature.

Lincoln Personal Assistant Settings

To access the settings menu:

1. From the settings menu, press Lincoln Assistant.

From the settings menu you can do the following:

- Switch listen for wake word on or off.
- Set the preferred wake word.
- Switch advanced mode on or off.
- Switch phone confirmation on or off.
- Switch the commands list on or off.
- View the commands help menu.

 Press the button next to a menu option for more information.

Lincoln Personal Assistant – Frequently Asked Questions

Why does the system not understand what I am saying?

- You are speaking too soon. When using the button of the steering wheel, wait for the tone before you speak.

Why does the system not understand the name of a track or artist?

- **Bluetooth®** does not support voice commands. Connect your device to a USB port.
- You are not saying the name exactly as it appears on your device. Say the name of the track or artist exactly as it appears on your device. Spell out any abbreviations in the name.
- The system does not recognize some special characters contained in the name of a song or artist, for example *, - or +. Rename the files on your device or use the touchscreen to select and play the track.

Why does the system not understand the name of a contact in the phonebook on my device and calls the wrong contact?

- You are not saying the name exactly as it appears on your device. Say the first and last name of the contact exactly as it appears on your device. Spell out any abbreviations in the name.
- The name contains special characters, for example *, - or +. Rename the contact on your device or use the touchscreen to select and call the contact.

Why does the system not understand foreign names of contacts in the phonebook on my device?

- The system applies phonetic pronunciation rules of the selected language to the names of contacts in the phonebook on your device. Select the name of the contact on the touchscreen and use the Hear it option to get an idea of how the system expects you to pronounce it.

Why do the system voice prompts and the pronunciation of some words not seem accurate?

- The system uses text-to-speech technology and a synthetically generated voice rather than a pre-recorded human voice.

Lincoln Personal Assistant

Using Lincoln Personal Assistant

The digital assistant allows you to control vehicle features using conversational requests.
To begin a voice interaction using the wake word, say the selected wake word, then say your command.
 Press the voice interaction button on the steering wheel. A tone sounds before you can say your command.
Note: You may need to enable your vehicle's modem to use certain voice commands. See **Enabling and Disabling the Modem**.
Voice Command Examples
To see examples of what voice commands you can use with different features:

1. From the settings menu, press Lincoln Assistant.

2. Press Voice Command Help.

3. Select a feature.

Lincoln Personal Assistant Settings

To access the settings menu:

1. From the settings menu, press Lincoln Assistant.

From the settings menu you can do the following:

- Switch listen for wake word on or off.
- Set the preferred wake word.
- Switch advanced mode on or off.
- Switch phone confirmation on or off.
- Switch the commands list on or off.
- View the commands help menu.

 Press the button next to a menu option for more information.

Lincoln Personal Assistant – Frequently Asked Questions

Why does the system not understand what I am saying?

- You are speaking too soon. When using the button of the steering wheel, wait for the tone before you speak.

Why does the system not understand the name of a track or artist?

- **Bluetooth®** does not support voice commands. Connect your device to a USB port.
- You are not saying the name exactly as it appears on your device. Say the name of the track or artist exactly as it appears on your device. Spell out any abbreviations in the name.
- The system does not recognize some special characters contained in the name of a song or artist, for example *, - or +. Rename the files on your device or use the touchscreen to select and play the track.

Why does the system not understand the name of a contact in the phonebook on my device and calls the wrong contact?

- You are not saying the name exactly as it appears on your device. Say the first and last name of the contact exactly as it appears on your device. Spell out any abbreviations in the name.
- The name contains special characters, for example *, - or +. Rename the contact on your device or use the touchscreen to select and call the contact.

Why does the system not understand foreign names of contacts in the phonebook on my device?

- The system applies phonetic pronunciation rules of the selected language to the names of contacts in the phonebook on your device. Select the name of the contact on the touchscreen and use the Hear it option to get an idea of how the system expects you to pronounce it.

Why do the system voice prompts and the pronunciation of some words not seem accurate?

- The system uses text-to-speech technology and a synthetically generated voice rather than a pre-recorded human voice.

Alexa Built-In (If Equipped)

What is Alexa Built-In

Alexa Built-In allows you to use Alexa in your vehicle for auto-specific use cases on the road and gives you access to an ever-evolving number of skills that help to make your life more productive, entertaining, and connected while using your vehicle.

Alexa Built-In Requirements

To use Alexa, all of the following must occur:
- Your vehicle modem is enabled.
- You are signed in to an existing Amazon account.
- Vehicle location services are enabled.
- Vehicle connectivity and vehicle data sharing is enabled.

Signing In to Your Account

 Press the button in the status bar and follow the on-screen prompts.
To sign in using the settings menu:

1. From the settings menu, press Amazon Alexa.
2. Press Get Started.
3. Sign in to the Amazon account by either scanning the code or entering the on-screen code into the Amazon website.
4. Once logged in, follow the on-screen prompts.
5. When complete, the vehicle informs you that Alexa is ready to be used in the vehicle.

Signing Out of Your Account

1. From the settings menu, press Amazon Alexa.
2. Press Sign Out.

Using Alexa Built-In

To use Alexa, say “Alexa” or press the voice interaction button on the steering wheel and then say “Alexa” to invoke Alexa to start listening.
Note: If the wake word is not enabled, you can only use the voice interaction button.

You can use Alexa for the following and more:
- Entertainment.

- Hands-free calling.
- Traffic and navigation.
- Vehicle controls.
- Smart home device control.
- Weather and news information.

Alexa Built-In Settings

Enabling the Wake Word

1. From the settings menu, press Amazon Alexa.
2. Switch Listen for Wake Word on or off.

Note: If the wake word is not enabled, you can only use the voice interaction button.
Contact List
Displays a list of connected phones and contact sharing status for each phone.
To change the contact sharing status:

1. From the settings menu, press Amazon Alexa.
2. Press Contact List.
3. Enable or disable sharing for each phone.

Note: You can share contacts from more than one phone at a time.
Things to Try
Learn more about what you can do with Alexa by browsing the things to try.

1. From the settings menu, press Amazon Alexa.
2. Press Things to Try.

Phone

Phone Precautions

WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Connecting Your Phone

Go to the settings menu on your device and switch Bluetooth® on.
Press the phone option on the feature bar.

1. Press Add Phone.

Note: A prompt alerts you to search for your vehicle on your cell phone.

2. Select your vehicle on your cell phone.

Note: A number appears on your cell phone and on the touchscreen.

3. Confirm the number on your cell phone matches the number on the touchscreen.

Note: The touchscreen indicates that you have successfully paired your cell phone.

4. Download the phonebook from your cell phone when you are prompted.

Note: If you pair more than one cell phone, use the phone settings on the center display to specify the primary phone. You can change this setting at any time.

Phone Menu

This menu becomes available after pairing a phone.
Recent Call List
Display and select an entry from a list of previous calls.
Contacts
Display a smart search form to look up your contacts. Use the List button to alphabetically sort your contacts.
Favorites
Display the list of favorite contacts that are set up on your phone.
Messaging
Displays the list of text messages to read, listen to, or respond to.
Email
Displays the list of emails to read, listen to, or respond to.
Phone List
Display the list of paired or connected devices that you can select.
Note: Up to 12 devices can be stored.
Do Not Disturb
Reject incoming calls and switch ring tones and alerts off.
Phone Keypad
Directly dial a number.
Voice Control
Press the button and say a command to use the Google or Siri voice assistant available on your connected phone to access supported features.
Note: Some features under the phone menu may not be available if the feature is not supported through the phone.

Making and Receiving a Phone Call

Making Calls
To call a number in your contacts, select:

Menu Item	Action and Description

Contacts	You can then select the name of the contact you want to call. Any numbers stored for that contact display along with any stored contact photos. You can then select the number that you want to call. The system begins the call.

To call a number from your recent calls, select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Recent Call List	You can then select an entry that you want to call. The system begins the call.

To call a number from your favorites, select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Favorites	You can then select an entry that you want to call. The system begins the call.

To call a number that is not stored in your phone, select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Phone Keypad	Select the digits of the number you wish to call.
Call	The system begins the call.

Pressing the backspace button deletes the last digit you typed.
Receiving Calls
During an incoming call, an audible tone sounds. Caller information appears in the display if it is available.
To accept the call, select:

Menu Item
Accept

Note: You can also accept the call by pressing the phone button on the steering wheel.
To reject the call, select:

Menu Item
Reject

Ignore the call by doing nothing. The system logs it as a missed call.
During a Phone Call
During a phone call, the contacts name and number display on the screen along with the call duration.
The phone status items are also visible:

- Signal Strength.
- Battery.

You can select any of the following during an active phone call:

Item	
End Call	Immediately end a phone call. You can also press the button on the steering wheel.
Keypad	Press this to access the phone keypad.
Mute	You can switch the microphone off so the caller does not hear you.

Item	
Privacy	Transfer the phone call audio to the cell phone or back to the touchscreen.

Sending and Receiving a Text Message

Menu Item	Description
Hear It	Hear the text message.
View	View the text message.
Call	Call the sender.
Reply	Reply to the text message with a standard text message.

Switching Text Message Notification On and Off

The settings on your device must be enabled to receive text message notifications on the center display. Check your device settings to enable these features.

Enabling Apps on a Mobile Device

When you start an app through the system for the first time, you could be asked to grant certain permissions. You can review and change the permissions that you have granted at any time when your vehicle is not moving. We recommend that you check your data plan before using your apps through the system. Using them could result in additional charges. We also recommend that you check the app provider's terms and conditions and privacy policy before using their app. Make sure that you have an active account for apps that you want to use through the system. Some apps work with no setup. Others require you to configure some personal settings before you can use them.

Enabling Apps on an iOS Device

 Select the apps option on the feature bar.

1. Select Mobile Apps Help.
2. Follow the instructions to pair and connect your device via Bluetooth® or with a USB cable.
3. Start the apps on your device that you want to use.
4. Select the app that you want to use on the touchscreen.

Note: Some apps may run through Apple CarPlay if it is enabled.
Note: Closing an app on your device closes it on the touchscreen.
Note: For troubleshooting assistance select Mobile Apps List under Mobile Apps Help.

Enabling Apps on an Android Device

 Select the apps option on the feature bar.

1. Select Mobile Apps Help.
2. Follow the instructions to pair and connect your device via Bluetooth® or with a USB cable.

3. Start the apps on your device that you want to use.
4. Select Find Mobile Apps.
5. Select the app that you want to use on the touchscreen.

Note: Some devices may lose the ability to play music over USB when Mobile Apps are enabled.
Note: Some apps may run through Android Auto if it is enabled.
Note: Closing an app on your device closes it on the touchscreen.
Note: For troubleshooting assistance select Mobile Apps List under Mobile Apps Help.

Switching Apple CarPlay On and Off

Enabling Apple CarPlay with USB

1. Connect your device to a USB port.
2. Follow the instructions on your device and the touchscreen.

Note: Selecting Enable Wireless CarPlay on your device prepares the device for wireless CarPlay when you reenter the vehicle.
Enabling Apple CarPlay with Wireless

1. Pair your device to Bluetooth®.
2. Follow the instructions on your device and the touchscreen.

Disabling Apple CarPlay
 Select the settings option on the feature bar.

1. Press Phone List.
2. Select your device from the list.
3. Press Disable.

Re-Enabling Apple CarPlay
 Select the settings option on the feature bar.

1. Press Phone List.
2. Select your device from the list.
3. Press Connect to Apple CarPlay.

Switching Android Auto™ On and Off

Enabling Android Auto with USB (If Equipped)

1. Connect your device to a USB port.
2. Follow the instructions on the touchscreen.

Note: Certain features of the system are not available when you are using Android Auto.

Enabling Android Auto with Wireless

1. Pair your device to Bluetooth®.
2. Follow the instructions on your device and the touchscreen.

Note: Certain Android™ devices do not support Android Auto Wireless. Check your Android OS version for compatibility.

Disabling Android Auto

 Select the settings option on the feature bar.

1. Press Phone List.
2. Select your device from the list.
3. Press Disable.

Re-Enabling Android Auto

 Select the settings option on the feature bar.

1. Press Phone List.
2. Select your device from the list.
3. Press Connect to Android Auto.

Bluetooth®

Connecting a Bluetooth® Device

1. Make sure Bluetooth® is enabled on your device.
2. Press Phone icon on the touchscreen.
3. Press Add Phone.

Note: A prompt alerts you to search for your vehicle on your device.

4. Select your vehicle on your device.

Note: A number appears on your device and on the touchscreen.

5. Confirm that the number on your device matches the number on the touchscreen.

Note: The touchscreen indicates that you have successfully paired your device.

The Bluetooth® word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by Ford Motor Company is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

Playing Media Using Bluetooth®

WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Connect your device.

 Press the audio button on the feature bar.  Press Sources.

 Press the Bluetooth® option.

To play your selected media file, use the audio system buttons on the touchscreen. See **Media Control Buttons**.

Personal Profiles

How Do Personal Profiles Work

This feature allows you to create multiple personal profiles enabling users to personalize vehicle's settings such as seats and mirrors, as well as non-positional settings like radio, navigation and driver assist. Positional settings are saved by holding a memory seat button. Non-positional settings are saved when you change a setting while a profile is active. You can create one profile for each preset memory seat button along with a guest profile.

Recalling and Changing a Profile

You can recall a profile using the touchscreen or the preset button you selected when you created your profile. You can also link a remote control and a mobile device to your profile, to recall the profile.

Enabling or Disabling Personal Profiles

1. Switch the vehicle on and leave the vehicle in park (P).
2. Press Settings on the touchscreen.
3. Press Personal Profiles.
4. Switch Personal Profiles on or off.

When enabled:

- Unlocking a door with a remote control or mobile device that is not linked to a driver profile does not change the active profile, but remains in the last known profile. It does not change the positional settings.
- Pressing a memory seat button that is not linked to a driver profile or saved to a preset setting does not change the active profile, but remains in the last known profile. It does not change the positional settings.
- Pressing a memory seat button that is not linked to a driver profile but is saved to a preset setting does not change the active profile, but remains in the last known profile. It recalls the positional settings that you saved to that memory seat button.

When disabled:

- Unlocking a door with a remote control or mobile device does not recall any non-positional settings but still recalls positional settings from the driver profile which the remote control or mobile device is linked to.
- Pressing a memory seat button that is not linked to a driver profile or saved to a preset setting does not change the positional or non-positional settings.
- Pressing a memory seat button that is linked to a driver profile or has saved to a preset setting recalls the positional settings that you saved to that memory seat button.

Creating a Personal Profile

Use the touchscreen to create a personal profile.

1. Switch the vehicle on and leave the vehicle in park (P).
2. Select the Personal Profiles button under Settings.
3. Follow the instructions on the display.

Linking or Unlinking a Personal Profile to a Remote Control

You can save Personal Profiles, including preset memory positions, for up to three remote controls by assigning a remote control to a personal profile using the touchscreen.
Use the touchscreen to link a remote control to a personal profile.

1. Switch the vehicle on and leave the vehicle in park (P).
2. Select Personal Profiles under Settings.
3. Touch the arrow for the profile you want to link to a remote control.
4. Select remote control.
5. Follow the instructions on the display.

Note: If more than one linked remote control is in range, the memory function moves to the settings of the first key to initiate a memory recall.
Note: The guest profile consists of existing settings when there is no driver profile created. After you create a driver profile, the guest profile serves as an additional driver profile.
Note: You cannot link a remote control to a guest profile.

Linking or Unlinking a Personal Profile to a Device

Use the touchscreen to link a mobile device to a personal profile.

1. Switch the vehicle on and leave the vehicle in park (P).
2. Select the Personal Profiles button under Settings.
3. Touch the arrow for the profile you wish to link to a mobile device.
4. Select mobile device.

5. Follow the instructions on the display.

Note: To successfully link a mobile device, the mobile device must be in your vehicle, and must have previously been setup as a remote control for your vehicle.
Note: The guest profile consists of existing settings when there is no driver profile created. After you create a driver profile, the guest profile serves as an additional driver profile.
Note: You cannot link a personalized name to a guest profile.

Navigation

Connected Navigation (If Equipped)

Your vehicle may be equipped with connected navigation. Depending on your version, you are given a 90 day or 3 year trial. After the trial period, you need to sign up to continue the experience. For additional information, visit lincoln.com/connectedservices.
Note: If you do not sign up or renew your subscription, you can still use navigation through a connected device.

Accessing Navigation

 Press the button to access Navigation.
Note: As the driver, be aware of all local traffic regulations and road attributes, and operate your vehicle in a safe and legal manner.

Navigation Map Updates

To update your map data over Wi-Fi, your vehicle must be connected to a Wi-Fi access point. For USB updates and other details, contact dealers at 1-866-462-8837 in the United States and Canada, or 800-557-5539 in Mexico.
Note: If you find map data errors, you may report them by going to www.here.com/mapcreator.

Zooming the Map In and Out

You can use pinch gestures to zoom in and out. Place two fingers on the touchscreen and move them apart to zoom in. Place two fingers on the touchscreen and bring them together to zoom out.

Changing the Format of the Map

 Press the Menu button.

1. Press the Map Orientation tile.
2. Select a map orientation.

What Is Live Traffic

You can observe real-time road congestion when live traffic is on.

Switching Live Traffic On and Off

 Press the Menu button.

1. Press the Traffic on Map tile.
2. Press Traffic on or Traffic Off.

Setting a Destination Using the Text Entry Screen

1. Press the search bar at the top of the screen.
2. Enter your destination using the keyboard.
3. Press Search.
4. Select a destination from the list.
5. Press Start to begin navigation.

Setting a Destination Using the Map Screen

Press and hold on the map to place a pin at that location. Information about the location of the pin appears on the screen.

 Press the button to begin navigation to the pin.

Setting a Destination Using a Predictive Destination

Press the predicted destination card on the touchscreen to navigate to it. These appear when the navigation system has learned your driving habits.

Setting a Destination Using a Recent Destination

1. Press the Recents tile.
2. Select a destination from the list.

Setting a Destination Using a Saved Destination

1. Press Saved Places.
2. Select a saved destination.

Note: Press the star icon next when viewing location details to save the location.

Setting a Destination Using a Point of Interest

Press a point of interest icon on the map. Information about the location of the point of interest appears on the screen.

 Press the button to begin navigation to the point of interest.

Adding a Waypoint

 Press the Add Waypoint button when in an active navigation session.

1. Select a category or enter your waypoint on the keyboard and press Search.
2. Select a waypoint from the list.
3. Press Add to Trip.

Editing Waypoints

1. Press the waypoint you would like to edit.
2. Select an option to reorder or delete the waypoint.

Adjusting the Guidance Prompt Volume

Turn the volume control when a guidance prompt plays to adjust the volume.

Repeating an Instruction

Press the next step indicator on the top of the touchscreen during an active navigation session to hear the last voice instruction.

Canceling Route Guidance

 Press the button to cancel route guidance to the selected location.

Adjusting the Map

Zooming the Map In and Out

You can use pinch gestures to zoom in and out. Place two fingers on the touchscreen and move them apart to zoom in. Place two fingers on the touchscreen and bring them together to zoom out.

Changing the Format of the Map

 Press the Menu button.

1. Press the Map Orientation tile.
2. Select a map orientation.

Live Traffic

What Is Live Traffic

You can observe real-time road congestion when live traffic is on.

Switching Live Traffic On and Off

 Press the Menu button.

1. Press the Traffic on Map tile.
2. Press Traffic on or Traffic Off.

Setting a Destination

Setting a Destination Using the Text Entry Screen

1. Press the search bar at the top of the screen.
2. Enter your destination using the keyboard.
3. Press Search.
4. Select a destination from the list.
5. Press Start to begin navigation.

Setting a Destination Using the Map Screen

Press and hold on the map to place a pin at that location. Information about the location of the pin appears on the screen.

 Press the button to begin navigation to the pin.

Setting a Destination Using a Predictive Destination

Press the predicted destination card on the touchscreen to navigate to it. These appear when the navigation system has learned your driving habits.

Setting a Destination Using a Recent Destination

1. Press the Recents tile.
2. Select a destination from the list.

Setting a Destination Using a Saved Destination

1. Press Saved Places.
2. Select a saved destination.

Note: Press the star icon next when viewing location details to save the location.

Setting a Destination Using a Point of Interest

Press a point of interest icon on the map. Information about the location of the point of interest appears on the screen.

 Press the button to begin navigation to the point of interest.

Waypoints

Adding a Waypoint

 Press the Add Waypoint button when in an active navigation session.

1. Select a category or enter your waypoint on the keyboard and press Search.
2. Select a waypoint from the list.
3. Press Add to Trip.

Editing Waypoints

1. Press the waypoint you would like to edit.
2. Select an option to reorder or delete the waypoint.

Route Guidance

Adjusting the Guidance Prompt Volume

Turn the volume control when a guidance prompt plays to adjust the volume.

Repeating an Instruction

Press the next step indicator on the top of the touchscreen during an active navigation session to hear the last voice instruction.

Canceling Route Guidance

 Press the button to cancel route guidance to the selected location.

Vehicle Software Updates

Vehicle Software Updates

This introduces new features and provides updates to the vehicle's software systems. Make sure to switch Automatic Updates on, set a recurring update schedule and connect your vehicle to Wi-Fi. Updates could take longer when not connected to Wi-Fi or could not download at all. See **Connecting the Vehicle to a Wi-Fi Network**.
Your vehicle may be able to receive drivable software updates, non-drivable software updates or both. Drivable software updates happen during normal vehicle usage and require limited input from you. You are notified on your touchscreen and connected device prior to a non-drivable update.

Most non-drivable updates complete in less than 30 minutes, although some updates could take up to a few hours.
You are notified of vehicle software update status on to the top left of touchscreen. You can also see the notifications in your connected device. See **Software Update Indicators**.
Vehicle Software Update Requirements

Non-drivable software updates do not install if any of the following occur:

- Your vehicle is running.
- Your vehicle is switched on.
- Your vehicle is not parked.
- The 12 V battery charge is too low.
- The hazard indicators are switched on.
- The alarm is sounding.
- The doors are open.
- The parking lamps are switched on.
- You are pressing the brake pedal.
- An emergency call is in process.
- Your vehicle is in limp home mode.

Vehicle Software Update Limitations

Once you begin a non-drivable software update, you cannot:

- Cancel the update.
- Enter your vehicle unless you have a key blade.You can open the doors using the mechanical latch if child locks are not on.
- Use the remote control to lock, unlock or start your vehicle.
- Drive your vehicle.
- Charge your vehicle.Charging resumes once the update completes.

Software Update Settings

From settings menu, press Software Updates.

You can do the following in the Software Updates menu:

- Switch Automatic Updates on and off.
- Schedule and install software updates.
- View software update details.

 Press the button next to a menu option for more information.
Switching Automatic Updates On and Off
Your vehicle may come with Automatic Updates switched on. Where Automatic Updates is set to On, you agree that software updates may be automatically delivered without any further notice or additional consent from you.
Note: Software updates require approval to download or install with Automatic Updates switched off.
Scheduling and Installing Software Updates
Scheduling Software Updates
From the Software Updates menu:

1. Press Recurring Schedule.

2. Select the days and time for updates.

The more days that updates are scheduled, the more frequently your vehicle may install new updates. We recommend selecting a time you normally do not need your vehicle.

Note: The schedule you set is recurring. If Automatic Updates is on, every time a non-drivable update is available, it installs on this schedule unless you change it. You are notified on your touchscreen and connected device prior to a non-drivable update, with an option to reschedule it.
Installing Software Updates
Using the Status Bar

1. Press a Software Update indicator on your touchscreen when it appears.
2. Follow the instructions on the touchscreen.

Using the Touchscreen
From the Software Updates menu:

1. Press Update Details.
2. Press Update Now.

Viewing Software Update Details
From the Software Updates menu, press Update Details.

Software Update Indicators

You can press the indicators in the status bar when they appear for more information.

 Vehicle software update reminder, schedule required, confirmation of default schedule required, or consent required.

 Vehicle software update canceled, update not successful, or precondition not met.

 Vehicle software update successful.

Vehicle System Reset

Performing a System Reset

Performing a system reset allows you to remove all personal information and restore settings to their factory defaults.

1. Press Settings on the touchscreen.
2. Press General.
3. Press Reset.
4. Press Factory Reset.
5. Follow the prompts on the screen to complete the reset.

Accessories

Accessories

For a complete listing of the accessories that are available for your vehicle, please contact your authorized dealer or visit the online store web site:
United States of America



For more information scan here or visit:
https://www.ford.com/accessories
Canada



For more information scan here or visit:
https://accessories.ford.ca
We will repair or replace any properly authorized dealer-installed Ford Original Accessory found to be defective in factory-supplied materials or workmanship during the warranty period, as well as any component damaged by the defective accessories.

We will warrant your Ford Original Accessory through the warranty that provides the greatest benefit:

- 24 months, unlimited mileage.
- The remainder of your new vehicle limited warranty.

Contact an authorized dealer for details and a copy of the warranty.
Ford Licensed Accessories are the accessory manufacturer's designs. The manufacturer develops and therefore warrants Ford Licensed Accessories, and does not design or test these accessories to Ford Motor Company engineering requirements. Contact an authorized Ford dealer for the manufacturer’s limited warranty details, and request a copy of the Ford Licensed Accessories product limited warranty from the

accessory manufacturer.

For maximum vehicle performance, keep the following information in mind when adding accessories or equipment to your vehicle:

- When adding accessories, equipment, passengers and luggage to your vehicle, do not exceed the total weight capacity of the vehicle or of the front or rear axle (GVWR or GAWR as indicated on the Safety Compliance Certification label).Ask an authorized dealer for specific weight information.
- The Federal Communications Commission (FCC) and Canadian Radio Telecommunications Commission (CRTC) regulate the use of mobile communications systems that are equipped with radio transmitters, for example two-way radios, telephones and theft alarms. Any such equipment installed in your vehicle should comply with Federal Communications Commission (FCC) and Canadian Radio Telecommunications Commission (CRTC) regulations and should be installed only by an authorized dealer.
- An authorized dealer needs to install mobile communications systems. Improper installation may harm the operation of your vehicle, particularly if the manufacturer did not design the mobile communication system specifically for automotive use.
- If you or an authorized Ford dealer add any non-Ford electrical or electronic accessories or components to your vehicle, you may adversely affect battery performance and durability. In addition, you may also adversely affect the performance of other electrical systems in the vehicle.

Lincoln Protect

What Is Lincoln Protect

Protect yourself from the rising cost of vehicle repairs with the Lincoln Protect extended service plan.
Lincoln Protect Extended Service Plans (United States Only)
Lincoln Protect means peace of mind. It is the extended service plan backed by Lincoln, and provides more protection beyond the New Vehicle Limited Warranty coverage. When you visit your Lincoln Dealer, insist on genuine Lincoln Protect extended service plans.
Lincoln Protect Extended Service Plan Can Quickly Pay for Itself
One trip to the Service Center could easily exceed the price of your Lincoln Protect extended service plan. With Lincoln Protect, you minimize your risk for unexpected repair bills and rising repair costs.
Up to 1000+ Covered Vehicle Components
There are four mechanical Lincoln Protect extended service plans with different levels of coverage. Ask your authorized dealer for details.

1. PremiumCARE - Our most comprehensive coverage. With over 1,000 covered components, this plan is so complete it is probably easier to list what is not covered.

2. ExtraCARE - Covers 113 components, and includes many high-tech items.

3. BaseCARE - Covers 84 components.

4. PowertrainCARE - Covers 29 critical components.

Lincoln Protect extended service plans are honored by all authorized Lincoln dealers in the United States, Canada and Mexico.

That means you get:

- Reliable, quality service at any Lincoln or Ford dealership.
- Repairs performed by factory trained technicians, using genuine parts.

Rental Car Reimbursement

First Day Rental Benefit
If you bring your car into your dealer for service, we will give you a rental vehicle to use for the day.
Extended Rental Benefits
If your vehicle is kept overnight for covered repairs, you are eligible for rental car coverage, including bumper to bumper warranty repairs, and field service actions.
Roadside Assistance
Exclusive 24/7 roadside assistance, including:

- Towing, flat-tire change and battery jump starts.
- Out of fuel and lock-out assistance.
- Travel expense reimbursement for lodging, meals and rental car.
- Assistance for taxi, shuttle, rental car coverage and other transportation.

Transferable Coverage
If you sell your vehicle before your Lincoln Protect extended service plan coverage expires, you can transfer any remaining coverage to the new owner. This should give you and your potential buyer a little more peace of mind.
Less Cost to Properly Maintain Your Vehicle
The Lincoln Protect extended service plan also offers a Premium Maintenance Plan that covers all scheduled maintenance, and selected wear items. The coverage is prepaid, so you never have to worry about the cost of your vehicle’s maintenance.

Covered maintenance includes:

- Windshield wiper blades.
- Spark plugs.
- The clutch disc - if equipped.
- Brake pads and linings.
- Shock absorbers and struts.
- Engine cooling hoses, clamps and o-rings.
- Engine belts.
- Diesel exhaust fluid replenishment - if equipped.

Interest Free Finance Options
Just a 5% down payment will provide you with an affordable, no interest, no fee payment program allowing you all the security and benefits Lincoln Protect extended service plan has to offer while paying over time. You are pre-approved with no credit check or hassles. To learn more, call our Lincoln Protect extended service plan specialists at 800-367-3377.
Complete the information below and mail to:
Lincoln Protect Extended Service Plan
P.O. Box 321067
Detroit, MI 48232
Lincoln Protect (Canada Only)
You can get more protection for your vehicle by purchasing a Lincoln Protect extended service plan. The Lincoln Protect extended service plan is the only service contract backed by Lincoln, Limited. Depending on the plan you purchase, the Lincoln Protect extended service plan provides benefits such as:

- Rental reimbursement.
- Coverage for certain maintenance and wear items.
- Protection against repair costs after your New Vehicle Limited Warranty Coverage expires.
- Roadside Assistance benefits.

There are several Lincoln Protect extended service plans available in various time, distance and deductible combinations. Each plan is tailored to fit your own driving needs, including reimbursement for towing and rental. When you purchase a Lincoln Protect extended service plan, you receive added peace-of-mind protection throughout Canada, the United States and Mexico, provided by a network of participating

authorized Lincoln dealers.
Note: Repairs performed outside of Canada, the United States and Mexico are not eligible for Lincoln Protect extended service plan coverage.
This information is subject to change. For more information, visit your local Lincoln of Canada dealer or www.LincolnCanada.com to find the Lincoln Protect extended service plan that is right for you.

Scheduled Maintenance

Scheduled Maintenance

Intelligent Oil-Life Monitor™
Your vehicle has an Intelligent Oil-Life Monitor that determines when you should change the engine oil based on how you use your vehicle. By using several important factors in its calculations, the monitor helps reduce the cost of owning your vehicle and reduces environmental waste at the same time.
This means you do not have to remember to change the oil on a mileage-based schedule. Your vehicle lets you know when an oil change is due by displaying a message in the instrument cluster display.
The following table provides examples of vehicle use and its impact on oil change intervals. It is a guideline only. Actual oil change intervals depend on several factors and generally decrease with severity of use.
Maintenance Intervals

At Every Oil Change Interval as Indicated by the Information Display[1]
Change the engine oil and filter.[2]
Rotate the tires.
Perform a multi-point inspection, recommended.
Inspect the automatic transmission fluid level. Consult your dealer for requirements.
Inspect the brake pads, rotors, hoses and the parking brake.
Inspect the engine coolant level/strength and the hoses.
Inspect the exhaust system and the heat shields.
Inspect the rear axle and U-joints - all wheel drive only.
Inspect the half-shaft boots.
Inspect the steering linkage, ball joints, suspension, tie-rod ends, driveshaft and U-joints.
Inspect the tires, tire wear and measure the tread depth.
Inspect the wheels and related components for abnormal noise, wear, looseness or drag.
Inspect cabin air filter if equipped, service as required.
Inspect engine air filter, service as required.

[1] Do not exceed one year or 10,000 mi (16,000 km) between service intervals. Hybrid vehicles may achieve longer distances between oil changes, but do not exceed the one-year max oil change interval.
[2] Reset the oil change reminder after engine oil and filter changes. See **Resetting the Intelligent Oil Life Monitor**.

Brake Fluid Maintenance[1]	
Every three years.	Change the brake fluid.[2]

[1] Perform this maintenance item every 3 years. Do not exceed the designated time for the interval.
[2]Brake fluid servicing requires special equipment available at your authorized dealer.

Other Maintenance Items [1]	
Every 20,000 mi (32,000 km)	Replace the cabin air filter.
Every 30,000 mi (48,000 km)	Replace the engine air filter. For severe service, Change the automatic transmission fluid.
Every 60,000 mi (96,000 km)	For severe service, Replace the spark plugs.
Every 100,000 mi (160,000 km)	Replace the spark plugs.
	Inspect the accessory drive belt or belts. [2]
Every 150,000 mi (240,000 km)	Change the automatic transmission fluid.
	Replace the accessory drive belt or belts. [3]
At 200,000 mi (320,000 km)	Change the engine coolant. [4]

[1] Perform these maintenance items within 3,000 mi (4,800 km) of the last engine oil and filter change. Do not exceed the designated distance for the interval.
[2] After initial inspection, inspect every other oil change until replaced.
[3] If not replaced within the last 100,000 mi (160,000 km).
[4] Initial replacement at 10 years or 200,000 mi (320,000 km), then every five years or 100,000 mi (160,000 km).

Exceptions

There are several exceptions to the schedule:

Axle and PTU Maintenance

The Power Transfer Unit (PTU) and rear axle (AWD only) in your vehicle does not require any scheduled maintenance. The PTU lubricant may be more likely to require a fluid change if the vehicle has extended periods of extreme or severe duty cycle driving. Changing or checking the PTU lubricant is not necessary unless the unit has been submerged in water, shows sign of leakage. Contact your authorized dealer for service.

California Fuel Filter Replacement

If you register your vehicle in California, the California Air Resources Board has determined that the failure to perform this maintenance item does not nullify the emission warranty or limit recall liability before the completion of your vehicle's useful life. Ford Motor Company, however, urges you to have all recommended maintenance services performed at the specified intervals and to record all vehicle service.

Hot Climate Oil Change Intervals

Vehicles operating in the Middle East, North Africa, Sub-Saharan Africa or locations with similar climates using an American Petroleum Institute (API) Certified for Gasoline Engines (Certification mark) oil of SM or SN quality, the oil change interval is 5,000 mi (8,000 km).

Engine Air Filter and Cabin Air Filter Replacement

The life of the engine air filter and cabin air filter is dependent on exposure to dusty and dirty conditions. Vehicles operated in these conditions require frequent inspection and replacement of the engine air filter and cabin air filter.

What Are Considered Severe Driving Conditions

A vehicle that is driven for short trips of less than 5–10 mi (8–16 km), driving in temperatures well below or above average, driving in any dusty conditions, idling more than recommended such as in traffic, and driving with a heavy load or while towing a load are considered severe driving conditions. If the vehicle is driven in any of these conditions, follow the severe service maintenance items listed in the scheduled maintenance chart.

General Maintenance Information

Why Maintain Your Vehicle?
Carefully following the maintenance schedule helps protect against major repair expenses resulting from neglect or inadequate maintenance and may help to increase the value of your vehicle when you sell or trade it. Keep all receipts for completed maintenance with your vehicle.
We have established regular maintenance intervals for your vehicle based upon rigorous testing. It is important that you have your vehicle serviced at the proper times. These intervals serve two purposes; one is to maintain the reliability of your vehicle and the second is to keep your cost of owning your vehicle down. It is your responsibility to have all scheduled maintenance performed and to make sure that the materials used meet the specifications identified in this owner's manual.
Failure to perform scheduled maintenance invalidates warranty coverage on parts affected by the lack of maintenance.
Why Maintain Your Vehicle at Your Dealership?
Factory-Trained Technicians
Service technicians participate in extensive factory-sponsored certification training to help them become experts on the operation of your vehicle. Ask your dealership about the training and certification their technicians have received.
Genuine Ford and Motorcraft® Replacement Parts
Dealerships stock Ford, Motorcraft and Ford-authorized branded re-manufactured replacement parts. These parts meet or exceed our specifications. Parts installed at your dealership carry a nationwide 24-month or unlimited mile (kilometer) parts and labor limited warranty.
If you do not use our authorized parts, they may not meet our specifications and depending on the part, it could affect emissions compliance.
Convenience
Many dealerships have extended evening and Saturday hours to make your service visit more convenient and they offer one stop shopping. They can perform any services that are required on your vehicle, from general maintenance to collision repairs.
Note: Not all dealers have extended hours or body shops. Please contact your dealer for details.
Protecting Your Investment
Maintenance is an investment that pays dividends in the form of improved reliability, durability and resale value. To maintain the proper performance of your vehicle and its emission control systems, make sure you have scheduled maintenance performed at the designated intervals.
Your vehicle has an Intelligent Oil-Life Monitor system, a message appears in the information display at the proper oil change interval. This interval may be up to one year or 10,000 mi (16,000 km), hybrid vehicles may exceed 10,000 mi (16,000 km).
Your vehicle can be driven in such a way that dilutes and increases the level of oil by short trips that do not allow the engine to get to operating temperature, extended idling, and low speed driving for long periods of time.
When the oil change message appears in the information display, it is time for an oil change. Make sure you perform the oil change within two weeks or 500 mi (800 km) of the message appearing. Make sure you reset the Intelligent Oil-Life Monitor after each oil change. See **Resetting the Intelligent Oil Life Monitor**.
If your information display resets prematurely or becomes inoperative, you should perform the oil change interval at six months or 5,000 mi (8,000 km) from your last oil change. Never exceed one year or 10,000 mi (16,000 km) between oil change intervals,
Your vehicle is very sophisticated and built with multiple, complex, performance systems. Every manufacturer develops these systems using different specifications and performance features. That is why it is important to rely upon your dealership to properly diagnose and repair your vehicle.
We have recommended maintenance intervals for various parts and component systems based upon engineering testing. We rely upon this testing to determine the most appropriate mileage for replacement of oils and fluids to protect your vehicle at the lowest overall cost to you and recommends against maintenance schedules that deviate from the scheduled maintenance information.
We strongly recommend the use of only genuine Ford, Motorcraft or Ford-authorized re-manufactured replacement parts engineered for your vehicle.

Additives and Chemicals

This owner's manual and our Workshop Manual list the recommended additives and chemicals for your vehicle. We do not recommend using chemicals or additives not approved by us as part of your vehicle's normal maintenance. Please consult your warranty information.

Oils, Fluids and Flushing

In many cases, fluid discoloration is a normal operating characteristic and, by itself, does not necessarily indicate a concern or that the fluid needs to be changed. However, a qualified expert, such as the factory-trained technicians at your dealership, should immediately inspect discolored fluids that also show signs of overheating or foreign material contamination.

Make sure to change your vehicle's oils and fluids at the specified intervals or in conjunction with a repair. Flushing is a viable way to change fluid for many vehicle sub-systems during scheduled maintenance. It is critical that systems are flushed only with new fluid that is the same as that required to fill and operate the system or using a Ford-approved flushing chemical.

Scheduled Maintenance Service Intervals

For your scheduled maintenance service intervals, visit https://www.ford.com/support/maintenance-schedule.



Owner Checks and Services

Make sure you perform the following basic maintenance checks and inspections every month or at six-month intervals.

Check Every Month
Engine oil level.
Function of all interior and exterior lights.
Tires (including spare) for wear and proper pressure.
Windshield washer fluid level.
Fuel and water separator. Drain if necessary (or if indicated by the information display).
Holes and slots in the tail pipe to make sure they are functional and clear of debris.

Check Every Six Months
Battery connections. Clean if necessary.
Body and door drain holes for obstructions. Clean if necessary.
Cooling system fluid level and coolant strength.
Door weatherstrips for wear. Lubricate if necessary.
Hinges, latches and outside locks for proper operation. Lubricate if necessary.
Parking brake for proper operation.
Seatbelts and seat latches for wear and function.
Safety warning lamps (brake, ABS, airbag and seatbelt) for operation.

Check Every Six Months
Washer spray and wiper operation. Clean or replace blades as necessary.

Multi-Point Inspection
In order to keep your vehicle running right, it is important to have the systems on your vehicle regularly checked. This can help identify potential issues and prevent major problems. We recommend having the following multi-point inspection performed at every scheduled maintenance interval to help make sure your vehicle keeps running great.

Multi-Point Inspection	
Accessory drive belt(s).	Hazard warning system operation.
Battery performance.	Horn operation.
Engine air filter.	Radiator, cooler, heater and air conditioning hoses.
Exhaust system.	Suspension components for leaks or damage.
Exterior lamps operation.	Steering and linkage.
Fluid levels[1]; fill if necessary.	Tires (including spare) for wear and proper pressure[2].
For oil and fluid leaks.	Windshield for cracks, chips or pits.
Half-shaft dust boots.	Washer spray and wiper operation.

[1] Brake, coolant recovery reservoir, automatic transmission and window washer.
[2]If your vehicle comes with a temporary mobility kit, check the tire sealant expiration Use By date on the canister. Replace as needed.
Make sure to ask your dealership service advisor or technician about the multi-point vehicle inspection. It is a comprehensive way to perform a thorough inspection of your vehicle. Your checklist gives you immediate feedback on the overall condition of your vehicle.
Severe Driving Conditions
A vehicle that is driven for short trips of less than 5–10 mi (8–16 km), driving in temperatures greatly below or above average, driving in any dusty conditions, idling more than recommended such as in traffic, and driving with a heavy load or while towing a load are considered severe driving conditions. If you drive your vehicle in any of these conditions, follow the severe service maintenance items listed in the scheduled maintenance chart.

Customer Information

Rollover Warning

WARNING: Utility vehicles have a significantly higher rollover rate than other types of vehicles.

WARNING: Vehicles with a higher center of gravity (utility and four-wheel drive vehicles) handle differently than vehicles with a lower center of gravity (passenger cars). Avoid sharp turns, excessive speed and abrupt steering in these vehicles. Failure to drive cautiously increases the risk of losing control of your vehicle, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

WARNING: In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a seatbelt.

WARNING: Do not become overconfident in the ability of four-wheel drive vehicles. Although a four-wheel drive vehicle may accelerate better than a two-wheel drive vehicle in low traction situations, it won't stop any faster than two-wheel drive vehicles. Always drive at a safe speed.

Utility vehicles and trucks handle differently than passenger cars in the various driving conditions that are encountered on streets, highways and off-road. Utility vehicles and trucks are not designed for cornering at speeds as high as passenger cars any more than low-slung sports cars are designed to perform satisfactorily under off-road conditions.

Getting the Services You Need

Warranty repairs to your vehicle must be performed by an authorized dealer. While any authorized dealer handling your vehicle line provides warranty service, we recommend you return to your selling authorized dealer who wants to ensure your continued satisfaction.
Please note that certain warranty repairs require special training and equipment, so not all authorized dealers are authorized to perform all warranty repairs. This means that, depending on the warranty repair needed, you may have to take your vehicle to another authorized dealer.
Allow a reasonable time to perform a repair after taking your vehicle to the authorized dealer. Repairs are made using Lincoln or Motorcraft parts, or remanufactured or other parts that are authorized by Lincoln.
Away From Home
If you are away from home when your vehicle needs service, contact the Lincoln Client Relationship Center or use the online resources listed below to find the nearest authorized dealer. See **Contacting Us**.

Market	Website
United States	www.lincoln.com/support
Canada	www.lincolncanada.com/help/customer-support



These are some of the items that you can find online:

- United States dealer locator by Dealer Name, City, State or ZIP Code.
- Owner Manuals.
- Maintenance Schedules.
- Recalls.

- Lincoln Extended Service Plans.
- Lincoln Original Accessories.
- Service specials and promotions.

Additional Assistance
If you have questions or concerns, or are unsatisfied with the service you are receiving, follow these steps:

1. Contact your Sales Representative or Service Advisor at your selling or servicing authorized dealer.

2. If your inquiry or concern remains unresolved, contact the Sales Manager, Service Manager or Customer Relations Manager.

3. If you require assistance or clarification on Lincoln policies, please contact the Lincoln Client Relationship Center. See **Contacting Us**.

In order to help us serve you better, please have the following information available when contacting a Client Relationship Center:
- Vehicle Identification Number.
- Your telephone number (home and business).
- The name of the authorized dealer and city where located.
- The vehicle's current odometer reading.

In some states, you need to directly notify Lincoln in writing before pursuing remedies under your state's warranty laws. Lincoln is also allowed a final repair attempt in some states.
In the United States, a warranty dispute must be submitted to the BBB AUTO LINE before taking action under the Magnuson-Moss Warranty Act, or to the extent allowed by state law, before pursuing replacement or repurchase remedies provided by certain state laws. This dispute handling procedure is not required prior to enforcing state created rights or other rights which are independent of the Magnuson-Moss Warranty Act or state replacement or repurchase laws.

In California (U.S. Only)

California Civil Code Section 1793.2(d) requires that, if a manufacturer or its representative is unable to repair a motor vehicle to conform to the vehicle's applicable express warranty after a reasonable number of attempts, the manufacturer shall be required to either replace the vehicle with one substantially identical or repurchase the vehicle and reimburse the buyer in an amount equal to the actual price paid or payable by the consumer (less a reasonable allowance for consumer use). The consumer has the right to choose whether to receive a refund or replacement vehicle.

California Civil Code Section 1793.22(b) presumes that the manufacturer has had a reasonable number of attempts to conform the vehicle to its applicable express warranties if, within the first 18 months of ownership of a new vehicle or the first 18,000 mi (29,000 km), whichever occurs first:

1. Two or more repair attempts are made on the same non-conformity likely to cause death or serious bodily injury OR
2. Four or more repair attempts are made on the same nonconformity (a defect or condition that substantially impairs the use, value or safety of the vehicle) OR
3. The vehicle is out of service for repair of nonconformities for a total of more than 30 calendar days (not necessarily all at one time).

In the case of 1 or 2 above, the consumer must also notify the manufacturer of the need for the repair of the nonconformity at the following address:

Ford Motor Company

16800 Executive Plaza Drive

Mail Drop 3NE-B

Dearborn, MI 48126

You are required to submit your warranty dispute to BBB AUTO LINE before asserting in court any rights or remedies conferred by California Civil Code Section 1793.22(b). You are also required to use BBB AUTO LINE before exercising rights or seeking remedies created by the Federal Magnuson-Moss Warranty Act, 15 U.S.C. sec. 2301 et seq. If you choose to seek redress by pursuing rights and remedies not created by California Civil Code Section 1793.22(b) or the Magnuson-Moss Warranty Act, resort to BBB AUTO LINE is not required by those statutes.

California Lemon Law

Notification requirements in California. Lincoln and your Lincoln dealer place a high priority on your satisfaction with our performance. If you are not satisfied with our resolution of a warranty concern and you would like to seek a civil penalty from Lincoln, you must follow these steps under California law (Cal. Code Civ. Proc., §871.24(a)-(d)):

At least 30 days before filing a lawsuit seeking civil penalties (Civ. Code § 1794(c)), you must:

1. Notify Lincoln of your name and the name(s) of any other vehicle owner(s), the accurate Vehicle Identification Number (“VIN”) of your motor vehicle, and a brief summary of the repair history and problems with your motor vehicle, and
2. Demand that Lincoln repurchase or replace your motor vehicle.

When you submit the notice to Lincoln, you must have possession of your motor vehicle.

Your notice to Lincoln must be in writing and must be sent either by email to LLNOTICE@ford.com or by certified or registered mail, return receipt requested, to:

Ford Motor Company

Office of General Counsel

Attn: California LL Notice

One American Road

Dearborn, MI 48126

The Better Business Bureau Auto Line Program

Your satisfaction is important to Ford Motor Company and to your dealer. If a warranty concern has not been resolved using the three-step procedure outlined earlier in this chapter in the Getting the Services you need section, you may be eligible to participate in the BBB AUTO LINE program.
The BBB AUTO LINE program consists of two parts – mediation and arbitration. During mediation, a representative of the BBB will contact both you and Ford Motor Company to explore options for settlement of the claim. If an agreement is not reached during mediation or you do not want to participate in mediation, and if your claim is eligible, you may participate in the arbitration process. An arbitration hearing will be scheduled so that you can present your case in an informal setting before an impartial person. The arbitrator considers the testimony provided and makes a decision after the hearing.
Disputes submitted to the BBB AUTO LINE program are usually decided within 40 days after you file your claim with the BBB. You are not bound by the decision, and may reject the decision and proceed to court where all findings of the BBB Auto Line dispute, and decision, are admissible in the court action. Should you

choose to accept the BBB AUTO LINE decision, Ford is then bound by the decision, and must comply with the decision within 30 days of receipt of your acceptance letter.
BBB AUTO LINE Application: Using the information that follows, call or write to request a program application. You will be asked for your name and address, general information about your new vehicle, information about your warranty concerns, and any steps you have already taken to try to resolve them. A Customer Claim Form will be mailed that needs to be completed, signed and returned to the BBB along with proof of ownership. Upon receipt, the BBB reviews the claim for eligibility under the Program Summary Guidelines.
You can get more information by calling BBB AUTO LINE at 1-800-955-5100, or writing to:
BBB AUTO LINE a Division of BBB National Programs, Inc.
1676 International Drive, Suite 550
McLean, VA 22102
BBB AUTO LINE applications can also be requested by calling the Ford Motor Company Customer Relationship Center at 1-800-392-3673.
For additional information, refer to the Better Business Bureau website.
Note: Ford Motor Company reserves the right to change eligibility limitations, modify procedures, or to discontinue this process at any time without notice and without obligation.

The Mediation and Arbitration Program

For vehicles delivered to authorized Canadian dealers. In those cases where you continue to feel that the efforts by Ford of Canada and the authorized dealer to resolve a factory-related vehicle service concern have been unsatisfactory, Ford of Canada participates in an impartial third party mediation/arbitration program administered by the Canadian Motor Vehicle Arbitration Plan (CAMVAP).
The CAMVAP program is a straightforward and relatively speedy alternative to resolve a disagreement when all other efforts to produce a settlement have failed. This procedure is without cost to you and is designed to eliminate the need for lengthy and expensive legal proceedings.
In the CAMVAP program, impartial third-party arbitrators conduct hearings at mutually convenient times and places in an informal environment. These impartial arbitrators review the positions of the parties, make decisions and, when appropriate, render awards to resolve disputes. CAMVAP decisions are fast, fair, and final as the arbitrator’s award is binding on both you and Ford of Canada.
CAMVAP services are available in all Canadian territories and provinces. For more information, without charge or obligation, call your CAMVAP Provincial Administrator directly at 1-800-207-0685 or visit www.camvap.ca.

Getting Assistance Outside the U.S. and Canada

Before exporting your vehicle to a foreign country, contact the appropriate foreign embassy or consulate. These officials can inform you of local vehicle registration regulations and where to find unleaded fuel or petrol/gas engines or the proper sulfur fuel for diesel engines.
If you cannot find the proper fuel recommended for your vehicle, contact our Customer Relationship Center. The use of improper fuels in your vehicle without proper conversion may damage the effectiveness of your emission control system and may cause engine knocking or serious engine damage. Ford Motor Company or Ford of Canada is not responsible for any damage caused by use of improper fuel. Using improper fuels may also result in difficulty importing your vehicle back into the United States.
If your vehicle must be serviced while you are traveling or living in Asia-Pacific Region, Sub-Saharan Africa, U.S. Virgin Islands and/or Puerto Rico, Central America, the Caribbean, and Israel and the Middle East, contact the nearest authorized dealer. If the authorized dealer cannot help you, contact the corresponding Ford Relationship Center or Lincoln Client Relationship. See **Contacting Us**.
If you buy your vehicle in North America and then relocate to any of the above locations, register your vehicle identification number (VIN) and new address with Ford Global Trade Services by emailing, expcso@ford.com.

If you are in another foreign country, contact the nearest authorized dealer. In the event your inquiry is unresolved, communicate your concern with the dealership's Sales Manager, Service Manager or Customer Relations Manager. If you require additional assistance or clarification, please contact the respective Customer Relationship Center as previously mentioned.

Reporting Safety Defects in the United States

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) in addition to notifying Ford Motor Company.
If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or Ford Motor Company.
To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153); go to www.safercar.gov; or write to:
Administrator
1200 New Jersey Avenue, Southeast
Washington, D.C. 20590
You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from www.safercar.gov.

Reporting Safety Defects in Canada

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform Transport Canada and Ford of Canada.

Transport Canada Contact Information	
Website (English)	http://tc.canada.ca/recalls
Website (French)	http://tc.canada.ca/rappels
Phone	1-800-333-0510

Lincoln of Canada Contact Information	
Website	www.LincolnCanada.com
Phone	1-800-387-9333

Third Party Software Copyright Acknowledgment

Your vehicle could have components that use open source software. For additional information, visit http://corporate.ford.com/ford-open-source.html.

Antenna

European Union EU

Ukraine



United Kingdom



Audio Unit

Device	Supplier	Type Designation
Audio Head Unit	Visteon	AHUD001

Afghanistan



ATRA: 014/2024

Australia

Botswana

BOCRA Registered No: BOCRA/TA/2024/945

European Union (EU)

Ghana

NCA Approved: M1-7E8-176-SRH

Israel

מספר אישור אלחוטי של משרד התקשורת הוא

142832

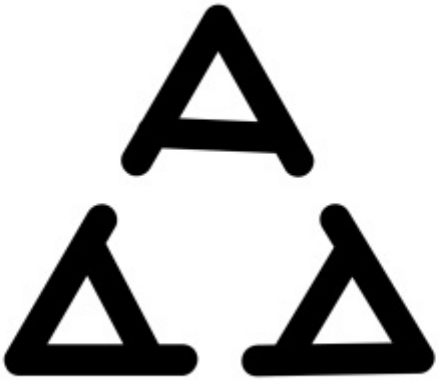
Jamaica

This product contains a Type Approved Module by Jamaica: SMA – AHUD001

Senegal

AGREE PAR ARTP SENEGAL: 072930/AG/ER

Serbia



? 005 24

Sierra Leone



TAN: 2024-002-0053

South Africa

TA-2024/1668
APPROVED

South Korea

R-R-VC1-AHUD001

Taiwan

R43208

Ukraine

UA.TR.001

United Arab Emirates (UAE)

TDRA

ER29556/24
United Arab Emirates

United Kingdom

UK
CA

United Nations Economic Commission for Europe (UNECE)

E13 10R-06-16968

United States and Canada

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

1. L'appareil ne doit pas produire de brouillage;
2. L'appareil doit accepter tout brouillage radioélectrique subi, même si le brouillage est susceptible d'en compromettre le fonctionnement.

Note: Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.
Zambia

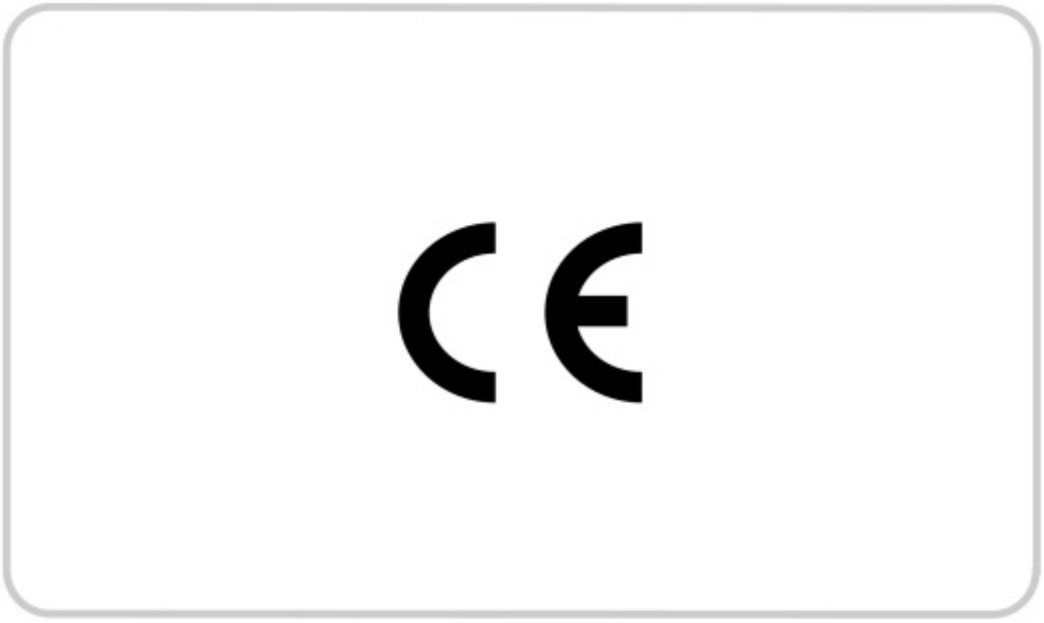
ZMB/ZICTA/TA/2024/7/3

Audio Unit

Device	Supplier	Type Designation
Audio Head Unit	Visteon	AHUE001

Australia

European Union (EU)

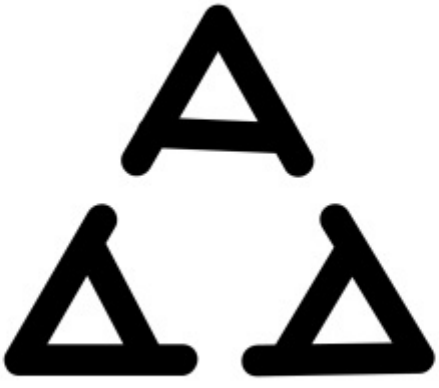


Israel

מספר אישור אלחוטי של משרד התקשורת הוא

141177

Serbia



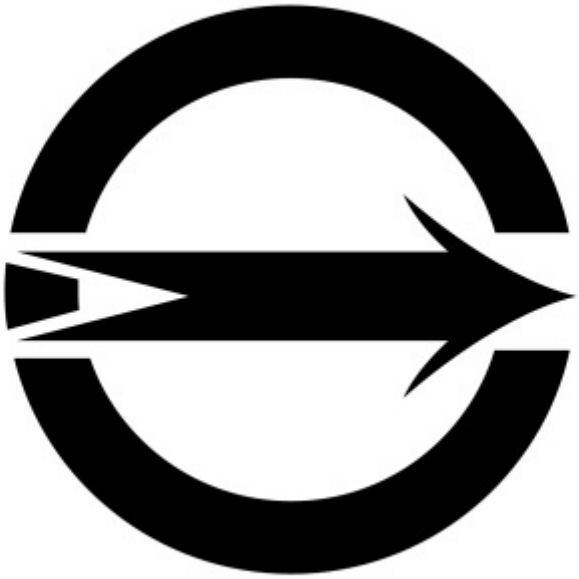
? 005 24

South Africa



TA-2024/0100
APPROVED

Taiwan



R43208

Ukraine



UA.TR.001

United Arab Emirates (UAE)



United Kingdom

United Nations Economic Commission for Europe (UNECE)

E13 10R-06-1674

Blind Spot Information System Sensors

Device	Supplier	Type Designation
SRR5 BLIS Corner Radar (RRU2)	Aptiv	2F5TR

Argentina

H-28070

Brazil

15375-23-12270

Este equipamento não tem direito à proteção contra interferência prejudicial e não pode causar interferência em sistemas devidamente autorizados.

China

CMIIT ID: 2023LJ10407

Democratic Republic of Congo

Agréé par l'ARPTC

N° d'homologation: HER - 0018/Octobre/2024

Date d'homologation: 01/10/2024

Djibouti

AGREE PAR LE MCPT (REPUBLIQUE DE DJIBOUTI)

Numéro d'agrément: 040/DDTIC/2024

Date d'agrément: 16/04/2024

European Union (EU)

Ghana

NCA APPROVED: 7E6-M0-XDF-TME

Independent State of Samoa

SMO
samoa

Indonesia

Sertifikat Nomor: 98785/SDPPI/2024
PLG ID: 13493





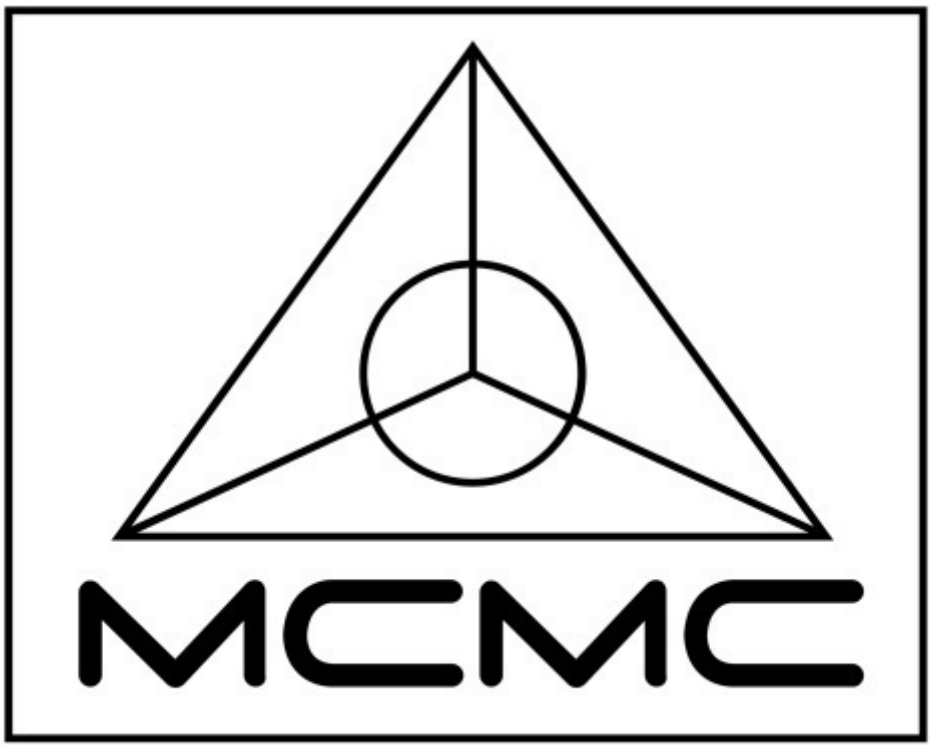
Israel

1. מספר אישור התאמה מטעם משרד התקשורת: 56-05873
2. חל איסור לבצע פעולות במכשיר שיש בהן כדי לשנות את תכונותיו האלחוטיות של המכשיר, ובכלל זה שינויי תוכנה, החלפת אנטנה מקורית או הוספת אפשרות לחיבור לאנטנה חיצונית, בלא קבלת אישור משרד התקשורת, בשל החשש להפרעות אלחוטיות.

Jamaica

This product has been Type Approved by Jamaica: SMA - 2F5TR

Malaysia

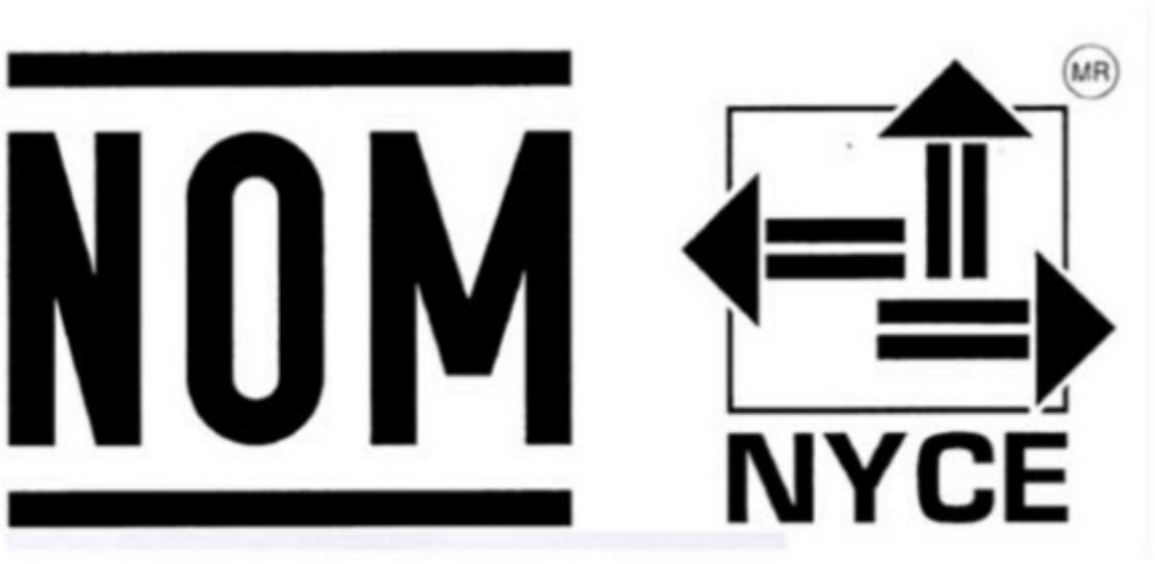


HIDF16000009

Mauritania

AGREE PAR L'ANE MAURITANIE
Numéro d'agrément: 1222/ARE/2023
Date d'agrément: 06/02/2023

Mexico



IFT: ROAP2F23-27117

Moldova

Morocco

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC
Numéro d'agrément: MR00036523ANRT2023
Date d'agrément: 30/01/23

Paraguay

NR: 2022-04-I-0255

Pakistan

Pakistan Telecommunication Authority

Approved by PTA 2023

Sierra Leone

NATCOM

TAN: 2023-002-0006

South Africa

ICASA

TA-2022/3721
APPROVED

South Korea

R-C-1Ap-2F5TR

Taiwan

CCAI23LP0640T2

取得審驗證明之低功率射頻器材，非經核准，公司、商號或使用者均不得擅自變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。低功率射頻器材之使用不得影享飛航安全及干擾合法通信；經發現有干擾現象時，應立即停用，並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用。前述合法通信，指依電信管理法規定作業之無線電通信。低功率射頻器材須忍受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設備之干擾。

Thailand

(1)เครื่องโทรคมนาคมและอุปกรณ์นี้ มีความสอดคล้องตามข้อกำหนดของ กทช.

(2)เครื่องวิทยุคมนาคมนี้มีระดับการแผ่คลื่นแม่เหล็กไฟฟ้าสอดคล้องตามมาตรฐานความปลอดภัยต่อสุขภาพของมนุษย์จากการใช้เครื่องวิทยุคมนาคมที่คณะกรรมการกิจการโทรคมนาคมแห่งชาติประกาศกำหนด

Ukraine

UA.TR.028

United Arab Emirates (UAE)

TDRA

ER10085/22
United Arab Emirates

United Kingdom

United States and Canada

FCC ID: L2C2F5TR

IC: 3432A-2F5TR

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

1. L'appareil ne doit pas produire de brouillage;
2. L'appareil doit accepter tout brouillage radioélectrique subi, même si le brouillage est susceptible d'en compromettre le fonctionnement.

Note: Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

Zambia

ZMB/ZICTA/TA/2023/4/42

Blind Spot Information System Sensors

Device	Supplier	Type Designation
SRR5 BLIS Corner Radar	Aptiv	F5TR

Argentina



H-24708

Brazil



17075-21-12270

Este equipamento não tem direito à proteção contra interferência prejudicial e não pode causar interferência em sistemas devidamente autorizados.

China

CMIIT ID: 2022LP14250

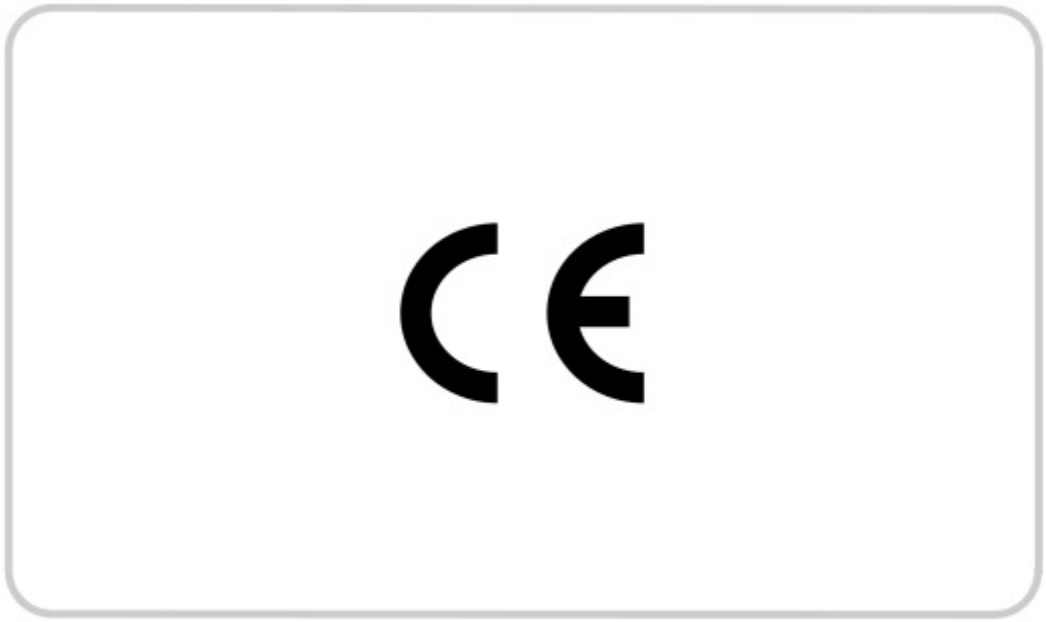
Democratic Republic of Congo

Agréé par l'ARPTC
N° d'homologation: HER - 0178/Décembre/2022
Date d'homologation: 22/12/2022

Djibouti

AGREE PAR LE MCPT (REPUBLIQUE DE DJIBOUTI)
Numéro d'agrément: 195/MCPT/DDTIC
Date d'agrément: 06/09/2021

European Union (EU)



Ghana

NCA APPROVED: SRO-1M-7E4-X0E

Independent State of Samoa



Indonesia

Sertifikat Nomor: 90715/SDPPI/2023
PLG ID: 13493

Israel

1. מספר אישור התאמה מטעם משרד התקשורת: 51-95982
2. חל איסור לבצע פעולות במכשיר שיש בהן כדי לשנות את תכונותיו האלחוטיות של המכשיר, ובכלל זה שינויי תוכנה, החלפת אנטנה מקורית או הוספת אפשרות לחיבור לאנטנה חיצונית, בלא קבלת אישור משרד התקשורת, בשל החשש להפרעות אלחוטיות.

Jamaica

This product has been Type Approved by Jamaica: SMA - F5TR

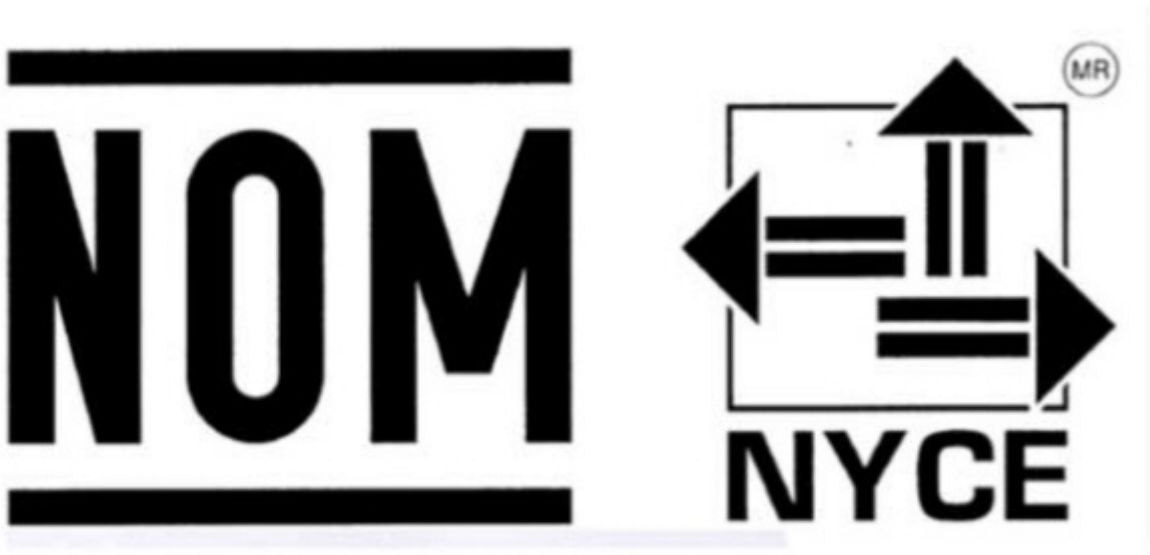
Malaysia

HIDF16000009

Mauritania

AGREE PAR L'ANE MAURITANIE
Numéro d'agrément: 0985/ARE/2021
Date d'agrément: 24/08/2021

Mexico



IFETEL: RCPAPF520-0480

Moldova



Morocco

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC

Numéro d'agrément: MR00030033ANRT2021
Date d'agrément: 16/09/2021

Pakistan



Approved by PTA 2021

Paraguay



NR: 2020-10-I-0753

Sierra Leone

TAN: 2021-002-0027

Singapore

Complies with IMDA Standards
DA 00461

South Africa

TA-2021/2119
APPROVED

South Korea

R-C-1Ap-F5TR

Taiwan

CCAI20LP1990T7

取得審驗證明之低功率射頻器材，非經核准，公司、商號或使用者均不得擅自變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。低功率射頻器材之使用不得影享飛航安全及干擾合法通信；經發現有干擾現象時，應立即停用，並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用。前述合法通信，指依電信管理法規定作業之無線電通信。低功率射頻器材須忍受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設備之干擾。

Thailand

(1)เครื่องโทรคมนาคมและอุปกรณ์นี้ มีความสอดคล้องตามข้อกำหนดของ กทช.

(2)เครื่องวิทยุคมนาคมนี้มีระดับการแผ่คลื่นแม่เหล็กไฟฟ้าสอดคล้องตามมาตรฐานความปลอดภัยต่อสุขภาพของมนุษย์จากการใช้เครื่องวิทยุคมนาคมที่คณะกรรมการกิจการโทรคมนาคมแห่งชาติประกาศกำหนด

Ukraine



UA.TR.028

United Arab Emirates (UAE)



United Kingdom

United States and Canada

FCC ID: L2CF5TR

IC: 3432A-F5TR

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

1. L'appareil ne doit pas produire de brouillage;
2. L'appareil doit accepter tout brouillage radioélectrique subi, même si le brouillage est susceptible d'en compromettre le fonctionnement.

Note: Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

Vietnam

Ford Vietnam
A00182015

ICT

Zambia

ZMB/ZICTA/TA/2021/9/53

Remote Function Actuator

Device	Supplier	Type Designation
Bluetooth Low Energy Module	Denso	S2NA0

China

CMIIT ID: 2018DJ4563

United States and Canada

WARNING: Changes or modifications not expressively approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term "IC:" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

FCC ID: HYQS2NA0
IC: 1551A-S2NA0

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada’s licence-exempt RSS(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Body Control Module

South Korea

R-R-175-P005
United Arab Emirates (U.A.E.)



United States and Canada

WARNING: Changes or modifications not expressively approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term "IC:" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

FCC ID: LXPP004
IC: 2298A-P004

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada’s licence-exempt RSS(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Cruise Control Module

Device	Supplier	Type Designation
Mid Range Radar (MRR)	Delphi/Aptiv	L2C0065TR

Argentina

C-20001

Brazil



06571-19-12270

Este equipamento não tem direito à proteção contra interferência prejudicial e não pode causar interferência em sistemas devidamente autorizados.

Democratic Republic of Congo

Agréé par l'ARPTC

N° d'homologation: HIR - 0067/2017

Date d'homologation: 25/04/2017

Djibouti

AGREE PAR LE MCPT (REPUBLIQUE DE DJIBOUTI)

Numéro d'agrément: 594/dpt/2017

Date d'agrément: 09/04/2017

Eurasian Customs Union

EAC

European Union (EU)

Ghana

NCA PRODUCT IDENTIFIER: OR2-9H-7E1-x4D

Independent State of Samoa

SMO
samoa

Indonesia

SERTIFIKAT NOMOR : 53104/SDPPI/2017

PLG ID: 4927

Israel

1. מספר אישור התאמה מטעם משרד התקשורת: 51-63483
2. חל איסור לבצע פעולות במכשיר שיש בהן כדי לשנות את תכונותיו האלחוטיות של המכשיר, ובכלל זה שינויי תוכנה, החלפת אנטנה מקורית או הוספת אפשרות לחיבור לאנטנה חיצונית, בלא קבלת אישור משרד התקשורת, בשל החשש להפרעות אלחוטיות.

Jamaica

This product has been Type Approved by Jamaica: SMA - L2C0065TR

Malaysia



HIDF16000009

Mauritania

AGREE PAR L'ANE MAURITANIE
Numéro d'agrément: 0409/ARE/2017
Date d'agrément: 12/04/2017

Mexico

IFT: RLVDEL217-0751

Moldova



Morocco

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC
Numéro d'agrément: MR13639ARNT2017
Date d'agrément: 28/03/2017

Pakistan

Pakistan Telecommunication Authority

PTA

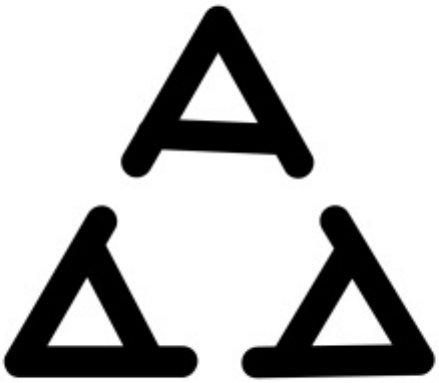
Approved by PTA 2017

Paraguay

CONATEL

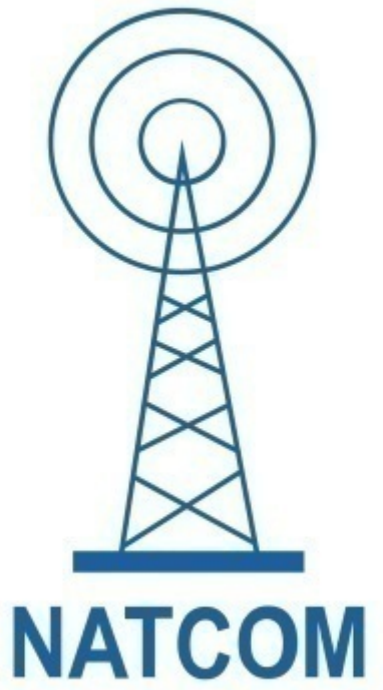
NR: 2017-06-I-0000151

Serbia



? 011 17

Sierra Leone



TAN: NTC-TA-17-032

Singapore

Complies with IMDA Standards
DA105753

South Africa

TA-2017-1923
APPROVED

South Korea

R-CMM-DLH-L2C0065TR

Syria

SyTRA
REGISTERED No:
FR00085-17

Taiwan

CCAI17LP1500T1

取得審驗證明之低功率射頻器材，非經核准，公司、商號或使用者均不得擅自變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。低功率射頻器材之使用不得影享飛航安全及干擾合法通信；經發現有干擾現象時，應立即停用，並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用。前述合法通信，指依電信管理法規定作業之無線電通信。低功率射頻器材須忍受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設備之干擾。

Thailand

(1)เครื่องโทรคมนาคมและอุปกรณ์นี้ มีความสอดคล้องตามข้อกำหนดของ กทช.

(2)เครื่องวิทยุคมนาคมนี้มีระดับการแผ่คลื่นแม่เหล็กไฟฟ้าสอดคล้องตามมาตรฐานความปลอดภัยต่อสุขภาพของมนุษย์จากการใช้เครื่องวิทยุคมนาคมที่คณะกรรมการกิจการโทรคมนาคมแห่งชาติประกาศกำหนด

Ukraine



United Arab Emirates (UAE)



United Kingdom

United States and Canada

FCC ID: L2C0065TR

IC: 3432A-0065TR

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

1. L'appareil ne doit pas produire de brouillage;
2. L'appareil doit accepter tout brouillage radioélectrique subi, même si le brouillage est susceptible d'en compromettre le fonctionnement.

Note: Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

Vietnam

Ford Vietnam
A00182015

ICT

Zambia

ZMB/ZICTA/TA/2017/4/19

Passive Key

Device	Supplier	Type Designation
Passive Key	Continental	A2C97102000

Argentina

H-22290

Ghana

NCA APPROVED: 2R9-8M-7E0-x94

Jamaica

This product has been Type Approved by Jamaica: SMA – A2C97102000

Paraguay



NR: 2016-9-I-000222

South Korea



MSIP-CRM-TAL-A2C97102000

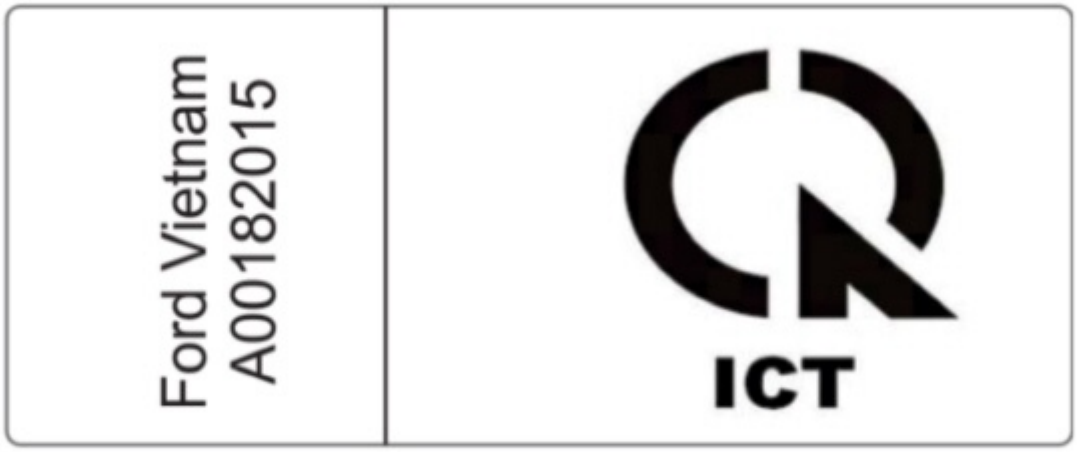
Ukraine



UA.TR.028

United Kingdom

Vietnam



Passive Key

Device	Supplier	Type Designation
Passive Key	Continental	A2C931426

Argentina

H-16366

Brazil



02445-16-01821

Este equipamento não tem direito à proteção contra interferência prejudicial e não pode causar interferência em sistemas devidamente autorizados.

Jamaica

This product has been Type Approved by Jamaica: SMA – M3N-A2C931426

United States and Canada

FCC ID: M3N-A2C931426

IC: 7812A-A2C931426

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

1. L'appareil ne doit pas produire de brouillage;
2. L'appareil doit accepter tout brouillage radioélectrique subi, même si le brouillage est susceptible d'en compromettre le fonctionnement.

Note: Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

Radio Transceiver Module

Device	Supplier	Type Designation
Radio Transceiver Module (RTM)	Aptiv	FO2-RX433UDA

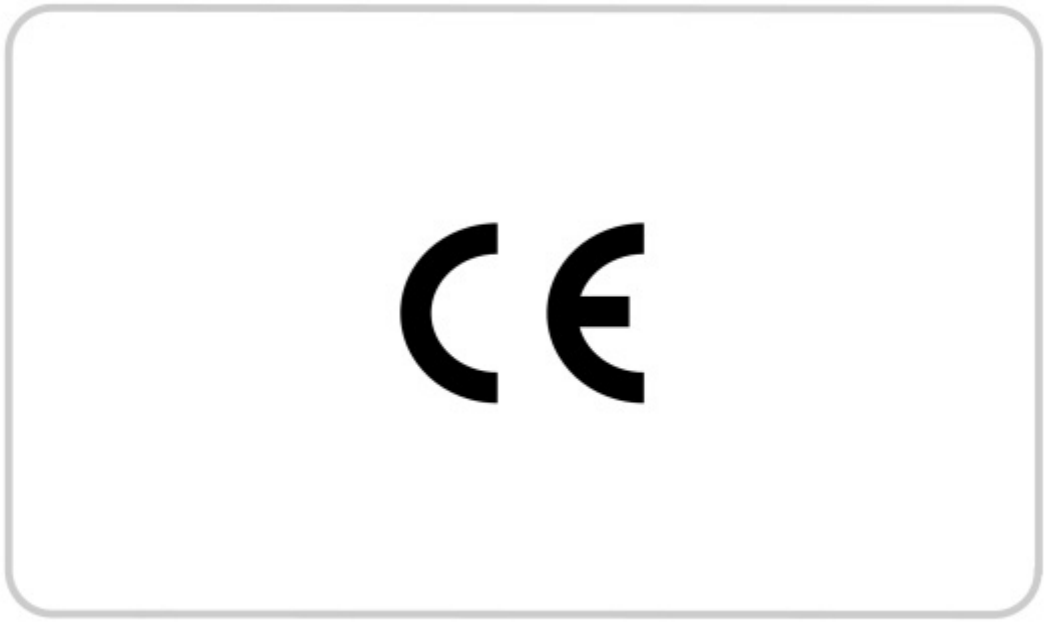
Democratic Republic of Congo

Agréé par l'ARPTC
N° d'homologation: HER - 0151/Septembre/2022
Date d'homologation: 22/09/2022

Djibouti

AGREE PAR LE MCPT (REPUBLIQUE DE DJIBOUTI)
Numéro d'agrément: 033/DDTIC/2020
Date d'agrément: 07/06/2020

European Union (EU)



Ghana

NCA PRODUCT IDENTIFIERS: SRO-1M-7E4-108

Jamaica

This product has been Type Approved by Jamaica: SMA – FO2-RX433UDA

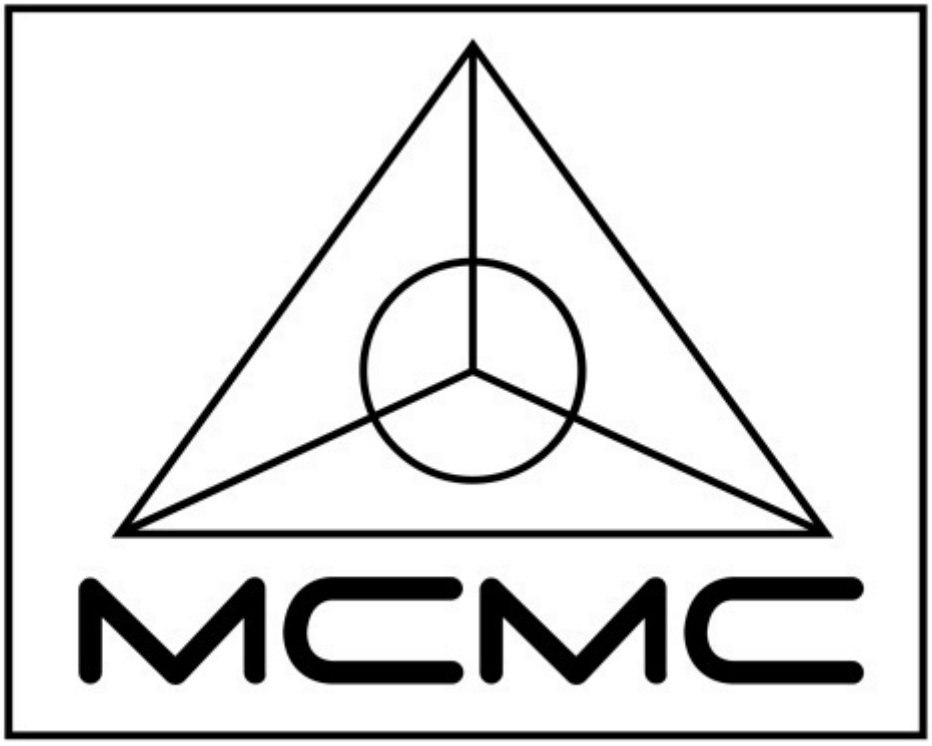
Independent State of Samoa

Israel

1. מספר אישור התאמה מטעם משרד התקשורת: 51-86227
2. חל איסור לבצע פעולות במכשיר שיש בהן כדי לשנות את תכונותיו האלחוטיות של המכשיר, ובכלל זה שינויי תוכנה, החלפת אנטנה מקורית או הוספת אפשרות לחיבור לאנטנה חיצונית, בלא קבלת אישור משרד התקשורת, בשל החשש להפרעות אלחוטיות.

1. מספר אישור התאמה מטעם משרד התקשורת: 56-03001
2. חל איסור לבצע פעולות במכשיר שיש בהן כדי לשנות את תכונותיו האלחוטיות של המכשיר, ובכלל זה שינויי תוכנה, החלפת אנטנה מקורית או הוספת אפשרות לחיבור לאנטנה חיצונית, בלא קבלת אישור משרד התקשורת, בשל החשש להפרעות אלחוטיות.

Malaysia

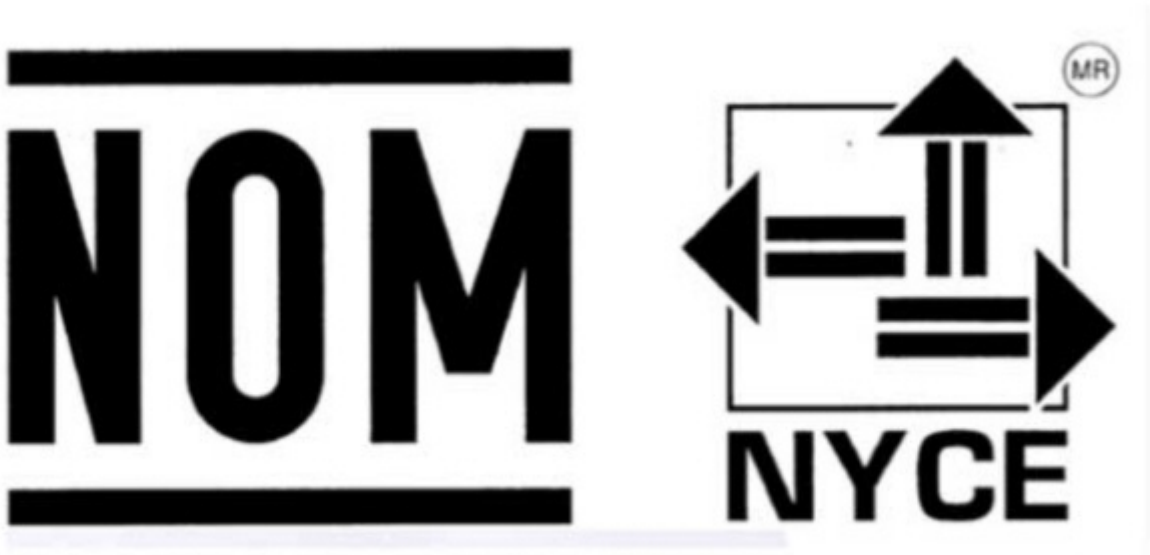


HIDF16000009

Mauritania

AGREE PAR L'ANE MAURITANIE
Numéro d'agrément: 0803/ARE/2020
Date d'agrément: 03/06/2020

Mexico



IFT: RCPAPFO21-0004

Moldova



Morocco

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC

Numéro d'agrément: MR24102ANRT2020

Date d'agrément: 18/05/2020

Pakistan

Pakistan Telecommunication Authority

PTA

Approved by PTA 2020

Serbia

? 011 23

South Africa

TA-2020/5481
APPROVED

Taiwan
CCAB22LP1370T1

取得審驗證明之低功率射頻器材，非經核准，公司、商號或使用者均不得擅自變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。低功率射頻器材之使用不得影享飛航安全及干擾合法通信；經發現有干擾現象時，應立即停用，並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用。前述合法通信，指依電信管理法規定作業之無線電通信。低功率射頻器材須忍受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設備之干擾。

Thailand

เครื่องโทรคมนาคมและอุปกรณ์นี้ มีความสอดคล้องตามข้อกำหนดของ กทช.

Ukraine

UA.TR.028

United Kingdom

United Arab Emirates (UAE)



Zambia

ZMB/ZICTA/TA/2020/6/247

SYNC

Device	Supplier	Type Designation
SYNC	Ford	SYNC-G4
		SYNC-G4L

Argentina

C-24008

C-24009

Brazil



08657-19-01505

08658-19-01505

Este equipamento não tem direito à proteção contra interferência prejudicial e não pode causar interferência em sistemas devidamente autorizados.

Djibouti

AGREE PAR LE MCPT (REPUBLIQUE DE DJIBOUTI)

Numéro d'agrément: 124/DDTIC/2019

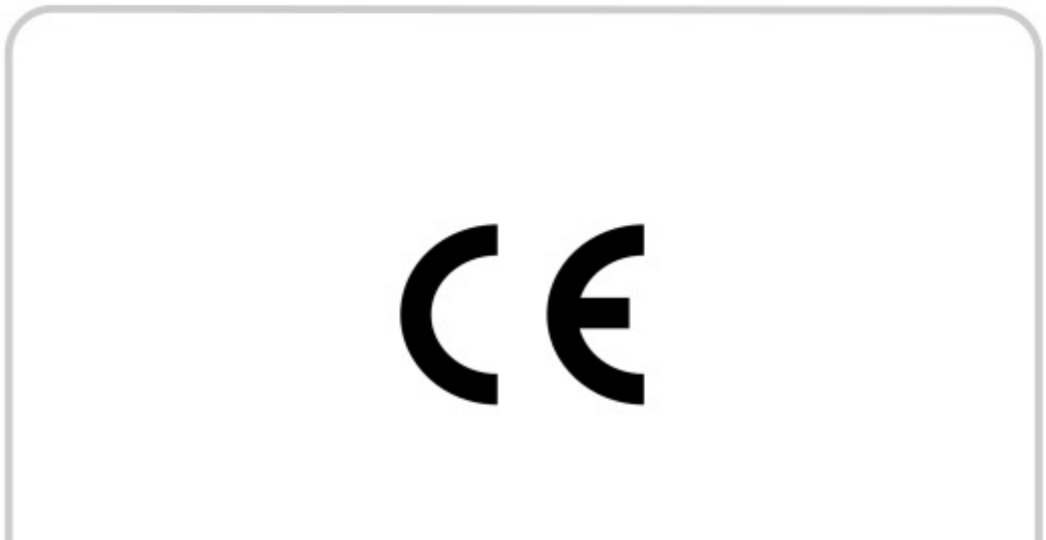
Date d'agrément: 07/08/2019

AGREE PAR LE MCPT (REPUBLIQUE DE DJIBOUTI)

Numéro d'agrément: 125/DDTIC/2019

Date d'agrément: 07/08/2019

European Union (EU)



Ghana

NCA APPROVED: ZRO-1H-7E3-182
NCA APPROVED: ZRO-1H-7E3-180

Indonesia

Model: SYNC-G4
Sertifikat Nomor: 80700/SDPPI/2022
PLG ID: 13493

Model: SYNC-G4L
Sertifikat Nomor: **81116**/SDPPI/2022
PLG ID: 13493

Jamaica

This product has been Type Approved by Jamaica: SMA - SYNC-G4

This product has been Type Approved by Jamaica: SMA - SYNC-G4L

Malaysia



HIDF16000009

Mauritania

AGREE PAR L'ANE MAURITANIE
Numéro d'agrément: 0692/ARE/2018
Date d'agrément: 08/08/2019

AGREE PAR L'ANE MAURITANIE
Numéro d'agrément: 0691/ARE/2018
Date d'agrément: 08/08/2019

Moldova



Morocco

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC
Numéro d'agrément: MR20608ANRT2019
Date d'agrément: 07 AOUT 2019

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC
Numéro d'agrément: MR20606ANRT2019
Date d'agrément: 07 AOUT 2019

Pakistan

Pakistan Telecommunication Authority

PTA

Approved by PTA 2019

Paraguay

CONATEL

NR: 2020-03-I-00192
NR: 2020-03-I-00193

Serbia

? 005 20

Singapore

Complies with IMDA Standards
DA 00461

South Africa

TA-2019/2465
TA-2019/2466
APPROVED

South Korea

MSIP-R-C-FDM-SYNCG4

MSIP-R-C-FDM-SYNCG4L

Taiwan

CCAB20LP0290T8

CCAB20LP0300T1

取得審驗證明之低功率射頻器材，非經核准，公司、商號或使用者均不得擅自變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。低功率射頻器材之使用不得影享飛航安全及干擾合法通信；經發現有干擾現象時，應立即停用，並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用。前述合法通信，指依電信管理法規定作業之無線電通信。低功率射頻器材須忍受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設備之干擾。

Ukraine



UA.TR.028

United Arab Emirates (UAE)





United Kingdom

United States and Canada

FCC ID: KMH-SYNCG4

FCC ID: KMH-SYNCG4L

IC: 1422A-SYNCG4

IC: 1422A-SYNCG4L

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

1. L'appareil ne doit pas produire de brouillage;
2. L'appareil doit accepter tout brouillage radioélectrique subi, même si le brouillage est susceptible d'en compromettre le fonctionnement.

Note: Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.
RF Radiation Exposure Statement: This equipment complies with FCC RF Radiation exposure limits set forth for an uncontrolled environment. This device and its antenna must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter. This equipment should be installed and operated with a normally maintained separation distance of at least 8 in (20 cm) between the radiator and your body.
Zambia

ZMB/ZICTA/TA/2019/11/41
ZMB/ZICTA/TA/2019/11/40

Telematics Control Unit

Device	Supplier	Type Designation
Telematics Control Unit	Ford	FB5-TCU

Argentina

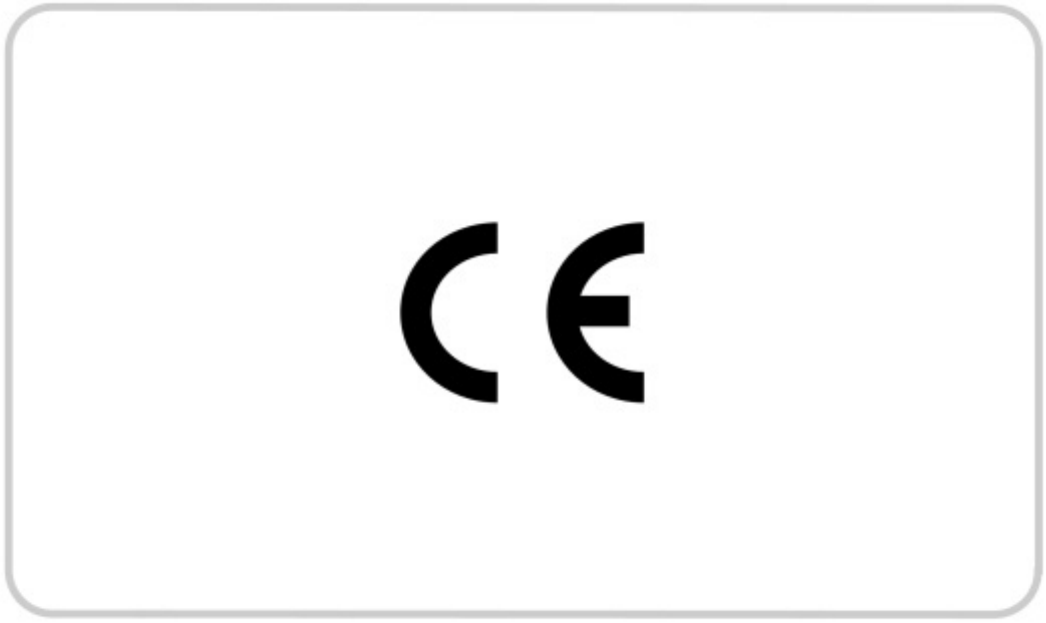
C-28150

Brazil

11807-21-01505

Este equipamento não tem direito à proteção contra interferência prejudicial e não pode causar interferência em sistemas devidamente autorizados.

European Union (EU)



Malaysia



HIDF16000009

Mexico



South Africa

TA-2020/6952

APPROVED

Taiwan

CCAB234G0080T2

CCAB224G0040T8

取得審驗證明之低功率射頻器材，非經核准，公司、商號或使用者均不得擅自變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。低功率射頻器材之使用不得影享飛航安全及干擾合法通信；經發現有干擾現象時，應立即停用，並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用。前述合法通信，指依電信管理法規定作業之無線電通信。低功率射頻器材須忍受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設備之干擾。

We recommend that the distance between the antenna of the telematics control unit and the user be greater than 14 in (35 cm) when using the telematics control unit.

United Arab Emirates (UAE)

TDRA

ER87741/20
United Arab Emirates

United Kingdom

United States and Canada

FCC ID: KMH-14H074-NA1

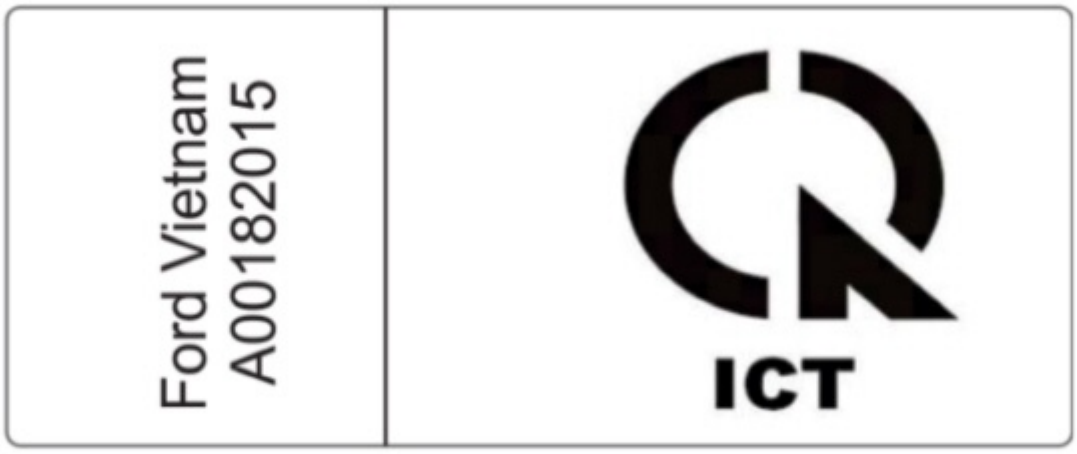
IC: 1422A-14H074NA1

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

1. L'appareil ne doit pas produire de brouillage;
2. L'appareil doit accepter tout brouillage radioélectrique subi, même si le brouillage est susceptible d'en compromettre le fonctionnement.

Note: Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

Vietnam



Tire Pressure Monitoring System Sensors - Vehicles With: 315 MHz Sensors

Device	Supplier	Type Designation
315 MHz Faraday PAL Sensor	Schrader/Sensata	AG2SM3

Brazil



05062-18-08001

Este equipamento não tem direito à proteção contra interferência prejudicial e não pode causar interferência em sistemas devidamente autorizados.

Jamaica

This product has been Type Approved by Jamaica: SMA - AG2SM3

Mexico

IFT: RCPSCAG18-1886

1. es posible que este equipo o dispositivo no cause interferencia perjudicial y
2. este equipo o dispositivo debe aceptar cualquier interferencia, incluyendo la que pueda causar su operación no deseada.

Taiwan

CCAH18LP2400T0

取得審驗證明之低功率射頻器材，非經核准，公司、商號或使用者均不得擅自變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。低功率射頻器材之使用不得影享飛航安全及干擾合法通信；經發現有干擾現象時，應立即停用，並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用。前述合法通信，指依電信管理法規定作業之無線電通信。低功率射頻器材須忍受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設備之干擾。

United States and Canada

FCC ID: MRXAG2SM3

IC: 2546A-AG2SM3

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

1. L'appareil ne doit pas produire de brouillage;
2. L'appareil doit accepter tout brouillage radioélectrique subi, même si le brouillage est susceptible d'en compromettre le fonctionnement.

Note: Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

Tire Pressure Monitoring System Sensors - Vehicles With: 433 MHz Sensors

Device	Supplier	Type Designation
434 MHz Faraday PAL Sensor	Schrader/Sensata	AG2SM4

Argentina

H-20958

Brazil



11998-20-04415

Este equipamento não tem direito à proteção contra interferência prejudicial e não pode causar interferência em sistemas devidamente autorizados.

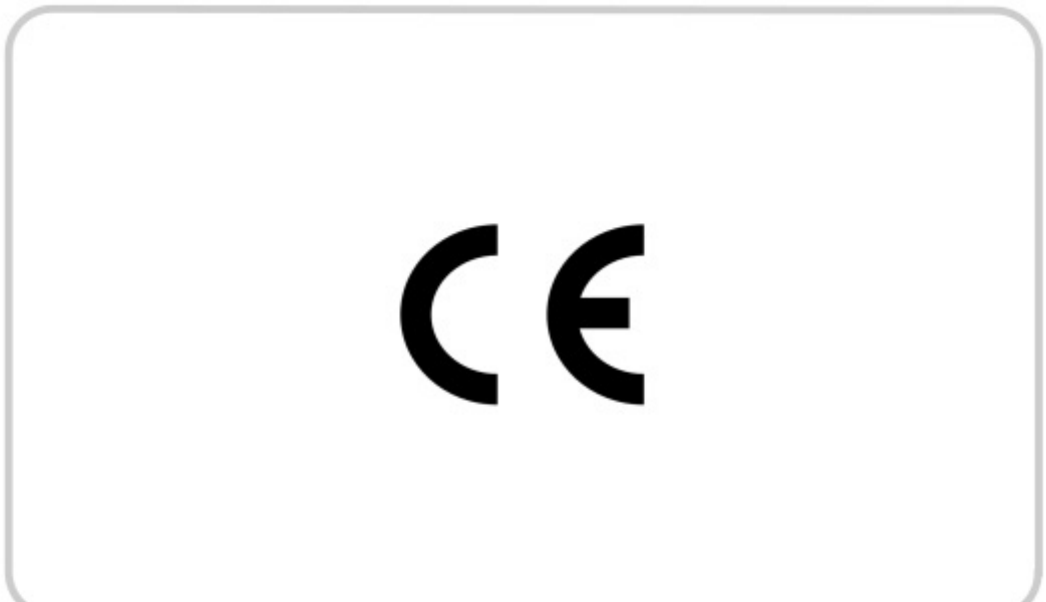
Democratic Republic of Congo

Agréé par l'ARPTC
N° d'homologation: HIR -0081/6/2018
Date d'homologation: 18/6/2018

Djibouti

AGREE PAR LE MCPT (REPUBLIQUE DE DJIBOUTI)
Numéro d'agrément: 045/DDTIC/2018
Date d'agrément: 06/05/18

European Union (EU)



The RED 2014/53/EU (replacing R&TTE Directive 1999/5/EC on 13 June 2016) explicitly states that instructions for intentional radiators include reference to "(a) frequency band(s) in which the radio equipment operates; and (b) maximum radio-frequency power transmitted in the frequency band(s) in which the radio equipment operates," in addition to carrying over the general operational instruction and Declaration of Conformity inclusion requirements from the R&TTE Directive.

Hereby, Schrader Electronics Ltd. declares that the radio equipment type AG2SM4 is in compliance with Directive 2014/53/EU. The full text of the EU declaration of conformity is available at the following internet address:

https://www.schradertpms.com/en-gb/downloads

f=433.92MHz

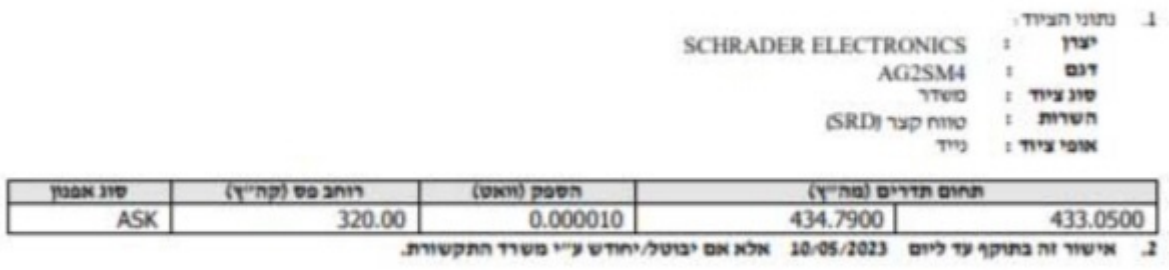
P<10mW (e.i.r.p)

Schrader Electronics Ltd. 11 Technology Park, Belfast Road, Antrim BT41 1QS, Northern Ireland United Kingdom.

Ghana

NCA APPROVED: BR3-1M-GE2-X74

Israel



1. נתוני הציוד:

יצרן	:	SCHRADER ELECTRONICS
דגם	:	AG2SM4
סוג ציוד	:	משדר
השרות	:	טווח קצר (SRD)
אופי ציוד	:	נייד

תחום תדרים (מה"ץ)		הספק (ואט)	ריוחב פס (קה"ץ)	סוג אמנון
433.0500	434.7900	0.000010	320.00	ASK

2. אישור זה בתוקף עד ליום 10/05/2023 אלא אם יבוטל/יחודש ע"י משרד התקשורת.

Jamaica

This product has been Type Approved by Jamaica: SMA - AG2SM4

Malaysia



HIDF16000009

Mauritania

AGREE PAR L'ANE MAURITANIE

Numéro d'agrément: 0489/ARE/2018

Date d'agrément: 04/25/2018

Mexico

IFT: ROSCAG23-14312

1. es posible que este equipo o dispositivo no cause interferencia perjudicial y
2. este equipo o dispositivo debe aceptar cualquier interferencia, incluyendo la que pueda causar su operación no deseada.

Moldova



Morocco

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC

Numéro d'agrément: MR16506ANRT2018

Date d'agrément: 09/05/2018

Pakistan



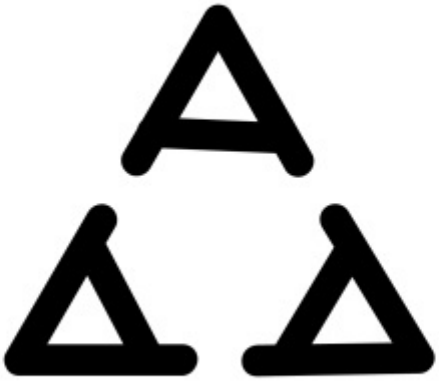
Approved by PTA 2016

Paraguay



NR: 2024-03-I-0295

Serbia



? 005 21

Sierra Leone



TAN: 2018-002-0025

Singapore

Complies with IMDA Standards
DA 107968

South Africa



TA-2018/639
APPROVED

South Korea



R-CRM-SRD-AG2SM4

Taiwan

CCAH18LP1210T0

取得審驗證明之低功率射頻器材，非經核准，公司、商號或使用者均不得擅自變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。低功率射頻器材之使用不得影享飛航安全及干擾合法通信；經發現有干擾現象時，應立即停用，並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用。前述合法通信，指依電信管理法規定作業之無線電通信。低功率射頻器材須忍受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設備之干擾。

Ukraine



UA.TR.028

United Arab Emirates (UAE)



United States and Canada

FCC ID: MRXAG2SM4

IC: 2546A-AG2SM4

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

1. L'appareil ne doit pas produire de brouillage;
2. L'appareil doit accepter tout brouillage radioélectrique subi, même si le brouillage est susceptible d'en compromettre le fonctionnement.

Note: Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

Zambia

ZMB/ZICTA/TA/2018/5/26

Wireless Accessory Charging Module

Device	Supplier	Type Designation
Wireless Charger (WCM)	LG/BH EVS	WCFDM00N2A1
		WCFDM00N2A3
		WCFDM00N2A5

Argentina

H-26491

H-26492

H-26493

H-31895

Brazil



12804-21-14208

05792-23-15321

Este equipamento não tem direito à proteção contra interferência prejudicial e não pode causar interferência em sistemas devidamente autorizados.

Democratic Republic of Congo

Agréé par l'ARPTC

N° d'homologation: HER-062/Avril/2023

Date d'homologation: 28/4/2023

Djibouti

AGREE PAR LE MCPT (REPUBLIQUE DE DJIBOUTI)

Numéro d'agrément: 041/DDTIC/2024

Date d'agrément: 16/04/2024

AGREE PAR LE MCPT (REPUBLIQUE DE DJIBOUTI)

Numéro d'agrément: 042/DDTIC/2024

Date d'agrément: 16/04/2024

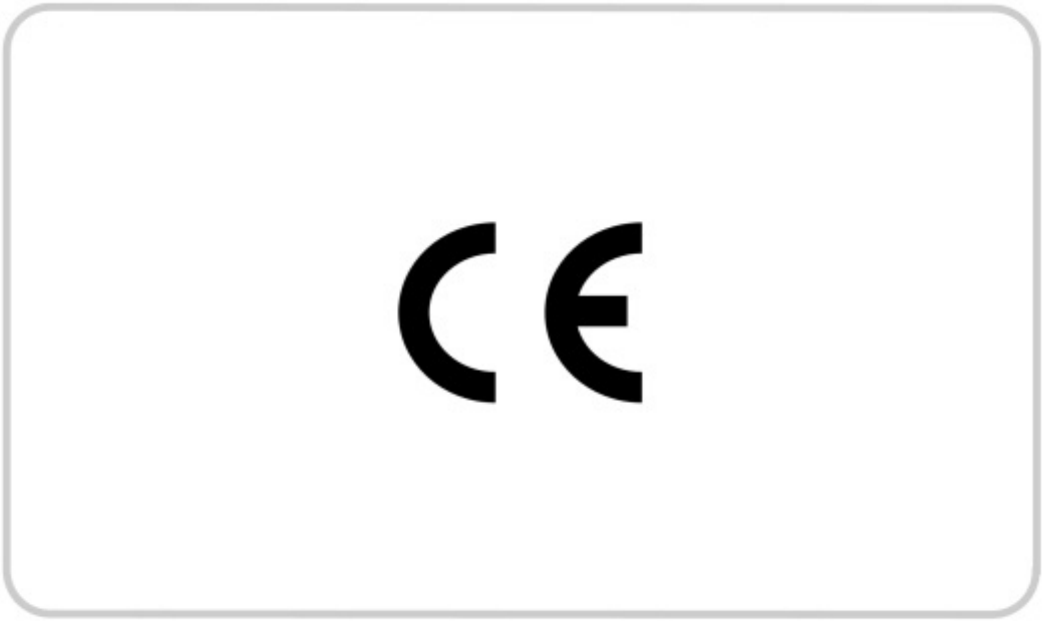
AGREE PAR LE MCPT (REPUBLIQUE DE DJIBOUTI)

Numéro d'agrément: 043/DDTIC/2024

Date d'agrément: 16/04/2024

Eurasian Customs Union

European Union (EU)



Ghana

NCA APPROVED: 7ES-7M-XB1-RDR

Independent State Of Samoa



Indonesia

Model: WCFDM00N2A1
Sertifikat Nomor: 80110/SDPPI/2022
PLG ID: 13493

Model: WCFDM00N2A3
Sertifikat Nomor: 80111/SDPPI/2022
PLG ID: 13493

Model: WCFDM00N2A5
Sertifikat Nomor: 80112/SDPPI/2022
PLG ID: 13493

Model: WCFDM00N2A1
Sertifikat Nomor: 106189/SDPPI/2024
PLG ID: 13493

Israel

1. מספר אישור התאמה מטעם משרד התקשורת : 51-80014
2. חל איסור לבצע פעולות במכשיר שיש בהן כדי לשנות את תכונותיו האלחוטיות של המכשיר, ובכלל זה שינויי תוכנה, החלפת אנטנה מקורית או הוספת אפשרות לחיבור לאנטנה חיצונית, בלא קבלת אישור משרד התקשורת, בשל החשש להפרעות אלחוטיות

1. מספר אישור התאמה מטעם משרד התקשורת : 51-80015
2. חל איסור לבצע פעולות במכשיר שיש בהן כדי לשנות את תכונותיו האלחוטיות של המכשיר, ובכלל זה שינויי תוכנה, החלפת אנטנה מקורית או הוספת אפשרות לחיבור לאנטנה חיצונית, בלא קבלת אישור משרד התקשורת, בשל החשש להפרעות אלחוטיות

1. מספר אישור התאמה מטעם משרד התקשורת : 51-80013
2. חל איסור לבצע פעולות במכשיר שיש בהן כדי לשנות את תכונותיו האלחוטיות של המכשיר, ובכלל זה שינויי תוכנה, החלפת אנטנה מקורית או הוספת אפשרות לחיבור לאנטנה חיצונית, בלא קבלת אישור משרד התקשורת, בשל החשש להפרעות אלחוטיות

Jamaica

This product contains a Type Approved Module by Jamaica: SMA - WCFDM00N2A

Malaysia



HIDF16000009

Mauritania

AGREE PAR L'ANE MAURITANIE
Numéro d'agrément: 0935/ARE/2021
Date d'agrément: 23/03/2021

AGREE PAR L'ANE MAURITANIE
Numéro d'agrément: 0934/ARE/2021
Date d'agrément: 23/03/2021

AGREE PAR L'ANE MAURITANIE
Numéro d'agrément: 0933/ARE/2021
Date d'agrément: 23/03/2021

Moldova



Morocco

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC
Numéro d'agrément: MR00027924ANRT2021
Date d'agrément: 25/03/2021

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC
Numéro d'agrément: MR00027925ANRT2021
Date d'agrément: 25/03/2021

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC
Numéro d'agrément: MR00027923ANRT2021
Date d'agrément: 25/03/2021

Pakistan

Pakistan Telecommunication Authority

PTA

Approved by PTA 2022
Approved by PTA 2023

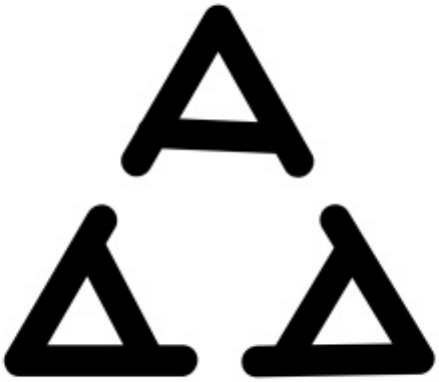
Paraguay

NR: 2021-04-I-0202

NR: 2021-04-I-0203

NR: 2021-04-I-0204

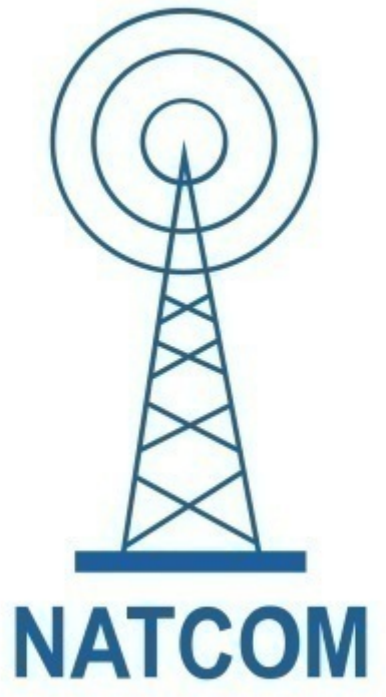
Serbia



? 005 21

? 005 24

Sierra Leone



TAN: 2021-002-0099

Singapore

Complies with IMDA Standards

DA 00461

South Africa

TA-2021/0360
APPROVED

South Korea

R-R-LGE-WCFDM00N2A1
R-R-abh-WCFDM00N2A1

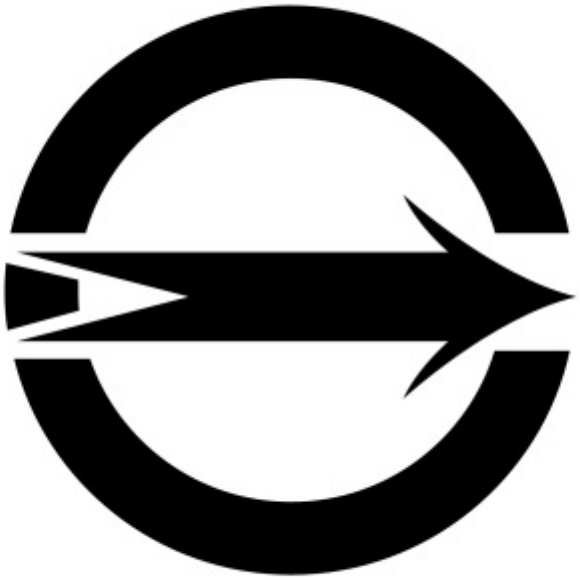
Taiwan

CCAB21LP050AT3

CCAB21LP0500T1

CCAB21LP050BT5

取得審驗證明之低功率射頻器材，非經核准，公司、商號或使用者均不得擅自變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。低功率射頻器材之使用不得影享飛航安全及干擾合法通信；經發現有干擾現象時，應立即停用，並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用。前述合法通信，指依電信管理法規定作業之無線電通信。



R43208

Ukraine



UA.TR.028

United Kingdom



United Arab Emirates (UAE)









United States and Canada

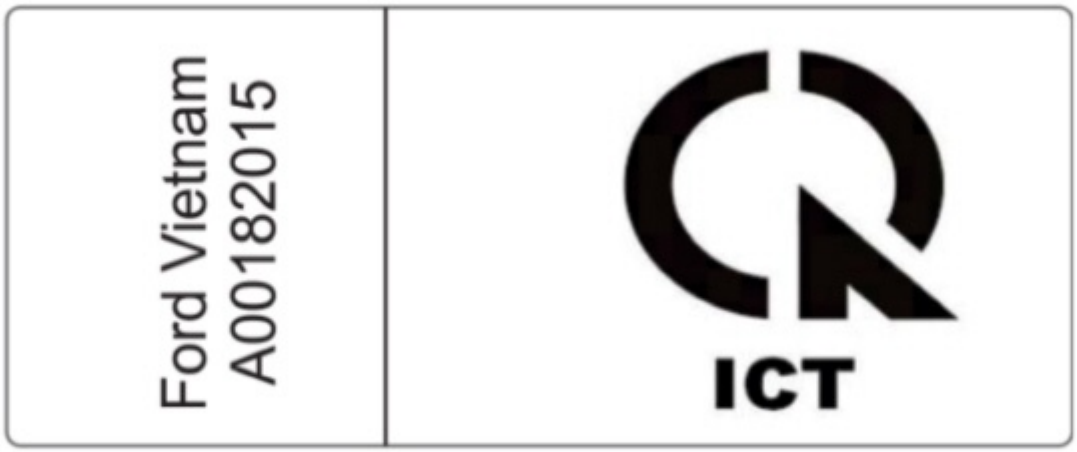
FCC ID: 2A6WXWCFDM00N2A

IC: 2703H-WCFDM00N2A

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

1. L'appareil ne doit pas produire de brouillage;
2. L'appareil doit accepter tout brouillage radioélectrique subi, même si le brouillage est susceptible d'en compromettre le fonctionnement.

Note: Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.
RF Radiation Exposure Statement: This equipment complies with FCC RF Radiation exposure limits set forth for an uncontrolled environment. This device and its antenna must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter. This equipment should be installed and operated with a normally maintained separation distance of at least 8 in (20 cm) between the radiator and your body.
Vietnam



Zambia



ZMB/ZICTA/TA/2021/4/54

Perchlorate

Certain components in your vehicle such as airbag modules, seatbelt pretensioners and remote control batteries may contain perchlorate material. Special handling may apply for service or vehicle end of life disposal.
For more information visit:
dtsc.ca.gov/perchlorate

Replacement Parts Recommendation

We have built your vehicle to the highest standards using quality parts. We recommend that you demand the use of genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts whenever your vehicle requires scheduled maintenance or repair. You can clearly identify genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts by looking for the Ford, FoMoCo or Motorcraft branding on the parts or their packaging.
Scheduled Maintenance and Mechanical Repairs
One of the best ways for you to make sure that your vehicle provides years of service is to have it maintained in line with our recommendations using parts that conform to the specifications detailed in this Owner's Manual.
Genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts meet or exceed these specifications.
Collision Repairs
We hope that you never experience a collision, but accidents happen sometimes.
Genuine Ford replacement collision parts meet our stringent requirements for fit, finish, structural integrity, corrosion protection and dent resistance. During vehicle development we validate that these parts deliver the intended level of protection as a whole system. A great way to know for sure you are getting this level of protection is to use genuine Ford replacement collision parts.
Warranty on Replacement Parts
Genuine Ford and Motorcraft replacement parts are the only replacement parts that benefit from a Ford Warranty.
The Ford Warranty may not cover damage caused to your vehicle as a result of failed non-Ford parts.
For additional information, refer to the terms and conditions of the Ford Warranty.

Mobile Communications Equipment

WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Using mobile communications equipment is becoming increasingly important in the conduct of business and personal affairs.However, you must not compromise your own or others' safety when using such equipment. Mobile communications can enhance personal safety and security when appropriately used, particularly in emergency situations. Safety must be paramount when using mobile communications equipment to avoid negating these benefits.Mobile communication equipment includes, but is not limited to, cellular phones, pagers, portable email devices, text messaging devices and portable two-way radios.

Federal Highway Administration Regulation

Regulations such as those issued by the Federal Highway Administration or issued pursuant to the Occupational Safety and Health Act (OSHA), and state and local laws and regulations may require additional equipment for the way you intend to use your vehicle. It is the responsibility of the registered owner to determine the applicability of such laws and regulations to your intended use for the vehicle, and to arrange for the installation of required equipment. The dealer has information about the availability of equipment which can be ordered for your vehicle.

End User License Agreement

VEHICLE SOFTWARE END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT (EULA)

- You (“You” or “Your” as applicable) have acquired a vehicle having several devices, including SYNC ® and various control modules, ("DEVICES") that include software licensed or owned by Ford Motor Company and its affiliates ("FORD MOTOR COMPANY"). Those software products of FORD MOTOR COMPANY origin, as well as associated media, printed materials, and "online" or electronic documentation ("SOFTWARE") are protected by international intellectual property laws and treaties. The SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. All rights reserved.
- The SOFTWARE may interface with and/or communicate with, or may be later upgraded to interface with and/or communicate with additional software and/or systems provided by FORD MOTOR COMPANY.

IF YOU DO NOT AGREE TO THIS END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT ("EULA") DO NOT USE THE DEVICES OR COPY THE SOFTWARE. ANY USE OF THE SOFTWARE, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO USE ON THE DEVICES, WILL CONSTITUTE YOUR AGREEMENT TO THIS EULA (OR RATIFICATION OF ANY PREVIOUS CONSENT).
GRANT OF SOFTWARE LICENSE: This EULA grants you the following license:

- You may use the SOFTWARE as installed on the DEVICES and as otherwise interfacing with systems and/or services provide by or through FORD MOTOR COMPANY or its third party software and service providers.

Description of Other Rights and Limitations.

- **Speech Recognition:** If the SOFTWARE includes speech recognition component(s), you should understand that speech recognition is an inherently statistical process and that recognition errors are inherent in the process. Neither FORD MOTOR COMPANY nor its suppliers shall be liable for any damages arising out of errors in the speech recognition process. It is your responsibility to monitor any speech recognition functions included in the system.
- **Limitations on Reverse Engineering, Decompilation and Disassembly:** You may not reverse engineer, decompile, translate, disassemble or attempt to discover any source code or underlying ideas or algorithms of the SOFTWARE nor permit others to reverse engineer, decompile or disassemble the SOFTWARE, except and only to the extent that such activity is expressly permitted by applicable law notwithstanding this limitation or to the extent as may be permitted by the licensing terms governing use of any open source components included with the SOFTWARE.
- **Limitations on Distributing, Copying, Modifying and Creating Derivative Works:** You may not distribute, copy, make modifications to or create derivative works based on the SOFTWARE, except and only to the extent that such activity is expressly permitted by applicable law notwithstanding this limitation or to the extent as may be permitted by the licensing terms governing use of any open source components included with the SOFTWARE.
- **Single EULA:** The end user documentation for the DEVICES and related systems and services may contain multiple EULAs, such as multiple translations and/or multiple media versions (e.g., in the user documentation and in the software). Even if you receive multiple EULAs, you are licensed to use only one (1) copy of the SOFTWARE.

- **SOFTWARE Transfer:** You may permanently transfer your rights under this EULA only as part of a sale or transfer of the DEVICES, provided you retain no copies, you transfer all of the SOFTWARE (including all component parts, the media and printed materials, any upgrades, and, if applicable, the Certificate(s) of Authenticity), and the recipient agrees to the terms of this EULA. If the SOFTWARE is an upgrade, any transfer must include all prior versions of the SOFTWARE.
- **Termination:** Without prejudice to any other rights, FORD MOTOR COMPANY may terminate this EULA if you fail to comply with the terms and conditions of this EULA.
- **Internet-Based Services Components:** The SOFTWARE may contain components that enable and facilitate the use of certain Internet-based services. You acknowledge and agree that FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and service suppliers, its affiliates and/or its designated agent may automatically check the version of the SOFTWARE and/or its components that you are utilizing and may provide upgrades or supplements to the SOFTWARE that may be automatically downloaded to your DEVICES.
- **Additional Software/Services:** The SOFTWARE may permit FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and service suppliers, its affiliates and/or its designated agent to provide or make available to you SOFTWARE updates, supplements, add-on components, or Internet-based services components of the SOFTWARE after the date you obtain your initial copy of the SOFTWARE ("Supplemental Components".) SOFTWARE updates may cause you to incur additional charges from your wireless service provider. If FORD MOTOR COMPANY or third party software and services suppliers provide or make available to you Supplemental Components and no other EULA terms are provided along with the Supplemental Components, then the terms of this EULA shall apply. FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates and/or its designated agent reserve the right to discontinue without liability any Internet-based services provided to you or made available to you through the use of the SOFTWARE.
- **Links to Third Party Sites:** The SOFTWARE may provide you with the ability to link to third party sites. The third party sites are not under the control of FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates and/or its designated agent. Neither FORD MOTOR COMPANY nor its affiliates nor its designated agent are responsible for (I) the contents of any third party sites, any links contained in third party sites, or any changes or updates to third party sites, or (ii) webcasting or any other form of transmission received from any third party sites. If the SOFTWARE provides links to third party sites, those links are provided to you only as a convenience, and the inclusion of any link does not imply an endorsement of the third party site by FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates and/or its designated agent.
- **Obligation to Drive Responsibly:** You recognize your obligation to drive responsibly and keep attention on the road. You will read and abide with the DEVICES operating instructions particularly as they pertain to safety and you agree to assume any risk associated with the use of the DEVICES.

UPGRADES AND RECOVERY MEDIA: If the SOFTWARE is provided by FORD MOTOR COMPANY separate from the DEVICES on media such as a ROM chip, CD ROM disk(s) or via web download or other means, and is labeled "For Upgrade Purposes Only" or "For Recovery Purposes Only" you may install one (1) copy of such SOFTWARE onto the DEVICES as a replacement copy for the existing SOFTWARE, and use it in accordance with this EULA, including any additional EULA terms accompanying the upgrade SOFTWARE.

INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHTS: All title and intellectual property rights in and to the SOFTWARE (including but not limited to any images, photographs, animations, video, audio, music, text and "applets" incorporated into the SOFTWARE), the accompanying printed materials, and any copies of the SOFTWARE, are owned by FORD MOTOR COMPANY, or its affiliates or suppliers. The SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. You may not copy the printed materials accompanying the SOFTWARE. All title and intellectual property rights in and to the content which may be accessed through use of the SOFTWARE is the property of the respective content owner and may be protected by applicable copyright or other intellectual property laws and treaties. This EULA grants you no rights to use such content outside its intended use. All rights not specifically granted under this EULA are reserved by FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates, and third party software and service providers and suppliers. Use of any on-line services which may be accessed through the SOFTWARE may be governed by the respective terms of use

relating to such services. If this SOFTWARE contains documentation that is provided only in electronic form, you may print one copy of such electronic documentation.
EXPORT RESTRICTIONS: You acknowledge that the SOFTWARE is subject to U.S. and European Union export jurisdiction. You agree to comply with all applicable international and national laws that apply to the SOFTWARE, including the U.S. Export Administration Regulations, as well as end-user, end-use and destination restrictions issued by U.S. and other governments.
TRADEMARKS: This EULA does not grant you any rights in connection with any trademarks or service marks of FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates, and third party software and service providers.
PRODUCT SUPPORT: Please refer to FORD MOTOR COMPANY instructions provided in the documentation for the DEVICES product support, such as the vehicle owner guide.
Should you have any questions concerning this EULA, or if you desire to contact FORD MOTOR COMPANY for any other reason, please refer to the address provided in the documentation for the DEVICES.
No Liability for Certain Damages: EXCEPT AS PROHIBITED BY LAW, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, ANY THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE OR SERVICES SUPPLIERS, AND THEIR AFFILIATES SHALL HAVE NO LIABILITY FOR ANY INDIRECT, SPECIAL, CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES ARISING FROM OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OR PERFORMANCE OF THE SOFTWARE. THIS LIMITATION SHALL APPLY EVEN IF ANY REMEDY FAILS OF ITS ESSENTIAL PURPOSE. THERE ARE NO WARRANTIES OTHER THAN THOSE THAT MAY BE EXPRESSLY PROVIDED FOR YOUR NEW VEHICLE.
SYNC® Automotive Important Safety Information Read and follow instructions:

- Before using your SYNC® system, read and follow all instructions and safety information provided in this end user manual ("Owner Guide".) Not following precautions found in the Owner Guide can lead to an accident or other serious injuries.

General Operation

- **Voice Command Control**: Certain functions within the SYNC® system may be accomplished using voice commands. Using voice commands while driving helps you to operate the system without removing your hands from the wheel or eyes from the road.
- **Prolonged Views of Screen:** Do not access any function requiring a prolonged view of the screen while you are driving. Pull over in a safe and legal manner before attempting to access a function of the system requiring prolonged attention.
- **Volume Setting:** Do not raise the volume excessively. Keep the volume at a level where you can still hear outside traffic and emergency signals while driving. Driving while unable to hear these sounds could cause an accident.
- **Navigation Features:** Any navigation features included in the system are intended to provide turn by turn instructions to get you to a desired destination. Please make certain all persons using this system carefully read and follow instructions and safety information fully.
- **Distraction Hazard:** Any navigation features may require manual (non-verbal) setup. Attempting to perform such set-up or insert data while driving can distract your attention and could cause an accident or other serious injury. Stop the vehicle in a safe and legal manner before attempting these operations.
- **Let Your Judgment Prevail:** Any navigation features are provided only as an aid. Make your driving decisions based on your observations of local conditions and existing traffic regulations. Any such feature is not a substitute for your personal judgment. Any route suggestions made by this system should never replace any local traffic regulations or your personal judgment or knowledge of safe driving practices.
- **Route Safety:** Do not follow the route suggestions if doing so would result in an unsafe or illegal maneuver, if you would be placed in an unsafe situation, or if you would be directed into an area that you consider unsafe. The driver is ultimately responsible for the safe operation of the vehicle and therefore, must evaluate whether it is safe to follow the suggested directions.
- **Potential Map Inaccuracy:** Maps used by this system may be inaccurate because of changes in roads, traffic controls or driving conditions. Always use good judgment and common sense when following

the suggested routes.

- **Emergency Services:** Do not rely on any navigation features included in the system to route you to emergency services. Ask local authorities or an emergency services operator for these locations. Not all emergency services such as police, fire stations, hospitals and clinics are likely to be contained in the map database for such navigation features.

Your Responsibilities and Assumptions of Risk

- You agree to each of the following:(a) Any use of the SOFTWARE while driving an automobile or other vehicle in violation of applicable law or otherwise driving in an unsafe manner presents a significant risk of distracted driving and should not be attempted under any circumstances;(b) Use of the SOFTWARE at excessive volume poses a significant risk of hearing damage and should not be attempted under any circumstances;(c) The SOFTWARE may not be compatible with new or different versions of an operating system, third party software, or third party services, and the SOFTWARE may potentially cause a critical failure of an operating system, third party software, or third party service.(d) Any third party service accessed by or third party software used with the SOFTWARE (I) may charge an additional fee for access, (ii) may not work correctly, on an uninterrupted basis, or error free, (iii) may change streaming formats or discontinue operation, (iv) may contain adult, profane or offensive content; and (v) may contain inaccurate, false or misleading traffic, weather, financial or safety information or other content; and (e) Use of the SOFTWARE may cause you to incur additional charges from your wireless service provider (WSP) and any data or minute calculators that may be included in the software program are for reference only, are not warranted in any way and should not be relied upon in anyway.
- When using the SOFTWARE, you agree to be responsible for and assume the entire risk to the items set forth in Section (a) – (e) above.

Disclaimer of Warranty

YOU EXPRESSLY ACKNOWLEDGE AND AGREE THAT USE OF THE DEVICES AND SOFTWARE IS AT YOUR SOLE RISK AND THAT THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO SATISFACTORY QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, COMPATIBILITY, ACCURACY AND EFFORT IS WITH YOU. TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, THE SOFTWARE AND ANY THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES ARE PROVIDED "AS IS" AND “AS AVAILABLE”, WITH ALL FAULTS AND WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, AND FORD MOTOR COMPANY HEREBY DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES AND CONDITIONS WITH RESPECT TO THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, AND THIRD-PARTY SERVICES, EITHER EXPRESS, IMPLIED OR STATUTORY, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES AND/OR CONDITIONS OF MERCHANTABILITY, OF SATISFACTORY QUALITY, OF FITNESS FOR AN ARTICULAR PURPOSE, OF ACCURACY, OF QUIET ENJOYMENT, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD-PARTY RIGHTS. FORD MOTOR COMPANY DOES NOT WARRANT (a) AGAINST INTERFERENCE WITH YOUR ENJOYMENT OF THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES, (b) THAT THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES WILL MEET YOUR REQUIREMENTS, (c) THAT THE OPERATION OF THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES WILL BE UNINTERRUPTED OR ERROR-FREE, (d) OR THAT DEFECTS IN THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES WILL BE CORRECTED. NO ORAL OR WRITTEN INFORMATION OR ADVICE GIVEN BY FORD MOTOR COMPANY OR ITS AUTHORIZED REPRESENTATIVE SHALL CREATE A WARRANTY. SHOULD THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES PROVE DEFECTIVE, YOU ASSUME THE ENTIRE COST OF ALL NECESSARY SERVICING, REPAIR OR CORRECTION. SOME JURISDICTIONS DO NOT ALLOW THE DISCLAIMER OF IMPLIED WARRANTIES OR LIMITATIONS ON APPLICABLE STATUTORY RIGHTS OF A CONSUMER, SO THE ABOVE DISCLAIMER MAY NOT FULLY APPLY TO YOU. THE SOLE WARRANTY PROVIDED BY FORD MOTOR COMPANY SHALL BE FOUND IN THE WARRANTY INFORMATION INCLUDING WITH YOUR OWNER GUIDE. TO THE EXTENT THAT THERE IS ANY CONFLICT BETWEEN THE TERMS OF THIS SECTION AND THE WARRANTY BOOKLET, THE WARRANTY BOOKLET

SHALL CONTROL.

Applicable Law, Venue, Jurisdiction

- The laws of the State of Michigan govern this EULA and Your use of the SOFTWARE. Your use of the SOFTWARE may also be subject to other local, state, national, or international laws. Any litigation arising out of or related to this EULA shall be brought and maintained exclusively in a court of the State of Michigan located in Wayne County or in the United States District Court for the Eastern District of Michigan. You hereby consent to submit to the personal jurisdiction of a court in the State of Michigan located in Wayne County and the United States District Court for the Eastern District of Michigan for any dispute arising out of or relating to this EULA.

Binding Arbitration and Class Action Waiver

(a) Application. This Section applies to any dispute EXCEPT IT DOES NOT INCLUDE A DISPUTE RELATING TO COPYRIGHT INFRINGEMENT, OR TO THE ENFORCEMENT OR VALIDITY OF YOUR, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, OR ANY OF FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S LICENSORS' INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHTS. Dispute means any dispute, action, or other controversy between You and FORD MOTOR COMPANY, other than the exceptions listed above, concerning the SOFTWARE (including its price) or this EULA, whether in contract, warranty, tort, statute, regulation, ordinance, or any other legal or equitable basis.

(b) Notice of Dispute. In the event of a Dispute, You or FORD MOTOR COMPANY must give the other a "Notice of Dispute", which is a written statement of the name, address, and contact information of the party giving it, the facts giving rise to the dispute, and the relief requested. You and FORD MOTOR COMPANY will attempt to resolve any dispute through informal negotiation within 60 days from the date the Notice of Dispute is sent. After 60 days, You or FORD MOTOR COMPANY may commence arbitration.

(c) Small claims court. You may also litigate any dispute in small claims court in your county of residence or FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S principal place of business, if the dispute meets all requirements to be heard in the small claims court. You may litigate in small claims court whether or not You negotiated informally first.

(d) Binding arbitration. If You and FORD MOTOR COMPANY, do not resolve any dispute by informal negotiation or in small claims court, any other effort to resolve the dispute will be conducted exclusively by binding arbitration. You are giving up the right to litigate (or participate in as a party or class member) all disputes in court before a judge or jury. Instead, all disputes will be resolved before a neutral arbitrator, whose decision will be final except for a limited right of appeal under the Federal Arbitration Act. Any court with jurisdiction over the parties may enforce the arbitrator's award.

(e) Class action waiver. Any proceedings to resolve or litigate any dispute in any forum will be conducted solely on an individual basis. Neither you nor FORD MOTOR COMPANY, will seek to have any dispute heard as a class action, as a private attorney general action, or in any other proceeding in which any party acts or proposes to act in a representative capacity. No arbitration or proceeding will be combined with another without the prior written consent of all parties to all affected arbitrations or proceedings.

(f) Arbitration procedure. Any arbitration will be conducted by the American Arbitration Association (the "AAA"), under its Commercial Arbitration Rules. If You are an individual and use the SOFTWARE for personal or vehicle use, or if the value of the dispute is $75,000 or less whether or not You are an individual or how You use the SOFTWARE, the AAA Supplementary Procedures for Consumer-Related Disputes will also apply. To commence arbitration, submit a Commercial Arbitration Rules Demand for Arbitration form to the AAA. You may request a telephonic or in-person hearing by following the AAA rules. In a dispute involving $10,000 or less, any hearing will be telephonic unless the arbitrator finds good cause to hold an in-person hearing instead. For more information, see adr.org or call 1-800-778-7879. You agree to commence arbitration only in your county of residence or FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S principal place of business. The arbitrator may award the same damages to you individually as a court could. The arbitrator may award declaratory or injunctive relief only to you individually, and only to the extent required to satisfy your individual claim.

(g) Arbitration fees and incentives.

- I. Disputes involving $75,000 or less. FORD MOTOR COMPANY will promptly reimburse your filing fees and pay the AAA's and arbitrator's fees and expenses. If you reject FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S last written settlement offer made before the arbitrator was appointed ("last written offer"), your dispute goes all the way to an arbitrator's decision (called an "award"), and the arbitrator awards you more than the last written offer, FORD MOTOR COMPANY will give you three incentives: (1) pay the greater of the award or $1,000; (2) pay twice your reasonable attorney's fees, if any; and (3) reimburse any expenses (including expert witness fees and costs) that your attorney reasonably accrues for investigating, preparing, and pursuing your claim in arbitration. The arbitrator will determine the amounts.
- ii. Disputes involving more than $75,000. The AAA rules will govern payment of filing fees and the AAA's and arbitrator's fees and expenses.
- iii. Disputes involving any amount. In any arbitration you commence, FORD MOTOR COMPANY will seek its AAA or arbitrator's fees and expenses, or Your filing fees it reimbursed, only if the arbitrator finds the arbitration frivolous or brought for an improper purpose. In any arbitration FORD MOTOR COMPANY commences, it will pay all filing, AAA, and arbitrator's fees and expenses. It will not seek its attorney's fees or expenses from you in any arbitration. Fees and expenses are not counted in determining how much a dispute involves.

(h) Claims or disputes must be filed within one year. To the extent permitted by law, any claim or dispute under this EULA to which this Section applies must be filed within one year in small claims court (Section c) or in arbitration (Section d). The one-year period begins when the claim or dispute first could be filed. If such a claim or dispute is not filed within one year, it is permanently barred.
(I) Severability. If the class action waiver (Section e) is found to be illegal or unenforceable as to all or some parts of a dispute, then that portion of Section e will not apply to those parts. Instead, those parts will be severed and proceed in a court of law, with the remaining parts proceeding in arbitration. If any other provision of that portion Section e is found to be illegal or unenforceable, that provision will be severed with the remainder of Section e remaining in full force and effect.
Telenav Software End User License Agreement
Please read these terms and conditions carefully before you use the TeleNav Software. Your use of the TeleNav Software indicates that you accept these terms and conditions. If you do not accept these terms and conditions, do not break the seal of the package, launch, or otherwise use the TeleNav Software. TeleNav may revise this Agreement and the privacy policy at any time, with or without notice to you. You agree to visit the TeleNav website from time to time to review the then current version of this Agreement and of the privacy policy.
https://www.telenav.com

1. Safe and Lawful Use
You acknowledge that devoting attention to the TeleNav Software may pose a risk of injury or death to you and others in situations that otherwise require your undivided attention, and you therefore agree to comply with the following when using the TeleNav Software:
(a) observe all traffic laws and otherwise drive safely;
(b) use your own personal judgment while driving. If you feel that a route suggested by the TeleNav Software instructs you to perform an unsafe or illegal maneuver, places you in an unsafe situation, or directs you into an area that you consider to be unsafe, do not follow such instructions;

(c) do not input destinations, or otherwise manipulate the TeleNav Software, unless your vehicle is stationary and parked;
(d) do not use the TeleNav Software for any illegal, unauthorized, unintended, unsafe, hazardous, or unlawful purposes, or in any manner inconsistent with this Agreement;
(e) arrange all GPS and wireless devices and cables necessary for use of the TeleNav Software in a secure manner in your vehicle so that they will not interfere with your driving and will not prevent the operation of any safety device (such as an airbag).
You agree to indemnify and hold TeleNav harmless against all claims resulting from any dangerous or otherwise inappropriate use of the TeleNav Software in any moving vehicle, including as a result of your failure to comply with the directions above.
2. Account Information
You agree: (a) when registering the TeleNav Software, to provide TeleNav with true, accurate, current, and complete information about yourself, and (b) to inform TeleNav promptly of any changes to such information, and to keep it true, accurate, current and complete.
3. Software License

- Subject to your compliance with the terms of this Agreement, TeleNav hereby grants to you a personal, non-exclusive, non-transferable license (except as expressly permitted below in connection with your permanent transfer of the TeleNav Software license), without the right to sublicense, to use the TeleNav Software (in object code form only) in order to access and use the TeleNav Software. This license shall terminate upon any termination or expiration of this Agreement. You agree that you will use the TeleNav Software only for your personal business or leisure purposes, and not to provide commercial navigation services to other parties.

3.1 License Limitations

- **(a)** reverse engineer, decompile, disassemble, translate, modify, alter or otherwise change the TeleNav Software or any part thereof;**(b)** attempt to derive the source code, audio library or structure of the TeleNav Software without the prior express written consent of TeleNav; **(c)** remove from the TeleNav Software, or alter, any of TeleNav's or its suppliers' trademarks, trade names, logos, patent or copyright notices, or other notices or markings; **(d)** distribute, sublicense or otherwise transfer the TeleNav Software to others, except as part of your permanent transfer of the TeleNav Software; or **(e)** use the TeleNav Software in any manner that

I. infringes the intellectual property or proprietary rights, rights of publicity or privacy or other rights of any party,
ii. violates any law, statute, ordinance or regulation, including but not limited to laws and regulations related to spamming, privacy, consumer and child protection, obscenity or defamation, or
iii. is harmful, threatening, abusive, harassing, tortuous, defamatory, vulgar, obscene, libelous, or otherwise objectionable; and (f) lease, rent out, or otherwise permit unauthorized access by third parties to the TeleNav Software without advanced written permission of TeleNav.
4. Disclaimers

- To the fullest extent permissible pursuant to applicable law, in no event will TeleNav, its licensors and suppliers, or agents or employees of any of the foregoing, be liable for any decision made or action taken by you or anyone else in reliance on the information provided by the TeleNav Software. TeleNav also does not warrant the accuracy of the map or other data used for the TeleNav Software. Such data may not always reflect reality due to, among other things, road closures, construction, weather, new roads and other changing conditions. You are responsible for the entire risk arising out of your use of the TeleNav Software. For example but without limitation, you agree not to rely on the TeleNav Software for critical navigation in areas where the well-being or survival of you or others is dependent on the accuracy of navigation, as the maps or functionality of the TeleNav Software are not intended to support such high risk applications, especially in more remote geographical areas.

- TELENAV EXPRESSLY DISCLAIMS AND EXCLUDES ALL WARRANTIES IN CONNECTION WITH THE TELENAV SOFTWARE, WHETHER STATUTORY, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING ALL WARRANTIES WHICH MAY ARISE FROM COURSE OF DEALING, CUSTOM OR TRADE AND INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD PARTY RIGHTS WITH RESPECT TO THE TELENAV SOFTWARE.
- Certain jurisdictions do not permit the disclaimer of certain warranties, so this limitation may not apply to you.

5. Limitation of Liability

- TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED UNDER APPLICABLE LAW, UNDER NO CIRCUMSTANCES SHALL TELENAV OR ITS LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS BE LIABLE TO YOU OR TO ANY THIRD PARTY FOR ANY INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, CONSEQUENTIAL, SPECIAL OR EXEMPLARY DAMAGES (INCLUDING IN EACH CASE, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, DAMAGES FOR THE INABILITY TO USE THE EQUIPMENT OR ACCESS DATA, LOSS OF DATA, LOSS OF BUSINESS, LOSS OF PROFITS, BUSINESS INTERRUPTION OR THE LIKE) ARISING OUT OF THE USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THE TELENAV SOFTWARE, EVEN IF TELENAV HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. NOTWITHSTANDING ANY DAMAGES THAT YOU MIGHT INCUR FOR ANY REASON WHATSOEVER (INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, ALL DAMAGES REFERENCED HEREIN AND ALL DIRECT OR GENERAL DAMAGES IN CONTRACT, TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE) OR OTHERWISE), THE ENTIRE LIABILITY OF TELENAV AND OF ALL OF TELENAV'S SUPPLIERS SHALL BE LIMITED TO THE AMOUNT ACTUALLY PAID BY YOU FOR THE TELENAV SOFTWARE. SOME STATES AND/OR JURISDICTIONS DO NOT ALLOW THE EXCLUSION OR LIMITATION OF INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES, SO THE ABOVE LIMITATIONS OR EXCLUSIONS MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU.

6. Arbitration and Governing Law

- You agree that any dispute, claim or controversy arising out of or relating to this Agreement or the TeleNav Software shall be settled by independent arbitration involving a neutral arbitrator and administered by the American Arbitration Association in the County of Santa Clara, California. The arbitrator shall apply the Commercial Arbitration Rules of the American Arbitration Association, and the judgment upon the award rendered by the arbitrator may be entered by any court having jurisdiction. Note that there is no judge or jury in an arbitration proceeding and the decision of the arbitrator shall be binding upon both parties. You expressly agree to waive your right to a jury trial. This Agreement and performance hereunder will be governed by and construed in accordance with the laws of the State of California, without giving effect to its conflict of law provisions. To the extent judicial action is necessary in connection with the binding arbitration, both TeleNav and you agree to submit to the exclusive jurisdiction of the courts of the County of Santa Clara, California. The United Nations Convention on Contracts for the International Sale of Goods shall not apply.

7. Assignment

- You may not resell, assign, or transfer this Agreement or any of your rights or obligations, except in totality, in connection with your permanent transfer of the TeleNav Software, and expressly conditioned upon the new user of the TeleNav Software agreeing to be bound by the terms and conditions of this Agreement. Any such sale, assignment or transfer that is not expressly permitted under this paragraph will result in immediate termination of this Agreement, without liability to TeleNav, in which case you and all other parties shall immediately cease all use of the TeleNav Software. Notwithstanding the foregoing, TeleNav may assign this Agreement to any other party at any time without notice, provided the assignee remains bound by this Agreement.

8. Miscellaneous

8.1

This Agreement constitutes the entire agreement between TeleNav and you with respect to the subject matter hereof.

8.2

Except for the limited licenses expressly granted in this Agreement, TeleNav retains all right, title and interest in and to the TeleNav Software, including without limitation all related intellectual property rights. No licenses or other rights which are not expressly granted in this Agreement are intended to, or shall be, granted or conferred by implication, statute, inducement, estoppel or otherwise, and TeleNav and its suppliers and licensors hereby reserve all of their respective rights other than the licenses explicitly granted in this Agreement.

8.3

By using the TeleNav Software, you consent to receive from TeleNav all communications, including notices, agreements, legally required disclosures or other information in connection with the TeleNav Software (collectively, "Notices") electronically. TeleNav may provide such Notices by posting them on TeleNav's Website or by downloading such Notices to your wireless device. If you desire to withdraw your consent to receive Notices electronically, you must discontinue your use of the TeleNav Software.

8.4

TeleNav's or your failure to require performance of any provision shall not affect that party's right to require performance at any time thereafter, nor shall a waiver of any breach or default of this Agreement constitute a waiver of any subsequent breach or default or a waiver of the provision itself.

8.5

If any provision herein is held unenforceable, then such provision will be modified to reflect the intention of the parties, and the remaining provisions of this Agreement will remain in full force and effect.

8.6

The headings in this Agreement are for convenience of reference only, will not be deemed to be a part of this Agreement, and will not be referred to in connection with the construction or interpretation of this Agreement. As used in this Agreement, the words "include" and "including" and variations thereof, will not be deemed to be terms of limitation, but rather will be deemed to be followed by the words "without limitation".

9. Other Vendors Terms and Conditions

- The Telenav Software utilizes map and other data licensed to Telenav by third party vendors for the benefit of you and other end users. This Agreement includes end-user terms applicable to these companies (included at the end of this Agreement), and thus your use of the Telenav Software is also subject to such terms. You agree to comply with the following additional terms and conditions, which are applicable to Telenav’s third party vendor licensors.

9.1 End User Terms Required by HERE North America, LLC

The data (“Data”) is provided for your personal, internal use only and not for resale. It is protected by copyright, and is subject to the following terms and conditions which are agreed to by you, on the one hand, and Telenav (“Telenav”) and its licensors (including their licensors and suppliers) on the other hand.

© 2013 HERE. All rights reserved.

The Data for areas of Canada includes information taken with permission from Canadian authorities, including: © Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada, © Queen's Printer for Ontario, © Canada Post Corporation, GeoBase®, © Department of Natural Resources Canada.

HERE holds a non-exclusive license from the United States Postal Service® to publish and sell ZIP+4® information.

©United States Postal Service® 2014. Prices are not established, controlled or approved by the United States Postal Service®. The following trademarks and registrations are owned by the USPS: United States Postal Service, USPS, and ZIP+4

The Data for Mexico includes certain data from Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía.

9.2 End User Terms Required by NAV2 (Shanghai) Co., Ltd

The data (“Data”) is provided for your personal, internal use only and not for resale. It is protected by copyright, and is subject to the following terms and conditions which are agreed to by you, on the one hand, and NAV2 (Shanghai) Co., Ltd (“NAV2”) and its licensors (including their licensors and suppliers) on the other hand. 20xx. All rights reserved

Terms and Conditions

Permitted Use. You agree to use this Data together with the Telenav Software solely for the internal business and personal purposes for which you were licensed, and not for service bureau, time-sharing or other similar purposes. Accordingly, but subject to the restrictions set forth in the following paragraphs, you agree not to otherwise reproduce, copy, modify, decompile, disassemble, create any derivative works of, or reverse engineer any portion of this Data, and may not transfer or distribute it in any form, for any purpose, except to the extent permitted by mandatory laws.

Restrictions. Except where you have been specifically licensed to do so by Telenav, and without limiting the preceding paragraph, you may not use this Data (a) with any products, systems, or applications installed or otherwise connected to or in communication with vehicles, capable of vehicle navigation, positioning, dispatch, real time route guidance, fleet management or similar applications; or (b) with or in communication with any positioning devices or any mobile or wireless-connected electronic or computer devices, including without limitation cellular phones, palmtop and handheld computers, pagers, and personal digital assistants or PDAs.

Warning. The Data may contain inaccurate or incomplete information due to the passage of time, changing circumstances, sources used and the nature of collecting comprehensive geographic data, any of which may lead to incorrect results.

No Warranty. This Data is provided to you “as is,” and you agree to use it at your own risk. Telenav and its licensors (and their licensors and suppliers) make no guarantees, representations or warranties of any kind, express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, content, quality, accuracy, completeness, effectiveness, reliability, fitness for a particular purpose, usefulness, use or results to be obtained from this Data, or that the Data or server will be uninterrupted or error-free.

Disclaimer of Warranty: TELENAV AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) DISCLAIM ANY WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE OR NON-INFRINGEMENT. Some States, Territories and Countries do not allow certain warranty exclusions, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

Disclaimer of Liability: TELENAV AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) SHALL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU: IN RESPECT OF ANY CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION, IRRESPECTIVE OF THE NATURE OF THE CAUSE OF THE CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION ALLEGING ANY LOSS, INJURY OR DAMAGES, DIRECT OR INDIRECT, WHICH MAY RESULT FROM THE USE OR POSSESSION OF THE INFORMATION; OR FOR ANY LOSS OF PROFIT, REVENUE, CONTRACTS OR SAVINGS, OR ANY OTHER DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THIS INFORMATION, ANY DEFECT IN THE INFORMATION, OR THE BREACH OF THESE TERMS OR CONDITIONS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION IN CONTRACT OR TORT OR BASED ON A WARRANTY, EVEN IF TELENAV OR ITS LICENSORS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. Some States, Territories and Countries do not allow certain liability exclusions or damages limitations, so to that extent the above may not apply to you.

Export Control. You shall not export from anywhere any part of the Data or any direct product thereof except in compliance with, and with all licenses and approvals required under, applicable export laws, rules and regulations, including but not limited to the laws, rules and regulations administered by the Office of Foreign Assets Control of the U.S. Department of Commerce and the Bureau of Industry and Security of the U.S. Department of Commerce. To the extent that any such export laws, rules or regulations prohibit HERE from complying with any of its obligations hereunder to deliver or distribute Data, such failure shall be excused and shall not constitute a breach of this Agreement.

Entire Agreement. These terms and conditions constitute the entire agreement between Telenav (and its licensors, including their licensors and suppliers) and you pertaining to the subject matter hereof, and supersedes in their entirety any and all written or oral agreements previously existing between us with respect to such subject matter.

Governing Law. The above terms and conditions shall be governed by the laws of the State of Illinois [insert "Netherlands" where European HERE Data is used], without giving effect to (i) its conflict of laws provisions, or (ii) the United Nations Convention for Contracts for the International Sale of Goods, which is explicitly excluded. You agree to submit to the jurisdiction of the State of Illinois [insert "The Netherlands" where European HERE Data is used] for any and all disputes, claims and actions arising from or in connection with the Data provided to you hereunder.
Government End Users. If the Data is being acquired by or on behalf of the United States government or any other entity seeking or applying rights similar to those customarily claimed by the United States government, this Data is a "commercial item" as that term is defined at 48 C.F.R. ("FAR") 2.101, is licensed in accordance with these End-User Terms, and each copy of Data delivered or otherwise furnished shall be marked and embedded as appropriate with the following "Notice of Use," and shall be treated in accordance with such Notice:

NOTICE OF USE
CONTRACTOR (MANUFACTURER/ SUPPLIER) NAME: HERE CONTRACTOR (MANUFACTURER/SUPPLIER) ADDRESS: c/o Nokia, 425 West Randolph Street, Chicago, Illinois 60606 This Data is a commercial item as defined in FAR 2.101 and is subject to these End-User Terms under which this Data was provided.
© 1987 – 2014 HERE – All rights reserved.

If the Contracting Officer, federal government agency, or any federal official refuses to use the legend provided herein, the Contracting Officer, federal government agency, or any federal official must notify HERE prior to seeking additional or alternative rights in the Data.

I. US/Canada Territory

A. United States Data. The End-User Terms for any Application containing Data for the United States shall contain the following notices:

"HERE holds a non-exclusive license from the United States Postal Service® to publish and sell ZIP+4® information."

"©United States Postal Service® 20XX. Prices are not established, controlled or approved by the United States Postal Service®. The following trademarks and registrations are owned by the USPS: United States Postal Service, USPS, and ZIP+4."

B. Canada Data. The following provisions apply to the Data for Canada, which may include or reflect data from third party licensors ("Third Party Data"), including Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada ("Her Majesty"), Canada Post Corporation ("Canada Post") and the Department of Natural Resources of Canada ("NRCan"):

1. Disclaimer and Limitation: Client agrees that its use of the Third Party Data is subject to the following provisions:

a. Disclaimer: The Third Party Data is licensed on an "as is" basis. The licensors of such data, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, make no guarantees, representations or warranties respecting such data, either express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, effectiveness, completeness, accuracy or fitness for a particular purpose.

b. Limitation on Liability: The Third Party Data licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, shall not be liable: (i) in respect of any claim, demand or action, irrespective of the nature of the cause of the claim, demand or action alleging any loss, injury or damages, direct or indirect, which may result from the use or possession of such Data; or (ii) in any way for loss of revenues or contracts, or any other consequential loss of any kind resulting from any defect in the Data.

2. Copyright Notice: In connection with each copy of all or any portion of the Data for the Territory of Canada, Client shall affix in a conspicuous manner the following copyright notice on at least one of: (i) the label for the storage media of the copy; (ii) the packaging for the copy; or (iii) other materials packaged with the copy, such as user manuals or end user license agreements: "This data includes information taken with permission from Canadian authorities, including © Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada, © Queen's Printer for Ontario, © Canada Post Corporation, GeoBase®, © The Department of Natural Resources Canada. All rights reserved."

3. End-User Terms: Except as otherwise agreed by the parties, in connection with the provision of any portion of the Data for the Territory of Canada to End-Users as may be authorized under the Agreement, Client shall provide such End-Users, in a reasonably conspicuous manner, with terms (set forth with other end user terms required to be provided under the Agreement, or as otherwise may be provided, by Client) which shall include the following provisions on behalf of the Third Party Data licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan:

The Data may include or reflect data of licensors, including Her Majesty the Queen in the Right of Canada ("Her Majesty"), Canada Post Corporation ("Canada Post") and the Department of Natural Resources Canada ("NRCan"). Such data is licensed on an "as is" basis. The licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, make no guarantees, representations or warranties respecting such data, either express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, effectiveness, completeness, accuracy or fitness for a particular purpose. The licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, shall not be liable in respect of any claim, demand or action, irrespective of the nature of the cause of the claim, demand or action alleging any loss, injury or damages, direct or indirect, which may result from the use or possession of the data or the Data. The licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, shall not be liable in any way for loss of revenues or contracts, or any other consequential loss of any kind resulting from any defect in the data or the Data. End User shall indemnify and save harmless the licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, and their officers, employees and agents from and against any claim, demand or action, irrespective of the nature of the cause of the claim, demand or action, alleging loss, costs, expenses, damages or injuries (including injuries resulting in death) arising out of the use or possession of the data or the Data.

4. Additional Provisions: The terms contained in this Section are in addition to all of the rights and obligations of the parties under the Agreement. To the extent that any of the provisions of this Section are inconsistent with, or conflict with, any other provisions of the Agreement, the provisions of this Section shall prevail.

II. Mexico. The following provision applies to the Data for Mexico, which includes certain data from the Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía ("INEGI"):

A. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging containing Data for Mexico shall contain the following notice: "Fuente: INEGI (Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía)"

III. Latin America Territory

A. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Territory	Notice
Argentina	IGN “INSTITUTO GEOGRAFICO NACIONAL ARGENTINO”
Ecuador	“INSTITUTO GEOGRAFICO MILITAR DEL ECUADOR AUTORIZACION N° IGM-2011-01- PCO-01 DEL 25 DE ENERO DE 2011” “source: © IGN 2009 - BD TOPO ®”
Guadeloupe, French Guiana and Martinique Mexico	“Fuente: INEGI (Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía)”

IV. Middle East Territory

A. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Country	Notice
Jordan	“© Royal Jordanian Geographic Centre”. The foregoing notice requirement for Jordan Data is a material term of the Agreement. If Client or any of its permitted sublicensees (if any) fail to meet such requirement, HERE shall have the right to terminate Client’s license with respect to the Jordan Data.

B. Jordan Data. Client and its permitted sublicensees (if any) are restricted from licensing and/or otherwise distributing HERE’s database for the country of Jordan (“Jordan Data”) for use in Enterprise Applications to (i) non-Jordanian entities for use of the Jordan Data solely in Jordan or (ii) Jordan-based customers. In addition, Client, its permitted sublicensees (if any) and End-Users are restricted from using the Jordan Data in Enterprise Applications if such party is (i) a non-Jordanian entity using the Jordan Data solely in Jordan or (ii) a Jordan-based customer. For purposes of the foregoing, “Enterprise Applications” shall mean Geomarketing applications, GIS applications, mobile business asset management applications, call center applications, telematics applications, public organization Internet applications or for providing geocoding services.

V. Europe Territory

A. Use of Certain Traffic Codes in Europe

1. General Restrictions Applicable to Traffic Codes. Client acknowledges and agrees that in certain countries of the Europe Territory, Client will need to obtain rights directly from third party RDS-TMC code providers to receive and use the Traffic Codes in the Data and to deliver to End-Users Transactions in any way derived from or based on such Traffic Codes. For such countries, HERE shall deliver the Data incorporating Traffic Codes to Client only after receiving certification from Client of its having obtained such rights.

2. Display of Third Party Rights Legends for Belgium. Client shall, for each Transaction that uses Traffic Codes for Belgium, provide the following notice to the End-User: “Traffic Codes for Belgium are provided by the Ministerie van de Vlaamse Gemeenschap and the Ministèrie de l’Equipement et des Transports.”

B. Paper Maps. With respect to any license granted to Client relating to making, selling or distributing paper maps (i.e., a map fixed on a paper or paper-like medium): (a) such license with respect to Data for the Territory of Great Britain is conditioned on Client's entering into and complying with a separate written agreement with the Ordnance Survey ("OS") to create and sell paper maps, Client's paying to the OS any and all applicable paper map royalties, and Client's complying with the OS copyright notice requirements; (b) such license for selling or otherwise distributing for charge with respect to Data for the Territory of Czech Republic is conditioned on Client's obtaining prior written consent from Kartografie a.s.; (c) such license for selling or distributing with respect to Data for the Territory of Switzerland is conditioned on Client's obtaining a permit from Bundesamt für Landestopografie of Switzerland; (d) Client is restricted from using Data for the Territory of France to create paper maps with a scale between 1:5,000 and 1:250,000; and (e) Client is restricted from using any Data to create, sell or distribute paper maps that are the same or substantially similar, in terms of data content and specific use of color, symbols and scale, to paper maps published by the European national mapping agencies, including without limitation, Landervermessungämter of Germany, Topografische Dienst of the Netherlands, Nationaal Geografisch Instituut of Belgium, Bundesamt für Landestopografie of Switzerland, Bundesamt für Eich- und Vermessungswesen of Austria, and the National Land Survey of Sweden.

C. OS Enforcement. Without limiting Section IV(B) above, with respect to Data for the Territory of Great Britain, Client acknowledges and agrees that the Ordnance Survey ("OS") may bring a direct action against Client to enforce compliance with the OS copyright notice (see Section IV(D) below) and paper map requirements (see Section IV(B) above) contained in this Agreement.

D. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Country(ies)	Notice
Austria	"© Bundesamt für Eich- und Vermessungswesen"
Croatia Cyprus, Estonia, Latvia, Lithuania, Moldova, Poland, Slovenia and/or Ukraine	"© EuroGeographics"
France	"source: © IGN 2009 – BD TOPO ®"
Germany	"Die Grundlagendaten wurden mit Genehmigung der zuständigen Behörden entnommen"
Great Britain	"Contains Ordnance Survey data © Crown copyright and database right 2010 Contains Royal Mail data © Royal Mail copyright and database right 2010"
Greece	"Copyright Geomatics Ltd."
Hungary	"Copyright © 2003; Top-Map Ltd."
Italy	"La Banca Dati Italiana è stata prodotta usando quale riferimento anche cartografia numerica ed al tratto prodotta e fornita dalla Regione Toscana."
Norway	"Copyright © 2000; Norwegian Mapping Authority"
Portugal	"Source: IgeoE – Portugal"
Spain	"Información geográfica propiedad del CNIG"
Sweden	"Based upon electronic data © National Land Survey Sweden."
Switzerland	"Topografische Grundlage: © Bundesamt für Landestopographie.

E. Respective Country Distribution. Client acknowledges that HERE has not received approvals to distribute map data for the following countries in such respective countries: Albania, Belarus, Kyrgyzstan, Moldova and Uzbekistan. HERE may update such list from time to time. The license rights granted to Client under this TL with respect to the Data for such countries are contingent upon Client's compliance with all applicable laws and regulations, including, without limitation, any required licenses or approvals to distribute the Application incorporating such Data in such respective countries.

VI. Australia Territory

A. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

> Copyright. Based on data provided under license from PSMA Australia Limited. Product incorporates data which is © 20XX Telstra Corporation Limited, GM Holden Limited, Intelematics Australia Pty Ltd and Continental Pty Ltd.

B. Third Party Notices for Australia. In addition to the foregoing, the End-User Terms for any Application containing RDS-TMC Traffic Codes for Australia shall contain the following notice: "Product incorporates traffic location codes which is © 20XX Telstra Corporation Limited and its licensors."

https://www.psma.com.au

AT&T Vehicle Network Carrier Telematics Disclosure

END USER FOR PURPOSES OF THIS SECTION MEANS YOU AND YOUR HEIRS, EXECUTORS, LEGAL PERSONAL REPRESENTATITVES AND PERMITED ASSIGNS. FOR PURPOSES OF THIS SECTION "UNDERLYING WIRELESS SERVICE CARRIER" INCLUDES ITS AFFILIATES AND CONTRACTORS AND THEIR RESPECTIVE OFFICERS, DIRECTORS, EMPLOYEES, SUCCESSORS AND ASSIGNS. END USER HAS NO CONTRACTUAL RELATIONSHIP WITH THE UNDERLYING WIRELESS SERVICE CARRIER AND END USER IS NOT A THIRD PARTY BENEFICIARY OF ANY AGREEMENT BETWEEN FORD AND UNDERLYING CARRIER. END USER UNDERSTANDS AND AGREES THAT THE UNDERLYING CARRIER HAS NO LEGAL, EQUITABLE, OR OTHER LIABILITY OF ANY KIND TO END USER. IN ANY EVENT, REGARDLESS OF THE FORM OF THE ACTION, WHETHER FOR BREACH OF CONTRACT, WARRANTY, NEGLIGENCE, STRICT LIABILITY IN TORT OR OTHERWISE, END USER'S EXCLUSIVE REMEDY FOR CLAIMS ARISING IN ANY WAY IN CONNECTION WITH THIS AGREEMENT, FOR ANY CAUSE WHATSOEVER, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO ANY FAILURE OR DISRUPTION OF SERVICE PROVIDED HEREUNDER, IS LIMITED TO PAYMENT OF DAMAGES IN AN AMOUNT NOT TO EXCEED THE AMOUNT PAID BY END USER FOR THE SERVICES DURING THE TWO-MONTH PERIOD PRECEDING THE DATE THE CLAIM AROSE.

(ii) END USER AGREES TO INDEMNIFY AND HOLD HARMLESS THE UNDERLYING WIRELESS SERVICE CARRIER AND ITS OFFICERS, EMPLOYEES, AND AGENTS AGAINST ANY AND ALL CLAIMS, INCLUDING WITHOUT LIMITATION CLAIMS FOR LIBEL, SLANDER, OR ANY PROPERTY DAMAGE, PERSONAL INJURY OR DEATH, ARISING IN ANY WAY, DIRECTLY OR INDIRECTLY, IN CONNECTION WITH THIS AGREEMENT OR THE USE, FAILURE TO USE, OR INABILITY TO USE THE DEVICE EXCEPT WHERE THE CLAIMS RESULT FROM THE UNDERLYING CARRIER'S GROSS NEGLIGENCE OR WILLFUL MISCONDUCT. THIS INDEMNITY WILL SURVIVE THE TERMINATION OF THE AGREEMENT.
(iii) END USER HAS NO PROPERTY RIGHT IN ANY NUMBER ASSIGNED TO THE DEVICE.
(iv) END USER UNDERSTANDS THAT FORD AND THE UNDERLYING CARRIER CANNOT GUARANTY THE SECURITY OF WIRELESS TRANSMISSIONS, AND WILL NOT BE LIABLE FOR ANY LACK OF SECURITY RELATING TO THE USE OF THE SERVICES
THE SERVICE IS FOR [END USER'S] USE ONLY AND END USER MAY NOT RESELL THE SERVICE TO ANY OTHER PARTY END USER UNDERSTANDS THAT THE UNDERLYING CARRIER DOES NOT GUARANTEE ANY END USER UNINTERRUPTED SERVICE OR COVERAGE. THE UNDERLYING CARRIER DOES NOT WARRANT THAT END USERS CAN OR WILL BE LOCATED USING THE SERVICE. THE UNDERLYING CARRIER MAKES NO WARRANTY, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, SUITABILITY, OR PERFORMANCE REGARDING ANY SERVICES OR GOODS, AND IN NO EVENT SHALL AT&T BE LIABLE, WHETHER OR NOT DUE TO ITS OWN NEGLIGENCE, FOR ANY: (A) ACT OR OMISSION OF A THIRD PARTY; (B) MISTAKES, OMISSIONS, INTERRUPTIONS, ERRORS, FAILURES TO TRANSMIT, DELAYS, OR DEFECTS IN THE SERVICE PROVIDED BY OR THROUGH THE UNDERLYING CARRIER; (C) DAMAGE OR INJURY CAUSED BY SUSPENSION OR TERMINATION BY THE UNDERLYING CARRIER; OR (D) DAMAGE OR INJURY CAUSED BY A FAILURE OR DELAY IN CONNECTING A CALL TO ANY ENTITY, INCLUDING 911 OR ANY OTHER EMERGENCY SERVICE. TO THE FULL EXTENT ALLOWED BY LAW, THE END USER RELEASES, INDEMNIFIES AND HOLDS THE UNDERLYING CARRIER HARMLESS FROM AND AGAINST ANY AND ALL CLAIMS OF ANY PERSON OR ENTITY FOR DAMAGES OF ANY NATURE ARISING IN ANY WAY FROM OR RELATING TO, DIRECTLY OR INDIRECTLY, SERVICES PROVIDED BY THE UNDERLYING CARRIER OR ANY PERSON'S USE THEREOF, INCLUDING CLAIMS ARISING IN WHOLE OR IN PART FROM THE ALLEGED NEGLIGENCE OF THE UNDERLYING CARRIER.

VII. China Territory

Personal Use Only

You agree to use this Data together with [insert name of Client Application] for the solely personal, non-commercial purposes for which you were licensed, and not for service bureau, time-sharing or other similar purposes. Accordingly, but subject to the restrictions set forth in the following paragraphs, you may copy this Data only as necessary for your personal use to (i) view it, and (ii) save it, provided that you do not remove any copyright notices that appear and do not modify the Data in any way. You agree not to otherwise reproduce, copy, modify, decompile, disassemble or reverse engineer any portion of this Data, and may not transfer or distribute it in any form, for any purpose, except to the extent permitted by mandatory laws.

Restrictions

Except where you have been specifically licensed to do so by NAV2 , and without limiting the preceding paragraph, you may not (a) use this Data with any products, systems, or applications installed or otherwise connected to or in communication with vehicles, capable of vehicle navigation, positioning, dispatch, real time route guidance, fleet management or similar applications; or (b) with or in communication with any positioning devices or any mobile or wireless-connected electronic or computer devices, including without limitation cellular phones, palmtop and handheld computers, pagers, and personal digital assistants or PDAs. You agree to cease using this Data if you fail to comply with these terms and conditions.

Limited Warranty

NAV2 warrants that (a) the Data will perform substantially in accordance with the accompanying written materials for a period of ninety (90) days from the date of receipt, and (b) any support services provided by NAV2 shall be substantially as described in applicable written materials provided to you by NAV2, and NAV2's support engineers will make commercially reasonable efforts to solve any problem issues.

Customer Remedies

NAV2 and its suppliers' entire liability and your exclusive remedy shall be, at NAV2's sole discretion, either (a) return of the price paid, if any, or (b) repair or replacement of the Data that do not meet NAV2's Limited Warranty and that are returned to NAV2 with a copy of your receipt. This Limited Warranty is void if failure of the Data has resulted from accident, abuse, or misapplication. Any replacement Data will be warranted for the remainder of the original warranty period or thirty (30) days, whichever is longer. Neither these remedies nor any product support services offered by NAV2 are available without proof of purchase from an authorized international source.

No Other Warranty:

EXCEPT FOR THE LMITED WARRANTY SET FORTH ABOVE AND TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, NAV2 AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) DISCLAIM ANY WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, OWNERSHIP OR NON-INFRINGEMENT. Certain warranty exclusions may not be permitted under applicable law, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

Limited Liability:

TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, NAV2 AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) SHALL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU: IN RESPECT OF ANY CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION, IRRESPECTIVE OF THE NATURE OF THE CAUSE OF THE CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION ALLEGING ANY LOSS, INJURY OR DAMAGES, DIRECT OR INDIRECT, WHICH MAY RESULT FROM THE USE OR POSSESSION OF THE INFORMATION; OR FOR ANY LOSS OF PROFIT, REVENUE, CONTRACTS OR SAVINGS, OR ANY OTHER DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THIS INFORMATION, ANY DEFECT IN THE INFROMATION, OR THE BREACH OF THESE TERMS OR CONDITIONS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION IN CONTRACT OR TORT OR BASED ON A WARRANTY, EVEN IF NAV2 OR ITS LICENSORS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. UNDER NO CIRCUMSTANCES SHALL NAV2's OR ITS SUPPLIERS' LIABILITY HEREUNDER EXCEED THE PRICE PAID. Certain liability exclusions may not be permitted under applicable law, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

Export Control

You agree not to export to anywhere any part of the Data provided to you or any direct product thereof except in compliance with, and with all licenses and approvals required under, applicable export laws, rules and regulations.

IP Protection

The Data are owned by NAV2 or its suppliers and are protected by applicable copyright and other intellectual property law and treaties. The Data are provided solely on the basis of a license to use, not sale.

Entire Agreement

These terms and conditions constitute the entire agreement between NAV2(and its licensors, including their licensors and suppliers) and you pertaining to the subject matter hereof, and supersedes in their entirety any and all written or oral agreements previously existing between us with respect to such subject matter.

Governing Law.

The above terms and conditions shall be governed by the laws of the People's Republic of China, without giving effect to (i) its conflict of laws provisions, or (ii) the United Nations Convention for Contracts for the International Sale of Goods, which is explicitly excluded. Any dispute arising from or in connection with the Data provided to you hereunder shall be submitted to the Shanghai International Economic and Trade Arbitration Commission for arbitration.

Gracenote® Copyright

CD and music-related data from Gracenote, Inc., copyright©

2000-2007 Gracenote. Gracenote Software, copyright © 2000-2007 Gracenote. This product and service may practice one or more of the following U.S. Patents 5,987,525; 6,061,680; 6,154,773; 6,161,132; 6,230,192; 6,230,207; 6.240,459; 6,330,593 and other patents issued or pending. Some services supplied under license from Open Globe, Inc. for U.S. Patent 6,304,523.

Gracenote and CDDB are registered trademarks of Gracenote. The Gracenote logo and logotype, and the "Powered by Gracenote™" logo are trademarks of Gracenote.

Gracenote® End User License Agreement (EULA)

This device contains software from Gracenote, Inc. of 2000 Powell Street Emeryville, California 94608 ("Gracenote").

The software from Gracenote (the "Gracenote Software") enables this device to do disc and music file identification and obtain music-related information, including name, artist, track, and title information ("Gracenote Data") from online servers ("Gracenote Servers"), and to perform other functions. You may use Gracenote Data only by means of the intended End User functions of this device. This device may contain content belonging to Gracenote's providers. If so, all of the restrictions set forth herein with respect to Gracenote Data shall also apply to such content and such content providers shall be entitled to all of the benefits and protections set forth herein that are available to Gracenote. You agree that you will use the content from Gracenote ("Gracenote Content") , Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers for your own personal, non-commercial use only. You agree not to assign, copy, transfer or transmit the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Software or any Gracenote Data (except in a Tag associated with a music file) to any third party. YOU AGREE NOT TO USE OR EXPLOIT GRACENOTE CONTENT, GRACENOTE DATA, THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, OR GRACENOTE SERVERS, EXCEPT AS EXPRESSLY PERMITTED HEREIN.

You agree that your non-exclusive licenses to use the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers will terminate if you violate these restrictions. If your licenses terminate, you agree to cease any and all use of the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers.

Gracenote, respectively, reserve all rights in Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and the Gracenote Servers and Gracenote Content, including all ownership rights. Under no circumstances will either Gracenote become liable for any payment to you for any information that you provide, including any copyrighted material or music file information. You agree that Gracenote may enforce its respective rights, collectively or separately, under this agreement against you, directly in each company's own name.

Gracenote uses a unique identifier to track queries for statistical purposes. The purpose of a randomly assigned numeric identifier is to allow Gracenote to count queries without knowing anything about who you are. For more information, see the web page below for the Gracenote Privacy Policy.

https://gracenote.com

THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, EACH ITEM OF GRACENOTE DATA AND THE GRACENOTE CONTENT ARE LICENSED TO YOU "AS IS". NEITHER GRACENOTE MAKES ANY REPRESENTATIONS OR WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, REGARDING THE ACCURACY OF ANY GRACENOTE DATA FROM THE GRACENOTE SERVERS OR GRACENOTE CONTENT. GRACENOTE COLLECTIVELY AND SEPARATELY RESERVE THE RIGHT TO DELETE DATA AND/OR CONTENT FROM THE COMPANIES' RESPECTIVE SERVERS OR, IN THE CASE OF GRACENOTE, CHANGE DATA CATEGORIES FOR ANY CAUSE THAT GRACENOTE DEEMS SUFFICIENT. NO WARRANTY IS MADE THAT EITHER GRACENOTE CONTENT OR THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR GRACENOTE SERVERS ARE ERROR-FREE OR THAT THE FUNCTIONING OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR GRACENOTE SERVERS WILL BE UNINTERRUPTED. GRACENOTE IS NOT OBLIGATED TO PROVIDE YOU WITH ANY ENHANCED OR ADDITIONAL DATA TYPES THAT GRACENOTE MAY CHOOSE TO PROVIDE IN THE FUTURE AND IS FREE TO DISCONTINUE ITS ONLINE SERVICES AT ANY TIME. GRACENOTE DISCLAIM ALL WARRANTIES EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO,

IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, TITLE, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT. NEITHER GRACENOTE WARRANTS THE RESULTS THAT WILL BE OBTAINED BY YOUR USE OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR ANY GRACENOTE SERVER. IN NO CASE WILL GRACENOTE BE LIABLE FOR ANY CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES OR FOR ANY LOST PROFITS OR LOST REVENUES FOR ANY REASON WHATSOEVER. © Gracenote 2007.

Taiwan Territory

According to the "Technical Specifications for Low Power Radio Frequency Equipment" formulated by the National Communications and Communication Committee of the Executive Yuan: 3.8.2. For the low-power radio frequency equipment that has obtained the verification certificate, the company, firm or user shall not change the frequency, increase the power or change the characteristics and functions of the original design without authorization.

The use of low-power radio frequency equipment must not affect flight safety and interfere with legal communications: when the system detects interference, immediately stop using it until there is no interference.

The aforementioned legal communication refers to the wireless communication operated in accordance with the provisions of the Telecommunications Management Law. Low-power radio frequency equipment needs to endure the interference of legal communication or industrial, scientific and medical radio wave radiation electrical equipment.

SUNA TRAFFIC CHANNEL – TERMS AND CONDITIONS

By activating, using and/or accessing the SUNA Traffic Channel, SUNA Predictive or other content or material provided by Intelematics (together, **SUNA Products and/or Services**), you must accept certain terms and conditions. The following is a brief summary of the terms and conditions that apply to you. To view the full terms and conditions relevant to your use of the SUNA Products and/or Services, please consult:

https://www.sunatraffic.com.au/termsandconditions

1. Acceptance

By using SUNA Products and/or Services, you will be deemed to have accepted and agreed to be bound by the terms and conditions fully detailed at:

https://www.sunatraffic.com.au/termsandconditions

2. Intellectual Property

SUNA Products and/or Services are for your personal use. You may not record, or retransmit the content, nor use the content in association with any other traffic information or route guidance service or device not approved by Intelematics. You obtain no right of ownership in any Intellectual Property Rights (including copyright) in the data that is used to provide SUNA Products and/or Services.

3. Appropriate Use

SUNA Products and/or Services are intended as an aid to personal motoring and travel planning, and do not provide comprehensive or accurate information on all occasions. On occasions, you may experience additional delay as a result of using SUNA Products and/or Services. You acknowledge that it is not intended, or suitable, for use in applications where time of arrival or driving directions may impact the safety of the public or yourself.

4. Use of SUNA Products and Services while driving

You, and other authorized drivers of the vehicle in which SUNA Products and/or Services are available or installed and active, remain at all times responsible for observing all relevant laws and codes of safe driving. In particular, you agree to only actively operate SUNA Products and/or Services when the Vehicle is at a complete stop and it is safe to do so.

5. Service Continuity and Reception of the SUNA Traffic Channel

We will use reasonable endeavors to provide the SUNA Traffic Channel 24 hours a day, 365 days a year. The SUNA Traffic Channel may occasionally be unavailable for technical reasons or for planned maintenance. We will try to perform maintenance at times when congestion is light. We reserve the right to withdraw SUNA Products and/or Services at any time.

Also, we cannot assure the uninterrupted reception of the SUNA Traffic Channel RDS-TMC signal at any particular location.

6. Limitation of Liability

Neither Intelematics (nor its suppliers or the manufacturer of your device (the "**Suppliers**")) shall be liable to you or to any third party for any damages either direct, indirect, incidental, consequential or otherwise arising out of the use of or inability to use SUNA Products and/or Services even if Intelematics or a Supplier has been advised of the possibility of such damages. You also acknowledge that neither Intelematics nor any Supplier guarantees nor make any warranties that relate to the availability, accuracy or completeness of SUNA Products and/or Services, and to the extent which it is lawful to do so, both Intelematics and each Supplier excludes any warranties which might otherwise be implied by any State or Federal legislation in relation to SUNA Products and/or Services.

7. Please Note

Great care has been taken in preparing this manual. Constant product development may mean that some information is not entirely up-to-date. The information in this document is subject to change without notice.

Emission Law

WARNING: Do not remove or alter the original equipment floor covering or insulation between it and the metal floor of the vehicle. The floor covering and insulation protect occupants of the vehicle from the engine and exhaust system heat and noise. On vehicles with no original equipment floor covering insulation, do not carry passengers in a manner that permits prolonged skin contact with the metal floor. Failure to follow these instructions may result in fire or personal injury.

U.S. federal laws and certain state laws prohibit removing or rendering inoperative emission control system components. Similar federal or provincial laws may apply in Canada. We do not approve of any vehicle modification without first determining applicable laws.



Tampering with emissions control systems including related sensors or the Diesel Exhaust Fluid system can result in reduced engine power and the illumination of the service engine soon light.

Tampering With a Noise Control System

Federal laws prohibit the following acts:

- Removal or rendering inoperative by any person other than for purposes of maintenance.
- Repair or replacement of any device or element of the design incorporated into a new vehicle for the purpose of noise control prior to its sale or delivery to the ultimate purchaser or while it is in use.
- The use of the vehicle after any person removes or renders inoperative any device or element of the design.

The U.S. Environmental Protection Agency may presume to constitute tampering as follows:

- Removal of hood blanket, fender apron absorbers, fender apron barriers, underbody noise shields or acoustically absorptive material.
- Tampering or rendering inoperative the engine speed governor, to allow engine speed to exceed manufacturer specifications.

If the engine does not start, runs rough, experiences a decrease in engine performance, experiences excess fuel consumption or produces excessive exhaust smoke, check for the following:

- A plugged or disconnected air inlet system hose.
- A plugged engine air filter element.
- Water in the fuel filter and water separator.
- A clogged fuel filter.
- Contaminated fuel.
- Air in the fuel system, due to loose connections.
- An open or pinched sensor hose.
- Incorrect engine oil level.
- Incorrect fuel for climatic conditions.
- Incorrect engine oil viscosity for climactic conditions.

Note: Some vehicles have a lifetime fuel filter that is integrated with the fuel tank. Regular maintenance or replacement is not needed.
Note: If these checks do not help you correct the concern, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Noise Emissions Warranty, Prohibited Tampering Acts and Maintenance
On January 1, 1978, Federal regulation became effective governing the noise emission on trucks over 10,000 lb (4,536 kg) Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR). The preceding statements concerning prohibited tampering acts and maintenance, and the noise warranty found in the Warranty Guide, are applicable to complete chassis cabs over 10,000 lb (4,536 kg) GVWR.

Export Unique Options

For your particular global region, your vehicle may be equipped with features and options that are different from the features and options that are described in this Owner's Manual. A market unique supplement may be supplied that complements this book. By referring to the market unique supplement, if provided, you can properly identify those features, recommendations and specifications that are unique to your vehicle. Features or equipment listed as standard may be different on units built for export. **Refer to this Owner's Manual for all other required information and warnings.**

Warranty Information

The following warranties may apply to your vehicle:

- New vehicle limited warranties.
- Emissions warranties, if applicable. (Note: Fully-electric vehicles are not eligible for emissions warranties.)
- Other warranties, if applicable.

Detailed warranty information specific to your vehicle can be found in the Warranty Guide at www.lincoln.com/support/owner-manuals

The following California Warranty Statement, required by California regulations, applies to vehicles certified to California emissions standards and registered in a state that requires California emissions warranty. If applicable, additional California Emissions Warranties can be found in the Warranty Guide at www.lincoln.com/support/owner-manuals

CALIFORNIA EMISSION CONTROL WARRANTY STATEMENT
YOUR WARRANTY RIGHTS AND OBLIGATIONS
The California Air Resources Board and Ford Motor Company are pleased to explain the emission control system warranty on your (year) vehicle. In California, new motor vehicles must be designated, built and equipped to meet the State's stringent anti-smog standards. Ford Motor Company must warrant the emission control system on your vehicle for the following periods of time, provided there has been no abuse, neglect or improper maintenance of your vehicle.
Your emission control system may include parts such as the carburetor or fuel-injection system, the ignition system, catalytic converter and engine computer. Also included may be hoses, belts, connectors and other emission-related assemblies. Where a warrantable condition exists, we will repair your vehicle at no cost to you including diagnosis, parts and labor.
MANUFACTURER'S WARRANTY COVERAGE:
(For 1990 and subsequent model passenger cars, light-duty trucks, and medium-duty vehicles.)
- For 3 years or 50,000 miles (whichever occurs first);
1) If your vehicle fails a Smog Check inspection, we will make all necessary repairs and adjustments to ensure that your emission control system meets the PERFORMANCE WARRANTY requirement.
2) If any emission-related part on your vehicle is defective we will repair or replace the part. This is your short-term emission control system DEFECTS WARRANTY.
- For 7 years or 70,000 miles (whichever occurs first);
3) If an emission-related part listed in the warranty specially noted with coverage for 7 years or 70,000 miles is defective, we will repair or replace the part. This is your long-term emission control system DEFECTS WARRANTY.
OWNER'S WARRANTY RESPONSIBILITIES:
- As the vehicle owner, you are responsible for getting your vehicle the required maintenance listed in your owner's manual. We recommend that you retain all receipts covering maintenance on your vehicle. However, we cannot deny you of your vehicle warranty solely for the lack of receipts, or for your failure to have all

scheduled maintenance performed on your vehicle.
- You are responsible for bringing your vehicle to an authorized dealer as soon as a problem exists. Have the warranty repairs completed in a reasonable amount of time, not to exceed 30 days.
- As the vehicle owner, be aware that we may deny you warranty coverage if your vehicle or a part has failed due to abuse, neglect, improper maintenance or unapproved modifications.
If you have any questions regarding your warranty rights and responsibilities, you should contact Lincoln Concierge at 1-800-521-4140 or the California Air Resource Board at 4001 Iowa Avenue, Riverside, CA 92507.
New Vehicle Limited Warranty
Your vehicle comes with a New Vehicle Limited Warranty. The express warranties of the New Vehicle Limited Warranty are in substitution for and exclude all other liabilities of any kind whether arising under statute, in tort, by implication of law or otherwise including, to the full extent as may be allowed by law, liability for any other representations respecting the vehicle, statutory warranties or implied warranties or conditions as to its merchantability or fitness.
Download a free electronic copy or order one free printed copy of the most up-to-date Warranty Guide by visiting the Owner Manuals section of www.lincoln.com/support/owner-manuals (United States).



For Canada, visit lincolncanada.com/support/owner-manuals



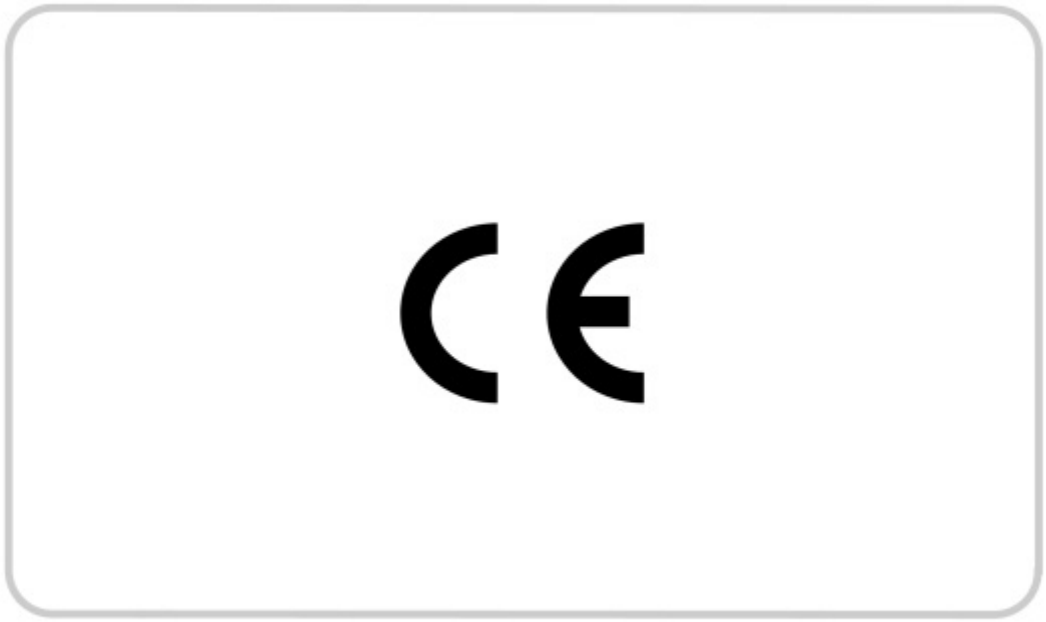
For Limo/Livery/Hearse vehicles: View and download your Warranty Guide by visiting the Warranty Information section of the Fleet website, www.fordpro.com/en-us/fleet-vehicles/livery(United States only).



Radio Frequency Certification Labels

Antenna

European Union EU



Ukraine



United Kingdom



Audio Unit

Device	Supplier	Type Designation
Audio Head Unit	Visteon	AHUD001

Afghanistan

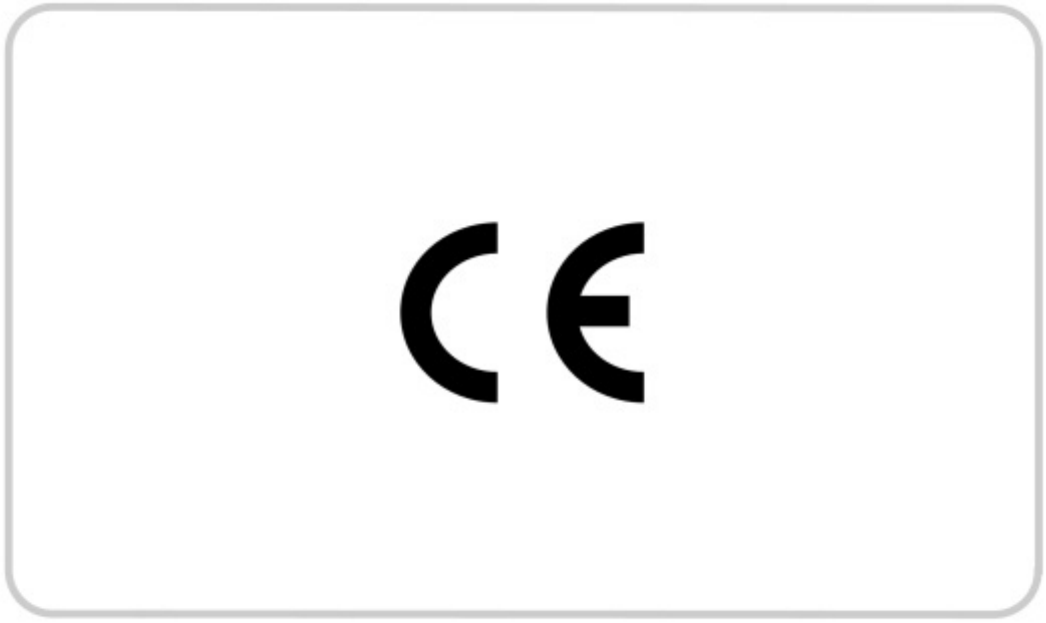
ATRA: 014/2024

Australia

Botswana

BOCRA Registered No: BOCRA/TA/2024/945

European Union (EU)



Ghana

NCA Approved: M1-7E8-176-SRH

Israel

מספר אישור אלחוטי של משרד התקשורת הוא

142832

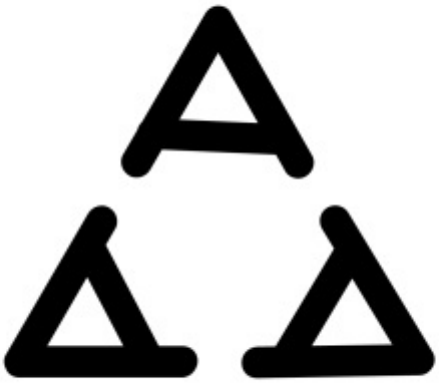
Jamaica

This product contains a Type Approved Module by Jamaica: SMA – AHUD001

Senegal

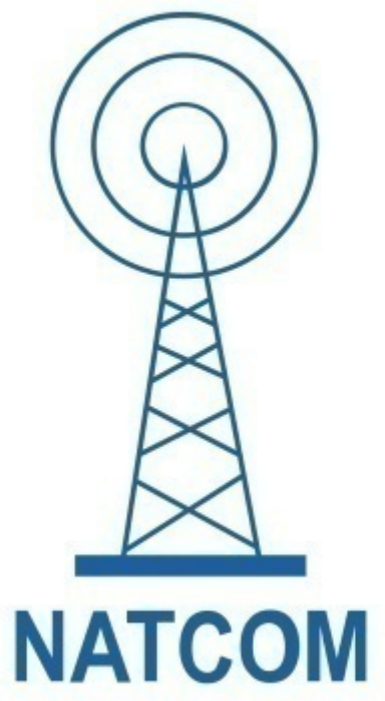
AGREE PAR ARTP SENEGAL: 072930/AG/ER

Serbia



? 005 24

Sierra Leone



TAN: 2024-002-0053

South Africa



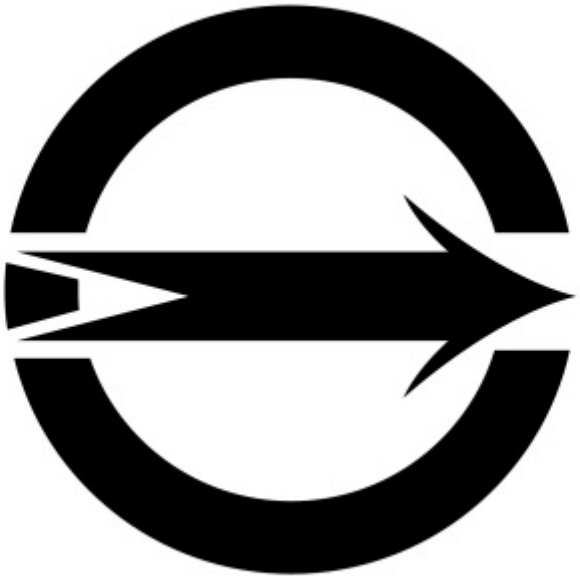
TA-2024/1668
APPROVED

South Korea



R-R-VC1-AHUD001

Taiwan



R43208

Ukraine

UA.TR.001

United Arab Emirates (UAE)



United Kingdom

United Nations Economic Commission for Europe (UNECE)

E13 10R-06-16968

United States and Canada

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and

2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

1. L'appareil ne doit pas produire de brouillage;
2. L'appareil doit accepter tout brouillage radioélectrique subi, même si le brouillage est susceptible d'en compromettre le fonctionnement.

Note: Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.
Zambia

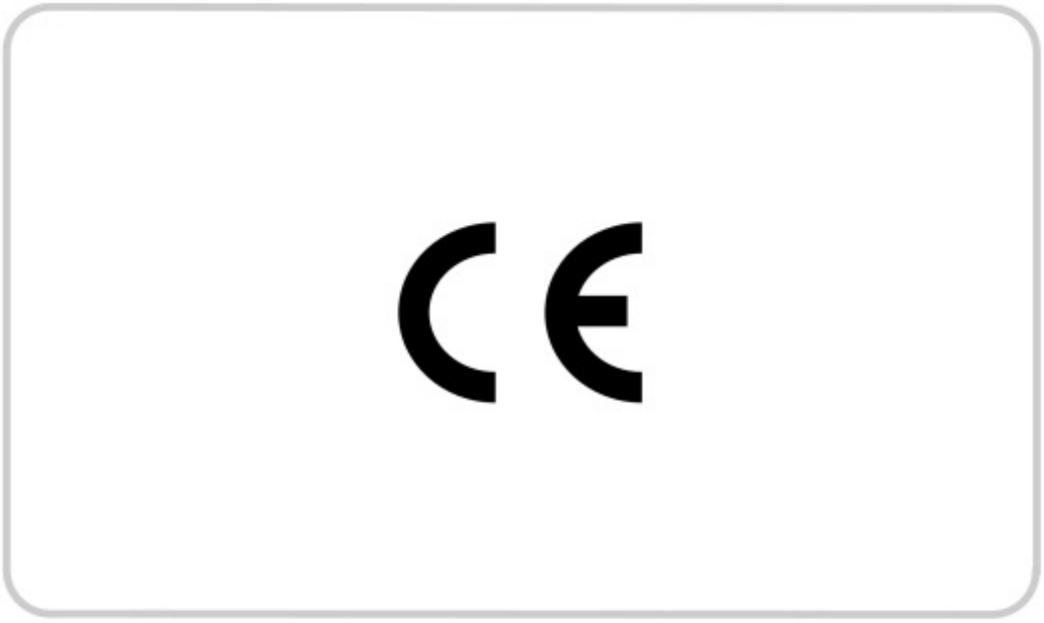
ZMB/ZICTA/TA/2024/7/3

Audio Unit

Device	Supplier	Type Designation
Audio Head Unit	Visteon	AHUE001

Australia

European Union (EU)

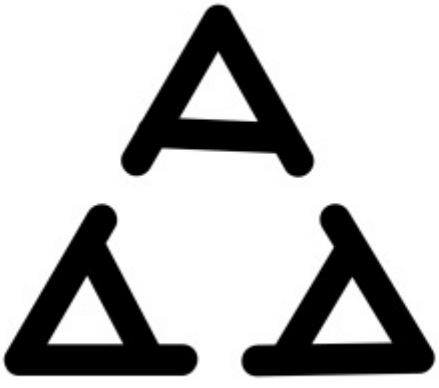


Israel

מספר אישור אלחוטי של משרד התקשורת הוא

141177

Serbia



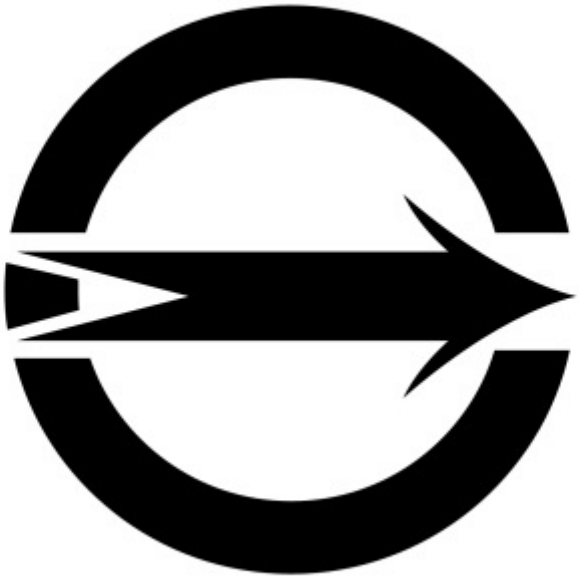
? 005 24

South Africa



TA-2024/0100
APPROVED

Taiwan



R43208

Ukraine



UA.TR.001

United Arab Emirates (UAE)



United Kingdom

United Nations Economic Commission for Europe (UNECE)

E13 10R-06-1674

Blind Spot Information System Sensors

Device	Supplier	Type Designation
SRR5 BLIS Corner Radar (RRU2)	Aptiv	2F5TR

Argentina

H-28070

Brazil

15375-23-12270

Este equipamento não tem direito à proteção contra interferência prejudicial e não pode causar interferência em sistemas devidamente autorizados.

China

CMIIT ID: 2023LJ10407

Democratic Republic of Congo

Agréé par l'ARPTC

N° d'homologation: HER - 0018/Octobre/2024

Date d'homologation: 01/10/2024

Djibouti

AGREE PAR LE MCPT (REPUBLIQUE DE DJIBOUTI)

Numéro d'agrément: 040/DDTIC/2024

Date d'agrément: 16/04/2024

European Union (EU)

Ghana

NCA APPROVED: 7E6-M0-XDF-TME

Independent State of Samoa

SMO
samoa

Indonesia

Sertifikat Nomor: 98785/SDPPI/2024
PLG ID: 13493





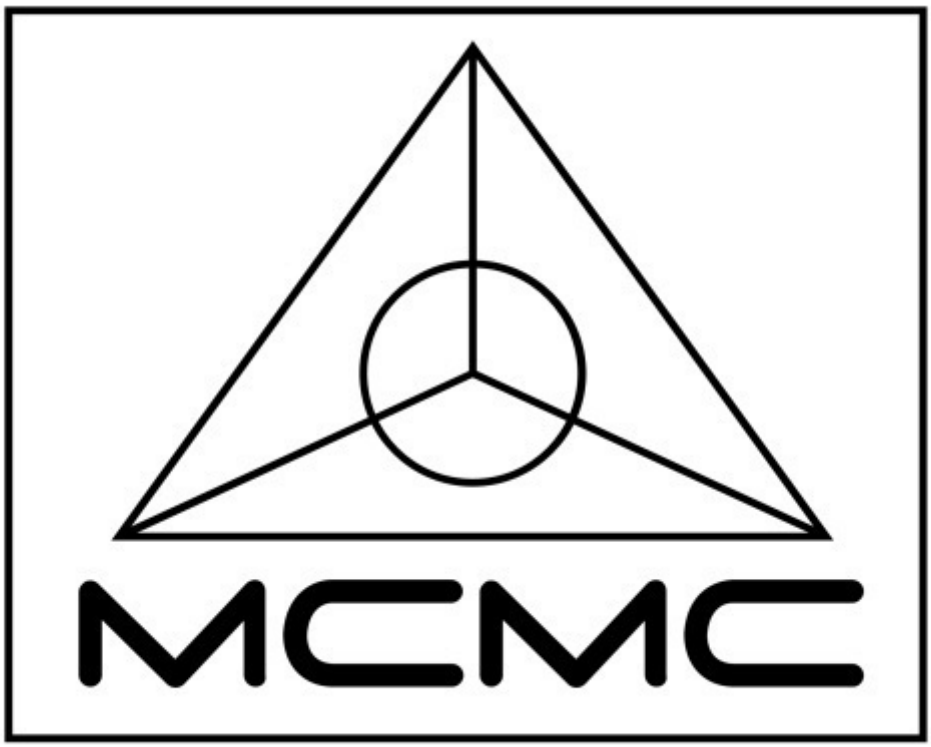
Israel

1. מספר אישור התאמה מטעם משרד התקשורת: 56-05873
2. חל איסור לבצע פעולות במכשיר שיש בהן כדי לשנות את תכונותיו האלחוטיות של המכשיר, ובכלל זה שינויי תוכנה, החלפת אנטנה מקורית או הוספת אפשרות לחיבור לאנטנה חיצונית, בלא קבלת אישור משרד התקשורת, בשל החשש להפרעות אלחוטיות.

Jamaica

This product has been Type Approved by Jamaica: SMA - 2F5TR

Malaysia

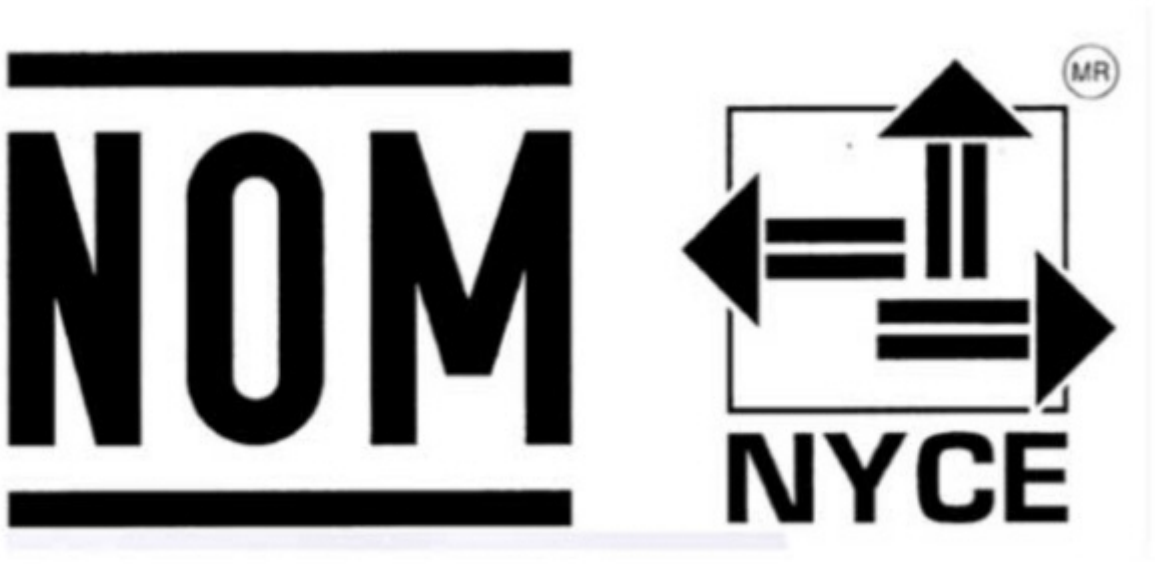


HIDF16000009

Mauritania

AGREE PAR L'ANE MAURITANIE
Numéro d'agrément: 1222/ARE/2023
Date d'agrément: 06/02/2023

Mexico



IFT: ROAP2F23-27117

Moldova

Morocco

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC
Numéro d'agrément: MR00036523ANRT2023
Date d'agrément: 30/01/23

Paraguay

NR: 2022-04-I-0255

Pakistan

Pakistan Telecommunication Authority

Approved by PTA 2023

Sierra Leone

NATCOM

TAN: 2023-002-0006

South Africa

ICASA

TA-2022/3721
APPROVED

South Korea

R-C-1Ap-2F5TR

Taiwan

CCAI23LP0640T2

取得審驗證明之低功率射頻器材，非經核准，公司、商號或使用者均不得擅自變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。低功率射頻器材之使用不得影享飛航安全及干擾合法通信；經發現有干擾現象時，應立即停用，並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用。前述合法通信，指依電信管理法規定作業之無線電通信。低功率射頻器材須忍受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設備之干擾。

Thailand

(1)เครื่องโทรคมนาคมและอุปกรณ์นี้ มีความสอดคล้องตามข้อกำหนดของ กทช.

(2)เครื่องวิทยุคมนาคมนี้มีระดับการแผ่คลื่นแม่เหล็กไฟฟ้าสอดคล้องตามมาตรฐานความปลอดภัยต่อสุขภาพของมนุษย์จากการใช้เครื่องวิทยุคมนาคมที่คณะกรรมการกิจการโทรคมนาคมแห่งชาติประกาศกำหนด

Ukraine

UA.TR.028

United Arab Emirates (UAE)

TDRA

ER10085/22
United Arab Emirates

United Kingdom

United States and Canada

FCC ID: L2C2F5TR

IC: 3432A-2F5TR

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

1. L'appareil ne doit pas produire de brouillage;
2. L'appareil doit accepter tout brouillage radioélectrique subi, même si le brouillage est susceptible d'en compromettre le fonctionnement.

Note: Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

Zambia

ZMB/ZICTA/TA/2023/4/42

Blind Spot Information System Sensors

Device	Supplier	Type Designation
SRR5 BLIS Corner Radar	Aptiv	F5TR

Argentina



H-24708

Brazil



17075-21-12270

Este equipamento não tem direito à proteção contra interferência prejudicial e não pode causar interferência em sistemas devidamente autorizados.

China

CMIIT ID: 2022LP14250

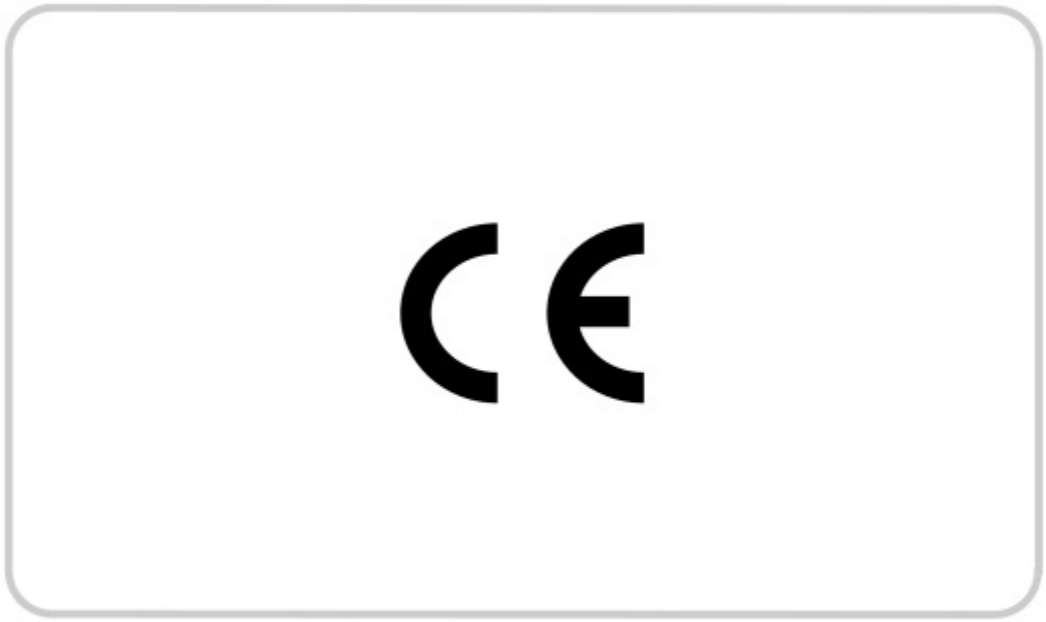
Democratic Republic of Congo

Agréé par l'ARPTC
N° d'homologation: HER - 0178/Décembre/2022
Date d'homologation: 22/12/2022

Djibouti

AGREE PAR LE MCPT (REPUBLIQUE DE DJIBOUTI)
Numéro d'agrément: 195/MCPT/DDTIC
Date d'agrément: 06/09/2021

European Union (EU)



Ghana

NCA APPROVED: SRO-1M-7E4-X0E

Independent State of Samoa



Indonesia

Sertifikat Nomor: 90715/SDPPI/2023
PLG ID: 13493

Israel

1. מספר אישור התאמה מטעם משרד התקשורת: 51-95982
2. חל איסור לבצע פעולות במכשיר שיש בהן כדי לשנות את תכונותיו האלחוטיות של המכשיר, ובכלל זה שינויי תוכנה, החלפת אנטנה מקורית או הוספת אפשרות לחיבור לאנטנה חיצונית, בלא קבלת אישור משרד התקשורת, בשל החשש להפרעות אלחוטיות.

Jamaica

This product has been Type Approved by Jamaica: SMA - F5TR

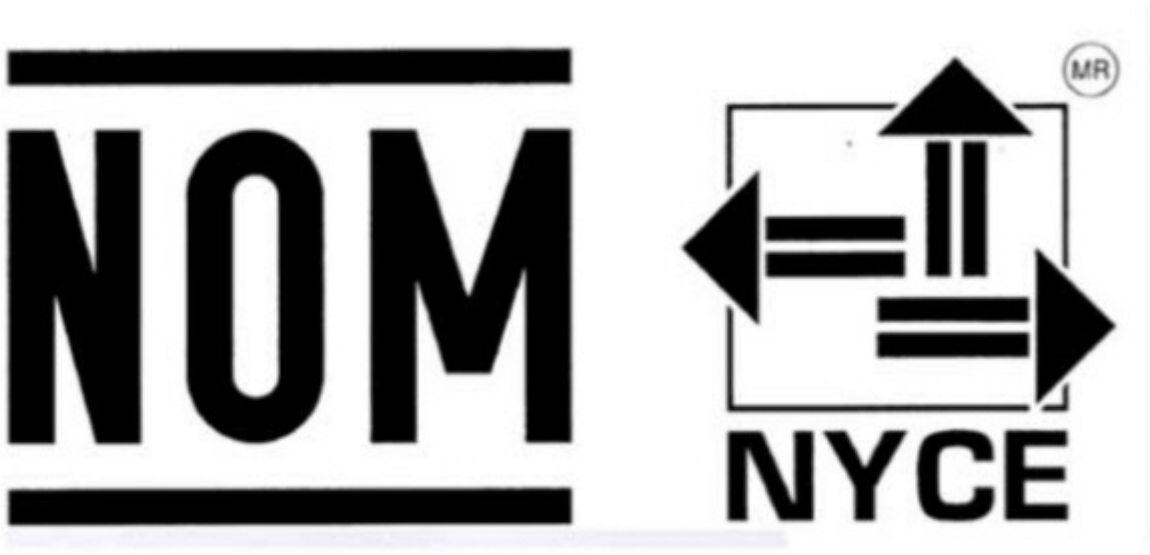
Malaysia

HIDF16000009

Mauritania

AGREE PAR L'ANE MAURITANIE
Numéro d'agrément: 0985/ARE/2021
Date d'agrément: 24/08/2021

Mexico



IFETEL: RCPAPF520-0480

Moldova



Morocco

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC

Numéro d'agrément: MR00030033ANRT2021
Date d'agrément: 16/09/2021

Pakistan



Approved by PTA 2021

Paraguay



NR: 2020-10-I-0753

Sierra Leone

TAN: 2021-002-0027

Singapore

Complies with IMDA Standards
DA 00461

South Africa

TA-2021/2119
APPROVED

South Korea

R-C-1Ap-F5TR

Taiwan

CCAI20LP1990T7

取得審驗證明之低功率射頻器材，非經核准，公司、商號或使用者均不得擅自變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。低功率射頻器材之使用不得影享飛航安全及干擾合法通信；經發現有干擾現象時，應立即停用，並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用。前述合法通信，指依電信管理法規定作業之無線電通信。低功率射頻器材須忍受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設備之干擾。

Thailand

(1)เครื่องโทรคมนาคมและอุปกรณ์นี้ มีความสอดคล้องตามข้อกำหนดของ กทช.

(2)เครื่องวิทยุคมนาคมนี้มีระดับการแผ่คลื่นแม่เหล็กไฟฟ้าสอดคล้องตามมาตรฐานความปลอดภัยต่อสุขภาพของมนุษย์จากการใช้เครื่องวิทยุคมนาคมที่คณะกรรมการกิจการโทรคมนาคมแห่งชาติประกาศกำหนด

Ukraine



UA.TR.028

United Arab Emirates (UAE)



United Kingdom

United States and Canada

FCC ID: L2CF5TR

IC: 3432A-F5TR

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

1. L'appareil ne doit pas produire de brouillage;
2. L'appareil doit accepter tout brouillage radioélectrique subi, même si le brouillage est susceptible d'en compromettre le fonctionnement.

Note: Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

Vietnam

Ford Vietnam
A00182015

ICT

Zambia

ZMB/ZICTA/TA/2021/9/53

Remote Function Actuator

Device	Supplier	Type Designation
Bluetooth Low Energy Module	Denso	S2NA0

China

CMIIT ID: 2018DJ4563

United States and Canada

WARNING: Changes or modifications not expressively approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term "IC:" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

FCC ID: HYQS2NA0
IC: 1551A-S2NA0

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada’s licence-exempt RSS(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Body Control Module

South Korea

R-R-175-P005
United Arab Emirates (U.A.E.)



United States and Canada

WARNING: Changes or modifications not expressively approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term "IC:" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

FCC ID: LXPP004
IC: 2298A-P004

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada’s licence-exempt RSS(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Cruise Control Module

Device	Supplier	Type Designation
Mid Range Radar (MRR)	Delphi/Aptiv	L2C0065TR

Argentina

C-20001

Brazil



06571-19-12270

Este equipamento não tem direito à proteção contra interferência prejudicial e não pode causar interferência em sistemas devidamente autorizados.

Democratic Republic of Congo

Agréé par l'ARPTC

N° d'homologation: HIR - 0067/2017

Date d'homologation: 25/04/2017

Djibouti

AGREE PAR LE MCPT (REPUBLIQUE DE DJIBOUTI)

Numéro d'agrément: 594/dpt/2017

Date d'agrément: 09/04/2017

Eurasian Customs Union

EAC

European Union (EU)

Ghana

NCA PRODUCT IDENTIFIER: OR2-9H-7E1-x4D

Independent State of Samoa

SMO
samoa

Indonesia

SERTIFIKAT NOMOR : 53104/SDPPI/2017

PLG ID: 4927

Israel

1. מספר אישור התאמה מטעם משרד התקשורת: 51-63483
2. חל איסור לבצע פעולות במכשיר שיש בהן כדי לשנות את תכונותיו האלחוטיות של המכשיר, ובכלל זה שינויי תוכנה, החלפת אנטנה מקורית או הוספת אפשרות לחיבור לאנטנה חיצונית, בלא קבלת אישור משרד התקשורת, בשל החשש להפרעות אלחוטיות.

Jamaica

This product has been Type Approved by Jamaica: SMA - L2C0065TR

Malaysia



HIDF16000009

Mauritania

AGREE PAR L'ANE MAURITANIE
Numéro d'agrément: 0409/ARE/2017
Date d'agrément: 12/04/2017

Mexico

IFT: RLVDEL217-0751

Moldova



Morocco

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC
Numéro d'agrément: MR13639ARNT2017
Date d'agrément: 28/03/2017

Pakistan

Pakistan Telecommunication Authority

PTA

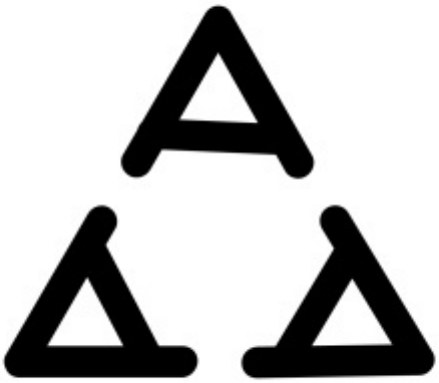
Approved by PTA 2017

Paraguay

CONATEL

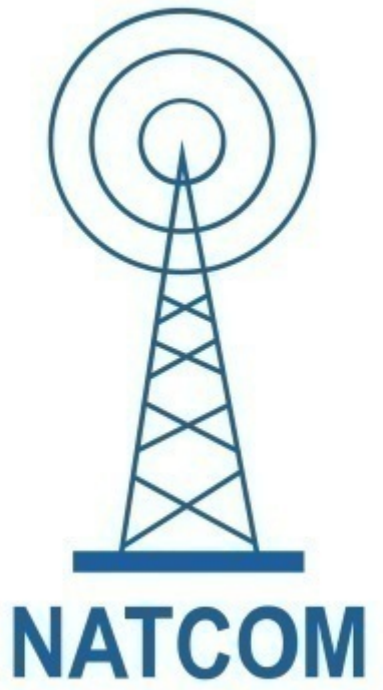
NR: 2017-06-I-0000151

Serbia



? 011 17

Sierra Leone



TAN: NTC-TA-17-032

Singapore

Complies with IMDA Standards
DA105753

South Africa

TA-2017-1923
APPROVED

South Korea

R-CMM-DLH-L2C0065TR

Syria

SyTRA
REGISTERED No:
FR00085-17

Taiwan

CCAI17LP1500T1

取得審驗證明之低功率射頻器材，非經核准，公司、商號或使用者均不得擅自變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。低功率射頻器材之使用不得影享飛航安全及干擾合法通信；經發現有干擾現象時，應立即停用，並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用。前述合法通信，指依電信管理法規定作業之無線電通信。低功率射頻器材須忍受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設備之干擾。

Thailand

(1)เครื่องโทรคมนาคมและอุปกรณ์นี้ มีความสอดคล้องตามข้อกำหนดของ กทช.

(2)เครื่องวิทยุคมนาคมนี้มีระดับการแผ่คลื่นแม่เหล็กไฟฟ้าสอดคล้องตามมาตรฐานความปลอดภัยต่อสุขภาพของมนุษย์จากการใช้เครื่องวิทยุคมนาคมที่คณะกรรมการกิจการโทรคมนาคมแห่งชาติประกาศกำหนด

Ukraine



United Arab Emirates (UAE)



United Kingdom

United States and Canada

FCC ID: L2C0065TR

IC: 3432A-0065TR

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

1. L'appareil ne doit pas produire de brouillage;
2. L'appareil doit accepter tout brouillage radioélectrique subi, même si le brouillage est susceptible d'en compromettre le fonctionnement.

Note: Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

Vietnam

Ford Vietnam
A00182015

ICT

Zambia

ZMB/ZICTA/TA/2017/4/19

Passive Key

Device	Supplier	Type Designation
Passive Key	Continental	A2C97102000

Argentina

H-22290

Ghana

NCA APPROVED: 2R9-8M-7E0-x94

Jamaica

This product has been Type Approved by Jamaica: SMA – A2C97102000

Paraguay



NR: 2016-9-I-000222

South Korea



MSIP-CRM-TAL-A2C97102000

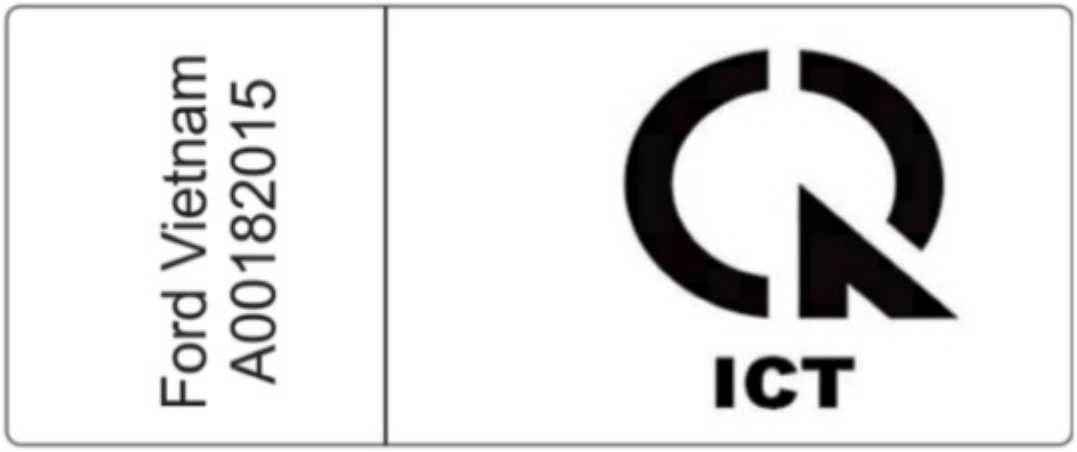
Ukraine



UA.TR.028

United Kingdom

Vietnam



Passive Key

Device	Supplier	Type Designation
Passive Key	Continental	A2C931426

Argentina

H-16366

Brazil



02445-16-01821

Este equipamento não tem direito à proteção contra interferência prejudicial e não pode causar interferência em sistemas devidamente autorizados.

Jamaica

This product has been Type Approved by Jamaica: SMA – M3N-A2C931426

United States and Canada

FCC ID: M3N-A2C931426

IC: 7812A-A2C931426

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

1. L'appareil ne doit pas produire de brouillage;
2. L'appareil doit accepter tout brouillage radioélectrique subi, même si le brouillage est susceptible d'en compromettre le fonctionnement.

Note: Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

Radio Transceiver Module

Device	Supplier	Type Designation
Radio Transceiver Module (RTM)	Aptiv	FO2-RX433UDA

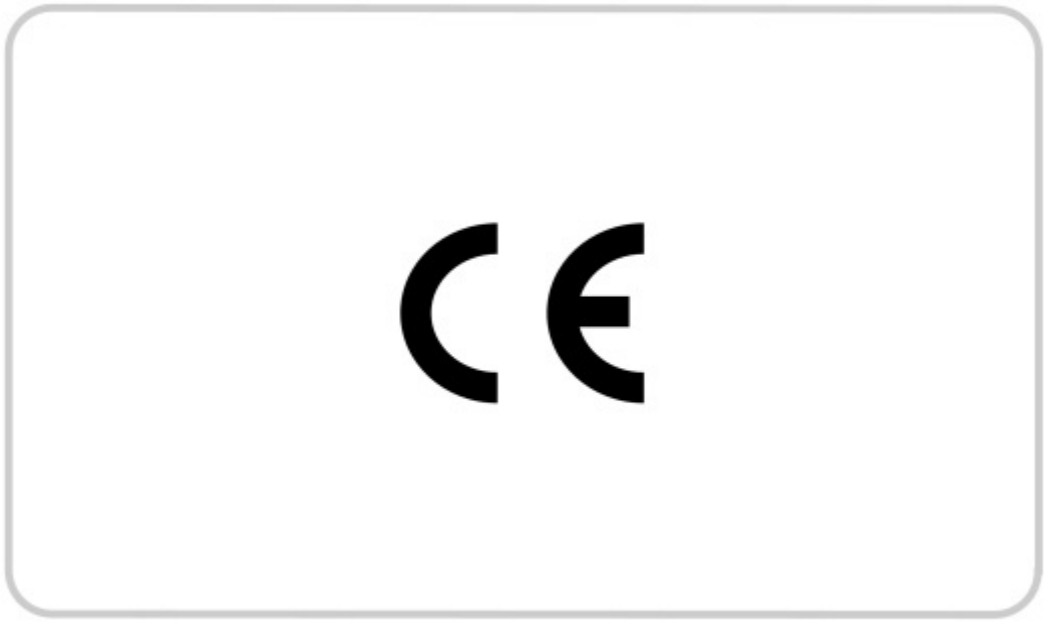
Democratic Republic of Congo

Agréé par l'ARPTC
N° d'homologation: HER - 0151/Septembre/2022
Date d'homologation: 22/09/2022

Djibouti

AGREE PAR LE MCPT (REPUBLIQUE DE DJIBOUTI)
Numéro d'agrément: 033/DDTIC/2020
Date d'agrément: 07/06/2020

European Union (EU)



Ghana

NCA PRODUCT IDENTIFIERS: SRO-1M-7E4-108

Jamaica

This product has been Type Approved by Jamaica: SMA – FO2-RX433UDA

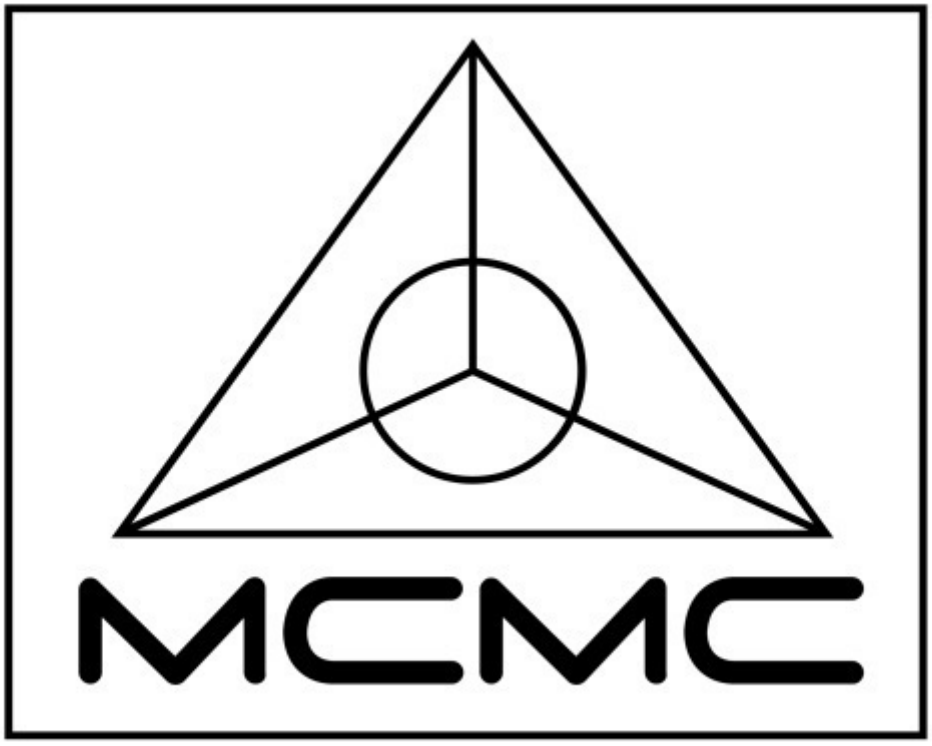
Independent State of Samoa

Israel

1. מספר אישור התאמה מטעם משרד התקשורת: 51-86227
2. חל איסור לבצע פעולות במכשיר שיש בהן כדי לשנות את תכונותיו האלחוטיות של המכשיר, ובכלל זה שינויי תוכנה, החלפת אנטנה מקורית או הוספת אפשרות לחיבור לאנטנה חיצונית, בלא קבלת אישור משרד התקשורת, בשל החשש להפרעות אלחוטיות.

1. מספר אישור התאמה מטעם משרד התקשורת: 56-03001
2. חל איסור לבצע פעולות במכשיר שיש בהן כדי לשנות את תכונותיו האלחוטיות של המכשיר, ובכלל זה שינויי תוכנה, החלפת אנטנה מקורית או הוספת אפשרות לחיבור לאנטנה חיצונית, בלא קבלת אישור משרד התקשורת, בשל החשש להפרעות אלחוטיות.

Malaysia

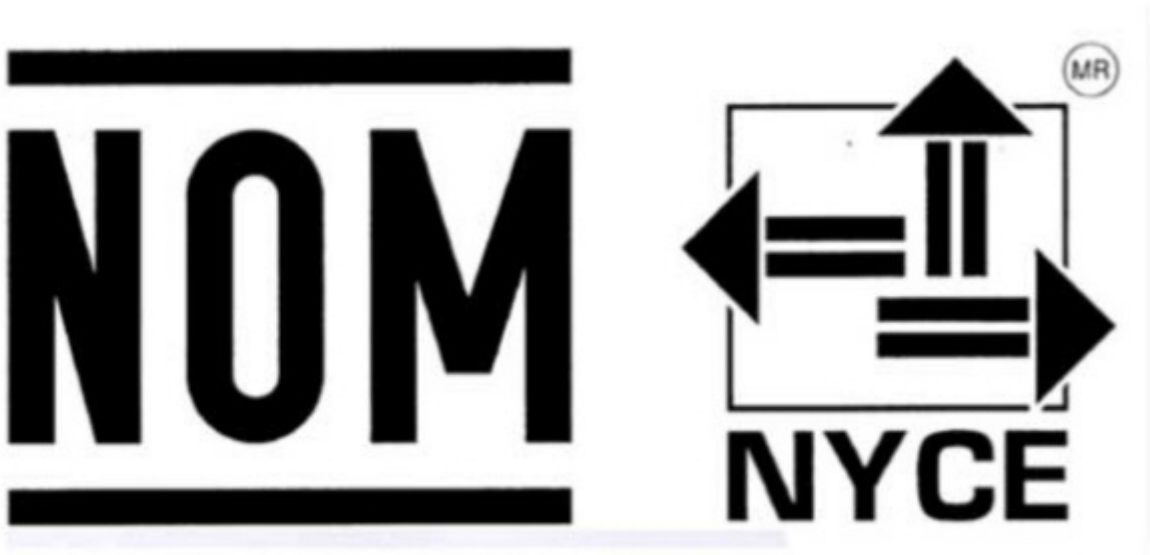


HIDF16000009

Mauritania

AGREE PAR L'ANE MAURITANIE
Numéro d'agrément: 0803/ARE/2020
Date d'agrément: 03/06/2020

Mexico



IFT: RCPAPFO21-0004

Moldova



Morocco

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC

Numéro d'agrément: MR24102ANRT2020

Date d'agrément: 18/05/2020

Pakistan

Pakistan Telecommunication Authority

PTA

Approved by PTA 2020

Serbia

? 011 23

South Africa

TA-2020/5481
APPROVED

Taiwan
CCAB22LP1370T1

取得審驗證明之低功率射頻器材，非經核准，公司、商號或使用者均不得擅自變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。低功率射頻器材之使用不得影享飛航安全及干擾合法通信；經發現有干擾現象時，應立即停用，並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用。前述合法通信，指依電信管理法規定作業之無線電通信。低功率射頻器材須忍受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設備之干擾。

Thailand

เครื่องโทรคมนาคมและอุปกรณ์นี้ มีความสอดคล้องตามข้อกำหนดของ กทช.

Ukraine

UA.TR.028

United Kingdom

United Arab Emirates (UAE)



Zambia

ZMB/ZICTA/TA/2020/6/247

SYNC

Device	Supplier	Type Designation
SYNC	Ford	SYNC-G4
		SYNC-G4L

Argentina

C-24008

C-24009

Brazil



08657-19-01505

08658-19-01505

Este equipamento não tem direito à proteção contra interferência prejudicial e não pode causar interferência em sistemas devidamente autorizados.

Djibouti

AGREE PAR LE MCPT (REPUBLIQUE DE DJIBOUTI)

Numéro d'agrément: 124/DDTIC/2019

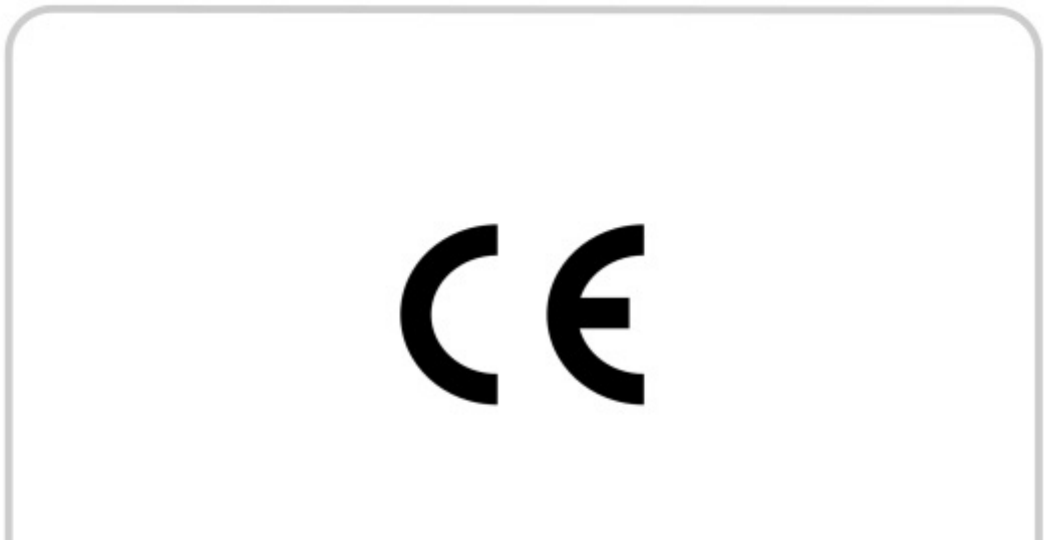
Date d'agrément: 07/08/2019

AGREE PAR LE MCPT (REPUBLIQUE DE DJIBOUTI)

Numéro d'agrément: 125/DDTIC/2019

Date d'agrément: 07/08/2019

European Union (EU)



Ghana

NCA APPROVED: ZRO-1H-7E3-182
NCA APPROVED: ZRO-1H-7E3-180

Indonesia

Model: SYNC-G4
Sertifikat Nomor: 80700/SDPPI/2022
PLG ID: 13493

Model: SYNC-G4L
Sertifikat Nomor: **81116**/SDPPI/2022
PLG ID: 13493

Jamaica

This product has been Type Approved by Jamaica: SMA - SYNC-G4

This product has been Type Approved by Jamaica: SMA - SYNC-G4L

Malaysia



HIDF16000009

Mauritania

AGREE PAR L'ANE MAURITANIE
Numéro d'agrément: 0692/ARE/2018
Date d'agrément: 08/08/2019

AGREE PAR L'ANE MAURITANIE
Numéro d'agrément: 0691/ARE/2018
Date d'agrément: 08/08/2019

Moldova



Morocco

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC
Numéro d'agrément: MR20608ANRT2019
Date d'agrément: 07 AOUT 2019

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC
Numéro d'agrément: MR20606ANRT2019
Date d'agrément: 07 AOUT 2019

Pakistan

Pakistan Telecommunication Authority

PTA

Approved by PTA 2019

Paraguay

CONATEL

NR: 2020-03-I-00192
NR: 2020-03-I-00193

Serbia

? 005 20

Singapore

Complies with IMDA Standards
DA 00461

South Africa

TA-2019/2465
TA-2019/2466
APPROVED

South Korea

MSIP-R-C-FDM-SYNCG4

MSIP-R-C-FDM-SYNCG4L

Taiwan

CCAB20LP0290T8

CCAB20LP0300T1

取得審驗證明之低功率射頻器材，非經核准，公司、商號或使用者均不得擅自變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。低功率射頻器材之使用不得影享飛航安全及干擾合法通信；經發現有干擾現象時，應立即停用，並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用。前述合法通信，指依電信管理法規定作業之無線電通信。低功率射頻器材須忍受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設備之干擾。

Ukraine



UA.TR.028

United Arab Emirates (UAE)





United Kingdom

United States and Canada

FCC ID: KMH-SYNCG4

FCC ID: KMH-SYNCG4L

IC: 1422A-SYNCG4

IC: 1422A-SYNCG4L

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

1. L'appareil ne doit pas produire de brouillage;
2. L'appareil doit accepter tout brouillage radioélectrique subi, même si le brouillage est susceptible d'en compromettre le fonctionnement.

Note: Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.
RF Radiation Exposure Statement: This equipment complies with FCC RF Radiation exposure limits set forth for an uncontrolled environment. This device and its antenna must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter. This equipment should be installed and operated with a normally maintained separation distance of at least 8 in (20 cm) between the radiator and your body.
Zambia

ZMB/ZICTA/TA/2019/11/41
ZMB/ZICTA/TA/2019/11/40

Telematics Control Unit

Device	Supplier	Type Designation
Telematics Control Unit	Ford	FB5-TCU

Argentina

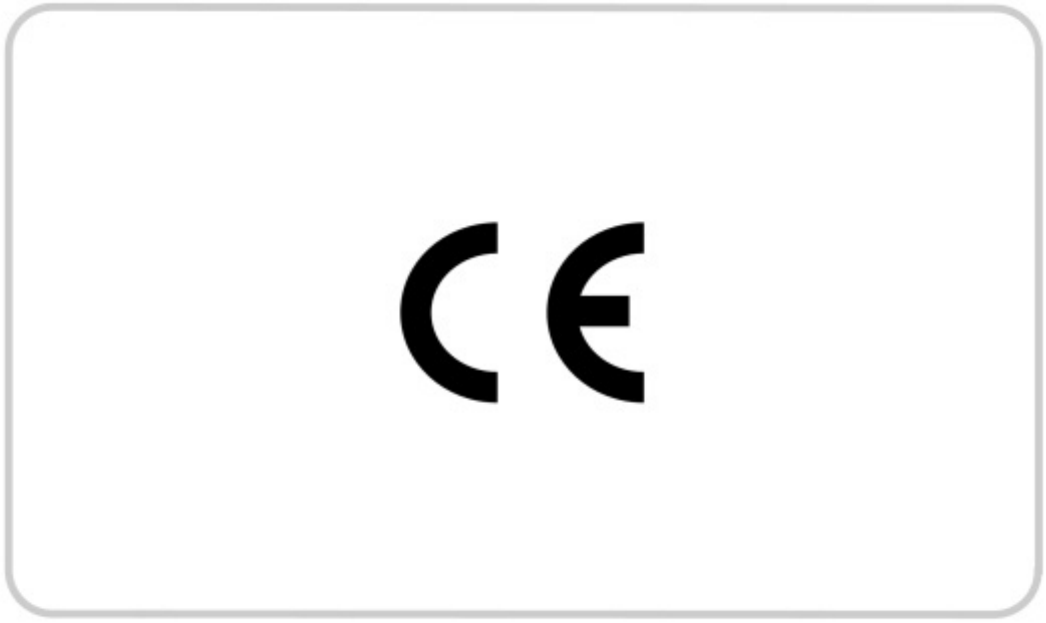
C-28150

Brazil

11807-21-01505

Este equipamento não tem direito à proteção contra interferência prejudicial e não pode causar interferência em sistemas devidamente autorizados.

European Union (EU)



Malaysia



HIDF16000009

Mexico



South Africa

TA-2020/6952

APPROVED

Taiwan

CCAB234G0080T2

CCAB224G0040T8

取得審驗證明之低功率射頻器材，非經核准，公司、商號或使用者均不得擅自變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。低功率射頻器材之使用不得影享飛航安全及干擾合法通信；經發現有干擾現象時，應立即停用，並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用。前述合法通信，指依電信管理法規定作業之無線電通信。低功率射頻器材須忍受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設備之干擾。

We recommend that the distance between the antenna of the telematics control unit and the user be greater than 14 in (35 cm) when using the telematics control unit.

United Arab Emirates (UAE)

TDRA

ER87741/20
United Arab Emirates

United Kingdom

United States and Canada

FCC ID: KMH-14H074-NA1

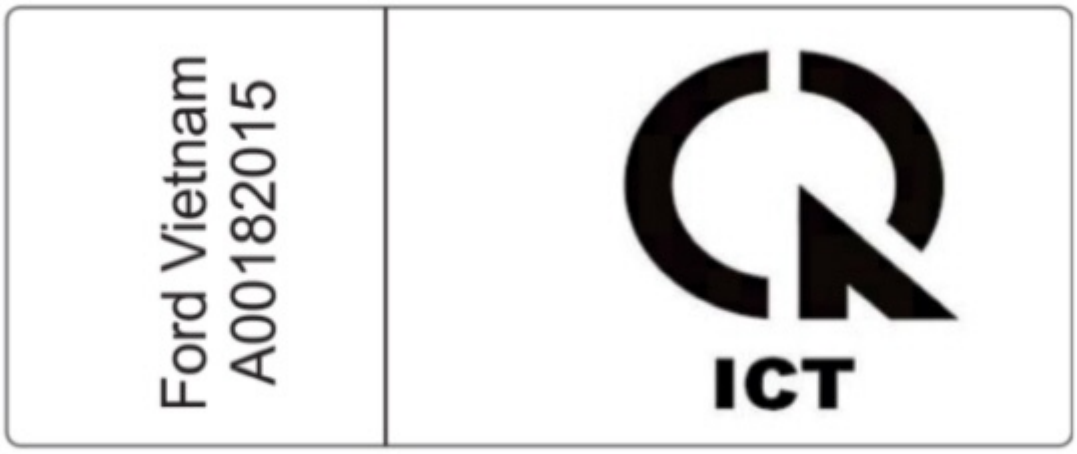
IC: 1422A-14H074NA1

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

1. L'appareil ne doit pas produire de brouillage;
2. L'appareil doit accepter tout brouillage radioélectrique subi, même si le brouillage est susceptible d'en compromettre le fonctionnement.

Note: Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

Vietnam



Tire Pressure Monitoring System Sensors - Vehicles With: 315 MHz Sensors

Device	Supplier	Type Designation
315 MHz Faraday PAL Sensor	Schrader/Sensata	AG2SM3

Brazil



05062-18-08001

Este equipamento não tem direito à proteção contra interferência prejudicial e não pode causar interferência em sistemas devidamente autorizados.

Jamaica

This product has been Type Approved by Jamaica: SMA - AG2SM3

Mexico

IFT: RCPSCAG18-1886

1. es posible que este equipo o dispositivo no cause interferencia perjudicial y
2. este equipo o dispositivo debe aceptar cualquier interferencia, incluyendo la que pueda causar su operación no deseada.

Taiwan

CCAH18LP2400T0

取得審驗證明之低功率射頻器材，非經核准，公司、商號或使用者均不得擅自變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。低功率射頻器材之使用不得影享飛航安全及干擾合法通信；經發現有干擾現象時，應立即停用，並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用。前述合法通信，指依電信管理法規定作業之無線電通信。低功率射頻器材須忍受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設備之干擾。

United States and Canada

FCC ID: MRXAG2SM3

IC: 2546A-AG2SM3

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

1. L'appareil ne doit pas produire de brouillage;
2. L'appareil doit accepter tout brouillage radioélectrique subi, même si le brouillage est susceptible d'en compromettre le fonctionnement.

Note: Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

Tire Pressure Monitoring System Sensors - Vehicles With: 433 MHz Sensors

Device	Supplier	Type Designation
434 MHz Faraday PAL Sensor	Schrader/Sensata	AG2SM4

Argentina

H-20958

Brazil



11998-20-04415

Este equipamento não tem direito à proteção contra interferência prejudicial e não pode causar interferência em sistemas devidamente autorizados.

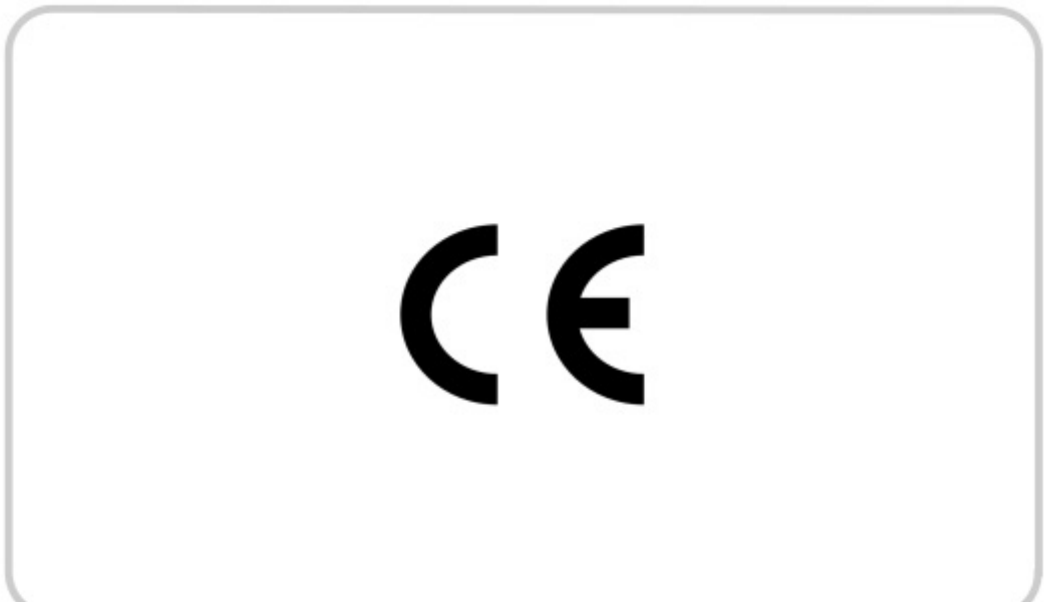
Democratic Republic of Congo

Agréé par l'ARPTC
N° d'homologation: HIR -0081/6/2018
Date d'homologation: 18/6/2018

Djibouti

AGREE PAR LE MCPT (REPUBLIQUE DE DJIBOUTI)
Numéro d'agrément: 045/DDTIC/2018
Date d'agrément: 06/05/18

European Union (EU)



The RED 2014/53/EU (replacing R&TTE Directive 1999/5/EC on 13 June 2016) explicitly states that instructions for intentional radiators include reference to "(a) frequency band(s) in which the radio equipment operates; and (b) maximum radio-frequency power transmitted in the frequency band(s) in which the radio equipment operates," in addition to carrying over the general operational instruction and Declaration of Conformity inclusion requirements from the R&TTE Directive.

Hereby, Schrader Electronics Ltd. declares that the radio equipment type AG2SM4 is in compliance with Directive 2014/53/EU. The full text of the EU declaration of conformity is available at the following internet address:

https://www.schradertpms.com/en-gb/downloads

f=433.92MHz

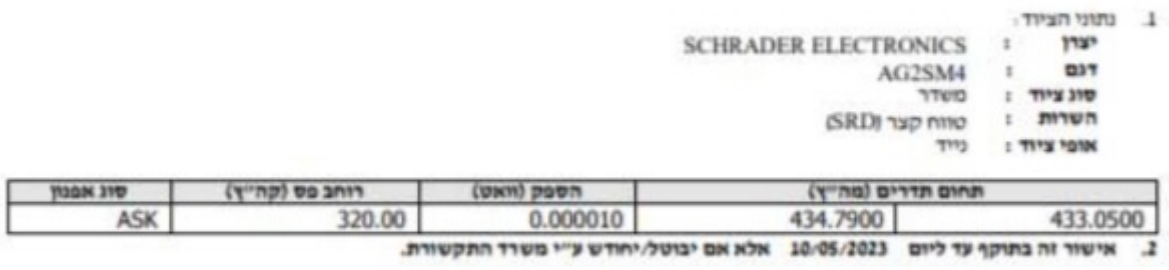
P<10mW (e.i.r.p)

Schrader Electronics Ltd. 11 Technology Park, Belfast Road, Antrim BT41 1QS, Northern Ireland United Kingdom.

Ghana

NCA APPROVED: BR3-1M-GE2-X74

Israel



1. נתוני הציוד:

יצרן	:	SCHRADER ELECTRONICS
דגם	:	AG2SM4
סוג ציוד	:	משדר
השרות	:	טווח קצר (SRD)
אופי ציוד	:	נייד

תחום תדרים (מה"ץ)		הספק (ואט)	ריוחב פס (קה"ץ)	סוג אמנון
433.0500	434.7900	0.000010	320.00	ASK

2. אישור זה בתוקף עד ליום 10/05/2023 אלא אם יבוטל/יחודש ע"י משרד התקשורת.

Jamaica

This product has been Type Approved by Jamaica: SMA - AG2SM4

Malaysia



HIDF16000009

Mauritania

AGREE PAR L'ANE MAURITANIE

Numéro d'agrément: 0489/ARE/2018

Date d'agrément: 04/25/2018

Mexico

IFT: ROSCAG23-14312

1. es posible que este equipo o dispositivo no cause interferencia perjudicial y
2. este equipo o dispositivo debe aceptar cualquier interferencia, incluyendo la que pueda causar su operación no deseada.

Moldova



Morocco

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC

Numéro d'agrément: MR16506ANRT2018

Date d'agrément: 09/05/2018

Pakistan



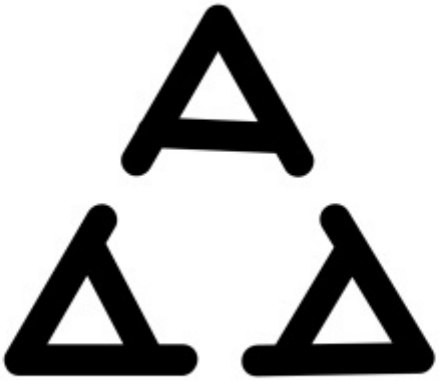
Approved by PTA 2016

Paraguay



NR: 2024-03-I-0295

Serbia



? 005 21

Sierra Leone



TAN: 2018-002-0025

Singapore

Complies with IMDA Standards
DA 107968

South Africa



TA-2018/639
APPROVED

South Korea



R-CRM-SRD-AG2SM4

Taiwan

CCAH18LP1210T0

取得審驗證明之低功率射頻器材，非經核准，公司、商號或使用者均不得擅自變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。低功率射頻器材之使用不得影享飛航安全及干擾合法通信；經發現有干擾現象時，應立即停用，並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用。前述合法通信，指依電信管理法規定作業之無線電通信。低功率射頻器材須忍受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設備之干擾。

Ukraine



UA.TR.028

United Arab Emirates (UAE)



United States and Canada

FCC ID: MRXAG2SM4

IC: 2546A-AG2SM4

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

1. L'appareil ne doit pas produire de brouillage;
2. L'appareil doit accepter tout brouillage radioélectrique subi, même si le brouillage est susceptible d'en compromettre le fonctionnement.

Note: Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

Zambia

ZMB/ZICTA/TA/2018/5/26

Wireless Accessory Charging Module

Device	Supplier	Type Designation
Wireless Charger (WCM)	LG/BH EVS	WCFDM00N2A1
		WCFDM00N2A3
		WCFDM00N2A5

Argentina

H-26491

H-26492

H-26493

H-31895

Brazil



12804-21-14208

05792-23-15321

Este equipamento não tem direito à proteção contra interferência prejudicial e não pode causar interferência em sistemas devidamente autorizados.

Democratic Republic of Congo

Agréé par l'ARPTC

N° d'homologation: HER-062/Avril/2023

Date d'homologation: 28/4/2023

Djibouti

AGREE PAR LE MCPT (REPUBLIQUE DE DJIBOUTI)

Numéro d'agrément: 041/DDTIC/2024

Date d'agrément: 16/04/2024

AGREE PAR LE MCPT (REPUBLIQUE DE DJIBOUTI)

Numéro d'agrément: 042/DDTIC/2024

Date d'agrément: 16/04/2024

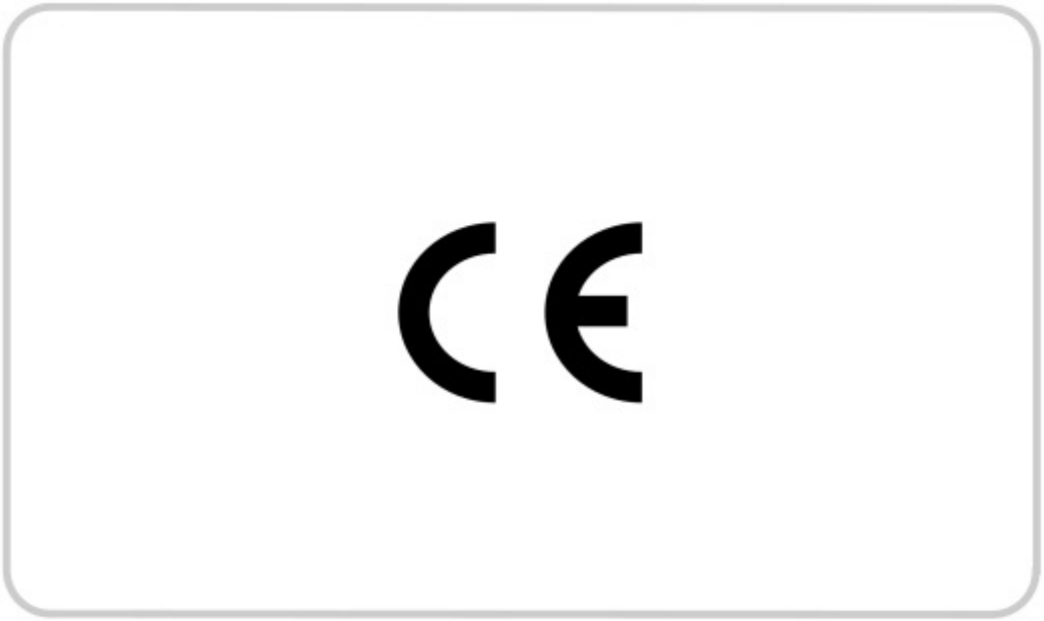
AGREE PAR LE MCPT (REPUBLIQUE DE DJIBOUTI)

Numéro d'agrément: 043/DDTIC/2024

Date d'agrément: 16/04/2024

Eurasian Customs Union

European Union (EU)



Ghana

NCA APPROVED: 7ES-7M-XB1-RDR

Independent State Of Samoa



Indonesia

Model: WCFDM00N2A1
Sertifikat Nomor: 80110/SDPPI/2022
PLG ID: 13493

Model: WCFDM00N2A3
Sertifikat Nomor: 80111/SDPPI/2022
PLG ID: 13493

Model: WCFDM00N2A5
Sertifikat Nomor: 80112/SDPPI/2022
PLG ID: 13493

Model: WCFDM00N2A1
Sertifikat Nomor: 106189/SDPPI/2024
PLG ID: 13493

Israel

1. מספר אישור התאמה מטעם משרד התקשורת : 51-80014
2. חל איסור לבצע פעולות במכשיר שיש בהן כדי לשנות את תכונותיו האלחוטיות של המכשיר, ובכלל זה שינויי תוכנה, החלפת אנטנה מקורית או הוספת אפשרות לחיבור לאנטנה חיצונית, בלא קבלת אישור משרד התקשורת, בשל החשש להפרעות אלחוטיות

1. מספר אישור התאמה מטעם משרד התקשורת : 51-80015
2. חל איסור לבצע פעולות במכשיר שיש בהן כדי לשנות את תכונותיו האלחוטיות של המכשיר, ובכלל זה שינויי תוכנה, החלפת אנטנה מקורית או הוספת אפשרות לחיבור לאנטנה חיצונית, בלא קבלת אישור משרד התקשורת, בשל החשש להפרעות אלחוטיות

1. מספר אישור התאמה מטעם משרד התקשורת : 51-80013
2. חל איסור לבצע פעולות במכשיר שיש בהן כדי לשנות את תכונותיו האלחוטיות של המכשיר, ובכלל זה שינויי תוכנה, החלפת אנטנה מקורית או הוספת אפשרות לחיבור לאנטנה חיצונית, בלא קבלת אישור משרד התקשורת, בשל החשש להפרעות אלחוטיות

Jamaica

This product contains a Type Approved Module by Jamaica: SMA - WCFDM00N2A

Malaysia



HIDF16000009

Mauritania

AGREE PAR L'ANE MAURITANIE
Numéro d'agrément: 0935/ARE/2021
Date d'agrément: 23/03/2021

AGREE PAR L'ANE MAURITANIE
Numéro d'agrément: 0934/ARE/2021
Date d'agrément: 23/03/2021

AGREE PAR L'ANE MAURITANIE
Numéro d'agrément: 0933/ARE/2021
Date d'agrément: 23/03/2021

Moldova



Morocco

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC
Numéro d'agrément: MR00027924ANRT2021
Date d'agrément: 25/03/2021

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC
Numéro d'agrément: MR00027925ANRT2021
Date d'agrément: 25/03/2021

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC
Numéro d'agrément: MR00027923ANRT2021
Date d'agrément: 25/03/2021

Pakistan

Pakistan Telecommunication Authority

PTA

Approved by PTA 2022
Approved by PTA 2023

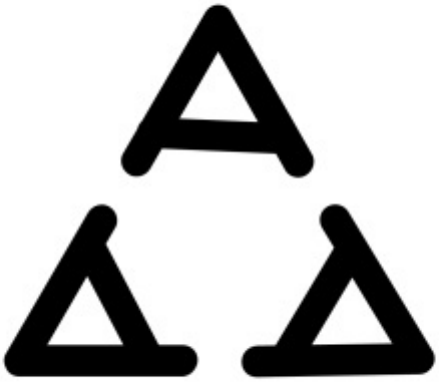
Paraguay

NR: 2021-04-I-0202

NR: 2021-04-I-0203

NR: 2021-04-I-0204

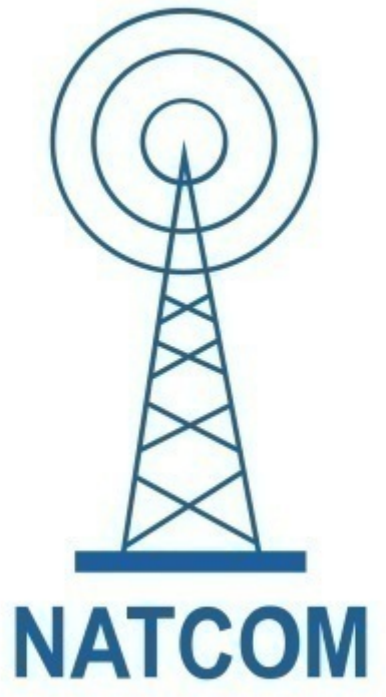
Serbia



? 005 21

? 005 24

Sierra Leone



TAN: 2021-002-0099

Singapore

Complies with IMDA Standards

DA 00461

South Africa

TA-2021/0360
APPROVED

South Korea

R-R-LGE-WCFDM00N2A1
R-R-abh-WCFDM00N2A1

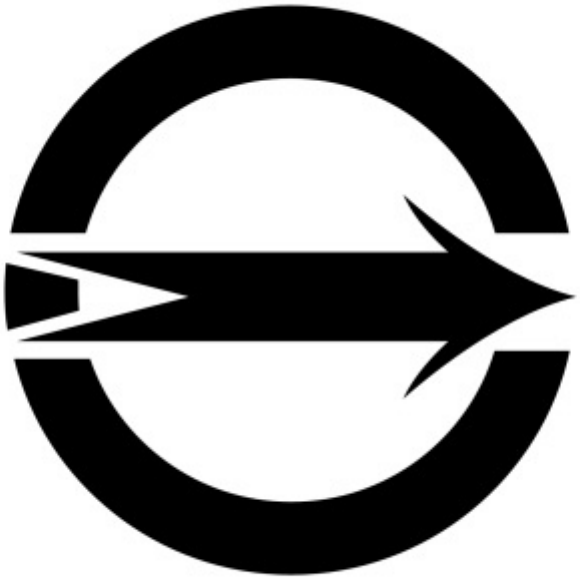
Taiwan

CCAB21LP050AT3

CCAB21LP0500T1

CCAB21LP050BT5

取得審驗證明之低功率射頻器材，非經核准，公司、商號或使用者均不得擅自變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。低功率射頻器材之使用不得影享飛航安全及干擾合法通信；經發現有干擾現象時，應立即停用，並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用。前述合法通信，指依電信管理法規定作業之無線電通信。



R43208

Ukraine



UA.TR.028

United Kingdom



United Arab Emirates (UAE)









United States and Canada

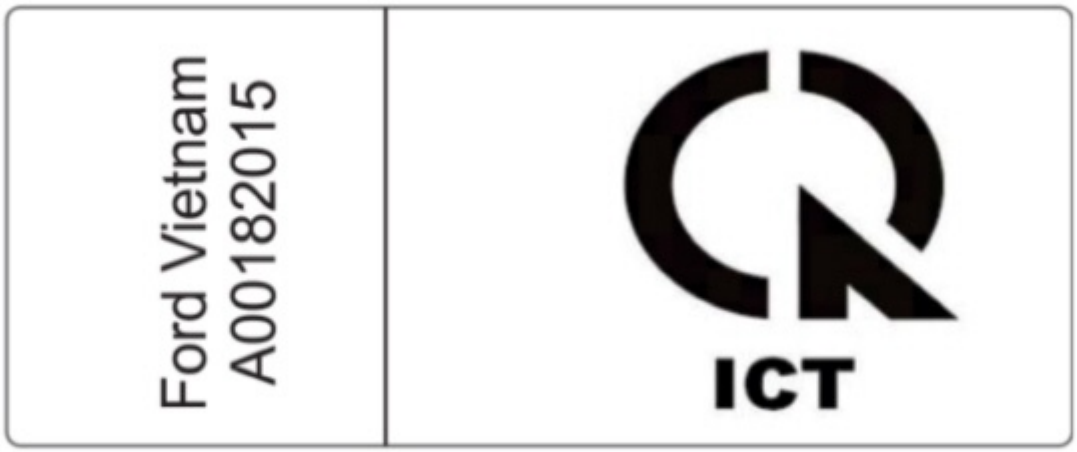
FCC ID: 2A6WXWCFDM00N2A

IC: 2703H-WCFDM00N2A

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

1. L'appareil ne doit pas produire de brouillage;
2. L'appareil doit accepter tout brouillage radioélectrique subi, même si le brouillage est susceptible d'en compromettre le fonctionnement.

Note: Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.
RF Radiation Exposure Statement: This equipment complies with FCC RF Radiation exposure limits set forth for an uncontrolled environment. This device and its antenna must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter. This equipment should be installed and operated with a normally maintained separation distance of at least 8 in (20 cm) between the radiator and your body.
Vietnam



Zambia



ZMB/ZICTA/TA/2021/4/54

Appendices

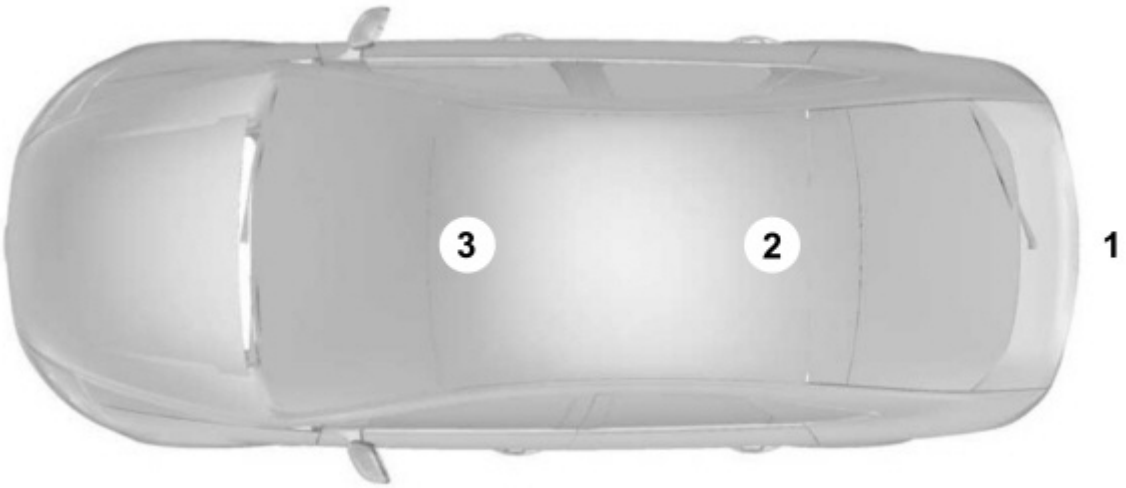
Electromagnetic Compatibility

WARNING: Do not place objects or mount equipment on or near the airbag cover, on the side of the front or rear seatbacks, or in areas that may come into contact with a deploying airbag. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of personal injury in the event of a crash.

WARNING: Do not fasten antenna cables to vehicle wiring, pipes or hoses. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of equipment malfunction, equipment damage or personal injury.

WARNING: Keep antenna and power cables at least 4 in (10 cm) from any electronic modules and airbags. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of equipment malfunction, equipment damage or personal injury.

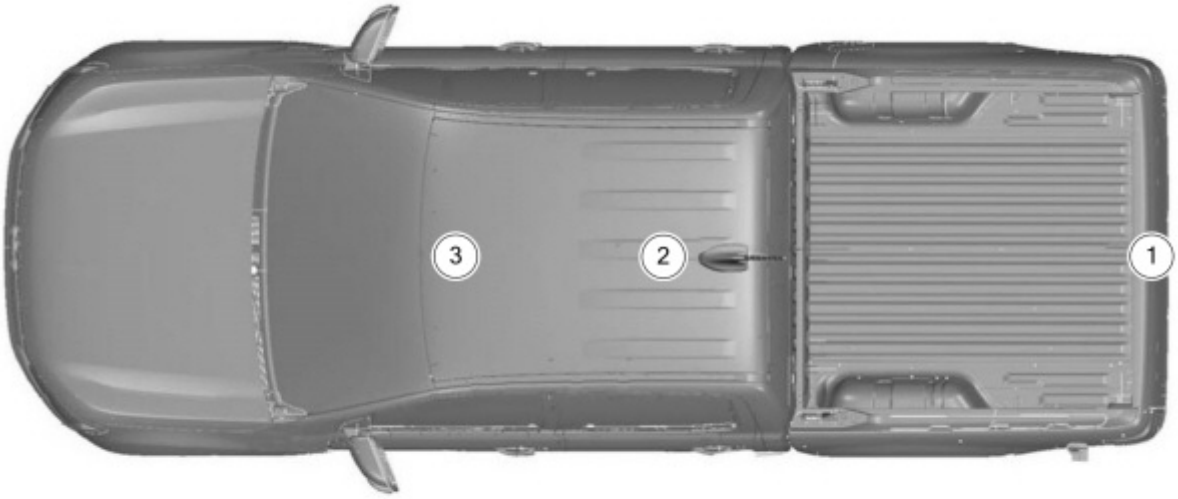
Note: We test and certify your vehicle to meet electromagnetic compatibility legislation. It is your responsibility to make sure that any equipment an authorized dealer installs on your vehicle complies with applicable local legislation and other requirements. Installation of some aftermarket electronic devices could degrade the performance of vehicle functions, which use radio frequency signals such as broadcast radio receiver, tire pressure monitoring system, push button start, Bluetooth® connectivity or satellite navigation.
Note: Any radio frequency transmitter equipment in your vehicle (such as cell phones and amateur radio transmitters) must keep to the parameters in the following illustrations and table. We do not provide any other special provisions or conditions for installations or use.
Car



Van



Truck



E239121

Frequency Band MHz	Maximum Output Power Watt (Peak RMS)	Antenna Positions
1-30[1]	50	1
50-54	50	2, 3
68-87	50	2, 3
144-174	50	2, 3
380-512	50	2, 3
806-870	10	2, 3

[1]For battery electric vehicles and plug-in hybrid vehicles, this frequency is not approved when your vehicle is plugged-in and charging.

Note: After the installation of radio frequency transmitters, check for disturbances from and to all electrical equipment in your vehicle, both in the standby and transmit modes.

Check all electrical equipment:

- With the ignition ON.
- With the vehicle running.
- During a road test at various speeds.

Check that electromagnetic fields generated inside your vehicle cabin by the transmitter installed do not exceed applicable human exposure requirements.